# Abraham Ibn Ezra on Elections, Interrogations, and Medical Astrology 

# Études sur le Judaïsme Médiéval 

Fondées par<br>Georges Vajda

Dirigées par
Paul B. Fenton

TOME L

# Abraham Ibn Ezra on Elections, Interrogations, and Medical Astrology 

A Parallel Hebrew-English Critical Edition of the Book of Elections (3 Versions), the Book of Interrogations (3 Versions), and the Book of the Luminaries

Abraham Ibn Ezra's Astrological Writings, Volume 3

Edited, translated, and annotated by
Shlomo Sela


BRILL

This book is printed on acid-free paper.

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data
Ibn Ezra, Abraham ben Meïr, 1092-1167.
[Selections. English \& Hebrew. 2011]
Abraham Ibn Ezra on elections, interrogations, and medical astrology : a parallel
Hebrew-English critical edition of the book of elections (3 versions), the book of interrogations (3 versions), and the book of the luminaries / [edited and translated by] by Shlomo Sela.
p. cm. - (Études sur le judaïsme médiéval, ISSN 0169-815X ; t. 50) (Abraham Ibn Ezra's astrological writings ; v. 3)

Includes bibliographical references and index.
ISBN 978-90-04-21220-6 (hardback : alk. paper)

1. Medical astrology-Early works to 1800. 2. Astrology, Arab-Early works to 1800. I. Sela, Shlomo. II. Title.

BF1718.I26213 2011
133.5'96092-dc23

2011024096

ISSN 0169-815X
ISBN 9789004212206
Copyright 2011 by Koninklijke Brill NV, Leiden, The Netherlands.
Koninklijke Brill NV incorporates the imprints Brill, Global Oriental, Hotei Publishing, IDC Publishers, Martinus Nijhoff Publishers and VSP.

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, translated, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without prior written permission from the publisher.

Authorization to photocopy items for internal or personal use is granted by Koninklijke Brill NV provided that the appropriate fees are paid directly to The Copyright Clearance Center, 222 Rosewood Drive, Suite 910, Danvers, MA 01923, USA.
Fees are subject to change.

## CONTENTS

Preface ..... ix
Abbreviations ..... xi
Introduction ..... 1
Transmission of the Texts ..... 6
Ibn Ezra's Approach to Elections ..... 10
Ibn Ezra’s Approach to Interrogations ..... 14
Ibn Ezra's Approach to the Astrological Theory of the Critical Days ..... 17
The Sources of Sefer ha-Mivharim and Sefer ha-She'elot ... ..... 20
The Sources of Sefer ha-Me'orot ..... 23
Links between the Epitome totius astrologiae and Ibn Ezra's Work on Elections and Interrogations ..... 25
Content and Organization ..... 28
Place and Date of Composition ..... 32
Sefer ha-She'elot I ..... 32
Sefer ha-She'elot II ..... 33
Sefer ha-She'elot III ..... 34
Sefer ha-Mivḥarim I ..... 34
Sefer ha-Mivharim II ..... 35
Sefer ha-Mivharim III ..... 35
Sefer ha-Me'orot ..... 35
Manuscripts ..... 36
Editorial and Translation Principles ..... 41
Editorial Changes with Respect to the Previous Editions. ..... 43
Abbreviations and Sigla ..... 44
Part One: First Version of the Book of Elections by Abraham Ibn
Ezra. Hebrew Text and English Translation ..... 45
Part Two: Notes to the First Version of the Book of Elections ..... 91
Part Three: Second Version of the Book of Elections by Abraham Ibn Ezra. Hebrew Text and English Translation ..... 141
Part Four: Notes to the Second Version of the Book of Elections ..... 179
Part Five: Third Version of the Book of Elections by Abraham Ibn Ezra. Hebrew Text and English Translation ..... 217
Part Six: Notes to the Third Version of the Book of Elections ..... 225
Part Seven: First Version of the Book of Interrogations by Abraham Ibn Ezra. Hebrew Text and English Translation ..... 239
Part Eight: Notes to the First Version of the Book of Interrogations ..... 299
Part Nine: Second Version of the Book of Interrogations by Abraham Ibn Ezra. Hebrew Text and English Translation ..... 347
Part Ten: Notes to the Second Version of the Book of Interrogations ..... 399
Part Eleven: Third Version of the Book of Interrogations by Abraham Ibn Ezra. Hebrew Text and English Translation ..... 437
Part Twelve: Notes to the Third Version of the Book of Interrogations ..... 445
Part Thirteen: Book of the Luminaries by Abraham Ibn Ezra. Hebrew Text and English Translation ..... 451
Part Fourteen: Notes to the Book of the Luminaries ..... 485
Part Fifteen: Appendices ..... 525
A. Manuscripts ..... 527
B. Cross-References and Quotations ..... 535
C. Concordances ..... 538
D. Authorities and Sources Mentioned in Mivḥarim I, Mivharim II and Mivharim III ..... 543
E. Authorities and Sources Mentioned in She'elot I, She'elot II and She'elot III. ..... 546
F. Authorities and Sources Mentioned in Sefer ha-Me'orot ..... 551
G. The Tripartite Cosmology in the Long Commentary on Exodus 3:15 ..... 553
Bibliography ..... 557
English-Hebrew Glossary of Technical Terms (3 Versions of Sefer ha-Mivharim) ..... 565
English-Hebrew Glossary of Technical Terms (3 Versions of Sefer ha-She'elot) ..... 590
English-Hebrew Glossary of Technical Terms in Sefer ha-Me'orot ..... 618
Hebrew-English Index to the English-Hebrew Glossaries ..... 631
Index of Technical Terms and Biographical Notes ..... 645
Index ..... 649

## PREFACE

On the title page and the cover, the present volume is referred to as volume 3 of Abraham Ibn Ezra's Astrological Writings. This series is intended to offer critical editions, with an English translation and a commentary, of all of Abraham Ibn Ezra's astrological works. The first volume, published in 2007, included the two versions of Sefer ha-Țe'amim (Book of Reasons), which provide the "reasons," "explanations," or "meanings" of the raw astrological concepts formulated in the introduction to astrology that Ibn Ezra entitled Reshit Hokhmah (Beginning of Wisdom). The second volume, published in 2010, included the two versions of Sefer ha'Olam (Book of the World), the first theoretical work in Hebrew to discuss the theories and techniques of historical and meteorological astrology, as they had accumulated from Antiquity to Ibn Ezra's own time. This volume offers the first critical edition, with English translation and commentary, of seven astrological texts by Ibn Ezra: (1) the complete Hebrew text of the first version of Sefer ha-Mivharim (Book of Elections); (2) the complete Hebrew text of the second version of Sefer ha-Mivharim; (3) the Hebrew text of the recently discovered fragment of the third version of Sefer ha-Mivharim; (4) the complete Hebrew text of the first version of Sefer ha-She'elot (Book of Interrogations); (5) the complete Hebrew text of the second version of Sefer ha-She'elot; (6) the Hebrew text of the recently discovered fragment of the third version of Sefer ha-She'elot; and (7) the complete Hebrew text of the extant version of Sefer ha-Me'orot (Book of the Luminaries).

This volume, then, covers three systems of astrology: the three versions of Sefer ha-Mivharim deal with the doctrine of elections, which is concerned with finding the best time to begin a particular activity; the three versions of Sefer ha-She'elot are concerned with the doctrine of interrogations, designed to allow astrologers to reply to questions related to daily life; and Sefer ha-Me'orot expounds the astrological theory behind the doctrine of the critical days, when marked changes take place in the symptoms of a disease. I have decided to combine them in a single volume for several reasons: first, because Ibn Ezra considers these three doctrines to be closely interrelated, in the technical sense; second, because he holds
that they constitute a sort of antithesis to the well-entrenched systems of nativities and historical astrology; and third, because he views these three doctrines as allowing a limited release from the decrees of the stars.

Lenn Schramm revised the translations and the English sections of this book; he also made very helpful suggestions about the interpretation of the Hebrew texts. The Israel Science Foundation (Grant No. 113/08) provided a generous grant. My warmest thanks to both of them.

Sh. S.
March 2011

## ABBREVIATIONS

| BNF | Bibliothèque Nationale de France |
| :---: | :---: |
| JNUL | Jewish National and University Library |
| IMHM | Institute for Microfilmed Hebrew |
|  | Manuscripts, Jewish National and |
|  | University Library, Jerusalem |
| Long comm. Ex. 3:15, §1:2 | Abraham Ibn Ezra, long commentary on Exodus 3:15, section 1, sentence 2, in Appendix G: The Tripartite Cosmology in the Long Commentary on Exodus 3:15, on |
| Mivharim I | pp. 553-555 ${ }_{\text {First }}$ version of Sefer ha-Mivharim |
| Mivharim II | Second version of Sefer ha-Mivharim |
| Mivharim III | Third version of Sefer ha-Mivharim |
| Nehoshet I | First version of Keli ha-Nehoshet |
| Nehoshet II | Second version of Keli ha-Nehoshet |
| Neḥoshet III | Third version of Keli ha-Nehoshet |
| 'Olam I | First version of Sefer ha'Olam |
| 'Olam II | Second version of Sefer ha'Olam |
| Reshit Hokhmah, 1939, V, li: 9 | Abraham Ibn Ezra, Reshit Hokhmah in The Beginning of Wisdom, An Astrological Treatise by Abraham Ibn Ezra, edited by Raphael Levy and Francisco Cantera (Baltimore, 1939), fifth chapter, page li, line 9 |
| Reshit Hokhmah I | First version of Reshit Hokhmah. |
| Reshit Ḣokhmah II | Second version of Reshit Hokhmah. |
| She'elot I | First version of Sefer ha-She'elot |
| She'elot II | Second version of Sefer ha-She'elot |
| She'elot III | Third version of Sefer ha-She'elot |
| Te`amim I, \$2.6:2, pp. 36-37 | First version of Sefer ha-Te'amim, ed. Sela, chapter 2, section 6, sentence 2 on pp. 36-37 |

Țéamim II, § 5.1:11, pp. 218-219 Second version of Sefer ha-Ṭéamim, ed. Sela, chapter 5 , section 1 , sentence 11 on pp. 218-219
TTéamim I First version of Sefer ha-Te'amim
Ṭéamim II Second version of Sefer ha-Te'amim

## INTRODUCTION

Abraham Ibn Ezra (ca. 1089-ca. 1161) was born in Muslim Spain, where he received his Jewish and scientific education within the orbit of the Arabic culture and language. ${ }^{1}$ After leaving his homeland at the age of 50 he began to roam through Italy, France, and England; during these years he wrote prolifically on a wide variety of subjects, almost exclusively in Hebrew. ${ }^{2}$ Ibn Ezra owes his reputation to his outstanding biblical commentaries, but he also wrote religious and secular poetry, religious-theological and grammatical monographs, and a scientific corpus on mathematics, astronomy, scientific instruments, the Jewish calendar, and especially astrology. ${ }^{3}$ Ibn Ezra incorporated a significant astrological component into his biblical commentaries, thereby promoting the smooth absorption of astrological content into the nucleus of Jewish culture. ${ }^{4}$ But his most enduring and influential contribution in the field of science and astrology, to both Jewish and Christian readers, was the creation of the first comprehensive corpus of Hebrew astrological textbooks that address the main systems of Arabic astrology.

[^0]The catalogue of his Hebrew astrological treatises has recently been enlarged by new discoveries. Today we know of eighteen works: (1-3) Reshit Hokhmah (Beginning of Wisdom, two versions), ${ }^{5}$ and Mishpeteci ha-Mazzalot (Book of the Judgments of the Zodiacal Signs), which are introductory textbooks of astrology; (4-5) Sefer ha-Țe‘amim (Book of Reasons, two versions), which explains the astrological reasons behind the concepts employed in both versions of Reshit Hokhmah;' (6-7) Sefer ha-Moladot (Book of Nativities, two versions), ${ }^{7}$ on genethlialogical astrology; (8) Sefer ha-Tequfah (Book of the Revolution), on continuous horoscopy; ${ }^{8}$ (9-10) Sefer ha-'Olam (Book of the World, two versions), on historical and meteorological astrology; ${ }^{9}(11-13)$ Sefer ha-Mivharim (Book of Elections, three versions), on choosing the most auspicious moment for performing specific actions; (14-16) Sefer ha-She'elot (Book of Interrogations, three versions), on replying to questions addressed to the astrologer, ${ }^{10}$ (17-18) Sefer ha-Me'orot (Book of the Luminaries, two versions), on medical astrology. ${ }^{11}$

This astrological corpus has three main characteristics. First, the titles of Ibn Ezra's extant Hebrew astrological treatises, as presented above,

[^1]indicate that they were formed in the mold of the well-established branches and genres of Greek and Arabic astrology: introductions to astrology, nativities and continuous horoscopy, historical and meteorological astrology, elections, interrogations, and medical astrology. Second, the individual treatises were designed as chapters of "astrological encyclopedias" whose unity derives from a network of cross-references. ${ }^{12}$ Third, he usually wrote at least two different versions or recensions of each individual treatise. This phenomenon is typical of Ibn Ezra's literary career: The fact that there are at least two versions of most of his biblical commentaries, scientific treatises, and astrological writings is an artifact of his nomadic existence and a manifestation of the fact that he supported himself by his pen. He would write a new version of an old work for a new patron when he arrived in a new town and continued to stimulate the attention and curiosity of readers all along his itinerary through Latin Europe.

This volume, the third installment of Ibn Ezra's complete works on astrology, offers the first critical edition, with English translation and commentary, of seven astrological texts by Ibn Ezra: (1) the complete Hebrew text of the first version of Sefer ha-Mivharim, henceforth designated as Mivharim I; (2) the complete Hebrew text of the second version of Sefer ha-Mivharim (Mivḥarim II); (3) the Hebrew text of the recently discovered fragment of the third version of Sefer ha-Mivharim (Mivḩarim III); (4) the complete Hebrew text of the first version of Sefer ha-She'elot (She'elot I); (5) the complete Hebrew text of the second version of Sefer ha-She'elot (She'elot II); (6) the Hebrew text of the recently discovered fragment of the third version of Sefer ha-She' elot (She'elot III); (7) the complete Hebrew text of the extant version of Sefer ha-Me'orot (Me'orot). ${ }^{13}$

This volume, then, is concerned with three systems of astrology: the three versions of Sefer ha-Mivharim deal with the doctrine of elections, which is concerned with finding the best time to begin a particular

[^2]activity; the three versions of Sefer ha-She'elot are concerned with the doctrine of interrogations, designed to allow astrologers to reply to questions related to daily life; and Sefer ha-Me'orot expounds the astrological theory behind the doctrine of the critical days, when marked changes take place in the symptoms of a disease. What follows is a brief historical sketch of these astrological systems before Ibn Ezra's day.

The art of horoscopic astrology was developed in Hellenistic Egypt, probably in the late second or early first century BC, as a means to predict the native's fate by interpreting the horoscopic chart of his birth. This form of astrology, called genethlialogy, developed many theories of its own on the basis of Aristotelian physics and Hellenistic astronomy, but it also borrowed much from Mesopotamia and some from Egypt before spreading to India and Iran. Using this form of astrology to determine a propitious time for beginning some activity is called the "doctrine of elections" or "catarchic astrology." The doctrine of interrogations, which addressed specific questions by referring to the horoscope at the moment when the question was posed, was probably developed in India in the second and third centuries ce. ${ }^{14}$ Astrological texts were translated into Arabic from Greek, Sanskrit, Pahlavi, and Syriac from the late eighth century on, as the main branches of Arabic astrology were established: nativities, historical astrology, and the doctrines of elections (ibtid $\bar{a} \bar{a} t$ al-a'māl) and interrogations (masā ${ }^{\prime} i l$ ). The last two are the main concern of the various versions of Sefer ha-Mivharim and Sefer haShe'elot, respectively. ${ }^{15}$

According to the Greek view, the course of acute diseases is determined by "crises" or "critical days," when marked changes in the symptoms of a disease take place and it tends to reach a climax, whether good or bad. ${ }^{16}$ From antiquity to the Middle Ages, the Moon's position with respect to its position at the onset of the disease were thought to be connected to the time and character of these "critical days"; this link is one of the underlying principles and central issues of Sefer ha-Me'orot. The ability to determine the periodicities of the critical days and the awareness of the connection between the periodicities of the critical days and those of

[^3]the Moon appear to be the work of two different traditions, one of them was predominantly astrological and the other medical. They emerged separately in Ancient Greece and converged in the work of Galen (129ca. 200) and his followers. Ibn Ezra was aware of these two distinct traditions and (as will be shown in due course), wrote separately about each of them in Sefer ha-Me'orot. ${ }^{17}$

We see, then, that the three systems of Arabic astrology studied in this volume fulfill different functions, follow different procedures, and developed in parallel astrological traditions. Nevertheless, I have decided to treat them together in a single volume for three main reasons. First, Ibn Ezra considers these three doctrines to be closely interconnected in the technical sense. Mivharim I states that if an election is made but the client's time of birth is unknown, the astrologer should first make an interrogation for him; ${ }^{18}$ Sefer ha-Me'orot states that the astrological doctrine of the critical days uses the same methodology as the doctrine of elections; ${ }^{19}$ and the various versions of Sefer ha-She'elot incorporate questions related to the critical days. ${ }^{20}$ In addition, many parts of Sefer ha-She'elot and the several versions of Sefer ha-Mivharim are concerned with the same topics and techniques, because they are divided into the same twelve chapters, which correspond to the twelve horoscopic places. ${ }^{21}$

Second, according to Ibn Ezra, these three doctrines constitute a sort of antithesis to the well-entrenched systems of nativities and historical astrology, ${ }^{22}$ in which the time for casting the horoscope is rooted in "natural" timings, such as a person's time of birth (in the doctrine of nativities) or (in historical astrology) the moment when the Sun enters Aries, which evokes the creation of the world. ${ }^{23}$ In sharp contrast, each of the three astrological doctrines studied in this volume chooses or determines the time for casting the horoscope in accordance with rather arbitrary or

[^4]fortuitous factors: (a) In the doctrine of elections, the astrologer provides a client with one particular electional horoscope among several possible astral configurations whose timing corresponds to a specific astral configuration deliberately chosen because the astrologer considers it propitious for beginning the undertaking asked about. ${ }^{24}$ (b) In the doctrine of interrogations, the horoscope is cast for the time when the querent poses his question to the astrologer. ${ }^{25}$ (c) In the astrological theory of the critical days, the main horoscope is cast at the time of the onset of the disease. ${ }^{26}$

Third, Ibn Ezra views these three doctrines as allowing a limited release from the decrees of the stars. His perspective contrasts sharply with the utterly deterministic character of nativities, in which the native's fate is sealed by the astral configuration at the time of his birth. This is especially evident in the doctrine of elections, which, as its name implies, consists in "choosing" an auspicious astral configuration that may make it possible to circumvent or partially escape the decrees of the stars as determined in the nativity. ${ }^{27}$ Ibn Ezra also incorporates the idea that the doctrine of interrogations allows for partial deliverance from the decrees of the stars ${ }^{28}$ and shows the closeness of the doctrine of elections to the astrological theory of the critical days, while highlighting the deterministic character of the doctrine of nativities. ${ }^{29}$

## Transmission of the Texts

The repeated copying of the seven texts included in this volume was the most important factor in their wide distribution: the earliest surviving copy dates from the fourteenth century, the latest from the nineteenth century. Today we know of at least 33 copies of Mivḥarim I, 28 copies of Mivharim II, 29 copies of She'elot I, 18 copies of She'elot II, and 35 copies of Sefer ha-Me'orot. ${ }^{30}$ The exceptions to this rule are the recently

[^5]found fragments of Mivharim III and She'elot III, which survive on the verso and recto of a parchment bifolium in the Archivio di Stato, Modena, where they were reused, during the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries, to bind books. ${ }^{31}$

Mivharim I and Mivharim II and, to a lesser extent, She'elot I and She'elot II, circulated in the Middle Ages and modern era as two distinct treatises rather than as variants of a single text. Mivharim I and Mivharim II were copied, one after the other or one next to the other, in eight manuscript collections of Ibn Ezra's astrological treatises; ${ }^{32}$ She'elot I and She'elot II were copied in two manuscript collections ${ }^{33}$ as if they were discrete treatises that should be read separately.

According to the evidence of all the manuscripts of She'elot I and She'elot II employed for this edition, three passages in She'elot I are word-for-word copies of three parallel passages in She'elot II. ${ }^{34}$ This feature-which in all likelihood was the work of Ibn Ezra's students and admirers who actively modified and added to his astrological work as they copied it-must lower any expectations that an exhaustive study of the manuscripts might enable scholars to accurately restore the original Hebrew texts of Ibn Ezra's astrological works. ${ }^{35}$

Some of the treatises included in this volume were also transmitted in the Middle Ages through incorporation by scribes (named and unnamed) into manuscript anthologies of Hebrew texts on astrology and astronomy. One example is the so-called Seferha-Kolel (The Comprehensive Book), attributed to Levi ben Abraham ben Hayyim (1235-1305), which incorporates the complete texts of Mivharim II and She'elot I. ${ }^{36}$

[^6]Another example is a work entitled Sefer ha-She'elot and attributed to Abraham Ibn Ezra, which, despite its title, consists of unrelated fragments of diverse length and origin, and, at the end, the full text of She' elot. I. ${ }^{37}$ Another channel of transmission was provided by the supercommentaries on Ibn Ezra’s biblical commentaries; Ṣafenat Pa‘neah on Ibn Ezra's commentary on the Pentateuch, written by Joseph ben Eliezer Bonfils (or Tov Elem) at the end of the fourteenth century, includes three passages from Sefer ha-Me'orot. ${ }^{38}$ Similarly, Kelal Qatan by David ben Yom Tov (first half of the fourteenth century) includes lengthy passages copied word-for-word from Sefer ha-Me'orot, as will be detailed in the notes. ${ }^{39}$

For medieval Latin culture, Abraham Ibn Ezra ("Abraham Avenezra") was an important transmitter of Arabic science and astrology, mainly through the translations of his Hebrew astrological writings into Latin and the emerging European vernacular languages. ${ }^{40}$ The first translation of Ibn Ezra's astrological writings, into Old French, was by a Jewish scholar known as Hagin le Juif, during the second half of the thirteenth century, that is, a century before the earliest surviving Hebrew manuscripts of Ibn Ezra's astrological writings. ${ }^{41}$ Building on Hagin le Juif's Old French translations, ${ }^{42}$ Mivharim II, She'elot II and Sefer haMe'orot were translated into Latin in repeated waves. ${ }^{43}$ Finally, in two

[^7]manuscripts that include translations of Mivharim II and She'elot II, Renate Smithuis has recently identified two complete Latin translations (in all likelihood based on a Hebrew to Old French translation) of Mivḥarim III and She'elot III. ${ }^{44}$ It seems that Mivharim I and She'elot I remained unknown to Latin readers. However, two fragments of an Old Spanish translation of Mivharim I and She' elot I, as well as the complete text of an Old Spanish translation of Sefer ha-Me'orot, were recently identified in an unknown fifteenth-century translation from Hebrew into Old Spanish of a collection of Ibn Ezra's astrological writings. ${ }^{45}$

In the modern era, the bibliographer Moritz Steinschneider was the first to establish Ibn Ezra's practice of producing at least two versions of his astrological treatises. Steinschneider appears to have been aware of the existence of more than one version of Sefer ha-Mivharim and Sefer ha-She'elot, but, to the best of my knowledge, he does not offer a separate list of manuscripts for the versions of these works. ${ }^{46}$ A few of the works presented in this volume have already been printed in uncritical editions, on the basis of a single manuscript. J.L. Fleischer, who made an important contribution to the elucidation of Ibn Ezra's biography and literary work, edited and published the Hebrew text of Sefer ha-Me'orot in 1933 and of Mivharim I in 1969. ${ }^{47}$ In 1995, M.Y. Bakal edited and published the text of She'elot I. ${ }^{48}$ In 2009, Renate Smithuis and I published excerpts from the surviving Hebrew fragments of Mivharim III and She' elot III, which appear in their entirety in this volume. ${ }^{49}$

[^8]
## Ibn Ezra's Approach to Elections

Ibn Ezra did not entertain any serious pretension of being innovative in his astrological writings, which were designed, on the whole, as textbooks or reference works to educate readers in conventional astrological knowledge. Nonetheless, most of the introductions to Ibn Ezra's astrological works show remarkably creative and idiosyncratic ideas that not only reveal his own approach to a specific system of astrology, but are also related to central concepts of his scientific, religious, philosophical, and cultural world-view. Telling examples may be found in all the introductions to the treatises in this volume.

From the introductions to Mivharim I and Mivharim II, we learn that Ibn Ezra believed electional astrology to have two weighty philosophical consequences. First, since electional astrology is focused on choosing the best times to begin an activity, it highlights the possibility that human beings can change their own destiny and thereby calls attention to the tension between free will and astral determinism. In his biblical commentaries, Ibn Ezra frequently endorses an astrology-driven strong determinism, according to which the fate of human beings is determined by their natal horoscope. ${ }^{50}$ In other parts of his work, however, he expresses the belief that human beings can exercise their free will because their rational soul has the capacity to overcome the other two components of the tripartite human soul (the vegetative or appetitive soul; the animal or locomotive soul; and the wise or rational soul). ${ }^{51}$ In the opening section of the introduction to Mivharim II, Ibn Ezra employs passages from biblical and talmudic texts to make the case for free will (the ability to choose between good and evil). ${ }^{52}$ But in the same breath, he forcefully presents the case for strong astral determinism and maintains that "whoever is destined by the configuration of his natal horoscope to be poor and impecunious can never get rich." ${ }^{53}$

Second, as may be learned from the opening sentence of the introduction to Mivharim I , and from the entire initial section of the introduc-

[^9]tion to Mivharim II, electional astrology implies that man can evade the decrees of the stars. This is so, Ibn Ezra maintains, because man has been endowed with a "supernal soul," the highest component of the tripartite soul. ${ }^{54}$ Following Avicenna, Ibn Ezra sees reality as divided into three worlds. ${ }^{55}$ Above the sublunar and the supralunar domains is the domain of the "holy angels" or the "separate intelligences." ${ }^{56}$ Therefore, in Ibn Ezra's philosophical system, the human supernal soul comes neither from the sublunar nor the supralunar, but from the third and "uppermost" domain. This is elegantly presented in the introduction to Mivharim II, where Ibn Ezra asserts that "the soul of man has been created in a place that is higher than the stars." ${ }^{57}$ According to Ibn Ezra, man's soul derives from the light of the "holy angels," that is, from the domain of the separate intelligences, and receives a supernal power according to the configuration of the planets and the fixed stars at the time of his birth. When it grows wise, the supernal soul joins the company of the separate intelligences and enters into conjunction with the glorious God. ${ }^{58}$ Thereafter, a man can protect himself from any harm decreed by the configuration of the stars at the time of his birth. ${ }^{59}$

[^10]In the introduction to Mivharim II, however, we read that "since the soul of man has been created in a place that is higher than the stars, a man can employ his intelligence to reduce his misfortune somewhat." ${ }^{60}$ This quote leads us to realize that according to Ibn Ezra there are not one, but two ways to escape the decrees of the stars. One of them was presented above: total liberation from the decrees of the stars by communion of the supernal soul with God. The second approach, put forth in the above quote from Mivharim II, allows only partial escape from the decrees of the stars, or, as Ibn Ezra puts it in the opening sentence of Mivharim I, the "power" allotted to the supernal human soul can cancel out some details of the natal horoscope, but cannot annul its general import. ${ }^{61}$

To better appreciate the difference between these two approaches, it is useful to refer to the introduction to Sefer ha-Moladot, where Ibn Ezra presents two significantly different ways in which "the power of the soul, whose power resides in wisdom," can overcome the bodily injuries indicated by the individual horoscope. ${ }^{62}$ The first way is that of the astrologer, who employs a rational and manifestly scientific methodology, a combination of astrology and medicine, that remedies some of the physical harm inflicted by the stars. ${ }^{63}$ The second way is personified by the righteous person, who blends piety with scholarship characteristics and whom Ibn Ezra describes as completely immune to the harm that would be determined by his personal horoscope, thanks to divine intervention. ${ }^{64}$

[^11]Next, the introductions to Mivharim I and Mivharim II explain why the doctrine of elections allows for only a partial escape from the decrees of the stars. Building on Dorotheus and Ptolemy, respectively, Ibn Ezra states that the astrologer should never recommend starting some undertaking at a time when the client has been destined by his natal horoscope to suffer grievous harm. This is so because, in this case, the election will not be able to completely annul the injury determined by the natal horoscope. A "fortunate election" may slightly reduce the injury signified by the natal horoscope, although an "unfortunate election" will increase the damage. ${ }^{65}$ Thus, human beings' limited ability to evade the decrees of the stars in the framework of the doctrine of elections is due to the deterministic and pervasive nature of the natal horoscope. An electional horoscope can be "fortunate" only if it is properly coordinated with the natal horoscope, which implies again that the doctrine of nativities holds sway over the doctrine of elections.

Next, the introductions to both Mivharim I and Mivharim II introduce two methods for elections. According to the first, the electional horoscope is made dependent on the natal horoscope through the transfer of key components of the latter to the former. The most important feature is that the horoscopic place in the client's natal horoscope, whose indication conforms to the nature of the client's undertaking, should be transferred to the ascendant of the electional horoscope. For example, if the client wishes to study or to embark on long journeys, the ninth place of his natal horoscope should be put as the ascendant of the electional horoscope; if he wishes to engage in commerce, in the eleventh place; and so on. ${ }^{66}$ The second method, employed when the client's time of birth is unknown, consists in choosing a certain planet and determining its position, so that this planet's significations correspond to the client's

[^12]request. ${ }^{67}$ As expected, Ibn Ezra considers the first method to be more precise and correct than the second method. ${ }^{68}$ However, he neither mentions nor applies the first method outside the introduction of Mivharim I and Mivharim II, which probably reflects the fact that few people remember their precise time of birth.

## Ibn Ezra's Approach to Interrogations

As is his wont, Ibn Ezra tends to transform the presentation of specific subjects into an arena where scientists and schools of different periods, nations, and religions clash on some scientific issue. A telling example may be found in the very first lines of the introductions to She'elot I and She'elot II, which chronicle a dispute among astrologers about the validity of the doctrine of interrogations. Although they convey the same message, the two accounts are dissimilar in the details: whereas She' elot II reduces the extent of the clash to an argument between two leading astrologers (who are also kings), Ptolemy and Dorotheus, ${ }^{69}$ She'elot I speaks of "two great schools of thought," namely, the school of Enoch, Ptolemy, and many of the Ancients, on one side, and that of Dorotheus, the scientists of India, the scientists of Persia, the scientists of Egypt, and his own contemporary astrologers contemporaneous with Ibn Ezra's times, on the other. ${ }^{70}$ Whereas She'elot II summarizes the lines of dispute, ${ }^{71}$ She' elot I offers a full account of the rationale behind the positions of both parties. ${ }^{72}$

What is the gist of the debate? Both parties concur that change in the sublunary domain is caused by the motions of the bodies of the supralunar domain, to such an extent that scrutinizing them gives an indication about mundane and individual affairs, as may be learnt by means of the doctrines of historical astrology and nativities. ${ }^{73}$ The bone

[^13]of contention between them is whether the human soul is also susceptible to this influence. But why should such a question be relevant for the validity of the doctrine of interrogations? The answer is that this doctrine presupposes, as stated by Dorotheus, that astral configurations produce a question in human minds that is analogous to the celestial configuration, to such an extent that the astrologer may discover the querent's thoughts and interrogations by studying the celestial configuration. ${ }^{74}$

The school of Dorotheus, which approves of the doctrine of interrogations, maintains that because the stars cause the natural make-up of the body and because thoughts change in accordance with the changes in the physical nature of the body, the astrologer can determine thoughts and interrogations by knowing the motions of the stars. This makes the doctrine of interrogations reliable and accurate. ${ }^{75}$ On the other hand, Ibn Ezra states that Ptolemy, who does not agree that interrogations are accurate, maintains that the supernal nature of man's soul affords him a measure of protection against the influence of the stars; hence the celestial bodies give no indication about the human thoughts or interrogations. ${ }^{76}$ Ptolemy's line of reasoning echoes one of the aforementioned characteristics of Ibn Ezra's thought: that the supernal soul is also the most significant way for human beings to be delivered from the decrees of the stars.

Ptolemy, however, was hardly concerned with the doctrine of interrogations in the Tetrabiblos; nor can the rejection of this doctrine be found in Pseudo-Ptolemy's Centiloquium. ${ }^{77}$ Moreover, the defense of the doctrine of interrogations, which Ibn Ezra ascribes to Dorotheus and his school in the introduction to She' elot I, cannot be found in the fifth book, which deals with interrogations, of Dorotheus of Sidon's Pentateuch. Was the account of the controversy about the doctrine of interrogations a figment of Ibn Ezra's imagination? Probably not. Firstly, Ibn Ezra most likely drew on 'Alī ibn abī-l-Rijāl (eleventh century), who offered a similar,

[^14]although not identical, account of a dispute about the validity of the doctrine of interrogations in his Kitāb al-bāri' fi akhām an-nujūm. ${ }^{78}$ Second, Ibn Ezra used this account to expound his own middle-ground solution to the debate and maintained that "in most cases, interrogations are reliable, but they are not as powerful as nativities." ${ }^{79}$

After the parallel accounts of the dispute about the validity of the doctrine of interrogations, the introductions to She'elot I and She'elot II diverge. Seriously considering Māshā'allāh's warning to the astrologer not to pronounce judgment on any interrogation if the querent is cheating or scoffing, and guided by Dorotheus' deterministic statement that the configuration of the planets produces a question in the querent's mind that corresponds to the celestial configuration, ${ }^{80}$ Ibn Ezra devotes the remainder of the introduction to She'elot I ( $\$ \$ 4-11$ ) to expounding a series of techniques that would enable the astrologer to know what the querent is thinking. The assumption is that even when the querent is cheating, an appropriate study of the celestial configuration will allow the astrologer to read the querent's mind. ${ }^{81}$ By contrast, the balance of the introduction to She'elot II is a brief overview of astrology that defines fundamental tenets and highlights their relevance and application to the doctrine of interrogations. ${ }^{82}$ Not until the end of the introduction to She'elot II does Ibn Ezra put forward Māshāallāh's two procedures for reading the querent's mind, which is the main focus of interest of the introduction to She' elot I. ${ }^{83}$

[^15]
## Ibn Ezra's Approach to the Astrological Theory of the Critical Days

The titles of Ibn Ezra's astrological treatises usually evoke the astrological doctrines with which they are concerned; Sefer ha-Me'orot (Book of the Luminaries) is an exception to this rule. If the luminaries supply its title, this is because of the role that the Moon and the Sun play in determining astrological significations for the prognosis of acute and chronic diseases, and particularly because of the central role that the Moon plays in determining the periodicities and the astrological significations of the critical days. Consequently, Sefer ha-Me'orot starts with a cosmological preface on the source of the light of the Sun and Moon within a cosmology that divides reality into the aforementioned "three worlds": the supernal domain, the domain of the stars and orbs, and the sublunar domain. ${ }^{84}$

The main section of the introduction to Sefer ha-Me'orot is devoted to a defense of the astrological theory behind the critical days, conveyed as a debate between a proponent and an opponent, who exposes some of the weaknesses of this theory. First, Ibn Ezra deals with the problem of why crises do not always occur on the same days, since this theory predicts that they should take place on the days when the Moon reaches quadrature, opposition, and quadrature again, or when it returns to its position at the time of the onset of the illness. Ibn Ezra's answer is that this may be due to irregularities in the Moon's motion; the Moon's movement may be slower or faster, as a function of its eccentric cycle and epicycle. ${ }^{85}$

The opponent raises another question: since crises depend on the Moon's motion and its aspects with the planets and fixed stars, which ostensibly exert the same astrological influence at any given time, why do two patients who become ill at the same time not experience the same crisis? The proponent answers that astrological influence is only one side of the coin; the other side is the natural makeup of its recipients. Thus,

[^16]in the particular case of a disease, the patient's natural makeup depends on his age and on the natural qualities of his specific illness. Two patients who fall ill at the same time and place will not necessarily experience the same crisis, because they will react differently to the same astrological influence as a function of their natural makeup and bodily complexion. ${ }^{86}$

The critic persists: What if two patients have the same bodily complexion? The upholder of the theory replies that this is utterly impossible, because even if both patients have a predominantly hot or cold bodily complexion, they will nevertheless differ by an increase or decrease of heat or cold. To buttress the latter point, Ibn Ezra invokes the Galenic "nine complexions" ${ }^{87}$ (a further indication that he is following some Galenic source) and emphasizes that it is impossible for two persons to have the same bodily complexion due to their different "nature, nutrition, behavior, and thoughts." Moreover, even in the unthinkable case that two patients do have the same bodily complexion, they will not have the same crises because their illnesses have different causes. ${ }^{88}$

So far, Ibn Ezra has been answering the critic by means of arguments based on the natural qualities of bodily complexions, illnesses, and other conditions (hot/cold, moist/dry). From this point on, however, he focuses on the influence of the patient's natal horoscope on the development of the disease. ${ }^{89}$ In the final analysis, the inference is that even in the improbable case that two patients have similar bodily complexions, they will not experience the same crisis, because they have different nativities. To this, the critic replies: "If what you have said is true, then you cannot truly know the crises unless you know the time of birth." ${ }^{90}$ Here, the opponent implies that the astrological theory of the critical days is not autonomous and ultimately depends on the rules of the doctrine of nativities. ${ }^{91}$

Ibn Ezra resolves this objection by asserting that there are "two methods for judgments in astrology" and that "the method that applies to the

[^17]individual does not cancel out the general method." ${ }^{92}$ In other words, the astrological judgments that apply to human beings in larger social and geographical units take precedence over the astrological judgments pertinent to individuals and their own personal destiny, as dictated by their nativities. ${ }^{93}$ Finally, Ibn Ezra shows how the planets exert their astrological influence in each of the two cases. In the first case, when the astrological significations bear on collectives, the planets exert their influence according to the typical characteristics assigned to them in introductions to astrology; for example, Venus and Mercury, which signify women and wisdom, respectively. ${ }^{94}$ In the second case, when the astrological significations bear on individuals, the planets conserve their astrological influence as in the first case, but it is implemented according to the specific roles of the planets in these individuals' natal charts. ${ }^{95}$ Sefer ha-Me'orot also explains how this approach affects medical praxis: although it is preferable that the physician base his prognosis on the data he inferred from the patient's natal horoscope, in the final analysis he heals using the general method, meaning that "a physician really ought to know the patient's pulse, urine, and general behavior when he was healthy."96

[^18]The Sources of Sefer ha-Mivḥarim and Sefer ha-She'elot
The various versions of Sefer ha-Mivharim and Sefer ha-She'elot, like other medieval treatises on elections and interrogations, are an agglomeration of doctrines formulated from Antiquity to Ibn Ezra's time, as found in Greek, Hindu, Persian, Egyptian, and Arabic sources. In contrast to other medieval treatises on elections and interrogations, which conspicuously lack references to authorities, ${ }^{97}$ Ibn Ezra provides fairly extensive information about earlier sources and doctrines.

For Antiquity, Ibn Ezra refers collectively and frequently to "the Ancients," to the "scientists of Egypt," who are considered to be connected to the Hermetic writings, ${ }^{98}$ and particularly to Enoch, the legendary figure derived from the god incarnate Hermes Trismegistus, to whom the socalled Hermetic writings, which include significant astrological material, are ascribed. In 'Olam I, following Abū Ma'shar closely, Ibn Ezra refers to the triple Enoch: the "Ancient Enoch," "Enoch the First," and "Enoch the Egyptian."99 In the various versions of Sefer ha-Mivharim and Sefer haShe'elot, however, Ibn Ezra invokes Enoch with no accompanying epithet, generally in a neutral or approving tone, although on one occasion he accompanies a quotation from Enoch's Book of Secrets with a very critical remark. ${ }^{100}$

As for the Greeks, besides one curious reference to Plato, ${ }^{101}$ Ibn Ezra draws heavily on the work of two leading astrologers. One of them is Claudius Ptolemy, Ibn Ezra's most important astrological and scientific source, who is referred to in Ibn Ezra's oeuvre as Batalmiyūs (Ptolemy with an Arabic accent), Talmai (the post-biblical Hebrew equivalent of Ptolemy), or King Talmai. ${ }^{102}$ But the historical Ptolemy had little to say about the doctrines of elections and interrogations in his magnum opus, the Tetrabiblos. Scrutiny of Ibn Ezra's references to Ptolemy in the various versions of Sefer ha-Mivḥarim and Sefer ha-She'elot reveals that Ibn Ezra drew on the Centiloquium, which he called Sefer ha-Peri (Book of the

[^19]Fruit), ${ }^{103}$ a short work organized in 100 aphorisms, which during the Middle Ages was considered to be an authentic work by Ptolemy. ${ }^{104}$ The second leading astrologer is "Doronius," a misnomer for Dorotheus of Sidon, ${ }^{105}$ who dealt exclusively with interrogations and elections in the fifth part of his didactic poem on horoscopic astrology, known in Greek as the Pentateuch and in Latin as the Carmen astrologicum. Ibn Ezra drew on this work, although in some cases his references to Doronius cannot be identified in the Arabic translation of Dorotheus' work as it has come down to us. ${ }^{106}$

The work of Arabophone astrologers is by far the most important component of Ibn Ezra's sources. He refers to them collectively by means of designations such as "astrologers who are close to us," "all the astrologers who came after Ptolemy," "experts in interrogations," "astrologers," or "scholars who rely on experience." ${ }^{107} \mathrm{Ibn}$ Ezra is also in the habit of referring to these Arabophone astrologers by means of collective labels such as the "scientists of Persia" and "Indian scientists," ${ }^{108}$ reflecting the fact that these nations had exerted a considerable influence on the early stages of the cultural development of the Arabic world. As often as not, Ibn Ezra refers to these astrologers individually and cites them by name, as in the case of Andarzagar ibn Sādān Farruh, whom the Arabs associated with Persian astrology. ${ }^{109}$ The same applies to Māshāallāh and Ya'qub Al-Kindī, whom Ibn Ezra states explicitly were "from India," probably because they were well acquainted with the work of Indian scientists. ${ }^{110}$

[^20]Regarding Māshā’allāh, one of the early Abbasid astrologers, Ibn Ezra states in She' elot II that he was a "great scholar of interrogations" who "wrote many books on this topic." He expresses admiration for Māshā'allāh and writes, "I too have pursued him and followed in his footsteps." ${ }^{111}$ In Mivḥarim I, he refers explicitly to Māshāallāh's Book of Experience and Book of Interrogations. ${ }^{112}$ From a passage in She' elot I, we know that Ibn Ezra was acquainted with at least two of Māshā’allāh's works on interrogations; fragments of them survive in a Hebrew text entitled the Book of Interrogations by Māshā allāh (ספר השאלות למאשא אללה), traditionally ascribed to Ibn Ezra, though with no substantial basis. ${ }^{113} \mathrm{Ibn}$ Ezra is also indebted to Ya'qub Al-Kindī, who is mentioned in all versions of Sefer ha-Mivharim and Sefer ha-She'elot, ${ }^{114}$ regarding the use of bloodletting to reduce the humors, ${ }^{115}$ deciding the gender of the offspring before sexual intercourse, ${ }^{116}$ and, notably, finding buried treasure, ${ }^{117}$ a prominent topic in Ibn Ezra's works on interrogations. ${ }^{118}$

Abū Ma'shar, the most influential astrologer of the Middle Ages and Ibn Ezra's most important Arabic source, is mentioned frequently in all versions of Sefer ha-Mivharim and Sefer ha-She'elot. ${ }^{119}$ Ibn Ezra's attitude towards Abū Ma'shar is uneven: he takes an approving attitude towards Abū Ma'shar's work on interrogations and a neutral attitude towards his work on elections, but refers disapprovingly to Abū Ma'shar on historical astrology. ${ }^{120}$ Another Arabic source is Sahl Ibn Bishr alYahūdī (d. 822 or 850 ), an influential authority (of Jewish origin) on elections and interrogations. Sahl is not explicitly mentioned in Mivḥarim I

[^21]and Mivharim II or in She'elot I and She'elot II, but he is referred to in other parts of Ibn Ezra's astrological oeuvre as well as in the Latin translations of Mivharim III and She' elot III. ${ }^{121}$ In all likelihood, Ibn Ezra depended on Sahl Ibn Bishr al-Yahūdī, among others, for the aforementioned methods of elections expounded in the introductions to Mivharim I and Mivḥarim II. ${ }^{122}$ However, 'Alī ibn abī-l-Rijāl (lived until at least the late 1040s) incorporated excerpts from Sahl's work into his famous Kitāb al-Bāri, so Ibn Ezra could have made use of the latter treatise as well. Ibn Ezra, in his work on interrogations, refers also to Abū 'Alī al-Khayyāt, an Arabophone astrologer who flourished in the first half of the ninth century; ${ }^{123}$ to Razeq, probably Abū Bakr Muhammad ibn Zakariyā Rāzī (865-925); ${ }^{124}$ and to an unidentified astrologer named $\mathrm{Sa}^{\text {cid }}$. ${ }^{125}$

## The Sources of Sefer ha-Me'orot

In Sefer ha-Me'orot, Ibn Ezra was more reticent about his sources than in any other part of his astrological work. ${ }^{126}$ Clearly, though, he was aware of two distinct traditions about the link between the periodicities of the critical days and the Moon's motion: one of them predominantly astrological, the other predominantly medical, which emerged separately and then came together in the work of Galen and his followers. The astrological tradition is introduced in She'elot I, where we read that "Enoch and Ptolemy ... both say, and the astrologers concur, that from the position of the Moon at the moment of the onset of the illness one may know whether he will survive or die and which is his day of crisis." ${ }^{127}$ In this quote, the reference to Enoch probably points to some part of the so-called Hermetic writings. ${ }^{128}$ As for Ptolemy, Ibn Ezra's reference

[^22]targets the sixtieth aphorism of Sefer ha-Peri. ${ }^{129}$ As for the astrologers who agree with Enoch and Ptolemy, this probably means Dorotheus of Sidon, who is mentioned in She' elot I, just before the reference to Enoch and Ptolemy on the critical days, in connection with an astrological doctrine studied in Sefer ha-Me'orot. ${ }^{130}$ In fact, a passage from the fifth section of Dorotheus' Pentateuch, which has gone almost unnoticed by historians of the critical day doctrine, is the earliest extant astrological source that explicitly mentions the astrological link between the critical days and the motion of the Moon. ${ }^{131}$

The parallel tradition about the connection between the critical days and the Moon, according to Sefer ha-Me'orot, is that of "the great physicians" who "investigated why the crises of diseases take place on the seventh, fourteenth, twentieth or twenty-first, and twenty-seventh or twenty-eighth day $\langle$ after the onset of the disease $\rangle$. The only explanation they could find involved the Moon, as long as the disease lasts for up to one month and passes; but if it does not pass they look at the Sun." ${ }^{132}$ The "great physicians" are those who worked in the Arabic cultural world, transmitting and developing the Galenic notions of crises and critical days. The critical days in their Arabic garb had a long life: the doctrine first appears in the Kitāb'ayyām al-buḥrān (On the Critical Days), which is an Arabic translation of Galen's De diebus decretoriis by Hunayn Ibn Ishaqu al-'Ibādī (809-873), and continues in the medical works of alRāzī (864-930), Haly Abbas (d. 982-994), Avicenna (980-1037), and

[^23]others. ${ }^{133}$ Even though Galen ridicules astrology in some parts of his work, ${ }^{134}$ in De diebus decretoriis he advises taking account of the Moon's positions relative to the zodiac in order to determine the time and character of the critical days. Actually, it is reasonable to assume that Ibn Ezra had direct access to Galen, inasmuch as the two main ideas espoused by the "great physicians," according to Sefer ha-Me' orot, may be found in the third book of the Kitäb 'ayyām al-buḥrān: (a) that the Moon is responsible for the occurrence of crises on the seventh, fourteenth, twentieth or twenty-first, and twenty-seventh or twenty-eighth day after the onset of the disease; (b) that the Moon is implicated in acute diseases that last for up to one month, whereas the Sun is involved in chronic diseases. ${ }^{135}$

Sefer ha-Me'orot also provides information about another non-astrological tradition, one that interpreted the critical days on the basis of number-symbolism. Ibn Ezra mentions it right after his reference to the "great physicians": "Pay no attention to the statements of the praters who say that it is a matter of even numbers." This could refer to methods found in some of the Hippocratic treatises, ${ }^{136}$ which must be interpreted against a background of Pythagorean beliefs. As in his reference to the "great physicians," here too Ibn Ezra is drawing on Galen's Kitāb 'ayyām albuḥrān, which includes a sharp criticism of the numerological approach to the critical days. ${ }^{137}$ But Ibn Ezra could have found the idea that the disease is alleviated if the crisis occurs on an uneven day, and aggravated if it occurs on an even day, from Al-Kindī's On the Reasons of the Crises of Acute Diseases, where Hippocrates is explicitly cited as the source. ${ }^{138}$

## Links between the Epitome totius astrologiae and Ibn Ezra's Work on Elections and Interrogations

It was Charles Burnett who first advanced the thesis that Ibn Ezra's astrological works display close links to the Epitome totius astrologiae, a popular Latin astrological work, dated at least in part to 1142, and attributed

[^24]to John of Seville. ${ }^{139}$ It consists of an introductory book, the Ysagoge, and the Liber quadripartitus, which addresses the four main subdivisions of Arabic astrology: world astrology, nativities, interrogations, and elections. ${ }^{140}$ His thesis was fleshed out by Renate Smithuis, who found striking parallels between various parts of Ibn Ezra's astrological oeuvre and the Epitome, such as the use in the latter of Hebraisms that render Ibn Ezra's neologisms, the formulation of the doctrines, and the organization of the material. ${ }^{141}$ I continued this research in the previous volume of this series, where I found close links between 'Olam I and especially 'Olam II and the Liber primus de gentibus, regibus, civitatibus, aeris mutatione, fame et mortalitate (the first component of the Liber quadriparti$t u s)$, which is devoted to world astrology. The present volume, though focusing exclusively on the links between Mivharim I and Mivharim II, on the one hand, and the Liber Quartus de Electionibus, the fourth component of the Liber quadripartitus, on the other, and on the links between She'elot I and She'elot II, on the one hand, and the Liber Tertius de Interrogationibus, the third component of the Liber quadripartitus, on the other, fully corroborates these findings. These connections will be treated separately and in detail in the notes to the English translation of the various versions of Sefer ha-Mivḥarim and Sefer ha-She'elot. Here are three examples-the first related to elections, the second to interrogations, and the third to both-to illustrate this.

As we have seen, in the introduction to Mivharim I and Mivharim II Ibn Ezra presents two methods for the doctrine of elections. ${ }^{142}$ I have

[^25]shown that here he probably drew on Sahl Ibn Bishr al-Yahūdī or on 'Alī ibn abī-l-Rijāl. ${ }^{143}$ But these two sources present the two methods separately, in two different loci, whereas Ibn Ezra juxtaposes them as if they were contrasting or complementary methods. ${ }^{144}$ In contrast to the approach by Sahl and 'Alī, the opening sentence of the fourth part of the Epitome totius astrologiae, on the doctrine of elections, presents this dual methodology just as Ibn Ezra does: "Incipit liber quartus de electionibus. Electio duobus modis fit, uno cum scitur nativitas, alio cum nescitur." ${ }^{145}$ Moreover, in both Mivḥarim I and Mivharim II, after presenting the first method, Ibn Ezra offers the same illustration of how to avoid placing the ascendant of the electional horoscope in the position of a malefic planet, by taking into account this planet's "ray" (that is, an interval ahead or behind the planet where its influence is still felt). The Epitome offers the same illustration as Ibn Ezra does. ${ }^{146}$

The second example relates to buried treasure, the most prominent topic treated in Ibn Ezra's works on interrogations. The entire eighth chapter of the Liber Tertius de Interrogationibus ("de thesauro abscondito") corresponds to various sections of She'elot I and She'elot II that address this topic. ${ }^{147}$

The third example is the debate between astrologers regarding a problem in military astrology. Ibn Ezra refers to it in similar terms in Mivharim I, Mivḥarim II, Mivḥarim III, and She'elot II; there is an account of the same debate in the Liber Tertius de Interrogationibus, in the chapter on waging war ("de bello"). The author of the Epitome endorses the same solution proposed by Ibn Ezra in Mivḥarim II and She' elot II. ${ }^{148}$

[^26]
## Content and Organization

All the versions of Sefer ha-Mivharim and Sefer ha-She'elot, after their introductions, are organized in twelve chapters, designed by Ibn Ezra to address elections and interrogations whose subjects correspond to the indications of the corresponding horoscopic places. Thus, in the last sentence of the introduction to She'elot I, Ibn Ezra writes: "to spare the student from confusion, I have had to write this book using the method of the twelve places." ${ }^{149}$ Here Ibn Ezra emulates the organization of earlier medieval Arabic treatises on elections and interrogations, such as those by Sahl Ibn Bishr al-Yahūdī and 'Alī ibn abī-l-Rijāl on interrogations and elections, which are also divided in twelve chapters corresponding to the twelve places. ${ }^{150}$

Given this organization, it comes as no surprise that the contents of the various versions of Sefer ha-Mivharim and Sefer ha-She'elot frequently overlap. Under the second place (i.e., the second chapter, which corresponds to the second horoscopic place), Mivharim I and Mivharim II, on the one hand, and She'elot I and She'elot II, on the other, deal with loans, money, and making a profit; under the third place, with short journeys; under the fifth place, with determining the baby's gender; under the sixth place, with buying slaves; under the seventh place, with partnership, getting married, and making war; under the ninth place, with long journeys; under the tenth place, with petitions to a king, ruler, or an important person; under the eleventh place, with seeking love; and under the twelfth place, with buying an animal. ${ }^{151}$

But when it comes to topics that are relevant to elections but not to interrogations, notably the time for beginning some undertaking (and

[^27]vice versa), Mivharim and She'elot consistently part company. Thus, for example, under the first place (i.e., the first chapter, which corresponds to the first horoscopic place), both versions of Mivharim (but not of She' elot) are concerned with the time for bloodletting and for taking medicine; under the fourth place, with the time for beginning construction of a building and buying land; under the fifth place, with the time for preparing a feast; and under the tenth place, with the time for crowning a king and take up a craft. On the other hand, under the first place She'elot (but not Mivharim) deals with ascertaining how many years the querent still has to live and whether someone else is alive or dead; under the second place, with stolen money or goods; under the third place, with brothers or kin; under the sixth place, with ascertaining whether an ailing person will die from his disease or recover; under the eighth place, with something the querent is afraid of; under the ninth place, with rumors, messengers, and letters; and under the twelfth place, with ascertaining whether a prisoner will be released from jail. ${ }^{152}$

The internal organization of Sefer ha-Me'orot, after the introduction, may be divided into four parts:
(I) The first part ( $\$ \$ 10-19$ ), subdivided into ten "chapters," addresses the prognoses that may be indicated by various astrological and astronomical configurations at the onset of the disease, or by the Moon's being in quadrature or opposition with respect to its position at the onset of the disease. These configurations may be divided in two main categories: (1) whether or not the Moon is aspected by a planet at the onset of the disease and on the day of the crisis. Of the four possible cases, the most significant is when the Moon is aspected by a planet neither at the onset of the disease nor on the day of crisis, in which case the prognosis should be determined on the basis of an ad hoc horoscope cast for the time of the onset of the disease ( $\$ 11: 1$ ). This case is important not only because it reflects the most common situation (i.e., the patient's precise time of birth is not known), but also because it converts the astrological prognosis of disease into a procedure that is virtually identical to the ad hoc horoscope cast when a client queries an astrologer in the framework of the doctrine of interrogations. ${ }^{153}$ (2) A series of conditions and positions

[^28]of the Moon along its path: (a) whether the Moon or the Sun is in its house or in its house of exaltation, or in its house dejection or detriment (\$10:12); (b) whether the Moon or the Sun is eclipsed (\$13:2); (c) whether the Moon reaches a degree whose distance from one of the equinoxes or the solstices is the same as the distance between the latter position and the position of the Moon at the onset of the disease ( $\$ 15: 1-3$ ); (d) whether the Moon's light is waxing or waning and whether the disease is caused by an excess or a deficit of a humor (\$18:1-2).
(II) The second part ( $\$ \$ 20-22$ ) is concerned with three technical definitions: conjunction, opposition, and quadrature. They are relevant to the main subject of Sefer ha-Me' orot because they refer to the positions of the Moon and of any planet aspecting it on the critical days. Conjunction and opposition are not defined in the traditional manner (i.e., as angular relationships between planets, $0^{\circ}$ for conjunction and $180^{\circ}$ for opposition), but according to the extent to which the Moon's testimony is valid, as a function of the ecliptic latitude of the Moon and of the conjoining or aspecting planet, and which side of the ecliptic they are on ( $\$ 20: 1-3$, $\$ 21: 1-2)$. Quadrature and opposition are defined using what Ibn Ezra designates the "astrologers' system," that is, by placing the Moon and the conjoining or aspecting planet in the framework of the cardines of the horoscope. ${ }^{154}$ At the end, Ibn Ezra remarks that what he has in mind is not a mere horoscope but one whose ascendant was taken at the time of the onset of the disease, and this is so because such an horoscope "will give a true indication, along with the Moon's indication" (\$22:4). That Ibn Ezra gives special attention to this point is of great significance: it highlights that regularly prognoses were supposed to be made, as already mentioned, on the basis of a horoscope cast at the time of the onset of the disease.
(III) The third part ( $\$ \$ 23-33$ ), a single long "chapter of the conjunctions," consists of eleven sections that describe the prognosis of a disease, based on the conjunctions of the Moon with a planet, set of planets, or a fixed star, at its onset. ${ }^{155}$ As a rule, the prognosis depends on the nature of the star that conjoins the Moon. A disease is cured or alleviated by an astrological effect whose nature is the opposite of the disease's cause,

[^29]and vice versa ( $\$ 28: 3-5$ ). For example, a disease caused by cold is cured by Jupiter, which is a "hot" planet ( $\$ 28: 3$ ); a disease caused by divine worship and reflections about the afterlife is cured by Venus, which signifies "love and promiscuity," but a venereal disease is cured by Jupiter, which signifies "worshipers of God, houses of prayer, and places of God's worship" (\$28:4). In addition, if the conjunction is with Saturn or Mars, the malefic planets, it forebodes misfortune ( $\$ 24: 1, \$ 27: 1$ ); if with Jupiter and Venus, the benefics, it is an auspicious sign ( $\$ 26: 1$, $\$ 28: 1$ ). These indications are modified by astronomical and astrological considerations. ${ }^{156}$ The indications get more complex when the Moon conjoins more than one planet. If the planets conjoining the Moon are Saturn and Mars, the two malefics, one cancels out the other's effect ( $\$ 32: 1$ ); but if they are Saturn and Jupiter, a malefic and a benefic, the astrologer must find out which of them "is victorious" over the other, which is done on the basis of purely astronomical considerations (\$30:12).
(IV) The fourth and last part ( $\$ \$ 34-35$ ) consists of two brief "chapters." The first deals with the conditions that must be satisfied for the astrological indications of the critical days to be valid-namely, that the Moon be aspected by the same planet at the onset of the disease and on the critical day. ${ }^{157}$ The second "chapter" is the only substantial section in Sefer ha-Me'orot that deals exclusively with prognoses of chronic diseases, which are related to the Sun's annual path. In fact, there is a full analogy between chronic and acute diseases: as for the Moon and acute diseases, the critical days of chronic diseases are those when the Sun reaches quadrature and opposition with respect to its position at the onset of the disease. Instead of the Moon's monthly path, however, the Sun's annual path is taken into consideration; hence the cycle of critical days takes a full year to be completed, as against one month for acute diseases (\$35:1-6).

[^30]
## Place and Date of Composition

None of the seven treatises in this volume includes explicit information about its place and date of composition. However, since Ibn Ezra composed his individual astrological treatises as elements of larger ensembles or encyclopedias, these works are linked by cross-references from which useful data may be gleaned about the order, place, and date of their composition. Valuable information may be also extracted from terminological and bibliographical clues. On the whole, this information is prime evidence of Ibn Ezra's authorship of these works.

## Sefer ha-She'elot $I$

Although this work does not explicitly state its date of composition, in one illustration it uses latitude $42^{\circ} 30^{\prime}$, which corresponds to the neighborhood of Béziers, ${ }^{158}$ where Ibn Ezra wrote an astrological encyclopedia in 1148. She'elot I is full of cross-references in the past tense to Reshit Hokhmah, ${ }^{159}$ Sefer ha-Teeamim, ${ }^{160}$ Sefer ha-Moladot ${ }^{161}$ and Sefer ha-Me'orot. ${ }^{162}$ Study of these reveals that all of them target sections of that encyclopedia. On the other hand, the extant Hebrew version of Sefer haMoladot, which is part of the same encyclopedia, refers in the future tense to She'elot I and calculation of "types of victory." ${ }^{163}$ In addition, She'elot I uses Batalmiy $\bar{u} s$, which is the name by which Claudius Ptolemy is designated in all sections of the same astrological encyclopedia. ${ }^{164}$ All this evidence demonstrates that She'elot I was composed in Béziers in 1148, after Reshit Hokhmah I, Sefer ha-Țe‘amim I, Sefer ha-Moladot I, and Sefer ha-Me'orot. ${ }^{165}$

[^31]
## Sefer ha-She'elot II

She'elot II contains a past-tense reference to 'Olam II, ${ }^{166}$ and three references to Sefer ha-Moladot regarding topics that may be found in the extant Hebrew version of the latter, ${ }^{167}$ although the possibility that similar discussions of the same topics were found in the second version of this work cannot be ruled out. The same holds for a single reference to a Book on the Use of the Tables, of which Ibn Ezra composed several versions. ${ }^{168}$ She'elot II also contains four explicit past-tense references to Sefer Reshit Hokhmah. Three of them relate to general topics that are discussed in Reshit Hokhmah I, ${ }^{169}$ but the fourth deals with a topic that cannot be found there: determining which planet is "victorious" over another. This leads to the conclusion that the reference is to the recently discovered Reshit Ḥokhmah $\mathrm{II},{ }^{170}$ an idea strengthened by a reference in She'elot II that includes the topic but not the name of the book where this topic was treated. This reference probably is to Reshit Hokhmah II. ${ }^{171}$ In contrast to She'elot I , which uses the form Batalmiyūs, She'elot II uses Talmai to designate Claudius Ptolemy; ${ }^{172}$ from this we may deduce that She'elot II was composed either before or after 1148, but not in Béziers in $1148 .{ }^{173}$ In addition, She'elot II employs בית רעה for "house of detriment," a term found elsewhere only in Te'amim II. ${ }^{174}$ In summary, the combination of the evidence that She'elot II was not part of the astrological encyclopedia composed in 1148 in Béziers with the aforementioned links to Reshit Ḥokhmah II, ‘Olam II, and Teéamim II, suggests that She'elot II was written in northern France after 1148 or in England after $1157 .{ }^{175}$

[^32]Sefer ha-She'elot III
This work refers in the past tense to Sefer Reshit Hokhmah (regarding a planet that is burnt or under the ray of the Sun, ${ }^{176}$ a common topic in introductions to astrology) and to Sefer ha-Me'orot (regarding the critical days, the main topic of that work). ${ }^{177}$ Given their very general character, however, these two references are not indisputably to the extant versions of Reshit Hokhmah and Sefer ha-Me'orot. A valuable clue is furnished by the fact that She'elot III uses מזל נאמן, literally "enduring," to designate the fixed signs, instead of מזל עומד, "standing sign," which is the common term throughout Ibn Ezra’s work. ${ }^{178}$ The same use of מזל נאמן is found in Sefer ha-Me'orot ${ }^{179}$ and in the recently discovered Sefer ha-Tequfah ${ }^{180}$ creates a terminological link among these three works and suggests that She'elot III was composed after 1148, either in northern France or in England. ${ }^{181}$

Sefer ha-Mivḥarim I
Cross-references indicate that this work was composed after Reshit Hokhmah I and the extant version of Sefer ha-Moladot I, but before 'Olam I; and thus in Béziers in 1148: (a) Sefer ha-Moladot refers to Mivharim I in the future tense; ${ }^{182}$ (b) 'Olam I refers to Mivharim I in the past tense; ${ }^{183}$ (c) Mivharim I refers to both the extant version of Sefer ha-Moladot ${ }^{184}$ and to Reshit Hokhmah I in the past tense. ${ }^{185}$ Note also that Mivharim I, unlike Mivharim II, uses Batalmiyūs to designate Claudius Ptolemy, ${ }^{186}$ a common characteristic of all the sections of the 1148 astrological encyclopedia. ${ }^{187}$

[^33]
## Sefer ha-Mivḥarim II

It is difficult to date Mivharim II, because it contains no cross-references to other works by Ibn Ezra. However, the fact that it consistently and frequently uses the Hebrew Talmai rather than the Arabic Batalmiyūs for Ptolemy suggests that it was not part of the 1148 astrological encyclopedia. ${ }^{188}$

Sefer ha-Mivḥarim III
This short Hebrew fragment includes two references in the past tense. (a) The first is to Sefer Reshit Hokhmah, on determining whether a planet is "victorious" over another. Because there is no explicit discussion of this topic in Reshit Hokhmah I, the reference is probably to Reshit Hokhmah II. ${ }^{189}$ (b) The second is to 'Olam I. ${ }^{190}$ In addition, Mivharim III uses מזל נאמן, lit. enduring sign, to designate the fixed signs, just like She'elot III, Sefer ha-Tequfah, and Sefer ha-Me'orot. ${ }^{191}$ This suggests that Mivharim III was composed after 1148, in northern France or in England.

## Sefer ha-Me'orot

With regard to the definition of the critical days, the main topic of Sefer ha-Me'orot, She'elot $\mathrm{I}^{192}$ refers to it in the past tense, indicating that Me'orot was composed in Béziers in 1148. She'elot III, too, refers in the past tense to Sefer ha-Me'orot on the same topic. ${ }^{193}$ On the other hand, Sefer ha-Me'orot, as we know it, refers to Sefer Reshit Hokhmah in the past tense. ${ }^{194}$ Cogent reasons, however, suggest that the cross-reference from She'elot I is related to a text that is not the same as the Sefer ha-Me'orot presented in this volume.

For one thing, of the three quotations (or paraphrases) from Sefer ha-Me'orot that Joseph ben Eliezer Bonfils included in Șafenat Pa'neah,

[^34]his supercommentary on Ibn Ezra's commentary on the Pentateuch, two cannot be found in the extant text of Sefer ha-Me'orot, although the third quotes it word for word. ${ }^{195}$ In addition, the text of Sefer haMe'orot presented here uses Talmai for Claudius Ptolemy, although all the Béziers 1148 works use Batalmiyūs. ${ }^{196}$ This evidence suggests that Sefer ha-Me'orot, like most of Ibn Ezra' astrological treatises, was composed in at least two versions. One of them, now lost, was part of the 1148 encyclopedia; this must be the text to which She'elot I refers. The second version, which is that presented in this volume and which is found in all the available manuscripts, was composed at a different date and place. A useful clue is furnished by the fact that Sefer ha-Me'orot as we know it, like She'elot III, Mivharim III, and Sefer ha-Tequfah, uses מזל נאמן, suggesting that the second version of Sefer ha-Me'orot was composed after 1148, in northern France or in England.

## Manuscripts

The critical edition of the seven texts offered in this volume is based on twenty manuscripts, selected using the same principles as employed in the previous volumes of this series; ${ }^{198}$ these are among the oldest, most legible, and, as far as possible, most complete copies. A description of these manuscripts, each of them identified by a Hebrew letter, follows:

## $\kappa$

Paris, Bibliothèque Nationale de France, héb. 1045 (IMHM: F 33996). Vellum, Sephardi hand, fifteenth century: Reshit Hokhmah I, ff. 89a117a; Ṭe'amim I, ff. 117b-127a; Sefer ha-Moladot, ff. 127b-146a; She'elot I, ff. 146a-155b; Sefer ha-Me'orot, ff. 155b-161a; Mivharim I, ff. 161a168b; 'Olam I, ff. 168b-177b; 'Olam II, ff. 196b-200b. Used for the critical editions of She'elot I and Sefer ha-Me'orot.

[^35]ב
Cambridge, University Library, Add. 1501 (IMHM: F 17118). Paper, $200 \times 150 \mathrm{~mm}$, Sephardi hand, fifteenth/sixteenth century: Reshit Hokhmah I, ff. 1a-33b; Țéamim I, ff. 1a-33b (in facing columns with Reshit Hokhmah I); She' elot I, ff. 34b-46b; Sefer ha-Moladot, ff. 46b-66b; Mivharim II, ff. 67a-73a; 'Olam I, ff. 34a-57a; 'Olam II, ff. 57b-74a; Mivharim II, ff. 77a-85b. Used for the critical edition of She'elot I.

2

Modena, Archivio di Stato, MS 363.3. Parchment bifolium; fragment of Mivharim III on the right side of the verso and the left side of the recto; another fragment of She' elot III on the left side of the verso and the right side of the recto. ${ }^{199}$

## 7

Madrid, Biblioteca de la Real Academia de la Historia 7 (IMHM: F 07370). Paper, Sephardi hand, fifteenth century: Sefer ha-Moladot, ff. 53a-7ob; Sefer ha-Me'orot, ff. 72a-76b; She'elot II, ff. 79a-86a; 'Olam I, ff. 89a-96b; ‘Olam II, ff. 101a-106a; TTe‘amim II, ff. 112a-124b; Țe‘amim I, ff. 126a-139a; Mivḥarim I, ff. 152a-158b; Mivḥarim II, ff. 164a-169a. Used for the critical editions of Mivharim I and She' elot II.

## $\pi$

Jerusalem, Rabbi Yosef Qāfaḥ 36 (IMHM: F 47427). Dated 1893: Reshit Hokhmah I, ff. 138b-15ob; Mishpeței ha-Mazzalot, ff. 138b-15ob (in facing columns with Reshit Hokhmah I); 'Olam II, ff. 151a-156b; 'Olam I, ff. 157a-164b; Sefer ha-Me'orot, ff. 173a-179b; Mivḥarim II, ff. 179b186a; Mivharim I, ff. 186a-187a; She'elot II, ff. 187a-195a. Used for the critical editions of Mivḥarim II and She' elot II.

[^36]Vatican, Biblioteca Apostolica Vaticana, ebr. 47 (IMHM: F oo686). Sephardi hand, fourteenth/fifteenth century, with certain peculiarities, such as the consistent use of כותב (= writer) instead of כוכב (= star) to denote Mercury: Reshit Hokhmah I, ff. 1b-24b; Ṭe'amim I, ff. 25a-34b; Mivharim I, ff. 36a-4ob; Mivharim II, ff. 41a-44b; Ṭéamim II, ff. 44b-53b; Sefer haMe'orot, ff. 54a-57a; Sefer ha-Moladot, ff. 57b-70a. used for the critical edition of Mivharim II.

## 0

Vatican, Biblioteca Apostolica Vaticana, ebr. 477 (IMHM: F 00530), ff. 86b-95a. Italian hand, dated 1545: Reshit Hokhmah I, ff. 22a-23a; She'elot II, ff. 53a-67b; Mishpeṭei ha-Mazzalot, ff. 67b-86a; 'Olam II, ff. 86b-95a; Mivḥarim I, ff. 97a-108a; 'Olam I, ff. 108a-121a; Țe'amim II, ff. 121b-140a. Used for the critical edition of Mivḥarim I.

Paris, Bibliothèque Nationale de France, héb. 1056 (IMHM: F 14659), ff. 8oa-86a. Paper, Sephardi hand, fifteenth century: Reshit Hokhmah I, ff. 3b-34a; Țe‘amim I, ff. 34b-46a; Sefer ha-Moladot, ff. 46b-61b; She'elot I, ff. 62a-69b; Sefer ha-Me'orot, ff. 70a-73b; Mivharim I, ff. 74a-79a; 'Olam I, ff. 8oa-86a. Used for the critical editions of Mivharim I, She'elot I, and Sefer ha-Me'orot.

## $כ$

Cambridge, University Library, Add. 481 (IMHM: F 16778). Vellum, $240 \times 180 \mathrm{~mm}$ stained and creased, Byzantine hand, fifteenth century: Reshit Hokhmah I, ff. 55b-102a; Sefer ha-Moladot, ff. 102a-127a; Mivharim II, ff. 127a-134b; She'elot II, ff. 134b-142b; Țe‘amim II, ff. 143a-157b; 'Olam II, ff. 168a-175a. Used for the critical editions of Mivharim II and She'elot II.

## $ל$

Paris, Bibliothèque Nationale de France, héb. 189 (IMHM: F 04173). Paper, Byzantine hand, fourteenth/fifteenth century: Țe‘amim I, ff. 72b-

87b; Sefer ha-Moladot, ff. 87b-109a; She'elot I, ff. 109a-120a; Sefer haMe'orot, ff. 120a-125b; Mivḥarim I, ff. 125b-133b; 'Olam I, ff. 134a142b. Used for the critical editions of Mivharim I, She'elot I, and Sefer ha-Moladot.

## מ

Munich, Bayerische Staatsbibliothek, Cod. Hebr. 202 (IMHM: F 01649). Italian hand, fifteenth century: Reshit Hokhmah I, ff. 1b-37b; Țéamim II, ff. 37b-52b; TTe‘amim I, ff. 52b-67b; Sefer ha-Moladot, ff. 70a-91a; She'elot I, ff. 91b-101b; Sefer ha-Me'orot, ff. 101b-108a; Mivharim I, ff. 108b-116b; 'Olam I, ff. 116b-125a; 'Olam II, ff. 138a-144b; Mivḥarim II, ff. 145a-150b; Mishpetei ha-Mazzalot, ff. 150b-163b. Used for the critical editions of Mivharim I, Mivḥarim II, She'elot I, and Sefer haMe'orot.

## 」

Vienna, Österreichische Nationalbibliothek, Cod. Hebr. 132 [Schwarz 185] (IMHM: F 01406). Ashkenazi hand, fourteenth/fifteenth century: Mishpeṭei ha-Mazzalot, ff. 1a-2b; 'Olam I, ff. 3a-3b; Mivḥarim II, ff. 4a5b; She'elot II, ff. 6a-11a; Reshit Hokhmah I, ff. 11a-19b; Ṭe‘amim II, ff. 18a-19b. Used for the critical edition of She'elot II.

## 0

Paris, Bibliothèque Nationale de France, héb. 1055 (IMHM: F 14658). Vellum, $230 \times 175$, Sephardi hand, fourteenth century; written during the lifetime of Qalonymos ben Qalonymos, whose name, on f. 66a, is followed by the acronym יצ"ו ("may God protect him and give him life"): Reshit Hokhmah I, ff. 1b-27b; Țe‘amim I, ff. 28a-38a; She'elot I, ff. 41a48a; Sefer ha-Me'orot, ff. 48b-52b. Used for the critical editions of She' elot I and Sefer ha-Me'orot.

## y

Oxford, Bodleian Library, Add. Qu. 160 [Neubauer 2518] (IMHM: F 22230). Paper, octavo, 179 folios, Greek rabbinical hand, dated Thebes, 1367 (one of the earliest, if not the earliest, collections of astrological works by Ibn Ezra): Reshit Hokhmah I, ff. 13a-65b; Țéamim I,
ff. 65b-87b; Sefer ha-Moladot, ff. 88a-117b; Sefer ha-Me'orot, ff. 118a126a; Mivharim I, ff. 128b-140a; 'Olam I, ff. 141a-154a; 'Olam II, ff. $165 \mathrm{a}-167 \mathrm{~b}$ (seventeenth-century hand). Used for the critical editions of Mivharim I and Sefer ha-Me'orot.

## פ

Paris, Bibliothèque Nationale de France, MS héb. 1058 (IMHM: F 22230). Paper and vellum, Sephardi hand, fourteenth century, in two distinct parts: (1) She'elot II, ff. 1a-8b; Mivḩarim II, ff. 8b-13b; Mishpeṭei haMazzalot, ff. 13b-26a; Țéamim II, ff. 26b-39b; (2) the last four chapters of a 35 -chapter astrological and astronomical anthology, a careful selection of more or less lengthy fragments and complete treatises from the Hebrew astrological and astronomical work of Abraham Bar Hiyya and Abraham Ibn Ezra (ff. 50-194). Used for the critical editions of Mivḥarim II and She'elot II.

## צ

Florence, Biblioteca Nazionale Centrale Magl. III. 36 (IMHM: F 11964). Italian hand, fifteenth century: Mivharim I, ff. 14a-21a; She' elot I, ff. 21b30a; She'elot II, ff. 30a-37b. Used for the critical edition of She'elot II.

## $p$

Cambridge, University Library, Add. 1517 (IMHM: F 17454). Paper, $210 \times 150 \mathrm{~mm}$, stained, worm-eaten, torn at the edges, Sephardi hand, fourteenth/fifteenth century; copyist named as Qalonymos ben Qalonymos; idiosyncratic features, such as the scribe's inclination to skip, abbreviate, and paraphrase, or to use consistent alternative terminology, such as לבנה instead of the Moon: Reshit Hokhmah I, ff. 1a-15a; Mivḥarim II, ff. 15b, 47b-50a; Țéamim I, ff. 16a-22a; Sefer ha-Moladot, ff. 22a-3ob; She'elot II, ff. 34a-38b; Mishpeṭei ha-Mazzalot, ff. 39b-44b; Sefer ha-Me'orot, ff. 45a-47a; 'Olam I, ff. 50a-53a. Used for the critical edition of Mivharim II.

## ᄀ

Florence, Biblioteca Nazionale Centrale Magl. III. 139 (IMHM: F 11978). Italian hand, fifteenth century: Sefer ha-Me'orot, ff. 86b-90b; 'Olam II,
ff. 103b-109b; She'elot II, ff. 109b-118a; Țe'amim II, ff. 118b-133b; Mivḥarim II, ff. 133b-139b; Sefer ha-Me'orot, ff. 139b-160a. Used for the critical editions of Mivharim II and She' elot II.

## ש

Munich, Bayerische Staatsbibliothek, Cod. Hebr. 304, (IMHM: F 01109). Italian hand, fourteenth/fifteenth century: ‘Olam I, ff. 1a-10a, She'elot I, ff. 13a-30a; Ṭe‘amim I, ff. 30a-54b; Reshit Hokhmah I, ff. 551-116a; Mivḥarim I, ff. 116b-128a. Used for the critical editions of Mivharim I and She'elot I.

## ת

Vatican, Biblioteca Apostolica Vaticana ebr. 390 (IMHM: F 00472). Byzantine hand, dated 1436: Reshit Hokhmah I, ff. 1a-57a; She'elot I, ff. 58a76a; Mivḥarim I, ff. 76b-82a; Țe‘amim I, ff. 85a-108a; Sefer ha-Moladot, ff. 108a-138b; Sefer ha-Me'orot, ff. 138b-146a; 'Olam I, ff. 146a-157b. Used for the critical edition of Sefer ha-Me'orot.

## Editorial and Translation Principles

Mivḩarim I, seven MSS: דטילמעש. A scrutiny of the variae lectiones revealed strong affinities among MSS מד, ע, ${ }^{200}$ on the one hand, and among MSS טל, יעש י, MS on the other, in contrast to MSS (Oxford, Bodleian Library, Add. Qu. 160), the oldest of the twenty manuscripts used in this volume, served as the copy text for Mivharim I.

Mivharim II, seven MSS: זחכמפקר. Two families of manuscripts were detected: MSS פמז, on the one hand, and MSS חכקר, on the other. ${ }^{202}$ MS p (Cambridge, University Library, Add. 1517) was selected as the copy text. It appears to have been copied by the famous translator Qalonymos ben Qalonymos (the likely reason for its peculiarities and mannerisms,

[^37]such as the consistent use of ירח instead of לבנה and נוזר instead of חור (לאחור) and displays reliable readings in problematic loci. ${ }^{203}$

She'elot I, seven MSS: אבילמסש. A scrutiny of the variae lectiones revealed two families: MSS סבשמא, on the one hand, and MSS יל on the other. ${ }^{204}$ MS o (Paris, Bibliothèque Nationale de France, héb. 1055), one of the oldest and most reliable, despite being illegible in parts, served as the copy text.

She'elot II, seven MSS: דחכנפצר. A scrutiny of the variae lectiones revealed three families of manuscripts: MSS דת, MSS , and MSS בצנ 205 בצר MS $\boldsymbol{כ}$ (Cambridge, University Library, Add. 481), which is one of the oldest and most reliable, served as the copy text.

Sefer ha-Me'orot, seven MSS: אילמסעת. Even after careful scrutiny it was impossible to construct a stemma of these manuscripts. MS ע (Oxford, Bodleian Library, Add. Qu. 160), the oldest of the twenty manuscripts used in this volume, served as the copy text for Sefer ha-Me'orot.
Mivharim III and She'elot III: MS a (Modena, Archivio di Stato, MS 363.3), a parchment bifolium that includes the only surviving copy of two fragment of each of these texts. Because some parts are illegible, particularly at the edges but elsewhere as well, I attempted a limited reconstruction of the Hebrew text by means of a comparison with the corresponding sections of the two Latin translations, MS E (Erfurt, MS Amplon. O.89) and MS V (Vienna, Österreichische Nationalbibliothek, MS 5442). These reconstructed parts are presented in bold characters, with the corresponding Latin translation in the variae lectiones.

Because the editorial and translation principles are virtually the same as in the previous volume of this series, ${ }^{206}$ I limit myself to the essentials. The Hebrew apparatus is intended to offer a succinct indication of all readings in the Hebrew manuscripts consulted that differ from the text printed here. A distinction is made between variants, additions, and lacunae. To differentiate a lacuna from an illegible word, I have recorded not only the manuscripts that present a different reading but also those that coincide with the printed text; hence, where the siglum of a manuscript is omitted, the MS in question is illegible at this point. To make cases

[^38]in which the Hebrew text departs from the copy text clear to readers, the incipits of all readings that do not correspond to the copy text have been marked with an asterisk in the Hebrew apparatus. When necessary, I have explained the grounds for my decision. I have added punctuation to the Hebrew text and, to facilitate references, divided it into sections and sentences.

The translation is meant to help readers understand the Hebrew texts with as much fidelity as possible. It is not addressed only to those who do not read Hebrew. As noted in the introductions to the previous volumes, a critical edition without a translation into a widely used modern language would leave most of the difficulties posed by obscure and convoluted medieval Hebrew texts, such as Ibn Ezra's astrological writings, quite incomprehensible, even for those who are fluent in modern Hebrew. Ultimately, the translations are a gloss and commentary on the Hebrew text.

The English is divided into the same sections and sentences as the Hebrew. The paragraph breaks and punctuation are virtually the same as in the Hebrew text and may also be taken as interpretative. The numbers in the English translation refer to the notes that follow the texts. These notes are intended to illustrate the links among the works included here, as well as between them and other parts of Ibn Ezra's scientific corpus. They also serve to locate Ibn Ezra's views in the wider context of medieval astrological lore, to explain astrological or astronomical concepts and terms whenever necessary, and to identify sources.

## Editorial Changes with Respect to the Previous Editions

The seven treatises in this volume are highly specialized and technical texts. Ibn Ezra rarely explained the Hebrew astrological terms he employed. As a rule, they are explained in the notes when they appear for the first time. To facilitate reference to these explanations from anywhere in the seven texts, I have included a special index exclusively devoted to definitions of astrological terms. Each item in this index references the note where the corresponding terms is explained.

Because this volume presents seven texts that are related to three different astrological systems, the English-Hebrew glossary of technical terms has been divided in three parts, for the technical terms of the various versions of Sefer ha-Mivharim, Sefer ha-She'elot, and Sefer haMe'orot, respectively. In addition, to combine these three glossaries, I have added an index in Hebrew alphabetical order to each of them.

## Abbreviations and Sigla

< (in Hebrew text) after incipit
> (in Hebrew text) before incipit
(in Hebrew text) lacuna
『 (in Hebrew text) position of words shifted
[ ] (in Hebrew text) folios in the copy texts of the editions
〈 > in the translation: word(s) added to clarify the meaning
[ ] in the translation: paraphrase or gloss
( ) in the translation: biblical sources

PART ONE<br>FIRST VERSION OF THE BOOK OF ELECTIONS<br>BY ABRAHAM IBN EZRA<br>HEBREW TEXT AND ENGLISH TRANSLATION

## בשם דובר מישרים <br> אחל ספר המבחרים

 לבטל קצת הפרטים, ולהוסיף³ או לגרוע ${ }^{3}$ ¹ על כל מה שיורו הכוכבים, רק אין כח לה לה לבטל הכלל. (2) ודמיון זה, אם היה במולד אדם שיארע לונזק רב רב בדרך בשנת עשרים

 תבחר יום11 ידוע ושצה י12 ידועה לאדם שלא תדע מולדו. אבל אם לא13 י13 ידעת מולדו קח לו שאלה תחילה¹4; אם הוא¹5 נותן הדרך אז תבחר לו שצה. (4) והנה המבחרים16 על שני דרכים.

2 (1) האחד; אם ידעת מולד האדם ומקום המאורות והמשרתים17 והמבטים, השמר
 בחר לו בית שהוא ראוי לו323. (2) כאלובי20 רצה ללכתב25 אל של שלטון, שים המעלה
 בית עשתי עשר, ואם ללמוד הבית התשיעי או השלישי"30, ועוד אדבר על זוה זו בו (3) ואם היה באותו מזל במולדו אחד המזיקים ב1, השמר לך שלא תשים המעלה הצומחת מקום



``` ל לחר. \({ }^{7}\) [מיתו] צימטשד; ל חסר. \({ }^{8}\) [במבחר] עימטשד; ל חסר. צדורוניוס] עמד; יטל דורוניאוס; ש דוריאנוס. \(\left.{ }^{10}{ }^{10}\right]\) צימלטד; ששלא. מדילטש; ע חסר.
```



``` עימלטד; ששלא. עימטד; ש בית; ל חסר.
```




``` צימטלד; שג׳.
```

In the name of He Who speaks uprightly，
I begin to write the Book of Elections．

1 （1）Before I discuss elections，I give you a rule：The human supernal soul ${ }^{1}$ has the power to annul some details 〈of the natal horoscope〉 and to augment or reduce anything signified by the stars，but it does not have power to annul the general import $\left\langle\right.$ of the natal horoscope〉．${ }^{2,3}$（2）As an illustration，if a man＇s natal horoscope ${ }^{4}$ signifies that a major injury will befall him during a journey in the twentieth year after his birth， the election will be powerless to annul that injury，but the injury may be reduced if he leaves his house as a result of a fortunate election；or the contrary if he leaves as a result of an unfortunate 〈election〉：〈the injury will be increased．${ }^{5}$（3）Therefore Dorotheus ${ }^{6}$ said：be careful not to choose a certain day and a certain hour for a man whose time of birth is not known to you．${ }^{7}$ But if you do not know his time of birth， first make an interrogation on his behalf；if he reveals the route，then choose for him an hour 〈to depart〉．${ }^{8}$（4）Now there are two methods for elections．${ }^{9}$

2 （1）First 〈method〉．If you know a man＇s time of birth and the position of the luminaries，planets，${ }^{1}$ and aspects ${ }^{2}\langle$ at that time $\rangle$ ，be careful never to choose the eighth，sixth，or twelfth place ${ }^{3,4}\langle$ of the natal horoscope as the ascendant $\rangle$ in any election［i．e．，in any electional horoscope］，but choose a suitable place for him according to his wishes．（2）If he wishes to have an audience with a ruler，put the tenth place $\langle$ of the natal horoscope〉 as the ascendant degree of the electional horoscope〉，or the position of the Sun，if it is not in a cadent place ${ }^{5}$ 〈in the natal horoscope〉；if 〈he wishes〉 to engage in trade，$\langle$ put $\rangle$ the eleventh place $\langle$ of the natal horoscope $\rangle$ ；and if $\langle$ he wishes $\rangle$ to study，the ninth or third place $\left\langle\right.$ of the natal horoscope〉．${ }^{6}$ I shall say more about that 〈in due course〉．${ }^{7}$（3）If at the time of birth there is a malefic $\langle\text { planet }\rangle^{8}$ in this sign，be careful not to put the ascendant degree $\langle$ of the electional horoscope〉 in the position of the malefic $\langle$ planet at the time of birth $\rangle.{ }^{9}$

3 (1) ודמיון זה¹, היה הצומח במולדו עשרים מבתולה² והיה שבתי בתחלת הבית הצשירי בחמש עשרה מעלות מתאומים. (2) והנה אם תצטרך לבחור לו ללכת לשלטוץ3, תהיה המעלה הצומחת|מארבע ועשרים4 ממזל תאומים5, וטעם זה בעבור היות אור גוף שבתי6 תשע' מעלות. (3) ואם לא יכולת, יהיה משש עשרה8 ולמעלה, ולא יהיה פחות.

4 (1) אמר חכם9 הודו: אם ידעת מולד 4 האדם, בקש מי הוא השליט, כאשר פירשתי בספר המולדות, ולצולם שים אותו השליט במקום טוב כנגד המבחר שאתה עושה. (2) גם הוא אמר: אם לא ידעת מולד האדם ראה תולדתו, ומטבעו11 ותקן12 לו מי13 יתכן להיות שליט עליו, ואותו הכוכב14 שים במקום טוב.


#### Abstract

5 (1) והדרך השני שתתקן מקום הכוכב שכנגד חפצי15 המבקש. (2) כאדם שירצה לקחת־16 אשה, בחר ${ }^{16}$ שיהיה נגה במקום טוב כנגד המעלה הצומחת, כי זה יועיל בין מי 


6 או מבטיהם. והשמר שלא תהיה במחברת עם המזיקים, או במבט רע עמהם, לאי22 עם מחברת323 השמש42, ולא525 במעלה שוה עם מעלת המזיק שמרחקה"26 מקו הצדק שוה מסוף צפון או מסוף דרום. (2) ואם היה צורך גדול לבחור ביום שהלבנה עם אחד 27 ו27 המזיקים או מבטיהם, כך בחר 28 הצומח שלא תהיה הלבנה באחת היתדות, ואם היתה באחד הבתים הנופלים אז לא תורה על רע כי אם על פחד הנפש בלבד שלא יצא לידי מעשה. (3) ואם יכולת שלא יהיה לה כח וממשלהב29 במזל הצומח, אז טוב יותר 30 (4) ואם הלבנה תהיה עם אחד מן הכוכבים13 הטובים או מבטיהם, אולי יהיה לה חלק במזל הצומח כח32 ממשלה", אז יותר טוב.

[^39]3 （1）As an illustration，the ascendant at the time of his birth is Virgo $20^{\circ}$ ，and Saturn is in the cusp of the tenth place at Gemini $15^{\circ}$ ．（2）So if you have to choose for him 〈a time〉 to have an audience with a ruler， the ascendant degree 〈in the electional horoscope〉 should be no less than Gemini $24^{\circ}$ ，and this is because the ray of Saturn＇s body ${ }^{1}$ is $9^{\circ}$ ．（3）But if you cannot do this，it should be more than $\langle\mathrm{Gemini}\rangle 16^{\circ}$ ，but no less．${ }^{2}$

4 （1）An Indian scientist said：if you know a man＇s time of birth，find out the ruler as I explained in the Book of Nativities，${ }^{1}$ and always put this ruler in a fortunate position 〈in the electional horoscope〉 for the election you are making．${ }^{2}$（2）He also said：if you do not know a man＇s time of birth，examine his natural constitution，${ }^{3}$ and on the basis of this natural constitution determine which $\langle$ planet $\rangle$ may be his ruler，and $\langle$ then $\rangle$ put this planet in a fortunate position．${ }^{4}$

5 （1）The second method is that you determine the position of the planet ${ }^{1}$ that conforms to the querent＇s wishes．（2）〈For example，if〉 a man wishes to marry a woman，choose 〈to have him do so〉 when Venus is in a fortunate position with respect to the ascendant degree 〈of the electional horoscope $\rangle$ ，because this will work whether or not you know his time of birth．${ }^{2}$

6 （1）Likewise，you should put the position of the Moon conforming to the ascendant in a fortunate position with benefic planets ${ }^{1}$ or their aspects．Be careful that［the Moon］is not in conjunction with the malefic〈planets〉 or in an unfortunate aspect ${ }^{2}$ with them，${ }^{3}$ or in conjunction with the Sun，or at a degree 〈in the zodiac〉 so that the equator or the extreme north or the extreme south［i．e．，Aries $0^{\circ}$ or Libra $o^{\circ}$ or Cancer $0^{\circ}$ or Capricorn $0^{\circ}$ ］is equidistant between this degree and the degree of a malefic．${ }^{4,5}$（2）But if there is a great need to choose a day when the Moon is with one of the malefics or their aspects，choose the ascendant in such a way that the Moon is not in one of the cardines，although if it［the Moon］is in one of the cadent places 〈of the electional horoscope〉 it does not signify misfortune，but only some great fear 〈of an event〉 that will not take place．${ }^{6}$（3）It is more auspicious if you can do this when it［the Moon］does not have power and lordship over the ascendant sign．${ }^{7}$（4）It is more auspicious if the Moon is together with one of the benefic planets or their aspects，even if it［the Moon］has some power and lordship over the ascendant sign．

7 (1) אמר אל אנדרוזגר1 : אם היה המזל² הצומח³ באחד המבחרים אריה או קשת ${ }^{4}$ או דלי, | והלבנה במקום רע או עם כוכבים5 המזיקים, לא תחוש לה כה כל כך חך חששה6. (2)
 בית הלבנה שנים עשר², והנה לא נחוש לתקן מי שהואי ${ }^{13}$ ממונה על האויבים. (3) וככה, אם היה מזל העולה קשת, יהיה בית הלבנה שמיני לו שהוא בית הדאגות היה מזל העולה דלי יהיה בית הלבנה ששי לו, שהוא בית התחלואים.

8 (1) וכל החכמים הנזכרים, גם חכמי הודו עמהם, הסכימה דעתם15 שלא תושם הלבנה במזל הצומח. (2) וכבר הזכרתי הטעם בספר המולדות. (3) וככה בבית הרביעי16, רק אם היה עם כוכבים טובים, וככה בבית התשיעי, מפני שהוא בית אבלה והפך שמחתה, רק אם היתה במחברת כוכבוּ ${ }^{17}$ טוב או מבטוֹ ${ }^{18}$ ולא תחוש. (4) והשמר שלא יהיה השליט תחת אור השמש ולא שב אחורנית. (5) ועתה נשוב לדבר על הבתים17 כפי מחלקותם.

## $1 \S$

1 הצומח, ויהיה22 כוכב חמה ${ }^{23}$ במקום טוב או שימנו במזל הצומח, אי24 זה בית שית שיהיה, כי הוא בית שמחתו על מנת שלא יהיה עבר מקומה כמו עשר מעלות לא תחוש. (2) ואם יכולת שתביט הלבנה אליו, אי זי זה יוֹ
 אם רוצהל ${ }^{28}$ ללמוד חכמת המדות ${ }^{29}$ וחכמת (30 ${ }^{30}$ האלוהות, ככה צשה שיביט שבתי31 מבט טוב אל הלבנה או אל כוכב חמה כמו שאמרנ135|בשבתי36, ואם רפואות, הבט אל מאדים, ואם חכמת ההגיון, הוא אל 130א
... היה המזל הצומח] עימשד; טל חסר.
6כ
12 שנים עשר] צימלטד; שי״ב. ${ }^{13}{ }^{13}$ שהוא] צימלטש; ד הוא. ${ }^{14}$ וככה אם היה מזל ... שהוא בית הדאגות]
עמטשד; יל חסר.
תשים הלבנה. $\left.{ }^{17} כ^{17}\right]$ עימטשד; ל חסר. ${ }^{18}$ [מבט] צימטד; לש מבט טוב. ${ }^{18}$ [הבתים] צימטשד; ל
כל. 20 בוכב חמה] צימטשל; ד כותב.
33 בוכב חמה] עימטש; ד כותב.
עימטשל; ד נזור.
שד חסר. $\left.{ }^{30}{ }^{30}\right]$
כותב.
ש שבארנו; ל שאמרו. 36בשבתי] צימטדל; ש בשבתאי.

7 （1）Al－Andruzagar ${ }^{1}$ said：If the ascendant sign in one of the elections is Leo，Sagittarius，or Aquarius，${ }^{2}$ and the Moon is in an unfortunate position or with malefic planets，do not worry so much about it［the Moon］．${ }^{3}$
（2）But he did not mention any reason for that，and in my opinion the reason is that when Leo is the ascendant sign，the 〈planetary〉 house of the Moon［Cancer］is the twelfth 〈sign after Leo〉，and we do not worry about determining the 〈twelfth place〉，which is in charge of enemies．${ }^{4}$ （3）Likewise，if the rising sign is Sagittarius，the 〈planetary $\rangle$ house of the Moon is the eighth 〈sign after Leo〉，which is the 〈horoscopic〉 place of worries；${ }^{5}$ likewise，if the rising sign is Aquarius，the 〈planetary〉 house of the Moon is the sixth $\langle$ sign after Leo $\rangle$ ，which is the $\langle$ horoscopic $\rangle$ place of diseases．${ }^{6,7}$

8 （1）All the aforementioned scholars，and the Indian scientists among them，have agreed that the Moon should not be put in the ascendant sign．（2）I have already mentioned the reason in the Book of Nativities．${ }^{1}$ （3）Likewise，〈the Moon should not be put〉 in the fourth place，unless it ［the Moon］is with benefic planets，nor in the ninth place，because that is the place of its mourning and opposite the place of its joy；${ }^{2}$ but do not be concerned if it is in conjunction with a benefic 〈planet〉 or in aspect $\left\langle\right.$ with it〉．（4）Be careful that the ruler ${ }^{3}$ is not under the ray of the Sun ${ }^{4}$ or retrograde．（5）Now we turn to discuss the 〈horoscopic〉 places according to their divisions．

1 （1）The first place．Someone who inquires about studying，choose＜to have him do so〉 when one of Mercury＇s houses is the ascendant sign〈of the electional horoscope〉，with Mercury ${ }^{1}$ in a fortunate position or placed at the ascendant sign，no matter which house $\langle$ of Mercury〉 it is， because it［the first place］is the place of its［Mercury＇s］joy ${ }^{2}$ as long as it is not retrograde；but do not be concerned if it is under the ray of the Sun or it has passed about $10^{\circ}\langle$ from the cusp of the house $\rangle$ ．（2）It is more auspicious if you can do this when the Moon aspects it［Mercury］，no matter which aspect．（3）You should find out which science he wishes to study：if he wishes to study geometry or theology，set it so that Saturn is in a fortunate aspect ${ }^{3}$ with the Moon or Mercury；if he wants to study jurisprudence，do this with Jupiter as we said about Saturn；${ }^{4}$ if medicine， do this with Mars 〈instead of Saturn〉；if logic—that is，al－mantiq－do this

מנטק¹, הבט אל השמש, ואם חכמת הנגון² הבט אל נגה, ואם חשבון ודקדוק לשון לון או להחל33 לכתוב ספר4 תקן מקום כוכב חמה5, וככה6 ללמוד פיטנות7.
 כוכב חמה11 באחד בתי שבתי12, כי הוא יורה על סבלנות ולא יא יני יאיח הדבר עד תומו. (2)
 תהיה הלבנה במזל שיש לו שני גופות ${ }^{14}$ טוב מהיותה במזל מתהפך, ועל כואל כולם טובים המזלות העומדים חוץ ממזל עקרב¹5, ואין במתהפכים יותר רע ממזל טלה ואחריו סרטן.

 ואם היתה מתבודדת שלא יביט אליה שום כוכבי22 אזי23 יותר טוב כחה לאחד מן הכוכבים שהם למעלה מן הארץ, כי אז יקיא המשקה. (4) ואם תתן כחה

ממבט רע לאחד מן המזיקים ולא לכוכב ${ }^{25}$ שהוא שב26 אחורנית, כי יורה על קיא ${ }^{27}$.

4 (1) אמר דורוניוס²8: אם יביט שבתי29 אל הלבנה והוא עולה בגלגל גבהותו, יורה על עצור כי לא ישלשל המשקה30 כהוגן, ואם הוא יורד ${ }^{31}$ יורה על שלשול יותר מדאי32.

5 (1) אמר בטלמיוס: השמר לאי33 תתן רפואת 5 (1 ${ }^{34}$ שלשול לאדם ${ }^{35}$ והלבנה עם צדק או נגה, או שתתן 2130
 הוא"40 שתהיה הלבנה מתבודדת ולא תביט אל כוכב. (3) ואם רצונך לתת משקה
 ולהחל. ${ }^{4}$ לכתוב ספר] עימשדל; ט ט. 7כיטנות] עימטשד; ל ביטנות. לבקש] צימטשד; ל חסר. צימטדל; ש שבתאי. הקאמר] צימשדל; ט חסר. שני גופים. 15 ממזל עקרב] עמטשדל; י מוסיף בשוליים: להיותו מזל מאדים.
 צ; ימטל המזלות; שד ממזלות. ${ }^{21}$ מעקרב] עמטשל; ימוסיף בשוליים: שהוא גבול השריפה. מנת שתעבר ג׳ ... אליה שום כוכב] עיטשל; מד חסר. לאחר הכוכבים שהם] עימשד; טל חסר. ${ }^{25}$ [לכוכב] עטשדל; ימש חסר.
 ש שבתאי; ט חסר. ${ }^{30}$ שמשקה] עימטשד; ל חסר. עימשד; ט מדאי יורד. 33לא] צישל; מטד שלא. ש של אדם. אחריהם. (אממרתי] צישל; ט אמר; מד חסר. ${ }^{39}$ אוא] צימטדל; ש חסר.
with the Sun；if music，with Venus；if arithmetic，grammar，or beginning to write a book，determine the position of Mercury，and $\langle$ do $\rangle$ likewise to learn $\langle$ to write $\rangle$ poetry．${ }^{5,6}$

2 （1）The scientists of India said：In any election seeking（a time to begin the study of a science，no matter which science，you should always put Mercury in one of Saturn＇s houses，${ }^{1}$ because it［Saturn］signifies endurance and that he will not desist from his undertaking until its end．${ }^{2}$ （2）Also Abū Ma＇shar ${ }^{3}$ said that if the Moon is in one of Saturn＇s houses， this too is fortunate．${ }^{4}$（3）If the Moon is in a bicorporal sign it is more fortunate than if it is in a tropical sign；the most fortunate are the fixed signs，${ }^{5}$ except for Scorpio，but none is less fortunate among the tropical〈signs〉 than Aries，and Cancer after it．

3 （1）For taking a medicine，consider which medicine he wants to take． （2）If $\langle$ the medicine is $\rangle$ a purgative or a vomitive，put the Moon in one of the watery signs，on condition that it is not more than $3^{\circ}$ from $\langle$ the head of Scorpio；${ }^{1}$ it is more auspicious if［the Moon］secludes itself ${ }^{2}$ in such a way that no planet aspects it．（3）Be careful not to do this when it［the Moon］gives its power ${ }^{3}$ to one of the planets that are above the Earth，because then he will vomit the potion．（4）But if it［the Moon］ gives its power to one of the planets that are below the Earth ${ }^{4}$ with respect to the ascendant sign，${ }^{5}$ it［the Moon］will not cause harm，on condition that it does not give its power from an unfortunate aspect to any of the malefic planets or to a retrograde $\langle$ planet $\rangle$ ，because this signifies vomitus．${ }^{6,7}$

4 （1）Dorotheus said：If Saturn aspects the Moon and it［Saturn］ascends in its circle of apogee，this signifies constipation because the potion will not purge adequately，but if it descends，this signifies excessive looseness of the bowels．${ }^{1}$

5 （1）Ptolemy ${ }^{1}$ said：Be careful not to administer a purgative to a man when the Moon is with Jupiter or Venus，or when it［the Moon］gives its power to them［Jupiter or Venus］，${ }^{2}$ because their nature is to hold on to the natural makeup of the body and not to remove anything from it． （2）But the scholars who rely on experience ${ }^{3}$ who followed him did not agree with him；therefore I said that it is totally beneficial if the Moon secludes itself and does not aspect any planet．（3）If you wish to admin－ ister a vomitive，put the Moon in Taurus，or 〈do so when〉 it gives its

להקיא, שים הלבנה במזל שורי, או² תתן כחה³ לכוכב שהוא במזל שור או לכוכב שהוא4 למעלה מן הארץ או לכוכב5 שהוא שב אחורנית6.

6 (1) ואם תרצה להקיז, השמר שלא תהיה הלבנה במזל תאומים7, שהוא מזל8 הזרוע, ולא תהיה כמו כן עם שבתי או עם מאדים. (2) ואם היה במבט שלישית או ששית עם מאדים הוא יותר טוב ממבט שלישית וששית של שבתי9, ומבט רביעית או נכח10 עם שבתי או מאדים או כוכב חמהה מזיק.

7 (1) אמר יעקב אלכנדי: ידע המקיז12 מאיזו מן האמהות13 ירצה לחסר14, ושים הלבנה במזל שהוא דומה לתולדת שירצה לחסר. (2) דמיון זה כי ירצה13 לחסר המרה"16 האדומה, ישים הלבנה באחד מט״א״ק שהם מזלות האש, והשחורה"17 בעפר, והלחה18 במים, והדם עצמו באחד מן הרוח.

8 (1) אמר בטלמיוס: השמר שלא תגע בברזל כלל באחד מאיבריך בזמן19 שהלבנה באותו מזל שיורה על אותו פרק האיברים. (2) דמיון20 כגון ${ }^{21}$ להקיז בראש והלבנה בטלה, או בצואר והוא²2 בשור, וכן כלם כי יקיזי23. (3) והוא דבר מנוסה והודו לו הבאים24 אחריו25.25

> 9 (1) אמר אבו מצשר: אם תרצה להכנס במרחץ שים הלבנה באחד ממזלות המים. (2) ואני אומר שישים הלבנה באי זה בית שתהיה, ותהיה צל מבט אחד מן הכוכבים26 הטובים, או על 27 כל מבטי28 החמה", חוץ מן הנכח.

$$
2 \S
$$

1 (1) הבית השני. אמר בטלמיוס: הרוצה לקנות דבר שירויח בו, ישים הלבנה בחלקה, שהוא החלק הקטן | מן הגלגל, שהוא מתחלת מזל דלי עד סוף סרטן. (2) וזה הדבר 131²

[^40]power to a planet that is in Taurus or to a planet that is above the Earth or to a retrograde planet．${ }^{4}$

6 （1）If you wish to perform phlebotomy，make sure that the Moon is not in Gemini，which is the sign 〈in charge〉 of the arm，${ }^{1}$ or that it［the Moon］is not with Saturn or Mars．${ }^{2}$（2）If it［the Moon］is in trine or sextile with Mars，this is more beneficial than if it is in trine or sextile with Saturn；${ }^{3}$ but quartile or opposition with Saturn，Mars，or Mercury is detrimental．${ }^{4}$

7 （1）Ya＇qub al－Kind $\overline{1}^{1}$ said：The bloodletter should know which of the humors he wishes to reduce，and 〈he should〉 put the Moon in a sign $\langle$ whose nature is $\rangle$ like the nature $\langle$ of the humor that〉 he wishes to reduce． （2）As an illustration，if he wishes to reduce the yellow bile，he should put the Moon in one of the fiery signs，Aries，Leo，or Sagittarius；if 〈he wishes to reduce〉 the black bile，in $\langle$ one of $\rangle$ the earthy $\langle$ signs $\rangle ;\langle i f\rangle$ phlegm，in〈one of $\rangle$ the watery 〈signs〉；and if the sanguine humor itself，in one of the airy $\langle$ signs $\rangle .{ }^{2}$

8 （1）Ptolemy said：Be careful that no iron touches any part of your body when the Moon is in a sign signifying that part of the body．${ }^{1}$（2）As an illustration，suppose that one performs phlebotomy from the head when the Moon is in Aries，or from the neck when 〈the Moon is in〉 Taurus， and likewise regarding all 〈the parts of the body〉 when he performs phlebotomy $\langle$ from them $\rangle$ ．（3）This has been verified by experience，and agreed upon by those who came after him［Ptolemy］．${ }^{2}$

9 （1）Abū Ma＇shar said：If you wish to enter a public bathhouse，put the Moon in one of the watery signs．（2）But I say that he should put the Moon in any sign，and do this when one of the benefic planets aspects it［the Moon］，or the Sun is in any aspect with it［the Moon］except opposition．${ }^{1}$

1 （1）The second place．Ptolemy said：One who wishes to buy something and make a profit from it should put the Moon in its domain，which is the smaller domain of the zodiac，that is，from the beginning of Aquarius to the end of Cancer．${ }^{1}$（2）This has been verified by experience，〈and it

הוא${ }^{1}$ מנוסה, על מנת שלא תהיה הלבנה עם אחד המזיקים, ולא במבט² רע עמהם, ולא במעלות שוות ממרחק קו הצדק, או סוף צפון ודרום3 ${ }^{3}$ צמהם4. (3) ודע כי
 והנכון שתעשה, אם יכולת׳9, שתתן הלבנה כחה10 לכוכב11 מהיר בהליכתו, או עולה בפאת גלגלו הגדול, או שיהיה הכוכב בבית העשירי12 או עשתי עשר"13 מן המעלה הצומחת. (5) והשמר שלא תתן הכח לכוכב14 שב אחורנית12, ולא לכוכב שיהיה תחת613 אור השמש, ולאו17 לכוכב ביתד התהוםם.

2 (1) ודע כי צדק יורה על הממון; על כן ${ }^{19}$ אם יכולת ${ }^{20}$ לשומו באחד21 היתדות, אז יהיה יותר טוב לכל דבר שתקנה. (2) והשמר שלא תשים כוכב מזיק בבית השני ולא נכחו, ולא יהיה22 בעל הבית23 השני ${ }^{23}$ נששרף. (3) ואם יכולת 25 לתקן הגורל הטוב שיהיה במקום טוב, אז יהיה יותר טוב.

3 (1) ואם אדם יבקש ממך הלואה ומצאת כוכב חמה²6 עם שבתי במחברת או במבט רע עמו"27, דע כי לא ישיב28 שלך29 אלא אחר30 איחור ויאוש, ואם מאדים עד שתגיע לקטטות ומריבות.

4 (1) ודע כי אם היתה31 הלבנה ממתנת בהליכתה או היא במזל עומד או תתן כחה לאחד העליונים32, תורה על איחור מכירת כל דבר שיקנה, ואם היתה ממהרת בהליכתה33 או במזל מתהפך או תתן כחה לאחד הכוכבים השפלים, יורה על מהירות

מכירת הדבר34
5 (1) והנה, 5 (25 כבר פירשתי לך בספר ראשית החכמה ${ }^{36}$ כל דבר שיורה עליו כל אחד מהמשרתים. (2) והנה, הסתכל תולדת הדבר שתרצה לקנות, |מהצמחים והמתכות 131 וכל דבר, ודע אי זה כוכב יורה תקנהו; (4) גם ככה, אם היה הכוכב יורד אל מקום שפלות הגלגל39 הגדול40, שנקרא
 ציטשל; מד חסר. ${ }^{5}$ צפוש מנזק] עיטש; מ רע מנזק; ד דבר מזיק; ל חסר. 7 ${ }^{7}$ ל כזה. 11 11 "14 מהיר בהליכתו ... תתן הכח לכוכב] עימטשל; ד חסר. תחת] עימשל; ד שתחת. ${ }^{17}$ לככב שב אחורנית ולא לככב שיהיה תחת אור השמש ולא] עימשדל; ט חסר. 18 ביתד התהום] צימדל; ש שהוא ביתד התהום; ט שהוא ביתד הראשון. ${ }^{18}$ בעל כן] עיטש; מד אם כן; ל חסר. 20יכולת] צימטשל; ד תוכל. ל בואחד] צימט; שדל באחת.
 כותב. עימטשד; ל חסר. 31 כי אם היתה] עימטשל; ד אם; ל כי היתה.
 עיטשל; מד חסר. אחורנית] צימטשל; ד נזור. 39הגלגל] צימטש; ד גלגל. ${ }^{40}$ צגדול] עימשד; ט חסר.
works $\rangle$ if the Moon is not with one of the malefics，nor in an unfortunate aspect with them，${ }^{2}$ nor in degrees that are equidistant from the equator or from the extreme north or south．${ }^{3}$（3）Know that Saturn signifies mold caused by decay of the purchased item，and Mars signifies that it will be stolen．（4）The correct approach，if you can，is to do this when the Moon gives its power to a planet that is moving rapidly，or ascends in its great circle，${ }^{4}$ or $\langle$ to $\rangle$ a planet that is in the tenth or eleventh place from the ascendant degree．（5）But be careful not to do this when it ［the Moon］gives its power to a retrograde planet，or to a planet that is under the ray of the Sun，or to a planet that is in the cardo of the lower midheaven．${ }^{5}$

2 （1）Know that Jupiter signifies money；${ }^{1}$ therefore，if you can put it ［Jupiter］in one of the cardines，it 〈the electional horoscope〉 will be more favorable for everything you buy．（2）Be careful not to put a malefic planet in the second place or in opposition to it［i．e．，in the eighth place］，nor when the lord of the second place is burnt．（3）It is more auspicious if you can cast the lot of Fortune ${ }^{2}$ in such a way that it is in a favorable position．${ }^{3}$

3 （1）If somebody asks you for a loan and you find Mercury in conjunc－ tion with Saturn or in an unfortunate aspect with it，know that he will repay your 〈loan〉 only after delay and despair；if 〈it is in conjunction or unfortunate aspect $\rangle$ with Mars，〈he will repay you〉 only after you are embroiled in quarrels and disputes．${ }^{1}$

4 （1）Know that if the Moon is moving slowly or it is in a fixed sign or it gives its power to one of the upper 〈planets〉，it signifies delay in selling anything bought，but if it is moving rapidly or in a tropical sign or gives its power to one of the lower planets，this indicates swiftness in selling this item．${ }^{1}$

5 （1）I have already explained to you in the Book of the Beginning of Wisdom all the significations of each of the planets．${ }^{1}$（2）So examine the nature of what you wish to buy，be it a plant，a metal，or anything $\langle e l s e\rangle$ ，and find out which planet signifies it．（3）If you find that it［the planet］is burnt or retrograde，do not buy it．（4）Also proceed likewise if the planet descends to its perigee on the great circle，which is called the

אופן1 הסובל². (5) ואם היה הכוכב3 ישר בהליכתו והוא עולה לפאת4 גבהותו5, אז תצליח באותו דבר. (6) ואם היה כוכב טוב מביט אליו, יוסיף טובה, ואם רע, יחסר.

1 (1) הבית השלישי. אם רצית ללכת בדרך קרובה, שים הלבנה בבית השלישי צל מנת שלא יביט אליה כוכב רע; ואם לא יכולת, שימנה בבית החמישי או השביצי או עשתי עשר6; ואם לא יכולת7, שימנה בבית העשירי או השנים, ושאר הבתים רעים. (2)
 מזיק, יורה על רע שיקרה12 לו במקום שילך המומים, יורה על חולי, ואם באחד ${ }^{14}$ המזלות שהם מצורות בן15 אדם, יורה על נזק ומריבות מפאת בני אדם. (5) ומאדים בבית הזה יותר רע משבתי, כי יורה על חבורות ומכות616. (6) גם כוכב17 חמה18 יורה על קטטות ומריבות בדברים שאין להם שום
 שילך. (7) ויש לך לעולם לשמור בעל השעה"19, כי יש לו כח גדול; על כן, השמר שלא יהיה לא²0 נשרף ולא שב אחורנית12.

2 (1) אמר מאשא אללהה22: השמר לך, כשתכנס אל מדינה, 23, שלא תכנס בשצת שבתי ומאדים, אלא בשעת השמש או הלבנה או צדק או נגה, אם לא יהיו נשרפים או"24 שבים אחורנית לדעת מהמזל הצומח בשעת הכניסה למדינה כמה ימים יעמד שם, ונתן דמיונות רבים לדבר82. (3) וזאת" ${ }^{29}$ טעות גדולה"30, כי מאה אנשים יכנסו בבת אחת למדינה, בין בגדוד בין בשיירה3131, ואחד עמד ואחד עבר, ואחד לן ואחדד מתביוא ואחר מתעכב. (4) וזה יקרה כפי מולד אמרתי לך שאם לא ידעת מולדך קח שאלה לעצמך, אם הדרך טובה אם39 לא. (6)


 עימטדל; ש > נח. ${ }^{10}{ }^{10}$ אנה אם] צימטדל; שואם. שיורה; י שיהיה; ד שיבא. ${ }^{13}$ שילך] עימטד; שי ל לו; ל חסר. באחד] עיטל; משד חסר. ד בו"בן] עימל; טש בני; ד חסר. כוכב] צימטש; ל אם כוכב; ד כותב. בשוליים: ר״ל היוצא באותה השצה. נזור. 22מאשא אללה] על; ימאשאללה; ט משאללה; מ מאשא אלה; ש משאלה. על המדינה. ${ }^{24}{ }^{24}$ [ ימד, עטשל ולא.

 ט בשיראה.
 שיהיה. 38שנכנס1] צימטדל; ש שנכנס. (39] צימטשד; ל או.
"carrying circle." ${ }^{2}$ (5) But if the planet is direct in its motion or ascends towards its apogee, you will be successful in this matter. (6) If a benefic planet aspects it [the planet signifying what one wishes to buy], this increases good fortune, but if a malefic 〈planet aspects it〉, it decreases $\langle$ good fortune $\rangle$.

## $\$ 3$

1 (1) The third place. If you wish to set off on a short journey, put the Moon in the third place, ${ }^{1}$ on condition that it does not aspect a malefic planet; if you cannot $\langle$ do so $\rangle$, put it in the fifth, seventh, or eleventh place; if you cannot, put it in the tenth or second $\langle$ place $\rangle$; the other places are unfortunate. (2) Know that the seventh place signifies your destination. ${ }^{2}$ (3) So if a malefic planet is there, it indicates that a misfortune will befall him in his destination. (4) For instance, if Saturn is in one of the deformed signs, it signifies disease, and if it is in one of the signs with a human shape, ${ }^{3}$ it signifies harm and disputes because of human beings. (5) Mars in this place is worse than Saturn, because it signifies bruises and injuries. (6) In addition, Mercury indicates groundless quarrels and disputes, but if one of the benefic planets is there, it signifies good fortune that will befall him at his destination. (7) You should always put store by the lord of the hour, ${ }^{4}$ because it has great power; therefore, be careful that it is neither burnt nor retrograde. ${ }^{5}$

2 (1) Māshāallāh ${ }^{1}$ said: When you intend to enter a city, be careful to enter during the hours of the Sun, the Moon, Jupiter, or Venus, if they are not burnt or retrograde, but not during the hours of Saturn or Mars. ${ }^{2}$ (2) I am astonished at Māshā’allāh, who said that anybody can know how many days a man will stay in a city from the ascendant sign when he enters it, and he [Māshā’allāh] gave many examples of this. (3) But this is a great error, because a hundred persons may enter a city simultaneously, in a troop or in a caravan, and one stays while another continues on his way, one of them spends the night, another dies, and still another stays longer. (4) This occurs according to the natal horoscope of each of them and does not depend on the power of the sign $\langle$ of the ascendant $\rangle$ at the time they enter $\langle$ the city $\rangle .{ }^{3}$ (5) I have already told you that if you do not know your time of birth, you should make an interrogation for yourself as to whether the journey would be fortunate or not. ${ }^{4}$ (6) If you find benefic

ואם מצאת כוכבים טובים ברביצית מזרחית, בחר מזרחית¹ מקומך ללכת, וכן שאר הפאות, והפך זה אם יהיו שם המזיקים. (7) ודע כי שבתי בבית השלישי או התשיעי רע מאד להכנס במים, כי2 יורה על צער3 וסכנה. (8) ודבר ${ }^{4}$ מנוסה הוא5 ${ }^{4}$ כי הספינה,
 הלבנה עם שבתי9 ולא במבט רע עמה10, ומאדים יורה על הלסטים בים וביבשה.


#### Abstract

3 (1) אמר11 מאשא אללהה12: מאדים בבית השלישי או התשיעי13 זיק יותר14 משבתי, ושבתי יזיק במקומות הנזכרים יותר ממאדים בים. (2) ודע כי הבית הצשירי יורה על התורן; והנה, אם היה שם מאדים, יורה על שבירת התורן15, ואם היה שם שבתי16 יורה על הפיכת התורן. (3) והבית הרביעי יורה על האנקליאה, הוא מקום שפוע תחתיתה17; והנה18, אם היה שם19 שבי שתי, יורה על מים רבים שיכנסו בספינה, ואם מאדים, יורה על שבירת לוח. (4) ואם היה שבתי20 בבית השביעי21, יורה כי יפול הדגל, הוא אלאספדה22. (5) ואם היה"23 במזל הצומח424, יורה על סכנה גדולה בעבור עצות רצות מהחבלים25.


4 (1) אמרו חכמי | הודו: הזהר שלא תכנם בים והלבנה במזל דגים. (2) וכן האמת, 2132 רק אם היה במבטה או במחברתה26 אחד מן הטובים ${ }^{26}$ לא תחוש. (3) והלבנה בטלה תורה ${ }^{28}$ על מהירות הליכת הספינהה29 (4) גם טוב אם תהיה בשור או בסרטן, רק במקום
 כי שעת מאדים בים אינה רעה אם לא היה נשרף או33 שב אחורנית43, רק ביבשה רעה.

5 (1) וחכמי המזלות הסכימה דעתם כי להכנס בספינה באחד מזלות35 האש הוא סכנה גדולה (36. (2) וטעם זה ידוע: בעבור כי יהיה הבית השמיני, שבו הפחד 37 והמות, מזל38 המים; ואחריהם מזלות העפר, וטעמם ידוע: בעבור היות מזלות ${ }^{39}$ המים לנכחם. (3) והטובים שבכולם מזלות המים, ואחריהם 40 בטובה מזלות הרוח.

1בחר מזרחית] ציטשל; מד חסר. ${ }^{2}{ }^{2}{ }^{2}$ עשד; ימטל יורה. ${ }^{3}$ צל צער] צימשל; ט בצער; ד סצר.

 הלבנה עם שבתי] צימטשד; ל חסר. אללה] על ; מט מאשללה; י מאשאללה; ד משאללה; ש משאלה. 14 14ת] צימשל; ד חז; ט חסר; ע מוסיף מעל לשורה: ביבשה. התורן] עימטדל; ש חסר. 16יורה על שבירת התורן ואם היה שם שבתי] צימדל; ט חסר; שואם היה שם שבתאי. 17 ${ }^{17}$ שתיתה] עמ; יטשדל תחתיה. $\quad$ 18הנה] עמטשד; יל חסר. ${ }^{18}$ פיהיה שם] עימש; טדל חסר. 20 היה שבתי] צימטשל; ד צ. ט אלקפרה. ד מהחובלים; ש מתחבלים.

 33
 המזלות. 40ואחריהם] צימשדל; ט ואחרי כן.
planets in the eastern quadrant，travel east from the place where you are， and similarly for the other cardinal points；but do the opposite if there are malefic planets．${ }^{5}$（7）Know that Saturn in the third or ninth place is very bad for travel by water，because it signifies trouble and danger．（8）It has been verified by experience that a ship that departs during Saturn＇s hour will certainly sink．${ }^{6}$（9）Also be careful that the Moon is not with Saturn or in an unfortunate aspect with it；Mars indicates pirates and highwaymen．${ }^{7}$

3 （1）Māshā＇allāh said：Mars in the third or ninth place is more detri－ mental than Saturn 〈if the journey is by land〉，but Saturn is more detri－ mental than Mars in the aforementioned places 〈if the journey is $\rangle$ by sea．${ }^{1}$ （2）Know that the tenth place indicates the mast；so if Mars is there［i．e．， in the tenth place］，it signifies that the mast will break，and if Saturn is there，it signifies that the mast will be reversed［i．e．，the ship will capsize］． （3）The fourth place indicates the［＇a］［n］［q］［l］［i］［a］［h］，which is the slant－ ing bottom［of the ship］；${ }^{2}$ so if Saturn is there［i．e．，in the fourth place］，it signifies that much water will penetrate the ship；and if Mars 〈is there〉， it signifies that the deck will be broken．（4）If Saturn is in the seventh place，it signifies that the flag，that is，al－［＇a］［s］［p］［d］［h］，3 will fall．（5）If it ［Saturn］is in the ascendant sign，it signifies great danger because of bad advice by the sailors．${ }^{4}$

4 （1）The scientists of India said：Be careful not to begin a journey by sea when the Moon is in Pisces．（2）This is true，but if one of the benefic planets is in aspect or conjunction with it［the Moon］you should not be worried．${ }^{1}$（3）The Moon in Aries signifies that the ship will sail quickly．（4） It is also fortunate if it［the Moon］is in Taurus or Cancer，but it does not bode well if［the Moon］is in the place of burning，${ }^{2,3}$ and in the other signs it is middling，although the main thing is the aspects．（5）Know that Mars＇ hour is not unfortunate for traveling by sea，on condition that it［Mars］ is not burnt or retrograde；but it is unfortunate 〈for travel〉 by land．

5 （1）The astrologers agreed that it is very dangerous to take ship when one of the fiery signs $\langle$ is in the ascendant $\rangle .{ }^{1}$（2）The reason is well known： because then［when a fiery sign is in the ascendant］the eighth place， which signifies fear and death，${ }^{2}$ is a watery sign；after them［the fiery signs］〈the most dangerous are〉 the earthy signs，and the reason is well known：because the watery signs are in opposition to them［to the earthy signs］．${ }^{3}$（3）Best of all are the watery signs，${ }^{4}$ and next best are the airy signs．

6 (1) ואני אומר שאם היה כוכב טוב באחד מזלות האש, ובעל המזל במקום טוב ואינו נשרף ולא שב אחורנית1 ולא יא יתן הכח לבעל הבית השמיני, לא
 הבתים5. (3) ואם6 רצונך לצאת למלחמה, בין בים בים בין ביבשה7, תמצא זה8 ${ }^{6}$ בפורש בשער השביעי. (4) ויש לך להשמר אם הספינה הולכת9 ביום שיהיה השמש מושל היום10 במקום טוב, ואם בלילה הלבנה.

## 4§

1 ואם לא יכולת, שימנה במזל12 בתולה, בחצי המזי המזל הראשון, ואם לא יכולת, שי שימנה
 בגלגל הגדול, אז יותר טוב, והשמר שלא תתן16 הכח אל אל כוכב שו שהוא יוא יורד אל מקום שפלותו, ולא לכוכב שהוא שב אחורנית17 או נשרף.

2 מבט טוב, אז יותר טוב. (2) ומאדים19 הורס. והנה, אם היה באחת היתדות המזל

 כחה לו26 ולא יהיה הכוככ נשרף ולא שב אחורנית²7, אז הוא יותר טוב שאין למעלה ממנו.

3 (1) אמר מאשא אללה 38 כי להחל 29 בנין30 במזל עקרב הוא דבר קשה, כי לא תהיה לו313 אחרית טובה. (2) גם אמר בספר השאלות שלו כי זה המזל הואבין ${ }^{32}$ כולו כזב, ואם
 גם37 יש לך לשמור בתחלת הבנין בעל השעה, כי יש לו כח גדול. (4) ואם הי38 היה בעל
 חסר. ${ }^{5}$ זה נסיתי פעמים רבות כי כח גדול יש לככבים מן הבתים] עישל; מד חסר. ט ואין.
 עימטשד; ל חסר. 14 ממזל תאומים] צימטשל; ד מתאומים. 16 תתן] צימטשל; ד חסר. 19ומאדים] צימטשד; ל ולמאדים. הלבנה] עימל; ש או עם שאר יתדות הלבנה; ד או עם יתדות הלבנה; ט והלבנה באחד יתדות. עימטשל; ד לשים. בישיתיתן] צימטשד; ל שתתן. בבית העשירי] צימשדל; ט חסר. אללה] על; י מאשאלה; טד משאללה; מ מאשללה; ש משאלה.
 והיה; ל חסר. אדם ... הדין יהיה כזב] צימטשד; ל חסר. ל37גם] צימטשד; ל ואם. לואם] צימשדל; ט אם.

6 （1）But I say that if a benefic planet is in one of the fiery signs，and the lord of the sign is in a fortunate position and is neither burnt nor retrograde and does not give power to the lord of the eighth place，the fiery sign will not cause any harm to someone who takes ship（when the fiery sign is in the ascendant $\rangle$ ．（2）I have tested this many times：the planets have more power than the signs．（3）If you wish to wage war，by sea or by land，you will find this explained in Section 7 〈below〉．${ }^{1}$（4）Be careful，if the ship sails by day，that the Sun，which is the lord of the day，is in a fortunate place；and if 〈the ship sails〉 at night，〈the same with regard to）the Moon．

## $\S 4$

1 （1）The fourth place．If you wish to begin a building，put the Moon in Taurus，Leo，or Aquarius．${ }^{1}$ If you cannot do this，put it［the Moon］in Virgo，in the first half of the sign，and if you cannot do this，put in the first half of Gemini．（2）It is more auspicious if you can do this when it ［the Moon］gives power to a planet that is ascending on its great circle，${ }^{2}$ but be careful that it［the Moon］does not give power to a planet that is descending to its perigee or to a planet that is retrograde or burnt．${ }^{3}$

2 （1）Know that Saturn has a great power over a building．So it is more auspicious if it［Saturn］aspects the Moon or the sign of the ascendant in a fortunate aspect．（2）But Mars is a destroyer．So if it［Mars］is in one of the cardines of the ascendant sign or in one of the cardines of the Moon，${ }^{1}$ the building will be destroyed．${ }^{2}$（3）If you can put the lord of the ascendant sign in the tenth place，if it［the lord of the ascendant sign］gives its power to a planet that is in the tenth place，or if the Moon gives its power to it［the aforementioned planet］and the planet is neither burnt nor retrograde，this is very auspicious and nothing can be better．${ }^{3}$

3 （1）Māshā＇allāh said that it is ill－fated to begin a building in Scorpio ［i．e．，when Scorpio is in the ascendant］，because it will not have a good end．${ }^{1}$（2）He also said in his Book of Interrogations that this sign is false through and through，${ }^{2}$ and that if someone asks you a question for an interrogation and Scorpio is in the ascendant you should not pronounce any judgment，because the whole judgment will be false．${ }^{3}$（3）When you begin a building you should take account of the lord of the hour，because

השצה שבתי או הלבנה, הם טובים מהכוכבים הטובים, ושצת השמש אמצעית, ושעת מאדים או כוכב חמה¹ אין למטה ממנה.

4 (1) ואם רצית לקנות קרקע,שים בעל הבית הרביעי במקום טוב ולא יהיה נשרף ולא שב אחורנית². (2) ואם יביט שבתי מבט טוב אל המעלה הצומחת ואל הבית הרביעי מבט טוב, אז יותר טוב. (3) והשמר שלא תהיה הלבנה במבט רע עם אחד מהמזיקים, וכל שכן מאדים.

5 (1) ואם רצית לעשות דבר מכוסה שלא יגלה3, שים הלבנה תחת אור השמש ובעל המזל הצומח כך. ואם לא4 יכולת, שימנו בבית הרביעי | על מנת שלא יתן כחו לכוכב שהוא למעלה מן הארץ. (2) ואם רצית לבחור שצה לבקש דבר5 נסתר תחת הארץ6, השמר שלא יהיה שבתי באחת היתדות, כי יתעכב הדבר ולא ימצא. (3) ואםך זה שתבקש הוא ביום, שים השמש באחת היתדות8, ואם בלילה, עשה ככה ללבנה, ויהיה

בעל השעה אחד מן המאורות או צדק או נגה, ושצות האחרים רעות9.

1 (1) הבית החמישי10: מי שרוצה להתחבר עם אשתו בשצה שיהיה לו בן זכר, השמר שלא תהיה השצה" ${ }^{11}$ מהשצות הזוגות ביום או בלילה. (2) ושים כוכב ${ }^{12}$ צדק ${ }^{12}$ בו1 במקום טוב אם יכולת44, כי יש לו כח גדול בבנים, ואם יכולת להיותו במזל זכר או מזרחי מהשמש או ברביצית שהוא בחלק5 זכר"17 או18 במזל זכר, ואם בלילה עשה כן ללבנה. (4) ושים בעל השעה כוככ זכר, ואם הוא נקבה שימנה במזל זכר או ברביצית זכר, וככה בעל הבית החמישי, אם יכולת ${ }^{19}$ (5) והשמר 20 שלא יהיה23 ${ }^{20}$ מאדים או שבתי בבית החמישי, או יביטו אליו מבט רביעית או נכח22, כי יורו על נפל23. (6) ודע כי שמחת נגה בבית החמישי24. והנה, אם

[^41]it has great power．（4）If the lord of the hour is Saturn or the Moon， they are more auspicious than the benefic planets，but the Sun＇s hour is intermediate，while the hours of Mars and Mercury are the worst．

4 （1）If you wish to buy land，put the lord of the fourth place in a fortunate position when it is neither burnt nor retrograde．${ }^{1}$（2）It is more auspicious if Saturn is in a fortunate aspect with the ascendant degree or a fortunate aspect with the fourth place．（3）Be careful not to do this when the Moon is in an unfortunate aspect with any of the malefic planets， particularly with Mars．${ }^{2}$

5 （1）If you want to do something in secret and not have it revealed，put the Moon and the lord of the ascendant sign under the ray of the Sun．${ }^{1}$ If you cannot do this，put it［the lord of the ascendant sign］in the fourth place，but only if it does not give its power to a planet that is above the Earth．（2）If you wish to choose an hour to find something hidden under ＜the surface of the earth，be careful not to do this when Saturn is in one of the cardines，because it will be held back and will not be found．${ }^{2}$（3）If the object your are seeking is 〈to be found $\rangle$ by day，put the Sun in one of the cardines，and if by night do the same with the Moon，when the lord of the hour is one of the luminaries or Jupiter or Venus；but the other hours are unfortunate．${ }^{3}$

1 （1）The fifth place．A man who wishes to have sexual intercourse with his wife at an hour when he will father a son ${ }^{1}$ should take care that it is not an even－numbered hour of the day or the night．${ }^{2}$（2）If you can，put Jupiter in a fortunate position，because it has great power for sons；and， if you can，it is more auspicious to put it in a masculine sign，or oriental of the Sun，or in a masculine quadrant．${ }^{3,4}$（3）During the day，put the Sun in a masculine quadrant or in a masculine sign；by night，do the same thing for the Moon．（4）Put a masculine planet as the lord of the hour， but if it is a feminine 〈planet〉 put it in a masculine sign or in a mascu－ line quadrant；the same applies to the lord of the fifth place，if you can．${ }^{5}$ （5）Be careful that Mars or Saturn is not in the fifth place and that they are not in an aspect of quartile or opposition with it，because they sig－ nify a miscarriage．（6）Know that Venus＇joy is in the fifth place．${ }^{6}$ Conse－ quently，if it［Venus］is there［in the fifth place］and it is occidental of the

היה שם והוא מערבי מן השמש והמזל זכר, אין צריך לתקן כל מה שהזכרתי1, כי בזה די לך. (7) ואם תרצה שתהיה לך נקבה² הפך הצניץ³.

2 (1) הרוצה ללבוש בגד חדש, ישים הלבנה במחברת עם אחד מהכוכבים הטובים או במבט טוב עם ${ }^{4}$ השמש. (2) ואם יביט מאדים מבט רע אל הלבנה או יהיה במחברת
 הבגד מיד. (3) אמר בטלמיוס: דבר זה נסו הקדמונים, כי9 מי שי שילבשי10 בגד חדש והלבנה במזל אריה, יפול עליו אשי11. והודו לוי12 כל הבאים אחריו, ולו ולא הזכירו כלל

 והנה יחשב בית השמש כאלן22 יש לו כח השמש.

3 (1) והרוצה לתקן סצודה לשמוח23 בה, ישמר שלא תהיה הלבנה 34 עם מאדים או
 קטטות. (2) מחברת הלבנה עם נגה ומבטיו טוב ממחברת צדק ומבטיו.

4 (1) ואם תרצה להעתיק הילד משדי אמו, שים הלבנה במחברת צדק או מבטיו, ויהיה בעל המזל הצומח מהיר בהליכתו, ולא יהיה נשרף ולא שב אחורנית חנוך: אם היתה הלבנה במחברת נגה בעת העתקת הילד משדי אמו, לא תוליד עוד אמו לעולם. (3) ודורוניוס27 ומאשא אללה"28 ואבו מעשר29 אמרו כי נסו זה ${ }^{29}$ ועלתה31
 טעמם. (2) כמו שאמר35, כי הנולד בסוף דגים ישרף באש. ונסו אחריו רבי בים וכים וכן יצא וֹא להם³. (3) ואמר כי הנולר במעלת שלשים מגדי או מעקרב הוא בן זנונים37. ודבר זה

[^42]Sun and in a masculine sign，there is no need to calculate everything I have mentioned，because this will be enough for you．（7）If you want to have a daughter do just the opposite．

2 （1）Someone who wants to put on a new garment should put the Moon in conjunction with one of the benefic planets or in a fortunate aspect with the Sun．（2）If Mars forms an unfortunate aspect with the Moon or is in conjunction with it，it signifies that the garment will soon be torn because of a quarrel；and if Saturn 〈aspects the Moon〉，it signifies that the garment will get dirty at once．（3）Ptolemy said：the Ancients have proved by experience that if someone puts on a new garment when the Moon is in Leo，it will be burnt．${ }^{1}$ All 〈the astrologers〉 who came after him agreed with him，but did not give any explanation．（4）In my opinion，this is because it［Leo］is the Sun＇s house，for it is known that it is unfortunate to commence something when the Moon is with the Sun， except for something that someone wishes to conceal；and the Sun＇s house is considered to have the Sun＇s power．

3 （1）Someone who wants to prepare a feast and celebration should be careful not to do so when the Moon is with Mars or forms an unfortunate aspect with it，nor when Mars is in the fifth place or in any of the cardines of the ascendant，because it signifies quarrels．（2）The Moon＇s conjunction and aspects with Venus are more auspicious than the 〈Moon＇s〉 conjunc－ tion and aspects with Jupiter．${ }^{1}$

4 （1）If you want to wean a child from its mother＇s breast，put the Moon in conjunction with Jupiter or in aspect with it，and do this when the lord of the ascendant sign is moving rapidly and is neither burnt nor retrograde．${ }^{1}$（2）Enoch ${ }^{2}$ said：if the Moon is in conjunction with Venus when a child is weaned，his mother will never give birth again．（3） Dorotheus，Māshāallāh，and Abū Ma＇shar³ said that they had tested this by experience and verified it．

5 （1）And I heard and did not understand［Dan．12：8］；for there are many things in Enoch＇s Book of Secrets ${ }^{1}$ whose reason is not clear to us．（2）For instance：he said that whoever is born in the end of Pisces［i．e．，when the Sun in its annual path arrives at the end of Pisces］will be burnt．Many have tested this by experience after him and verified it．${ }^{2}$（3） $\mathrm{He}\langle$ also $\rangle$ said that anyone born in Capricorn $30^{\circ}$ or Scorpio $30^{\circ}$［i．e．，when the Sun in its annual path arrives at Capricorn $30^{\circ}$ or Scorpio $30^{\circ}$ ］is an illegitimate

מנוסה ולא נודע טעמו. (4) גם אמר כי אם היה המרחק בין שבתי ובין השמש במולד אדם שמונים ושתים מעלות, יהיה סומא באחת מעיניו. ואני ראיתי כך¹ במולדים² רבים, וזה תימה כי אין זה מבט רביעית גמור.

## 6§

1 1 (1) הבית הששי³: הרוצה לקנות עבד, ישמור שלא תהיה הלבנה במזל אריה, כי4 יורה על אכלן גדול, ואם בבתי מאדים או מזל גדי, יהיה גנב. (2) ואם שמת הלבנה במזלות5 שהם על צורת בן6 אדם, אז הוא טוב מאד.

2 (1) אמר מאשא אללה7 אם היתה הלבנה במזל דגים, יורה כי לא יהיה לב8 העבד 134 טוב על9 אדניו כי יחשדנו שלא יעשה10 לו רו רצה. (2) ואם היתה אז טוב12, ויורה13 שיאהבי14 אדוניו בכל נפשו515. (3) ואם היתה במזל קשת, יתו יתגבר
 והשפחות, ואם היה במזל הצומח, אז טוב מאוד. (5) ומזלות מהם הצומח30, כמו כן טוב ${ }^{20}$ מאד ${ }^{22}$ (6) ואם היתה הלבנה עם אחד המזיקים באחד היתדות או בסמוכים 24, אז25 יורה כי יבא לו נזק על ידי העבד, ואם עם הטובים, יבוא²6 לו ריוח.

3 (1) אמר מאשא אללה": 3 טוב הוא נגה ${ }^{28}$ בענין הזה מצדק, והדין עמו בעבור כי הוא כוכב שפל. (2) והשמר שלא יהיה המזל הצומח 3 (29 אריה או טלה והשמש במקום טוב, כי30 אז ישתרר על אדוניו. (3) ודרך השפחה על מנהג העבד ${ }^{30}$ (21, רק מזל שור ובתולה טובים לשפחות ומזל מאזנים ותאומים32 טובים לעבדים33, הנקבות לנקבות ${ }^{32}$ וה והזכרים לזכרים.

[^43]child．This has been tested by experience but the reason is not known．（4） He also said that if the distance between Saturn and the Sun in a man＇s natal horoscope is $82^{\circ}$ ，he will be blind in one eye．I have seen this in many natal horoscopes，and it is amazing because this aspect is not fully quartile．

1 （1）The sixth place．Someone who wants to buy a slave should be careful not to do this when the Moon is in Leo，because it signifies that he［the slave］will be a glutton；${ }^{1}$ if 〈he buys a slave〉 when it［the Moon］is in 〈one of〉 the houses of Mars［i．e．，Scorpio and Aries］or in Capricorn， he［the slave］will be a thief．（2）It is very auspicious if you put the Moon in the signs with a human shape．${ }^{2,3}$

2 （1）Māshā allāh said：If the Moon is in Pisces，it signifies that the slave will not be fond of his master because he［the slave］will suspect that he［the master］will mistreat him．${ }^{1}$（2）It is auspicious if the Moon is in Taurus，because it signifies that he［the slave］will love his master with all his heart．（3）If it［the Moon］is in Sagittarius，he［the slave］will overpower his master and want to run away．（4）Know that Mercury has a great power in affairs related to male and female slaves；${ }^{2}$ it is very auspicious if it［Mercury］is in the ascendant sign．（5）It is also very auspicious if one of the earthy signs is in the ascendant．（6）If the Moon is with one of the malefic 〈planets〉 in one of the cardines or in the succedent $\langle$ places $\rangle,{ }^{3}$ it signifies that he［the master］will be harmed by the slave，but if $\langle$ the Moon is $\rangle$ with the benefics，he will have profit from him．

3 （1）Māshāallāh said：Venus is more auspicious than Jupiter in this matter［buying slaves］；and he is correct，because it［Venus］is a lower planet．（2）Be careful that Leo or Aries is not the ascendant sign when the Sun is in a fortunate position，because he［the slave］will gain control over his master．（3）The rules for female slaves are like those for male slaves， but Taurus and Virgo are auspicious for female slaves whereas Libra and Gemini are auspicious for male slaves，$\langle$ that is，$\rangle$ feminine $\langle$ signs $\rangle$ for female $\langle$ slaves $\rangle$ and masculine $\langle$ signs $\rangle$ for male $\langle$ slaves $\rangle .{ }^{1}$

4 (1) והרוצה לקנות מקנה דק¹ 4 (1) כמו הצאן, יתקן מקום כוכב חמה² והלבנה, כי שניהם יורו על כל בהמה דקה, והשמר שלא יהיה כוכב מזיק במזל טלה. (2) ואם רצית לקנות שור לא יהיה כוכב מזיק במזל שור, ואם לקנות עוף שים הלבנה בבתולה או בדגים³ או בדלי, כי אלה הם בעלי הכנפים.

## 7 §

1



 השמיני17, פן18 יסתכן בעצמו, ולא בששי ולא בשנים העשר, כי יתפש בשביה. (4) ואם יכולת, שימנו בבית העשירי או עשתי עשר או החמישי או במזל הצומח, אם הוא ביתו.

2 הצומח בבית השביעי, כי הוא מנוצח, ואם בעל הבית השביעי יהי יהיה בוּ במזל הצומח, ינוצח האויב. והנה אמרו: איך נדין ${ }^{21}$ אם היה המזל בי הצו הצומח עקרב ויהיה מאדים בבית

 האויב; כי הוא28 אמר בספר הנסיונות שלו כי יותר טוב הוא שיהיה ${ }^{29}$ המזל הצומח לכוכב עליון30 ויהיה חצי תקיף ${ }^{31}$ מאשר יהיה הצומח לכוכב שפל והוא בתקפן232. (4) והנה33 אבו מעשר אמרי ומאדים בשור, כי יבא נזק לשניהם, ואם היה נגה בעל השביעי36 בתקפו", ינצח האויב הויב, והפך הדבר אם לא היה בתקפוי38.

Tדק*] מדילטש; ע כך. 4 ${ }^{4}$ צשיעי] עימטשד; ל השמיני.
 בבתי; ל חסר. 33 13שרף] צימדשל; ט נשל. עימטדל; ש בית ב'. עדש פן; ל חסר. ש היה בעל בית ז׳. לור ל דוריינוס; ש דוריאנוס; ל דורוניאוס. הצומח] עימדשל; ט חסר. ${ }^{26}{ }^{26}$ שומא אללה] על; יומאשא אלה; ד ומשאללה; מומאשאללה; שומשאלה; ט מאשללה. 27 27נצח] צימטשד; ל חסר. כשיהיה; ל שיהיה. ${ }^{33}$ בצליון] צימטד; של העליון.

 בתקפו] צימטשד; ל חסר.

4 （1）Someone who wants to buy small cattle，like sheep，should calculate the position of Mercury and the Moon，because both signify small cattle， but be careful that there is not a malefic planet in Aries．（2）If you want to buy an ox，be careful not to do this when a malefic planet is in Taurus；${ }^{1}$ if 〈you want to buy〉 poultry，put the Moon in Virgo，Pisces，or Aquarius， because they are winged．${ }^{2}$

1 （1）The seventh place．This place signifies three things：wars，women， and partners．（2）So，if you wish to choose $\langle$ a time〉 for waging a war or sending out a commander by land，put the ascendant sign in one of houses of the upper planets．（3）Mars＇houses are more auspicious，on condition that Mars is neither burnt nor retrograde ${ }^{1}$ nor in the second place－because in this case he［the commander］himself will destroy his camp，inasmuch as the second place signifies the army；nor in the eighth place，lest he himself be in danger；nor in the sixth or the twelfth place， because he will be taken prisoner．${ }^{2}$（4）If you can，put it［Mars］in the tenth，eleventh，or fifth place，or in the ascendant sign，if it is its［Mars＇］ house．

2 （1）There is a great dispute among the astrologers．All agree that if the lord of the ascendant sign is in the seventh place，he［the commander］ will be defeated，and if the lord of the seventh place is in the ascendant sign the enemy will be defeated．But they［the astrologers］asked：how should we pass judgment if Scorpio is the ascendant sign and Mars is in the seventh place，in Taurus？（2）Now Dorotheus judged that＜in this case〉 the lord of the ascendant sign［i．e．，Mars］will cause harm to him［the commander］and he will be defeated．（3）But Māshāallāh said：inasmuch as it［Mars］is an upper planet，he［the commander］will be victorious over the enemy；for he［Māshā’allāh］said in his Book of Experiences ${ }^{1}$ that it is more auspicious if $\langle$ the lord of $\rangle$ the ascendant sign is an upper planet in half its strength than if 〈the lord of the sign of $\rangle$ the ascendant is a lower planet in its full strength．（4）Abū Ma＇shar said that he tested this many times 〈and proved〉 that if Scorpio is the rising sign and Mars is in Taurus，both armies will be battered；if Venus is the lord of the seventh 〈place〉 and is in full strength，the enemy will be victorious， and the opposite holds if it is not in full strength．${ }^{2}$

3 (1) ואם יכולת לשום¹ בעל הבית השביעי נשרף² או חוזר אחורנית³ או בבית השני
 היה הצומח4 אריה או טלה. (3) ויש לך לדשעת כי אם אם היה כוכב עליון בבית כוכב שפל
 אחד9 מאלה המזלות. (4) ולא תחוש מבעל הבית, כי10 ידוע בוע הוא כי כל כוכב שיהיה במזל הצומח, אם אין לו בו ממשלה, הוא משתתף עם בעל המזל הו1" הצומח²12, ואם יש לו בו13 ממשלה, אין שותפות לבעל המזל הצומח עמו.

4 (1) אמר מאשא אללה 4 (14: שים הלבנה, בכל מבחר למלחמה5 ${ }^{15}$, מתפרדת ${ }^{16}$ מכוכב ${ }^{17}$ טוב או מכוכב18 תקיף במקומו, אי זה מהם שיהיה, אם הוא מקבל הלבנהי19 בין במחברת20 בין21 במבט, אי זה מבט שיהיה. (2) ושימנה שתתן הכח לכוכב שהוא תחת
 כי הכוכב שנתפרדה הלבנה ממנו יורה על היוצא ${ }^{25}$ למלחמה והכוכב יורה על האויב. והשמר שלא תעשה הפך מה שאמרנו. (3) ואם לא יכולת, שים הל הלבנה
 הצומח או עם בעליו, כי אזי28 יורה כי יקשור וזה הכלל: אם יכולת ${ }^{30}$ שיתן הכח בעל הבית השביעי לבעל המזל הצומח מאי זה מבט שיהיה, אז הוא טוב. (5) ואם היה מבט אהבה, יבקש האויב להשלים עמו, ואם ואי איבה תהיה מלחמה וינצחה האי האויב, והשמר שלא תעשה הפך הדבר. (6) ואם היה אחד המזיקים באחד היתדות, שני המחנות
 מביט בין לטובים ובין לרעים, יכניס ביניהם דברי בטלה"38.

 סרטן] צימטשל; ד בסרטן. ${ }^{8}$ הצומח] צימטשל; ד חסר. ${ }^{\text {צ }}$ ] ל חסר. ${ }^{11}{ }^{11}$ אין לו בו ממשלה הוא משתתף עם בעל המזל] עימטשד; ל חסר.
 ש משאלה. ר״ל אחר הקבול וזהו אמרו אם הוא מקבל. ד ומכוכב. ${ }^{19}{ }^{19}$ ] עימטשל; ד הכח. ימט ובין; שאו. 25 ${ }^{25}$ פתרדה הלבנה ממנו יורה על היוצא] עימטשד; ל חסר. 26למלחמה והכוכב] צימדש; ל למלחמת שהכוכב; ט למלחמה והכח. ${ }^{27}$ השני] $^{27}$ [טמטל; ד השמיני. עמטדשל; י'יקשה.
 טובים] צימטשד; ל חסר. 36כי] צימטשד; ל חסר. ${ }^{36}$ [כבב חמה] צימטשל; ד כובת. ${ }^{38}$ בטלה] ציטשל;

3 （1）If you can put the lord of the seventh place when it is burnt or retrograde，or in the second，sixth or twelfth place，this is auspicious．${ }^{1}$
（2）Be careful that the Sun is not in the ascendant sign，unless Leo［i．e．， the Sun＇s house］or Aries［i．e．，the Sun＇s exaltation］is the ascendant．${ }^{2}$（3） You should know that if an upper planet is in the house of a lower planet and holds lordship there－such as Saturn in Libra［i．e．，Libra is Saturn＇s exaltation and Mercury＇s house］or Jupiter in Cancer［Cancer is Jupiter＇s exaltation and the Moon＇s house］－make one of these signs［i．e．，a sign that is the upper planet＇s exaltation and the house of a lower planet］the ascendant sign．${ }^{3}$（4）Do not be concerned about the lord of the house， because it is known that any planet that is in the ascendant sign，if it does not hold lordship there，is in partnership with the lord of the ascendant sign；and if it does hold lordship there，the lord of the ascendant sign has no partnership with it．

4 （1）Māshā’allāh said：in any election about war，put the Moon so that it parts from a benefic planet or from a strong planet in its position，either one，on condition that it receives the Moon either in conjunction or in aspect，${ }^{1}$ in whichever aspect it may be．（2）And put it［the Moon］so that it gives power to a planet that is under 〈the ray of the Sun or retrograde or weak in its position or in a cadent place，and the reason is that the planet from which the Moon parts signifies the side that launches the war and the planet to which it［the Moon］gives power signifies the enemy．Be careful not to do the opposite of what we have just mentioned．${ }^{2}$（3）If you cannot do this，put the Moon when it secludes itself；but be careful not to do this when the lord of the second place is in quartile or opposition to the ascendant sign or its lord，because then it［the lord of the second place］signifies that his army will mutiny against him and refuse to accept his authority．（4）This is the general rule：it is auspicious if you can do this when the lord of the seventh place gives power to the lord of the ascendant sign，in any aspect．${ }^{3}$（5）If 〈it gives power from〉 an aspect of love，the enemy will seek to make peace，and if 〈from an aspect of $\rangle$ antagonism，there will be war and the enemy will be victorious；but be careful not to do the opposite．（6）If one of the malefics is in one of the cardines，both armies will be battered；but if one of the benefic planets is there［in one of the cardines］，good people will mediate between them and set things right［i．e．，reconcile them］．（7）Know that if Mercury aspects either benefic or malefic planets，it will instill nonsense between them．

5 (1) אמר אבו מעשר: אם יביטו¹ כוכבים רבים אל המזל הצומח², יהיה³ לו צוזרים | 5 (136 רבים4. (2) ואם בעל הבית השמיני5 יביט מבט טוב, יברח מגדוד האויב אליו6. (3) ואם ללכת למלחמה בדרך הים’, אין מזל יותר טוב מעקרב, והשמר שלא תהיה הלבנה במזל שור, בעבור8 שהוא בית כבודה והוא בית האויב. (4) גם9 מזל דגים טוב, אם היה צדק או נגה במקום טוב. (5) ואם היה שם10 ככב חמהי, יספיק², או שיהיה נשרף או חוזר אחורנית או במזל אריה, שהוא בית שנים עשר לביתו, והשמר שלא יהיהוי13 במזל תאומים, כי הוא עשירי לביתו. (6) ומזל סרטן טוב אם היה צדק מזרחי מהשמש, והוא שם, או במזל דגים, שיהיה בחלוק ${ }^{14}$ הבית הצשירי כפי מרחב הארץ, או בטלה. ואם היתה הלבנה בסרטן או בשור או בטלה515, גם הוא טוב16. וכל זה אם לא היה מאדים במזל גדי17, ולא שבתי שם ולא במאזנים. (7) ואם לאיכולת להיות המזל אחד ${ }^{17}$ מאלה, שים המזל דלי אם השמש תתן19 כחה לשבתי באי זה מקום שיהיה, או תהיה במזל דלי20 או מאזנים, ויספיק. (8) והשמר ${ }^{21}$ שלא יהיה שבתי נשרף ולא שב אחורניתב22, ולא יביט אליו323 מאדים מבט רע, ואם (84 ${ }^{24}$ יביט אליו אחד מן הכוכבים הטובים, אז יותר טוב. (9) ואם לא יכולת להיות המזל 25 זה, שים המזל מאזנים, על מנת שתהיה השמש ומאדים בבתים נופלים ויהיה שבתי במקום טוב. (10) ואם לא יכולת, שים מזל העולה מזל26 גדי, ותשים27 בו הלבנה. (11) ואם היתה שם עם ${ }^{28}$ שבתי או עם מאדים12), אז יותר טוב, על מנת שלא יהיה שבתי או מאדים 13 נשרפים או או שבים אחורנית13. ${ }^{31}$ (12) והשמר שלא יהיה צדק במזל סרטן32, ואם לא יכולת, כך עשה שתעלה צד שיהיה הוא בבית השישי35. (13) | ואם היה בסרטן והואא נשרף או שב אחורנית"37, 2136 לא תחוש לו באי זה מקום שיהיה.

6 (1) המבקש לקחת אשה, שים נגה והלבנה במקומות טובים 38, ואם יכולת שיביט נגה אל הלבנה, אז יותר טוב. (2) והשמר שלא יהיה מאדים באחד היתדות, כיוצי יורה על מריבות ופירוד, והוא יותר רע בענין הזה משבתי40. (3) ומאשא אללה14 אמר כי נגה

[^44]5 （1）Abū Ma＇shar said：if many planets aspect the ascendant sign，he ［the commander］will have many allies．（2）If the lord of the eighth place is in a fortunate aspect，〈people〉 will desert the enemy army and join him．${ }^{1}$（3）No sign is more auspicious than Scorpio 〈for sending an army〉 to war by sea，${ }^{2}$ but be careful not to do this when the Moon is in Taurus， because it is the house of its［the Moon＇s］exaltation and the enemy＇s place．${ }^{3}$（4）Pisces is also auspicious，if Jupiter or Venus is in a fortunate position．（5）It is sufficient if Mercury is there［in Pisces］，or burnt or retrograde ${ }^{4}$ or in Leo，which is the twelfth sign after its［Mercury＇s］house ［i．e．，Virgo］，but be careful that it［Mercury］is not in Gemini，because it is the tenth $\langle$ sign $\rangle$ after its house［i．e．，Virgo］．（6）Cancer is auspicious if Jupiter is oriental of the Sun and it［Jupiter］is there［Cancer］or in Pisces， on condition that it［Pisces］is in the tenth place in the division＜of the places $\rangle$ according to the latitude of the country，${ }^{5}$ or in Aries．It is also auspicious if the Moon is in Cancer，Taurus，or Aries．All this is true if Mars is not in Capricorn，nor Saturn there［in Capricorn］or in Libra．${ }^{6}$ （7）If you cannot do this when the sign is one of the aforementioned〈signs〉，put Aquarius 〈in the ascendant〉 if the Sun gives its power to Saturn in any place whatsoever；otherwise do this when it［the Sun］is in Aquarius or Libra，and this will be sufficient．（8）Be careful not to do this when Saturn is burnt or retrograde，or when Mars is in an unfortunate aspect with it［Saturn］．It is more auspicious if one of the benefic planets aspects it［Saturn］．（9）But if you cannot do this when the sign is $\langle$ one of〉 the aforementioned $\langle$ signs $\rangle$ ，put Libra 〈in the ascendant〉，but only if the Sun and Mars are in cadent places and that Saturn is in a fortunate position．（10）If you cannot do this，put Capricorn as the rising sign and put the Moon in it［in the ascendant］．（11）It is more auspicious if it ［the Moon］is there［in Capricorn］with Saturn or with Mars，but only if neither Saturn nor Mars is burnt or retrograde．（12）Be careful that Jupiter is not in Cancer；${ }^{7}$ but if you cannot，set it so that there are as many degrees of Capricorn in the ascendant as necessary so that it［Jupiter］is in the sixth place．${ }^{8}$（13）But if it［Jupiter］is in Cancer and it［Jupiter］is burnt or retrograde，do not be concerned about it，no matter where it is．

6 （1）Someone who inquires about getting married，put Venus and the Moon in fortunate positions；it is more auspicious if you can do this when Venus aspects the Moon．${ }^{1}$（2）Be careful that Mars is not one of the cardines，because it signifies quarrels and separation，and in this matter it［Mars］is worse than Saturn．（3）Māshāallāh said that Venus in the

בבית השביעי פעם יורה על אהבה ופעם על קטטה¹, וכוכב חמה² בבית השביעי³ מביא שבושי4. (4) ואם יכולת5 שיהיה בעל הבית השביעי במזל הצומח, או יתן כחו לבעל הבית6 הצומח, אז יותר טוב. (5) ואם לא יכולת, עשה שיהיה בין בעל מזל הצומח ובין בעל המזל7 השביעי מבט אהבה. (6) ואם היתה הלבנה באחד בתי8 מאדים, יורה על רע וקטטות9, ובביתה או באחד בתי נגה, תורה10 על טוב. (7) ומזל דגים טוב בענין
 ואם אלמנה בתי שבתי. (9) ואם תרצה לעשות מבחר לאשה"16 שתנשא"17 לבעלה, שים מקום שמש או מאדים במקום טוב, כי הם יורו על הבעלים, ואם יביט נגה אז יותר טוב, רק ${ }^{18}$ השמר שלא יהיה19 השמש או מאדים בבית השביעי כלל, כי הם20 יורו על פירוד, ושבתי במקום הזה לא יזיק כל כך. (10) אמר יעקב אל כנדי: אם תרצה לבחור לבעל מתי יכנם עם אשתו1, כך כך עשה22 שלא תהיה השעה מן הזוגות, ואם נקבה, קח שעת ${ }^{23}$ הזוגות, ושצת ${ }^{24}$ מאדים או השמש לאשה אינם רעים.

7 (1) ואם תרצה לבחור בדרך שותפות, שים צדק באחד היתדות, והשמר שלא יביט אליו מאדים מבט נכח או רביעית ולא יהיה באחד היתדות מזל | הצומח כי אם יהיה 137א יורה על אסונות וקטטות שיבואו ביניהם. (2) הסתכל אל המזל הטוב, אולי תשימנו במקום טוב ויביט בעליו אליו או כוכב טוב.

## 8§

1 (1) הבית השמיני26: הרוצה לברוח, ישמור שלא תהיה הלבנה במחברת מזיק או כוכב רע עמו, ולא יהיה בעל המזל הצומח תחת אור השמש ולא שב אחורנית ולא יתן הכח לכוכב שהוא שב אחורנית ${ }^{27}$ (2) ואם יכולת שלא יביט בעל הבית המזל הצומח ולא29 אל בעליו, אז יותר טוב. (3) ואם הלבנה מתבודדת גם הוא30 טוב,

[^45]seventh place sometimes signifies love and sometimes quarrels，and that Mercury in the seventh place brings about disturbance．（4）It is more auspicious if you can do this when the lord of the seventh place is in the ascendant sign，or when it gives its power to the lord of the ascendant． （5）If you cannot do this，try to form an aspect of love between the lord of the ascendant sign and the lord of the seventh place．（6）If the Moon is in one of Mars＇houses，it signifies misfortune and quarrels，and if it ［the Moon］is in its house or in one of Venus＇houses，it signifies good fortune．（7）Pisces is more auspicious than Sagittarius in this matter．（8） If the woman is a virgin，Mercury＇s houses are auspicious as well，but if she is a widow Saturn＇s houses 〈are suitable〉．（9）If you want to make an election for a woman to marry her husband，put the Sun and Mars in fortunate positions，${ }^{2}$ because they signify husbands，and it is more auspicious if Venus aspects $\langle$ them $\rangle$ ；but be careful not to do this when the Sun or Mars is in the seventh place，because they signify separation， although Saturn in this position does not do so much harm．（10）Ya＇qub al－Kindī said：if you wish to choose 〈a time〉 for the husband to have sexual intercourse with his wife $\langle$ to father a son $\rangle$ ，set it so that the hour is not even－numbered，and if $\langle$ to father $\rangle$ a female，take an even－numbered hour；the hours of Mars or the Sun＇s hours are not unfortunate for a woman．${ }^{3}$

7 （1）If you want to choose $\langle$ a time〉 to go into a partnership，put Jupiter in one of the cardines，but be careful not to do this when Mars aspects it ［Jupiter］in opposition or quartile，or it［Mars］is in one of the cardines of the ascendant sign，because in this case it signifies calamities and quarrels that will occur to them．${ }^{1}$（2）Find the lot of Fortune：${ }^{2}$ it is worthwhile to put it in a fortunate position when it is aspected by its lord or by a benefic planet．${ }^{3}$

1 （1）The eighth place．Someone who wants to run away should be careful that the Moon is not in conjunction with a harmful or malefic planet，or when the lord of the ascendant sign is under the Sun＇s ray or retrograde，or when it gives power to a retrograde planet．（2）It is more auspicious，if you can，not to do this when the lord of the seventh place aspects the ascendant sign or its lord．（3）It is also auspicious if 〈you can do this when $\rangle$ the Moon secludes itself，and even more auspicious if it

ואם לא תביט1 אל השמש ואל המזל הצומח, אז יותר טוב. (4) וזה הכלל: השמר שלא יהיה בעל הצומח² באחת היתדות, ואם יכולת שתשימנו בבית השלישי או התשיעי, או יתן כחו לכוכב שיהיה באלו הבתים, אז יותר טוב על מנת שלא יהיה הכוכב נשרף ולא שב אחורנית3.3 (5) ואם היה בעל המזל הצומח בבית הששי, יארע לו חולי ובעבורו יתפש, ואם בבית שנים העשר, יפול ביד אויביו. (6) ואם הבורח הוא עבד או אדם שירצה לברוח ממלך, השמר שלא תביט הלבנה אל השמש. (7) ואם יכולת שלא תביט השמש4 אל המזל5 הצומח, אז יותר טוב, והשמר שלא יהיה בעל הבית הצומח בבית הצשירי ולא יתן כחו לבעל הבית העשירי או לכוכב שהוא שם.

2 (1) והרוצה ללכת לבקש ממון של ירושה6, שים בעל הבית השמיני במזל הצומח, או שיהיה באחת היתדות או בבית עשתי עשר7 או בבית החמישי, ואם יתן הכח לבעל המזל8 הצומח או לבעל הבית השני, אז יותר טוב9. (2) ומבט מאדים מזיק בענין10 ול ולא כן מבט שבתי. (3) ואם |יכולת לשום צדק בבית השמיני גם הוא טוב, על מנת שלא 2137

יהיה נשרף ולא שב אחורנית|11.

1 (1) הבית התשיעי12: הרוצה ללכת בדרך סחורה313, שים14 לו הגורל15 הטוב במקום טוב, כי הוא עקר גדול בענין הסחורה, והשמר שלאיביט אליו מבט רע אחד מן המזיקים ולא בעל הבית השמיני16, אי זה כוכב שיהיה. (2) והשמר שלא יהיה בעל הבית השני בבית ${ }^{17}$ השמיני18, ואם היה באחד היתדות, אז יותר19 טוב, אם לא היה נשרף או שב אחורנית"2. (3) ואם היה כוכב חמה"21 במקום22 טוב, אז יותר טוב גם הוא שיהיה בעל המזל הצומח אחד מבתיו או בתי צדק.

[^46]［the Moon］aspects neither the Sun nor the ascendant sign．（4）This is the general rule：make sure that the lord of the ascendant is not in one of the cardines；it is more auspicious if you can put it［the lord of the ascendant］in the third or ninth place，or in such a way that it gives power to a planet located in these places，on condition that the planet is neither burnt nor retrograde．（5）But if the lord of the ascendant is in the sixth place，he［the person trying to run away］will fall ill and be captured as a result；and if 〈the lord of the ascendant is〉 in the twelfth place he will be captured by his enemies．（6）If the fugitive is a slave or someone who is trying to get away from a king，make sure that the Moon does not aspect the Sun．（7）It is more auspicious if you can put the Sun so that it does not aspect the ascendant sign，but be careful not to do this when the lord of the ascendant sign is in the tenth place or gives power to the lord of the tenth place or to a planet that is located there．

2 （1）Someone who wants to go and get the money of an inheritance， put $\langle$ for him $\rangle$ the lord of the eighth place in the ascendant sign，${ }^{1}$ or in one of the cardines or in the eleventh place or in the fifth place；but it is more auspicious if it［the lord of the eighth place］gives power to the lord of the ascendant sign or to the lord of the second place．（2）An aspect of Mars is detrimental for such an undertaking，but not an aspect of Saturn． （3）If you can put Jupiter in the eighth place，this too is auspicious，but only if it is neither burnt nor retrograde．

1 （1）The ninth place．Someone who wants to go on a journey in order to trade，put for him the lot of Fortune in a fortunate position，because it is a major root for trade；but be careful that none of the harmful 〈planets〉 aspects it［the lot of Fortune］，nor the lord of the eighth place，whichever planet that may be．${ }^{1}$（2）Be careful not to do this when the lord of the second place is in the eighth place；it is more auspicious if it［the lord of the second place］is in one of the cardines，on condition that it is neither burnt nor retrograde．（3）If Mercury is in a fortunate position， then it is more auspicious if the lord of the ascendant sign is $\langle\mathrm{in}\rangle$ one of its［Mercury＇s］houses［i．e．，Virgo and Gemini］or 〈in one〉 of Jupiter＇s houses［i．e．，Sagittarius and Pisces］．

2 (1) ואם ירצה אדם ללכת להקביל פני שר או שלטון, הסתכל: (2) אם הוא אדם זקן ויש לו פקידות, שים שבתי במקום טוב; ואם יביט אל המזל¹ הצומח ואל
 ואם לדיין או לחכם בתורות5, שים6 במקום שבתי שהזכרנו³ צדק. (4) ואם לשר


 האדם11, תקן מקום הלבנה. (9) ועל זה הדרך תעשה אם לכתוב כתב לאחד¹2 מאלה¹3 שהזכרנו.

3 (1) והרוצה ללכת ללמוד, יעשה מזלי14 הצומח מבתי כוכב חמה15, והשמר שלא ישוב אחורנית, ואם היה תחת אור השמש אל תחוש לוֹ ואו. (2) והשמר שלא יהיה אחד המזיקים16 באחד היתדות, ואם היה שבתי17 בבית התשיעי או השלישי לא | יזיק, רקי רק מאדים יזיק הרבה. (3) והשמש בבית התשיעי תועיל, והפך זה אם היתה בבית השלישי.
 הצומח עם שבתי או איזה מבט שיהיה, לא יזיק, ואף כי כוכב חמה²7, רק מחברת מאדים וכל מבטיו מזיקים. (5) אבל אם מבקשי 5 (5 ${ }^{26}$ חכמת רפואות ${ }^{27}$ ויביט מאדים מבט טוב, אז הוא טוב. (6) ואם ירצה ללמוד חכמת ההגיון, שים השמש במקום טוב, ואם תביט הלבנה אליה אי זה מבט שיהיה, אז יותר טוב.

## 10 §

1 (1) הבית העשירי28: הרוצה להכנס לשלטון29 למצוא חן בעיניו"30, ישים המזל הצומח אחד ממזלות האש, ואם לא יוכל, יהיה מזל הצומח ממזלות הרוח. (2) וישמר שלא תהיה השמש31 בבית השביעי, מאי זה מזל שיעלה, ולא בבית שנים העשר, ולא

[^47]2 （1）If someone wants to go and welcome a prince or ruler，pay attention〈and proceed as follows〉．（2）If he［the querent］is an old man who holds an official position，put Saturn in a fortunate position；it is more auspicious if it［Saturn］forms a fortunate aspect with the ascendant sign or its lord；it is also auspicious if it［Saturn］forms a fortunate aspect with the Moon．（3）If 〈he is going to welcome〉 a judge or a jurist，put Jupiter instead of the aforementioned Saturn．（4）If 〈he is going to welcome〉 a military commander，calculate the position of Mars 〈instead of the position of Jupiter or Saturn $\rangle$ ，but if you can not，put the ascendant sign in one of its［Mars＇］houses［i．e．，Scorpio and Aries］．（5）If 〈he is going to welcome〉 a king，calculate the position of the Sun．（6）If $\langle$ he is going to welcome $\rangle$ a princess or a eunuch，calculate the position of Venus．（7） If 〈he is going to welcome〉 a scholar in the secular sciences or a royal scribe，calculate the position of Mercury．${ }^{1}$（8）If $\langle$ he is going to welcome〉 anyone else，calculate the position of the Moon．（9）Proceed likewise if ＜he wants〉 to write a letter to any of the aforementioned people．

3 （1）Someone who wants to go on a journey in order to study should place the ascendant sign in one of Mercury＇s houses［Virgo and Gemini］； be careful that it［Mercury］is not retrograde，but pay it no attention if it is under the Sun＇s ray．（2）Be careful that none of the malefics is in one of the cardines；but if Saturn is in the ninth or third place it will not cause harm， although Mars 〈in these houses〉 is very harmful．${ }^{1}$（3）The Sun in the third place is beneficial，and the opposite if it is in the third place．The opposite applies to the Moon，which is beneficial in the third place but detrimental in the ninth $\langle$ place $\rangle$ ．（4）If the lord of the ascendant sign is with Saturn or forms any aspect 〈with Saturn〉，it will not cause harm，particularly 〈if it is with Mercury，but conjunction or any aspect with Mars causes harm．（5） If he wants $\langle$ to study $\rangle$ medicine，it is auspicious if Mars forms a fortunate aspect 〈with the Moon or Mercury〉．${ }^{2}$（6）If he wants to study logic，put the Sun in a fortunate position；it is more auspicious if the Moon is in any aspect with it．${ }^{3}$

1 （1）The tenth place．Someone who wants to have an audience with the ruler to win his favor，should put one of the fiery signs as the ascendant sign，but，if he can not，the ascendant sign should be $\langle$ one $\rangle$ of the airy signs．（2）He should be careful that the Sun is not in the seventh place，

יהיה בעל המזל1 הצומח תחת אור השמש, רק אם היו שניהם במזל אריה או טלה²,
 הצומח מזל7 בתולה אם היתה השמש בטלה או באריה, כי אם היה כן הממלך יחבשנו ויהרגנו. (4) ואם היה9 המזל הצומח תאומים, הוא טוב, ואם המזל ${ }^{10}$ הצומח11 צקרב והשמשי12 שם ${ }^{13}$ גם גם 14 הוא טוב, בעבור שהוא בעל הבית העשירי. (5) וכך15 עשה שלא יעלה מעקרב מעלות רבות, בעבור שתהיה השמש בעלת הבית העשירי בחלוק הבתים כפי מצעדי לוחה ${ }^{16}$ הארץ, כי יותר כח ישלמי שהוא ממונה על הצשירי שהוא ככה מאשר (6) יש לבעל17 הבית העשירי בחשבון מעלות ישרות. כלי 18 חכמי המזלות מודים כן. (6) ואם לא יכולת | למצוא מזל יותר טוב ממזל גדי, השמר שלא תהיה השמשי במזל ${ }^{19}$ בוֹ ${ }^{20} 138$ הצומח, בעבור שהיא בעלת ${ }^{21}$ הבית השמיני כנגד מזל גדי. (7) ואם המזל הצומח דלי ושם השמש, גם הוא טוב מאוד, ואם היא²2 במזל סרטן והוא המזל הצומח, היא בינוניתב23 ואם היתה בדגים או בבתולה ואחד מהם במזל24 הצומח525 היא רעה, בעבור שהיא בעלת בית רע 27 כנגד המזל הצומח. (8) גם 28 השמר שלאיהיה בעל המזל הצומח מבט נכח עם השמש ולא מבט ויהיה המזל העולה אי זה מזל שיהיה, היא טובה. (9) ושתף עמה בעל הבית העשירי כנגד המזל הצומח, והשמר שלא יהיה באחת היתדות נשרף או חוזר אחורנית.31.

2 (1) והרוצה לבחור32 יום למלך שישב33 צל כסאו בתחילה, ישים השמש במזל עומד ותהיה במעלה הצומחת או בבית העשירי או בבית עשתי צשר. (2) והשמר שלא תהיה
 כי אם היתהה ${ }^{40}$ יקשרו עליו עבדיו. (3) וככה, ישמר שלא יהיה בעל הבית הרביעי

[^48]＜counting〉 from any rising sign，nor in the twelfth place，nor when the lord of the ascendant sign is under the Sun＇s ray．But if both［the Sun and the lord of the ascendant sign］are in Leo or Aries［Leo is the Sun＇s house and Aries is the Sun＇s exaltation］，this will be only slightly detrimental． （3）If Mercury is the lord of the ascendant sign，he should take care that Virgo［Mercury＇s house］is not the ascendant sign when the Sun is in Aries［the Sun＇s exaltation］or in Leo［the Sun＇s house］，because if so the king will put him in prison and kill him．（4）It is auspicious if Gemini is the ascendant sign；it is also auspicious if Scorpio is the ascendant sign and the Sun is there，because it［the Sun］is the lord of the tenth place．${ }^{1}$（5）Proceed in such a way that not many degrees of Scorpio are in the ascendant，so that the Sun will be the lord of the tenth place in the division of the places according to the rising times ${ }^{2}$ on the latitude plate〈of the astrolabe〉；this is because the lord of the tenth 〈place〉 calculated according to this method has more power than the lord of the tenth place calculated in equal degrees．All the astrologers agree about this．${ }^{3,4}$（6）But if you cannot find a more fortunate sign than Capricorn，make sure that the Sun is not in the ascendant sign，because it［the Sun］is the lord of the eighth place counting from Capricorn［i．e．，Leo，the Sun＇s house，is the eighth sign counting from Capricorn］．（7）It is also most auspicious if Aquarius is the ascendant sign and the Sun is there；and if it［the Sun］is in Cancer and it［Cancer］is the ascendant sign，it［the Sun］is intermediate ［i．e．，neither propitious nor foreboding］，but if it［the Sun］is in Pisces or Virgo and one of them is the ascendant sign，it［the Sun］is ominous， because it［the Sun］is the lord of an unfortunate place with respect to the ascendant sign．${ }^{5}$（8）Be careful，too，that the lord of the ascendant sign is not in opposition or quartile to the Sun，but if it［the Sun］is in midheaven or in the eleventh place and the rising sign is any sign whatsoever，it［the Sun］is auspicious．（9）Let the lord of the tenth place with respect to the ascendant sign share 〈power〉 with it［the Sun］，${ }^{6}$ but be careful that it is not burnt or retrograde in one of the cardines．

2 （1）Someone who wants to choose a day for the king＇s coronation should put the Sun in a fixed sign when it［the Sun］is in the ascendant degree or in the tenth or eleventh place．（2）But be careful that the Moon is not in opposition to the Sun or in opposition to the ascendant sign or in opposition to the lord of the ascendant sign，because if it［the Moon］ is in this position his ministers will conspire against him．${ }^{1,2}$（3）Likewise， he should make sure that the lord of the fourth place is not in the seventh place＜counting〉 from the ascendant sign，nor in opposition to the lord of

בבית השביצי מן המזל הצומח, ולא במבט נכח עם בעל המזל הצומח, כי אם היה כן יקשרו עליו אנשי מדינותיו1 ויהיה הקשר אמיץ.

3 (1) והרוצה לבחור להחל בדרך² אומנות, בקש שיהיו השלשה כוכבים שהם בצלי וֹל אומנות, שהם מאדים ונגה וכוכב חמה³ (2) מביטים זה אל זה זה מבט אהבה, ואם לא לא יכולת להיות שלשתם, אולי יהיו השנים. (2) ושים הלבנה באחת בתי שבתי, על מנת יביט5 אליה שבתי6 מבט רע. (3) אמר דורוניום ${ }^{6}$ (3 כי המזלות שהם בעלות8 | שתי 139 גופות טובות להתחלת9${ }^{9}$ אומנות. (4) ומאשא אללה"10 אמר כי אם הי היתה הלבנה במזל שור11, גם הוא טוב, ואמר כי טעם היות הלבנה באחד העמל, כי שבתי יורה על זה וכפי כחו במולד ככה יהיהוּ והשמר15 שלא יהיה בעל המזל16 הצומח נשרף ולא חוזר אחורנית ${ }^{17}$ ולא ולא נותן כוחו לכוכב שהוא18 ככה. (6) ואם היה19 בעל המזל ${ }^{19}$ (6 הצומח מהיר בהליכתו, אז ${ }^{21}$ יותר טוב22.

4 (1) וזה הדבר תוכל לדעתו שתתקן מקום הכוכב בחצי היום, גם תתקנהו בחצי יום אחר, וראה כמה מהלכו ביום אחד. והנה, אם
 גם תוכל לדעת²5 זה מדרך אחרת, שתסתכל מל ${ }^{26}$ אם היה מזרחי מהשמש, ובין הכוכב
 מתשעים מעלה²7, גם הוא מהיר. (3) וכוכב חמהם ${ }^{28}$ (ונגה, אם היה מהלכם פחות ממהלך
 שלהם, שאם היתה29 פחותה מארבע מזלות או יותר משמונה הם מהירים בוי ${ }^{29}$, ואם לא היה כן הם ${ }^{31}$ ממתינים או חוזרים אחורנית 32 . (4) והלבנה, אם היתה הולכת ביום אחד יותר ממהלכה השוה, היא ממהרת, ואם פחות ממתנת. ותוכל לדעת זה כי33 אם היתה המנה

1מדינותיו] עימטדש; ל מדינתו. ${ }^{2}$ בדרך] צימשל; טד חסר. ${ }^{3}$ [וכוכב חמה] עימטל; דשוכותב.
 ש דוריאנוס; ל דורוניאוס. ${ }^{8}$ בעלות] צימטש; דל בעלי. אללה] על; ימט ומאשאללה; ד ומשאללה; ומשאלה. ימטדל באחת. ${ }^{13}$ בכה יהיה] עימדשל; ט כך.
 עולה למעלה. טוב] עימטדש; ל טוב.

 מזלות או יותר מח׳ הם מהירים] עיטל; מד חסרך; ש מארבע או יותר משמנה הם מהירים. כן הם*] ימדש; ע ואם לא היה הם; טל חסר. מה"חוזרים אחורנית] עימטשל; ד נזורים.
the ascendant sign，because in this case his subjects will conspire against him and the conspiracy will be strong ${ }^{3}$［2Sam．15：12］．

3 （1）Someone who wants to choose $\langle$ a time〉 to take up a craft should try to do this when the three planets that are in charge of crafts－namely， Mars，Venus，and Mercury ${ }^{1}$－form an aspect of love with one other；but if you cannot take all three，try to take two 〈of them〉．（2）Put the Moon in one of Saturn＇s houses［i．e．，Capricorn and Aquarius］，but in such a way that it［the Moon］does not form an unfortunate aspect with Saturn．${ }^{2}$ （3）Dorotheus said that the bicorporal signs are auspicious for taking up a craft．（4）Māshāallāh said that it is auspicious if the Moon is in Taurus，too；he 〈also〉 said that the reason why the Moon should be in one of Saturn＇s houses is so that he can endure the hard work，for this is what Saturn signifies and his capacity for endurance is according to its［Saturn＇s］power in the natal horoscope．${ }^{3}$（5）Be careful not to do this when the lord of the ascendant sign is burnt or retrograde，or when gives its power to a planet in this condition．（6）It is more auspicious if the lord of the ascendant sign is moving rapidly．${ }^{4}$

4 （1）You can know this［whether it is moving rapidly］if you determine the position of a planet at noon，and then determine it the next 〈day at〉 noon，by which procedure you find its motion in one day．Now if it is one of the upper $\langle$ planets $\rangle$ and its motion is more than the mean motion as recorded in the 〈astronomical〉 tables，then it is moving rapidly；and if 〈its motion is〉 less 〈than its mean motion〉 then it is moving slowly． （2）There is also another method to know this：find out whether it is oriental of the Sun；〈if it is and $\rangle$ if there is less than $90^{\circ}$ between it［the Sun］and the planet，it is moving rapidly．If it is occidental of the Sun and there is less than $90^{\circ}$ between the Sun and the planet，it is also moving rapidly．（3）As for Mercury and Venus［which are lower planets］，if their motion is less than the Sun＇s mean motion they are moving slowly，and if ＜their motion is〉 greater 〈than the Sun＇s mean motion〉 they are moving rapidly．You may also know this from their $\langle$ true $\rangle$ anomaly：${ }^{1}$ if it［the true anomaly］is less than four signs or more than eight signs，they are moving rapidly，otherwise they are moving slowly or are retrograde．${ }^{2}$（4）As for the Moon，if in one day it moves more than its mean motion，then it is moving rapidly，and if 〈it moves in one day〉 less 〈than its mean motion〉 it is moving slowly．You may know this as follows：if its［the Moon＇s］〈true〉 anomaly is from nine signs to the end of the signs 〈and continuing on〉 as far as three signs［i．e．，if the zodiac were a clockface，between 9 and

שלה מתשצה מזלות1 ${ }^{1}$ צד סוף² המזלות³ צד שלשה מזלות, היא ממתנת', ומשלשה5 מזלות צד סוף תשעה היא ממהרת7.

1 אהבתו. (2) כי10 אם הוא קטץ בשנים, יתקן מקום כוכב חמה¹1 ונגה; ואם אמצעי, מקום השמש12 ומאדים; ואם זקן, מקום צדק ושבתי. (3) ושים בעל הבית עשתי עשר במזל הצומח, או13 יסתכל אל בעל המזל הצומח מבט אהבה, והשמר שלא תשימנו בבית שנים עשר ולא בבית השביעי, ולא יהיה מאדים14 באחת היתדות ולא עם הלבנה ולא במבט רע עמה.

2 (1) אמר אפלטון15: כל מולד שיתחלפו מקומות המאורות עם מולד אחר, תהיה ביניהם אהבה גמורה16, ופירוש זה שיהיה מקום השמש17 במולד האחד18 הוא מקום19 הלבנה במולד האחר, ומקום הלבנה במולד האחד20 הוא מקום השמש21 במולד האחר²2. (2) או אם היה מקום השמש ביץ שני23 המולדות שוה²4, גם ככה מקום הלבנה, תהיה ביניהם אהבה, רק לא תהיה גמורה כראשונה. (3) ואם אחד המאורות לבדו יהיה ככה, יחסר מן האהבה וזאת האהבה אהבה²5 שאינה תלויה בדבר. (4) ואם היה הגורל הטוב ביץ שני המולדות במקום אחד, תהיה אהבתם בעבור שיתוף ושיועיל זה את זה. (5) ואם היה²6 המזל הצומח שוה, על מנת שלא יהיה האחד בחלק שנים עשר במזל האחר, גם ${ }^{27}$ תהיה ביניהם אהבה²8, וככה אם היו המזלות משלישות אחת.

3 המקום29 במולד האחר כוכב מזיק, יבא נזק לאשר במולדו30 הכוכב ${ }^{39}$ הום הטוב על יד האחר, גם יבא³2 טוב לאחר על יד33 זה. וזה הדבר הוא" ${ }^{34}$ מנוסה.

[^49]3－the top half of the dial］，it is moving slowly，and if it［the Moon＇s anomaly］is between three signs and nine signs，it is moving rapidly．

1 （1）The eleventh place．Someone who seeks love ${ }^{1}$ should inspect the nature of the person ${ }^{2}$ he wants to love．（2）If he［the beloved］is young， he should determine the position of Mercury and Venus；if middle－aged， the position of the Sun and Mars；if elderly，the position of Jupiter and Saturn．${ }^{3}$（3）Put the lord of the eleventh place in the ascendant sign，or in an aspect of love with the lord of the ascendant sign，but be careful not to put it［the lord of the eleventh place］in the twelfth or the seventh place， and that Mars is not in one of the cardines or with the Moon or in an unfortunate aspect with it［the Moon］．${ }^{4}$

2 （1）Plato ${ }^{1}$ said：for any natal horoscope where the positions of the luminaries are interchanged with 〈the luminaries＇position〉 in another natal horoscope，complete love will exist between them ${ }^{2}$［i．e．，the two natives］：this means that the position of the Sun in one natal horoscope is the position of the Moon in the other natal horoscope，and the position of the Moon in one natal horoscope is the position of the Sun in the other natal horoscope．（2）If the position of the Sun in the two natal horoscopes is the same，and so is the position of the Moon，there will be love between them，but it will not be as complete as in the former case．（3）If 〈the position of〉 only one of the luminaries is the same 〈in both natal horoscopes $\rangle$ ，the love will be incomplete but this love will be unconditional．（4）If the lot of Fortune is in the same position in both natal horoscopes，their love will depend on cooperation and on mutual advantage．（5）There will also be love between them if the ascendant sign is the same 〈in both natal horoscopes〉，on condition that the sign of the dodecatemoria of one of them is not the same as the sign of the dodecatemoria ${ }^{3}$ of the other，and also if they［the ascendant sign in both natal horoscopes］belong to the same triplicity．${ }^{4}$

3 （1）Ptolemy said：if a benefic planet is in a certain position in one na－ tal horoscope and a malefic planet is in the same position in another natal horoscope，the native of the natal horoscope with the benefic plan－ et will be harmed by the other $\langle$ native $\rangle$ ，and $\langle$ vice versa $\rangle$ the other $\langle$ native $\rangle$ will be benefited．${ }^{1}$ This has been tested by experience．
 בבית² שנים העשר, ולא בעל בית³ שנים העשר בבית השביעי ולא במבט נכח עם ${ }^{4}$ בעי
 היה8 ${ }^{8}$ מאדים בבית שנים העשר, יבוא נזק לבהמה ותמות. אם ${ }^{9}$ היה שם ${ }^{10}$ שבתי ויבי
 השמש, ואם פרד, מקום מאדים, ואם חמור, תקן מקום בום שבתי
 ואבו מעשר אמר כי כוכב19 יורה עליהם. (4) ואין מחלקת כי נגה יורה על הגמלים וצדק על הפילים.

נשלם ספר המבחרים<br>ורובי תודות ושירים20<br>ולאשר בידו כל הנוצרים21


 8
 ל חסר. 14 14אשא אללה] על; ; מאשא אלה; טד משאללה; ש משאלה; מ דורוניוס. עימטל; ד ודוריינוס; שודוריאנוס. בישפלה*] מדילטש; צ שפלים. בידו כל הנוצרים] עימ; ט ולאשר בידו כל היצורים; ד ולאשר בידו כל היצורים אמן כבודך אלה; ל חסר; ש תם ונשלם תהלה לכל עולם.

1 （1）The twelfth place．${ }^{1}$ Someone who wants to purchase an animal should be careful not to do so when the lord of the ascendant sign is in the twelfth place or the lord of the twelfth place is in the seventh place or in opposition to the lord of the ascendant sign，because if any of these is the case he will fall from the animal．${ }^{2}$（2）If Mars is in the twelfth place，the animal will be injured and die．If Saturn is there［in the twelfth place］and a benefic planets aspects it［Saturn］，it will not be harmful because it［the twelfth place］is its［Saturn＇s］place of joy．${ }^{3}$（3）If the animal 〈you wish to buy $\rangle$ is a horse，determine the position of the Sun；if a mule，〈determine〉 the position of Mars，and if a donkey，determine the position of Saturn． This is Māshā＇allāh＇s opinion，${ }^{4}$ but Dorotheus said that the Moon signifies donkeys，because they are the lowest of the animals men ride on；Abū Ma＇shar said that Mercury signifies them．（4）There is no disagreement that Venus signifies camels and Jupiter elephants．${ }^{5}$

The Book of Elections is completed：
Many thanks and songs
To Him in Whose hand are all creatures．

PART TWO
NOTES TO THE FIRST
VERSION OF THE BOOK OF ELECTIONS
${ }^{[1]}$ 1：The human supernal soul．In Ibn Ezra＇s thought，the supernal soul is the main instrument available to human beings to evade the decrees of the stars．See above，p．11．The supernal soul is also the highest component of the tripartite soul：the vegetative or appetitive soul；the animal or locomotive soul；and the wise or supernal soul．The sources of the tripartite soul can be traced back to Plato（Timaeus 69a，69d， 79d）and Aristotle（De anima 413a，413b，414a，414b），a fact of which Ibn Ezra seems to have been aware（Țéamim I，§4．5：2，pp．76－77 and Téamim II，§ 5．1：2，pp．216－217）．Following Plato，Galen（129－200／217） identifies three main faculties of the soul，the rational（logistikon），the spirited（thymoeides），and the appetitive（epithymetikon），and correlates these three main vital functions with the three main organs of the body－ the brain，the heart，and the liver（Lloyd，1973，pp．140）．In his long comm．on Ex．23：25，Ibn Ezra defines the relationship between the three components of the tripartite soul，and their association with the human


 ותנועת החפץ．והרוח בלב，וכן חיי האדם，והיא המבקשת שררה להת להתגבר על כל
 ז，ט），״כל רוחו יוציא כסיל״

 רפה，או לא חזקה ולא רפה，והנה בני אדם על שבעה ועו ועשרים מינים משונים ואים．והשם הנכבד נתן התורה לחזק ולהגביר ולהגדיל הנשמה העליונה，אז לא ימשול הגוף עליה， ＂Since the human body belongs to the lower world and the supernal soul is connected to it［the man＇s body］，and 〈since〉 there are intermediaries between the soul and the body，there are two powers，which in the holy tongue are designated spirit and anima．The 〈supernal〉 soul is the wise one；it resides in the brain，and from it emerge all the senses and voluntary motion．The spirit is in the heard，like man＇s life；it seeks dominance to overpower everything that opposes it，and is irascible；as Solomon said：＂Be not hasty in thy spirit to be angry＂（Ecc．7：9）；＂A fool spendeth all his spirit＂ （Prov．29：11）．The anima is in the liver；it is the one that desires to eat， as it is written：＂because thy soul desireth to eat flesh＂（Deut．12：20），and it is the source of sexual desire．Some people are born with these three〈souls〉 strong，others with all of them weak，or with one of them strong
and another weak, or neither strong nor weak, and consequently people fall into twenty-seven different types. But the Glorious God bestowed the Torah to strengthen, fortify, and magnify the supernal soul, so that it not be overpowered by the body; but if the Torah is not observed, then the body will overpower the soul" (comm. on Ex. 23:25 in Commentary on Exodus, 2007, p. 56). See also Yesod Mora', 2007, VII, pp. 140-145 (quoted in note on Mivharim II, $\S 1: 1$ ).

${ }^{[3]}$ 1: Before I discuss elections ... $\langle$ of the natal horoscope $\rangle$. Corresponds closely to Mivharim II, $\S 1: 3$ (see note there). See, also, above, pp. 11-12. Cf. the eighth aphorism of Pseudo-Ptolemy's Centiloquium: "אמר בטלמיוס הנפש החכמה תעזר לפועל הגלגלים כמו שיעזר הזורע החזק הטבע "Ptolemy said: the wise soul assists the work of the orbs in the same fashion as a plowman helps nature" (Sefer ha-Peri, BNF 1055, f. 54b).
${ }^{[4]}$ 2: Natal horoscope, Hebrew מולד. The Hebrew word מולד, as used by Ibn Ezra in his astrological work, corresponds to both of the two main meanings of the English word "nativity" as a terminus technicus of astrology: (a) natal horoscope; (b) time of birth. To disambiguate this word, I have translated it each time according to the appropriate meaning. See Glossary, s.v. "natal horoscope" and "time of birth".
${ }^{[5]}$ 2: As an illustration ... will be increased. Corresponds to Mivharim II, § 1.4 .
${ }^{[6]}$ 3: Dorotheus, Hebrew דורוניוס. See note on She'elot I, § 2.1.
${ }^{[7]}$ 3: Therefore Dorotheus said: ... known to you. Corresponds to Mivharim II, $\S 1.5$ (see note there), where a similar statement is ascribed to Ptolemy. Such a precise statement is not to be found in the fifth book of Dorotheus' Pentabiblos, which deals with interrogations and elections, but Dorotheus in this work repeatedly enjoins the astrologer to look at the natal horoscope of the person for whom an election or an interrogation is to be made (Carmen astrologicum, 1976, V: 16, pp. 273, 274; V: 31, p. 291; V: 32, p. 292), or proceeds on the assumption that the details of the natal horoscope are known to the astrologer (Carmen astrologicum, 1976,

V: 5, p. 264; V: 25, p. 284; V: 26, pp. 286, 287; V: 35, p. 297; V: 41, p. 319). In the final analysis, according to Dorotheus, the astrologer's judgment is the product of deriving the elements of the horoscope at the time of the election or interrogation from specific elements of the natal chart. For example: "If you want to know the condition of a sick [man] for whom death and misfortune are feared, then at the time of his taking ill look at his nativity, in which sign[s] the benefic were and in which sign[s] the malefic were. If the Moon in its course and its transit has arrived at the sign in which a malefic was in his nativity and the malefics aspect it from quartile while the benefics do not aspect it [either] in his nativity or at its transit to this sign ... then it indicates that the illness will be hideous and he will not escape from it" (Carmen astrologicum, 1976, V: 31, p. 291).
${ }^{[8]}$ 3: But if ... first make an interrogation ... hour $\langle$ to depart $\rangle$. See below, §3.2:5, where Ibn Ezra ascribes a similar approach to himself. Ibn Ezra seems here to have drawn on Sahl Ibn Bishr al-Yahūdī's De electionibus (or other related source), where we find the following statements that reveal the rationale behind this instruction: "However, [for] those of whom these things [i.e., their nativities, the revolutions of those years, and the nativities of their children] are not known, questions should be taken for them, and the effecting of their matter may be known from them-afterwards it should be elected for them according to this. Wherefore if someone were to ask you about himself, it has already arrived at the good or evil out of his own nativity, because it is he who has asked you (that is, in the hour in which someone comes to you). And if it is one whose quaesited matter will not come to be, or if the man who asks you (or who goes away to war) will die, beware therefore this kind of election. For how would you elect for him whose root is destroyed, especially if in addition the first beginning and the old root on which one relies, is [also destroyed]? Therefore, beware of electing for him whose root of the nativity or question signifies something horrible ... If however you elected according to the Ascendant of a question or nativity which you knew, or on the Lord of the Ascendant (that is, the sign of the profection of the year), your election will be more worthy, because you would know what (of the stars) in is accord with it, and what his Ascendant would be" (On Elections, 2008, pp. 187-188). For Sahl Ibn Bishr al-Yahūdī, see note on Mivḥarim II, $\S 6: 2$.
${ }^{[9]}$ 4: Now there are two methods for elections: Corresponds to Mivharim II, $\S$ 1.6. The same twofold methodology may be found in the initial
sentence of the fourth part of Epitome totius astrologiae, which is devoted to the doctrine of elections: "Incipit liber quartus de electionibus. Electio duobus modis fit, uno cum scitur nativitas, alio cum nescitur" (Epitome, 1548, Lib. IV, sig. R ${ }^{\text {r }}$ ). As we shall see, these two methodologies are the same as those proposed by Ibn Ezra.
${ }^{[1]}$ 1: Planets, Hebrew משרתים. For this neologism, used throughout this volume, see note on Mivharim II, $\$ 5.3$.
[2] 1: The aspects, Hebrew המבטים (Arabic nazar, Latin aspectus). The aspects are angular relationships between planets; but sometimes the same term denotes angular relationships between zodiacal signs and other celestial objects that play some astrological function. The aspect of trine $\left(120^{\circ}\right)$ is considered to be harmonious or fortunate; the aspect of sextile $\left(60^{\circ}\right)$ is also harmonious or fortunate, but to a lesser extent; the aspect of opposition $\left(180^{\circ}\right)$ is disharmonious or unfortunate; the aspect of quartile $\left(90^{\circ}\right)$ is also disharmonious or unfortunate, but to a lesser extent. Cf. Me'orot, $\$ 22: 1 \mathbf{3}, \$ 29: 1$. In TTe‘amim I and in Țéamim II Ibn Ezra provides two parallel, idiosyncratic and almost identical accounts of the aspects: he offers first a geometrical justification and then an arithmetical explanation. See Te`amim $I$, §3.1:1-6, pp. 58-61; §3.2:112, pp. 60-63, which comments on Reshit Hokhmah, 1939, III, xxxix: 4-xl: 4; this corresponds to TTe‘amim II, §4.6:1-6, pp. 210-213; §4.7:18, pp. 212-213; $\$ 4.8: 1-3$, pp. 212-213. See also Kitāb al-Madḥal, 1996, VII: 5, v, pp. 292-293; Abbreviation, III: 10, 1994, p. 41; Kitāb al-Tafhīm, 1934, §373, p. 225; Al-Qabīṣī, 2004, I: 18, p. 27; Tetrabiblos, 1980, I: 13, pp. 73-75.
${ }^{[3]}$ 1: Place, Hebrew בית. Ibn Ezra employs the Hebrew word בית, lit. "house," with a disconcerting variety of astrological meanings: horoscopic house, zodiacal sign, planetary house, house of exaltation, etc. To partially disambiguate among them, I have rendered it as "place" (corresponding to the Greek topos) when the reference is to any of the twelve horoscopic houses and as "house" in all other cases. The horoscopic places (Hebrew בתים, Greek topoi, Arabic buyūt, Latin domūs) are twelve divisions of the ecliptic, calculated with respect to a specific terrestrial latitude. The first place begins at the ascendant degree at some
specific time (i.e., for a natal horoscope, the degree of the zodiac that was ascending on the eastern horizon at the time of birth of the native); the other places are numbered clockwise from that point. Astrologers and astronomers have devised many systems for calculating the sizes of these twelve divisions. The twelve places are held to govern a variety of human relationships and experiences. Thus, in rough lines, the first place is held to govern life, the second wealth, the third brothers, the fourth parents, the fifth children, the sixth health, the seventh one's spouse, the eighth death, the ninth journeys, the tenth government and political aims, the eleventh friendship, and the twelfth prisons. Ibn Ezra, following Arabophone astrologers, further divides the twelve places into three subdivisions: (1) the four cardines יתדות (see below, § 6:2; § 2.1:6 et passim), which correspond to the first, fourth, seventh and tenth places; (2) the four succedent places סמוכים (see below, §6.2:6; Mivḥarim II, \$2.1:2), which correspond to the second, fifth, eighth and eleventh places; and (3) the four cadent places בתים נופלים (see below, $\$ 2: 2 ;$; $\$ 2: 2$ ), which correspond to the third, sixth ninth, and twelfth places. For Ibn Ezra's accounts of the twelve places, see: Reshit Hokhmah, 1939, III, xl: 5-xlii: 21; Téamim I, §3.5:1-12, §3.6:1-19, pp. 64-69; Ṭéamim II, §3.1:1-12, §3.2:1-6; §3.3:1-7, pp. 202-207; Mishpetei ha-Mazzalot, MS Schoenberg 57, ff. 71-73. For accounts of the twelve places in medieval Arabic astrology, see: Kitāb al-Madḥal, 1996, VI: 26, v, pp. 258-260; Abbreviation, 1994, I: 98-120, pp. 29-31; Kitāb al-Tafhīm, 1934, §461-473, pp. 275278; Al-Qabīṣī, 2004, I: 57-68, pp. 49-55.
${ }^{[4]}$ 1: Be careful never to choose the eighth, sixth, or twelfth place. The same instruction may be found in Mivharim II, $\$ 3: 2$ and in Epitome totius astrologiae: "cave ne sit ascendens sextum, octavum vel duodecimum signum, si fuerit in nativitate planeta infortunatus in eis" (Epitome, 1548, Lib. IV, cap. ii, sig. R3 ${ }^{\text {r }}$ ). See also: Carmen astrologicum, 1976, I: 5, p. 164: "Two places are the worst of the worst, and they are the sixth and the twelfth"; Sahl Ibn Bishr al-Yahūdī's De electionibus (On elections, 2008, $\$ 25 \mathrm{~b}$, pp. 195-196): "You should never put the Moon in the second, or the sixth, or the eighth, or the twelfth from the Lot, because this is horrible." The inauspicious character of the sixth, eighth, and twelfth places derives, in all likelihood, from the fact that none of them is in any aspect to the degree of the ascendant. It is for this reason that in Te'amim I Ibn Ezra describes the sixth and twelfth places as "the most malefic of all"; he also characterizes the eighth place negatively (\$3.5:10,12, pp. 6465).
${ }^{[5]}$ 2：Cadent place，Hebrew בית נופל．This is a reference to the third，sixth， ninth and twelfth places．See above，note on $\$ 2$ ： 1 （s．v．＂place＂）．
${ }^{[6]}$ 2：If he wishes ．．．the ninth or third place $\langle$ of the natal horoscope $\rangle$ ． Corresponds to Mivharim II，$\S 3.1$（see note there）and Epitome totius astrologiae（1548，Lib．IV，cap．ii，sig．R3 ${ }^{\mathrm{r}}$ ）．
${ }^{[7]}$ 2：I shall say more about that $\langle$ in due course $\rangle$ ．For having an audience with a ruler，see below，$\$ 10.1: 1-9$ ；for going into business，see below， $\$ 9.1: 1-3$ ；for studying，see below，$\$ 9.3: 1-6$ ．
${ }^{[8]}$ 3：Malefic $\langle$ planet $\rangle$ ．For malefic and benefic planets，see note on Miv－ harim II，\＄2．1．
${ }^{[9]}$ 1－3：First $\langle$ method ．．．〈planet at the time of birth〉．Corresponds to Mivharim II，$\$ 2.1-3$ ．See notes there．This passage bears striking similarities to the brief introduction to the fourth part of Epitome totius astrologiae（ 1548 ，Lib．IV，cap．ii，sig．R3 ${ }^{\text {r }}$ ）．For Ibn Ezra＇s sources，see note on Mivḥarim II，§2：1－3．

## $\$ 3$

［1］2：The ray of Saturn＇s body，Hebrew אור גוף שבתאי，lit．the light of Saturn＇s body．The ray of a planet＇s body（Hebrew אורים，Arabic shu＇ā， Latin radii）is an interval ahead of or behind the planet where its influence is still felt．This property of Saturn，as well as of the other planets，is explained in Téamim I（written shortly before Mivḥarim I）as follows： ＂וטעם היות כח גופו תשע מעלות בעבור גודל גופו，כי הוא קרוב מגוף צדק ואין אחר השמש גדולים מהם．על כן אמרו כי אור השמש חמש עשרה מעלות לפניה גם בוּ לאחריה，וללבנה שתים עשרה בעבור שאורה פחות מהשמש．ואין בכור כוכבים מי שיש פיש לו אור כמוה לבד מהשמש．וככה אמרו כי אור צדק תשע מעלות כמו שבתאי．ובעבור
 ＝ונגה וכוכב חמה שבע מעלות．כך היתה סברת הקדמונים，ונסו זה ועלה בידם．＂ ＂The reason that the power of its body covers nine degrees is the size of its body，since it is almost of the size of Jupiter；and except for the Sun no planet is bigger than they are．This is why they said that the light of the Sun extends fifteen degrees before it and also after it，and 〈the light〉 of the Moon twelve 〈degrees〉，because its light is less the Sun＇s．None of the stars gives as much light as the Moon，except for the Sun．They also
said that the light of Jupiter is nine degrees，like Saturn＇s．Because the body of Mars is smaller than theirs 〈and〉 it is closer to the Earth，they subtracted one degree and said that its light is eight degrees；and Venus and Mercury are seven degrees．This was the opinion of the Ancients， and they successfully verified it by experience＂（\＄4．2：12，pp．74－75）．Cf． Téamim II，§4．2：2，pp．208－209 and note on p．293．Note that instead of אור＂light，＂which is the regular term employed in Ibn Ezra＇s astrological writings，Mishpeṭei ha－Mazzalot，one of his introductions to astrology， employs ניצוץ＂ray＂and offers a list of these rays without any explanation． See Mishpetei ha－Mazzalot，MS Schoenberg 57，f． 74.
${ }^{[2]}$ 1－3：As an illustration $\ldots \mathbf{1 6}^{\circ}$ ，but no less．Corresponds closely to Mivharim II，$\S 2: 4$ ．See note there．An almost identical illustration is offered in Sefer ha－Moladot，a treatise by Ibn Ezra written shortly before Mivharim I and devoted to the exposition of the doctrine of nativities，to substantiate an analogous rule in the context of the doctrine of elections： ״ואם הוצרכת לעלות לו אחד מהבתים הנזכרים，והיה במולד שם אחד מהמזיקים， השמר שלא תעלה לו מקום המזיק，רק הנח מקומו עד סוף אורו．כמו זה הדמיון， שהיה הבית העשירי ארבע מעלות ממזל תאומים，והיה שבות שתי שתי שתים עשרה מעלות；
 ＂But if you need to put in the ascendant $\langle$ of the electional horoscope〉 one of the aforementioned places〈of the natal horoscope〉，and one of the malefic 〈planets〉 is there in the natal horoscope，be careful not to put in the ascendant degree $\langle$ of the electional horoscope〉 the position of the malefic 〈planet at the time of birth ，unless you leave behind the complete range of its ray［i．e．，all the degrees of the malefic planet＇s ray］．As an example，suppose that 〈in the natal horoscope〉 the $\langle$ cusp of the $\rangle$ tenth place is Gemini $4^{\circ}$ and Saturn is located at $\langle\mathrm{Gemini}\rangle 12^{\circ}$ ；as it is known that its［Saturn＇s］ray is $9^{\circ}$ ， then its ray will reach $\left\langle\right.$ from Gemini $\left.12^{\circ}\right\rangle$ up to Gemini $21^{\circ}$［i．e．，Gemini $21^{\circ}=$ Gemini $12^{\circ}+9^{\circ}$（Saturn＇s ray）］．Therefore put as the ascendant〈of the electional horoscope a degree〉 past Gemini $22^{\circ " \prime}$（Moladot，MS BNF 1056，f．61a）．
${ }^{[1]}$ 1：If you know a man＇s time of birth，find out the ruler as I explained in the Book of Nativities．This is how Ibn Ezra，in the first version of Sefer ha－Moladot（written shortly before Mivḥarim I），describes the procedure
by which the＂ruler of the nativity＂is selected from the＂five places of life＂： ＂ויאמר בטלמיוס ודורוניוס：לעולם נבקש אי זה ככב הוא שליט על הנולד וככה
 מקום מחברת המאורות או נכחם，ההוה מהם בתחלה קודם לדת הנולד；והד＇המעלה





 ＂Ptolemy and Dorotheus said：we should always try to determine which planet is the ruler of the native，and this is how we shall find it．We know that the places of life are five：$\langle$ The first〉 two are the positions of the two luminaries， by day and by night；the third is the position of the conjunction of the luminaries or their opposition，whichever occurs first before the birth of the native；the fourth is the degree of the ascendant；and the fifth is the lot of Fortune，as I have explained in the Book of Reasons of the Beginning of Wisdom．So we assign to the lord of the 〈planetary〉 house five portions of power，and to the lord of the exaltation four 〈portions of power〉，and to the lord of the triplicity three $\langle$ portions of power〉，and to the lord of the term two 〈portions of power〉，and to the lord of the decan one 〈portion of power〉．We proceed likewise regarding any 〈planet〉 that exerts some lordship over any of the five places $\langle$ of life $\rangle$ ．In addition，if it［the ruler of the nativity］is one of the upper planets and it moves away from the Sun with its greatest power，we assign to it three portions of power，if 〈it moves away〉 with an intermediary power，two 〈portions of power〉，and if with the least power，one 〈portion of power〉．In addition，we shall also take into account the places，for if 〈some planet〉 is in the first place we assign 12 portions of powers，in the tenth place 11 〈portions of powers〉，in the seventh $\langle$ place $\rangle 10$ 〈portions of powers〉，in the fourth 9，in the eleventh 8 ，in the fifth 7 ，in the second 6 ，in the eighth 5 ，in the ninth 4 ，in the third 3 ，in the twelfth 2 ，in the sixth 1 ．And the nature of the lord corresponds to the nature of the native＇s body＂（Moladot，MS BNF 1056，f．48a）．For a definition of the＂five places of life，＂see note on She＇elot II，§ 1．1：1．
${ }^{[2]}$ 1：The election you are making．The expression＂to make an election＂ （לעשות מבחר）means finding a precise time for setting up an electional horoscope whose astrological elements are considered to be auspicious for beginning certain activities．This means，for example，finding the
time when a particular auspicious zodiacal sign is rising over the eastern horizon, or finding the time when a particular horoscopic place in the querent's natal horoscope, which has a special relevance for the activity that the querent intends to begin, is in the ascendant of the electional horoscope; or, as here, finding the time when the planet that was the ruler of the nativity in the querent's natal horoscope is in a favorable position in the electional horoscope.
${ }^{[3]}$ 2: Natural constitution, Hebrew תולדת. For this neologism, used throughout this volume, see note on Mivharim II, $\$ 5.3$.
${ }^{[4]}$ 1-2: An Indian scientist said ... fortunate position. Corresponds closely to $\mathrm{Mb} \S 4: 1-2$, where the same procedure is ascribed to Ptolemy. See note there.

## $\$ 5$

${ }^{[1]}$ 1: Determine the position of the planet, Hebrew תתקן מקום הכוכב, lit. correct the position of the planet. The astronomical concept of determining the position of a planet, תקון, lit. correction, is explained in Ibn Ezra's translation of Ibn al-Muthannâ’s Commentary on the Astronomical Tables of al-Khwârizmî: התהקון שנוי מה שיש בין שני התנועות, התנועה" הניב "The correction is the difference between the mean motion and the true motion" (Ibn al-Muthannấs Commentary, 1967, p. 296 [Heb.], p. 156 [Eng.]). This means that to determine the true position of a planet, one first computes its mean position and then "corrects" it by some amount, according to a procedure that has to be specified.
${ }^{[2]}$ 1-2: The second method ... time of birth. Corresponds to Mivharim II, $\$ 5: 1-3$. For Ibn Ezra's sources to this methodology, see note there. For the planets' significations that affect human beings collectively, see Kitāb al-Madḥal, 1996, VII: 9, v, pp. 311-317; Abbreviation, 1994, V: 1-35, pp. 61-69; Al-Qabīṣī, 2004, II: 1-51, pp. 63-89; Reshit Hokhmah, 1939, VI, xlii: 22-li: 8; Mishpetei ha-Mazzalot, MS Schoenberg 57, ff. 77-80. 'Olam I, a work by Ibn Ezra on world astrology, offers a brief characteri-
 הנוצרים, ושבתאי על הפלשתים, ומאדים על הקדרים, ונגי ונה על ישמעאלים וצים .. וצים וכבר אמרתי כי שבתאי יורה על הזקנים והעבדים, וצדק על בעלי העושר והדיינים, ומאדים

על אנשי המלחמה, והשמש על המלכים, ונגה על הנשים ועל הסריסים, וככב חמה על "I have also verified many times by experience that the Sun gives an indication about the Christians, Saturn about the Philistines, Mars about the Arabs, Venus about the Muslims. ... I have already said that Saturn gives an indication about the elderly and slaves, Jupiter about the wealthy and judges, Mars about warriors, the Sun about kings, Venus about women and eunuchs, Mercury about adolescents, scholars, and scribes, and the Moon about everyone" ( $\$ 66: 1, \$ 67: 1$, pp. 94-95). For another similar brief characterization, see She'elot II, § 10:5. Ibn Ezra justifies this approach by stating that "this will work whether or not you know his time of birth." Corresponds to Epitome totius astrologiae ( 1548 , Lib. IV, cap. ii, sig. R3 ${ }^{\mathrm{r}}-\mathrm{R} 4^{\mathrm{v}}$ ). See quotation in note on Mivḥarim II, $\S 5: 1-3$.
${ }^{[1]} \mathbf{1}$ : Benefic planets. For the doctrine of malefic and benefic planets, see note on Mivharim I, \$2.1.
${ }^{[2]}$ 1: Unfortunate aspect. See above, note on $\$ 2$ 2:1.
${ }^{[3]}$ 1: Be careful ... aspect with them. Corresponds to Mivharim II, §6:3 and Epitome totius astrologiae (Epitome, 1548, Lib. IV, cap. ii, sig. R3 ${ }^{\text {r}}-$ $\left.\mathrm{R} 4^{\mathrm{v}}\right)$. This is the first of the "conditions of the Moon," that is, configurations of the Moon with respect to other planets or zodiacal positions that should be avoided in elections, listed in Mivharim II, $\S 6: 3-19$. These conditions correspond to the "impediments of the Moon" in Sahl Ibn Bishr al-Yahūdī's De electionibus and to the "condition of the Moon and its corruption" listed by Dorotheus in the fifth book of Pentabiblos. See note on Mivharim II, §6:2.
${ }^{[4]}$ 1: Be careful ... degree of a malefic. Corresponds to Mivharim II, $\$ 6: 15$, which refers to one of the conditions of the Moon that should be avoided in elections. Here reference is made to a degree A on the path of the Moon, whose distance from one of the equinoxes or solstices (degree $C$ ) is the same as the distance between degree $C$ and degree $B$, which represents the position of a malefic planet. In other words, the pair of degrees $A$ and $B$ are equidistant from degree $C$. In this definition, the equinoxes (Aries $0^{\circ}$ or Libra $0^{\circ}$ ) are designated as "the equator" and the
solstices (Cancer $0^{\circ}$ or Capricorn $0^{\circ}$ ) as "the extreme north" or "extreme south." Ibn Ezra restates his reference to these pairs of degrees below, in $\$ 2.1: 2$, as well as in Mivḥarim II, $\$ 6: 15$ and She'elot III, $\$ 6.2: 3$. The two references to these pairs of degrees in Me'orot $\$ 15: 1-2$ and $\$ 35: 2$ stand out: the first because Ibn Ezra offers in it examples that clarify the definitions; the second, because in it Ibn Ezra directs the reader to Reshit Hokhmah for an additional definition and assigns "great power" to these degrees. From the latter reference in Me'orot $\$ 35: 2$ we also infer that Ibn Ezra drew on Abū Ma'shar's Kitāb al-Madhal for these degrees. See notes there.
${ }^{[5]}$ 1: Likewise ... degree of a malefic. Corresponds to Mivharim II, §6:1-3. See note there.
${ }^{[6]}$ 2: If it [the Moon] ... not take place. Corresponds to Mivharim II, $\S 6: 5$. See note there.
${ }^{[7]}$ 3: It is more auspicious ... ascendant sign. Corresponds to Epitome totius astrologiae: "\& melius ut Luna non habeat vim in ascendente" (Epitome, 1548, Lib. IV, cap. ii, sig. R4 ${ }^{\text {v }}$ ).
${ }^{[1]}$ 1: Al-Andruzagar. Andarzagar ibn Sādān Farruh is one of the figures whom the Arabs associated with Persian astrology, although it is possible that he was in fact post-Sasanid. He was known as the author of a text referred to as Kitāb al-mawālīd (Book of the Nativities), one part of which was devoted to anniversary horoscopes. For this Persian astrologer, see: Andarzaghar, 1991, pp. 294-295; Sezgin, 1976, 80-81; Al-Qabīṣī, 2004, I: 57-68, pp. 51-55. Al-Andruzagar's astrological contribution is frequently mentioned by Ibn Ezra, usually in an approving tone, in his Hebrew work on nativities (Moladot, MS BNF 1056, f. 52a, $54 \mathrm{a}, 56 \mathrm{a}$ ), on world astrology ('Olam I, $\S 58: 1, \S 69: 1$, pp. 96-97), on elections (Mivḩarim I, $\S 7: 1$; Mivḩarim II, $\$ 9.3: 1$ ), and in introductions to astrology (Téamim I, \$3.6:19, pp. 68-69). Ibn Ezra also adds to his name the epithet "the Jew" (Ṭéamim I, §3.6:19, pp. 68-69 אנדרוזגר בן זאדי] [פארוך היהודי]; 'Olam I, §58:1 [אל אנדרוזגר הישראלי]). Al-Andruzagar is also mentioned in translations of Ibn Ezra's work into old French (Reshit Hokhmah, 1939, p. 81 [Alendezgoz; this mention does not appear in the

Hebrew text］），into Latin（Nativitatum，Erfurt，f．63b），and in Latin works that appear to have been written with Ibn Ezra＇s collaboration（Astrolabio， 1940，p．25；Nativitatibus，1484，ff．a3a）．
${ }^{[2]}$ 1：Leo，Sagittarius，or Aquarius．These three signs are designated＂signs of power＂in the recently discovered fragment of the second version of Reshit Hokhmah（Sela，2010，pp．53，62－63），as well as in TTe＇amim II（\＄2．3：15－16，pp．190－191）．＂Leo，Sagittarius，or Aquarius＂appear together as a distinct group of signs in applications related to elections， interrogations，and medical astrology where the Moon is involved：see Mivḥarim II，$\S 6.5$ ；She＇elot II，$\S 1.5: 2$ ；Me＇orot $\S 8: 4$ ．Cf．Epitome，1548， Lib．IV，cap．ii，sig．R $4^{\mathrm{v}}$ ．
${ }^{[3]}$ 1：Al－Andruzagar said ．．．about it［the Moon］．Corresponds to Miv－ harim II，$\$ 6.5$ ．See note there．Corresponds to Epitome totius astrologiae： ＂Necessitate vero cogente ．．．melius ut sit ascendens Leo，Sagittarius，vel Aquarius＂（Epitome，1548，Lib．IV，cap．ii，sig．R4 ${ }^{\text {v }}$ ）
${ }^{[4]}$ 2：The $\langle$ twelfth place $\rangle$ ，which is in charge of enemies．Cf．Țéamim II ＂ובעבור היות הבית השנים עשר נופל ואיננו דבק עם הראשון，：207－206， ＂Because the twelfth house falls 〈from the cardines $\rangle$ and is not attached to the first，it was made the house of enemies and of shame．＂
${ }^{[5]}$ 3：The eighth ．．．．place of worries．Cf．Moladot，MS BNF 1056，f．57a： ＂אמר אל אנדדרוזגר בעל השלישות הראשונה בבית הח׳ יורה על המות ובעל השלישות הב＇יורה על הירושה ובעל השלישות הג׳ יורה על הדאגות וכפי כח כל אחד ＂Al－Andruzagar said：the first lord of the first triplicity in the eighth place signifies death，and the second lord signifies inheritance， and the third lord of the triplicity signifies worries，and pass judgment according to the power of each of them．＂
${ }^{[6]}$ 3：The sixth ．．．place of diseases．Cf．Mishpeṭei ha－Mazzalot，
 ＂בThe sixth place：〈this is the〉 place of slaves， livestock，sheep，cattle，diseases，fractures and falling．＂
${ }^{[7]}$ 2－3：But he did not ．．．place of diseases．Ibn Ezra elucidation of Al－ Andruzagar＇s statement is grounded on a correlation of（a）the distance between Cancer（the Moon＇s house）and Leo，Sagittarius，or Aquarius，
respectively, and (b) the distance between Leo, Sagittarius or Aquarius, which are taken as ascendants of a horoscope, and the twelfth, eighth, and six places of the corresponding horoscopes. Ibn Ezra associates the astrological view that the twelfth, eighth, and six places signify misfortune (enemies, worries, and diseases, respectively) with the fact that the Moon in Al-Andruzagar's statement is in an unfortunate position or with malefic planets.
${ }^{[1]}$ 2: I have already mentioned the reason in the Book of Nativities. This refers to the following passage in Ibn Ezra's first version of Sefer
 הלבנה, המעלה הצומחת תכרית החיים בגעת הלבנה אלים הליה בניהוגי המעלות הות גם הלבנה תכרית החיים על המעלה הצומחת ולא תכרית על ארבעה מקומות החיים האחרים.״ = "If the place of life is the position of the Moon, the ascendant degree will cause death when the Moon reaches it [the ascendant degree] in the direction of degrees; the Moon will also cause death at the ascendant degree but will not cause death at the other four places of life" (Moladot, MS BNF 1056, f. 49b).
${ }^{[2]}$ 3: $\langle$ The Moon should not be put $\rangle ..$ its joy. "Joy" and "mourning" are two correlated properties of the seven planets in the horoscopic places. The place of the planet's joy, where the planet "rejoices," is considered to be auspicious, while the place of its mourning, which opposite is its place of joy, is considered to be inauspicious. Ibn Ezra explicates the doctrine of
 שמחת השבעה: כוכב חמה בבית ראשון כי שניהם יורו על הנפש; הלבנה בשלישי כי שניהם יורו על דרכים קרובים והדתים; נגה בחמישי כי כי שניהם יורו על התענוגים בים; מאדים

 "The places of joy of the seven 〈planets〉. Mercury in the first place, because both indicate the soul; the Moon in the third, because both indicate short journeys and religions; Venus in the fifth, because both indicate pleasures; Mars in the sixth, because both indicate diseases; the Sun in the ninth, because both indicate long journeys and beliefs; Jupiter in the eleventh place, because both indicate good fortune and beauty and honor; and Saturn in the twelfth place, because both indicate shame and quarrels and prison"
( $\$ 4.9: 1$, pp. 82-83). See also Ṭéamim II, §4.12:1-6, pp. 216-217; Kitāb al-Madhal, 1996, VI: 27, v, p. 264; Kitāb al-Tafhīm, 1934, §469, p. 277; Al-Qabīṣī, 2004, I: 70, p. 55; Abbreviation, 1994, I: 121, p. 31. As for the Moon's place of mourning, Ibn Ezra write in Țéamim II as follows: "והבית התשיעי הוא בית אבל הלבנה, כי הוא השביעי מבית שמחתה" = "The ninth place is the Moon's place of mourning, because it is the seventh after [i.e., opposite] the place of its joy" ( $\$ 6.2: 6$, pp. 236-237).
${ }^{[3]} 4$ : The ruler. See above, $\S 4: 1$ and note.
${ }^{[4]} 4$ : Under the ray of the Sun. See note on $M e^{\prime} \operatorname{orot} \$ 14: 1-8$.

## $\$ 1.1$

${ }^{[1]} \mathbf{1}$ : Mercury. Its role in elections about studying the sciences derives from its astrological association with wisdom, understanding, sciences, and learning. This is explained in medieval introductions to astrology,
 ומבני האדם הפילוסופים, והחכמים, והרופאים, והסופרים ... ובחלקו מתולדת האדם הדבור, והמחשבת, והמוסר, והחכמה, וחכמת הכוכבים, והניחוש, וכל מיני קסם, ודבר "Mercury ... the human soul and the power of understanding is in its portion, and, of human beings, philosophers, scholars, physicians, writers, mathematicians, geometricians ... and in its portion of human nature are language, thinking, morality, wisdom, astronomy, guessing, all sort of magic, purity in speaking, grammar, fluency in speaking, knowledge of stories, poetry" (1939, X, xlix: 15, 8-23).
${ }^{[2]}$ 1: The place of its [Mercury's] joy. For the first place as the place of Mercury's joy, see above, note on $\S 8: 3$.
${ }^{[3]}$ 3: Fortunate aspect. See above, note on $\S 2: 1$.
${ }^{[4]}$ 3: If he wants to study jurisprudence ... about Saturn. Corresponds to Mivharim II, §3.1:1.
${ }^{[5]}$ 3: You should find ... 〈to write〉 poetry. Sefer haMoladot presents the planets and the sciences in their charge in the chapter on the ninth horoscopic place: וזוה המזל יורה על החכמות: וחכמות שבתי המדות, וחכמות צדק"

התורות，וחכמות מאדים הרפואות，וחכמת השמש הדינין，וחכמות נגה הניגונים，וחכמות כוכב חמה דקדוק הלשון והראיות וחכמת הפלוסופיה והחשבון，ויש לו שותפות בכל ＂This place signifies sciences：the science 〈under the charge〉 of Saturn is geometry，Jupiter 〈is in charge〉 of jurisprudence，Mars of medicine，the Sun of laws，and the science 〈under the charge〉 of Venus is music，and the science 〈under the charge〉 of Mercury is grammar， proofs，philosophy，arithmetic，and it has a share in all sorts of sciences＂ （Moladot，MS BNF 1056，f．57a）．As for the sciences in the charge of the Sun and Jupiter，Ibn Ezra writes in Țéamim I：השמש ．．．ותורה על התורות＂ ＂The Sun ．．．indicates ordinances and laws，like Jupiter＂（Țe‘amim I，§4．5：5，pp．76－77）．For the role of Jupiter in learning jurisprudence，see Mivharim II，$\S 3 \cdot 1: 1-3$ and note．
${ }^{[6]}$ 1－3：The first place ．．．〈to write〉 poetry．Corresponds closely to \＄9．3：1－6，below，and Mivḥarim III，\＄9．3：1－4．Cf．＇Alī ibn abī－l－Rijāl＇s Kitāb al－Bāri，seventh part（devoted to elections），the chapter headed＂De addiscere scientias \＆documenta ．．．sit Mercurio in bono statu fortunatus \＆fortis．Etiam bonus est in hoc negotio si Mercurius aspiciat dominus ascendentis＂（De iudiciis astrorum，1551，VII：lxxvi，p．333）．

## § 1.2

${ }^{[1]}$ 1：The scientists of India said ．．．Saturn＇s houses．Cf．Mivharim II， $\$ 10.1: 2$ ，where the Indian scientists are not mentioned．
${ }^{[2]}$ 1：［Saturn］signifies ．．．until its end．This is one of Saturn＇s typical properties．Ibn Ezra believed that the source of this datum is Ptolemy＇s Book of the Fruit，that is，Pseudo－Ptolemy＇s Centiloquium，although in the latter work，as it has reached us，no such statement can be found： ＂ויאמר בטלמיוס בספר הפרי כי כפי כח שבתי בנולד וכפי ממשלתו עליו ככה יהיה בס＂Ptolemy said in the Book of the Fruit that that the native＇s endurance and capacity to perform hard work depend on Saturn＇s power and governance over him＂（Moladot，MS BNF 1056， f． 48 b）．
${ }^{[3]}$ 2：Abū Ma＇shar．See note on She＇elot I，§3：6．
${ }^{[4]}$ 2：Also Abū Ma＇shar ．．．is fortunate．Corresponds to Mivharim II， $\$ 10.1: 1$ ，where Abu Ma ＇shar is not credited with such a statement．
${ }^{[5]}$ 3: Bicorporal sign ... tropical sign ... fixed signs. This passage refers to a well-known tripartite classification of the twelve zodiacal signstropical, Hebrew מתהפכים (Aries, Cancer, Libra, Capricorn), fixed, Hebrew עומדים (Taurus, Leo, Scorpio, Aquarius), and bicorporal, Hebrew (Gemini, Virgo, Sagittarius, Pisces)—in accordance with the prevailing weather when the Sun travels through them in its annual path. See Tetrabiblos, 1980, I: 11, pp. 64-69; Kitāb al-Madḥal, 1996, II: 6, v, p. 79; Kitāb al-Tafhīm, 1934, §380, p. 231; Al-Qabīṣī, 2004, I: 7, p. 27; Abbreviation, 1994, pp. 15-25.

## $\$ 1.3$

${ }^{[1]}$ 2: On condition that it is not more than $3^{\circ}$ from $\langle$ the head of $\rangle$ Scorpio. This is because Scorpio $3^{\circ}$ is Scorpio's degree of dejection. See Mivharim II, $\S$ 1.1:1.
${ }^{\text {[2] } 2: ~ S e c l u d e s ~ i t s e l f, ~ H e b r e w ~ מ ת ב ו ד ד ת . ~ T h i s ~ r e f e r s ~ t o ~ t h e ~ c o n d i t i o n ~ o f ~}$ "transit in seclusion" (void of course), as explained in Reshit Hokhmah: "הילוך בדד: שיתפרד הכוכב מחבירו, אם במחברת מט״ו מעלות, ואם במבט, משש, ולא יתחבר עם כוכב אחר כל זמן שהוא באותו המזל, או לא יביט אליו "Traveling in seclusion: <this occurs〉 when a planet departs from its companion, either from conjunction, from $15^{\circ}$ away, or from aspect, from $6^{\circ}$ away, and when it does not conjoin another planet as far as it remains in the same sign, or when no planet aspects it in a full aspect, whichever aspect it may be" (1939, VII, lviii: 28-30). See also Abbreviation, 1994, III: 21, pp. 4243.
${ }^{[3]} 3$ : Gives its power. For the condition of "giving power," used throughout this volume, see note on She'elot I, \$4:2.
${ }^{[4]}$ 3-4: Above the Earth ... below the Earth. This means: above the horizon ... below the horizon. The same applies for similar passages in this volume.
${ }^{[5]} 4$ : With respect to the ascendant sign. Although whether a planet is below or above the Earth does not depend on the ascendant sign, the addition "with respect to the ascendant sign" implies that this statement is relevant to the moment of setting up the electional horoscope.
${ }^{[6]}$ 4: Give its power ... to a retrograde $\langle$ planet $\rangle$, because this signifies vomitus. Corresponds closely to Me'orot $\$ 24: 9$ and Mivharim II, $\$ 1.2: 3$.
${ }^{[7]} 1$-4: For taking a medicine ... signifies vomitus. Corresponds closely to Mivḥarim II, §1.1:1-2.

## $\$ 1.4$

${ }^{[1]}$ 1: Dorotheus said $\ldots$ the bowels. Corresponds to Me'orot $\$ 24: 8$. For this property of Saturn, see Mishpeṭei ha-Mazzalot: "אמרו הקדמונים כי הכח "המקבל האדם מכח שבתאי הוא העצור והצכוב the power that man receives from Saturn is retention and delay" (MS Schoenberg 57, f. 72). Cf. Carmen astrologicum, 1976, V: 38, pp. 314-315 (someone wishes to retain or to drink a medicine for diarrhoea).

## $\$ 1.5$

${ }^{[1]}$ 1: Ptolemy. See note on $M e^{\prime}$ orot $\$$ 16:2.
${ }^{[2]}$ 1: Ptolemy said ... them [Jupiter or Venus]. Corresponds to Mivharim II, $\S 1.2: 1$ and refers to the nineteenth aphorism of Pseudo-Ptolemy's Centiloquium (see note on Mivharim II, $\S 1.2: 1$ ). Also corresponds closely to Epitome totius astrologiae: "Caput II. De accipiendis purgationibus. Cave ne sit Luna in aspectu, vel coniunctione Veneris aut Iovis" (Epitome, 1548, Lib. IV, cap. ii, sig. R4 ${ }^{\text {r }}$.
${ }^{[3]}$ 2: Scholars who rely on experience, Hebrew חכמי הניסיון. This category of scientists, whose designation echoes their reliance on observation, is repeatedly mentioned in Ibn Ezra's work-astrological and non-astrological, scientific and nonscientific-generally with approbation. They are usually described as astrologers (Téamim I, \$2.5:5, pp. 44$45, \S 2.13: 6$, pp. 52-53), notably in his biblical exegesis (long comm. on Ex. 20:13, second comm. on Gen. 1:9), but sometimes as astronomers (Țe‘amim I, §2.2:15, pp. 38-39), compilers of astronomical tables ('Olam I, $\S 11.3,4$, pp. 58-59; Téamim $I, \S 2.12: 14$, pp. 52-53), or calendarists ('Iggeret ha-Shabbat, 1894/5, p. 68). In Liber rationibus tabularum and in the Latin book on the astrolabe written with Ibn Ezra's active collaboration, Arabophone astronomers and astrologers who flourished in various
places and eras are referred to as magistri probationum, which is the Latin counterpart of the Hebrew חכמי הנסיון, and their astronomical tables are designated tabulae probationum (Liber de Rationibus Tabularum, 1947, pp. 76, 77, 78, 80, 86 et passim; Astrolabio, 1940, p. 23). They include notable scientists such as al-Marwādhī, Ibn Yūnus, Banū Sākir, Azarchiel the Spaniard, Thābit b. Qurra, al-Nayrizī, al-Battānī, and Yaḥyā b. Abī Manṣūr.
${ }^{[4]} 3$ : If you wish ... retrograde planet. Corresponds to Mivharim II, $\$ 1.6: 1-2$ (see notes there), where the first part of this statement is ascribed to Ptolemy, while Ibn Ezra ascribes the second to himself. For the influence of a planet that is above the Earth or retrograde on vomitus, see above, $\S$ 1.3:4.

## § 1.6

${ }^{[1]}{ }_{1}$ : Gemini, which is the sign $\langle$ in charge $\rangle$ of the arm. This is a reference to the doctrine of melothesia. See note on Mivharim I, $\S$ 1.8:1.
${ }^{[2]}$ 1: If you wish ... Saturn or Mars. Corresponds closely to Mivharim II, $\$ 1.3: 3$. See notes there.
${ }^{[3]}$ 2: If it [the Moon] ... sextile with Saturn. Corresponds closely to Mivharim II, $\S$ 1.3:2.
${ }^{[4]}$ 1-2: If you wish ... Mercury is detrimental. Corresponds closely to Epitome totius astrologiae: "De minutione sanguinis. Aspice ne sit Luna in Geminis, sed fac ut in aspectu trino vel sextili Martis fit. Verum ne fit coniuncta ei quavis praedictarum coniuncione, nec in aspectu eiusdem contrario vel quadrato. Simile est iudicium de Saturno" (Epitome, 1548, Lib. IV, cap. ii, sig. R3 ${ }^{v}$ ).

## $\$ 1.7$

${ }^{[1]}{ }_{1}$ : Ya'qub al-Kindī. See note on She'elot $\mathrm{I}, \S 7: 1$.
${ }^{[2]}$ 1-2: Yáqub al-Kindī said ... airy 〈signs〉. Corresponds to Mivharim II, $\S 1.3: 1$ and Epitome totius astrologiae: "De minutione sanguinis ...
ponasque naturam in signo Lunae convenientem naturae hominis min－ uentis＂（Epitome，1548，Lib．IV，cap．ii，sig．R3 ${ }^{\mathrm{v}}$ ）．For a similar statement， without ascribing it to Al－Kindī，see＇Alī ibn abī－l－Rijāl＇s Kitāb al－Bāri： ＂De phlebotomia：．．．Si complexio illius，cuius vis plenitudinem minuere， declinans fuerit ad sanguinitatem，signa terrea ei fuerit commodiora；si fuerit cholericus，aquea ei sunt meliora；si fuerit flegmaticus，ignea；si melancholicus，aerea＂（De iudiciis astrorum，1551，VII：vii，p．305）．

## $\$ 1.8$

${ }^{[1]}$ 1：Ptolemy said ．．．part of the body．This is a reference to the doctrine of melothesia，which distributes the parts of the body amongst the zodi－ acal signs．See also，above，$\S 1.6: 1$ ，Mivharim II，$\S 1.3: 3$ and She＇elot II， §6．1：10．Ibn Ezra refers to this theory in all his introductions to astrol－ ogy．This is how he puts it in Mishpeṭei ha－Mazzalot：אמר תלמי המלך＂ חלק המזל הצומח על דרך שחלקו חכמי המזלות．אמר：טלה הראש，שור הצואר， תאומים הזרועות，סרטן החזה，אריה הלב והקרב העליון，בתולה הבטן והשריר， מאזנים המתנים，צקרב הצרוה，קשת האחור，גדי הירכים，דלי השוקים，דגים הרגלים． ＂King Ptolemy said：assign 〈a part of the body to〉 the ascending sign as the astrologers assigned 〈the parts of the body to the zodiacal signs $\rangle$ ．He said：〈assign to〉 Aries the head， Taurus the neck，Gemini the arms，Cancer the chest，Leo the heart and the upper stomach，Virgo the belly and the diaphragm，Libra the hips， Scorpio the genitals，Sagittarius the back，Capricorn the thighs，Aquar－ ius the legs，Pisces the feet．Use this method to assign the ascendant sign＂（MS Schoenberg 57，f．73）．See also Reshit Hokhmah，1939，II，x： 11－12 et passim；Țéamim I，§ 2．3：2，pp．40－41；Țéamim II，§ 2．4：20－21， pp．194－195．Similar information，either in ad hoc lists or as part of the separate descriptions of the properties of each sign，is commonplace in ancient and medieval introductions to astrology：Carmen astrologicum， 1976，1976，IV：1，p．251；Astronomica，1977，II，453，pp．119；Matheseos， 1975，II，xxiv，p．56；Al－Qabīṣī，2004，I：25－36，pp．35－37；Abbreviation， 1994，pp．15－25；Kitāb al－Madḥal，1996，IV：12，v，pp．251－252；Kitāb al－ Tafhīm，1934，§359，p．216．Cf．Bouché－Leclercq，1899，pp．319－320．

Here and elsewhere，whenever Ibn Ezra refers to Ptolemy as the origi－ nator of this theory，he is drawing on the twentieth aphorism of Pseudo－ Ptolemy＇s Centiloquium：＂XX．Draw not blood from that member，whilst the Moon is in a sign representing the same＂（Centiloquium Ptolo－ mei， 1676, p．317）．Also the author of Epitome totius astrologiae avails
himself of the same quotation and ascribes it to Ptolemy: "Ptolamaeus vero ait, membrum non esse ferro tangendum, Luna existente in signo, quod habet illud membrum" (Epitome, 1548, Lib. IV, cap. ii, sig. R3 ${ }^{\text {r }}$ ). The same applies to ‘Al̄̄ibn abī-l-Rijäl's Kitāb al-Bäri, although Ptolemy is not mentioned there: "Cave etiam enixissime ne ponas vel tangas membrum ferro, Luna existente in signo membrum illud significante" (De iudiciis astrorum, 1551, VII: VI, p. 305). Cf. Carmen astrologicum, 1976, V: 39, p. 315 ("Someone wished to out something from his body with knife or scalpel, or to bleed a vein.")
${ }^{[2]}{ }_{1-3}$ : Ptolemy said $\ldots$ after him [Ptolemy]. Corresponds closely to Mivharim II, $\$ 1.4: 1$, where Ibn Ezra openly expresses his agreement with the theory of melothesia.

## $\$ 1.9$

${ }^{[1]}{ }_{1-2}$ : Abū Ma'shar said ... except opposition. Corresponds to Mivharim II, $\mathbb{\S}$ 5.4:1-2, where a similar statement is ascribed to the Ancients. Corresponds also to 'Alī ibn abī-l-Rijäl's Kitāb al-Bāri: "Ego vero dico quod omnium melior electio ingresso balnei est, si sit Luna in signis aequeis maxime is fuerit in Cancro \& applicet Iovi, vel in Scorpione \& applicet Veneri" (De iudiciis astrorum, 1551, I: V, p. 304).

## $\$ 2.1$

${ }^{[1]}$ 1: The Moon in its domain ... end of Cancer. This is how Téamim I explains the division of the zodiac into a "smaller domain," assigned to the Moon, and a "larger domain," assigned to the Sun: :ויאמר חנוך" אחר שידענו כי אלה הבתים הם בתי המאורות, חלקו העשרה בתים הנשארים על המשרתים. והנה היה לכל משרת בית בחלק השמש ובית בחלק הלבנה, רק האחד לפנים והאחר לאחור. על כן אמרו חכמי המזלות כי מתחלת אריה עד סוף גדי הוא חלק השמש, והוא החלק הגדול. ויש לשמש כח בחלקה ככח המשרתים בגבולם, גם ככה הלבנה בחלקה הקטן, שהוא מראש דלי עד סוף סרטן. על כן אמרו חכמי הנסיון כי כל דבר שיקנה אדם והלבנה בחלקה הקטן ימכרנו ביותר מאשר קנהו, והפך זה אם היה "Enoch said: because we know that these signs [Leo and Cancer] are the houses of the luminaries, they assigned the remaining ten signs to the planets. Accordingly, each planet was assigned a house in the domain of the Sun and a house in the domain of the Moon, although
one forward and the other backward. Therefore the astrologers said that from the beginning of Leo to the end of Capricorn is the domain of the Sun, and this is the larger domain. The Sun has power in its domain like the power of the planets in their terms; the same applies to the Moon in its smaller domain, which is from the beginning of Aquarius to the end of Cancer. Therefore the scholars who rely on experience said that if a person buys something when the Moon is in the smaller domain, he will sell it for more than the purchase price, and the opposite occurs if it [the Moon] was in the larger domain" ( $\$ 2.5: 1-5, \mathrm{pp} .44-45$ ). Similar explanations are offered in Țéamim II, §2.3:6-8, §8.1:1-48, pp. 188189, 248-249 and in Al-Qabīṣī, 2004, I: 10, pp. 21-22. Ibn Ezra offers brief explanations in Mishpeṭei ha-Mazzalot (MS Schoenberg 57, f. 69) and Liber de Rationibus Tabularum: "Magistri iuditiorum partiti sunt circulum in duo, maiorem partem attribuentes soli, que est a capite leonis ad finem capricorni, minorem vero partem lune que est a fine capricorni usque ad caput leonis" (1947, p. 98). See also Tetrabiblos, 1980, I: 17, p. 79 and Kitāb al-Tafhīm, 1934, §440, p. 256.
${ }^{[2]}$ 1-2: Ptolemy said ... aspect with them. Such a statement is not to be found in Pseudo-Ptolemy's Centiloquium or in Ptolemy's Tetrabiblos. Corresponds to Mivharim II, $\S 2.1: 1$ (see note there), where Ptolemy is not mentioned, to She'elot I, $\$ 2.4: 2$, and to She'elot II, $\S 2.2: 2$. In the latter two places such a statement is attributed to an unknown astrologer named Sa 'īd. Corresponds also to Epitome totius astrologiae, where, curiously enough, the Moon's smaller domain of the circle is interchanged with the Sun's larger domain of the circle: "De emptione causa lucri. Volens causa durandi aliquid emere, emas cum Luna fuerit in parte magna circuli, quae dicitur Solis, \& est a capite Cancri ad finem Sagittarii, \& melius si sit velox, nec sit iuncta planetae infortunae, vel eius aspectui, \& melius ea existente in coniunctione, vel aspectu fortunae planetae, vel in aspecto Solis trino vel sextili" (Epitome, 1548, Lib. IV, cap. iiii, sig. R4 ${ }^{\text {r }}$ ). In Țéamim $I(\$ 2.5: 1-6, \mathrm{pp} .44-45)$, a similar statement is attributed to the "scholars who rely on experience," in the same place where Ibn Ezra explains the division of the zodiac into a "smaller domain," assigned to the Moon, and a "larger domain," assigned to the Sun. See above, note on Mivharim I, § 2.1:1.
${ }^{[3]}$ 2: Degrees that are equidistant from the equator or from the extreme north or south. This refers to a pair of degrees A and B that are equidistant from a degree C. Here degree $A$ is a position on the path of the Moon,
degree $B$ is a position on the path of a malefic planet, and degree $C$ represents one of the equinoxes (designated as "the equator") or the solstices (designated as "the extreme north" or "the extreme south"). The same pair of degrees is referred to above, at $\$ 6: 1$. See note there.
${ }^{[4]} 4$ : Great circle. This is a reference to an eccentric circle that is different from an epicycle, or "small circle" (גלגל קטן). See below, note on $\$$ 2.5:4.
${ }^{[5]} 4-5$ : The correct approach ... lower midheaven. Corresponds to Epitome totius astrologiae: "caveas autem ne sit sub luce Solis \& melius ut doninus ascendentis det vim planetae que est in decima vel undecima, \& si recipiens vim non est retrogradus" (Epitome, 1548, Lib. IV, cap. ii, sig. $R 4^{r}$.

## $\$ 2.2$

${ }^{[1]}$ 1: Jupiter signifies money. For this association, see note on Mivharim II, $\$$ 2.2:1.
${ }^{[2]}$ 3: Lot of Fortune. The same lot is referred to as the lot of the Moon in Mivḩarim II, $\$ 2.2: 3$. For the meaning of these names and their associations, see note on She' elot II, $\S 10: 2$.
${ }^{[3]}$ 1-3: If you can put it ... favorable position. Corresponds to Mivharim II, $\S 2.2: 1-3$. Corresponds to Epitome totius astrologiae: " Si sit Iupiter in ascendente, quarta, decima, undecima, vel secunda bonum est. Aspice etiam pars fortunae in bona dona domo, \& melius ut dominus partis eam aspiciat, vel Sol aut Luna" (Epitome, 1548, Lib. IV, cap. ii, sig. R4 ${ }^{\mathrm{r}}$-R4 ${ }^{\mathrm{v}}$ ). Cf. Sahl Ibn Bishr al-Yahūdī's De electionibus: "And if you wished to elect the hour of a purchase, adapt the Lot of Fortune, and let it be in the domiciles of Jupiter, joined to benefics: because this will be better for the one buying than for the one selling" (On Elections, 2008, $\$ 39 \mathrm{a}, \mathrm{p} .198$ ).

## $\$ 2.3$

${ }^{[1]}$ 1: If somebody asks ... quarrels and disputes. Corresponds to Sahl Ibn Bishr al-Yahūdī's De electionibus: "If you wished to elect the for the taking and lending of money ... let Mercury be cleansed of Mars ... if the Moon
were with Mars, he will fall in labor, and worry, and business dealings, and harshness or contention. And if she were impeded by Saturn, he will fall into something prolonged, and delay, and he will get out of it after distress and fatigue" (On Elections, 2008, §29b, pp. 196-197). Cf. Mivharim II, \$2.3:1-2.

## $\$ 2.4$

${ }^{[1]}$ 1: Know that if the Moon ... selling this item. Cf. She' elot $\mathrm{I}, \S 7 \cdot 9: 5$.

## $\$ 2.5$

${ }^{[1]}$ 1: I have already explained to you in the Book of the Beginning of Wisdom all the significations of each of the planets. This points to the whole fourth chapter of the first version of Reshit Hokhmah, which deals with "the complexions of the seven planets, their powers, and all their significations to all the creatures on Earth" (")בממסך השבעה משרתים וכחם וכר באל וכל אשר יורו עליו לכל הנבראים שהם על האדמה"). See Reshit Hokhmah, 1939, IV, xliii: 22-lvi: 25.
[2] 4 : The great circle, which is called "carrying circle", Heb , הגלגל הגדול שנקרא אופן הסובל. Ibn Ezra uses this expression to denote the deferent, that is, the circle on which an epicycle is "carried." In the Ptolemaic system the deferent is a circle centered around a point halfway between the equant and the Earth, that is, an eccentric circle. (The equant point, a mathematical concept developed by C. Ptolemy to account for the observed motion of heavenly bodies, is placed so that it is directly opposite the Earth from the center of the deferent. A planet or the center of an epicycle was conceived to move with a uniform speed with respect to the equant.) Here the concept of deferent is denoted by two Hebrew expressions. (a) גלגל גדול 'great circle', whose plain meaning is that it is different from a "small circle," גלגל קטן, that is, an epicycle (see Mivharim II, $\$ 4.3: 2$ and note); (b) אופן הסובל "carrying circle," an expression never used by Ibn Ezra elsewhere. In fact, the Hebrew term אופן הסובל was coined by Abraham Bar Ḥiyya and used extensively by him to denote the concept of deferent (Surat ha-'Ares, 1546, pp. 71, 95 et passim). In all likelihood, this is an interpolation made by a copyist knowledgeable in the work of both Abraham Bar Ḥiyya and Abraham

Ibn Ezra，at some time in the very early stages of the transmission of this text．Elsewhere，Ibn Ezra refers to the deferent and highlights its eccentricity by using expressions such as גלגלו הגדול שמוצקו רחוק ממוצק ＂the great circle，whose center is different from the center of the Earth＂（She＇elot I，§7．3：10；Moladot，MS BNF 1056，f．51a）．See also Sefer ha－＇Olam I，§21：2，pp．64－65；Sefer ha－＇Olam II，§50：1，pp．188－ 189.
$\$ 3.1$
${ }^{[1]}$ 1：To set off on a short journey ．．．third place．Ibn Ezra explains the association between the third place and short journeys in Téamim II： ＂ובהיות השמש בחצי השמים ויסור אל צד מערב，אז יסור מצד אל צד；צל כן שמו וֹ זה הבית התשיעי בית הדרכים הארוכים，בעבור שהוא למעלה מן הארץ．והשלישי מוֹי מוֹ When the Sun is at midheaven and starts descending to the west，it moves from one side to the other； so they made this ninth place the house of the long journeys，since it is above the Earth．The third 〈place was assigned to〉 short journeys because its power is less＂（\＄3．3：1－2，pp．206－207）．See also TTe‘amim II，§4．12：2， pp．216－217．
${ }^{\text {［2］}}$ 2：Know that the seventh place signifies your destination．Corre－ sponds to the fifth book of Dorotheus＇Pentabiblos（Carmen astrologicum， 1976，V：21，p．278）．
${ }^{[3]} 4$ ：Deformed signs ．．．signs with a human shape．These two categories of zodiacal signs are listed by Ibn Ezra in Mishpeṭei ha－Mazzalot：as fol－
 ＂ ＂Signs with a〉 human shape： Gemini，Virgo，Libra and the first half of Sagittarius and Aquarius．Cut in their limbs：Taurus，Leo．Deformed：Aries，Taurus，Cancer，Scorpio， Capricorn，Pisces＂（MS Schoenberg 57，f．69）．The same two lists are listed again in the second version of Reshit Hokhmah（Sela，2010，pp．53－54， 62－65）and are explained in TTe‘amim II，\＄2．3：9－10，17，pp．188－191．
${ }^{[4]} 7$ ：Lord of the hour．This concept is related to the astrological doc－ trine that the planets govern each hour of the whole day－divided into 12 hours from sunrise to sunset－and of the whole night－divided into 12 hours from sunset to sunrise，of each day of the week．Ibn Ezra
explains the order of the planets＇governance over they days of the week，
 הימים מיום ראשון；והנה נסו חכמי המזלות כי ביום זה יש כח לש לשמש יותר משאר הימים，וכאשר חלקו היום על שתים עשרה שעות תמיד נתנו השעה הראשונה לשמש， בעלת היום，והשעה השנית לנגה，שגלגלו תחת גלגל השמש．ועל ועל כן אמרו כי בעל ועל השנית ביום ראשון הוא נגה，והוא משתתף עם השמש，בעלת היו היום，כי רוב הכח של שלה בלו וככה שאר הכוכבים．והנה שבה השצה השמינית לשמש，ועל זה הדרך יצא בחלק ＂Know that the days $\langle$ of the week〉 begin from Sunday；the astrologers found out by experience that the Sun has more power on this day than on any other day．When they divided the day into twelve hours they always assigned the first hour to the Sun，the lord of the day，and the second hour to Venus，whose orb is beneath the Sun＇s orb．For this reason they said that the lord of the second〈hour〉 of Sunday is Venus and that it is in partnership with the Sun，the lord of the day，which has most of the power，and similarly with the other planets．Then the eighth hour is again under the charge of the Sun．Pro－ ceeding with this method，the diurnal part of Saturday is in the portion of Saturn，and of the nights Wednesday night 〈is in its portion）＂（\＄4．2：10， pp．72－73）．For a similar explanation，see Kitāb al－Tafhīm，1934，$\$ 390$ ， pp．237－238．
${ }^{[5]}$ 1－7：If you wish to set off ．．．burnt nor retrograde．Cf．Mivharim II， §3．2：1－3；She＇elot I，§3．4：1－3；She＇elot II，§9．1：1－5．
$\$ 3.2$
${ }^{[1]}$ 1：Māshā＇allāh．See note on She＇elot II，$\$ 1: 4$ ．
${ }^{[2]}$ 1：Māshā̉allāh said ．．．Saturn or Mars．Corresponds to Mivharim II， $\$ 9.3: 5$ ，where a similar statement is ascribed to the Ancients．
${ }^{[3]} 3-4$ ：But this is a great error ．．．enter 〈the city $\rangle$ ．Corresponds to Sahl Ibn Bishr al－Yahūdī＇s De electionibus：＂And I have already tested this many times in the bringing together of certain people who went out from a place in one hour，and they arrived at another region at one hour：but certain ones of them went back more quickly with the best substance，and certain ones took it slow in the same place；indeed cer－ tain ones of them perished before［they could］return to their homes． For this happens to them because of their nativities＂（On Elections，

2008，$\$ 6$ a，p．188）．A very similar statement（in all likelihood a para－ phrase of Sahl＇s foregoing statement）is made in＇Alī ibn abī－l－Rijāl＇s Kitāb al－Bāri（De iudiciis astrorum，1551，proemium authoris，pp．297－ 298）．
${ }^{[4]} 5$ ：I have already $\ldots$ fortunate or not．See above，$\S 1: 3$ ，and note．
${ }^{[5]}$ 5：If you find benefic planets ．．．malefic planets．Corresponds closely to a fragment in the final lines of Sefer ha－Moladot，a treatise on the doctrine of nativities by Ibn Ezra，written shortly before Mivharim I，in
 המזיקים והטובים באי זה רביעיות הם，כאשר מפורש בראשית החכמה，ובחר לו שילך ＂Cardinal points．Observe in which of the quadrants are located the malefic and benefic 〈planets〉，as it is explained in the Book of the Beginning of Wisdom，then choose for him to travel in the direction where the benefic planets 〈are located）＂（Moladot，MS BNF 1056，f．61a）．
${ }^{[6]} 7$－8：Know that Saturn ．．．certainly sink．Corresponds to Mivharim II， $\$ 3.2: 1-3, \$ 9.1: 1$ and Epitome totius astrologiae：＂In itinere maris cave in primis，ne sit Saturnus dominus horae，nec in domo decima，vel nona， vel tertia＂（Epitome，1548，Lib．IV，cap．xv，sig．S2 ${ }^{\text {v }}$ ）．
${ }^{[7]} 9$ ：Also be careful ．．．pirates and highwaymen．Cf．She＇elot I，$\$ 9.3: 2$ ； She＇elot II，§9．1：4；Mivḥarim II，§ 9．1：4．

## $\$ 3.3$

${ }^{[1]}$ 1：Māshā̉allāh said ．．．by sea．Corresponds to Mivharim II，§3．2：1－2， where Māshāallāh is not mentioned．For similar comparisons between Mars and Saturn regarding a journey by land or by sea，see She＇elot I，$\$ 9.3: 2$ and She＇elot II，$\$ 9.1: 4$ ，where the statements are ascribed to Dorotheus and Ptolemy respectively with respect to the ninth place．
${ }^{[2]}$ 3：The $\left[{ }^{[ } a\right][n][q][l][i][a][h]$ ，which is the slanting bottom［of the ship］，Hebrew：האנקליאה，הוא מקום שפוע תחתיתה．The word אנקליאה denotes the bilge of a ship，and is in all likelihood derived from the Span－ ish cala，French cale or enclave．Not only does this meaning tally with what the text says next about the harm produced by Saturn and Mars to
this part of the ship; it also agrees with the assumption of our text that the fourth place, that is, the cardo of the lower midheaven, is in charge of this part of the ship. This meaning is also congruous with what Mivharim II, $\$ 9.1: 3$ says about Saturn's harm to the ship when it is in the cardo of the lower midheaven.
${ }^{[3]}$ 4: The flag, that is, al-['a][s][p][d][h], Hebrew: הדגל, הוא אלאספדה. According to this passage, the seventh place is associated with the stern, which is where the rudder is located. Practically all medieval ships used quarter-rudders, which are basically oars with long blades and relatively short shafts, a shape reminiscent of a spade or a sword. Thus the loss of the דגל probably indicates the loss of the rudders (there were two such rudders, one on each side); obviously a ship without rudder is in deep trouble. The word אלאספדה, a unicum in Ibn Ezra's work, is meaningless as a transliteration from the Arabic but may derive from the Spanish espada, meaning sword, or some early version of spade. Espada, in its turn, comes from the Latin spatha and Greek $\sigma \pi \alpha \vartheta \eta$. See also Mivharim II, $\$ 9.1: 3$, where the Hebrew word דגל recurs in a similar context and with a similar meaning.
${ }^{[4]}$ 2-5: Know that the tenth place ... by the sailors. Corresponds closely to Mivḥarim II, §9.1:1-3, where Māshā'allāh is not mentioned. Cf. She'elot I, $\$ 9.3: 1-2$; She'elot II, $\$ 9.1: 3$. Note the analogy between the relative position of the parts of the ship mentioned in this passage and the relative position of the cardines of the horoscope in whose charge these parts are: the mast, the highest part of the ship, is in the charge of the tenth place, the highest component of the horoscope; the hull, the lowest part of the ship, is in the charge of the fourth place, the lowest component of the horoscope; the flag, which is in one of the extremities of the ship, is under the charge of the seventh place, that is, the cardo of the descendant, which is in one of the extremes of the horoscope.

## $\$ 3.4$

${ }^{[1]}$ 1-2: The scientists of India said ... not be worried. Corresponds closely to Mivharim II, §9.2:1-2, where Ibn Ezra presents an analogous viewpoint on a similar statement that is ascribed there to Dorotheus.
[2]4: Place of burning. This astrological term (Hebrew מקום השרפה, Arabic al-tariqah al-muhtariqah, Latin via combusta) is explained in
 קלון הלבנה השלישית מעקרב; צל כן אמרו מתשע עשרה מעלות ממאזנים עד המעלה השלישית מעקרב הוא מקום השריפה, ואמרו כי יתש כח כל כוכב במקום הזה. וקראוהו "Now the degree of the dejection of the Sun is Libra $19^{\circ}$, and the degree of the dejection of the Moon is Scorpio $3^{\circ}$; hence they called from Libra $19^{\circ}$ to Scorpio $3^{\circ}$ 'the place of burning' and said that the power of any planet is exhausted in this place. It was called 'place of burning' as if the planet were burnt by the light of the Sun" ( $\$ 2.16: 5, \mathrm{pp} .54-55$ ). See also Mishpeṭei ha-Mazzalot, MS Schoenberg 57, f. 69. Elsewhere Ibn Ezra uses a divergent terminology: Ṭe'amim II (\$2.7:5, pp. 198-199) has דרך החושך "path of darkness"; Reshit Hokhmah (1939, II, lii: 13) has דרך השריפה "path of burning." See also Kitāb al-Madḥal, 1996, VII: 6, v, p. 306; Kitāb al-Tafhīm, 1934, §514, p. 317; Al-Qabīṣī, 2004, III: 29, p. 105; Abbreviation, 1994, IV: 11, p. 55.
${ }^{[3]}$ 1-4: Be careful not to begin ... place of burning. Corresponds to Epitome totius astrologiae: "Experimento afferitur Lunam esse bonam ad iter maris, si est in Ariete fortunata, vel absque iniquo aspectu. In Pisce autem mala est, \& in Capricorno, \& in via combusta" (Epitome, 1548, Lib. IV, cap. xv , sig. $\mathrm{S}_{2}^{\mathrm{v}}$ ).

## $\$ 3.5$

${ }^{[1]}$ 1: The astrologers agreed ... signs $\langle$ is in the ascendant $\rangle$. Corresponds to She' elot I, §9.3:1.
${ }^{[2]}$ 2: The eighth place, which signifies fear and death. This is how Mishpeṭei ha-Mazzalot describes the eighth place: הבית השמיני: בית המות" "The eighth place: the place of death, worry, sadness and fear, and of inheritance from the deceased" (MS Schoenberg 57, f. 73).
${ }^{[3]}$ 2: The reason is well known ... [to the earthy signs]. Indeed, the eighth sign after each of the fiery signs [Aries, Leo, Sagittarius] is a watery sign [Scorpio, Pisces, Cancer], and the seventh sign after each of the earthy signs [Taurus, Virgo, Capricorn] is a watery sign [Scorpio, Pisces, Cancer].
> ${ }^{[4]}$ 3: Best of all are the watery signs, Corresponds to Sahl Ibn Bishr alYahūdī's De electionibus: "And know that the healthiest [signs] are ... the watery ones for him who wished to sail in the water of the sea" (On Elections, 2008, §117a, p. 216).

$\$ 3.6$
${ }^{[1]}$ 3: If you wish.. Section $7\langle$ below $\rangle$. See below, $\S 7 \cdot 1: 2 \mathrm{ff}$., $\S 7 \cdot 5: 3 \mathrm{ff}$.
$\$ 4.1$
${ }^{[1]}$ 1: If you wish ... Leo, or Aquarius. These are fixed signs. Cf. Epitome totius astrologiae: "De aedificatione domorum. Sit ascendens signum firmum" (Epitome, 1548, Lib. IV, cap. vi, sig. R4 ${ }^{\text {v }}$ ).
${ }^{[2]}$ 2: Great circle. This is a reference to an eccentric circle that is different from an epicycle, or "small circle" (גלגל קטן). See above, note on \$2.5:4.
${ }^{[3]}$ 2: It is more auspicious ... retrograde or burnt. Cf. Mivḥarim II, \$4.3:1-2.

$$
\$ 4.2
$$

${ }^{[1]}$ 2: In one of the cardines of the Moon. This expression is a unicum in Ibn Ezra's work. It means that Mars is in quartile or opposition to the Moon. Cf. Me'orot $\$ 22: 1$.
${ }^{[2]}$ 1-2: Know that Saturn... be destroyed. Cf. Mivharim II, $\$ 4 \cdot 3: 3$, where such a statement is ascribed to Ptolemy, and Epitome totius astrologiae: "De aedificatione domorum. Sit ascendens signum firmum, nec Mars aspiciat illud. Sitque Saturnus in domo bona, \& melius ut Luna aspiciat Saturnum aspectu amicitiae" (Epitome, 1548, Lib. IV, cap. vi, sig. $R 4^{v}$ ).
${ }^{[3]}$ 3: If you can put ... can be better. Corresponds to Epitome totius astrologiae: "De aedificatione domorum ... Ponasque signi ascendentis
dominum in ipso ascendente, vel decima, aut det vim planetae, que sit in eis, \& Luna sit in loco bono, vadens a coniunctione, ad oppositionem Solis" (Epitome, 1548, Lib. IV, cap. vi, sig. R4 ${ }^{\text {v }}$ ).

## $\$ 4.3$

${ }^{[1]}$ 1: Māshā'allāh said ... good end. This is related to the very negative function that Mars (according to $\$ 4.2: 2$, above) serves in building, because Scorpio is the house of Mars.
${ }^{[2]}$ 2: This sign is false through and through. Corresponds to She'elot II, $\$ 9.2: 2$ and $\$ 9.2: 7$, where such a statement is ascribed to Abū Ma'shar and other astrologers. See also Abraham Bar Ḥiyya's Megillat ha-Megalleh (Scroll of the Revealer): עקרב, שהוא מזל שקר וכזב ובית מעון הרשע והחרב" " "Scorpio, a sign of fraud and falseness and the house of wickedness, war, and robbery" (Megilat haMegaleh, 1924, p. 145:1617).
${ }^{[3]}$ 2: He also said in his Book of Interrogations ... will be false. Māshā'allāh's original Arabic work on interrogations is lost (Steinschneider, 1870, $\$ 378$, p. 600). The statement about Scorpio's falseness, ascribed here to Māshāallāh, cannot be found in the Hebrew translation of Māshā’allāh's work on interrogations entitled ספר השאלות למאשא אללה (Book of Interrogations by Māshäallāh; see Māshä allāh on Interrogations, MS BNF 1045, ff. 178a-180a) nor in three of the four Latin texts of interrogations attributed to Māshā'allāh (Thorndike, 1956, pp. 49-62; De cogitationibus, 1549; De receptione, 1549; Cognition, 2008; On hidden things, 2008; On reception, 2008).

## $\$ 4.4$

${ }^{[1]}$ 1: If you wish ... burnt nor retrograde. Corresponds to Mivḥarim II, $\$ 4.1: 1$ and to She'elot II, $\$ 4.2: 5$, where a similar approach is presented as Ibn Ezra's opinion.
${ }^{[2]}$ 2-3: It is more auspicious ... with Mars. Corresponds to Mivḥarim II, §4.1:4. Cf. She'elot I, §4.2:1-2, She'elot II, §4.2:1-2.

## $\$ 4.5$

${ }^{[1]} 1$ ：If you want $\ldots$ the ray of the Sun．Corresponds to Mivharim II，$\S 6$ 6：7， and She＇elot I，$\$ 4.4: 2$ ，where such a statement is ascribed to Dorotheus． Corresponds to Dorotheus＇Pentabiblos：＂If the Moon is under the Sun＇s rays［and］its light is destroyed and it is not seen，then it is corrupted but it is beneficial for one who desires theft or treachery or something which is kept secret against him，and for every hidden or secret action which its master does not wish to made public＂（Carmen astrologicum，1976，V： 5 ， p．264）．
${ }^{[2]}$ 2：If you wish to choose ．．．not be found．Corresponds to She＇elot I ， \＄4．4：5．
${ }^{[3]}{ }_{1} \mathbf{- 3}$ ：If you want.. are unfortunate．Corresponds to Epitome totius astrologiae：＂Pro inquisitione rei occulate．Volens aliquid occulto inquirere，ponas dominum ascendentis in loco ubi det vim planetae in decima vel undecima，\＆ut Luna det vim planetae que sit sub terrae， \＆dominus horae sit Iupiter non retrogradus，nec infortunatus，nec sub sole．Cave ne Saturnus sit in quovis angulo，nec dominus horae＂（Epitome， 1548，Lib．IV，cap．viii，sig． $\mathrm{S}^{1}$ ）．

## $\$ 5.1$

${ }^{[1]}$ 1：The fifth place ．．．father a son．For the association between the fifth place and sons，see Reshit Hokhmah，1939，III，xli：25；Téamim I，§3．6：9， pp．66－67；Téamim II，§3．2：1，pp．204－205 et passim．
${ }^{[2]}$ 1：A man who wishes ．．．or the night．Corresponds to She＇elot III， \＄5．2：3 and Epitome totius astrologiae：＂Pro conceptione filii masculi ．．． sitque hora impar ．．．\＆horae paes pro foemina＂（Epitome，1548，Lib．IV， cap．viii，sig． $\mathrm{S}_{1}{ }^{\mathrm{r}}$ ）．More than one source is credited by Ibn Ezra with this doctrine．In Ṭéamim II，he ascribes it to Māshāallāh：אממר החכם הנקרא＂ משאללה כי לעולם יולד הזכר בשעה מפורדת במספר והנקבה בזוגות，וזה אמת ברובי ＂הנולדיםוהנולדות רק לא בכלם．＂＝＂The scholar named Mâshâ’allâh said that males are always born in an hour whose number is odd，whereas females〈are born〉 in even 〈hours），and this is true for most natives，male and female，but not for all of them＂（ $\$ 6.1: 1$, pp．234－235）．But below，$\S 7.6: 10$ ， the same doctrine is ascribed to Al－Kindī．In Me＇orot，§ $3: 3$ ，Ibn Ezra
rejects the theory that days 4,14 , and 20 of the lunar month are critical days or crises in the development of a disease because they are evennumbered. For the correspondence between female/male and even/odd hours, see Kitāb al-Tafhīm, 1934, §390, p. 238. Abraham Bar Ḥiyya (first decades of the twelfth century), in his epistle addressed to Rabbi Judah b. Barzillai of Barcelona, points out a talmudic source (B Shabbat 129b) for the injunction not to choose even-numbered hours for beginning any undertaking, but also indicates that astrologers consider even-numbered hours to be inauspicious in elections (Epistle to Judah b. Barzilai, 1917, pp. 24-25; Sela 2006, pp. 138, 154-157).
${ }^{[3]}$ 2: In a masculine sign ... masculine quadrant. For masculine signs, see note on Mivharim II, $\$$ 5.1:1. For masculine quadrants, see She' elot I, §5.3:2-3.
${ }^{[4]}$ 2: If you can ... masculine quadrant. Corresponds to Mivharim II, § 5.1:4 and Epitome totius astrologiae: "Pro conceptione filii masculi. Sit Iupiter in quovis angulo, \& una quartarum, quae dicuntur dextrae vel sinistrae, vel sit Soli orientalis" (Epitome, 1548, Lib. IV, cap. viii, sig. S1 ${ }^{\mathrm{r}}$ ). Cf. She'elot I, § 5.2:2, § 5.3:1; She'elot II, § 5.1:2.
${ }^{[5]} 4$ : Put a masculine.. if you can. Corresponds to Mivharim II, $\S$ 5.1:2; She'elot I, §5.3:1-2; She'elot II, $\S 5.3: 1-4$, and Epitome totius astrologiae: "Pro conceptione filii masculi ... Sit dominus horae masculus" (Epitome, 1548, Lib. IV, cap. viii, sig. $\mathrm{S}_{1}{ }^{\mathrm{r}}$ ). Cf. She'elot I, $\S$ 5.3:4.
${ }^{[6]}$ 6: Venus' joy is in the fifth place. See above, note on $\S 8: 3$.

## $\$ 5.2$

${ }^{[1]}$ 3: Ptolemy said ... be burnt. Here Ibn Ezra draws on the twenty-second aphorism of Pseudo-Ptolemy's Centiloquium: "XXII. Neither cut out, or first put on a new garment whilst the Moon is in the sign Leo: if she then be unfortunate it be so much the worse" (Centiloquium Ptolomei, 1676, p. 318). Cf. "De incidendis \& induendis novis vestibus" (De iudiciis astrorum, 1551, VII: xxxiiii, p. 313).

## $\$ 5.3$

${ }^{[1]}$ 1－2：Someone who wants ．．．aspects with Jupiter．Cf．Mivharim II， § 5．3：1．

## $\$ 5.4$

${ }^{[1]}$ 1：If you want to wean ．．．nor retrograde．Cf．＂De disiunctione nati a mamilla＂（De iudiciis astrorum，1551，VII：xxxii，p．313）．
${ }^{[2]}$ 2：Enoch．See note on She＇elot I，§1：1．
${ }^{[3]}$ 3：Dorotheus，Māshā＇allāh，and Abū Ma＇shar．For these three astrol－ ogers，see notes on She＇elot II，$\S_{2}: 1$ ，She＇elot $\mathrm{I}, \$_{5}: 2$ ，and $\$_{3}: 6$ ，respectively．

## $\$ 5.5$

${ }^{[1]}$ 1：Enoch＇s Book of Secrets．Ibn Ezra did not have first－hand knowledge of this book by Enoch．In＇Olam I he relies on a quotation by＂Dorotheus the king＂（pp．72－73）；in Moladot he draws on information provided by Sahl Ibn Bishr the Jew（MS BNF 1056，f．47a；see following note）．Ibn Ezra refers to Enoch＇s book by two synonymous titles：ספר הרזים in Moladot， but ספר הסודות in＇Olam I and Mivharim I．This work appears to be the same as Kitāb asrār kalām Hurmus al－muthallath bi－al－hikma（Book of the secrets of the words of Hermes who is tripled in wisdom）（MS Paris， BNF Arabe 2487，ff．32－38）．See Pingree，1997，p．43；Sezgin，1976，p． 55. This book is not identical with the so－called＂Book of Secrets of Enoch＂ or the apocryphal 2 Enoch．
${ }^{[2]}$ 1－2：And I heard ．．．verified it．According to Ibn Ezra＇s own report in Sefer haMoladot，he became aware of this passage of Enoch＇s Book of
 הישראלי כי ראה בספר הרזים של חנוך כי הנולד בסוף דגים ימות בשריפת אש ואם היה שבתי בבית השמיני והוא מתולדת המים ימות במים．ואם מתולדת העפר סופו ＂Sahl，the Jew，said that he saw in Enoch＇s Book of Secrets that one who is born at the end of Pisces will die in fire；and if Saturn is in the eighth place，〈in a sign〉 of watery nature，he will die in water；and if 〈in a sign〉 or earthy nature，he will die in a landslide＂（Moladot，MS BNF 1056，f．56b）．
$\$ 6.1$
${ }^{[1]}$ 1: Be careful ... a glutton. Corresponds to: Mivharim II, $\mathbb{\text { 6.1:2 }}$ (see note); Epitome totius astrologiae: "si sit in Leone immoderatus vorator \& arrogans erit" (Epitome, 1548, Lib. IV, cap. x, sig. S1 ${ }^{\text {r }}$ ); Sahl Ibn Bishr al-Yahūdī’s De electionibus (On Elections, 2008, §72, p. 207). Cf. the fifth book of Dorotheus' Pentabiblos: "If the Moon is in Leo, then the slave which is bought will be a master, trained for [his] craft, educated, good in the goodness of his upbringing, except that he will be wrathful, abounding in food, and he will be frivolous and a pain in [his] belly and stomach will not cease happening to him because of this, and he will be an embezzler of things" (Carmen astrologicum, 1976, V: 11, p. 269).
${ }^{[2]}$ 2: It is very auspicious ... human shape. Corresponds to Mivharim II, $\S 6.1: 5$ and She'elot I , $\$ 6.2: 2$. The category of the signs with a human shape comprises Gemini, Virgo, Libra, and the first half of Sagittarius and Aquarius. See above, note on $\$ 3.1$ : 4 .
${ }^{[3]}$ 1-2: Someone who wants to buy ... human shape. Corresponds to 'Alī ibn abī-l-Rijāl's Kitāb al-Bāri: "De emptione servorum ... Fac ut sit Luna \& dominus ascendentis in signis humanes \& in aliis signis existentibus fortunatis, excepto Ariete, Scorpione, \& Capricornio" (De iudiciis astrorum, 1551, VII: L, p. 317). Cf. Dorotheus' Pentabiblos (Carmen astrologiсит, 1976, V: 11, p. 269).
$\$ 6.2$
${ }^{[1]}$ 1: Māshā'allāh said ... mistreat him. Corresponds to Mivharim II, §6.1:4 and She'elot I, §6.2:3. Cf. Dorotheus' Pentabiblos (Carmen astrologicum, 1976, V: 11, p. 270).
${ }^{[2]}$ 4: Mercury has a great power ... female slaves. Corresponds to She' elot II, $\S 6.2: 1$. This statement is commonplace in introductions to astrology. See, for example, what Ibn Ezra says in Téamim I, following Ibn Abi Damina: וכוכב חמה יורה על העבדים כאשר יורה הבית הששי כי גלגלו ששי לגלגל" "Mercury indicates slaves, inasmuch as this is the signification of the sixth house and its orb is the sixth 〈counting〉 from Saturn's orb" (\$4.1:5, pp. 70-71). See also Mishpeṭei ha-Mazzalot, MS Schoenberg

57，f．80；Moladot，MS BNF 1056，f．55a；Kitāb al－Tafhīm，1934，§431－432， p． 252.
${ }^{[3]}$ 6：Succedent＜places〉，Hebrew סמוכים．This means the second，fifth， eighth，and eleventh places．See above，note on $\$ 2: 1$（s．v．place）．
$\$ 6.3$
${ }^{[1]}$ 3：Feminine $\langle$ signs〉 for female $\langle$ slaves $\rangle$ and masculine $\langle$ signs $\rangle$ for male 〈slaves〉．Corresponds to＇Alī ibn abī－l－Rijāl＇s Kitāb al－Bāri＂Et si servus fuerit masculus，pone loca significatorum \＆signa in locis masculinis；si fuerit foemina，pone ea in foeminis＂（De iudiciis astrorum， 1551，VII：VI，p．305）．For feminine and masculine signs，see note on Mivḥarim II，§ 5．1：1．

## $\$ 6.4$

${ }^{[1]}$ 1－2：Someone who wants ．．．a malefic planet is in Taurus．For the association between small cattle and Mercury，see Mivḥarim II，$\$ 12.1: 3$ ； Teéamim II，$\S 5.7$ ：8，pp．232－233；for the association between sheep and Aries，see Mivḥarim II，$\S 12.1: 4$ ；Ṭéamim I，$\$ 2.2: 12$ ，pp．38－39；$\$ 4.5: 4$ ， pp．76－77．For the association between small cattle and Aries，and between large cattle and Taurus，see ‘Olam I，$\S 29: 8, \mathrm{pp} .70-71$ ．Cf．Doro－ theus＇Pentabiblos（Carmen astrologicum，1976，V：12，p．270）；＇Alī ibn abīl－l－Rijāl＇s Kitāb al－Bāri（De iudiciis astrorum，1551，VII：LII，p． 318）．
${ }^{[2]}$ 2：Virgo，Pisces，or Aquarius，because they are winged．These signs are listed in Ṭe‘amim II：בןם בנפי כנפים．יש בבתולה כוכבים בדמות כנפים גם＂ ＂Winged．There are stars in Virgo that resemble wings，and in Pisces as well＂（\＄2．4：3，pp．192－193）．They are also recorded in the second version of Reshit Hokhmah：＇＂מזלות העופות：בתולה，גדי，דגים．＂＝ ＂Signs of birds：Virgo，Capricorn，Pisces＂（Sela，2010，pp．54，66）．See also Al－Qabīṣī，2004，I：24，p．33：＂Some have wings，i．e．Virgo，Gemini and Pisces．＂
${ }^{[1]}$ 2-3: If you wish ... burnt nor retrograde. Corresponds to: Mivharim II, $\S 7.1: 3$; Mivharim III, $\S 7.1: 1$; She'elot I, $\S 7.3: 3$; She'elot II, $\$ 7.1: 2$; Epitome totius astrologiae: "Pro itinere ad bellum. Eligas signum cuius dominus est ex superioribus planetis, vel signum Cancri ..." (Epitome, 1548, Lib. IV, cap. xi, sig. S1 ${ }^{\text {v }}$ ); Sahl Ibn Bishr's De electionibus: "It is necessary that you should make the Ascendant one of the domiciles of the higher planets, of which the stronger is the domicile of Mars" (On Elections, 2008, §85, p. 209).
${ }^{[2]}$ 3: Nor in the eighth place ... taken prisoner. For the inauspicious character of these places, see above, $\$ 2: 1$, and note.

## $\$ 7.2$

${ }^{[1]}$ 3: [Māshā’allāh] said in his Book of Experiences. This work is also mentioned by Ibn Ezra in Reshit Hochmah, 1939, IX, lxvii: 14-15: וחרכבו" הודו שמו מאשא אללה אמר בספר הנסיונות שלו כי גורל התעלומה בלילה יותר תקיף (מגורל הטוב; והנה שב לדעת בטלמיוס ולא הרגיש בדבר." "The scientist of India, whose name was Māshā’allāh, said in his Book of Experiences that the lot of the Absent by night is stronger than the lot of Fortune, and he unknowingly endorsed Ptolemy’s opinion." See TTe‘amim I, §9.1:1-2, pp. 92-93 and note on She'elot II, $\S 1: 4$.
${ }^{[2]}$ 1-4: There is a great dispute ... full strength. Corresponds closely to Mivḥarim II, $\S 7.3: 1-2$, Mivharim III, $\S 7.2: 2-5$ and She'elot II, $\S 7 \cdot 4: 1-3$. The question in $\$ 7.2$ : (How should we pass judgment if Scorpio is in the ascendant sign and Mars is in the seventh place, in Taurus?) epitomizes what Ibn Ezra calls the "great dispute among the astrologers." This is because this question embodies an inherent contradiction: (a) On the one hand, because Scorpio and Aries are Mars' houses, and, as Ibn Ezra writes, "Scorpio is in the ascendant," it follows that one of Mars' houses is in the ascendant, which is precisely what is predicated in $\$ 7.1: 2-3$ ("Mars' houses are better") in order "to choose 〈a time〉 for waging war or sending out a commander by land"; (b) on the other hand, because Ibn Ezra writes that "Mars is in the seventh place, in Taurus," it emerges that the captain will be defeated, because, according to $\$ 7.2$ : "if the lord of the ascendant sign is in the seventh place, he [the commander] will be
defeated." The same dilemma is presented in Mivharim III, §7.2:2-5 (see note there), and She'elot II, $\S 7 \cdot 4: 1-3$ (see note there), where Ibn Ezra also offers his own solution to the problem. The example is also found in Epitome totius astrologiae (Epitome, 1548, Lib. III, cap. xii, sig. Q2 ${ }^{\text {r }}$, quoted in note on She' elot II, §7.4:1-3), whose author endorses the opinion voiced by Ibn Ezra in She'elot II, §7.4:3, Mivharim II, §7.3:1-2, and Mivharim III, $\S 7.2: 2-5$. But according to a portion of the third version of Sefer haShe'elot, extant only in Latin (Interrogacionum, Erfurt, f. 27a, quoted in note on She' elot II, $\$ 7 \cdot 4: 1-3$ ), it turns out that what Ibn Ezra presents in Mivḩarim II, §7.3:1-2, Mivharim III, §7.2:2-4 as his own solution to the problem, as well the opinion endorsed by the author of Epitome totius astrologiae, is based on Abū Ma'shar, just as stated in the current passage.
$\$ 7.3$
${ }^{[1]}$ 1: If you can put $\ldots$ is auspicious. Corresponds to Mivḥarim II, $\S 7.1: 4$, Mivharim III, $\S 7.3: 4-5, \S 7.5: 4$, where this rule is implemented.
${ }^{[2]}$ 2: Be careful $\ldots$ is the ascendant. Corresponds to Mivharim III, $\S 7 \cdot 3: 4$.
${ }^{[3]}$ 3: You should know ... the ascendant sign. Corresponds to Mivharim II, $\$ 7.1: 5$, where this rule is implemented.

$$
\$ 7.4
$$

${ }^{[1]}$ 1: It receives the Moon either in conjunction or in aspect. For the condition of "reception," see Mivharim II, $\S 6: 12$ and note.
${ }^{[2]}$ 1-2: Māshā'allāh said ... just mentioned. Corresponds closely to Mivḥarim II, §7.2:1-2.
${ }^{[3]} 4$ : This is the general rule ... any aspect. Corresponds to Mivharim II, \$7.2:5.
${ }^{[1]}$ 1-2: Abū Ma'shar said ... join him. Corresponds to Mivḥarim III, §7.4:4.
${ }^{[2]}$ 3: No sign ... by sea. Corresponds to Mivharim II, $\S 7.1: 3$ and Mivharim III, §7.5:1.
${ }^{[3]}$ 3: The enemy's place. If Scorpio is the ascendant, Taurus is in the seventh place, which signifies the enemy.
${ }^{[4]} 4-5$ : Pisces is also ... burnt or retrograde. Corresponds to Mivharim III, $\S 7.5: 4$ and Mivḥarim II, $\S 7.1: 4$.
${ }^{[5]}$ 6: On condition that it [Pisces] ... latitude of the country. Pisces is the tenth sign after Cancer; but if Cancer is the ascendant, Pisces is not necessarily in the tenth place. See below, $\$ 10.1: 5$ and note; She' elot I, $\$ 10.3: 1-2$ and note; and Me'orot $\S 16: 1-3$ and note.
${ }^{[6]}$ 6: Cancer is auspicious ... in Libra. Corresponds to Mivharim III, \$7.5:2 and Mivharim II, §7.1:5.
${ }^{[7]}$ 12: Be careful that Jupiter is not in Cancer. This is because, if the ascendant is in Capricorn and Jupiter is in Cancer, Jupiter is in the seventh place after the ascendant, which signifies the enemy.
${ }^{[8]}$ 12: So that it [Jupiter] is in the sixth place. This is to avoid having Jupiter in the seventh place, which signifies the enemy.

$$
\S 7.6
$$

${ }^{[1]}$ 1: Someone who inquires ... aspects the Moon. Corresponds to Epitome totius astrologiae: "Pro uxore ducenda ... \& Luna sit cum Venere, vel aspiciat aspectu amicite" (Epitome, 1548, Lib. IV, cap. xii, sig. S2 ${ }^{\mathrm{r}}$ ). Together with $\$ 7.6$ :9, below, corresponds to She'elot II, $\$ 12.3: 7$. See note there.
${ }^{[2]} 9$ : If you want $\ldots$ in fortunate positions. Together with $\$ 7.6: 1$, above, corresponds to She'elot II, § 12.3:7.
${ }^{[3]}$ 10: Yáqub al-Kindī said ... a woman. A similar statement appears above, $\$ 5.1: 1$, without mentioning Ya‘qub al-Kindī. See note there. Corresponds also to She'elot III, $\$ 5.2: 3$ and Epitome totius astrologiae (1548, Lib. IV, cap. viii, sig. $\mathrm{S}_{1}{ }^{\mathrm{r}}$ ).

## $\$ 7.7$

${ }^{[1]}$ 1: If you want ... occur to them. For the association between Jupiter and partnership, see She' elot $\mathrm{I}, ~ § 6: 2$. Corresponds closely to Mivḥarim II, §7.5:1.
[2] 2: Lot of Fortune, Hebrew המזל הטוב, lit. good luck. This is an unusual Hebrew designation for the lot of Fortune, rarely used by Ibn Ezra. Other instances may be found in Țéamim II (\$7.1:9, pp. 244-245) and Nehoshet II, MS Mantova 10, f. 48b. For the lot of Fortune, see note on Mivharim II, §1.2:1-3.
${ }^{[3]}$ 2: Find the lot of Fortune ... benefic planet. Corresponds closely to Mivharim II, §7.5:2 and She'elot I, §7.2:4-6.

## $\$ 8.2$

${ }^{[1]}$ 1: Someone who wants ... ascendant sign. For the association between
 המוות, ובעבור שהוא דומה לשני שיורה על הממון, יורה על ירושה מפאת מתים.״ $=$ "The eighth house ... indicates death. And because it is similar to the second house, which indicates wealth, it indicates an inheritance from the deceased" ( $\$ 3.2: 6$, pp. 206-207). See also Mivharim II, $\S_{3}$ : 1.
$\$ 9.1$
${ }^{[1]}$ 1: Someone who wants ... that may be. Corresponds closely to She' elot I, §11.1:9.
$\$ 9.2$
${ }^{[1]}{ }_{1-7}$ : If someone wants ... of Mercury. Corresponds to Mivharim II, § 10.3:1-5.

## $\$ 9.3$

${ }^{[1]}$ 1-2: Someone who wants $\ldots$ is very harmful. Corresponds to Mivharim III, §9.1:1-3.
${ }^{[2]}$ 5: Mars forms a fortunate aspect $\langle$ with the Moon or Mercury $\rangle$. Cf. Mivharim I, §1.3:3, above.
${ }^{[3]}$ 1-6: Someone who wants ... aspect with it. This is a repetition of $\$ 1.1: 1-3$, above. See notes there. Corresponds to Mivharim III, $\$ 9.3: 1-4$.
§ 10.1
${ }^{[1]}$ 4: Because it [the Sun] is the lord of the tenth place. This is because the Sun is the lord of Leo, the tenth sign if we start the count with Scorpio.
${ }^{[2]}$ 5: Rising times, Hebrew מצעדים. The "rising time" of a zodiacal sign, for a given geographical latitude, is the time required for that sign to rise, i.e., to fully cross the horizon. On rising times or ascensions, see Evans, 1998, pp. 109-125; Sanctification of the New Moon, 1967, pp. 142143.
${ }^{[3]}$ 5: The tenth place ... about this. These two methods for correcting the horoscopic places ("according to the rising times" and "calculated in equal degrees") and the different power assigned to them are described

 החלוק יקרא חלוק המישור ויש לו שלישית כח במשפטי המזלות. ועשה תחלת ולת כל הבתים בדרך המצעדים, כאשר הראתיך בספר הלוחות, ולא תחוש אם יצא בית תות אחד קטן ואחר גדול מאד, או שיהיו שני בתים במזל אחד. והנה שני שלישיות הכח "Proceed as follows: observe the equal ascending degree of the sign and assign 30 equal degrees to the first place;
do likewise for all the places. This division is called "planar division" and it has one-third of the power in the judgments of the zodiacal signs. Calculate the cusps of all the places by the method of the rising times, as I showed you in the Book of the Tables, and do not be disturbed if one place comes out small and another very large, or if two places fall into one sign. The planet that is calculated by the 'division of the rising times' has two-thirds of the power" (MS Schoenberg 57, ff. 71-72). A similar explanation is given in a Latin book on the astrolabe ascribed to Ibn Ezra: "Unus autem modus equationis domorum est ut cuique domui XXX gradus tribuantur, incipiendo a gradu oriente. Iudiciorum quidem auctores huius equationis domibus tertiam uirtutis iudiciorum secundum domos attribuunt. Alteri uero que est secundum cuiusque terre latitudinem, duas tertias" (Astrolabio, 1940, p. 22). See also TTe‘amim I, § 10.2:1-7, pp. 96-97.
${ }^{[4]}$ 2-5: He should be careful ... about this. Corresponds to Mivharim II, §10.2:1-2.
${ }^{[5]} 7$ : If it [the Sun] is in Pisces ... ascendant sign. Leo, which is the Sun's house, is the sixth sign after Pisces and the twelfth sign after Virgo (counting counterclockwise). Therefore, as the sixth and twelfth places are considered to be unfortunate, the Sun is the lord of an unfortunate place [Leo] with respect to the ascendant sign [Pisces or Virgo]. For a definition of the unfortunate places in the context of elections, see note on Mivḥarim II, §2:3.
${ }^{[6]}$ 9: Let the lord ... with it [the Sun]. Corresponds to Mivḥarim II, § 10.2:5.
§ 10.2
${ }^{[1]}$ 2: But be careful $\ldots$ against him. Corresponds to 'Olam I, $\S 68: 1$, pp. 96-97, Mivharim II, §10.2:1-3 and She'elot I, \$4.3:2.
${ }^{\text {[2] }} 1$-2: Someone who wants ... against him. Corresponds closely to Mivharim II, $\$ 10.4: 1-2$. Also corresponds to Epitome totius astrologiae (1548, Lib. IV, cap. xvi, sig. $\mathrm{S}_{2}{ }^{\mathrm{v}}-\mathrm{S}_{3}{ }^{\mathrm{r}}$ ) and Sahl Ibn Bishr al-Yahūdī's De electionibus (On Elections, 2008, \$125a, p. 218). See note on Mivḥarim II, § 10.4:1-2.
${ }^{[3]}$ 3：Likewise，he should ．．．will be strong．Corresponds to She＇elot I， \＄4．3：1－2．

## $\$ 10.3$

${ }^{[1]}$ 1：The three planets ．．．Mars，Venus，and Mercury．Ibn Ezra clar－ ifies this in various parts of his astrological work．His explanation in

 ＝עמו והוא נגה לתקן וליפות；והשלישי מאדים בעבור המהירות ולסבול העמל．＂ ＂There are three lords of crafts：the first is Mercury，signifying all sci－ ence，knowledge，understanding，craft and trade；the second is Venus， which is associated with it［Mercury］to repair and enhance；the third is Mars，〈which is associated with Mercury〉 to provide speed and 〈the ability to endure hard work＂（MS Schoenberg 57，f．79）．Another expla－
 וכוכב חמה כי כל אומנות צריכה למהירות，והנה תולדת מאדים לתקון，ותולדת ＂The reason why Mars，Venus，and Mer－ cury are lords of the crafts is that all crafts need rapidity，and Mars＇ nature tends to repair，and Venus＇nature to understanding，and simi－ larly with Mercury＂（ $\$ 5.3: 8$ ，pp．224－225）．A lengthier account，focused on the native＇s craft or trade，is given in Moladot，MS BNF 1056，f．57b－ 58a．
${ }^{[2]}$ 2：Put the Moon $\ldots$ with Saturn．Corresponds to Mivharim II，$\$$ 10．1：1． Coincides also with $\$ 1.2: 2$ ，above（see note），where Abū Ma＇shar is credited with a similar statement．
${ }^{[3]}$ 4：This is what Saturn... natal horoscope．Cf．above，$\S$ 1．2：1．Ibn Ezra usually ascribes this property of Saturn to Ptolemy．See Moladot，MS BNF 1056，f．48b；Țéamim II，§5．4：5，pp．226－227．Cf．Tetrabiblos，1980， III：13，340－341．
${ }^{[4]}$ 5－6：Be careful ．．．moving rapidly．Corresponds to Mivḥarim II， §10．1：3－4．
§ 10.4
${ }^{[1]}$ 3：$\langle$ True〉 anomaly．This astronomical concept（Hebrew מנה מתוקנת， Arabic khasssah al－mu＇addalah，Latin portio recta or argumentum verum） denotes the angular distance between the planet＇s apogee and its current position．It is explained by Al－Bīrūnī in Kitāb al－Tafhīm：＂The distance of a planet on the orbit of the epicycle from the dhirwah al－wusțā（i．e．， apogee as seen from the center of the world，corresponding to a line from the center of the world through the center of the epicycle to its upper part）is known as the khasssah al－wusṭā，argumentum medium，mean anomaly，and that from the dhirwah al－mar＇iyyah（i．e．，apogee as seen from the center of the world，corresponding to the line drawn from the center of the world through the center of the epicycle to its upper part）as the khasssah al－mu＇addalah，argumentum verum，true anomaly，while the difference between the two khasssah is called the ta‘dil al－khasssah al－ülā， equation argumenti＂（1934，$\$ 183$ ，p．94）．See also Evans，1998，pp．226－ 227．Cf．Me＇orot \＄30：2．
${ }^{[2]}$ 3：As for Mercury ．．．are retrograde．Mishpeṭei ha－Mazzalot offers an analogous although more detailed account of Venus＇and Mercury＇s
 נגה，אם היתה מנתו המתוקנת יותר מארבעה מזלות，גם שבע עשרה מעל מלות，מות הוא מערבי ומהיר בלכתו יותר ממהלך השמש．ואחרי כן מהלכו פחות ממהל מהך השמש עד
 והוא מזרחי．וכוכב חמה ימהר בהליכתו עד שלוש מזו מזות והוא מערבי．ואחר כן יתמהמה עד ח＇מזלות וח׳ מעלות．ואחר כך יהיה מהיר והוא ＂The motion of Venus and Mercury［i．e．，how fast they move］ depends on the Sun＇s motion．So Venus，when its true anomaly is more than 4 signs and $17^{\circ}$ ，is occidental 〈of the Sun〉 and moving faster than the Sun．Then its motion is less than［i．e．，slower than］the Sun＇s motion until its true anomaly is 7 signs and $13^{\circ}$ ．Then its motion speeds up and it is oriental＜of the Sun〉．Mercury moves rapidly［i．e．，faster than the sun］until 〈its true anomaly is〉 3 signs and $22^{\circ}$ and it is occidental 〈of the Sun $\rangle$ ．Then it moves slowly until 8 signs and $8^{\circ}$ ．After that is faster〈than the sun〉 and oriental 〈of the Sun〉＂（MS Schoenberg 57，f．75）． There is a very similar account of Venus＇and Mercury＇s motions relative to the Sun in Liber de Rationibus Tabularum．Here is the account of Venus＇motion：＂Et cum portio recta fuerit 4 signorum et 17 graduum， iter Veneris coequatur itineri solis in medio cursu．Inde incipit minor esse motus Veneris quam motus solis donec perfecerit Venus 5 signa et
plusquam 15 gradus, et ibi est prima statio. Et cum portio recta fuerit 6 signorum ipsa retrograda est et incipit ab occidente tendere in orientem. Et cum fuerit portio recta 6 signorum et minus quam 15 graduum, tunc secunda statio, que statio ut prima biduana est. Cum vero portio recta fuerit 7 signorum et 13 graduum motus eius est tamquam modus solis. Deinde incipit motus eius maior esse motu solis donec adunata fuerit cum sole in loco circuli brevis" (1947, pp. 120-123) The theory behind this section may be found in Almagest, 1984, IX: 5, p. 442, where Ptolemy highlights two main points, when referring to the planet's anomaly (i.e., non-uniform motion) that "varies according to its position relative to the Sun": (a) "that in the case of the five planets the time from greatest speed to mean is always greater than in the time from mean speed to least"; (b) that this feature cannot be a consequence of the eccentric hypothesis but can occur as a consequence of the epicyclic hypothesis.

## $\oint 11.1$

${ }^{[1]}$ 1: The eleventh place. Someone who seeks love. This is how TTe'amim I explains the association between the eleventh place and love: ובעבור" היות בית עשתי עשר מהבתים הסמוכים, והוא במבט ששית אל המעלה הצומחת, שהוא "Because the eleventh place is one of the succedent places and is in sextile to the ascendant degree, which is half love, it indicates lovers" ( $\$ 3.6: 10, \mathrm{pp} .66-67$ ). A similar explanation is offered in Ṭéamim II, §3.2:3, pp. 204-205.
${ }^{[2]}$ 1: The nature of the person, Hebrew: תולדת האדם. For תולדת, meaning nature, see note on Mivharim II, $\S 5: 3$. Here the scope of this neologism is broadened to denote a man's age and consequently his date of birth.
${ }^{[3]}$ 2: If he [the beloved] ... Jupiter and Saturn. 'Olam II offers a similar allocation of the ages of human life to the planets, according to
 מי שהוא בן חמישים עד ששים, ומאדים מארבצים צד חמישים, והשמש משלשים "Saturn gives indications about the elderly, Jupiter about those between fifty and sixty years old, Mars between forty and fifty, the Sun between thirty and forty, Venus between twenty and thirty, Mercury between ten
and twenty" (\$52:1, pp. 188-189). See also ‘Olam I, §36:1, §67:1, pp. 7677, 94-95.
${ }^{[4]}$ 1-3: Someone who seeks ... it [the Moon]. Cf. Mivharim II, § 11.2:14 and She'elot I, $\$ 11.1: 3-6$, where the people whose love is sought are categorized by occupation and age.
§ 11.2
${ }^{[1]}$ 1: Plato. Plato is mentioned in two additional places in Ibn Ezra's scientific work: in Liber de Rationibus Tabularum, Plato is introduced because he maintains that the superlunary domain is made of fire, in contrast to Aristotle, who holds that it is made of a fifth element (1947, p. 140); in 'Olam I Ibn Ezra quotes from Plato's Book on Rain, a work on weather forecasting and rains ostensibly also known to Al-Kindī. See 'Olam I, §45:2, pp. 82-83 and note.
${ }^{[2]}$ 1: For any natal horoscope ... between them. Cf. Dorotheus' Pentabiblos (fifth book on interrogations): "It is necessary with regard to a marriage that you look at the nativities of the man and the woman. ... If in the nativities of the man and the woman you find a benefic in the same place, then it indicates the love of each one of the two for his companion" (Carmen astrologicum, 1976, V: 16, pp. 273-274).
${ }^{[3]}$ 5: Dodecatemoria, Hebrew: חלק שנים צשר. This doctrine divides each of the zodiacal signs into twelfths (Arab. ithna ashriyât, Heb. השנים עשר, Latin duodecatemorion) by two methods: (a) The first divides the sign into twelfths of 2.5 ; the lord of the first twelfth is the lord of the whole sign, and the lords of the subsequent twelfths those of the subsequent signs. This is the method applied in 'Olam I (\$32:1-8, pp. 72-75) and 'Olam II ( $\$ 21: 1-2$, pp. 170-171) and usually referred to in Arabic introductions to astrology (Kitāb al-Madḥal, 1996, V: 18, v, pp. 204-205; Kitāb alTafhīm, 1934, §456, pp. 267-269; Al-Qabīṣī, 2004, IV: 15, p. 129; Abbreviation, 1994, p. 59), in Latin introductions to astrology or works on general astrology (Epitome, 1548, Lib. I, cap. ix, sig. G4 ${ }^{\text {v }}-\mathrm{H}_{1}{ }^{\mathrm{r}}$; Tractatus pluviarum, ed. Burnett, 66-67, p. 248), and Ibn Ezra's own introductions to astrology (Reshit Hokhmah, 1939, II, x: 28-xi: 2 et passim; Ṭe‘amim I, § 2.11:2, pp. 50-51 [see notes on pp. 134-135]; Ṭéamim II, § 2.9:7-8, pp. 202-203; and Mishpetei ha-Mazzalot, Schoenberg 57, f. 71). (b) The
second method assigns the successive degrees of a certain sign successively and recurrently to the 12 signs, whose lords are the lords of the signs of the corresponding twelfths. This method is ascribed to Enoch or Hermes in Kitāb al-Madḥal (1996, V: 18, v, pp. 204-205), and in Reshit Hokhmah (1939, II, xi: 2-5). Ibn Ezra usually underscores the significance of the dodecatemoria in predictions related to world astrology (Mishpeṭei ha-Mazzalot, Schoenberg 57, f. 71; Ṭéamim I, §2.11:2, pp. 5051; Țe‘amim II, §2.9:7, pp. 202-203).
${ }^{[4]}$ 5: Triplicity. This term denotes four groups of three zodiacal signs linked with the same element of the four basic elements; consequently, they are considered to have an identical nature. Their name stems from the perception that they form four equilateral triangles across the zodiac. The first triplicity, formed by Aries, Leo, and Sagittarius, has a fiery nature. The second triplicity, composed of Taurus, Virgo, and Capricorn, is earthy. The third triplicity, Gemini, Libra, and Aquarius, is airy in nature. The fourth triplicity, Cancer, Scorpio, and Pisces, is watery. For an account of the triplicities, and their lords, see Téamim II, $\$ 2.8: 1-12$, pp. 200-213; cf. Tetrabiblos, 1980, I: 18, pp. 83-87; Kitāb al-Madḥal, 1996, V: 14, v, pp. 200-214; Abbreviation, 1994, p. 25; Kitāb al-Tafhīm, 1934, \$445, p. 259; Al-Qabīṣī, 2004, I: 16, pp. 25-27; Carmen Astrologicum, 1976, I: 1, pp. 161-162.

## $\$ 11.3$

${ }^{[1]}$ 1: Ptolemy said ... be benefited. Here Ibn Ezra draws on the fortyseventh aphorism of Pseudo-Ptolemy's Centiloquium: "XLVII. When in any one's nativity a malignant planet is placed where a fortune was in another's geniture, he who hath the fortune so placed, shall receive prejudice from him that had the infortune so posited" (Centiloquium Ptolomei, 1676, p. 321).

## $\$ 12.1$

${ }^{[1]}$ 1: The twelfth place. For the association between this place and animals
 עשר, אם לא היתה המעלה הצומחת תחלת המזל, על כן אמרו שיורה על הבהמות "Because parts of the sign of the ascendant may
be in the twelfth place, namely, when the degree of the ascendant does not coincide with the beginning of a sign, they said that it indicates animals that men ride on" ( $\$ 3 \cdot 3: 16$, pp. 68-69). See also TTéamim II, \$3.3:5, pp. 206-207.
${ }^{[2]}$ 1: Someone who wants ... the animal. Corresponds to She'elot I, $\$ 12.2: 1-2$; She'elot II, $\$ 12.2: 2-3$; and Mivharim II, $\$ 12.1: 1-2$. Corresponds to Epitome totius astrologiae: "In nulla emptione sit dominus duodecimae in septima, nam labetur ex bestiis emptis" (Epitome, 1548, Lib. IV, cap. xvii, sig. $\mathrm{S}^{\mathrm{r}}$ ).
${ }^{[3]}$ 2: [The twelfth place] is its [Saturn's] place of joy. See above, $\$ 8: 3$.
${ }^{[4]}$ 3: If the animal ... Māshā'allāh's opinion. Corresponds to Mivharim II, $\S$ 12.1:3. See note there.
${ }^{[5]}$ 4: There is no disagreement ... Jupiter elephants. Corresponds to Mivharim II, $\S 12.1: 5^{-6}$, where a similar statement is ascribed to the Ancients.

## PART THREE

## SECOND VERSION OF THE BOOK OF ELECTIONS BY ABRAHAM IBN EZRA

HEBREW TEXT AND ENGLISH TRANSLATION

אחל ספר המבחרים לאבן עזרא בעזרת האל<br>הגדול הגבור והנורא<br>אשר לו העוז והתפארה1

1 אמר מפורש: ובחרת בחיים, ולולי55 זה לא היה אדם הכל בידי שמים חוץ מיראת שמים. (2) וידענו כיצ כל אשר יעשל ועה האלהים הוא יה יהיה


 שבמערכת ${ }^{16}$ מולדו17 להיותו עני בלא הון לא יוכל להעשיר. (3) רק בעבור שנשמת
 מרעתו. (4) על כן 22, מי שמזלו טוב, ויבחר עו טוב24 ומזל עולה טוב, יוסיף טובה על טובתוזי הרע. (5) על כן אמר תלמי: השמר שלא בכח ${ }^{30}$ מולדו שיבא לו נזק רב בדרך
 ויראה40 כחו. (6) המבחרים ${ }^{41}$ צל שני דרכים.

1*אחל ספר המבחרים ... לו העוז והתפארה* עזרא; ק ספר המבחרים; ז מבחרים שניים; ר והנה אתחיל בעזרתו ספר המבחרים גם לו לאבן עזרא; ח ספר המבחרים גם זה הס׳ לאבן עזרא ע״ ע״ה.
 קדמוננו ז״לֹ*] פמכזרח; ק וקדמוננו אמרו. "10והנה] קמכזרח; פּ והוא. פוֹ בידו להיות*] פמכזר; ח אין יכולת בידו להיותו; ק אין בידו כח להיותו. 15מי] קפמכזח; ר חסר. ${ }^{16}$ בורמערכת] קפמרכ; ז שמערכת; ח שיש במערכת.
 מ יכל. טוב] קמכזרח; פ וימים טובים. ח מרעתו. קכחר ; פמ בו לדרך; ז בדרך. 32 32 פמז הכח ממה. ${ }^{36}$ במולד] קכר; ח לו במולד; מז במזל; פ במזל הרע.
 נזק; ח הנזק. חוהמבחרים.

> I begin the Book of Elections by Ibn Ezra, with the assistance of God, the Great, the Mighty and Awful, Who has strength and splendor.

1 (1) The sages of the Torah agree that man has the capacity to do both good and evil. Moses, our lord, said plainly: "choose life" (Deut. 30:19); were it not for this $\langle$ capacity $\rangle$ no one would be punished. Also our ancient sages, their memory for a blessing, said: "Everything depends on the heavens except for the fear of Heaven" (B. Berakhot 33b; Megillah 25a; Niddah 37b). (2) But we know that "whatsoever God doeth, it shall be for ever; nothing can be added to it, nor any thing taken from it" (Eccles. 3:14), and here Solomon mentioned the "ordinances of the heavens."2,3 So whoever is born in a defective configuration with respect to perfection is incapable of being like someone who was created in a flawless configuration, which is the meaning of "that which is crooked cannot be made straight and that which is wanting cannot be numbered" ${ }^{4}$ (Eccles. 1:15). Consequently whoever is destined by the configuration of his natal horoscope to be poor and impecunious can never get rich. ${ }^{5}$ (3) But since the soul of man has been created in a place that is higher than the stars, a man can employ his intelligence to reduce his misfortune somewhat. ${ }^{6}$ (4) Therefore, whoever is blessed by a favorable configuration of the stars and chooses favorable hours and a favorable day and a favorable rising sign for all his journeys and undertakings will add good fortune to his good fortune or will reduce slightly the misfortune of the ill-starred. ${ }^{7}$ (5) Therefore Ptolemy ${ }^{8}$ said: be careful not to choose a day for a man to embark on a journey $\langle i f$ he〉 has been destined by his natal horoscope to suffer grievous harm on the road, because the power of the favorable configuration of the stars that you choose for him will not prevail over the power of what is signified by the natal horoscope. But if the harm of the journey is not great the election may be useful and its power may be perceptible. ${ }^{9}$ (6) There are two methods for elections. ${ }^{10}$

22 (1) הדרך1 האחת², והיא³ הנכונה, שתדע מולד האדם, ותדע יתדות מזלו5 ומקום6
 כוכב11 רעשי12 בשעת המבחר. (3) ואם תצטרך לאותו המזל בעבור צורך הבית־13 אם רצית14 ללכת אל מלך לבקש גדולה ממנו, יש לך להעלות במזל הצומח הבית העשירי או מקום השמשי15, אם לא היה"16 בבית רע - והשמר
 כאלו22 היה המזל23 העשירי עשר מעלות משור והיה24 שבתאי בשבע עשרה מעלות, ולא525 יעלה למבחרים מעלת"26 שבע עשרה, ולא המעלות ${ }^{26}$ הות ${ }^{26}$ כלם28 שהן ${ }^{29}$ קודם זאת המעלה, גם ${ }^{30}$ תשע31 מעלות אחריהם כנגד מספר אור שבתאי.

3 (1) והנה, אם 32 בקש הנולד ללמוד או ללכת33 בדרכים רחוקים34 העלה לו הבית התשיעי, ואם35 ללכת אל המלכים העלה לו35 הבית העית העשירי, ואם לסחורה הבית העשתי עשר37, ואם לקנות בהמה הבית השנים עשרי38, ואם לרשת הבית השמיני, ואם לנשים הבית השביעי, ואם לצאת למלחמה בחר לו"39 הבית הראשון, שהוא הצקר, ואם לקנות ממון הבית השני, ואם לדרכים קרובים הבית"40 השלישי, ואם לקנות קרקצ בחר הבית הרביעי, ואם לבקש בנים בחר הבית החמישי, ואם לקנות עבדים בחר1 הששי, ואם להתענג ולשמוח בחר לאכול בחר"46 הבית הראשון, שהוא בית חייו, או הבית החמישי, או הבית העשירי, או הבית העשתי עשר ${ }^{47}$ (2) ואם היה ${ }^{48}$ כוכב רע במולד באחד המקומות הנזכרים94 ${ }^{49}$ או יהיה שם50 בשעת המבחר51, בחר הבית השביצי או התשיעי, ואם לא תוכל בחר הבית
 האדם] קפמזרח; כ ש. פ ומקומות. ${ }^{7}$ רהעים והטובים] קפמכזר; חר ש. ${ }^{8}$ שוהנה*] פמכזרח; ק חסר. צהשמר] קפמ; כזרח > לך. ${ }^{10}{ }^{10}$ [מזל] קפמזרחכ; ח מוסיף בסוגריים: פי׳ בשעת המ׳ המזל שהיה בו בעת מולדו כוכב רע גם כי לא יהיה בו בעת המבחר. צורך הבית*] מכזרח; ק בעד צורך זה; פּ בעבור היות צורך הבית. לרע. 15השמש] קפמזרחכ; חח מוסיף בסוגריים: פי'שהיה בעת המולד וכן השמש. פמז חסר. 17 השמר] ק; פמכזרח > לך. ${ }^{18}$ "הרע] קפמזרחכ; ח מוסיף בסוגריים: פי׳ המעלה שהיה בו

 פמכזר ויהיה. 25ולא] קפמכזח; ר לא.


 ק למלך; ח אל המלכים. ${ }^{37}$ קצשתי עשר*] פמכר; ק אחד עשר; טח י״א.
 פמכרח; קז חסר. ${ }^{42}$ להתענג ולשמוח בחר*] פמכר; ז להתענג ולשמוח; ק לשמוח ולהתענג; ח לשמוח ולהתצנגהעלה. ${ }^{43}$ הבית] קפמכזח; ר בחר. ${ }^{44}$ החמישי] קפכזרח; מהרביצי.
 קח; פמכזר חסר. ${ }^{49}$ המקומות הנזכרים] קז; פמ מאלה המקומות הכוכבים; כר אלה המקומות הנזכרים; ח אלה ההבתים הנזכרים. ${ }^{50}{ }^{5}$ ק; פמכזר שכן; ח שוכן. ${ }^{51}$ המבחר] קפמזרחכ; ח מוסיף בסוגריים: פי׳ היה שוכן בא׳ מאלה שזכר בשצת המבחר.

2 （1）The first $\langle$ method $\rangle$ ，which is the correct one，requires you to know the man＇s time of birth，and the cardines of his natal horoscope，and the position of the malefic and benefic planets．${ }^{1}$（2）When you know that，be careful not to put the sign in which there was a malefic planet〈at the time of birth〉 as the ascendant at the time of the election．（3） But if you need this sign because of the requirement of the 〈indications of the horoscopic〉 place－〈for instance〉 if you wish to go to a king to ask him for high office［Esth．6：3］，you should put the tenth place ＜of the natal horoscope〉 or the position of the Sun 〈at the time of birth〉 in the ascendant sign 〈of the electional horoscope〉，if it［the Sun］is not in an unfortunate 〈horoscopic〉 place ${ }^{2}$－and take care not to put the position of a malefic planet in the ascendant $\langle o f$ the electional horoscope $\rangle$ ．If possible，do not put the degree of its［the malefic planet＇s］ ray $^{3}$ in the ascendant；and it is even more auspicious if you leave it ［the degree of the ray］behind．${ }^{4}$（4）Suppose that the tenth place $\langle$ in the natal horoscope〉 is at Taurus $10^{\circ}$ and that Saturn is at $\langle$ Taurus $\rangle 17^{\circ} ;\langle$ in this case〉 do not put the 17th degree 〈of Taurus〉 in the ascendant $\langle$ of the horoscopic chart〉 for the elections，nor any of the degrees that are before this degree［i．e．， 9 degrees before Taurus $17^{\circ}$ ］，nor the 9 degrees that follow it and correspond to the number of 〈degrees in〉 Saturn＇s ray．${ }^{5}$

3 （1）So if the native inquires about studying or embarking on long journeys，put the ninth place $\langle$ of the natal horoscope〉 as the ascendant〈of the electional horoscope〉；if 〈he inquires about〉 going to 〈see〉 kings， put the tenth place $\langle$ as the ascendant $\rangle$ ；if about trade，the eleventh place； if about buying an animal，the eleventh place；if about coming into an inheritance，the eighth place；if about marriage，the seventh place；if about waging war，choose for him the first place，which is the root； if about borrowing money，the second place；if about 〈setting off on〉 short journeys，the third place；if about buying land，choose the fourth place；if about sons，choose the fifth place；if about buying slaves，choose the sixth place；if about enjoying himself and rejoicing，choose the fifth place；if about taking medicine，drinking，or eating，choose the first place， which is the 〈horoscopic〉 place of his life，or the fifth，tenth，or eleventh place．${ }^{1}$（2）If there is a malefic planet in one of the aforementioned places of the natal horoscope，or if it［the malefic planet］is there［in one of the aforementioned places］at the time of the election，select the seventh or the ninth place；if you cannot do so，choose the second place．But be careful not to select the sixth，eighth or twelfth place．${ }^{2}$（3）

השני, והשמר¹ שלא² יהיה הבית הששי³ או השמיני או השנים עשר. (3) ויש מחלוקת בין חמכי המזלות על דבר הבית הרביעי, ולפי דעתי איננו רע, ואף כי אם היה שם

4 (1) ויאמר תלמי לעולם נסתכל5 בכל מולד אל הממונה עליו6, והטעם שהוא ממונה" על חמשה מקומות החיים, ולא יבחר מזל רק שיהיה ממונה8 במקום טוב. (2) וככה9 נצשה אם לא ידענו המולד, שנקח בדרך סברא"10 הכוכב הממונה עליו מתולדת

האדם11.
5 (1) הדרך השנית למבחרים12, דרך כלל, שנבקש לעולם הכוכב שיורה על הדבר המבוקשי13, ואז נעשה מבחר. (2) והאמת כי14 אם ידענו המולד ונתקן הכלל והפרט, אז יהיה יותר טוב. (3) כי אם בקשנו דברי נשיםם13, נתקן מקום נגה גם הלבנה616, וככה17 כל ${ }^{18}$ המשרתים כפי תולדתם19.

6 (1) ולעולם יש לנו לתקן מקום הלבנה20, כי היא האמצעית בין העולם העליון | 6 א48 ובין העולם (31 השפל, והיא תורה על כל דבר שיחל ${ }^{21}$ האדם. (2) ואלו הם ${ }^{23}$ תקוני הלבנה". (3) שלא תהאר25 עם כוכב רע, שהואשא ${ }^{26}$ מאדים או שבתאי או כוכב חמה27 אם היה בממסך רע. (4) רק אם היה המבחר לאדם שיחל להלחם באחרו8, טוב הוא שתשוב הלבנה29 מכוכב טוב ${ }^{29}$ ותתן ${ }^{31}$ הכח לכוכב רע, ויותר טוב אם היה"32 הכוכב הרע33 בעל ${ }^{34}$ המעלה ${ }^{35}$ הצומחת. (5) ואם תצטרך לבחור והלבנה"36 עם כוכב רע, שים המזל העולה אריה או קשת או דליל 37, ואם לא תוכל, שים הלבנה ${ }^{38}$ במקום נופל כי אז לא תורה על רע רק על פחד שלא יצא לידי מעשה על המחברת14, כך אומר42 על הנוכח ועל מבט רביעית33, א״״צ״פ שהוא44 יותר

 ח מוסיף בסוגריים: פי׳ החזק שבכולם. 7הטעם שהוא ממונה*] פמכזר; ח והטעם הוא ממונה; ק כ״ל
 סברה; ק חסר. 11 האדם] קפמזרחכ; ח מוסיף בסוגריים: פי׳ שלפי תולדתו ומגגו נתן אליו המזל המורה על התולדת ההיא.
 רחכ; ק גם; פמז > שיהיו במקום טוב עם המעלה הצומחת ר״ל במבט עמה.
 פמכזרח; ק חסר. 55 ${ }^{25}{ }^{*}$ פמכר; טח תהיה; ק יהיה. חמה] קפמרכח; ז כותב.
 קפמכזח; ר רע. פמכרח; ז הלבנה; ק והירח. במקומה בבית נופל שהוא בית י״ב ואם יעלה קשת יהיה בית שמיני סרטן ואם דלי יהיה בית ששי אשר לה כח בהם. קצ83לבנה*] פמכזרח; ק ירח. מעשה*] פמט; קדחכ חסד 04כאשר אמרתי*] פמכזרח; קוכמו שאמרתי. ${ }^{41}$ קצל המחברת] קפמרכח; ז


There is a disagreement among the astrologers about the fourth place； in my opinion it is not unfortunate，particularly if a benefic planet is there．${ }^{3}$

4 （1）Ptolemy said：In any natal horoscope we should always look at its ruler，meaning $\langle$ the planet $\rangle$ that rules over the five places of life．${ }^{1}$ He should not choose a sign 〈of the ascendant〉 unless 〈its〉 ruler is in a fortunate position．（2）Likewise，if we do not know the time of birth， we should infer the planet that is its ruler［i．e．，the ruler of his natal horoscope］on the basis of the man＇s natural constitution．${ }^{2}$

5 （1）The second method for elections，〈which is the〉 general method， is that we always try to find the planet that signifies the requested thing and then make the election．（2）But the truth is that if we know the time of birth and $\langle$ then $\rangle$ proceed to determine the general import and the details $\langle$ of the natal horoscope $\rangle,{ }^{1}$ it［the election］will be better．（3）For example，if we are asked about women，we should determine the position of Venus and the Moon，and likewise all the planets ${ }^{2}$ according to their nature．${ }^{3,4}$

6 （1）We should always determine ${ }^{1}$ the position of the Moon，because it is in the middle between the upper world and the lower world ${ }^{2}$ and signifies anything initiated by man．${ }^{3}$（2）These are the conditions of the Moon．${ }^{4}$（3）It［the Moon］should not be with a malefic planet，namely， Mars，Saturn，or Mercury，if it is in an unfortunate complexion．${ }^{5}$（4）But if the election is for a man who intends to start a war with another，it is auspicious if the Moon returns ${ }^{6}$［i．e．，takes back］〈its power〉 from a benefic planet and gives its power ${ }^{7}$ to a malefic planet，${ }^{8}$ and still more auspicious if the malefic planet is the lord of the ascendant degree．${ }^{9}$（5） If you need to make an election when the Moon is with a malefic planet， put Leo，Sagittarius，or Aquarius as the rising sign；${ }^{10}$ if you can not do this，put the Moon in a cadent place，${ }^{11}$ because then it does not signify misfortune but only fear＜of something〉 that will not come to pass．${ }^{12}$（6） What I said about conjunction I also say about opposition and quartile，

קל. (7) והשמר שלא¹ תהיה הלבנה²² תחת אור השמש, חוץ אם רצית לצית לעשות דבר סתר ולכסות סוד³ יהיה כן, ובלבד4 שלא תתן5 ${ }^{5}$ הכח לכוכב שהוא ${ }^{6}$ פל הארץ כנגד המעלה הצומחת. (8) ושים הלבנה7 בבית העשירי אוֹי או עשת לא9 בבתים האחרים, ותהיה הלבנה1010 מהמחברת עד חצי פי החדש. (9) ואם הוצרכת לבחור11 ביום שהלבנה12 עם מאדים, הסתכל: אם היה בין הנכח ובין המחברת לא תחוש. (10) והשמר13 שלא יהאיה באותו זמן


 ואם ${ }^{24}$ הלבנה ${ }^{25}$ מקובלת"26 מכוכב רעם ב27 יחסר הרבה מהרעה. (13) והשמר שלא תהיה
 תהיה עולה30 בפאת דרום. (14) ועל דעת כל הקדמונים, השמר שלא תהיה עם ראש תלי31 שלה או זנבן32, ולפי דעתי33 שהזנב ${ }^{33}$ ול ${ }^{34}$ הוא רע לא ${ }^{34}$ ו35 הראש. (15) ועוד, יש לך להשמר בכל ${ }^{36}$ מבחר שתבחר שלא תהיה הלבנה ${ }^{36}$ עם כוכ כוכב רע עם מעלה דבקה
 הרע". ${ }^{40}$ (16) ואם רצית לבקש דבר שיעמד ${ }^{41}$ שים ${ }^{42}$ הלבנה43 במזל עומד, חוץ ממזל עקרב, ומזל שור טוב מהאחרים. (17) ואם רצית לבחור דבר שיהיה פעם אחרי44 פעם ולא יפסק, שים הלבנה" ${ }^{45}$ במזל ${ }^{46}$ מן המזלות ${ }^{47}$ שני ${ }^{47}$ גופים, ודגים ובתולה טובים
 מגדי. (19) ולדעת

ממאזניים ועד סופןי54.
[שלא] קפמכזח; ר לא. 2 ${ }^{2}$ [ פמכזרח; ק אך.

 קרח; פמכז > לך.

 33 בים] קפמרח; כ > עם שבתאי (מעל לשורה). פמכזרח; ק ירח.
 פמכזרח; ק רחבו. 30 30ולה] קמכוחר; פּ עולם. עם. רע ולא. בסבּבל] קחר; פמכז מכל. ח מוסיף בסוגריים: פי׳ גלגל היושר כגון שתהיה הירח בב' מצ' מתאומים והכוכב הרע בי' מצ' מסרטן
 בסוגריים: פי׳ כגון שתהיה הלבנה בג׳ קשת והכוכב בג מתאומים שיום זה כליל זה. ח שיעמוד.

 [51 51לדעת] ק; פמכזרח ולפי דעת. "54סופו] קפמזרחכ; ח מוסיף בסוגריים: פי׳ שזה יקרא דרך החשך עד ג׳ צקרב.
although it is lighter ${ }^{13}$［i．e．，less detrimental］．（7）Make sure that the Moon is not under the ray of the Sun，${ }^{14}$ unless you wish to do something in secret or conceal a secret，as long as it does not give power to a planet that is above the Earth with respect to the ascendant degree．${ }^{15,16}$（8）Put the Moon in the tenth，eleventh，seventh，or third place，not in the other places，when the Moon is between conjunction 〈with the Sun〉 and the middle of the month．（9）If you need to make an election for a day when the Moon is with Mars，take note：if it［the Moon］is between opposition and conjunction 〈with the Sun〉 do not be concerned 〈about Mars $\rangle$ ．（10）Be careful that it［the Moon］is not with Saturn at the same time；but the contrary is true if it［the Moon］is with Saturn between conjunction and opposition 〈with the Sun〉，because if it is with Saturn it will cause only slight harm，but if 〈the Moon is〉 with Mars 〈then〉 it will cause great harm．（11）Know that it is very unfortunate to put out to sea if the Moon is with Saturn，but the opposite applies 〈if the Moon is $\rangle$ with Mars．It is very unfortunate to embark on a journey by land 〈if the Moon is〉 with Mars，but not 〈a journey〉 by sea．${ }^{17}$（12）If the Moon is received by a malefic planet，${ }^{18}$ the misfortune will be greatly diminished．（13）Make sure that the Moon is not moving slowly ${ }^{19}$ and its〈ecliptic〉 latitude is not southern；but if you cannot do this，try to have ＜the Moon〉 ascend in the southern part 〈of the zodiac with respect to the ecliptic $\rangle$ ．（14）According to the opinion of all the Ancients，make sure that it［the Moon］is not with its Head of the Dragon or its Tail；${ }^{20}$ but in my opinion the Tail is unfortunate，not the Head．${ }^{21}$（15）In addition，in any election you make be careful that the Moon is not in a degree such that the equator or the extreme north or the extreme south［i．e．，the equinox or Cancer $0^{\circ}$ or Capricorn $o^{\circ}$ ］is equidistant between this degree and the degree of a malefic，or in a degree whose day is the night of the malefic planet＇s degree．${ }^{22,23,24}$（16）If you wish to ask about something that will endure，put the Moon in any fixed sign，except Scorpio；Taurus is more auspicious than the others．（17）If you wish to make an election about something that will take place time after time and will never cease，put the Moon in one of the bicorporal signs；Pisces and Virgo are better than the others．（18）If you wish something that will not endure，put the Moon in a tropical sign，except Capricorn．${ }^{25}$（19）According to the opinion of all the Ancients，be careful not to place the Moon from Libra $9^{\circ}$ to its end．${ }^{26}$
 באחד ממזלות המים3, ומזל עקרב טוב מכולם ובלבד שתעבור מעלת השלישית55. (2) והטוב שתהיה הלבנה בכחה6, והטעם7 שלא תתן הכח לכוכבים.
 רק נגה יותר טוב, והשמר שלא יביט מאדים ולא שבתאי ולא בממסך רע, איזה מבט שיהיה. (2) ואם או מהשלישית¹3, ועשה שתעבור מעלת המבט, ואפילו במעלה א׳; רק אם הם היה ממבט

 השותה המשקה"21. (4) וככה אם תתן הלבנהן22 הכחי23 לכוכב שהוא למעלה מן הארץ כנגד המעלה הצומחת42 בשעת השתיה; על כן, יש לך להשמר.

3 (1) ויאמר25 יעקב אלכנדי: אם רצית לחסר המרה 3 (15 האדומה, שים הלבנה ${ }^{27}$ באחד
 מגדי33, ואם34 לחסר35 הליחה, שימנה"36 באחד מזלות ${ }^{33}$ באו ${ }^{36}$ המים, ואם לחסר תולדת
 משלישית43 או ששית טוב להקיז דם, ושבתאי הוא רע" וכל הקדמונים הסכימה דעתם", שאין ראוים48 להקיז דם אם הלבנה49 בתאומים, והטעם ידוע בעבור שהוא50 בית הזרועות והידים.


 ירח. צבשתות] קפמכזר; ח בשתיית. "10ולא] קפמרכח; ז או. [12 ${ }^{12}$ קפמכזח; ר ולא. ${ }^{13}$ מהשלישית*] ח; ק שליש; רפמכז חסר. חסר. 15 15ך עשה שיהיה המבט מששית או מהשלישית ועשה שתעבור מעלת המבט ואפילו במעלה א׳רק אם היה ממבט נכח או רביעית כך עשה] קח; רפמכז עשה כך. שיהיה הלבנה רחוקה; ק שיהיה ירח רחוק. ${ }^{17}{ }^{17}$ שמסר] קפמרח; כז במספר. 818תן הלבנה*] פמכזרח; ק יתן ירח. ${ }^{19}$ קחוזר אחור] קפמרכ; ז זנור; ח החוזר לאחור.
 קפמזרחכ; ח מוסיף בסוגריים: פי׳ שהוא לצד הצומחת כי כל הבתים לקוחים מצד הצומחת שהוא הבית הא׳. 25 יויאמר*] פמכזרח; ק אמ׳.
 השחורה] קרח; כ המרירה השחורה; מז השחורה; פּ חסר.
 פמזר > תרצה. ${ }^{35}$ לחסר] קפמרכח; ז חסר. ${ }^{35}$ קימנה] קרח; פמכז שים אותה. ממזלות. טעם. משלש.



1 （1）The first 〈horoscopic〉 place．If you want to take a medicine or drink a potion，put the Moon in any of the watery signs；Scorpio is the most auspicious，on condition that it［the Moon］has passed the degree of dejection，which is the third 〈of Scorpio〉．（2）〈It is more〉 auspicious if the Moon is at its full strength，meaning that it does not give power to the planets．${ }^{1}$

2 （1）Ptolemy said：if the Moon is in some aspect with Jupiter when someone takes a purgative，it will cause harm．${ }^{1}$ Venus is more auspicious，${ }^{2}$ but make sure that Mars，Saturn，and Mercury do not aspect 〈the Moon〉 in an unfortunate complexion，whatever aspect it may be．（2）If you cannot do this，set it so that the aspect is sextile or trine ${ }^{3}$ and it passes the degree of the aspect，even by one degree；but if the aspect is opposition or quartile，set it so that the Moon＇s distance from the degree of the aspect is $\langle$ at least equal〉 to the number $\langle$ of degrees $\rangle$ of the malefic planet＇s ray． （3）Make sure that the Moon does not give power to a retrograde planet， because $\langle$ the patient $\rangle$ will vomit up the potion．${ }^{4}$（4）The same applies if the Moon gives power to a planet that is above the Earth with respect to the ascendant degree when he drinks the potion；so be careful about this．${ }^{5}$

3 （1）Ya＇qub al－Kindī ${ }^{1}$ said：if you wish to reduce the yellow bile，put the Moon in one of the fiery signs；if 〈you wish〉 to reduce the black bile，put it［the Moon］in one of the earthy signs，except for Capricorn； to reduce the phlegm，put it in one of the watery signs；and to reduce the sanguine humor（meaning bloodletting），put it in one of the airy signs．${ }^{2,3}$（2）〈The Moon in〉 trine or sextile with Mars is auspicious for bloodletting，but Saturn is unfortunate，$\langle$ so $\rangle$ it is auspicious if it［Sat－ urn］does not form any aspect．${ }^{4}$（3）All the Ancients agreed that it is not appropriate to perform bloodletting when the Moon is in Gemini； the reason is well known：it［Gemini］is the sign of the arms and the hands．${ }^{5,6}$

4 (1) כי אמר1 תלמי: השמר שלא יגע ברזל באבר שהלבנה² שם, כנגד מזל טלה שהוא
 כויה בחזה5 כי הכויה היא6 בברזל. (3) וזה הדבר7 לפי דעתי8, ולפי דצת רבים זה מנוסה9.

5 (1) ומחלוקת בין חכמי המזלות במבטי10 השמש אל הלבנה"11. (2) יש אומרים ו12 כי מבט רביעית313 ומבט נכח הואיא
 הלבנה22 הכח לשמש, מאיזה מבט שיהיה, בשתות לא יזיק, רק אין ראוי להיות השמש למעלה מן הארץ²6.

 הכח לכוכב חוזר לאחורא53, ובלבד שלא יהיה מבט רע עם כוכב רע, רק שיהיהבי36 במבט שלישית וככה השמש לפי דעתי אם היה השמש למעלה מן הארץ42. (4) והזכרתי זה הטעם בבית הזה בעבור43 שהרפואה44 הזאת ${ }^{45}$ היא תועלת לגוף והיא מתועלת החיים.

1 הקטן47, והיא תוסיף בהלוכה84, גם רחבה יוסיף, ותהיה על מבט טוב מאחד ${ }^{49}$
[במבטי] קפמכז; רח במבט. ${ }^{10}{ }^{10}{ }^{11}$ הלבנה*] פמכזרח; ק לירח. ${ }^{12}$ קוש אומ׳] ק; פמכזח והם אומרים;
ר אמרו.
פמכזרח; ק ושליש. ${ }^{16}$ הוא] קכ; פמזרח חסר.
ח ש; ק לירח כולם.
ק; זרח על כן; פמכ ועל כן.
חלמעלה מהארץ; ק על הארץ.
הלבנה נותנת*] פמכזח; ק שים הירח נותן; ר הלבנה נותנת. 30למעלה מן הארץ*" פמכז ; חר למעלה
מהארץ; ק על הארץ.
נזור. ${ }^{36}$ שיהשיה] קפמח; זושיהיה; רשיהיה.
חק כי הרפואה.
קמכזרח; פולאחד.

4 （1）Ptolemy said：be careful that iron does not touch any part of the body 〈when the Moon is〉 there［in the sign which signifies this part of the body］，such as Aries，which corresponds to the head．（2） Suppose that the Moon is in Cancer，which signifies the chest；${ }^{1}$ 〈in this case〉 he［Ptolemy］said that is not appropriate to cauterize the chest，because cautery is done by iron．（3）I agree with this opinion， and according to the opinion of many others this has been proven by experience．${ }^{2}$

5 （1）There is a disagreement among the astrologers about the Sun＇s aspects with the Moon．（2）Some say that quartile and opposition are unfortunate but sextile and trine are fortunate．（3）But I say that all the aspects that the Sun forms with the Moon are fortunate，because the $\langle$ Moon＇s $\rangle$ light comes from the $\langle$ Sun＇s $\rangle$ light．（4）Consequently，if the Moon gives power to the Sun，in any aspect，the body will not be harmed if someone takes a purgative for his health，although it is not appropriate〈to do so〉 when the Sun is above the Earth．

6 （1）Ptolemy said：if you wish to administer a vomitive，place the Moon so that it gives power to a planet that is above the Earth；it is more auspicious if the Moon is in Taurus．（2）In my opinion 〈it is also auspicious $\rangle$ when it［the Moon］gives power to a retrograde planet，${ }^{1}$ as long as $\langle$ the Moon〉 is not in some unfortunate aspect with a malefic planet，but only in trine or sextile．（3）But with a benefic planet you need not be concerned with the aspect，whatever aspect it may be；and in my opinion the same applies to the Sun，if the Sun is above the Earth． （4）I have mentioned this explanation in 〈the chapter devoted to〉 this〈horoscopic〉 place because this treatment is beneficial to the body and beneficial to life．${ }^{2}$

1 （1）The second place．If you want to buy something to make a profit from it，put the Moon in the smaller domain of the zodiac，${ }^{1}$ its motion increasing，its 〈ecliptic〉 latitude increasing，and in a fortunate aspect with

הכוכבים1${ }^{1}$ הטובים. (2) ואם יכולת לשים² המעלה הצומחת כדי שתהיה הלבנה³ באחר היתדות, או באחד ${ }^{4}$ הסמוכים, או בבית השלישי, אז יהיה יותר טוב. (3) ואם לא יכולת, שימנה5 שתתן כח לאחד הכוכבים שהם במקומות הנזכרים - אם הוא כוכב טוב מאיזה6
 המקבל הכח בעל הבית השמיני, כי הוא יורה על ההפסד.

2 (1) ובעבור10 שכוכב11 צדק יורה על הממון, טוב הוא שתשימנו באחד 2 (12 היתדות או הסמוכים הדבקים או בשני13, והשמר שלא יהיה בור בורתים האחרים. (2) ואם היה במקומות הטובים, השמר14 שלא יהיה נשרף או חוזר לאחור15, או או עם כוכב רע או עם מבט רע עמו. (3) ואם יכולת להעלות מזל16 כדי שיהיה גורל הלבנה בבית עשתי עשר

3 (1) ואם רצית לתת הממון בהלואה, שים בעל הבית השני נותן הכח לבעל המזל18 הצומח. (2) והסתכל אל מקום הלבנה19 שתהיה במבט טוב עם כוכב חמה", וא ואם שב
 הכח לכוכב טוב או רע שיהיה בבית נופל או בבית השמיני.

1 (1) הבית השלישי. אם רצונך לבחור 1 (1 שעה26 ללמוד התורות" ${ }^{27}$ שים הלבנה ${ }^{27}$ באחד בתי29 צדק, ויותר טוב שתוסיף אורה
 והשמר שלא תתן הכח לכוכב החוזר לאחורי33, כי ינח ינחם ויעזוב למודו, גם של שלא יה יהיה הכוכב34 נשרף מהשמש, כי יורה שיתחדש עליו דבר שימנב הכוכב בבית נופל, כי יורה36 שישנא"37 מה שלמד ${ }^{36}$ ויעזבנו ותהיה לו מריבה בעבור39




 קרח; פמכז המזל. ${ }^{17}{ }^{17}$ [מר] קפמכזר; ח הגמור. ${ }^{18}{ }^{18}$ [מזל] קמכזרח; פ חסר. ${ }^{19}$ הלבנה*] פמכזרח; קירח. 20 ${ }^{20}$ קוכב חמה] קפמרכח; ז כותב. קושב לאחור*] פמכר; ז נזור; ח היה שב לאחור; ק היה
 הירח. [28 ${ }^{28}$ חסר. 31 31,סתכל*] פמכזרח; ק יביט.
 הכוכב בבית נופל כי יורה] קפמרכח; ז חסר. קרשישישנא] קמכרח; פּ שישנה; ז חסר. קפכרח; מ מה שלומד; זחסר. ${ }^{39}$ בעבור*] פמכזרח; ק בעד.
any of the benefic planets．${ }^{2}$（2）It is more auspicious if you can set the ascendant degree so that the Moon is in one of the cardines or in one of the succedent places，or in the third place．（3）If you cannot do this，put it［the Moon］〈in a position where〉 it gives power to one of the planets that are in these positions－in any aspect，for a benefic planet，and in sextile or trine，for a malefic 〈planet〉．（4）Make sure that the planet that receives power is not the lord of the eighth place，because that signifies loss．

2 （1）Because Jupiter signifies money，${ }^{1}$ it is auspicious if you put it in one of the cardines or the adjacent succedent 〈places〉，or in the second〈place〉；but make sure that it［Jupiter］is not in any of the other places．（2） If it is in a fortunate position，make sure that it is not burnt or retrograde， or with a malefic $\langle$ planet $\rangle$ or in an unfortunate aspect with it．（3）If you can put a sign in the ascendant so that the lot of the Moon ${ }^{2}$ is in the eleventh place 〈counting〉 from the position of the Moon，this is the most auspicious of all．${ }^{3}$

3 （1）If you want to lend money，put the lord of the second place so that it gives power to the lord of the ascendant．（2）Look at the position of the Moon 〈and make sure〉 that it forms a fortunate aspect with Mercury．Do not be concerned if it［Mercury］is retrograde，but be careful not to do this when it［Mercury］is burnt，or when the Moon gives power to a benefic or malefic planet in a cadent place or in the eighth place．${ }^{1}$

## $\$ 3$

1 （1）The third place．If you wish to choose an hour to 〈begin〉 learning jurisprudence，put the Moon in one of Jupiter＇s houses；it is more aus－ picious if you add 〈the degrees of its ray［the Moon＇s］，and it is 〈even〉 more auspicious if Jupiter aspects it［the Moon］in any aspect．（2）If the Moon is in the third place，it is auspicious．（3）Be careful not to $\langle$ set the Moon）so that it gives power to a retrograde planet，because he［the quer－ ent］will change his mind and abandon his studies；nor 〈have the Moon give power to a）planet that is burnt by the Sun，because that signifies that something will happen to him to prevent him from studying；nor 〈to a〉 planet in a cadent place，because that signifies that he will hate what he is studying and give it up and that he will have a quarrel because of his

2
 לך4, כי דבר מנוסה הוא5 מהקדמונים6 ואני נסיתיו, שלא תכנס לע לעולם7 בים בדרך קרובה או רחוקה${ }^{9}$ ושבתאי בעל השעה¹0. ועוד אדבר על זה בבית התשיעי.

1 1 (1) הבית הרביעי: מי שיקנה קרקע יש לו להשמר שיהיה בעל 1 (11 הבית הרביעי במקום טוב כנגד המעלה הצומחת, ותהיה הלבנה12 במזל עומד בומ בי כי הקרקע הוא הפך
 עמהם. (3) ויש לך לדעת במקום15 טוב כנגד המעלה הצומחת בעל הבית ששם הלבנה ${ }^{15}$ בי16, כי הוא יורה על סוף כל תחלה. (4) ודע כי שבתאי אם היה במקום טוב בקנות קרקע¹7 יועיל, רק מאדים יזיק אם היה באחד

2 (1) ודע כי הבית 2 (19 הרביעי הוא בית הקרקצות לכל אדם, הקרקעות 20 במולדי21 המלכים הם²2 המדינות. (2) והנה, אם ${ }^{22}$ בקשש מלך ליסד מוסד לבנות מדינה, שים המזל24 העולה אחד מהעומדים, ומזל דלי טוב מכולם. (3) ותהיה הלבנה 22 בוֹ במקום טוב ויהיה כוכב טוב מביטל ${ }^{26}$ אל המעלה הצומחת, ואם היה באחד ולא יהיה בעל המזל הצומח נשרף ולא שב לאחור, ולא" ${ }^{29}$ עם

 שנים עשר"37 ומאדים בששי, טוב, ואם לא ,שימהו38 בבית השלישי או בבית התשיעי. (7)
[10 הכוכב] קפמכזח; ר חסר. 2רע] קפמרכח; ז טוב.


 תהיה הלבנה*] פמכזר; ק שיהיה ירח במזל מתהפך; ח שתהיה הלבנה במזל מתהפך. 1 ¹4 לדעת* ${ }^{14}$ פמז; כ
 פ חסר. [18 באחד] קפמרח; כז באחת. [19 הבית] קמכזרח; פ בית. ${ }^{19}$ [הקרקצות] קח; פמכזר > הוא. [במולדי] קמזרח; פכ במולד. קפמזח; כר מזל. כוכב טוב; ר מביט. פמכזרח; זנזור ולא; ק נזור.
 36 3מנו] קפמזח; כר הימנו. 37שנים עשר] קפמכרח; זי״ב.
studies．（4）If the planet that receives 〈power〉 is one of the malefics，it is more inauspicious；but if it is one of the benefics，it is less serious．${ }^{1}$

2 （1）〈To choose a time〉 to set off on a short journey，make sure that Saturn is not in the third place，particularly if the journey is by sea or by river．（2）Likewise，Mars should not be in the third place if the journey is by land．${ }^{1}$（3）Be careful，because it has been proven by the Ancients and I have verified it by experience：you should never set off on a long or short journey by sea when Saturn is the lord of the hour．${ }^{2,3}$（4）I will expand on this in the ninth place．${ }^{4}$

1 （1）The fourth place．Anyone who wishes to buy land should be careful to do this when the lord of the fourth place is in a fortunate position with respect to the ascendant degree ${ }^{1}$ and when the Moon is in a fixed sign， because land is the opposite of journeys．（2）Therefore the Ancients said that in any journey the Moon should be in a tropical sign，and they are correct．（3）Know that，for buying land or anything else in the world，you should always put the lord of the place where the Moon is in a fortunate place with respect to the ascendant degree，because it［the lord］signifies the outcome of any beginning．（4）Know that Saturn is auspicious if it is in a fortunate position when someone buys land；only Mars is detrimental if it is in one of the cardines，but Saturn is not，as long as it is oriental of the Sun．${ }^{2}$

2 （1）Know that the fourth place is the place of land for every person， but in the nativities of kings land mean cities．${ }^{1}$（2）So if a king wishes to found and build a city，put one of the fixed $\langle$ signs $\rangle$ as the rising sign； Aquarius is the most auspicious．（3）The Moon should be in a fortunate position and a benefic planet should aspect the ascendant degree；it is auspicious if it［the benefic planet］is in one of the cardines．（4）The lord of the ascendant sign should not be either burnt or retrograde，not with a malefic planet and not in an unfortunate aspect with it［the malefic planet］．（5）If the two luminaries，or one of them，aspects the lord of the sign $\langle$ of the ascendant $\rangle$ and the ascendant sign，this is the most auspicious of all．（6）It is auspicious if you can put Saturn in the twelfth place and Mars in the sixth 〈place〉；if you cannot do so，put it［Saturn］in the third or ninth place．（7）If you cannot do this $\langle$ either $\rangle$ ，put Saturn in the

ואם לא יכולת לעשות כן, שים שבתאי בבית עשתי עשר¹ ביום או בחמישי בלילה, ומאדים הפך הדבר. (8) ואם רצה המלך לבנות חומה לשמור מדינה ידועה וידעת מזלה², השמר3 שלא4 תשים המזל העולה השביעי ממזל5 המדינה', כי הוא מזל אויביה.

3 (1) אמר תלמי: אם היה7 בתחלת 3 מוסד המדינה או בית או9 ארמון, כי הדרך אחת היא, בעל היה יורד לשפלותו. (2) וזה הגבהות כנגד גלגל המוצק, כי לא יהיה הכוכב בשפלותו כנגד הגלגל הקטן15 כי אם16 הכוכב חוזר לאחור ${ }^{15}$ די, ואין צורך18 להזכיר כי החוזר לאחור19 דבר מגונה ${ }^{20}$ מאד, כי לא יוציא21 לאור כל22 מה"23 שיחל האדם בו" ${ }^{23}$ (3) ועוד אמר תלמי: אם היה כוכב רע בבית העשירי, ואינן25 בביתו או בבית כבודו, מהרה יפול²6 הבנין, ויותר קשה אם היה בבית רביצי2, רק שבתאי יזיק מעט כנגד מאדים.

29 1 זכרים, ויהיה בעל הבית במקום טוב ולא נשרף ולא חוזר לאחור ול ול ול ולא עם כוכב

 אומרים חומה. (4) ואם יכולת להיות השמש או מפאת המעלה הצומחת גם במזל זכר, אז טובי43.

2 (1) ואם בקשת44 להוליד נקבה, שים בעל השעה כוכב45 נקבה, ואם 246 שים אותו ברביעית47 נקבה מהשמש. (2) מהמעלה48 הצומחת גם הלבנה כן, ובמזל

1 צשתי צשר*] פמכר; ק אחד צשר; זח י״א.

 ; תקן.

 פמכזר; קח מגולה. 24 העשירי. ${ }^{28}$ בקשת*] פמכזרח; קרצית. ${ }^{29}$ קמזולות] קפמזרח; כ עם מזלות. 3 בחוזר לאחור*] פמכרח;
 ק היה ירח.
 קפמכזח; ר זכרות. ברביעי. במזל זכר אז טוב] קמכזרח; פח חסר.

eleventh place by day or in the fifth 〈place〉 by night；the opposite applies to Mars．（8）If the king wishes to build a wall to protect a certain city and you know its［the city＇s］sign，be careful not to put the seventh sign ＜counting〉 from the sign of the city ${ }^{2}$ as the rising sign，because it［the seventh sign］is the sign of its［the city＇s］enemies．

3 （1）Ptolemy said：if，at the time of the foundation of a city or the start of construction of a house or a palace（for the same method applies to all of them），the lord of the ascendant sign is ascending toward its apogee，it is auspicious；and the opposite applies if it is descending toward its perigee．${ }^{1}$ （2）I mean the apogee on the eccentric circle，${ }^{2}$ because a planet is at perigee on its epicycle ${ }^{3}$ only when it is retrograde，and there is no need to mention that a retrograde $\langle$ planet $\rangle$ is very bad，because it［the retrograde planet］will not accomplish anything begun by man．（3）Ptolemy also said：if a malefic planet is in the tenth place，and it is neither in its own house nor in the house of its exaltation，${ }^{4}$ the building will soon collapse， and it is even more ill－fated if it is in the fourth place；but Saturn is less detrimental than Mars．${ }^{5}$

1 （1）The fifth place．If you wish to beget sons，${ }^{1}$ put one of the mas－ culine signs ${ }^{2}$ as the ascendant sign，with the lord of the $\langle$ fifth $\rangle$ place in a fortunate position，neither burnt nor retrograde，and not with a malefic planet or in an unfortunate aspect with it．${ }^{3}$（2）〈Also〉 do this when the lord of the hour is a masculine planet ${ }^{4}$ if the Moon is in a mas－ culine sign and in a masculine quadrant with respect to the ascendant degree，${ }^{5}$ as I have mentioned．${ }^{6}$（3）The astrologers say that the Moon， from its conjunction 〈with the Sun〉 until its opposition $\langle$ to it〉，signi－ fies masculinity，and they are correct because of its heat．${ }^{7}$（4）It is aus－ picious if you do this when Jupiter is in one of the cardines，particu－ larly in a masculine quadrant with respect to the Sun or $\langle$ in a masculine quadrant with respect）to the ascendant degree ${ }^{8}$ and also in a masculine sign．${ }^{9}$

2 （1）If you wish to beget a daughter，make sure that the lord of the hour is a feminine planet；but if you cannot do this，put it［the lord of the hour］ in a feminine quadrant with respect to the Sun．（2）This also applies to the Moon $\langle$ in a feminine quadrant $\rangle$ with respect to the ascendant degree，

נקבה, והמזל1 הצומח מהנקבות. (3) ואם לא יכולת, יהיה² בעליו מהכוכבים הנקבות³, ושים נגה באחד ${ }^{4}$ היתדות, והשמר שלא יהיה צדק באחת5${ }^{5}$ היתדות. (4) וכל מה שהזכרתי הוא נכון, רק יש לך להשמר לעולם6 שלא יהיה" שבתאי באחד היתדות. (5) ואם לא יכולת, שים אותו8 בבית הרביעי, רק השמר שלא יהיה9 מאדים10 באחת ${ }^{10}$ בי היתדות כלל, ולא בבית החמישי ולא בבית עשתי עשרי12, כי יהרוג הבנים. וככה, לא"13 יהיה שבתאי בבית החמישי. (6) ואם לא יכולת, יהיה בעל הבית החמישי14 ${ }^{14}$ אם יסתכל15 כוכב טוב אליו. (7) והשמר שלא"16 תהיה הלבנה17 עם כוכב רע ${ }^{16}$ (8) או מבטו רעי19, כי20 אם היתה²1 כן תורה22 שהאשה תפיל הולד. (8) וזה דבר23 מנוסה, וחכמי המזלות אמרו דברים הרבהּ24.

3 (1) מי שירצה לעשות סעודה, ראוי שישים נגה במקום טוב, ולא יהיה בעל הבית 25 החמישי26 במבט27 רע עם המזל הצומח ולא עם בעליי, ותהיה הלבנה28 במקום29 טוב.

4 (1) ואם להכנס30 במרחץ14, ראה"32 שתהיה33 הלבנה34 באחד ממזלות"35 המים, בלא630 מבט רע עם מאדים ועם שבתאי. (2) ואם יביט מאדים מבט טוב, לא יזיק כלל, רק יועיל. (3) ככה אמרו הקדמונים.

1 (1) הבית הששי". הרוצה לקנות עבד או שפחה ישים הלבנה"38 באחת ${ }^{39}$ בתי כוכב חמה40 או במזל) ${ }^{4}$ שור. (2) ואמרו כי אם תהיה הלבנה42 באריה, יהיה העבדי ${ }^{43}$ (23 אכלן ובעל שררה. (3) ואם היה44 במזל45 קשת או גדי, יברח, ואם היה" ${ }^{46}$ במזל דלי, ימות העבד מהרה

[^50]and in a feminine sign and with one of the feminine $\langle$ signs $\rangle$ as the sign of the ascendant．${ }^{1}$（3）If you cannot $\langle$ do this $\rangle$ ，let its lord［i．e．，the lord of the ascendant sign］be one of the feminine planets and put Venus in one of the cardines，but be careful that Jupiter is not in one of the cardines．（4）Everything I have just mentioned is correct，but you must always be careful that Saturn is not in one of the cardines．（5）If you cannot do this，put it［Saturn］in the fourth place，but be careful that Mars is not in any of the cardines，or in the fifth or the eleventh place， because it［Mars］will kill the sons．Likewise，〈be careful〉 that Saturn is not in the fifth place．（6）If you cannot manage this，let it［Saturn］be the lord of the fifth place，on condition that a benefic planet aspects it． （7）Be careful that the Moon is not with a malefic planet and that its ［the malefic＇s］aspect／with the Moon〉 is not unfortunate，because in that case it signifies that the woman will have a miscarriage．（8）This has been tested by experience，and the astrologers have said many things 〈in this regard $\rangle$ ．

3 （1）Someone who wants to make a feast should put Venus in a fortu－ nate position，when the lord of the fifth place is not in an unfortunate aspect with the ascendant sign or with its lord，and when the Moon is in a fortunate position．${ }^{1}$

4 （1）If 〈you want〉 to go to a public bathhouse，take care to do this when the Moon is in one of the watery signs ${ }^{1}$ and does not form any unfortunate aspect with Mars or Saturn．（2）If Mars forms a fortunate aspect 〈with the Moon〉，it is not detrimental at all，but only auspicious． （3）This is what the Ancients said．

1 （1）The sixth place．Someone who wants to buy a male or a female slave should put the Moon in one of Mercury＇s houses［i．e．，Virgo and Gemini］or in Taurus．${ }^{1}$（2）They said that if the Moon is in Leo，the slave will be a glutton and domineering．${ }^{2}$（3）If it［the Moon］is in Sagittarius or Capricorn，he will run away；if it is in Aquarius，the slave will die soon．（4） If it is in Pisces，the slave will suspect that his master wishes to mistreat

רע¹ ולא יהיה לב העבד נכון. (5) ואם יכולת² לשים³ בעל הבית הששי, ואף² כי אם אם היה במזל שהוא על צורת אדם5, במבט טוב6 צם המעלה הצומחת7 ועם ועם בע בעליו, אז
 הבית השני |יפסיד ממון בעליו. (7) אמר דורוניוס: אם היה בעל הבית הקניה בבית ${ }^{11}$ השלישי12 או התשיעי13 יברח העבד מאדניו, ואם היה חוזר לאחורי14, יאהב שישוב15 אל אדניו הראשון, ואם היה נשרף, ימות מהרה¹2.

## 7 §

1
 מזל22 העולה אחד ממזלות האש, שלא יעבור²3 עליו סער גדול בים. (3) ולעשות מלחמה מזל עקרב הוא טוב, ובלבד שיהיה מאדים במקום טוב ולא יהיה נשרף ולא
 מאיזה מבט שיהיה, אז יותר טוב, ואין ספק שינצח היוצא את חפצו"30. (4) ואם העלית מזל דגים ולאל
 והשמר36 שלא יעלה מזל סרטן ${ }^{37}$ בעבור שהוא לכוכב שפל, רק אם היה שם צדקית בית
 קלונו, ולהיות בעל הבית העולה44 בתחלה או הממונה עליו בבית הרביעי איננו טוב. (6) רק אם יביטו45 אליו המאורות לא תחוש, כי מבט ${ }^{46}$ המאורות מששית או



 קז נזור; ח מוסיף בסוגריים: פי׳ בעל הבית הששי שהבית יורה על העבדים. ${ }^{15}$ שישוב] קרחכ; פמז לשוב. 16 16מות מהרה] קרח; פמכז ט.
 חסר. [14ל] קפמכזח; ר אל. לאחור*] פמכרח; זולא נזור; ק או נזור; ח מוסיף בסוגריים: פי׳ לפי שהוא בעל הבית הצומח. ל 25לשים] קפמח; כזר לשום. 26השביצי] קפמזרחכ; ח מוסיף בסוגריים: פי׳שהוא בעל הבית הז׳יתן הכח למאדים כי בעלות עקרב יהיה שור הבית הז׳וככה בעל ביתו. פ27 ${ }^{27}$ ] קפמרכח; זכח. ז האויב. 32 כוכב חמה] קפמכרח; ז כותב. בנ3 בעל הבית] קכרח; פמז בבית. ${ }^{33}$ בששביצי] קפמזרחכ; ח מוסיף בסוגריים: ר״ל שהוא בבית הז׳ כי בעלות דגים יהיה הז׳ בתולה שבעל ביתה כוכב ואשר שישים אותו
 קרח; פמכו > לך. יש מביט.
 טוב.
him and will not be favorably inclined 〈toward the master $\rangle.{ }^{3}$（5）It is more auspicious if you can put the lord of the sixth place，especially if it is in one of the signs with a human shape，in a fortunate aspect with the ascendant degree and with its lord．${ }^{4}$（6）Make sure that it is not in opposition to the ascendant or in opposition to its lord；if it is in opposition to the lord of the second place he［the slave］will squander his master＇s money．（7）Dorotheus ${ }^{5}$ said：if the lord of the sixth place is in the third or ninth place at the time of the purchase the slave will run away from his master；if it［the lord of the sixth sign］is retrograde，he ［the slave］will be keen to return to his first master；if it is burnt，he will die soon．${ }^{6}$

1 （1）The seventh place．If you want to send a king or commander out to do battle，be sure to calculate the planets＇positions precisely．（2）Pay attention：if he is going by sea，be careful not to put one of the fiery signs as the rising sign，so that he will not be beset by a violent storm at sea． （3）Scorpio 〈in the ascendant〉 is auspicious for waging war，but only if Mars is in a fortunate position and is neither burnt nor retrograde；${ }^{1}$ but it is more auspicious if you can put Venus as the lord of the seventh place when it gives power to Mars in any aspect whatsoever．〈Then〉 there is no doubt that the one who is going to 〈war〉 will be victorious over his enemy and do whatever he wants to him．（4）If you put Pisces ［which is one of Jupiter＇s houses］in the ascendant but Jupiter is not in a fortunate position，then put Venus in a fortunate position and put Mercury as the lord of the seventh place in an unfortunate position or burnt or retrograde．${ }^{2,3}(5)$ Be careful that Cancer is not the ascendant， because it is 〈the house〉 of a lower planet［Cancer is the Moon＇s house］， but 〈it may be suitable to put Cancer as the ascendant〉 if Jupiter is there ［in the ascendant，since Cancer is Jupiter＇s exaltation］，${ }^{4}$ or if Jupiter is in one of the cardines，namely，the first or tenth 〈place〉，〈but not in the seventh place〉 because the seventh 〈place〉［i．e．Capricorn］is the house of its［Jupiter＇s］dejection，${ }^{5,6}$ and it is unfortunate if the lord of the rising sign at the beginning 〈of the election〉 or the ruler 〈over the ascendant $\rangle$ is in the fourth place．（6）But do not be concerned if the

משלישית אל1 בעל הצומח² או הממונה עליו בבית הרביעי3 הוא טוב מאד, ומבט רביעית אמצעי4, ואם במזלות ארוכים או קצרים5 ${ }^{4}$ גם הוא טוב. (7) רק מבט נכח לעולם
 יברח מפני אויבו, ואם היה כוכב עליון ימלט, ואם מהשפלים11 יתפש או יהרג.

2 (1) ואם יכולת לשים12 הלבנה נבדלת13 ממחברת או מבט כוכב טוב, ותתן הכח

 שתתן הלבנה הכח לו23 יורה על האויב. (3) ואם המלחמה ביבשה שים המזל העולה טלה"24, והיהי25 השמש26 או מאדים במקום טוב, והשמר לך מאד שלא ול יה יהיה שבתאי בבית השביעי27, כי הוא²8 בית29 כבודו והוא כוכב עליון. (4) וככה, אם שמת המזל העולה גדי30, השמר לך שלא יהיה צדק ${ }^{31}$ בסרטן, ואם שמת המזל העולה גדי32 ושם מאד ואים
 בבית השביעי37, ויתן הכח משם לבעל הצומח, גם הוא טובי38. (6) גם כן, אם היה שם בו כוכב שפל, השמר39 שלא יהיה בעי בעל הצומח בבית השביעי כי לעולם יצו יה יהיה מנוצח. רק אם היה מהעליונים והוא חזק מפאת השמש, לא" ינוצח43 ולא"44 לגמרי בעבור היותו כוכב עליון. (7) ואם שמת המזל העולה אריה, גם
 הוא" בבית נופל ${ }^{47}$ כנגנד המעלה הצומחת. ואם היה נשרף מהשמשי או או חוזר לאחור50 או בבית נופל, גם הוא טוב.
 ומבט רביעית אמצעי* פמכזרח; ק חסר.
 נזור; ר חסר. לשום. ל ${ }^{13}$ הלבנה נבדלת** פמכזרח; ק ירח נבדל. קפמזרחכ; ח מוסיף בסוגריים: פי׳ כי אם היה כוכב רע יהפוך אותו לטוב הנותן כח אליו ואם היה טוב
 חכמה ולזה יהיה טוב.
 22למלחמה] קפמזרח; כ במלחמה. הכח לו; פמכז שתתן לו הלבנה הכח. והוא בית כבוד השמש ומאדים מורה על המלחמה. פמכזר; ק שמש. ${ }^{27}$ פשבביצי] קפמזרחכ; ח מוסיף בסוגריים: פיו לטלה, שהוא מאזנים ששם בית כבוד שבתי ובעבור היותו כוכב עליון הוא חזק מאד מהמנוגד לו שהוא טלה ולכן צוה לה להשמר מזה. קמכזרח; פ חסר. הב ביבית] קרח; פמכז בבית. 32 השמר לך שלא יהיה צדק בסרטן ואם שמת המזל העולה גדי־ מוסיף בסוגריים: פי׳ לפי שגדי בית כבודו. לשום. ${ }^{36}{ }^{36}$ ] 39 39מר] ק; פמכזרח > לך. ז חסר. ${ }^{43}{ }^{43}$ ינוצח] קח; ר ינוצח; פמכז נוצח. מוסיף בסוגריים: פי׳ לפי שהוא מתנגד לאריה והוא בעל בית שבתי. 47בעבור כי הוא** פמכזרח; ק לפי שהוא. מאזנים ג׳ אליו והבית הג׳ נקרא נופל וחלש.
luminaries aspect it［i．e．，the lord of the ascendant sign or the ruler over the ascendant］，because it is very auspicious if the luminaries are in sextile or trine with the lord of 〈the sign of the〉 ascendant or with the ruler 〈over the ascendant〉 in the fourth place，although quartile is intermediate；but it too is auspicious if it is in the long or short signs．${ }^{7}$ （7）But opposition is always unfortunate，because then the planet is retrograde，and if the lord of 〈the sign of〉 the ascendant is retrograde he［the king or commander］will run away from his enemy at once：if it is an upper planet he will escape，but if it is one of the lower planets he will be captured or killed．

2 （1）It is also auspicious if you can put the Moon so that it is moving away from conjunction or from an aspect with a benefic planet，so that it［the Moon］gives power to a malefic or benefic planet that is in a cadent place or burnt or retrograde．（2）This is the reason：the planet that the Moon moves away from signifies the person who goes to war，and the planet to which the Moon gives power signifies the enemy．${ }^{1}$（3）If the war is on land，put Aries as the rising sign and $\langle$ put $\rangle$ the Sun or Mars in a fortunate position［Aries is Mars＇house and the Sun＇s exaltation］， but be very careful that Saturn is not in the seventh place［i．e．，Libra］， because that is the house of its［Saturn＇s］exaltation and it［Saturn］is an upper planet．（4）Likewise，if you put Capricorn as the rising sign，be careful that Jupiter is not in Cancer［Cancer is Jupiter＇s exaltation］；but it is auspicious if you put Capricorn as the rising sign and Mars is there［in Capricorn，which is Mars＇exaltation］and it is oriental of the Sun．（5）It is also auspicious if you can put the lord of the seventh place in the seventh place and it gives power from there［the seventh place］to the lord of the ascendant．${ }^{2}$（6）In addition，if a lower planet is there［in the seventh place］，be careful that the lord of the ascendant is not in the seventh place， because he［the king or commander］will be always defeated．But if it ［the planet in the seventh place］is one of the upper 〈planets〉 and it is strong with respect to the Sun，he［the king or commander］will neither be victorious nor be defeated；if it is not strong，he will be defeated，but not completely，because it is an upper planet．（7）It is also auspicious if you put Leo as the rising sign，on condition that Saturn is not in Aquarius ［Aquarius is Saturn＇s house］；but do not be concerned if it［Saturn］is in Libra［Libra is Saturn＇s exaltation］，because it is in a cadent place with respect to the ascendant degree．It is also auspicious if it［Saturn］is burnt by the Sun or retrograde or in a cadent place．${ }^{3}$

3 (1) והקדמונים אמרו: אם היה¹ כוכב רע בבית השביעי², ינוצח האויב³.3 (2) ואני
 בית כבודו. והנה, אם היה בבית השביעי ליעי, יועיל לאויב ויזיזיק להולך להי להלחם עמו. (3) ואם יכולת לתקן מקום בעל השעה יוציל גם הוא8, ואם יכולת שיו שיהיה בעל השפה אחד מהכוכבים הצליונים על9 השמש או השמש10 בעצמה¹1, אז יהיה יותר טוב.
 יכולת, שים אותה שתתן הכח לאחד מן הכוכבים הטובים או אל השמש, כי14 ${ }^{14}$ הוא יותר טוב מהכל, ושים נגה באחד ${ }^{15}$ היתדות או בסמוכים הדבקים לכים 16 (3) והמזל העולה
 ואם תשים בעל הבית השביעי באחד מזלות19 המים, יורה עוּ על פר פריה ורי ורביה, והשמר
 אולי יהיה בין נכח השמש ובין מעמדו השני22. (5) ואם היתה הלבנה ${ }^{20}$ (532 בלי24 מבט רע מאחד ${ }^{25}$ הכוכבים הרעים, אזי26 יהיו שניהם
 לו טובה מהנשים, יתכנו32 עלילות הות וסבות עד שיקח אשתוּ33 במערכת הכוכבים שהיא טובה, והפך זה אם היה להפך

5 (1) ולדברי השותפים 5 (15, שים צדק במקום טוב ויהיה36 בעל הבית השביעי במבט ${ }^{36}$ טוב עם היתדות כלל, כי הוא42 יורה" ${ }^{43}$ על רמאות ובגידות ומריבות ${ }^{43}$ וע וקטטות. (2) ואם יכולת שיהיה45 גורל ${ }^{46}$ הלבנה במקום טוב, אז יהיה יותר טוב, ואם לא יסתכל מהכל.

[^51]3 （1）The Ancients said：if a malefic planet is in the seventh place， the enemy will be defeated．${ }^{1}$（2）But I say that evil will befall both the enemy and also the one who is going out 〈to war〉 only if Mars is in Capricorn，because it［Capricorn］is the house of its［Mars＇］exaltation． But if it［Mars］is in the seventh place，it will be auspicious for the enemy but unfortunate for the one who makes war against it．${ }^{2}$（3）It may be auspicious if you can calculate the position of the lord of the hour，and it is more auspicious if you can do this when the lord of the hour is one of the planets that are above the Sun or the Sun itself．${ }^{3}$

4 （1）If 〈you want to choose a time〉 to marry，put the Moon in a fortunate position when its light is not waning．（2）If you cannot do this， put it［the Moon］when it gives power to one of the benefic planets or to the Sun，because it［the Sun］is the most benefic of all，and put Venus in one of the cardines or in 〈one of the succedent 〈places〉 adjacent ＜to the cardines〉．（3）The rising sign is for the man and the seventh place＜counting from the ascendant〉 is for the woman－this is what the Ancients said－so you should calculate the position of both．（4） If you put the lord of the seventh place in one of the watery signs， it signifies procreation；but be careful not to put Jupiter in a cadent place，or burnt by the Sun，or retrograde．If you cannot manage this， try to put it［Jupiter］between opposition to the Sun and its second station．${ }^{1}$（5）If the Moon does not form an unfortunate aspect with any of the malefic planets，then they will both live many days with pleasure and joy．（6）The Ancients said a very important thing，which I have tested by experience many times：whoever has been destined by his natal horoscope to be benefited by women，things will work out［ $1 \mathrm{Sam} .2: 3$ ］so that he marries under a fortunate configuration of the planets，and vice versa．

5 （1）As for partners，put Jupiter in a fortunate position，with the lord of the seventh place in a fortunate aspect with the lord of the second place；because in the contrary case he will squander his money．Take care that Mars is not in any of the cardines，because it［Mars］signifies fraud，treachery，quarrels，and altercations．${ }^{1}$（2）It is more auspicious if you can do this so that the lot of the Moon ${ }^{2}$ is in a fortunate position； and it is most auspicious of all if Saturn is not in any aspect＜with the Moon）．${ }^{3}$

1 (1) הבית השמיני. הרוצה לבקש אבדה, ישים1 בעל הבית² השמיני3 במזל הצומח, ואם היה שב לאחור ${ }^{4}$ אז הוא יותר טוב או5 יהיה נשרף מהשמש, כי הוא יורה על בעל האבדה, או יתן בעל הבית6 השמיני הכח לבעל הצומחת${ }^{7}$ או לשמש, והשמר שלא יהיה שבתאי באחד היתדות. (2) ואם יכולת להיות ${ }^{8}$ הלבנה9${ }^{9}$ במזל מתהפך, ותתן הכח לכוכבם חוזר לאחור) 11, או לבעל הבית, או לכוכב שהוא באחד היתדות או בסמוכים הדבקים, אז טוב. (3) ואם הלבנה¹2 עם כוכב רע או מבטו הרע, אז טוב¹3, והשמר שלא יהיה עם כוכב טוב.

1 (1) הבית התשיעי14. כבר אמרתי לך שתשמור15 שלא יהיה16 בעל השעה שבתאי בהליכת הים17. גם כן השמר שלא יהיה בבית העשירי18, כי19 ${ }^{18}$ אם הם היה בבית העשירי ישבר התורן או יפול. (2) ואם היה במזל הצומח יעשה רע כפי מקומו: ואם היה במזל מים, יעשה סער גדול; ואם במקום אחר, כמו"20 במזל21 עפר 22 , תעבור הספינה על אבן23 ותשבר; ואם במזלות הרוח, יהפך ${ }^{24}$ הספפינה רוח עזה; ואם במזלות האש, ישבר לוח25 הספינה. (3) ואם ${ }^{25}$ שבתאי בבית השביעיי2, |ישבר הדגל או תבא הרעה משם, 249 ואם ביתד הרביעי, יפתח מקום מוצא מיםם. היה31 במזל צורת אדם 32, ילחמו33 לסטים עם אנשי הספינה, וכפי כח בעל ${ }^{33}$ צי34 המזל בשצה35 שתחל הספינה36 ללכת בים או בנהר, כן יהיה שימלטו או37 יתפשו.

2 (1) אמר דורוניוס: השמר שלא תהיה הלבנה38 בתחלת הנסיעה39 במזל דגים, כי יורה שתטבע40. (2) והאמת, כאשר"41 נסיתי, כי הוא דבר ${ }^{41}$ (12 קשה, רק אם יביטו כוכבים

[^52]1 （1）The eighth place．Someone who wants to find a lost object should put the lord of the eighth place as the sign of the ascendant．It is more auspicious if it［the lord of the eighth place］is retrograde or if it is burnt by the Sun，inasmuch as it［the lord of the eighth place］signifies the person who lost the object，or $\langle\mathrm{if}\rangle$ the lord of the eighth place gives power to the lord of the ascendant or to the Sun．But be careful that Saturn is not in one of the cardines．（2）It is auspicious if you can put the Moon in a tropical sign and it［the Moon］gives power to a retrograde planet or to the lord of the place or to a planet that is in one of the cardines or in the succedent 〈places〉 adjacent $\langle$ to the cardines $\rangle$ ．（3）It is auspicious if the Moon is with a malefic planet or in an unfortunate aspect with it，but make sure that it［the Moon］is not with a benefic planet．${ }^{1}$

1 （1）The ninth place：I have already told you to be careful not to set off on a journey by sea when Saturn is the lord of the hour．${ }^{1}$ You should also be careful not to do this when it［Saturn］is in the tenth place， because if it is in the tenth place the mast will break or fall．（2）If it ［Saturn］is in the ascendant sign，a calamity will occur，according to its ［Saturn＇s］position：if it is in a watery sign，a great tempest will come up；if in another position，such as an earthy sign，the ship will strike a rock and break apart；if in the airy signs，a strong wind will capsize the ship；if in the fiery signs，the deck of the ship will be broken．（3） If Saturn is in the seventh place，the flag will be broken or a calamity will come from there；if it is in the fourth cardo［the cusp of the tenth place］，water will enter through a hole．（4）The calamities caused＜to voyagers〉 on the sea by Mars are less serious：if it is in a sign with a human shape，pirates will fight against the ship＇s crew，and they will escape or be captured according to the power of the lord of the sign＜of the ascendant $\rangle$ at the hour when the ship began its journey by sea or by river．${ }^{2}$

2 （1）Dorotheus said：make sure that the Moon is not in Pisces at the beginning of a journey，because it indicates that $\langle$ the ship $\rangle$ will sink． （2）The truth，as I have tested by experience，is that the outcome will

טובים אל הלבנה¹ ימלטו. (3) וביבשה² השמר שלא יהיה³ מאדים בבית התשיעי, כי יורה על לסטים בדרך4, ויותר5 טוב הוא מעט שבתאי.

3 (1) אמר אנדוזגאר6: כשתלך7 בדרך ותרצה ליכנס במדינה, ככה עשה שיהיה בעל8 הבית השני9${ }^{9}$ במקום10 טוב, ולא יה יהיה נשרף כלל, והשמר שלא תהיה הלבנה11 בוּ בית הרביעי. (2) ותלמי אומר כי איננו טוב לעולם שתהיה הלבנה1212 במזל העולה, בעבור13 שתולדתו הפך תולדת הלבנהי ${ }^{14}$ (3) ודורוניוס אומרי15, והוא הנכון: השמר שלא יה יהיה כוכב רע בבית השביצי כשאתה זו ממקומך, כי אם היה כן יורה על רע שיה וֹהיה לו במדינה16 שילך אליה ${ }^{16}$, ואם היה18 בבית כבודו והוא על מבט טוב19 עם בעל הצומחת,
 ושעת מאדים ושבתאי רעות להכנסי22 במדינה, והטובובות שעות בות המאורות, ושעות שאר המשרתים אמצעיות. כן אמרו כל23 הקדמונים.

## 10 §

1 (1) הבית העשירי424. אם רצית 1 (15 לכתוב ספר, או ללמוד חכמה, או לעשות ${ }^{26}$ אומנות, תשים הלבנה27 באחד מבתי28 שבתאי, ולא ולא תתן הכח לכוכב חוזר לאחור ול ול ולא נשרף
 והם יותר טובים מבתי כוכב

 אם39 יש לו מרחב, גם צולה בפאת גלגל המוצק. (4) ואם יתן הכח לכוכב אחד ביכ , אולי יהיה הכוכב האחד באחד ${ }^{41}$ היתדות ויהיה מהיר בהליכתו.


 במקום המדינה. ${ }^{11}$ תהיה הלבנה*] פמכזרח; ק יהיה ירח. ${ }^{12}$ קושתהיה הלבנה*] פמכזרח; ק שיהיה ירח.

 קפמרח; ז היתה; כ חסר. ${ }^{19}$ מבט טוב] קח; פמכזר מבטו. ${ }^{19}$ קואם] קפמכזח; ר חסר.


 פמכז שים אותה. פמכזרח; ק הירח. באחת. פ7 ${ }^{3}$ ביותר] קרח; פמכז והיותר. קכמח; פרז אחר. ${ }^{41}$ האחד באחד] קרכח; מז האחד באחת; פ האחר באחת. $_{\text {באת }}$
be calamitous and they will escape only if benefic planets aspect the Moon．${ }^{1}$（3）〈If the journey is〉 by land，make sure that Mars is not in the ninth place，because it signifies highwaymen；Saturn is slightly more auspicious．${ }^{2}$

3 （1）Andruzagar said：if you embark on a journey and want to enter a city，set it so that the lord of the second place is in a fortunate position and is not burnt at all，and take care that the Moon is not in the fourth place．（2）Ptolemy said that it is never good if the Moon is in the rising sign，because its［the rising sign＇s］nature is the opposite of the Moon＇s nature．${ }^{1}$（3）Dorotheus said，and this is correct：when you leave your home，make sure that no malefic 〈planet）is in the seventh place，because if it is it signifies a calamity that will befall him in the city to which he is going；but if it［the malefic planet］is in the house of its exaltation and forms a fortunate aspect with the lord of the ascendant，it will be only slightly detrimental．（4）If this planet is the ruler of the nativity at the time of birth，it will be only slightly detrimental．（5）The hours of Mars and of Saturn are inauspicious for entering a city，the luminaries＇hours are auspicious，and the hours of the remaining planets are intermediate． All the Ancients said so．${ }^{2}$

1 （1）The tenth place：if you want to write a book，study sciences，or engage in a craft，put the Moon in one of Saturn＇s houses，${ }^{1}$ so that it［the Moon］does not give power to a planet that is retrograde，burnt，or in a cadent place．（2）If you cannot 〈do this〉，put it［the Moon］in one of the houses of Jupiter or Mercury，which are better than the houses of 〈any other〉 planet with respect to the Moon to commence any activity that people want to do repeatedly，as long as neither Mars nor Saturn is in one of the cardines，although Saturn is worse 〈than Mars〉 in this regard． （3）Always put the lord of the ascendant sign when it is moving rapidly， moving northward if it has 〈some ecliptic〉 latitude，and also ascending on the eccentric circle．${ }^{2}$（4）If it［the lord of the ascendant sign］gives power to some planet，you may put that planet in one of the cardines when it is moving rapidly．${ }^{3}$

2 בצומחת והמזל טלה או אריה או עקרב, גם הוא טוב, ובשאר² המזלות אינ אינו³ כן, בעבור²
 בעבור היות טלה8 בית9${ }^{9}$ כבודו10, ואריה ביתו, ועקרב11 ${ }^{10}$ יש לו מבט עם על המלוכה, על כן הוא טוב. (3) והשמר13 של של יה יהיה בעל ולא על מבטי15 נכח או16 על מבט רביעית¹7, ולא תחוש מהלבנה1818, רק אם היה19 המזל הצומח בלילה יש לך ${ }^{20}$ לשימה ${ }^{21}$ ב${ }^{21}$ במקום טוב. (4) ואם היה ${ }^{22}$ השמש ביום בבית כבודו23, וככה הלבנה²4 בלילה, אז הוא יותר טוב, ויותר טוב טוב אם היה אחד מהם בעל השעה. (5) וכאשר הסתכל כפי חלוק הארץ. (6) והשמר שלא יהיה נכח המעלה הצומחת ולא נכחב ${ }^{27}$ בעליה, ואם
 לבעל המזל הצומח, אז הוא יותר טוב ואין למעלה ממנו.

3 (1) ואם הלכת131 לאדם זקן, תקן מקום שבתאי כאשר הזכרתי32 בשמש. (2) ואם 3 (3 ואם
 מאדים. (4) ואם לאשה גדולה33, תקן מקום נגה גם מקום הלבנה
 ולא יהיה נכח הצומח ולא"39 נכח בעל ${ }^{39}$ הצומחת"

4 (1) ואם רצית להושיב מלך על כסאו, שים השמש במקום טוב, ושים המזל הצומח מהעומדים. (2) והשמר שלא תהיה הלבנה ${ }^{42}$ נכח השמש ולא נכח המעלה הצומחת, כי אם היה כן לאות שיקשרו עליו עבדיו43 וישנאוהו בני אדם וֹה (3) ושים בעל ועל הבית העשירי כנגד המעלה הצומחת44 במקום טוב; גם זה הדרך ${ }^{45}$ תעשה להושיב רב ללמד43

תלמידים47.

 קפמזרחכ; ח מוסיף בסוגריים: פי׳ שיהיה השמש בבית הכוכב. ${ }^{8}$ בעבור היות טלה*] פמכזרח; ק לפי שטלה. ${ }^{9}$ בית] קרח; פמכז בבית. ${ }^{10}{ }^{10}$ [בודו] קמכזרח; פ כבוד. 11וצקרב*] פמכט; קרח ובעקרב. 12 מבט עם] קפמז; ר מבז; כ חסר; מינוי. ${ }^{13}$ מוהשמר] קזח; פכר השמר; מוישמר. ${ }^{14}$ [בעל] קח; פמכזר > המזל.
 קפמזר; כח לשומה. ${ }^{22}$ היה] קמ; כרח היתה; פז חסר. פמכזרח; ק הירח.

 ק כמו שזכרתי. ק33 תקן מקום צדק ... ואם לאשה גדולה] קפמזרח; כ חסר. ירח.
 כר חסר. ${ }^{41}$ הומחת* $^{4}$ פמז; כ > ולא נכח הצומחת; ר ולא יהיה נכח בעל הצומחת. פמכזרח; ק יהיה הירח. 34צבדיו] קפמכזח; ר חסר. ${ }^{44}$ קצדומחת] קפמזרח; כ > ולא נכח בעל הצומחת ואם רצית. קח; פמכז לתלמידים; ר לתלמידיהם.

2 （1）If you want to go $\langle$ see $\rangle$ a king or a great prince，put the Sun in a fortunate position．It is also auspicious if it［the Sun］is in the ascendant，in Aries，Leo，or Scorpio；but not in the other signs，because the astrologers say that when a planet is with the Sun it loses its power，${ }^{1}$ and this also applies to the house．（2）〈The reason why these［Aries，Leo， and Scorpio］are auspicious is $\rangle$ because Aries is the house of its［the Sun＇s］exaltation，Leo is its house，and Scorpio is in aspect with the place that signifies kingship，which makes it fortunate．${ }^{2,3}$（3）Be careful that the lord of the ascendant sign is not burnt by the Sun or in opposition or in quartile $\langle$ to the Sun $\rangle$ ，but do not be concerned about the Moon， although if the ascendant is taken by night you should put it［the Moon］ in a fortunate position．（4）It is more auspicious if the Sun by day is in the house of its exaltation，and likewise 〈if〉 the Moon by night 〈is in the house of its exaltation $\rangle$ ，and even more so if one of them is the lord of the hour．（5）Just as you observe the position of the Sun，you should also observe the lord of the tenth place，$\langle$ that is，$\rangle$ in accordance with the division of $\langle$ the places according to $\rangle$ the 〈latitude of the〉 country．${ }^{4,5}$（6） Be careful that it［the Sun］is not in opposition to the ascendant degree or in opposition to its lord．But it is auspicious if it is in a fortunate aspect with the ascendant degree or its lord，and it is most auspicious of all if it ［the Sun］gives power to the lord of the ascendant sign．

3 （1）If you want to go $\langle$ see $\rangle$ an elder［i．e．，a councilor］，determine the position of Saturn as I mentioned regarding the Sun．（2）If 〈you want to go $\langle$ see $\rangle$ a jurist or a judge，determine the position of Jupiter．（3）If〈you want to go see〉 a military commander，determine the position of Mars．（4）If 〈you want to go see〉 an important woman，determine the position of Venus and also the position of the Moon．（5）If 〈you want to go see〉 a rabbi to study wisdom，determine the position of Mercury so that it is in a fortunate aspect with the lord of the ascendant and is neither in opposition to the ascendant nor in opposition to the lord of the ascendant．${ }^{1}$

4 （1）If you want 〈to choose a time〉 to crown a king，put the Sun in a fortunate position and put a fixed sign in the ascendant．（2）Be careful not to do this when the Moon is in opposition to the Sun or in opposition to the ascendant degree，because in this case it signifies that his ministers will conspire against him and that people will hate him．${ }^{1,2}$（3）Put the lord of the tenth place in a fortunate position with respect to the ascendant degree；${ }^{3}$ proceed in a similar way to appoint a master to teach pupils．

1 (1) הבית האחד עשר¹. אם בקשת לסחור², שים בעל זה הבית בבית זה³ או במעלה4


3 (1) ואם רצונך ללכת אל דין22 עם אדם, לעולם עשה כדרך הנלחמים כאשר
 עשתי עשר ${ }^{27}$ ביתדד ${ }^{28}$ הראשון, והשמר שלא יהיה בבית השביעי. (3) ואם לדין אצל מלך, השמר שלא יהיה השמש בבית השביעי, ואם לא יכולת, שים המזל העולה אחד מבתי שבתאי, ובלבד ${ }^{29}$ שלא יהיה נשרף ולא חוזר לאחור30, ולא בבית נופל ויתן השמש הכח לו.


#### Abstract

4 (1) ואם תבקש אהבת אשה, שים נגה בבית הזה או בבית חמישי 31 או ביתד 42 הראשון, והשמר שלא יהיה נגה בבית השביעי, ואפילו יהיה בית33 כבודו כי34 מריבות יחדש בין איש לאשתו. (2) ואם לת" לבקש"36 אהבת חכם, תקן מקום כוכב חמה", ואם כוכב אחדד38 יתן הכח לכוכב אחר, תקן מקום אותו הכוכבי, ${ }^{39}$, כי אותו הכוכב40 ישמש14 בתולדתו ותולדת כוכב חמה² מתערבות33. (3) ואם היתה הלבנה44 ובעל ביתה45 במקום טוב,


1*הבית האחד עשר*] פמכ; זר הבית העשתי עשר; ק בית אחד עשר; ח הבית הי״א.




 פמכזרח; ק חסר. ${ }^{18}$ אהבת שופט] ק; פמכזר אהבה עם שופט; חאהבה על שופט. ${ }^{19}$ שלאחור*] רחמכ; פ אחורנית; קז נזור. 20 יויהיה* פמכזרח; קוהיה.
 פמכזרח; ק כמו שהוריתי.
 אך. ${ }^{30}{ }^{30}$ לאר לאור๋] פמכרח; קז נזור. [ביתד* פמזח; קכר היתד. ז חסר. 36 36 לבקש] קרח; פמכז תבקש. קפמכר; ח חמה; ז חסר. ${ }^{39}{ }^{39}$ כוכב אחד יתן הכח לכוכב אחר תקן מקום אותו הכוכב*] פמכזרח; ק
 33 43תערבות] קפמזרחכ; ח מוסיף בסוגריים: פי׳ בתולדת כוכב חמה בעבור שהוא נותן הכח לכוכב ההיא על כל תולדת הכוכב ההיא ותולדת כוכב חמה מתערבות. $\quad$ ש44 ${ }^{44}$ היתה הבנה*] פמכזרח; ק היה הירח. "45יתה*] פמכזרח; ק ביתו; ח מוסיף בסוגריים: פי’ בעל בית המזל שהלבנה בו.

1 （1）The eleventh place：if you are seeking $\langle$ an election $\rangle$ for engaging in trade，put the lord of this place in this place or in the ascendant degree， but not with a malefic planet in this place or in an unfortunate aspect with it．${ }^{1}$

2 （1）If you want to seek 〈an election〉 about the amity of some person， pay heed：（2）If you seek the king＇s amity，put the Sun in this place［the eleventh place］，but not when it［the eleventh place］is in opposition to the lord of the ascendant and 〈the lord of the ascendant〉 is burnt by it ［the Sun］．（3）If 〈you seek〉 the amity of an elder［i．e．，a councilor］，put Saturn in this place so that it［Saturn］forms a fortunate aspect with the lord of the ascendant．（4）If the amity of a judge，put Jupiter in this place ［the eleventh place］，but neither burnt nor retrograde，and receiving the lord of the first place in any position whatsoever．${ }^{1}$

3 （1）If you wish to engage in litigation with someone，always proceed in the same way as for those at war，as I instructed you in the seventh place．${ }^{1}$（2）If you take the case before a judge，you may put Jupiter in the eleventh place or in the first cardo，but make sure that it［Jupiter］ is not in the seventh place．（3）If you take the case before a king，make sure that the Sun is not in the seventh place；but if you cannot do this， put the rising sign in one of Saturn＇s houses，but only if it［Saturn］is neither burnt nor retrograde，is not in a cadent place，and the Sun gives it power．

4 （1）If you are inquiring about a woman＇s love，put Venus in this ［the eleventh］place or in the fifth place or in the first cardo；but be careful that Venus is not in the seventh place，even if it［Venus］is in the house of its exaltation［Pisces］，because this will provoke quarrels between husband and wife．（2）If you are inquiring about the amity of a scholar，determine Mercury＇s position；but if one planet gives power to another planet，determine the position of the other planet，because this planet exerts an influence that is a combination of its own nature and Mercury＇s．${ }^{1}$（3）If the Moon and the lord of its house are in a fortunate

אז תהיה האחרית טובה, וככה אם היה הבית הרביעי עם מבט טוב מהכוכבים הטובים וככה בעל הבית¹ ויהיה² בכחו מפאת השמש³ וממקום ${ }^{1}$ שלטונו במקומו5. (4) ודע כי המזלות6${ }^{6}$ וֹרים טובים מהמעוותים להחל כל7 דבר.

## $12 \S$

1 1 (1) הבית השנים צשר8. אם רצית לקנות בהמה, שים כוכב בבית שנים עשר או יביט אליו מבט טוב, ולא יהיה שם ${ }^{9}$ כוכב רע לע ${ }^{10}$ או יביט מבט רע אליו11. (2) והשמר שלא יהיה בעל הבית12 השנים עשר נכח המעלה הצומחת יורה שתפילהו הבהמה לארץ. (3) ואם רצית לקנות סוס זכר־12, שים שים השמש במקום טוב
 ואם חמור, תקן19 מקום שבתאי, ואב כוכב חמה בוּ23.|(4) ולא יהיה כוכב רע במזלב בקנותב27 הסוס, ולא בעקרב בקנות הפרד בקנות שור. (5) ולקנות גמל תקן מקום נגה, ולקנות הפיל929, תקן30 מקום צדק. (6) ככה אמרו הקדמונים.

תם ספר המחברים<br>תהלה לאלהים האדירים31


#### Abstract

 שיהיה מזרחי ממנו אם הוא מהעליונים או מערבי ממנו אם הוא מהשפלים. ${ }^{4}$ אוממקום] קח; פמכזר למקום. ${ }^{5}$ למקומו] קפמזרחכ; ח מוסיף בסוגריים: ר״ל שיהיה לו שם שררה כגון שיהיה בביתו או בבית כבודו או בשלישיתו והדומים אליו. ${ }^{6}$ במזלות] קכרח; פמז הכוכבים. ${ }^{7}$ להחל כל] קרחכ; פמ להתחיל  חסר. "רע* ${ }^{10}$ פמכזרח; ק > עמו. ${ }^{11}$ קבט רע אליי] קמכרח; פ אליו מבט רע; ז מבט אליו.  קיכ "י] קפמזרח; כ חסר. קפמכרח; ז חסר. ${ }^{19}$ קתק] קפמכח; ר תתקן; זחסר. ירח. 22 ${ }^{22}$ קןן קפמכרח; ז חסר. זרע. רעל ששם. פי׳ עי עקרב בית מאדים וכבר אמר למעלה לתקנו בקנות הפרד. ${ }^{29}$ ולקנות הפיל*] ח; קפמכזר חסר. 30 3קן] קפמרח; כ ותקן. עולם; מ נשלם ספר המבחר'. כאויבי אל תתחר. ואכיר יחד. סכיניו תאכל. אש ואת תוכו החר. וחטאי להבלן כמו צמר צחר. ותאיר את אורי כמו אור השחר; כ נשלם ספר המבחרי. באויבי אל תתחר ואמך בו יחד. סביביו תאכל. אש את כוכבו נחר. וחטאי אל לבן כמו צמר צהר. ותאיר את אורי כמו אור השחר. ואתן לך להלות בספר המזלות והשאלות; זתם ונשלם ברוך אל עולם; ר נשלם ספר הבחר; צ נשלם ספר המבחרים והודות לבורא היצורים; חנשלם ספר המחברים ורוב תודות ושירים לאשר בידו כל הנוצרים.


position，the outcome will be fortunate；the same applies if the fourth place is in a fortunate aspect with benefic planets，and likewise when the lord of the house is strong with respect to the Sun and with respect to its position in respect of the place of domination．（4）Know that the straight signs are better than the crooked $\langle\text { signs }\rangle^{2}$ for commencing any enterprise．

1 （1）The twelfth place．If you want to purchase an animal，put a planet in the twelfth place or so that it［the planet］is in a fortunate aspect with it ［the twelfth place］，but not when a malefic planet is there［in the twelfth place］or 〈when the malefic planet〉 is in an unfortunate aspect with it ［the twelfth place］．（2）Make sure that the lord of the twelfth place is not in opposition to the ascendant degree or in opposition to the lord of the ascendant，because then it will signify that the animal will throw him．${ }^{1}$ （3）If you wish to buy a stallion，put the Sun in a fortunate position in a masculine sign；if to buy a mare，put the Sun in a feminine sign；if a mule，determine the position of Mars；if a donkey，determine the position of Saturn；${ }^{2}$ if an ox，determine the position of the Moon；and if sheep， determine the position of Mercury．${ }^{3}$（4）There should not be a malefic planet in Aries when you buy sheep；${ }^{4}$ or in Sagittarius or Pisces when you buy a horse；or in Scorpio when you buy a mule；or in Capricorn when you buy a donkey；or in Taurus when you buy an ox．（5）If 〈you want）to buy a camel，determine the position of Venus；and to buy an elephant，determine the position of Jupiter．（6）This is what the Ancients said．${ }^{5}$

The Book of Elections is completed Glory to the Mighty God

PART FOUR

NOTES TO THE SECOND
VERSION OF THE BOOK OF ELECTIONS
${ }^{[1]}$ 1：The sages of the Torah ．．．fear of Heaven．As conveyed in Yesod mora＇（The fundamentals of awe），man can exercise his free will because his supernal－rational soul has the capacity to overcome the other two


 ה＇נפש׳ היא הכח הצומח שהוא בכבד，וכל צמח וחל וחי משתתף בכח זה，וזאת וחת הנפש גוף， והיא המתאוה לאכול וממנה דבר המשגל．ו׳הרוח׳－בלב，ובה חית הוח האו האדם שיתנועע， והיא כוללת האדם והבהמה；גם היא גוף．ובצאת זה הרוח，שהוא דומה לאויר，מהגויה
 העליונה וכחה במוח．ותולדת בני האדם ויצרם משתנים，יש מי ששל ואלשתם חזקות בו， ויש נחלשות，ויש שהשתים בתמורה，והם על כ״וז דו דרכים משונים．ואין צורך להאריך מוּ
 כח במשכיל לבחור הטוב והרע，כי אין הגזירו׳ אלא כפי המקבל，לא כפי הנותן．״ ＝＂I will now give you a clue to an important secret．．．．Our ancient sages said：＇Everything depends on the heavens except for the fear of Heaven．＇．．．Know that there are three powers in man＇s vitality，and if you wish you may call them by three names：soul，spirit and anima．Now the anima is the vegetative power that resides in the liver，and is common to all plants and animals，and the anima is of a material nature：it desires nutrition and sexual desire comes from it．The spirit is in the heart；it is the animal component of man and the vital force by which he moves． Both men and animals possess it，and it too is of a material nature．When this spirit，which is like air，departs from the body，a man dies．This spirit is domineering，seeks control，and is irascible．The soul is the highest〈among the three powers〉 and its power is in the brain．Human beings have different natures and characters：in some of them the three 〈powers〉 are strong，in others they are weak，and in others they are intermediate， yielding 27 combinations．There is no need to expand on this，because the soul seeks what is beneficial to it－to learn the deeds of God，because He is the source of life．．．．Therefore a man of learning has the power to choose good or evil，because the decrees 〈of fortune〉 are according to the 〈makeup of the〉 recipient，not according to the giver＂（Yesod Mora＇， 2007，VII，pp．140－145）．
${ }^{[2]}$ 2：Ordinances of the heavens．Ibn Ezra took the phrase＂ordinances of the heavens＂from Job 38：33 and used it as a synonym for＂judgments of the zodiacal signs．＂The opening sentence of Reshit Hokhmah I is a
 לא יתור אדם אחרי עיניו ולבו למלאת תאותו，אז תנוח החכמה בקרבו．ועוד，שיראת
 וחי לעולם．והנה אחל לפרש חקת שמים בדרך המשפטים כאשר נסו הקדמונים דור ＂The beginning of wisdom is the fear of the Lord（Psalms 111：10），for it is the foundation，because when man ceases to go after his eyes and heart to satisfy his desire，then wisdom comes to rest in his heart（Proverbs 14：33）．Furthermore，the fear of the Lord（Psalms 111：10） will protect him from the＇ordinances of heavens and their dominion＇〈on the earth〉（Job 38：33）all the days of his life，and after the soul takes leave of his body，he will inherit substance（Proverbs 8：21）and will live forever（Genesis 3：22）．I now begin to explain the＇ordinances of the heavens＇（Job 38：33）by means of the 〈astrological〉 judgments as they were verified by experience by the Ancients，generation after generation＂ （Reshit Hokhmah，1939，5）．See also Ibn Ezra＇s comm．on Job 38：33： ＂הידעת חקות שמים，ששמתי？והוא שאמר המשורר：＇חוק נתן ולא יעבור＇（תה＇קמח，ו）． ＂Knowest thou the ordinances of the heavens＇－which I have established？Regarding this the poet said：＇He hath made a decree which shall not be transgressed＇ （Ps．148：6）－＇the dominion thereof＇refers to＇heavens＇，because they exert rulership over the Earth．＂
${ }^{[3]}$ 2：But we know ．．．＂ordinances of the heavens．＂After discussing free will，Ibn Ezra turns to deal with astral determinism．With this aim，he begins by quoting Ecclesiastes 3：14．Ibn Ezra left a brief commentary on
 ＂＇God has made it so’ means that no creature can＇add＇to His deeds nor＇take from＇them，in order that men should ＇revere Him．＇．But here Ibn Ezra expands the scope and states that in this verse Solomon，the author of Ecclesiastes，alluded to the＂ordinances of the heavens，＂meaning astrology．
${ }^{[4]}$ 2：Whoever is born ．．．cannot be numbered．Ibn Ezra continues his discussion of astral determinism and highlights the sharp contrast between those born under a defective configuration and those born under a perfect configuration of the stars．He uses metaphoric and vague language，highly reminiscent of his biblical commentaries．In fact，the first part of this passage（＂whoever is born＂．．．＂flawless configuration＂） is no more than an alternative commentary to Eccles．1：15，a verse quoted in the sequel．Ibn Ezra also glossed this verse in his commentary
on Ecclesiastes：＂כי המצוות לא יוכל להיותו נתקן，כי תולדתו מעוותת；ובעל החסרון אין בו יכולת להמנות עם השלמים ．．．שהנולד במערכת חסרה אין בו כח להשלים נפשו．והנה נמצא המתצסק לחקור עיקר התולדות ממלאכת שמים，מתעסק ＂what is crooked cannot be made straight，because its nature is crooked，and what is defective can not be included among the flawless．．．．Someone born under a defective configuration is incapable of perfecting his soul．So if someone occupies himself with the study of the essence of nature by means of 〈the examination of the organization of heaven，he occupies himself with futile things．This is true for the majority of human beings and for the majority of their deeds．＂
${ }^{[5]} 2$ ：Consequently whoever ．．．never get rich．This is the corollary of the previous discussion．Ibn Ezra is in the habit of endorsing an astrology－ driven determinism in which the fate of human beings is determined by the stars，and notably by the natal horoscope．Here are three exam－ ples from his biblical commentaries，the best place to appreciate this approach：（1）ויעתה אדבר על חכמת המזלות．דצ כי כל נולד יקרוהו מקרים כדרך＂ ＂I now refer to astrology．Know that what happens to every native is according to the signification of the configurations of the planets at the time of his birth， and their reciprocal arrangements＂（long comm．on Ex．23：25）．（2）（2）（וטעם ＂In the day of evil＇means an upper configuration 〈of the planets〉 with respect to his day of birth＂（comm．on Ps．41：1）．（3）In his commentary on Ps．75：7（＂For judgment comes nei－ ther from the east，nor from the west，nor from the desert peaks＂），Ibn Ezra reads the verse as an allusion to the cardines of the natal horoscope： ＂י．．．זה רמז לחכמת המזלות，החושבים כי הטוב והרע והכבוד והקלון הבא לאדם， הכל במערכת הככבים；והיתד הראשון，הוא המזרחי，גם המערבי，גם הדרומי שהוא כנגד מדבר הרים－הם המושלים על כל האדם；ולא הזכיר היתד הרביעי，כי א׳ין ＂．．．．this is an allusion to astrology，which asserts that whatever good or evil，honor or dishonor，that occur to a man， comes from the configuration of the stars：for the first cardo，the eastern， also the western $\langle$ cardo〉 and the southern 〈cardo〉，which is against the ＇desert peaks，＇all of them rule every man；and he did not mention the fourth cardo，inasmuch as it is powerless，because it is below the Earth．＂
${ }^{[6]}$ 3：But since the soul ．．．misfortune somewhat．Corresponds closely to Mivharim I，$\$_{1: 1}$ ．See notes there．For the extra－mundane character of the soul of man，see above，p． 11.
${ }^{[7]}$ 4: Therefore, whoever ... ill-starred. Corresponds to Mivharim I, §1.2.
${ }^{[8]}$ 5: Ptolemy. See note on Me'orot $\$$ 16:4.
${ }^{[9]}$ 5: Ptolemy said ... be perceptible. Corresponds to Mivharim I, $\$ 1.3$ (see note there), where a similar statement is ascribed to Dorotheus. The current statement is based on the sixth aphorism of Pseudo-Ptolemy's Centiloquium: "VI. The election either of day or hour shall then advantage when it is constituted from the nativity; otherwise, though the election be well made, it will not profit" (Centiloquium Ptolomei, 1676, p. 316). The "real" Ptolemy, however, in Tetrabiblos, gives instructions for making "derived" or "extracted" horoscopes for the father, mother, or brothers by considering the horoscopic place of the relative as an ascendant and then examining "the remaining topics as though it were a nativity of the parents themselves" or "by taking the planet which gives brethren as the horoscope and dealing with the rest as in a nativity." See Tetrabiblos, 1980, III: 4, 249 and III: 5, 255.
${ }^{[10]}$ 6: There are two methods for the elections. Corresponds to Mivharim I, $\S 1.4$. See note there.
${ }^{[1]}$ 1: Malefic and benefic planets. This is how Ibn Ezra defines the malefic
 מזיקים, והם שבתאי ומאדים והאחד גדול מחברו, וככה שנים מטיבים, והם צדק ונגה, והאחד גדול מחברו, ושני מאורות, וכוכב ממוסך, פעם טוב ופעם רע, והוא " Saturn and Mars (the former is bigger than the latter), as well as two benefic 〈planets〉, Jupiter and Venus (the former is bigger than the latter), two luminaries, and a mixed planet, sometimes benefic and sometimes malefic, namely, Mercury" ( $\$ 5.8: 2$, pp. 232-233). Claudius Ptolemy, in his own account, also includes the two luminaries: "The ancients accepted two of the planets, Jupiter and Venus, together with the moon, as beneficent because of their tempered nature and because they abound in the hot and the moist, and Saturn and Mars as producing effects of the opposite nature, one because of his excessive cold and the other for his excessive dryness; the sun and Mercury, however, they thought to have both powers, because they have a common nature, and to join
their influences with those of the other planets，with whichever of them they are associated＂（Tetrabiblos，1980，I：5，p．39）．
${ }^{[2]}$ 3：Unfortunate $\langle$ horoscopic〉 place．This refers to the 8th，6th，and 12th horoscopic places．This is how Sefer ha－Moladot，a treatise by Ibn Ezra on the doctrine of nativities，defines the unfortunate，together with the fortunate and intermediate horoscopic places in the context of an ＂המזלות הטובים בתחלת כל דבר：：application of the doctrine of elections הבית הראשון，והשמר שלא יהיה למעלה מהארץ יותר מחמש מעלות，כי אז יהיה בכח השנים העשר，ואחריו הבית הצשירי，ואחריו עשתי עשר，ואחריו הבית החמישי．רק השני והשביעי הם אמצעיים，וככה התשיעי，גם השלישי．רק השמיני，והששי，והשנים העשר，הם רעים．ויש לך לדעת המבחר שיבקש הנולד，כי אם הוא רוצה לשתות רפואה，העלה לו מזלו הצומח，ואם להוסיף ממון，הבית השני，ואם ללכת אל אדם גדול，בחר לו הבית העשירי．ואם היה באחת אלה הבתים הטובים אחד מהכוכבים ＂The＂＝הטובים，ויכלת להעלות לו המעלה שהיה שם הכוכב，אז יהיה לו טוב מאד．＂ fortunate places for the beginning of everything：the first place，（but be careful not to put more than $5^{\circ}$ above the Earth，because otherwise it will under the power of the twelfth $\langle$ place $\rangle$ ）next the tenth $\langle$ place $\rangle$ ，next the eleventh $\langle$ place $\rangle$ ，and next the fifth $\langle$ place $\rangle$ ．The second and seventh places are intermediate，and the ninth and third 〈places〉，too，but the eighth， sixth and twelfth $\langle$ places $\rangle$ are unfortunate．You should know what the native seeks in the election，for if he wishes to take a medicine，put the ascendant sign of his 〈natal horoscope〉 as the ascendant 〈of the electional horoscope〉，if to make more money，put the second＜place of the natal horoscope as the ascendant of the electional horoscope $\rangle$ ，if to go to an important person，choose for him the tenth（place of the natal horo－ scope as the ascendant of the electional horoscope $\rangle$ ．If in one of the fortunate places is one of the benefic planets，it is very auspicious for him ［the native］if you can put the degree where the 〈benefic〉 planet is $\langle$ in the natal horoscope〉 as the ascendant degree（of the electional horoscope）＂ （Moladot，MS BNF 1056，f．61a）．
${ }^{[3]}$ 3：Its［the malefic planet＇s］ray．See note on Mivharim I，\＄3．2．
${ }^{[4]}$ 1－3：The first $\langle$ method $\rangle$ ．．．［the degree of the ray］behind．Corre－ sponds closely to Mivharim I，$\$ 2.1-3$ and bears similarities to the brief initial statement of the fourth part of Epitome totius astrologiae：＂Elec－ tio duobus modo sit，uno cum scitur nativitas，alio cum nescitur．Cum sciveris nativitatem，ne eligas pro ascendente signum in quo tempore nativitatis fuit planeta infortuna＂（Epitome，1548，Lib．IV，cap．ii，sig．R3 ${ }^{\text {r }}$ ）．

Ibn Ezra does not specify a source here, but was in all likelihood inspired by the sixth aphorism of Pseudo-Ptolemy's Centiloquium (quoted in note on $\S_{1: 5}$, above). He possibly also drew on recent Arabic works on elections, where the injunction or warning not to make an election without knowing the querent's date of birth (in order to derive the electional horoscope from the natal horoscope) is commonplace. Ibn Ezra could have drawn on Sahl Ibn Bishr al-Yahūdī's De electionibus (where we also find references to the second method mentioned by Ibn Ezra, see below, $\S 5: 1-2$ and note), whose opening sentence reads as follows: "All are agreed that elections are weak, except [those] for kings. For these people (even should their elections be weakened) have a root-that is, their nativities-which strengthen every weak planet in the course. Indeed you should not elect anything for the low-class and for merchants and for those who follow [in social status], unless [it is] more than [that]: their nativities, and the revolutions of those years, and on the nativities of their children" (On Elections, 2008, $\S 1$, p. 187). For Sahl Ibn Bishr al-Yahūdī, see below, note on $\$ 6$ :2 Another source could have been 'Alī ibn abī-l-Rijāl's Kitāb al-Bāri: "Adhortor te ne facias electionem ei cuius nati vitatem ignoras, sed eius cuius nativitatem ac revolutionem anni cognoveris" (De iudiciis astrorum, 1551, VII: proemium authoris, p. 297).
${ }^{[5]}$ 4: Suppose that the tenth ... Saturn's ray. Corresponds to Mivharim I, $\$ 3.1-3$, where an analogous illustration is offered. See note there. The illustration shows how the first method (which assumes that the astrologer knows the client's date of birth) works and highlights two points: (a) Because the election is meant to find a proper time to go to the ruler (which is indicated by the tenth place), the ascendant of the electional horoscope is deliberately chosen to be identical to the cusp of the tenth place of the natal horoscope (Taurus $17^{\circ}$ ). (b) A malefic planet (Saturn) is supposed to be in the cusp of the tenth place of the natal horoscope (Taurus $17^{\circ}$ ) and therefore also in the ascendant of the electional horoscope. To avoid this problematic situation, Ibn Ezra utilizes the doctrine of the planets' "rays" or "lights" (see note on Mivharim I, $\$ 3.2$ ): because Saturn's ray covers $9^{\circ}$ ahead or behind the planet, Ibn Ezra solves the problem by stating that the ascendant of the electional horoscope should be more than Taurus $17^{\circ}+9^{\circ}$ or less than Taurus $17^{\circ}-9^{\circ}$. An analogous description of the method, and a similar illustration thereof (which also solves a similar problem originated by the "ray" of a malefic planet), is found in the introduction to the fourth part of Epitome totius
astrologiae：＂Cum sciveris nativitatem ne eligas pro ascendente signum in quo tempore nativitatis fuit planeta infortuna．Quod si bonitas signi cogit ipsum eligere，quod eo melius non inveniatur，vel si sit ibi planeta infortuna，minus quindecim gradibus addas，gradus lucis ipsius planetae， et ubi domus sit exordium ipsos gradus lucis planetae infortunae fugias＂ （Epitome，1548，Lib．IV，sig．R3 ${ }^{\text {r }}$ ）．
$\$ 3$
${ }^{[1]}$ 1：So if the native.. or eleventh place．Corresponds to Mivharim I， $\$ 2.2$ and Epitome totius astrologiae：＂Electurus horam eundi ad regem， facias ascendens de domo decima in nativitate，\＆melius si domus ipsa sit fortunata，\＆eius dominus aspiciat dominum ascendentis amicitiae aspectus，vel est is coniunctus．Si autem causa mercandi electionem quaeris，fat ascendens domum undecimam，pro uxore autem ducenda septimam，pro medela sumenda ascendens，vel quintum，vel undecimum signum nativitatis＂（Epitome，1548，Lib．IV，cap．ii，sig．R3 ${ }^{\mathrm{r}}$ ）．
${ }^{[2]}$ 2：If there is a malefic ．．．twelfth place．Corresponds to Mivharim I， $\$ 2.1$（see note there）and Epitome totius astrologiae：＂In medela autem sumenda，cave ne sit ascendens sextum，octavum vel duodecimum sig－ num，si fuerit in nativitate planeta infortunatus in eis＂（Epitome，1548， Lib．IV，cap．ii，sig．R $3^{r}$ ）．
${ }^{[3]}$ 3：The fourth place ．．．planet is there．This is what Ibn Ezra writes
 דבר；על כן，אם היה שם כוכב טוב ואיננו שב לאחור ולא נשרף ולא בבית קלונו או ＂This house signifies the end of any undertaking；therefore，if a benefic planet is there，and if it is not retrograde，or burnt，or in the house of its dejection，or in the house of its detriment，then the native will have a good end＂（Moladot，MS BNF 1056， f． 53 b ）．Cf．Mivharim I，$\$ 8: 3$ ：（＂$\langle$ The Moon should not be put〉 in the fourth place，unless it［the Moon］is with benefic planets＂）．
${ }^{[1]}$ 1：Its ruler，meaning 〈the planet〉 that rules over the five places of life．For the five places of live，see She＇elot II，$\S 1.1: 1$ and note．For the
selection of the＂ruler of the nativity＂from the＂five places of life，＂see Mivharim I，§4．1 and note．
${ }^{[2]}$ 1－2：Ptolemy said ．．．natural constitution．Corresponds closely to Mivharim I，$\S 4: 1-2$ ，where Ibn Ezra ascribes the same procedure to an Indian scientist and uses a different terminology to designate the lord of the nativity（שליט על המולד）．The quotation from Ptolemy has two parts．（a）The first，where Ptolemy highlights and discusses the neces－ sity of finding the ruler of the natal horoscope，is based on Tetrabib－ los，1980，III：2，pp．231－235：＂Likewise having ascertained the degree accurately ．．．we must see what stars rule it at the time of the birth．In general the mode of domination is considered as falling under these five forms ．．．．＂Notice，however，that Ptolemy in Tetrabiblos does not deal with the doctrine of elections．（b）In the second part of the passage quoted from Ptolemy，which focuses on the case when the time of birth is not known and instructs the astrologer to find the ruler of the nativity on the basis of the physical makeup of the native，Ibn Ezra paraphrases apho－ risms 52 and 53 of Pseudo－Ptolemy＇s Centiloquium：＂LII：The lords of the genitures of men of tall stature are in their sublimities［i．e．，exalta－ tions］，and their horoscopes in the beginnings of signs：but the lords of their nativities who are of short stature，are found in their falls［i．e．， dejections，opposite the exaltations］．LIII：The lords of the genitures of lean men have no latitude，but of fat men they have：if the latitude be south the native will be nimble；if north，more sluggish＂（Centiloquium Ptolomei，1676，p．322）．The same idea，based again on aphorisms 52 and 53 of Pseudo－Ptolemy＇s Centiloquium，may be found in the first version of Sefer ha－Moladot，immediately after Ibn Ezra defines the five places of life

 הנולד רזה，ואם היה לו מרחב יהיה שמן，וכפי מרחבו כך תדין．ואם מרחבו דרומי ＂The nature of the ruler $\langle$ of the nativity〉 corresponds to the nature of the native＇s body．If the ruler＜of the nativity $\rangle$ is in the ecliptic the native will be lean，and if it［the ruler of the nativity］has latitude 〈with respect to the ecliptic〉 he will be fat， and pronounce your judgment according to its latitude．If its latitude is southern 〈with respect to the ecliptic〉 his movement will be light but if〈its latitude is〉 northern 〈his movement will be〉 heavy＂（Moladot，MS BNF 1056，f．48a）．
${ }^{[1]}$ 2: The general import and the details $\langle o f$ the natal horoscope $\rangle$, Hebrew הכלל והפרט. For this meaning, see Mivḥarim I, §1:1.
${ }^{\text {[2] } 3: ~ P l a n e t s, ~ H e b r e w ~ מ ש ר ת י ם . ~ T h i s ~ n e o l o g i s m, ~ w h i c h ~ I b n ~ E z r a ~ e m p l o y s ~}$ frequently all through his writings, in both scientific and nonscientific work, denotes the seven planets, and is translated as such throughout this volume. See Glossary, s.v. "planet"; Sela, 2003, pp. 129-130. Ibn Ezra found the word in Psalms 103:21, where he glossed it as referring to the seven planets: 'ברכו, צבאיו - הם צבא השמים העליונים, ומשרתיו הם השבע" "Bless, his hosts—these are the host of the higher heavens, and his servants are the seven that are in seven orbs") (comm. on Ps. 103:21, 1525). The message conveyed by the primary sense is that the seven planets are not self-sufficient astrological agents but work as servants of God to do his pleasure (Ps. 103:21).
${ }^{[3]}$ 3: Nature, Hebrew תולדת. This biblical neologism (Gen. 2:4 et passim) is defined by Ibn Ezra in the long comm. on Exodus 23:25 as "a power (koah.) that protects the body and which man receives from Heaven." The widespread use of toledet all through Ibn Ezra's writing contrasts sharply with the complete absence of teva', borrowed from its Arabic cognate tiva'a and widely used by Ibn Ezra's contemporaries, such as Abraham Bar Hiyya, Maimonides, Judah Ibn Tibbon, and Samuel Ibn Tibbon. A cursory analysis of its occurrences suggests that Ibn Ezra construed toledet as meaning principally the physical qualities of the planets and the zodiacal signs. See Glossary, s.v. "nature" and related phrases. In other parts of Ibn Ezra's work this neologism means nature and its diverse phenomena, such as the four elements and their qualities, the quintessence, weather, etc. For Ibn Ezra's motives and the uses and meanings he gave to toledet, see Sela, 2003, pp. 130-137.
${ }^{[4]}$ 1-3: The second method ... their nature. Corresponds closely to Mivharim I, $\$_{5: 1-2}$. See note there. Also in Epitome totius astrologiae we find the two methods, one alongside the other: "Electio duobus modo sit, uno cum scitur nativitas, alio cum nescitur. Cum sciveris nativitatem, ne eligas pro ascendente signum in quo tempore nativitatis fuit planeta infortuna ... Nesciens autem nativitatem, aspice planetam naturae rei futurae, quem directum in loco forti ponas in electione, \& etiam planetam quem suspicaris in eo habere vigorem, cuius causa eligis,
\& Luna \& dominum horae in loco bono" (Epitome, 1548, Lib. IV, cap. ii, sig. $3_{3}{ }^{r}-R 4^{v}$ ). For this methodology, Ibn Ezra could have drawn on Sahl Ibn Bishr al-Yahūdī’s De electionibus (where we also find references to the first method mentioned by Ibn Ezra; see above, $\$ 2: 1-3$ and note): "If you want that which is connected with lords, and princes, and great men, and those put over cities, and prominent people, and the masters of fights and wealth, then it is for you [to work] through the Sun; and what is connected to lofty people, then it is for you [to work] through Jupiter; and that of farmers and the lowest people, then it is for you [to work] through Saturn; and that of generals and the lords of fights, then it is for you [to work] through Mars; and what is connected to women, then it is for you [to work] through Venus; and that of buying, and selling, and exchanges, and the matters of writers and businessmen, then it is for you [to work] through Mercury. In the mixing with mistresses (of women) and an inquiry into what is connected to them, it is for you [to work] through the Moon" (On Elections, 2008, §21a-20c, p. 193). But Ibn Ezra could have used the seventh part of 'Alī ibn abī-l-Rijāl's Kitāb al-Bāri, which quotes verbatim the aforementioned passage from Sahl Ibn Bishr al-Yahūdī’s De electionibus (De iudiciis astrorum, 1551, VII: IV, pp. 303).
${ }^{[1]}$ Determine, Hebrew לתקן. For the astronomical concept of "correction," see note on Mivharim I, $\S$ 5.1.
${ }^{[2]}$ 1: The Moon, because ... lower world. The same idea, expressed in an identical wording, appears in Țe‘amim II: והלבנה היא האמצעית בין העולם' "The Moon is intermediate between the inferior and the superior world" ( $\$ 5.2: 8$, pp. 220-221). Corresponds also to Me'orot $\$ 1: 7$.
${ }^{[3]}$ 1: The Moon ... signifies anything initiated by man. The same idea occurs at Mishpeṭei ha-Mazzalot: הלבנה .. והיא תורה על כל דבר שיחל" " = "The Moon ... signifies anything initiated by man" (MS Schoenberg 57, f. 78). Corresponds also to Liber de Rationibus Tabularum: "De luna ... dominium habet in omnibus inchoandis, scilicet initiamentis rerum" (1947, p. 97).
${ }^{[4]}$ 2: These are the conditions of the Moon. This heads a section that in all likelihood draws on a section of Sahl Ibn Bishr al-Yahūdī's De
electionibus, which begins as follows: "In the beginning of works, beware of the impediments of the Moon, just as Dorotheus (and the rest of the sages) said—and there are ten ways" (On Elections, 2008, \$22a, p. 193). In the sequel of this section, Ibn Ezra refers to six conditions of the Moon; five of them correspond to five of the Moon's ten impediments listed by Sahl Ibn Bishr al-Yahūdī (see below $\$ 6: 3,7,13,14,19$ ). As it happens, Sahl Ibn Bishr al-Yahūdī presents the "impediments of the Moon" immediately after he expounds the methodology of finding a planet whose significations match the querent's request (see above, note on $\S 5: 1-3$ ). This is precisely how Ibn Ezra proceeds in Mivharim I and Mivḩarim II: he presents the conditions of the Moon immediately after he describes the second method, which consists of choosing a certain planet and determining its position, so that this planet's significations match the querent's request.

Sahl Ibn Bishr al-Yahūdī, a leading Jewish astrologer of the early ninth century (Fihrist, 1970, II, pp. 651-652), was well known in the Middle Ages and Early Modern period, mainly through the translations of five of his works into Latin, by John of Seville. Ibn Ezra was well acquainted with Sahl's original work in Arabic: in the third version of Sefer haMivharim (in the part extant in a Latin translation) he refers to his work on elections (Eleccionum, Erfurt, f. 41a); in the third version of Sefer he-She'elot (in the part extant in a Latin translation) he refers to his work on interrogations (Interrogacionum, Erfurt, f. 19b); in Sefer haMoladot Ibn Ezra repeatedly refers to "Sahl the Jew" and to his work on nativities (Moladot, MS BNF 1056, ff. 48am 51a, 56b); on one occasion disapprovingly to Sahl's Book on Nativities (Moladot, MS BNF 1056, f. 54a). Similar references to Sahl Ibn Bishr al-Yahūdī's work on nativities may be found in De nativitatibus, a Latin work on nativities ascribed to Ibn Ezra (Nativitatibus, 1484, sig. b2b, b8b).

But Ibn Ezra could have found the same information in later sources, such as the seventh part of 'Alī ibn abī-l-Rijāl's Kitāb al-Bāri, which includes a section entitled "De impedimentis Lunae" that is identical word for word to Sahl Ibn Bishr al-Yahūdī’s account of the impediments of the Moon (De iudiciis astrorum, 1551, VII: IV, pp. 303-304). In his turn, Sahl Ibn Bishr al-Yahūdī drew on a section of the fifth book of Dorotheus' Pentabiblos, which begins as follows: "He mentioned the condition of the Moon and its corruption in which a commencement is not to be made in an action or anything when you find this until the condition of the Moon and its lord is ameliorated" (Carmen astrologicum, 1976, V: 5, p. 264).
${ }^{[5]} 3$ ：It［the Moon］should not ．．．unfortunate complexion．Corresponds to Mivharim I，$\S 6.1$ and to Epitome totius astrologiae，which gives a summary account of the same issue：＂Semper in electione aspice locum Lunae，\＆cave ne sit in quovis loco，ubi planeta infortuna fuit in nativitate， vel in contrario vel quadrato＂（Epitome，1548，Lib．IV，cap．ii，sig．R3 ${ }^{\text {r}}$－ $\mathrm{R}^{\mathrm{v}}$ ）．Corresponds to the fourth of the ten＂impediments of the Moon＂ specified in Sahl Ibn Bishr al－Yahūdī＇s De Electionibus：＂The fourth，that she is joined to malefic，or in the light of their square aspect or the opposition＂（On Elections，2008，$\$ 22 \mathrm{c}$ ，p．194）．This is duplicated word for word in the seventh part of＇Alī ibn abī－l－Rijāl＇s Kitāb al－Bāri：＂Quartus quando est iuncta infortuniis corporaliter，vel de quarta vel oppositione＂ （De iudiciis astrorum，1551，VII：IV，pp．303）．In its turn，this corresponds to Dorotheus＇Pentabiblos：＂If the Moon is with a malefic or aspecting it $\ldots$ if it is thus，then in the action which he commences at that hour will occur difficulty and slowness＂（Carmen astrologicum，1976，V：5，p．264）．
${ }^{\text {［6］}}$ 4：The Moon returns，Hebrew שתשוב הבלנה．This is how the condition of＇returning＇is explained in Ibn Ezra’s Reshit Hokhmah：פוההשבה לטוב：דע＇כער כי ההשבה לטוב ככה היא שיתחבר כוכב עם כוכב שהוא תחת אור השמש או יביביט אליו； והנה הכוכב לא יוכל לקבל האור בעבור דלותו והו והנה ישיבנו．דרך אחרת שית שיתחבר עם כוכב חוזר אחורנית，והנה ישיב עליו מה שקבל．ויהיה ההשבה לטוב בשלשה דרכים．האחד שיהיה האוחז הכח ששב אליו מקבל את הנותן．והשני שיהיה הכוכב הקל ישר בהליכתו והכבד נשרף או תחת האור או חוזר אחורנית．והשלישי שי שיהיה הכוכב המשיב באחד הבתים הנופלים ויהיה הכוכב ששב האור אליו באחד היתדות ＂או הסמוכים．וההשבה לרע：הפך על ג׳ דרכים הנזכרים．＂＂Returning’ with amelioration：know that returning［i．e．，taking back］with amelioration occurs when a planet［A］conjoins another planet［B］that is under the ray of the Sun or aspects it［A］；in this case the planet［B］can not receive the ray $\langle$ of the Sun $\rangle$ because of its weakness and returns it［to A］．Another way is when $\langle$ a planet $[\mathrm{A}]\rangle$ conjoins with a retrograde planet $[\mathrm{B}]$ ，and in this case it［B］returns $\langle$ to［A］ A what it［B］has received．Returning with amelioration occurs in three ways．One of them is when the planet that holds the power returned to it［A］receives the giver 〈of power〉［B］． The second $\langle$ way $\rangle$ is when the quicker planet is direct in its motion and the slower 〈planet〉 is burnt or under the ray or retrograde．The third〈way〉 is when the planet that receives 〈the power〉 is in one of the cadent places and the planet that returns the light to it is in one of the cardines or the succedent places．＇Returning＇with corruption is the opposite of the three aforementioned ways＂（Reshit Hokhmah，BNF 1056，f．26b）． Ibn Ezra＇s rendering of the condition of＇returning＇in Reshit Hokhmah
is an almost verbatim translation of Abū Ma'shar's rendering of the same condition in Kitāb al-Madḥal. See Kitāb al-Madḥal, 1996, VII: 5, v, p. 301. Cf. Abbreviation, 1994, III: 35-42, pp. 47-49.
${ }^{[7]} 4$ : Gives its power. For the condition of "giving power," used throughout this volume, see note on She' elot I, §4:2.
${ }^{[8]}$ 4: The Moon returns ... malefic planet. Here Ibn Ezra indicates that the Moon, after having given its power to a benefic planet, conjoins or aspects a malefic planet and then takes back its power from the benefic planet and gives it to the malefic planet.
${ }^{[9]}$ 4: But if the election ... ascendant degree. This statement is expanded and explained in the seventh place, which deals with sending a king or military commander out to do battle. See Mivḥarim II, §7.2:1 and note.
${ }^{[10]} 5$ : If you need ... Aquarius as the rising sign. Corresponds to Mivha$\operatorname{rim} \mathrm{I}, 7.1$, where this statement is ascribed to Al-Andruzgar. Corresponds to Epitome totius astrologiae: "Necessitate vero cogente ... melius ut sit ascendens Leo, Sagittarius, vel Aquarius" (Epitome, 1548, Lib. IV, cap. ii, sig. R4 ${ }^{\mathrm{v}}$ ). Notice that in Mivharim I, $\S 7: 2-3$ (see note there) Ibn Ezra offers his own explanation of Al-Andruzgar's statement. For the trio of Leo, Sagittarius, and Aquarius as a distinct group of zodiacal signs, see note on Mivḥarim I, $\S 7: 1$. See also She'elot II, $\S 1.5: 2$ and Me'orot $\S 8: 4$.
${ }^{[11]}$ 5: Cadent place. This is a reference to the third, sixth, ninth, and twelfth places. See note on Mivharim I, §2:1 (s.v. "place").
${ }^{[12]} 5$ : if you can not do this ... come to pass. Corresponds to Mivharim I, $\S 6.2$ and Epitome totius astrologiae: "Necessitate vero cogente, facias ascendens in electione, ut sit Luna in domo lapsa" (Epitome, 1548, Lib. IV, cap. ii, sig. $\mathrm{R}^{\mathrm{v}}$ ).
${ }^{\text {[13] } 6: ~ O p p o s i t i o n ~ a n d ~ q u a r t i l e, ~ a l t h o u g h ~ i t ~ i s ~ l i g h t e r . ~ F o r ~ t h e ~ a s t r o l o g i c a l ~}$ aspects, see note on Mivharim I, §2:1.
${ }^{[14]} 7$ : Under the ray of the Sun. See note on $M e^{\prime}$ orot $\$ 14: 1-8$.
${ }^{[15]} 7$ : A planet that is above ... ascendant degree. This means that the planet that the Moon does not give it power should be above the
horizon at the time of casting the electional horoscope, when the ascendant degree rises in the eastern horizon.
${ }^{[16]}$ 7: Make sure ... ascendant degree. Corresponds to Mivharim I, $\$ 4.5$ :1 and She'elot I, $\$ 4.4: 2$. Also corresponds to the first "impediment of the Moon" specified in Sahl Ibn Bishr al-Yahūdī's De electionibus (On Elections, 2008, $\$ 22$ b, p. 194) and in the seventh part of 'Alī ibn abī-l-Rijāl's Kitāb al-Bāri (De iudiciis astrorum, 1551, VII: IV, pp. 303). Corresponds closely to Dorotheus' account in Pentabiblos of the Moon's "corruption": "If the Moon is under the Sun's rays [and] its light is destroyed and it is not seen, then it is corrupted but it is beneficial for one who desires theft or treachery or something which is kept secret against him, and for every hidden or secret action which its master does not wish to made public" (Carmen astrologicum, 1976, V: 5, p. 264).
${ }^{[17]}$ 11: Know that $\ldots$ by sea. This statement is enlarged and explained below: $\$ 3.2$ : 3; $\$ 9.1: 1-4$ (for a journey by sea); $\$ 9.2: 3$ (for a journey by land). See also Mivḥarim I, §3.4:5.
${ }^{[18]}$ 12: If the Moon is received by a malefic planet. The condition of "reception" is explained by Abū Ma'shar as follows: "'Reception' is when a planet (A) applies (i.e., it is in conjunction with or aspects) to a planet (B) from the house of the planet (B) to which it applies or from its (B's) exaltation, term, triplicity or decan: then it (B) received it (A). Or the receiver of the application (B) is in the house of the pushing planet (A) or its other shares which we have mentioned before, then it (B) received it (A). The strongest of these is the Lord of the house or of the exaltation. The Lord of the term or $\langle$ that of the $\rangle$ triplicity or decan are weak unless two or more of them are joined. One of them may receive the other also by aspect without application, although the reception by application is stronger" (Abbreviation, 1994, III: 52-54, pp. 51). For a similar definition, see Reshit Hokhmah, 1939, VII, lxi: 4-18. Notice that Ibn Ezra is in the habit of using this condition in a passive form (ואם הלבנה מקובלת מכוכב" " = "if the Moon is received by a malefic planet"): She'elot I, § 1.4:1; $\$ 10.3: 7$; She'elot II, $\S 1.3: 1 ;$ § 10.1:2; $\$ 12.1: 11$. For an exception to this rule, see Mivḥarim I, §7.4:1.
${ }^{[19]}$ 13: Make sure that the Moon is not moving slowly. Corresponds to the ninth among the ten "impediments of the Moon" specified in Sahl Ibn Bishr al-Yahūdī’s De electionibus(On Elections, 2008, §22f., p. 194) and
in the seventh part of＇Alī ibn abī－l－Rijāl＇s Kitāb al－Bāri（De iudiciis astro－ rum，1551，VII：IV，pp．303）．In its turn，this corresponds to Dorotheus＇ Pentabiblos：＂If the Moon is in its least motion，that is，if it is decreas－ ing in its counting and its motion in a day and a night is less than twelve degrees ．．．then in the action which he commences at that hour will occur difficulty and slowness＂（Carmen astrologicum，1976，V：5，p．264）．
${ }^{[20]}$ 14：According to the opinion ．．．Dragon or its Tail．Corresponds to the fifth among the ten＂impediments of the Moon＂specified in Sahl Ibn Bishr al－Yahūdī’s De electionibus（On Elections，2008，§22c，p．194） and in the seventh part of＇Alī ibn abīl－l－Rijāl＇s Kitāb al－Bāri（De iudiciis astrorum，1551，VII：IV，pp．303）．
${ }^{[21]}$ 14：But in my opinion the Tail is unfortunate，not the Head．Cf．




 אם היתה נקדרת．ומה שאמר חכם הודו，כי הראש טוב עם הטובים，הוא נכון．ושאר ＂As for what they said，namely，that a planet is afflicted when it is with the Head of the Dragon or with its Tail， this is the opinion of the Indians．But the truth is that $\langle$ when it is $\rangle$ with the Tail it is malefic，but when it is with the Head it is only benefic．As for what they said about 〈a planet＇s〉 being with the Head of the Dragon of the Moon or its Tail，they were wrong（that is also Ptolemy＇s opinion），for how could the intersection of the Moon＇s parecliptic with the parecliptic of a planet afflict the planet？That is nonsense．In like manner，the Head of the Dragon of the Moon is not detrimental to it［i．e．to the Moon］ unless it is in eclipse．As for what one Indian scientist said，namely，that the Head is benefic with the benefics，this is correct．The rest of the things〈mentioned in Reshit Hokhmah〉 are well known and do not require an explanation．＂This comments on Reshit Hokhmah，1939，V，lii：28－29－liii： 1－4，which quotes from Kitâb al－Madhal，1996，VII：6，v，p．307．See also Abbreviation，1994．IV：19－20，p．57；Al－Qabīṣī，2004，II：48，p．89；Kitāb al－Mawälīd，1971，149．It corresponds closely to TTe＇amim II，§ 5．9：1－5， pp．234－235．See note on p． 312.
${ }^{[22]}$ 15：A degree such that the equator ．．．malefic planet＇s degree．This refers to a degree $A$ on the path of the Moon，whose distance from one
of the equinoxes or of the solstices（degree C ）is the same as the distance between degree $C$ and degree $B$ ，which represents the position of a malefic planet．In other words，the pair of degrees A and B are equidistant from degree C．In this definition the equinoxes（Aries $0^{\circ}$ or Libra $0^{\circ}$ ）are designated＂the equator＂and the solstices（Cancer $0^{\circ}$ or Capricorn $0^{\circ}$ ） are＂the extreme north＂or＂the extreme south．＂Similar references to these pairs of degrees are made in Mivharim I，$\S 6: 1 ; \$ 2.1: 1$ ，She＇elot III， $\$ 6.2: 3$ ，Me＇orot $\$ 15: 1-2$ ，and notably in Me＇orot $\$ 35: 2$ ，where the reader is directed to Reshit Hokhmah for a definition．See note there．
${ }^{[23]} 15$ ：In a degree whose day is the night of the malefic planet＇s degree． Corresponds to Me＇orot $\$ 35: 2$ ．See note there．Here Ibn Ezra refers to pairs of degrees in the zodiac that are equidistant from Aries $0^{\circ}$ or Libra
 Commentary： for example 〈this occurs〉 when the Moon is at Sagittarius $3^{\circ}$ and the planet at Gemini $3^{\circ}$ ，for the day of the former is as 〈long as〉 the night of the latter＂（MS Kapaḥ 36，f．18ob）．Ibn Ezra offers a similar definition in Me’orot \＄35：2：＂או מעלה שידמו זמני שעתה ביום כזמני שעה האחרת בלילה＂ ＝＂the rising time by day of one of them is the same as the rising time by night of the other．＂This peculiar way of defining these pair of degrees derives in all likelihood from the use of the astrolabe for finding them： if，on the front of the astrolabe，one end of the rule（included to facilitate taking readings against the two edges of the astrolabe）is placed on some hour of the day／night of the unequal hour scale of the astrolabe，so that the other end of the rule points to the corresponding unequal hour of the night／day，then in the zodiac of the astrolabe the rule marks two degrees that are equidistant from Aries $0^{\circ}$ or Libra $0^{\circ}$ ．
${ }^{[24]}$ 15：In addition，in any election ．．．malefic planet＇s degree．Corre－ sponds to Mivharim I，$\S 6.1$ ．This statement，which is presented here as an additional condition of the Moon that should be avoided in elections， does not match any of the ten＂impediments of the Moon＂specified in Sahl Ibn Bishr al－Yahūdī＇s De electionibus or in the seventh part of＇Alī ibn abī－l－Rijāl＇s Kitāb al－Bāri，nor any point of Dorotheus＇account in Pentabiblos of the Moon＇s＂corruption．＂
${ }^{[25]}$ 16－18：If you wish ．．．except Capricorn．Corresponds to a part of a section in Sahl Ibn Bishr al－Yahūdī＇s De electionibus that deals with the significations of various categories of zodiacal signs（On Elections，2008，
$\$ \$ 12 \mathrm{a}-18, \mathrm{pp} .190-192)$. This section is duplicated word for word in the seventh part of 'Alī ibn abī-l-Rijāl's Kitāb al-Bāri (De iudiciis astrorum, 1551, VII: III, pp. 302-303).
${ }^{\text {[26] }}$ 19: Be careful not to place the Moon from Libra $9{ }^{\circ}$ to its end. Corresponds to the seventh among the ten impediments of the Moon specified in Sahl Ibn Bishr al-Yahūdī's De electionibus: "The seventh, that she is ... in the burnt path (which is the end of Libra and the beginning of Scorpio)-and this is the worst that there is of the impediments of the Moon" (On Elections, 2008, $\S 22 \mathrm{~d}$, p. 194). This is duplicated word for word in the seventh part of 'Alī ibn abī-l-Rijāl's Kitāb al-Bāri: "Septimus quando est ... via combusta (ut est finis Libre \& initium Scorpionis) \& hoc deterius est ex omnibus infortuniis Lunae" (De iudiciis astrorum, 1551, VII: IV, pp. 303). In its turn, this corresponds to Dorotheus' Pentabiblos (Carmen astrologicum, 1976, V: 5, pp. 264-265). The interval "from $9^{\circ}$ of Libra up to its end" coincides with the so-called "place of burning" (Arabic al-tariqah al-muḥtariqah, Latin via combusta). See note on Mivharim I, §3.4:4.

## § 1.1

${ }^{[1]}$ 1-2: If you want to take a medicine ... the planets. Corresponds closely to Mivharim I, $\$ 1.3: 1-4$. See notes there.

## $\$ 1.2$

${ }^{[1]}$ 1: Ptolemy said ... cause harm. Here Ibn Ezra draws on the 19th aphorism of Pseudo-Ptolemy's Centiloquium: "XIX. A purging medicine shall not operate so effectually when the Moon is conjoined with Jupiter" (Centiloquium Ptolomei, 1676, p. 316).
${ }^{[2]}$ 1: Ptolemy said ... more auspicious. Corresponds to Mivharim I, $\$ 1.5: 1$, where Ibn Ezra explains Jupiter's and Venus' harmful effect on purgation. As for the role of Jupiter and Venus vis-à-vis the Moon with regard to purgatives, Ibn Ezra seems to have had recourse to Al-Kindī, as reported by 'Alī ibn abī-l-Rijāl in Kitāb al-Bāri: "De ingestione medicinarum laxativarum ... Tamen opinio Alkindi, cum qua ego concordo, est ... ut removeantur infortunia similiter a Luna primo \& ab ascendente
\& ab angulis, \& applicatio Lunae set ad Venerem, nam Venus in hoc melior est \& magis profectuosa quam Iuppiter, \& significat maiorem laxationem, \& quod laetabitur ille qui bibit: quia Iuppiter fortificat spiritum \& prohibet nimiam laxationem" (De iudiciis astrorum, 1551, VII: XLVII, p. 316). Corresponds also to Epitome totius astrologiae (Epitome, 1548, Lib. IV, cap. ii, sig. R4 ${ }^{\text {r }}$; quoted in note on Mivharim I, $\$ 1.5: 1)$.
${ }^{[3]}$ 2: The aspect is sextile or trine. For the astrological aspects, see note on Mivḥarim I, §2:1.
${ }^{[4]}$ 3: The Moon does not give ... vomit up the potion. Corresponds closely to Me'orot $\$ 24: 9$ and Mivharim I, $\S 1.3: 4$. For the condition of giving power, see note on She'elot I, $\$ 4: 2$.
${ }^{[5]} 3$-4: Make sure ... about this. Corresponds to Epitome totius astrologiae: "Et aspice ne det Luna vim planete retrogrado, vel supra terram existenti" (Epitome, 1548, Lib. IV, cap. ii, sig. R4 ${ }^{\mathrm{r}}$ ).

## § 1.3

${ }^{[1]} 1$ : Ya'qub al-Kindī. See note on She'elot $\mathrm{I}, ~ § 7: 1$.
${ }^{[2]}$ 1: Fiery signs ... earthy signs ... watery signs ... airy signs. This wellknown quadripartite division of the zodiacal signs-fiery signs: Aries, Leo, Sagittarius; earthy signs: Taurus, Virgo, Capricorn; airy signs: Gemini, Libra, Aquarius; watery signs: Cancer, Scorpio, Pisces-is mentioned with similar designations in all of Ibn Ezra's introductions to astrology as well as in other parts of his astrological corpus. For their special designation, see note on Mivharim I, §11.2:5, s.v. "triplicity."
${ }^{[3]}$ 1: Ya‘qub al-Kindī said ... airy signs. Corresponds closely to Mivharim
 $\mathrm{R}^{\mathrm{v}}$ ), and 'Alī ibn abī-l-Rijāl's Kitāb al-Bāri (De iudiciis astrorum, 1551, VII: vii, p. 305). See note on Mivharim I, §1.7:1.
${ }^{[4]}$ 2: $\langle$ The Moon in〉 trine ... any aspect. Corresponds closely to Mivḥa$\operatorname{rim} \mathrm{I}, \$ 1.6: 2$ and Epitome totius astrologiae: "De minutione sanguinis ... fac ut in aspectu trino vel sextili Martis fit. Verum ne fit coniuncta ei
quavis praedictarum coniuncione, nec in aspectu eiusdem contrario vel quadrato. Simile est iudicium de Saturno" (Epitome, 1548, Lib. IV, cap. ii, sig. $\mathrm{R}^{\mathrm{v}}$ ).
${ }^{[5]}$ 3: [Gemini] is the sign of the arms and the hands. This is a reference to the theory of "melothesia," which distributes the parts of the body among the zodiacal signs. See note on Mivharim I, §1.8:1.
${ }^{[6]}$ 3: All the Ancients ... the hands. Corresponds closely to Mivḥarim I, $\$ 1.6: 1$ and Epitome totius astrologiae: "De minutione sanguinis. Aspice ne sit Luna in Geminis" (Epitome, 1548, Lib. IV, cap. ii, sig. R3 ${ }^{\text {v }}$ ). Cf. 'Alī ibn abī-l-Rijāl's Kitāb al-Bāri: "Etiam vide in minutione per venam ne sit Luna in ascendente \& ascendens sint Gemini" (De iudiciis astrorum, 1551, VII: VII, p. 305).

## § 1.4

${ }^{[1]}$ 1-2: Aries ... corresponds to the head ... Cancer ... signifies the chest. This is a reference to the doctrine of "melothesia," which distributes the parts of the body among the zodiacal signs. See note on Mivharim I, § 1.8:1.
${ }^{[2]}$ 1-3: Ptolemy said ... by experience. Corresponds closely to Mivharim I, $\S 1.8: 1-3$. This is a reference to the 2oth aphorism of Pseudo-Ptolemy's Centiloquium: "XX. Draw not blood from that member, whilst the Moon is in a sign representing the same" (Centiloquium Ptolomei, 1676, p. 317). See notes on Mivharim I, $\S 1.8: 1-3$. The author of Epitome totius astrologiae has recourse to the same quotation and ascribes it to Ptolemy (Epitome, 1548, Lib. IV, cap. ii, sig. R3'v); so does 'Alī ibn abī-l-Rijāl's Kitāb alBāri, but without mentioning Ptolemy (De iudiciis astrorum, 1551, VII: VI, p. 305). See notes on Mivḥarim I, $\S 1.8: 1-3$.

## § 1.6

${ }^{[1]}$ 1-2: Ptolemy said ... retrograde planet. Corresponds to Mivḥarim I, $\$ 1.5: 3$ (see note there), where neither Ptolemy nor Ibn Ezra is mentioned. Cf. the 21st aphorism of Pseudo-Ptolemy's Centiloquium: "XXI. When the Moon is in Scorpio or Pisces, and the lord of the ascendant in aspect
to a planet under the earth, it's good to give purging medicines: but if the lord of the ascendant apply to a planet above the earth, it's probable the sick shall vomit up his potion" (Centiloquium Ptolomei, 1676, pp. 317318).
${ }^{[2]} 4$ : I have mentioned ... beneficial to life. Other medieval works on elections, too, deal with matters related to astrological medicine in the framework of the first place or sign. See, i.e., 'Alī ibn abī-l-Rijāl's Kitāb al-Bāri (De iudiciis astrorum, 1551, VII: vii [De phlebotomia \& scarificatione], p. 305). Here Ibn Ezra expounds the rationale behind this approach: the first horoscopic place signifies the native's life and body.

## $\$ 2.1$

${ }^{[1]}$ 1: The Moon in the smaller domain of the zodiac. For the division of the zodiac into a "smaller domain," assigned to the Moon, and a "larger domain," assigned to the Sun, see note on Mivharim $\mathrm{I}, \$ 2.1: 1$.
${ }^{[2]}$ 1: If you want $\ldots$. benefic planets. Corresponds to Mivharim I, § 2.1:12, where a similar statement is ascribed to Ptolemy. Also corresponds to She'elot $\mathrm{I}, \$ 2.4: 2$, and She'elot $\mathrm{II}, \$ 2.2: 2$, where such a statement is attributed to an unknown astrologer called Sa'id. In T. Téamim I (\$2.5:16, pp. 44-45) a similar statement is attributed to the "scholars who rely on experience," in the same place where Ibn Ezra explains the division of the zodiac into a "smaller domain," assigned to the Moon, and a "larger domain," assigned to the Sun. See note on Mivharim I, §2.1:1. Corresponds also to Epitome totius astrologiae, where, curiously enough, the Moon's smaller domain of the circle is interchanged with the Sun's larger domain of the circle: "De emptione causa lucri. Volens causa durandi aliquid emere, emas cum Luna fuerit in parte magna circuli, quae dicitur Solis, \& est a capite Cancri ad finem Sagittarii, \& melius si sit velox, nec sit iuncta planetae infortunae, vel eius aspectui, \& melius ea existente in coniunctione, vel aspectu fortunae planetae, vel in aspecto Solis trino vel sextili" (Epitome, 1548, Lib. IV, cap. iv, sig. R4 ${ }^{\text {r }}$ ).

## $\$ 2.2$

${ }^{[1]}$ 1: Jupiter signifies money. This connection is commonplace in Ibn Ezra's astrological writings. In Țéamim I this property is linked with
 הזכרנו,על כן אמרו אנשים כי בעבור היות בתי כוכב חמה לנכח בתי צדק שיורה על "Because Jupiter indicates money, as we have mentioned, some people said that, given that the houses of Mercury are in opposition to the houses of Jupiter, which indicates money, most scholars do not have money" (\$9.1:5, pp. 92-93). See also Țe‘amim I, §4.1:5, pp. 70-71; Țe‘amim II, §7.2:29, pp. 248-249; Mishpetei ha-Mazzalot, MS Schoenberg 57, f. 81; Mivharim I, § 2.2:1; She'elot II, $\$ 10.5$ et passim.
${ }^{[2]}$ 3: Lot of the Moon. The same lot is referred to as the lot of Fortune in Mivharim I, $\$ 2.2: 3$. For this lot and the connection between its two names, see note on She' elot II, $\$ 10: 2$.
${ }^{[3]}$ 1-3: Because Jupiter ... auspicious of all. Corresponds to Mivharim I, $\$ 2.2: 1-3$. See note there.

## $\$ 2.3$

${ }^{[1]}$ 1-2: If you want to lend money ... eighth place. Cf. Mivharim I, § 2.3:1; She'elot I, § 2.1:1-12; \$ 2.2:1-4; She'elot II, § 2.3:1-5.
$\$ 3.1$
${ }^{[1]} 1-4$ : If you wish to choose ... less serious. Corresponds to Mivharim I, §1.1:3. See note there. Cf. 'Alī ibn abī-l-Rijāl's Kitāb al-Bāri, seventh part (devoted to elections), the chapter under the rubric: "De initio docendi scientias legis" (De iudiciis astrorum, 1551, VII: xliii, p. 308). For the connection between jurisprudence, the third place, and Jupiter, see Reshit Hokhmah, 1939, III, xli: 21; 'Olam II, §45:4, pp. 188-189. Cf. Mivharim I, §9.2:3.
${ }^{[1]}$ 1-2: $\langle$ To choose a time〉 to set off... by land. Corresponds to Mivharim I, $\$ 3.3: 1$, where a similar statement is ascribed to Māshā’allāh. For similar comparisons between Mars and Saturn regarding a journey by land or by sea, see She'elot I, \$9.3:2 and She'elot II, $\$ 9.1: 4$, where the statements are ascribed to Dorotheus and Ptolemy, respectively, with respect to the ninth place.
${ }^{[2]}$ 3: Lord of the hour. See note on Mivharim $I$, $\$_{3.1: 7 .}$.
${ }^{[3]}$ 3: Be careful, because ... lord of the hour. Corresponds to Mivharim I, $\$$ 3.2:7. The same idea recurs, below, at $\$ 9.1: 1$. Corresponds to Epitome totius astrologiae: "In itinere maris cave in primis, ne sit Saturnus dominus horae" (Epitome, 1548, Lib. IV, cap. xv, sig. S2 ${ }^{\text {v }}$ ).
${ }^{[4]} 4$ : I will expand on that in the ninth place. See $\$ 9.1: 1-4$ et passim.

## $\$ 4.1$

${ }^{[1]}$ 1: Anyone who wishes ... respect to the ascendant degree. Corresponds to Mivharim I, $\S 4.4: 1$ and to She'elot II, $\$ 4.2: 5$, where a similar approach is presented as Ibn Ezra's opinion.
${ }^{[2]}$ 4: Know that Saturn ... oriental of the Sun. Corresponds to She'elot II, §4.2:3. Cf. Mivharim I, §4.4:2-3; She'elot I, §4.2:1-2.

## $\$ 4.2$

${ }^{[1]} 1$ Know that the fourth place ... mean cities. Corresponds closely to She'elot I, §4.3:1. See note there.
${ }^{\text {[2] }} 8$ : The sign of the city. For a definition of the term, see She' elot $\mathrm{I}, \$ 7.5: 1$ and note.
${ }^{[1]}$ 1: Ptolemy said ... its perigee. I have not found this in Pseudo-Ptolemy's Centiloquium, nor in Ptolemy's Tetrabiblos. But see Mivharim I, $\$ 2.5: 4-5$, where good or bad fortune is made to depend on whether a planet is ascending or descending in its great circle.
${ }^{[2]}$ 2: Eccentric circle, Hebrew גלגל המוצק, lit. circle of the center. For this meaning, see Reshit Hokhmah, where the eccentric circle is designated גלגל המוצק שאינו במוצק הארץ, lit. "the circle of the center which does not coincide with the center of the Earth" (1939, I, viii: 6-7); see also גלגל המוצק שמוצקו רחוק מלקות ממוצק הארץ, lit. "the circle of the center whose center is away from the center of the Earth" (MS Schoenberg 57, f. 76). For the astronomical meaning of the eccentric circle and its place in the Ptolemaic system, see note on Mivharim I, $\S 2.5: 4$, s.v. "The great circle, which is called carrying circle." To denote the concept of eccentric circle, Ibn Ezra uses the neologism מוצק muṣaq, lit. solid, stable, or strong, but here with the meaning center. Ibn Ezra used this strange coinage throughout his work and deliberately ignored the standard merkaz, a borrowing from the Arabic markaz that was freely employed by his contemporaries and is still used in modern Hebrew. In his commentaries on Job 38:16 and 38, Ibn Ezra glosses muṣaq as meaning the center of a circle; in his commentary on Job 37:10 he asserts that it refers to the earth, which stands as a point in the center of the orbs. See Sela, 2003, pp. 113-116.
${ }^{[3]}$ 2: Epicycle, Heb הגלגל הקטן, lit. the small circle. In the Ptolemaic system of astronomy, the epicycle (Greek: on the circle) was a geometric model used to explain the variable velocity and direction of the apparent motion of the planets. In particular, the epicycle explained retrograde motion and the changes in the planets' apparent distances from Earth. In this system, the planets are assumed to move in a small circle, called an epicycle, which in turn moves along a larger circle called a deferent. For "epicycle" Ibn Ezra writes הגלגל הקטן, lit. the small circle, in contrast to גלגל גדול, lit. great circle, an expression that in Ibn Ezra's special vocabulary means deferent. See note on Mivharim I, $\$ 2.5: 4$, s.v. "The great circle, which is called carrying circle."
${ }^{[4]}$ 3: Exaltation, Hebrew כבוד , lit. honor, dignity. A neologism by Ibn Ezra, as a calque from the Arabic sharaf, used to denote the concept of
exaltation, an essential dignity of the planets. This is, for example, how Ibn Ezra, in Țéamim II, explains why Aries, Libra, and Taurus are the houses of exaltation of the Sun, Saturn, and the Moon, respectively: בתי" הכבוד. אמר תלמי כי כל מזל טלה הוא כבוד השמש, והטעם שיראה שם כחו ככח מלך,


 הראותו, ואם התחברה עם השמש בטלה אז תחל להראות בהיותה במזל שור, וכל המזל "Houses of exaltation. Ptolemy said that the whole sign of Aries is the exaltation of the Sun, meaning that there its power resembles the power of a king, because the world is renewed then. The opposite occurs when the Sun enters the sign of Libra, for then the leaves begin to wither and men begin to sicken and the soul is depressed; because Saturn's nature is the opposite of the Sun's nature, Saturn's exaltation is in Libra and its dejection in Aries. The power of the Moon always increases from the beginning of the night of its first visibility, and if it is in conjunction with the Sun in Aries then it [i.e. the Moon] begins to be visible when it is in the sign of Taurus, and the whole sign is its house of exaltation" (\$2.7:1-14, pp. 199-200). See also TTe'amim I, § 2.16:1-14, pp. 54-57, Kitāb al-Madhal, 1996, V: 5-7, v, pp. 187-196; Abbreviation, 1994, pp. 15-23; Kitāb al-Tafhīm, 1934, §443, p. 258; Al-Qabīṣī, 2004, I: 15, p. 25.
${ }^{[5]}$ 3: Ptolemy also said ... detrimental than Mars. Cf. the 76th aphorism of Pseudo-Ptolemy's Centiloquium: "LXXVI: When Saturn possesseth the tenth house, viz, is positioned therein, and the temporal light of the time is in his opposition, and an earthly sign is in the fourth, he who is then born shall perish by the ruin or fall of houses or buildings: If the sign of the fourth be a watery sign, he will die in the water or by water, $v i z$, he will be drowned: If the sign of the fourth be humane, he will die by the hands of man; viz, he will either be hanged or strangled, evc., but if a benevolent planet is posited in the eighth, he will be near to death by such accidents or casualties as aforesaid, but shall evade and not die thereby" (Centiloquium Ptolomei, 1676, p. 325).
§ 5.1
${ }^{[1]}$ 1: The fifth place. If you wish to beget sons. For the connection between the fifth place and sons, see note on Mivharim I, $\S 5.1: 1$.
${ }^{[2]}$ 1：Masculine signs．In the second version of Reshit Hokhmah Ibn Ezra names the masculine and feminine signs，together with the diurnal and
 שור，סרטן，בתולה，עקרב，גדי，דגים；מזלות היום הם הזכרים，מזלות הלילה הם ＂＂Masculine：Aries，Gemini，Leo，Libra，Sagittarius，Aquarius； feminine：Taurus，Cancer，Virgo，Scorpio，Capricorn，Pisces；the diurnal signs are the masculine $\langle$ signs $\rangle$ ，the nocturnal sign are the feminine〈signs〉＂（Reshit Hokhmah II，OBL 707，f．116b）．See also Tetrabiblos，1980， I：12，pp．69－71；Kitāb al－Tafhīm，1934，§ 348，p．211；Al－Qabị̣̄ī，2004，I： 16，p． 25.
${ }^{[3]}$ 1：If you wish to beget sons ．．．aspect with it．Corresponds to：She＇elot I，$\$ 5.2: 1$ ；Epitome totius astrologiae：＂Pro conceptione filii masculi ．．．\＆ melius ut sit ascendens masculinum，\＆eius dominus＂（Epitome，1548， Lib．IV，cap．viii，sig． $\mathrm{Si}^{1}$ ）；Sahl Ibn Bishr al－Yahūdī’s De electionibus：＂If you wished to elect the hour of conjoining［sexually］，namely so that you would generate a male child，let the Ascendant and its lord，and the Moon and the Lord of the domicile of children，be in masculine signs＂ （On Elections，2008，$\S 56$ ，p．202）．Cf．She＇elot II，$\S 5.1: 1$ ．
${ }^{[4]}$ 2：Masculine planet．This is how Ibn Ezra lists the masculine and fem－ inine planets in Reshit Hokhmah，side by side with the diurnal and noc－
 נקבות，ויש מהם כוכבי יום וכוכבי לילה，ויש טובים ויש רעים．והם שוּ שני מאורות，

 מהטובים זכר מכוכבי היום והוא צדק，והשני נקבה מכוכבי הלילה והוא נוגה．ואחד הרעים זכר מכוכבי היום והוא שבתאי，והשני נקבה ומכוכבי הלילה וכו וכוא מאדים מכו מכו וכוכב חמה ממוסך，כי הוא מתהפך להיותו פעם זכר ופעם נקבה，פעם מכוכבי היום ופעם מכוכבי הלילה，פעם טוב ופעם רע，כפי תולדת הכוכב שיהיה עמו ＂Some of these seven 〈planets〉 are masculine and others are feminine，some of them are diurnal and others are noctur－ nal，some of them benefic and other malefic．There are two luminaries， two benefic and two malefic，and another that is mixed and mutable in keeping with every nature．So one of the luminaries，the Sun，is mas－ culine and its power is felt by day，and the other luminary，the Moon， is feminine and its power is felt by night．One of the benefics，Jupiter， is masculine and diurnal，and the other，Venus，is feminine and noc－ turnal．One of the malefics，Saturn，is masculine and diurnal，and the other，Mars，is feminine and nocturnal．Mercury is mixed，because it is
mutable, sometimes masculine sometimes feminine, sometimes diurnal sometimes nocturnal, sometimes benefic sometimes malefic, in keeping with the planet with which it is in conjunction or in aspect" (1939, I, vii: 24-viii: 2).
${ }^{[5]}$ 2: Do this when the lord ... ascendant degree. Corresponds to: Mivharim I, § 5.1:4, She'elot I, § 5.3:1-2; She'elot II, § $5.3: 1-4$, and Epitome totius astrologiae: "Pro conceptione filii masculi ... Sit dominus horae masculus" (Epitome, 1548, Lib. IV, cap. viii, sig. $\mathrm{S}^{1}$ ). Cf. She'elot I, $\$$ 5.3:4.
${ }^{[6]}{ }_{2}$ : A masculine quadrant with respect to the ascendant degree, as I have mentioned. This is not explained above, nor elsewhere in Mivharim II. In Reshit Hokhmah, Ibn Ezra defines the masculine and feminine quadrants with respect to the ascendant as follows: והגלגל יתחלק בכל" רגע מרגעי השצות על ארבעה חלקים. כי רביצית הגלגל ההווה מקו חצי השמים עד המעלה הצומחת הוא מזרחי וזכר ... והרביעית שהוא בין קו חצי השמים עד המעלה השוקעת הוא דרומי וחלש כנקבה ... והרביעית שהיא מהמעלה השוקעת עד קו התהום הוא מערבי בכח זכר ... והרביעית שהוא מקו התהום עד המעלה ". הצומחת הוא שמאלי כדמות נקבה = "At any minute of the hour the orb is divided into four parts. The quadrant that extends from the line of midheaven to the ascendant degree is oriental and masculine ... and the quadrant that extends from the line of midheaven to the setting degree is southern and weak as the feminine $\ldots$ and the quadrant that extends from the setting degree to the line of the lower midheaven is occidental and with masculine power ... and the quadrant that extends from the line of the lower midheaven to the ascendant degree is northern and similar to the feminine" (1939, III, xl: 5-17). See also Țe'amim II, § 5.4:14, pp. 228-229. She'elot I , $\S 5.3: 2-3$ offers an explanation of the quadrants with respect to the ascendant in contrast to the quadrants with respect to the Sun.
${ }^{[7]} 3$ : The astrologers say ... its heat. Ibn Ezra explains the changes in the Moon's four qualities according to its four phases in Mishpetcei haMazzalot: וכח הלבנה משתנה כפי ארבע תקופות החדש, כי מעת מחברת הלבנה ולן עם השמש במהלך המתוקן צד צ׳ מעלות כח הלבנה חם ולח, ומשם עד ק״פ מעלות חם ויבש, ומשם צד ר״צע מעלות, שיהיה מקום הלבנה רחוק ממקום השמש צ׳ מעלות The power of the Moon changes according to the four periods of the month: from the Moon's conjunction with the Sun in its corrected motion to $90^{\circ}$ the power of the Moon is hot and moist; from there to $180^{\circ}$ it is hot and
dry; from there to $270^{\circ}$ - when the Moon's elongation from the Sun is $90^{\circ}$ and the Moon is ahead of the Sun-this quadrant is cold and dry; and from there to the new moon [i.e., when the Moon is in conjunction with the Sun as seen from Earth] it is cold and moist" (MS Schoenberg 57, f. 76).
${ }^{[8]}$ 4: A masculine quadrant ... ascendant degree. Ibn Ezra explains these two types of masculine quadrants in She'elot $\mathrm{I}, \$ 5.3: 2$ and $\S 5.3: 2$, respectively.
${ }^{[9]}$ 4: It is auspicious ... masculine sign. Corresponds to Mivharim I, $\$ 5.1: 2$ and Epitome totius astrologiae: "Pro conceptione filii masculi. Sit Iupiter in quovis angulo, \& una quartarum, quae dicuntur dextrae vel sinistrae, vel sit Soli orientalis" (Epitome, 1548, Lib. IV, cap. viii, sig. S1 ${ }^{\mathrm{r}}$ ). Cf. She'elot I, § 5.2:2, § 5.3:1; She'elot II, § 5.1:2.

## $\$ 5.2$

${ }^{[1]}$ 1-2: If you wish to beget a daughter ... the ascendant. Corresponds to $\$ 5.1: 2$, above. See notes there. For feminine quadrants with respect to the Sun, and how they differ from feminine quadrants with respect to the Sun, see She'elot I, §5.3:2-3.
$\$ 5.3$
${ }^{[1]}$ 1: Someone who wants to make a feast ... fortunate position. Cf. Mivharim I, § 5.3:1-2.

## $\$ 5.4$

${ }^{[1]}$ 1: If $\langle$ you want $\rangle$ to go to a public bathhouse ... watery signs. Corresponds to Mivharim I, $\S 1.9: 1$, where the same statement is ascribed to Abū Ma'shar, and to 'Alī ibn abī-l-Rijāl's Kitāb al-Bāri: "Ego vero dico quod omnium melior electio ingresso balnei est, si sit Luna in signis aequeis" (De iudiciis astrorum, 1551, I: V, p. 304).
$\$ 6.1$
${ }^{[1]}$ 1: Someone who wants to buy $\ldots$ in Taurus. Cf. Mivharim I, $\S 6.2: 3$ and $\$ 6.3: 3$.
${ }^{[2]}$ 2: If the Moon is in Leo ... domineering. Corresponds to Mivharim I, $\S 6.1: 1$ (see note there) and Epitome totius astrologiae: "Pro emptione servi vel ancillae ... si fit in Leone immoderatus vorator \& arrogans erit" (Epitome, 1548, Lib. IV, cap. x, sig. S1 ${ }^{\text {r }}$ ).
${ }^{[3]} 4$ : If it is in Pisces ... 〈toward the master〉. Corresponds to Mivharim I, §6.2:1, where a similar statement is ascribed to Māshā’allāh, and She'elot I, §6.2:3. Cf. Dorotheus' Pentabiblos (Carmen astrologicum, 1976, V: 11, p. 270).
${ }^{[4]}$ 5: It is more auspicious... with its lord. Cf. Mivḥarim I, $\S 6.1: 2$ (see note there); She' elot I, §6.2:2.
${ }^{[5]} 7$ : Dorotheus, Hebrew דורוניוס. See note on She'elot I, § 2.1.
${ }^{[6]} 7$ : Dorotheus said ... die soon. No such statement can be found in the chapter on "the buying of slaves" in the fifth book of Dorotheus' Pentabiblos (Carmen astrologicum, 1976, V: 11, pp. 269-270).

$$
\$ 7.1
$$

${ }^{[1]}$ 3: Scorpio $\langle$ in the ascendant $\rangle$... neither burnt nor retrograde. Corresponds to: Mivharim I, §7.1:2-3; Mivharim III, §7.1:1; She'elot I, §7.3:3; She'elot II, §7.1:2; Epitome totius astrologiae: "Pro itinere ad bellum. Eligas signum cuius dominus est ex superioribus planetis, vel signum Cancri ..." (Epitome, 1548, Lib. IV, cap. xi, sig. S1 ${ }^{\text {v }}$ ); Sahl Ibn Bishr's De electionibus: "It is necessary that you should make the Ascendant one of the domiciles of the higher planets, of which the stronger is the domicile of Mars" (On Elections, 2008, §85, p. 209).
${ }^{[2]}$ 4: Put Mercury as the lord ... burnt or retrograde. This statement implements the rule stated in Mivharim I, §7.3:1: "If you can put the lord of the seventh place when it is burnt or retrograde, or in the second, sixth or twelfth place, this is auspicious."
${ }^{[3]}$ 4：If you put Pisces ．．．burnt or retrograde．Note that Pisces is one of Jupiter＇s houses and Venus＇exaltation，and that the seventh sign after Pisces，Virgo，is Mercury＇s house as well as the house of its exaltation． Corresponds to Mivharim III，$\$ 7.5: 4$ and Mivharim I，$\S 7.5: 4-5$ ．
${ }^{[4]}$ 5：Be careful that Cancer ．．．［Jupiter＇s exaltation］．This implements the rule stated in Mivḥarim $\mathrm{I}, \S 7.3: 3$ ：＂You should know that if an upper planet is in the house of a lower planet and holds lordship there－such as Saturn in Libra［i．e．，Libra is Saturn＇s exaltation and Mercury＇s house］or Jupiter in Cancer［Cancer is Jupiter＇s exaltation and the Moon＇s house］－ make one of these signs the ascendant sign．＂
${ }^{[5]}$ 5：House of its dejection，Hebrew בית קלונו，lit．house of its dis－ honor（Arab．hubūt；Lat．casus）．A calque invented by Ibn Ezra，because qalon is the antonym of kavod，whose literal sense is＂honor＂but which also denotes the astrological concept of exaltation．See above，note on Mivharim II，$\S 4.3: 3$ ．This is because a planet is said to be in its house of dejection if it is in the house opposite its exaltation．
${ }^{[6]}$ 5：But 〈it may be suitable to put Cancer as the ascendant〉 ．．．［Jupi－ ter＇s］dejection．Corresponds to Mivḥarim III，$\S 7.5: 2$ and Mivḥarim I， §7．5：6．
${ }^{[7]}$ 6：Long or short signs．Reference is here made to two sets of six signs each－the long signs from Cancer to Sagittarius，and the short signs from Capricorn to Gemini－which divide the zodiac according to their rising times．（The term＂rising times＂refers to how many degrees of the equator cross the horizon of a given locality simultaneously with the consecutive zodiacal signs．）This is how they are explained in TTe＇amim
 （מעלות，כל אחד מהם，והקצרים הפך זה，כמו שכתוב בספר הלוחות．＂＝＂Long signs．They are called this because each of these signs rises more than 30 degrees anywhere in the ecumene，and the short 〈signs〉 are just the opposite，as is written in the Book of the Tables＂（\＄2．3：5，pp．188－ 189）．For a similar definition，see Téamim I，$\$ 2.15: 1-2$ ，pp．54－55． But these definitions are not entirely correct，since the rising times of Capricorn and Gemini in the first climate are slightly more than $30^{\circ}$ ． A more precise definition is offered in Mishpeṭei ha－Mazzalot：מתחלת הבית העשירי בחלוק המצעדים עד תחלת הבית הרביעי זהו חצי הגלגל העולה， והחצי האחר משפטו תלוי בו ותשוב אליו．על כן המזל הארוך שמצדציו רבים
"יותר ממצעדי המישור, והפך הדבר למזל הקצר." = "The ascending half of the circle is from the cusp of the tenth place in the division by rising times to the cusp of the fourth place, and the rule is that the other half [the descending half of the circle] is 'obedient' to it [the ascending half of the circle] and returns to it. Therefore, a long sign 〈is one〉 whose rising times are more than the rising times at sphaera recta, and the opposite applies to the short sign" (MS Schoenberg 57, ff. 84-85). AlBīrūnī’s Kitāb al-Tafhīm offers a similar definition: "The zodiac is divided into two ... halves $\ldots$ ascending and descending. The latter are marked out by the solstices, the ascending half comprising the following signs: Capricorn, Aquarius, Pisces, Aries, Taurus, Gemini, and the descending half the nadirs of these. Signs of the ascending half are described as signs of short or crooked ascension, because their oblique ascension is shorter than that in the erect sphere, while those of the descending half are said to be signs of long or direct ascension, because their oblique ascension is longer than that in the erect sphere. The crooked signs are also called 'obedient' and this is due to concordance in course, because when you compare two signs on one parallel, the one belonging to the descending half comes first by the diurnal movement, and the one of the ascending half later; so the former commands the latter, which obeys the command and always follows" (1934, §378, p. 229). Like Al-Bīrūnī, Ibn Ezra sometimes designates these two sets of signs as long/short signs = מזלות ארוכים/קצרים (Mivḩarim II, §7.1:6; Me’orot \$16:4,5, § 23:3-4, \$25:1-3) and in other places as crooked/straight = מזלות מעוותים/ישרים (Mivharim II, $\$ 11.4: 4$; She'elot $\mathrm{I}, \$ 4.1: 5$ ). This is also found in other parts of Ibn Ezra's astrological corpus, and a Latin counterpart of it may be found in Liber de Rationibus Tabularum, a Latin work ascribed to Ibn Ezra: "He tabule quas composuimus utiles sunt ... ad cognoscendum ... recta signa et obliqua et longa et curta" (italics added) (1947, pp. 8485). The reason for this seeming redundancy is explained in Te'amim II: whereas one pair (long/short) refers to whether the corresponding signs rise in more or less than 30 equinoctial degrees, the other pair (crooked/straight) refers to whether the corresponding signs rise in more or less than two equinoctial hours (Téamim II, $\$ 2.3: 21$, pp. 190-191). See also Kitāb al-Madḥal, 1996, VI: 4, v, p. 243; Abbreviation, 1994, p. 27.
${ }^{[1]}$ 1-2: It is also auspicious ... signifies the enemy. Corresponds closely to Mivharim $\mathrm{I}, \S 7 \cdot 4: 1-2$, where a similar statement is ascribed to Māshā’allāh. The same statement is made above, $\S 6: 4$. Corresponds to Epitome totius astrologiae: "Eligasque horam, qua Luna sit coniuncta coniunctione vel aspecto bono, planetae fortunae, vel qui sit in angulo, \& ipse det vim planetae infortunae, vel in domo lapsa cadenti" (Epitome, 1548, Lib. IV, cap. xi, sig. $\mathrm{Si}^{\mathrm{v}}$ ).
${ }^{[2]}$ 5: It is also auspicious ... the ascendant. Corresponds to Mivḥarim I, § 7.4:4.
${ }^{[3]}$ 7: If you put Leo as the raising sign ... cadent place. Corresponds to Epitome totius astrologiae: "Semper bonus Leo ... nec malus planeta ipsum spectat ... vel si sit Saturnus retrogradus, vel in domo lapsa" (Epitome, 1548, Lib. IV, cap. xi, sig. S1 ${ }^{\mathrm{v}}$ ).

## $\$ 7.3$

${ }^{[1]}$ 1: The Ancients said ... be defeated. Corresponds to Epitome totius astrologiae: "Si planeta infortuna est in ascendente, ipse quaerens patietur. Si in septima adversarii" (Epitome, 1548, Lib. IV, cap. xi, sig. S1 ${ }^{\text {v }}$ ).
${ }^{[2]}$ 1-2: The Ancients said ... war against it. Corresponds to Mivharim I, $\S 7.2: 2-4$, Mivharim III, $\S 7.2: 2-5$ and She'elot II, $\S 7.4: 1-3$. See note on Mivharim I, §7.2:2-4. A similar example appears in Epitome totius astrologiae (Epitome, 1548, Lib. III, cap. xii, sig. Q2 ${ }^{\text {r }}$, quoted in note on She'elot II, $\$ 7.4: 1-3$ ), whose author endorses the same opinion voiced by Ibn Ezra in She'elot II, $\S 7.4: 3$. But according to Mivharim I, §7.2:4 and a portion of the third version of Sefer ha-She'elot that is extant in Latin only (Interrogacionum, Erfurt, f. 27a, quoted in note on She'elot II, $\$ 7.4: 1-3$ ), it turns out that what Ibn Ezra presents here and in Mivharim III, $\$ 7.2: 2-4$ as his own solution to the problem, as well as the opinion endorsed by the author of Epitome totius astrologiae, is based on Abū Ma'shar.
${ }^{[3]}$ 3: It may be auspicious ... Sun itself. Cf. Mivharim III, $\S 7 \cdot 5: 7$.
${ }^{[1]}$ 4: Station. See note on She'elot II, $\S$ 5:2.
$\$ 7.5$
${ }^{[1]}$ 1: As for partners ... and altercations. For the connection between Jupiter and partnership, see She'elot $\mathrm{I}, \$ 6: 2$. Corresponds closely to Mivharim I, §7.7:1.
${ }^{[2]}$ 2: Lot of the Moon. See above, $\$ 2.2: 3$ and note.
${ }^{[3]}$ 2: It is more auspicious ... 〈with the Moon〉. Corresponds closely to Mivharim I, § 7.7:2 and She'elot I, §7.2:4-6.

## $\$ 8.1$

${ }^{[1]} 1-3$ : Someone who wants to find a lost object ... benefic planet. Cf. Mivḥarim III, § 8.1:1-4; She'elot II, § 8.1:1-5.
$\$ 9.1$
${ }^{[1]} 1$ : I have already $\ldots$ lord of the hour. See above, $\S 3.2: 3$; Cf. $\S 6: 11$.
${ }^{[2]} \mathbf{1 - 4}$ : I have already $\ldots$... by river. Corresponds to Mivharim I, $\$ 3 \cdot 3: 1-5$ (see note there), where analogous statements are ascribed to Māshāallāh. Cf. She'elot I, §9.3:1-2; She'elot II, \$9.1:3.
$\$ 9.2$
${ }^{[1]}$ 1-2: (1) Dorotheus said ... aspect the Moon. See the fifth book of Dorotheus' Pentabiblos: "Commencing to row the ship in water ... if the Moon is in Pisces, it indicates that misfortune and calamities will reach them" (Carmen astrologicum, 1976, V: 25, pp. 282-283). Corresponds to Mivharim I, $\$ 3.4: 1-2$, where a similar statement is ascribed to the scientists of India. Coincides with Epitome totius astrologiae: "Experi-
mento afferitur Lunam esse bonam ad iter maris ... In Pisce autem mala est" (Epitome, 1548, Lib. IV, cap. xv, sig. S2 ${ }^{\text {v }}$ ).
${ }^{[2]}$ : $\langle$ If the journey is $\rangle$ by land ... more auspicious. Corresponds to Mivharim I, § 3.2:9. Cf. She'elot I, §9.3:2, She'elot II, §9.1:4.
$\$ 9.3$
${ }^{[1]}$ 2: Ptolemy said ... Moon's nature. Such a statement is not found in Pseudo-Ptolemy's Centiloquium, nor in Ptolemy's Tetrabiblos.
${ }^{[2]}$ 5: The hours of Mars and of Saturn ... Ancients said so. Corresponds to Mivḥarim I, $\$ 3.2: 1$, where a similar statement is ascribed to Māshā’allāh.

## $\oint 10.1$

${ }^{[1]}$ 1: If you want to write a book ... Saturn's houses. Corresponds to Mivharim I, $\S 10.3: 2$ and $\S 10.3: 4$. Cf. Mivḥarim I, $\S$ 1.2:2.
${ }^{\text {[2] }}$ 3: Eccentric circle, Hebrew גלגל המוצק, lit. circle of the center. See above, note on $\$ 4.3: 2$.
${ }^{[3]} 3-4$ : Always put the lord ... moving rapidly. Corresponds to Mivharim I, $\$ 10.3: 5-6$.

## § 10.2

${ }^{[1]}$ 1: When a planet is with the Sun it loses its power. This is a reference to being the planet "under the ray of the Sun," "burnt" or in the "domain of burning." In this condition the planet is said to be without power, or to lose its power. For an explanation, see above, note on $\S 6: 7$, s.v. "Under the ray of the Sun."
${ }^{[2]}$ 2: Scorpio is in aspect with the place that signifies kingship, which makes it fortunate. Kingship is signified by the tenth horoscopic place. See, i.e., Te'amim II, $\S_{3.3: 4, ~ p p . ~ 206-207 . ~ I f ~ A r i e s, ~ t h e ~ S u n ' s ~ e x a l t a t i o n, ~ i s ~}^{\text {en }}$
in the ascendant（\＄9．2：1），then Scorpio is in trine，a fortunate aspect，with Capricorn，which is the tenth sign after Aries，the sign of the ascendant．
${ }^{[3]} \mathbf{1 - 2}$ ：If you want to go $\langle$ see $\rangle$ a king ．．．makes it fortunate．Corresponds to Mivharim I，§10．1：2－5．
${ }^{[4]}$ 5：Division of $\langle$ the places according to $\rangle$ the $\langle$ latitude of the $\rangle$ country． This is equivalent to＂the division of the places according to the rising times on the latitude plate＂as it appears in Mivharim $I, \$ 10.1: 5$ ．See note there．
${ }^{[5]}$ 5：Just as you observe ．．．〈latitude of the〉 country．Corresponds to Mivharim I，§ 10．1：9．

## $\$ 10.3$

${ }^{[1]}$ 1－5：If you want to go $\langle$ see $\rangle$ an elder ．．．lord of the ascendant．Corre－ sponds to Mivharim I，\＄9．2：1－7．
$\$ 10.4$
${ }^{[1]}$ 2：Be careful not to do this $\ldots$ ．hate him．Corresponds to＇Olam I，$\S 68: 1$ ， pp．96－97，Mivḥarim I，§ 10．2：2 and She＇elot I，§4．3：2．
${ }^{[2]}$ 1－2：If you want $\langle$ to choose a time〉 to crown a king ．．．hate him． Corresponds closely to Mivḥarim I，§10．2：1－2．Corresponds to Epitome totius astrologiae：＂Pro coronatione regis．Sit ascendens firmum \＆melius Leo，quod si Sol sit in Ariete，nec infortuna planeta illum aspiciat ．．． Semperque Luna aspiciat ascendens，vel eius dominum aspectu bono， nam contraria alterutri，suos regi insurgere significat＂（Epitome，1548， Lib．IV，cap．xvi，sig． $\mathrm{S}_{2}{ }^{\mathrm{v}}-\mathrm{S}_{3}{ }^{\mathrm{r}}$ ），and to Sahl Ibn Bishr al－Yahūdī＇s De electionibus：＂If you wished to introduce a king into the seat of his empire， let the ascendant be a fixed sign ．．．and let the Moon be aspecting the Lord of her own domicile from friendship＂（On Elections，2008，\＄125a，p．218）．
${ }^{[3]}$ 2－3：Be careful not to do ．．．respect to the ascendant degree．Cor－ responds to She＇elot II，$\S 7.5: 2-3$ ，which deals with＂whether a city will conspire against the king．＂
$\$ 11.1$
${ }^{[1]}$ 1: If you are seeking $\ldots$ aspect with it. Cf. Mivharim I, $\$ 9.1: 1$, and She' elot II, § 11.1:1-3; § 11.2:1-2; §11.3:1-3.

## § 11.2

${ }^{[1]} 1-4$ : If you want to seek ... position whatsoever. Corresponds closely to She'elot I, $\S 11.1: 3-6$. Cf. Mivharim I, $\S 11.1: 1-3$, where the people whose love is sought are categorized exclusively according to their age.

## $\$ 11.3$

${ }^{[1]}$ 1: As I instructed you in the seventh place. See above, §7.1:1-7; §7.2:1-7; §7.3:1-3.

## $\$ 11.4$

${ }^{[1]}$ 1-2: If you are inquiring about a woman's love ... nature and Mercury's. Corresponds closely to She'elot I, §11.1:7-8.
${ }^{[2]}$ 4: Straight signs ... crooked〈signs〉, Hebrew ... המזלות הישרים .המעוותים. These two sets of six signs each-the straight from Cancer to Sagittarius, the crooked from Capricorn to Gemini-are an alternative designation to the short/long signs that divide the zodiac according to their rising times. See above, note on Mivḥarim II, $\S 7.1: 6$, s.v. "long or short signs".

## $\$ 12.1$

${ }^{[1]}$ 1-2: If you want to purchase an animal ... throw him. Corresponds to Mivharim I, §12.1:1; She'elot I, § 12.2:1-2; and She'elot II, § 12.2:23.
${ }^{[2]}$ 3: If you wish to buy a stallion ... position of Saturn. Corresponds to Mivḥarim I, § 12.1:3, where this statement is ascribed to Māshā’allāh.
${ }^{[3]}$ 3: If you wish to buy a stallion ... position of Mercury. Corresponds to Epitome totius astrologiae: "In emptione bruti animalis, si equi, sit Sol in bono loco ... si de muli emptione deliberas Mars dirigatur, si asini Saturnus, si bovis Luna, si pecudum Mercurius" (Epitome, 1548, Lib. IV, cap. xvii, sig. $\mathrm{S}_{3}{ }^{\mathrm{r}}$ ).
${ }^{[4]}$ 3-4: If sheep... buy sheep. Corresponds to Mivharim I, $\S 6.4: 1$. See note there.
${ }^{[5]}$ 5-6: If 〈you want〉 to buy a camel ... Ancients said. Corresponds to Mivharim I, § 12.1:4.

PART FIVE
THIRD VERSION OF THE BOOK OF ELECTIONS BY ABRAHAM IBN EZRA

HEBREW TEXT AND ENGLISH TRANSLATION


#### Abstract

 כח גדול. (2) ולא יוכל השפל לנצח את העליון, רק אם היה השפל בית בית הרא הראשון או  בהיותו תחת אור השמש; וככה השפפל בהיוּיותו ישרב יתחברו לשפל דברים רבים טובים והצליון יהיה אמצעי, לא יוכל השפל לנצח העליון


ניצוח גמור.
2 אותו תחת הלבנה. (2) וידוע כי אם היה בעל המזל הצו הצומח בומח בבית השביעי, ינצחוהו אויביו, והפך הדבר: אם היה בעל השביעי בצומח, ינוצח האויב ${ }^{4}$ ה (3) (3) אם היה הכוכב עליון לא ינוצח ניצוח גמור. (4) על כן השתבשו חכמי משפטי המזלות: אם היה הצומח מזל שור ומאדים בצומח, יש מהם שאמרו שתדין כפי כח נוגה בעל הצוּ לומח, ואל תדין בעדות מאדים לבדו. (5) ולפי שניסיתי פעמי' רבות נזק יבא לשניהם הנלחמים, וכפי כח מאדים גם נוגה מהשמש, יהיה יותר חזק מי שהוא בעליו.

1והשמר שהמזל הצומח לא יהיה באחד הבתים של השפלים, כי לעליון יש] חסר; הוספתי ושחזרתי Et cave ne signum ascendens sit unum de domibus stellarum inferiorum, nam EV עפן יו superiori השמש; וככה השפל בהיותו ישר] חסר; הוספתי ושחזרתי עפ״י . scilicet superior sit sub radiis solis; item quod inferior sit directa ההוה מפאת השמש והעליון] ג בשוליים. ${ }^{4}$ אה היה בעל השביצי בצומח ינוצח האויב] ג בשוליים. $_{\text {ג }}$

1 （1）Make sure that the ascendant sign is not in one of the houses of the lower planets，because an upper planet has great power．${ }^{1}$（2）A lower ＜planet〉 cannot be victorious over an upper 〈planet〉 unless the lower is in the first or the tenth cardo［i．e．，the tenth place］and the upper is in a cadent place．${ }^{2}$（3）A lower 〈planet〉 is direct 〈in its motion〉 when it is on the $\langle$ same $\rangle$ side as the Sun，and the opposite is the case for an upper planet when it is under the ray of the Sun；likewise，a lower planet is direct 〈in its motion〉 when the upper 〈planet〉 is retrograde．${ }^{3}$（4）〈Even〉 if many fortunate things ${ }^{4}$ are assigned to the lower $\langle$ planet $\rangle$ and the upper ＜planet〉 is intermediate $\langle$ in fortunate things $\rangle$ ，the lower $\langle$ planet $\rangle$ cannot be completely victorious over the upper 〈planet〉．${ }^{5}$

2 （1）Know that if Jupiter is in a fortunate configuration with the Sun and it aspects Cancer，〈you should〉put it［Cancer］under the Moon．${ }^{1}$ （2）It is known that if the lord of the ascendant sign is in the seventh place，their enemies will defeat them［the side that begins war］，and，vice versa：if the lord of the seventh 〈place〉 is in the ascendant，the enemy will be defeated．（3）But if it［the lord of the sign of the ascendant］ is an upper 〈planet〉，he［i．e．，the side that begins the war］will not be defeated completely．（4）Therefore，the experts in the judgments ${ }^{2}$ of the zodiacal signs ${ }^{3}$ were confused：if Taurus is the ascendant and Mars is in the ascendant，some of them said that you should pass judgment taking into account the power of Venus as the lord of the ascendant ［because Taurus is Venus＇house］and that you should not pass judgment on the basis of the testimony of Mars alone［because Taurus is not the house of Mars］．（5）According to what I have verified many times by experience，harm will befall both warring sides，and because the power of Mars，and also of Venus，comes from the Sun，whichever of them is its lord［i．e．，the lord of the sign of the ascendant］will be stronger．${ }^{4}$

3 (1) ודע כי שני המאורות יש להם כח גדול, כי אם היה אחד מהם נותן הכח לבעל הצומח, והוא איננו נשרף ולא חוזר אחורני, יורה שהוא ינצח, והפך זה אם יתן הכח לבעל הבית השביעי. (2) ודעת הקדמונים כי אחד משני המאורות במעלה הצומחת להחל המלחמה איננו טוב, וטעמם כי תולדת הלבנה הפך כתולדתו הצומח, כי הוא כתולדת השמש. (3) על כן אמר׳ כי המעלה הצומח׳ תכרות על ניהוג לבנ׳, רק אם היתה בעלת החיים שהמולד בלילה או ביום אין השמש במקום ראוי לבקש החיים ממקומה. (4) ואמרו: כאשר אין כח בכל משרת שיהיה תחת גבול השרפה, רק אם היתה בצומחת מזקת, רק אם היה המזל הצומח טלה שהוא כבית כבודה או אריה שהוא כביתה. (5) ואני או׳: אם היה כן, לא ינצח המחל במלחמה, רק צד שיהי׳ שבתי1 נשרף בגבול השרפה או שיהיה חוזר אחורני.

4 (1) ודע כי בעל הבית השני מהצומ׳יורה על גדוד היוצאובעל הבית השמיני יור׳על גדוד האויב. (2) ואם יביט זה אל זה מבט נכח או מבט רביעית תהיה המלחמה חזקה, וכפי כח בעל הבית יורה על ניצוח. (3) ואם היו שניהם מתחברים תהיה המלחמה קשה מאד, אז הסתכל למי הניצוח כאשר הזכרתי בספר ראשית החכמה. (4) ואם בעל השמיני יתן הכח לבעל הצומח, יברחו מגדוד האויב וישובו אל המחל להלחם. (5) ויש לך להסתכל אל תקופת שנת העולם איך יהיו המאורות מסתכלים אל מאדים, או במחברתו, או שיגיצ מזל הסוף ממקום המחברת בראשית השלישות אל מקום מאדים, או מזל הסוף מהעשרים שנה, כאשר פרשתי בספר משפטי העולם.

5 (1) ואם בקשת לבחור שעה לשלוט בים או ללכת להביא עיר במצור, אם היה מאדים, בחר להולך מזל עקרב, כי הוא יורה טוב ממזלות המים. (2) ואם היה צדק חזק מפאת השמש ומפאת המעלה הצומחת, מזל סרטן, ואם יכולת שתתן הלבנה הכח

3 （1）Know that the two luminaries have great power，for if one of them gives power ${ }^{1}$ to the lord of the ascendant，and it is neither burned nor retrograde，it signifies that he［the side that begins the war］will be vic－ torious，and the opposite applies if it gives its power to the lord of the seventh place．（2）According to the opinion of the Ancients，it is inauspi－ cious to start a war when one of the luminaries is in the ascendant degree； their explanation is that the Moon＇s nature is the opposite of the ascen－ dant＇s nature，which is like the Sun＇s nature．${ }^{2}$（3）Therefore they said that the ascendant degree will cause death in a direction of the Moon ${ }^{3}$ only if it［the Moon］is the lord of life ${ }^{4}$ in a nocturnal nativity or 〈if the Moon is the lord of life $\rangle$ in a diurnal nativity and the Sun is not in a position from which it is appropriate to try to find the $\langle$ place of $\rangle$ life ${ }^{5}$ from it［the Sun］．${ }^{6}$ （4）They said：planets do not exert power when they are in the domain of burning，${ }^{7}$ but if it［the Sun］is in the ascendant it is detrimental，unless the ascendant sign is Aries，which is the house of its［the Sun＇s］exaltation， or Leo，which is its［the Sun＇s］house．${ }^{8}$（5）But I say：if this is so［i．e．，the ascendant sign is Aries］，the side that starts a war will never be victorious， unless Saturn is burnt in the domain of burning or is retrograde．${ }^{9}$

4 （1）Know that the lord of the second place＜counting〉 from the ascen－ dant signifies the army that goes out 〈to war〉 and the lord of the eighth place signifies the enemy＇s army．${ }^{1}$（2）If these two are in opposition or quartile，the war will be fierce，and victory is indicated by the power of the lord of the place．（3）But if the two of them are in conjunction the war will be very intense．Then find out which of them will be victorious， as I mentioned in the Book of the Beginning of Wisdom．${ }^{2}$（4）If the lord of the eighth $\langle$ place $\rangle$ gives power to the lord of the ascendant，〈some sol－ diers〉 will desert the enemy＇s army and come over to the side that began the war．${ }^{3}$（5）You should find out，at the revolution of the world－year，${ }^{4}$ how the luminaries aspect or conjoin Mars，or whether the terminal sign ${ }^{5}$ moves from the place of conjunction at the beginning of the triplicity to the place of Mars，or whether the terminal sign 〈completes〉 twenty years，${ }^{6}$ as I have explained in the Book of the Judgments of the World．${ }^{7}$

5 （1）If you wish to choose an hour to gain mastery over the sea or to lay siege to a city，if Mars is 〈in the seventh place〉，choose for the traveler the sign of Scorpio，${ }^{1}$ because it is the most auspicious of the watery signs．${ }^{2}$（2）If Jupiter is strong with respect to the Sun and with respect to the ascendant degree，〈choose for the traveler〉 the sign of Cancer；${ }^{3}$ it is auspicious if you can do this so that the Moon gives power

לצדק, טוב. (3) והשמר שלא תתן הכח לשבתי או מאדים, ואף כי אם היה אחד מהם חזק, כי יזיק לבצל המבחר. (4) מזל דגים טוב אם צדק או נגה במקום טוב, ואם כוכב
 בים שבתי בבית העשירי ולא בבית הרביעי², וככה מאדים. (6) (6) ואם ידעת מזל המקוֹ שירצה הבוחר ללכת אליו ולהביאו במצור או לשלוט, השו השמר שלא תבחר מזל המקום, ואם היתה השביעי, הוא יותר טוב אם היה בית אחד העליונים. (7) ודע כי כל כוכב בוֹב
 השמש או הלבנה, חשוב אותו כבעל הבית, כי כח גדול יש לו³, אף כי אם היה בעל השעה. (8) וככה תדין אם היה כוכב בבית השביעי.

$$
8 乌
$$

1 (1) השמיני. אם רצית לבחור שצה ולבקש דבר שאבד או שנגנב, בקש מזל שיהיה
 השמיני נותן הכח לו, או שיהיה באחד היתדות. (2) ואם יכולת להיות בעל השעה בעל
 יכלת לשום בעל הבית השביעי בצומח או יסתכל לבעל הצומח, אז יהיה יותר טוב, והשמר שלא יהיה בעל השעה בעל הבית השביעי. (4) והמזלות המתהפכים ובעלי שתי גופות טובים בדבר הזה מהנאמנים.

1 1 (1) התשיעי. המבקש לבחור שעה ללמוד או לכתוב ספר, ישים לעולם הלבנה
 אז טוב. (3) להיות בעל השעה שבתי, קשה הוא, כי הוא יורה על עצלה. (4) ואם בעל השעה מאדים ....

[^53]to Jupiter．${ }^{4}$（3）Make sure that it［the Moon］does not give power to Saturn or Mars，especially if one of them is strong，for it will cause harm to the lord of the election．（4）Pisces is auspicious if Jupiter or Venus is in a good position；if Mercury is burnt or retrograde the election will be fortunate．${ }^{5}$（5）Be careful in the election of 〈an hour to begin〉 a journey by sea that Saturn is not in the tenth place or in the fourth place，and likewise for Mars．（6）If you know the sign of the place ${ }^{6}$ that the querent wants to lay siege to or conquer，be careful not to choose the sign of the place；if it is the seventh $\langle\operatorname{sign}\rangle$［counting from the sign of the city］，it is more auspicious if it［the 7th sign］is the house of one of the upper planets．${ }^{7}(7)$ Know this：any planet that is in the first place－if it is neither burnt nor retrograde，and if it is in its term or if it is the lord of 〈the house where $\rangle$ the Sun or the Moon $\langle$ are $\rangle$－is to be considered as if were the lord of the place，especially if it is the lord of the hour．${ }^{8}$（8）Pass judgment in the same manner if the planet is in the seventh house．

1 （1）The eighth $\langle$ place $\rangle$ ：if you want to choose an hour to find something that was lost or stolen，try to find a sign whose lord is strong $\langle\mathrm{in}$ it $\rangle$ when the Sun or the Moon gives power to it or aspects it，and when the lord of the eighth place gives power to it or it［the lord of the eighth place］is in one of the cardines．（2）If you can do this when the lord of the hour is the lord of the second $\langle$ place $\rangle$ ，or when Jupiter is neither burnt nor retrograde nor in an unfortunate aspect with one of the malefics，〈it is auspicious $\rangle$ ． （3）It is auspicious if you can put the lord of the seventh place in the ascendant or in aspect with the lord of the ascendant，but make sure that the lord of the hour is not the lord of the seventh place．（4）The tropical and the bicorporal signs are more auspicious in this regard than the fixed $\langle$ signs $\rangle .{ }^{1,2}$

1 （1）The ninth $\langle$ house $\rangle:$ Someone who wants to choose an hour to begin learning or to write a book should always put the Moon in one of Mercury＇s houses when Mercury is not retrograde．（2）It is auspicious if it is in the same degree as the Sun．（3）But it is inauspicious 〈if〉 Saturn is the lord of the hour，because it signifies laziness．${ }^{1}$（4）If Mars is the lord of the hour ．．．．

PART SIX

NOTES TO THE THIRD
VERSION OF THE BOOK OF ELECTIONS

## $\$ 7.1$

${ }^{[1]}$ 1：Make sure that the ascendant ．．．has great power．Corresponds to： Mivharim I，§7．1：2－3；Mivharim II，§7．1：3；She＇elot I，§7．3：3；She＇elot II， \＄7．1：2；Epitome totius astrologiae：＂Pro itinere ad bellum．Eligas signum cuius dominus est ex superioribus planetis＂（Epitome，1548，Lib．IV，cap． xi，sig．S1 ${ }^{\mathrm{v}}$ ）；Sahl Ibn Bishr＇s De electionibus：＂It is necessary that you should make the Ascendant one of the domiciles of the higher planets＂ （On Elections，2008，$\S 85$ ，p．209）．For Sahl Ibn Bishr al－Yahūdī，see note on Mivharim II，§6：2．
${ }^{[2]}$ 2：Cadent place：This is a reference to the ninth，third，twelfth，and sixth places．See note on Mivharim I，$\$ 2: 1$（s．v．＂place＂）．
${ }^{[3]}$ 3：A lower $\langle$ planet〉 is direct ．．．is retrograde．The Hebrew text of this passage has been reconstructed on the basis of the surviving Latin text．Ibn Ezra discusses the contrasting motions of the upper and lower planets with respect to the Sun in a number of places．This is part of the
 בהתחבר שלשת העליונים עם השמש，חלק כנגד הלק במעלה אחת הת，עד היותם לנוכח


 ישרים בהליכתם，והולכים אל מערב עד היותם במעמדם，וישובו אחורנית ותשיגם ＂There are many types of planetary conditions with respect to the Sun．〈From the moment〉 when the three upper planets［Saturn，Jupiter，Mars］are with the Sun，in the same minute and in one degree，until they are opposite the Sun，they are to its right． From the moment of opposition until they conjoin it［the Sun］，they are to its left．But Venus and Mercury，from their separation from the Sun，they are retrograde until they become direct in their motion and follow it［the Sun］，catch up with it and overtake it，and then they are to its right［i．e．，occidental of the Sun］．From the moment they［Venus and Mercury］depart from it［the Sun］，when they are direct in their motion，and they turn to the west and they reach their station，they turn retrograde and the Sun catches up with them and overtakes them，then they are to its left＂（1939，VI，liv：19－27）．See also Țéamim II，§4．3：7， pp．208－209；Mishpetei ha－Mazzalot，MS Schoenberg 57，f．74；She’elot II，§ 7．1：4．
${ }^{[4]}$ 4：Many fortunate things，Hebrew דברים טובים רבים．This expression is a unicum in Ibn Ezra＇s oeuvre．It denotes a variety of conditions or positions where a planet is said to acquire strength，notably in discussions about finding out which of two conjoining planets is＂victorious＂over the other（Arabic al－mubtazz）．See note on Me＇orot $\$ 30: 1-7$ ；below，$\$ 7.4: 3$ and note．To denote the same concept，Reshit Hokhmah I employs טובת ，המשרתים，lit．the planets＇good things，and offers a comprehensive account
 היה אחד מן המשרתים במחברת עם כוכב טוב；או על מבטו，מבט ששית או רביעית
 מכוכב טוב ומתחבר עם כוכב טוב；או שיהיה הכוכב ממוצע בין שני כוכבים טובים； או במחברת הדבק；או עם השמש；או עם מבטה，מבט שלשית או ששית；או עם מבט הלבנה，והלבנה עם כוכבים טובים；או שיהיה הכוכב מהיר בלכתו；או אורו נוסף


 כאלו הם בממשלתם，וככה הכוכבים הטובים בהיות במקום ממשלת כוכבים טובוּ פובים． ובהיות אחד מהמשרתים על הדרכים שהזכרתי，אז תחזק תולדתו ויו וֹיורה על כל טוב ＂On the good fortune of the planets，and on their misfortune，powers，and weaknesses．〈The good fortune of the planets is〉 if one of the planets is in conjunction with a benefic planet；or forms an aspect－sextile，quartile or trine－〈with a benefic planet〉 and malefic planets do not aspect it，and are not with it；or if the planet separates from a benefic and conjoins a benefic planet；or if the planet is intermediate between two benefic planets；or in conjunction；or with the Sun；or forms an aspect with it［the Sun］，either trine or sextile；or forms an aspect with the Moon，and the Moon is with benefic planets；or if the planet is moving rapidly；or if it is increasing in its light and its number；or if it is in one of the places of its rulership，as in its house，or the house of its exaltation，or the house of its triplicity， or in its term，or in its decan；or in the place of its apogee，or in the bright degrees；or if it is received 〈by another planet）；or if it is in its own image．The two luminaries，when they are in the position where benefic planets exercise rulership，they are considered to be in their rulership， and the same applies to the benefic planets when they are in the places of the benefic planets＇rulership．When one of the planets is in one of the aforementioned conditions，then its nature is strengthened and signifies good fortune according to its nature，but if it［the planet］is in a contrary condition to what I have mentioned，its nature will be weakened＂（V，li： 9－21）．
${ }^{[5]}$ 1-4: Make sure that the ascendant ... upper $\langle$ planet $\rangle$. Corresponds to She'elot I, §7.3:3-5 and She'elot II, §7.1:2-4.

## $\$ 7.2$

${ }^{[1]}$ 1: Know that if Jupiter ... under the Moon. Corresponds to Mivharim I, §7.5:6; Mivharim II, §7.1:5.
${ }^{[2]} 4$ : Judgments, Hebrew משפטים. For this neologism, see note on Me'orot \$9:2.
${ }^{[3]} 4$ : Scholars of the judgments of the zodiacal signs, Hebrew חכמי משפטי המזלות. This expression, and the expression "science of the judgments of the zodiacal signs" (חכמת משפטי המזלות) are used occasionally by Ibn Ezra to unambiguously denote astrologers and astrology (see Mishpeṭei ha-Mazzalot, Schoenberg 57, ff. 71, 77; 'Ibbur, 1874, 6b; Moladot, MS BNF 1056, f. 46a; She'elot III, $\S 7.4: 1$ ). By contrast, the very frequent terms "scholars of the zodiacal signs" (חכמי המזלות) and "science of the zodiacal signs" (חכמת המזלות) denote astronomers, mathematicians, and specialists in the regulation of the calendar as well. See Sela, 2003, pp. 8182.
${ }^{[4]}$ 2-5: It is known ... will be stronger. Corresponds closely to She' elot II, $\S 7.4: 1-3$, Mivharim I, $\S 7.2: 1-4$, and Mivharim II, $\$ 7 \cdot 3: 1-2$. The "confusion" of the astrologers, presented at $\$ 7.2: 3$, stems from the following contradiction: (a) On the one hand, Taurus is the ascendant and Mars is in Taurus; consequently, Mars, which is the lord of the seventh place, is in the ascendant, and therefore "the enemy will be defeated" (\$7.2:2); (b) on the other hand, Mars is an upper planet and thus, according to $\$ 7.2$ :3, the enemy "will not be defeated completely." The same dilemma is presented in Mivharim I, §7.2:2-4 (see note there), and She'elot II, §7.4:1-3 (see note there). Note that in She'elot II, $\$ 7.4: 3$ and Mivharim II, $\S 7.3: 1-2$, Ibn Ezra presents the same solution as here: "harm will befall both warring sides." The same example appears in Epitome totius astrologiae (Epitome, 1548, Lib. III, cap. xii, sig. Q2 ${ }^{\mathrm{r}}$, quoted in note on She' elot II, §7.4:13), whose author endorses the opinion voiced by Ibn Ezra in She'elot II, §7.4:3. But according to Mivharim I, $\S 7.2: 4$ and a fragment of the third version of Sefer ha-She' elot that is extant only in Latin (Interrogacionum, Erfurt, f. 27a, quoted in note on She'elot II, §7.4:1-3), it turns out that
what Ibn Ezra presents here and in Mivharim III, $\S 7.2: 2-4$ as his own solution to the problem, as well as the opinion endorsed by the author of Epitome totius astrologiae, is based on Abū Ma'shar.

## $\$ 7.3$

${ }^{[1]}$ 1: Gives power. For the condition of "giving power," see note on She' elot I, §4:2.
${ }^{[2]}$ 2: Their explanation ... Sun's nature. A very similar statement, also ascribed to the Ancients and predicated on the doctrine of elections, is found in the recently discovered Latin translation of the second version of Sefer ha-Moladot: "In omnibus eleccionibus non debetur ponere locum lune in domo prima et ita temptaverunt Antiqui et posteriores Tho' et dederunt rationem nam gr asc assimilatur nature solis" (Nativitatum, MS Erfurt, f. 57b). This creates a link between Mivharim III and Moladot II.
${ }^{[3]}$ 3: The ascendant degree will cause death in a direction of the Moon. This is a reference to the procedure of "direction" or "prorogation"Greek aphesis; Arabic tasyîr; Hebrew ניהוגים; Latin ductus—employed in the doctrine of nativities to determine the native's lifespan. In this procedure, an arc of the zodiac is drawn between one of the fives places of life (see note on Mivḩarim I, $\$ 4: 1$ ) and a place of death (מקום כרת) (see Moladot, MS BNF 1056, f. 50a). The length of life is determined by converting the degrees of the arc, usually projected onto the equator, into a corresponding number of years, months, and days. In other words, the procedure of "direction" functions as an imaginary clock-hand or pointer that is set in motion at some zodiacal place, moves around the zodiac at a given rate, and reaches another zodiacal place. In this particular case, the Moon is a "place of life" and the ascendant degree is a place of death; life is destroyed when the Moon is set in motion and reaches the ascendant degree. For this procedure, see Tetrabiblos, 1980, III: 10, pp. 279-307; Mishpeṭei ha-Mazzalot, MS Schoenberg 57, ff. 83-84; Al-Qabīṣī, 2004, IV: 11-13, pp. 121-129; Kitāb al-Tafhīm, 1934, §522, 523 pp. 324-325, 326-327; Carmen Astrologicum, 1976, III: 1, III: 2, pp. 235-245.
${ }^{[4]}$ 3: Lord of life, Hebrew: בצל החיים. This is a reference to the planet or zodiacal position that, according to the doctrine of nativities, is directed
to a "place of death" to determine the native's length of life. See previous note. The "lord of life" may be one of the five "places of life" (see note on Mivharim I, $\S 4: 1$ ) or the planet that exerts the strongest lordship in these places. For the five "places of life" or aphetic places and the process of selection of the lord of life from them, see note on Mivharim I, $\S 4: 1$. This is how Ibn Ezra refers to them in Sefer ha-Moladot, using Persian
 "The Persians designate the five places of life hyl'ej and the ruler the kadkad'ah, meaning male and female" (Moladot, MS BNF 1056, f. 50a.) See also TTéamim II, §6.2:5, pp. 236237. Using Hebrew nomenclature, Ibn Ezra refers to this planet as שליט על המולד, lord of the nativity (also שליט על הנולד, lord of the native) in Sefer ha-Moladot (MS BNF 1056, f. 46a, 48a) and in Mivharim I, §4:1. But here (and in the recently discovered Sefer ha-Tequfah) he employs the alternative term בעל החיים 'lord of life', which creates a significant terminological link between these two works.
${ }^{[5]}$ 3: $\langle$ Place $\rangle$ of life. See note on Mivharim I, §1.4.
${ }^{[6]}$ 2-3: According to the opinion of the Ancients ... from it [the Sun]. The example in $\S$ 7.3:2 is meant to illustrate the antagonism between the natures of the ascendant and the Moon and between the two luminaries presented in $\$ 7.3: 1$ in the framework of an election to start a war. The nature of this antagonism is revealed in Sefer ha-Moladot, in a passage

 המעלות. גם הלבנה תכרית החיים על המעלה הצומחת ולא תכרית על ד' מקומות החיים האחרים. גם השמש תכרית על הל הלבנה במחברת גם במבט נכח, רו רק ולת במבט = רביצית תוליד חולי ולא תכרית ומבט שלישית גם ששית יורה על בריאות הגוף.״ "If the place of life is the position of the Moon, the ascendant degree will cause death when the Moon reaches it [the ascendant degree] in the direction of degrees; the Moon will also cause death at the ascendant degree but will not cause death at the other four places of life. Also the Sun will cause death when the Moon is in conjunction or opposition <to the Sun $\rangle$, but when in quartile it will only generate a disease but will not cause death, and when in trine or sextile it indicates bodily health" (MS BNF 1056, ff. 49a-50a).
${ }^{[7]} 4$ : Domain of burning. The domain of burning is an interval, marked off with respect to the Sun, where the planets are said to be "burnt" and
without power. This interval, counting from $16^{\prime}$ with respect to the Sun, is $6^{\circ}$ for Saturn and Jupiter, $10^{\circ}$ Mars, and $7^{\circ}$ for Venus and Mercury. See note on Me'orot $\$ 23: 4$.
${ }^{[8]} 4$ : But if it [the Sun] ... [the Sun's] house. Corresponds to Mivharim I, §7.3:2.
${ }^{[9]}{ }_{5}$ : But I say ... is retrograde. This implements the rule stated in Mivharim $\mathrm{I}, \$ 7.3: 1$ : "If you can put the lord of the seventh place when it is burnt or retrograde, or in the second, sixth or twelfth place, this is auspicious."

## $\$ 7.4$

${ }^{[1]}$ : The lord of the second place ... enemy's army. Cf. Mivharim I, \$7.1:3.
${ }^{[2]}$ 3: Find out which of them will be victorious, as I mentioned in the Book of the Beginning of Wisdom. There is no explicit discussion of this topic in Reshit Hokhmah I, but there is one in Téamim II (\$4.4:13, pp. 210-211), which is a commentary on Reshit Hokhmah II. This suggests that the current reference is to Reshit Hokhmah II, of which a fragment has been discovered recently (see Sela, 2010). There is an analogous reference to the Sefer Reshit Hokhmah, apropos of the same subject matter, in She'elot II, $\$ 7.2: 2$ (see note there). The subject of determining which of two (or more) planets is victorious over another is commonplace in Ibn Ezra's astrological oeuvre, notably in discussions about finding an appropriate time for starting a war. See She'elot I, §7.3:3-19; She'elot II, §7.2:2-3; Moladot, MS BNF 1056, f. 56a; Mivharim II, §7.2:6; 'Olam II, §16:1-4, pp. 166-167; Țe‘amim I, §7.1:4-9, pp. 8889; Ṭe‘amim II, §4.4:1-3, pp. 210-211; See Me’orot §30:1-6, §31:1-4; Mishpeṭei ha-Mazzalot, MS Schoenberg 57, ff. 76-77.
${ }^{[3]} 4$ : If the lord of the eighth $\langle$ place $\rangle \ldots$ began the war. Corresponds to Mivharim I, $\S 7 \cdot 5: 1-2$, where such a statement is ascribed to Abū Ma'shar.
${ }^{[4]}$ 5: Revolution of the world-year, Hebrew תקופת שנת העולם. This term refers to a special type of horoscope, which is cast every year when the Sun enters Aries in order to forecast world affairs during the coming
year. These horoscopes are frequently mentioned and applied in 'Olam I and 'Olam II, where Ibn Ezra employs an alternative designation: תקופת ' השנה 'revolution of the year'. See Sela, Sefer ha'Olam, Glossary of Technical Terms, s.v. "revolution of the year," pp. 342-343. In other parts of his astrological corpus, Ibn Ezra employs the alternative expression 'revolution of the world’ (Ṭe‘amim I, § 2.11:3, pp. 50-51; Moladot, MS BNF 1056, f. 46a). The timing for casting these horoscopeevery year when the Sun enters Aries-evokes the creation of the world: according to Indian cosmological theories, which Ibn Ezra recounts in some of his scientific works, the world undergoes long and recurrent cycles of creation and destruction; creation occurs when all the planets meet in conjunction in the head of Aries. See Liber de Rationibus Tabularum, 1947, p. 88: "et medius cursus omnium planetarum secundum indos sumptus est a diebus Acintdeindi, qui dixerunt Dominum omnes planetas in capite Arietis creasse ... et secundum eos omnis planeta revertitur ad punctum sui loci sine fraccionis superadictione." There is a very similar statement in Ibn Ezra's Hebrew translation of Ibn alMuthannâ’s Commentary on the Astronomical Tables of al-Khwârizmî. See Ibn al-Muthannä’s Commentary, 1967, pp. 152, 299. For a similar account in Arabic sources, see Kennedy-Van der Waerden, 1963, pp. 316-317.
${ }^{[5]}$ 5: Terminal sign, Hebrew מזל הסוף. This term, which is applied in world astrology as well as in nativities, derives from two related concepts developed by Ptolemy and later by Greek and Arabic astrologers: (a) "prorogation," which denotes a procedure for determining the length of the native's life by extending an arc of the zodiac between "places of life" and "places of death" (see above, note on $\S 7.3: 3$ ); (b) "the chronocrator" or "lord of [the] time," which, according to Ptolemy, is found by counting round the zodiac from each of the prorogatory places, "one year to each sign," to determine the lord of the years, "twenty-eight days to a sign" for the lord of the months, and "two and a third days to a sign" for the lord of the days (Tetrabiblos, 1980, IV: 10, p. 453). Combining elements of these two concepts, the "terminal sign" functions as an imaginary clock-hand or pointer that is set in motion at some zodiacal place, moves around the zodiac at a given rate, and reaches another zodiacal place. To denote this concept Ibn Ezra coined two similar terms: מזל הסוף 'terminal sign', and (terminal house'. A few years earlier, Abraham Bar Hiyya had used the term הקפה 'rotation, revolution' (Megillat ha-Megalleh, 1924, 122, 123 et passim). The same concept is rendered as signum finis in Liber de Rationibus Tabularum, a Latin work ascribed to Ibn Ezra and written
in all likelihood with his active cooperation（see Liber de Rationibus Tabularum，1947，p．85）．The concept is broadly used and explained in Ibn Ezra＇s works on nativities and historical astrology，where he employs these two terms unsystematically．See especially：Tequfah（JNUL 8 ${ }^{\circ}$ 3916， ff．57b，58a，59a，59b）；Moladot（BNF 1056，ff．60a，60b，61a）；‘Olam I （ $\$ 39: 1-9 ;$ § $57: 1-4$, pp．78－79，88－91）；＇Olam II（ $\$ 22: 1-2$, pp．170－171）； Téamim II，§6．4：1－3（pp．238－239）and §8．5：1－5（pp．252－253）；and Reshit Hokhmah（1939，X，lxxvi：21－23）．Al－Qabiṣị，in his Introduction to Astrology，defines the＂terminal sign＂or intiha$\vec{a}$ as follows：＂As for the years of the nativities，knowledge of this is that you consider the complete solar years which have passed for the native and take a sign for each year， and you begin with the ascendant of the nativity in the order of the signs， and the sign which is next to the sign where the counting is exhausted is the sign of the intih $\vec{a} "$（Al－Qabiṣị，2004，IV：8，pp．117－119）．
${ }^{[6]} 5$ ：Twenty years．This is the cycle of the small conjunction of Saturn－ Jupiter，as explained in ‘Olam I：כי אחר שיתחברו במזל טלה יתחברו אחר＂ עשרים שנה בבית השלישות של טלה，שהוא מזל קשת，והוא התשיעי ממקום מחברתם הראשון．ואחר עשרים שנה אחרות יתחברו בבית השלישות האחר，שהוא מזל אריה， שהוא תשיעי למזל קשת ．．．והנה מחברתם מעשרים שנה לעשרים שנה בבתי השלישות， ＂Twenty years after having conjoined in Aries they［Saturn and Jupiter］conjoin 〈again〉 in another place of Aries＇triplicity，namely，in Sagittarius，which is the ninth 〈sign〉 from the place of their first conjunction．After another twenty years they conjoin in the other place of the triplicity，which is Leo，which is the ninth〈sign〉 after Sagittarius ．．．Their conjunctions that take place every twenty years in the places of one triplicity，whichever triplicity it may be，are called a＇small conjunction＇＂（ $\$ 8: 1-2, \$ 10: 1$, pp．56－57）．
${ }^{[7]} 5$ ：The terminal sign 〈completes〉 twenty years，as I have explained in the Book of the Judgments of the World．This is a reference to the following passage in＇Olam I：הנה יש לך להסתכל בכל מחברת，בין גדולה בין אמצעית בין קטנה，אל מקום מאדים．כי אם היה עם שבתאי או צדק בתקופת השנה， או מבט נכח או מבט רביעית עמהם，אז יתחדשו מלחמות בעולם．ויהיה זה בהגיע מזל המחברת אל מקום מאדים．ואתן לך דמיון：נאמר כי בתקופת השנה היה צדק בעשר מעלות משור，ושבתאי בשלש צשרה，ומאדים בטלה על שש ועשרים מעלות，והמחברת היתה על י״ד משור．ואתן לכל מזל שנה，והנה בשנת י״״ב יגיע המזל אל מקום מאדים． וכבר אמרנו כי היה על כ״ו מעלות מטלה，והנה תחלת השנה יחל בי״״ד מטלה．ונבקש מה ערך י״ב אל שלשים，והנו שתי חמשיות．והנה בשתי חמשיות שנת י״״ב למחברת שבתאי וצדק הקטנה יהיה הרג רב בכל מדינה שמזלה טלה，או אחד יתדותיו．גם יש

לנו להסתכל בתקופת השנה לראות מקום הכוכבים ואיך יביטו אל מזל טלה שהוא
 the place of Mars at any conjunction 〈of Saturn and Jupiter〉，whether great，middle，or small．For if it［Mars］is with Saturn or Jupiter at the revolution of the year，or 〈if it is in〉 opposition or quartile to them，wars will break out in the world．This will occur when the $\langle$ terminal $\rangle$ sign of the conjunction 〈of Saturn and Jupiter〉 reaches the place of Mars．I〈now〉 give you an illustration．Let us suppose that at the revolution of the year Jupiter is at Taurus $10^{\circ}$ ，Saturn at $\left\langle\right.$ Taurus〉 $13^{\circ}$ ，Mars at Aries $26^{\circ}$ ，and that the conjunction 〈of Saturn and Jupiter〉 occurs at Taurus $14^{\circ}$ ．I assign one year to each sign；hence in the twelfth year the 〈terminal〉 sign 〈of the conjunction of Saturn and Jupiter〉 reaches the place of Mars． We already said that it was at Aries $26^{\circ}$ ，hence the beginning of the year occurs at Aries $14^{\circ}$ ．We calculate the ratio of 12 to 30 ，which is $2 / 5$ ． Therefore，at $2 / 5$ of the twelfth year after the small conjunction of Saturn and Jupiter there will be great bloodshed in every city whose sign is Aries，or 〈in every city where Aries is in〉 one of its cardines．Also，at the revolution of the year we should observe the place of the planets and their aspects to Aries，which 〈in the previous illustration〉 is the terminal house．We should pronounce judgment according to whether they are benefic or malefic planets＂（\＄39：1－9，pp．78－79；see corresponding notes on pp．131－132）．

## $\$ 7.5$

${ }^{[1]}$ 1：Choose for the traveler the sign of Scorpio．This is because Scorpio is Mars＇house．
${ }^{[2]}$ 1：If you wish to choose ．．．watery signs．Corresponds to Mivharim I， §7．5：3 and Mivharim II，§7．1：3．
${ }^{[3]}$ 2：$\langle$ Choose for the traveler $\rangle$ the sign of Cancer．This is because Cancer is Jupiter＇s exaltation．
${ }^{[4]}$ 2：If Jupiter is strong ．．．power to Jupiter．Corresponds to Mivharim I， §7．5：6 and Mivḥarim II，§7．1：5．
${ }^{[5]}$ 4：Pisces is auspicious if Jupiter ．．．be fortunate．Corresponds to Mivḥarim I，$\S 7.5: 4-5$ and Mivharim II，$\$ 7.1: 4$ ．If Pisces is the ascendant，
then Mercury is the lord of the sign in the seventh place，that is，Virgo， and this implements the rule stated in Mivharim I，$\$ 7.3: 1$ ：＂If you can put the lord of the seventh place when it is burnt or retrograde，or in the second，sixth or twelfth place，this is auspicious．＂
${ }^{[6]}$ 6：Sign of the place．This is a reference to the sign of the city，מזל
 ＂Know that when I referred to the sign of a city I meant the sign that was the ascendant when it was founded＂（\＄15：1，pp．164－165）．
${ }^{[7]}$ 6：If you know the sign ．．．upper planets．Cf．＇Olam I，§34：1－2，pp．74－

 ＂So if you find the lord of the sign of a city in the seventh place，it signifies that it will be afflicted by wars，particularly if Mars aspects 〈it〉．If the lord of the sign 〈of a city is one of the upper planets，do not pronounce an evil judgment on the city，but only that it will be in siege and in distress，and nothing more．＂
${ }^{[8]} 7$ ：Especially if it is the lord of the hour．Cf．Mivḥarim II，§7．3：3．

## § 8.1

${ }^{[1]} 1$－4：if you want to choose ．．．fixed $\langle$ signs $\rangle$ ．Cf．Mivḥarim II，§8．2：1－3； She＇elot II，§8．1：1－5；§8．2：1－2．
${ }^{[2]}$ 4：Fixed 〈signs〉，Hebrew：נאמנים，lit．enduring．In Ibn Ezra＇s vari－ ous introductions to astrology the＂fixed signs＂（Taurus，Leo，Scorpio， and Aquarius）are referred to as מזלות עומדים＇standing signs＇．（Reshit Hokhmah，1939，II，xi：16－17 et passim；Țe‘amim I，§ 2．13：1，pp．52－53； Țe‘amim II，§2．3：3，pp．188－189．Reshit Hokhmah II，OBL 707，f．116a）． By contrast，מזל מאמן is employed in Mivharim III，$\S 8.1: 4$ as well as in She＇elot III，$\$ 6.2: 2$ ，Me＇orot $\$ 17: 1$ and Sefer ha－Tequfah（JNUL $8^{\circ} 3916$ ， f．59a）．This creates a significant terminological link between these works．
$\$ 9.1$
${ }^{[1]}$ 1-2: Someone who wants ... signifies laziness. Corresponds to Mivharim $\mathrm{I}, \$ 1.1: 1-3$ and $\$ 9.3: 1-2$.

PART SEVEN
FIRST VERSION OF THE BOOK OF INTERROGATIONS BY ABRAHAM IBN EZRA

HEBREW TEXT AND ENGLISH TRANSLATION

ובשם האל עושה גדולות1 אחל לכתוב² ספר השאלות

1 1 (1) חכמי המזלות נחלקו בשאלות³ לשתי תורות גדולות4. (2) התורה האחת חנוך 41 א41 ובטלמיוס וקדמונים רבים עמהם. וכולם אומרים כי דיני המזלות הם ברורים ונכונים בדברי העולם ובנולדים5, רק השאלות אין בהם ממש6. (3) וטעמם: ידוע כי כל7 מה שיקרה בתחתיים הוא בעבור תנועות העליונים, וישתנו כפי השתנות מערכתם ז זה אל זה". (4) והנה זה דבר התולדת"10 נכון שיורו העליונים על כל הנבראים11 כפי תולדתם12. (5) ובעבור שנשמת האדם עליונה1313 יוכל להשמר ולהוסיף גם לגרוע. (6) על כן לא יורו העליונים14 על כל השאלות שתעלנה על לב האדם. (7) ואלה היו חכמים גדולים בדיעות הגלגלים.

2 (1) והתורה השנית ראשם 2 דורוניאוס15 וחכמי הודו וחכמי פרם ${ }^{17}$ וחכמי מצרים וכל חכמי המזלות שהם קרובים אלינו. (2) וכולם מודים כי דיני השאלות נכונים כדיני המולדות. (3) וזה טעמם: ידוע הוא ${ }^{18}$ בחכמת התולדת ${ }^{19}$ כי מחשבות הנפש תשתנינה כפי השתנות תולדת הגוף, והנה כח הנשמה יתהפך20 כפי התהפך כח הגוך. ואחר שהכוכבים יורו על תולדת הגוף והתהפכו12, הנה נוכל לדעת המחשבות והשאלות.

3 (1) על כן אמר משאללה"22: השמר לך שלא 3 (23 תדין בשום24 שאלה25 לאדם שבא לרמות"26 או ללעוג. (2) וזה אמת בעבור כי יש כח בנשמת האדם לבטל מעט מהפרטים. (3) ואמר במקום אחר: אם27 לא ישאל השואל ${ }^{27}$ (28 כהוגן לא ידין נכונה חכם המזלות. (4) אמר דורוניאוטים: מערכת הכוכבים זה אל זה תוליד במחשבת האדם

1 ובשם האל עושה גדולות] ס; מ בשם עושה גדולות; ל בע׳יג; יבשא חסר.
 6ונכונים בדברי העולם ובנולדים רק השאלות אין בהם ממש] סיבמא; לש חסר. ${ }^{6}$ [לכ] סיבשמא; ל חסר.

 141וכל להשמר ולהוסיף גם לגרוע צ״כ לא יורו העליונים] סיבשמא; ל חסר.
 ופרס. תתהפך. $\left.{ }^{21} 1^{21}\right]$ אללה. סיש; במא לכסות; ל לנטות. סילבש; נא דורוניוס.

## In the name of God，who performs great things <br> I begin to write the Book of Interrogations

1 （1）The astrologers are divided into two great schools of thought regarding interrogations．${ }^{1}$（2）The first is the school of Enoch，${ }^{2}$ Ptolemy，${ }^{3}$ and many of the Ancients．They all maintain that astral judgments are clear and reliable，both with respect to mundane affairs and with respect to natives，${ }^{4}$ but interrogations are of no substance．${ }^{5}$（3）〈This is〉 their reasoning：it is known that everything that occurs to the bodies of the lower world is caused by the movements of the upper bodies，and they ［the bodies of the lower world］change according to the change in the configuration of 〈the upper bodies〉 with respect to one other．（4）This follows from nature；$\langle$ namely，$\rangle$ that the bodies of the upper world give an indication about all creatures $\langle$ of the lower world $\rangle$ according to their physical nature．（5）〈However〉，since man＇s soul is supernal，he can protect himself and add to or subtract 〈from what is caused by the stars）．${ }^{6}$
（6）Therefore the upper bodies do not give an indication about all the interrogations a man may think of．${ }^{7,8}(7)$ These were outstanding scholars in the science of the orbs．

2 （1）The second school is headed by Dorotheus，${ }^{1}$ the scientists of India， the scientists of Persia，the scientists of Egypt，and all the astrologers who are close to us．（2）They all concur that judgments based on interrogations are as reliable as judgments based on nativities．${ }^{2}$（3）This is their reason－ ing：It is known in natural science that the thoughts of the mind change in accordance with the change in the physical nature of the body．Therefore， the power of the soul is altered according to the variation of the power of the body；and since the stars indicate the physical nature of the body and how it is altered，therefore we can know thoughts and interrogations．${ }^{3}$

3 （1）For this reason Māshā allāh ${ }^{1}$ said：be careful not to pronounce judgment on any interrogation for a man who intends to cheat or mock． （2）This is true because man＇s soul has the power to annul a small part of the details $\left\langle\right.$ of the natal horoscope〉．${ }^{2,3}$（3）He also said in another place： if the querent does not pose the question appropriately，the astrologer will not be able to pronounce judgment correctly．${ }^{4}$（4）Dorotheus said：
 אומר כי השאלות נכונות³ ברוב, רק אינם ככח4 המולדות. (6) אמר אבו מעשר: אם
 אמת6. (7) ואני אומר כי דברו אמת, רק אם היתה7 השאלה בעבור מלחמה או מריבה

דון, כי דינך אמת 8 8.
4 (1) והנה9${ }^{9}$ עתה אחל לדבר איך יוכל חכם המזלות לדעת מה שיש בלב השואל. (2) הוצא10 המעלה הצומחת, ודע כל מקו פקומות עם כוכב או עם השמש או במבט עם אחד מהם, ואם היא שבה ממבט משרת12 ות ותתן13 ${ }^{12}$ הכח למשרת אחרב הלבנה בכל שאלה, בעבור שהיא קרובה אל הארץ ואורה דומה לנולד, שיחל להראות
 תקבל23 כח העליונים 24, ותתנם לתחתיים ממנה; על כן יש לך לך להסתכל מקומה שאלה. (5) ובעבור לתפוסל ${ }^{26}$ דרך קצרה, אקרא שם הירח המורה, בעבור שהיא²7 תורה28 על כל שאלה29 על טוב ועל רע.

5 (1) אמר דורוניאוס30: הסתכל אל בעל המזל הצומח, או אל וֹ בעו בעל כבודו, או בית השלישות, או בעל הגבול אל המעלה הצומחת. ואם המורה יביט אל אחד מהם קחנו ועזוב הנשארים, וזה יקרא
 על בריאות גופו, ואם בשני38 צל דבר ממון ${ }^{39}$, ואם בשלישי על דבר אחיו או קרוביו40, וככה שאר כל הבתים כפי מחלוקתם14.

6 (1) ואתן לך כלל: אם מצאת השליט בבית השביעי², וכבר הזכרתי בספר המולדות כי הבית השביעי הוא בית תולדת הכוכב44 ככתוב45 בראשית החכמה"46 עם הבית שהוא שם. (2) והנה, אם
 ילנ ככה. ${ }^{5}$ באתת] סילמבש; א באחד. ${ }^{6}$ אמר דורוניאוס: מערכת הכוכבים ... כי מה שתדין לא יהיה


 14 ${ }^{14}$ ${ }^{*}$ ילשמבא; ס ידין כפי כח שניהם.
 ילשמבא; ס תחסר.
 ²6ובעבור לתפוס] ס; ימא ובעבור לתפוש; לב ובעבור לחפש; ש ולתפוש.
 מ דורוניוס.
 סילבמא; ש השליט. ${ }^{38}$ בשני] סיבשמא; ל שני.


the configuration of the planets with respect to one other produces in a man＇s mind a question that is analogous to the 〈celestial〉 configuration． Therefore，we may know the querent＇s thoughts．（5）I，Abraham，say that in most cases interrogations are reliable，but they are not as powerful as nativities．（6）Abū Ma＇shar ${ }^{5}$ said：if you find Mars in one of the cardines when the querent poses a question，do not pronounce judgment，because any judgment you pronounced would be false．（7）I say that his statement is true；but you should pronounce judgment if the interrogation relates to war or a quarrel，because 〈in this case〉 your judgment will be true．${ }^{6}$

4 （1）Now I begin explaining how the astrologer can know what the querent is thinking．${ }^{1}$（2）Calculate the ascendant degree 〈at the time of the interrogation $\rangle$ ，determine the positions of all the planets，find out whether the Moon is in conjunction with a planet or with the Sun or in aspect with any of them，and whether it［the Moon］parts from an aspect with a planet and gives power to another planet，as is written in the Book of the Beginning of Wisdom．${ }^{2}$（3）Know that the Moon is a major root in any interrogation，${ }^{3}$ because it is close to the Earth and its light is analogous to the new－born，in that it appears，then grows，and afterwards wanes until its light disappears．${ }^{4}$（4）Also，because the Moon is like a body，it receives power from the upper 〈planets〉 and gives it to what is below it；therefore，you should observe its position in any interrogation． （5）To be short，I shall designate the Moon the＂significator，＂because in any interrogation it signifies good fortune and misfortune．

5 （1）Dorotheus said：observe the lord of the ascendant sign，or the lord of its exaltation，or 〈the lord of the house［i．e．，the sign］of the triplicity， or the lord of the term，or the lord of the decan ${ }^{1}$－whichever of them aspects the ascendant degree and is closer to it．But if the significator aspects any of them，take it and ignore the others，for it is designated the ruler．${ }^{2}$（2）Now if the ruler is in the first 〈horoscopic〉 place，this signifies that the querent will pose a question about his life or bodily health；if in the second place，about money；if in the third place about his brothers or kin；and likewise for all the other places according to their division．${ }^{3}$

6 （1）I 〈now $\rangle$ give you a general rule：if you find the ruler in the seventh place（and I have already mentioned in the Book of Nativities that the seventh place is the place of women，wars，and partnership）${ }^{1}$ you should combine the nature of the planet，as explained in 〈the Book of the〉 Beginning of Wisdom，${ }^{2}$ with［that of］the $\langle$ horoscopic $\rangle$ place where it［the

היה השליט שבתאי1 והוא בבית השביעי, בעבור כי תולדתו להזיק וֹו והוא יור יורה על כל דבר קדמון, תדע כי עקר השאלה בעבור פחד שיש לשואל בעבור דברים קדמונים; ואם צדק הוא השליט יורה על שותפות, כי² תולדתו יורה על פל הממון ועל הרי בריוחי ואם מאדים³ יורה על מלחמות או מריבות כי כן תולדתו³; ואם השמש5 יורה על על
 בעבור דברים שאין להם עיקר רק להראות הניצוח; ואם הלבנה, על דבר שבינו לבין אשתו. (3) וכדרך הזאת11 תעשה בשאר הבתים.

7 (1) אמר יעקב אל כנדי: הסתכל אל מקום השמש ביום ואל מקום הלבנה ביום ובלילה, ואל מקום מחברת המאורות או נכחם, אי זה מהם שיה שיהיה וֹה קודם הודם השאלה,
 ככתוב בספר הטעמים, וראה השליט15 צל אלה¹6 המקומות, וממנו תדין על השאלה.

8 (1) יש לך להשמר, שאם 8 מצאת כוכב במזל הצומח, ראה מה תולדתו ועל אי זה
 עליו הבית עם תולדתו. (2) והנה טלה ושבתאי שם. (3) והנה ${ }^{20}$ הוא בעל הבית העשירי ובעל הבית העשתי עשר, שיורה על האוהבים. (4) ובעבור כי תודלתו לבקש שררה (322 ולעשות חמס ואיננו מבקש אהבה, על כן תדין23 כי השאלה היאי24 בעבור שלטון.

9 והקרובים28 גם יורה על כי הבית השלישי הוא מזל על צורת האדם, אז תדין כי השאאלה היא בעבור אחד הקרובים, והכלל שהם32 בני אדם. (3) ורבים אמרו שנסתכל כלו
 המעלה הצומחת ארבע עשרה ${ }^{38}$ מעלות ממזל שור והנה תבא התשיעית במזל בעצמו"39.
 על הממון ... כי כן תולדתו] סיבשמא; ל חסר.
 הוא השליט. 13 ${ }^{13}$

 20 2והנה] סיבשמא; ל והוא. העשירי שהוא בית ... שהוא בית מאדים גם כן. חסר. כי אם היה כוכב בבית הצומח והוא מביט אל הבית השלישי לא יוכל לדין כי כי הבית השלישי מישי מזיק על


 ילשמא החכמה. ל יאתן*] ילמא; סבש חסר. סימא; בש עצמו; ל חסר.
planet］is．（2）Now，if Saturn is the ruler and it is in the seventh place， since its［Saturn＇s］nature is to cause harm and it signifies anything that is ancient，know that the reason for the interrogation is the querent＇s fear of ancient things；if Jupiter is the ruler，it signifies 〈interrogations about $\rangle$ partnership，because its nature signifies money and profit；if Mars， it signifies wars or quarrels，because that is its nature；if the Sun，it signifies things related to the government；if Venus，about women；if Mercury，it signifies quarrels about groundless things and merely for love of disputation；if the Moon，about his relationship with his wife．（3） Proceed similarly for the other $\langle$ horoscopic $\rangle$ places．

7 （1）Ya＇qub al－Kindī ${ }^{1}$ said：observe the Sun＇s position by day and the Moon＇s position by day and by night，the position of the luminaries＇ conjunction or opposition（whichever 〈is the last that〉 occurs before the interrogation），the ascendant degree，and the lot of Fortune by day and by night，as calculated according to Ptolemy＇s method as explained in the Book of Reasons；${ }^{2}$ find out the ruler over these positions and pronounce judgment about the interrogation from it．${ }^{3}$

8 （1）Be careful：if you find a planet in the ascendant sign，determine its nature and over which place it holds lordship，particularly which place it aspects．If it［the planet］aspects two 〈places〉，combine the nature of what is indicated by the place with its［the planet＇s］nature．（2）I $\langle$ now $\rangle$ give you an illustration：〈suppose that〉 the querent poses a question and Aries is the ascendant sign and Saturn is there．（3）Now 〈we know that〉 it［Saturn］ is the lord of the tenth place［i．e．，Capricorn］and the eleventh place ［i．e．，Aquarius］，which signifies lovers．（4）〈However〉，since its［Saturn＇s］ nature is to seek domination and do violence，but not to seek love，you should judge that the interrogation is about government．${ }^{1,2}$

9 （1）You should also pay attention to the nature of the place；for example the third place，which signifies brothers and kin but also the sciences and short journeys．（2）Now if you find that the third place is a sign with a human shape，judge that the interrogation is about one of his kin，and the general rule is that＜even if the interrogation is not about his kin，this sign indicates that $\rangle$ it is about human beings．（3）Many said that we should observe the place to which the ninth－part ${ }^{1}$ was assigned，as explained in the Book of the Beginning of Wisdom．${ }^{2}$（4）I now give you an illustration： suppose that the ascendant degree is Taurus $14^{\circ}$ and that the ninth－part is assigned to the sign itself［i．e．，the ninth part is assigned to the first place，

10 (1) אמר משאללה4: לעולם5 10

 על דבר ממון, ואם ממאדים על דבר מריבה או דבר האחים, ואם מהשמש על פלוּ דבר


ותבונה14. (3) ואם לא נפרדה מכוכב תורה כי ישאל על דבר15 בטל16.
11 (1) אמר רזק 11 (17) לעולם הסתכל בכל שאלה אל הגורל הטוב, וכפי מקומו ומקום

 משאללה22, וככהל ${ }^{23}$ נסיתי פעמים רבות ${ }^{24}$, ונשתף ${ }^{25}$ עמהם דבר הלבנה. (4) ובעבור שלא יתערב ${ }^{26}$ על התלמיד²3, הוצרכתי לעשות28 חיבור29 זה הספר על דרך שנים עשר

הבתים30.

1 (1) הבית הראשון: דע כי מחלוקת גדולה יש בין החכמים בדברי השאלות. (2) יש אומרים131, אם שאל שואל בעבור אדם אחר ב23, לעולם הסתכל אל המזל הצומח כי הוא


 לו, קח40 הבית14 השלישי ומקום לו2 מאדים, ומשם ${ }^{43}$ תדין. (5) וכמו כן, אם ישאל על







 ש משאלה; מ מאשא אלה. סיבמ; א ונשתתף; ל ונשתוף; ש ותשתתף. סבת סשלא יתערב] סילבמ; א שלא יתערבב; ש > ולא יכבד. 27התלמיד] סיבשמא; ל התלמוד. 28 28 לעשות] ס; ילשמבא להיות.

 77 37אם] סילמבש; א אם. חסר. ${ }^{41}{ }^{41}$ ]ית] ס; ילבשא מהבית; מ מן הבית. סומקום] סלבשמא; י מקום. ושם. $4{ }^{44}$ סילבמ; ש בעבור; א חסר.
the place of life］．This means that he will pose a question about how many years he will live or about the health of his body，but if the ninth－part is assigned to Gemini［i．e．，the ninth part is assigned to the second place］ he will pose a question about money．${ }^{3}$

10 （1）Māshā’allāh said：always observe the position of the Moon．（2）If it has parted from conjunction with Saturn or an aspect with it，whichever aspect may be，know that the querent will pose a question about his end， because of some anxiety he feels；if it has parted from conjunction or an aspect with Jupiter，the question is about money；if 〈it has parted from conjunction or an aspect $\rangle$ with Mars，$\langle$ the interrogation is $\rangle$ about quarrels or brothers；if from the Sun，about the government or the father；if from Venus，about women and pleasures；if from Mercury，about wisdom and intellect．（3）But if it has not parted from 〈any〉 planet，it means that he will pose a question about vain things．${ }^{1}$

11 （1）Razeq ${ }^{1}$ said：in any interrogation always observe the lot of Fortune and pronounce judgment according to its position and the position of its lord．${ }^{2}$（2）I，Abraham，say that the correct method is that you should always observe the ruler and associate with it the lord of the hour，${ }^{3}$ because it has a great power in interrogations．${ }^{4}$（3）This was taught by Dorotheus and also by Māshāallāh，and I have tested it by experience many times；and we should associate with them the Moon as well．（4）To spare the student from confusion，I have had to write this book using the method of the twelve 〈horoscopic〉 places．

1 （1）The first place．Know that there is a great disagreement among astrologers about interrogations．（2）Some say：if the querent poses a question about another person，always look at the ascendant because it is the root，and pronounce judgment according to what you have observed． （3）Others said that the ascendant sign always corresponds to the querent and the seventh place to the object of the interrogation．（4）But the truth is what I will tell you $\langle$ now $\rangle$ ：if the querent poses a question about himself， take the ascendant sign for him；if on behalf of one of his brothers， whether he will meet him and what will happen to him，take the third place and the position of Mars，and pronounce judgment from there．${ }^{1}$（5） If he poses a question about the father，observe the fourth place and its

אב¹, הסתכל אל הבית² הרביעי ובעליו³, ועל זה הדרך מי ששאל ${ }^{3}$ אל על בן או עבד ${ }^{5}$ או אשה או מלך או אוהב או שונא6. (6) ואם ישאל בעבור אדם אחר7 שאין ערך לבעל
 אל הבית השביעי ואל בעליו, ותסתכל12 לשואל ואל מהמזל הצומח ומבעל ומליו כאשר אפרש בבית השביעי. (7) וככה, אם ישאל ואל המזל הצומח515, ואם הוא עמו16 הסתכל אל הבית העשירי.

2 (1) אמר משאללה17: אם שאל18 שואל19 על מספר חייו הנשארים, הסתכל אל מקומות החיים כאשר אתהב20 עושה לנולד


 בשאלות יותר 30 מן המולדות131, על כן אתה צריך לנהגנה ביום ובלילה אל מקום כרת

בשנים הניהוגים, ככתוב בספר הטעמים32.31.
3 (1) ואם שאל שואל על אדם33 שאין לו ערך אליו, אם הוא חי או"34 מת, הסתכל אל בצל המזל35 הצומח או השליט עליו. (2) והנה, אם מצא מאתו" באי37 זה מקום שיהיה, יורה שהוא מת, ואם מצאתו שהואבי38 למעלה מן הארץ, שהוא בבית העשירי או העשתי עשר
 בסכנת מות44, וככה אם בעל הבית השמיני במעלה הצומחת, אפילו שיהיה כוכב טוב.

4 (1) ומשאללה45 אמר46 כי אם 4 (27 היה בעל הצומח 48 ע" מקובל49 מבעל הבית השמיני, לא יורה על מות רק על פחד. (2) וזה הדבר הנכון50 אם היה לבעל הבית15 השמיני52


 חסר. ${ }^{10}$ הסתכל] סבש; ילמא תסתכל. ${ }^{11}$ "תסתכל] סישמ; לבא הסתכל. ${ }^{11}$ [ותסתכל] סיבשמא; ל ואו תסתכל. ה13ישאל] סילבש; מא שאל. ואל המזל הצומח] סלבשמא; י חסר. ${ }^{116}{ }^{16}$ הוא עמו] סבשמא; לוהוא עמו; י חסר. 17משאללה] ס; פיכ מאשא אלה; א מאשא אללה; מ מאשה אלה; ש משאלה. יל
 ל הגדולים. סיבשמא; ל חסר. יבשא אמר. 30יותר] סיבמא; ש חסר. ${ }^{31}$ המן המולדות] סא; ימהמולדות; ב מבמולדות. ללבנה ... ככתוב בספר הטעמים] סיבשמא; ל חסר. 33אדם] ס; ילשמבא > אחד. 3 ס ${ }^{33}$ אי או] סיבשמא; ל חסר.
 בז'; ש הוא בשביעי. 33 הוא] סלבשמא; יחסר. 44 בסכנת מות] סילמבש; א בסכנה. ${ }^{45}$ [ומשאללה] סב; ימ ומאשא אלה; לומה שאללה; שומשאלה; א חסר. 88בעל הצומח] סילבמ; שא חסר. [31 ${ }^{51}$ ] סילבמ; שא חסר. 52 השמיני] סלמש; י הח'; ב הט'; א חסר.
lord，and proceed likewise 〈if he poses a question〉 about a son，a slave，a woman，a king，a lover，or an enemy．${ }^{2}$（6）If the querent poses a question about another person who has no ties of kinship with him，look at the ascendant sign；if he poses a question about a quarrel，look at the seventh place ${ }^{3}$ and its lord；and for the querent look at the ascendant sign and its lord，as I will explain in the seventh place．（7）Likewise，if he poses a question about a king who is not favorably inclined to him，look at the position of the Sun and the ascendant sign，but if he is favorably inclined to him look at the tenth place．${ }^{4}$

2 （1）Māshā’allāh said：if the querent poses a question about the number ＜of years〉 left for him to live，look at the places of life as you do for a native．${ }^{1}$（2）But whereas if you find that the ruler of the place of life ${ }^{2}$ is in a fortunate position，which in a natal horoscope indicates that he［the native］will live the great years 〈corresponding to the ruler〉，do not follow the same procedure in interrogations if the querent is an old person， where it is a great thing if 〈the years he still has to live〉 correspond to the least years ${ }^{3}$ of the ruler．${ }^{4}$（3）You should rely on the directions as I explained 〈them〉 for you in the Book of Nativities．${ }^{5}$ But I would say only that the Moon has more power in interrogations than in nativities；hence you should direct it［the place of the Moon］by day and by night to the place of death，using the two methods of directions，as written in the Book of Reasons．${ }^{6,7}$

3 （1）If the querent poses a question about someone with whom he has no ties of kinship，whether alive or dead，look at the lord of the ascendant sign or its ruler．（2）Now if you find it to be under the rays of the Sun in any place whatsoever，this indicates that he is dead；${ }^{1}$ if you find it above the Earth，which is the tenth or the eleventh place，know that he is alive and living in his home；if 〈you find it〉 in the seventh or ninth〈place〉，he is alive，too，but is roaming away from home；and if 〈you find it〉 in the eighth 〈place〉，he is alive but facing mortal peril；and the same applies if the lord of the eighth place is in the ascendant degree，even if it is a benefic planet．${ }^{2}$

4 （1）Māshā’allāh said that if the lord of the ascendant is received by the lord of the eighth place，${ }^{1}$ it indicates not death but fear．（2）This is true if the lord of the eighth place exercises lordship，even to a small extent，over

שלטון, אפילוי¹ מעט, במזל הצומח², או יהיה³ בעל השעה4. (3) ואם בשנים עשר5 5 הוא שבוי או חבוש בבית האסורים', ואם היה במזל הצומח יורה שהוא חי רק ימות מהרה, ואם הוא ברביעי כבר מת ונקבר, ואם בששי מת מחולי, גם בשלישי ככה. (4) רק בשני ובחמישי8 הדבר בספק: ישף לך לך להסתכל אל המורה; אם הוא יתן כחו לכוכב שהוא למעלה מן הארץ, הוא חי, ואם למטה מהארץ 2420 , 342 למעלה11 מהארץ12 והוא נותן כחו לכוכב תחת הארץ, הוא חי רק ימות מהרה, ואם היה כוכב13 במעלה הצומחת והוא נותן כחו לכוכב שהוא בבית הרביעי, אי זה כוכב שיהיה, כבר מת ונקבר. (5) ואם בעל הצומח תחת הארץ14 ויתן15 הכח לכוכב שהוא

למעלה מהארץ, וככה הלבנה, יורו על סכנה ונזק שעבר על הנשאל וימלטי16.

1 (1) הבית השני נחלק17 לחלקים רבים18.1 (2) יש מי שישאל על ממון שיקוה¹9, אם
 השני אל בעל הצומח23 או אל השליט עליוי24, והשליט מביט אל בעל בלי25 הצומח, יעלה בידו הממון שיקוהם26. (4) ובבית השביעי אדבר על הזמנים, כשארצה לדעת מתי יהיה². (5) ואם לא ${ }^{28}$ יהיהיה29 ככה, ובצל בית השני30 מתחבר או" ${ }^{29}$ מותן הכח לצדק, וצדק מביט אל לא יהיה ככה, ויהיה כוכב חמה) בנ4 בבית השני והוא נותן הכח לבעל המזל הצומח, יעלה בידו הממון על ידי אמצעי. (7) ואם לא יהיה ככה, ותמצא המורה שיתן הכח לבעל המזל הצומח, יעלה בידו35 קצת במ" ${ }^{36}$ הממון. (8) ויש לך לשתף בעל הגורל הטוב אם היה במקום טוב ${ }^{37}$ ובעל ביתו מביט אליוו38, שאם יתן הכח לבעל הצומח יעלה בידו מה
 לך להשמר, כי אם 40 היה בעל המזל הצומח או השליט עליו נשרף או חוזר לאחור, לא
 א חסר. ${ }^{4}$ וככה אם בעל הבית השמיני ... יהיה בעל השעה] סילמבש; א חסר.




 יחלק. 18לחלקים רבים] סילבמ; שא לשני חלקים. ${ }^{19}$ ישיקוה] סיבשמא; ל שיקנה. ילשמבא אם לא. "24 צליו] סיבשמאל; ס מוסיף בשוליים: פירוש, אל הצומח.
 היה. ${ }^{30}$ בית השני] ס ; ב הבית הב'; מ השני; ילשמא הבית. חסר. 33יהיה] סיבשמא; ל חסר. ${ }^{33}$ שיכוכב חמה] ס; ילבשא כוכב; הכוכב מ.

 39כלל] סישמא; ל מה שיקוה.
the ascendant sign，or if it is the lord of the hour．${ }^{2}$（3）If $\langle$ the lord of the eighth place 〈exercises lordship〉 over the twelfth $\langle$ place $\rangle,{ }^{3}$ he is a captive or a prisoner in jail，and if 〈it exercises lordship〉 over the ascendant sign it indicates that he is alive but will die soon，and if 〈it exercises lordship $\rangle$ over the fourth $\langle\text { place }\rangle^{4}$ he is already dead and buried，and if over the sixth $\langle\text { place }\rangle^{5}$ he has died of an illness；and this applies also to the third 〈place〉．（4）But if 〈the lord of the eighth place exercises lordship〉 over the second or fifth 〈place〉 the outcome is uncertain：you should look at the significator；if it gives power to a planet that is above the Earth，he is alive，and if below the Earth，he is dead；if the ruler is above the Earth and gives its power to a planet that is in the fourth place，whichever planet it may be，he is already dead and buried．（5） If the lord of the ascendant is below the Earth and gives power to a planet that is above the Earth（so too for the Moon），they signify that the object of the interrogation has been in danger and has been hurt but escaped．${ }^{6}$

1 （1）The second place is divided into many parts．（2）Some people pose questions about money they hope for，whether they will get it or not．（3） If someone poses such a question，observe：if the lord of the second place gives its power to the lord of the ascendant or to its［the ascendant＇s］ruler， and the ruler aspects the lord of the ascendant，he will get the money he expects．（4）In the seventh place I will discuss times，${ }^{1}$ when I want to know when something will come about．（5）But if this is not the case， and the lord of the second place conjoins or gives power to Jupiter，and Jupiter aspects the ascendant sign，he will get the money，but less than he expected．（6）If this is not the case，and Mercury is in the second place and gives power to the lord of the ascendant sign，he will get the money through an intermediary．（7）If this is not the case，and you find that the significator gives power to the lord of the ascendant sign，he will get a small part of the money．（8）You should associate the lord of the lot of Fortune，if it is in a fortunate position，with the lord of its［i．e．， the lord of the lot of Fortune＇s］place that aspects it；if it［the lord of the lot of Fortune］gives power to the lord of the ascendant he will get what he expects．（9）But if you do not find any of the positions I have just mentioned to you，he will not get anything．（10）Look closely：if the lord of the ascendant sign or its ruler is burnt or retrograde，he will not

יהיה מכל אשר יקוה כלום. (11) ואם בעל הבית השני¹ גם בעל המזל הצומח² שניהם³ ${ }^{1}$ ² יתנו הכח לכוכב שיהיה באחת היתדות או בבית עשתי עשר² או החמישי, א׳״
 המקבל9 הכח נשרף או חוזר לאחור10, כי11 ${ }^{11}$ אם היה12 כן יורה על עכובים שיקרו עד שלא יתכן מכל אשר יקוה13 כלום.

2 (1) והחלק השני דבר הלואת 2 (14 ממון15. (2) אמר רזק ${ }^{15}$ (2 ${ }^{16}$ שים המזל הצומח ללוה,

 כי אם בצער גדול ואורך ימים, ואם יביט מאדים לא יקח הלואת וֹו או אלא וקטטות. (4) ואם היה כוכב טוב במזל הצומח ירויח הלוה ואם כוכ כוכב מזיק ואם היה כוכב טוב בבית השביעי ריוח יעלה למלוה²8 על דבר הלואתו ואם שם כוכב מזיק יפסיד.

3 (1) ואם ישאל על ממון שנלקח או שנגנב, אם הושב 3 אבם אם לאי 30 , הסתכל: אם בעל הבית השני יתן הכח לבעל הבית הראשון ${ }^{31}$, או אם היה בעל הבית השני32 במזל33 הצומח, כבר הושב.

> 4 (1) ואם ישאל על דברי 44 שירצה לקנות, אם ירויח 45 בו, בוּ הסתכל אל הבית השני ובעליו ומקום צ36 צדק וגורל הלבנה ובעל גורלה. (2) ויאמר סעיד וֹה כי כי כל דבר שיקנה אדם ${ }^{38}$ והלבנה בחלקה הקטן39 ימצא ריוח גדול בהמכרו", והפך הדבר אם היתה" בחלק השמשי42.

1השני] סלשמא;; הב'; ב חסר. 2או השליט עליונשרף ... בעל המזל הצומח] סילשא; ב חסר. צשניהם*]
 ב שהם; סמ שיש. 'משונים*] ילש; א משונין; ב ממתנים; מס משרתים; ממוסיף בשוליים: פי׳ אחרים שאינם
 מ אחורנית. [14 ${ }^{14}$ ] סיבשמא; ל בלא זאת. סילשמא; ב חסר. ${ }^{18}$ אם] סילבמא; ש חסר. ${ }^{19}$ שבתי מביט] סשל; מ מבט שבתי; יבא שבתי. ${ }^{19}$ שלכוכב] סילבשא; מ מכוכב. א חסר. ב מזיב; יל חסר. 27אם היה כוכב טוב במזל הצומח ירויח הלוה ואם מזיק יפסיד] סבשמא; יל חסר.
 31 הראשון] סמ; ב הא'; יל הזה.
 סיבשמ; ל במקום. מוסיף בשוליים: הקטן והוא מתואר בספר הטעמים; ס מוסיף בשוליים: ר״ל מראש דלי צד סוף סרטן.


בחלק השמש] סילמבש; א חסר.
get anything of what he expects．（11）But if both the lord of the second place and the lord of the ascendant sign give power to a planet that is in one of the cardines or in the eleventh place or the fifth 〈place〉，even though those that give $\langle$ power $\rangle$ are in incompatible positions，${ }^{2}$ he will get it through an intermediary．（12）Look closely 〈to see whether〉 the planet that receives power is not burnt or retrograde，because in this case it signifies obstacles that will take place until nothing that he expected is possible．

2 （1）The second part deals with monetary loans．（2）Razeq said：assign the ascendant sign to the borrower，the seventh place to the lender，and assign the position of Mercury and the Moon to the loan．（3）Now if you find that Saturn aspects Mercury or the Moon，judge that he will be able to get $\langle$ back $\rangle$ his money only with great pains and after great sorrow and a long delay，and if Mars aspects 〈Mercury or the Moon〉 he will get his loan 〈back〉 only after quarrels and fights．（4）If a benefic planet is in the ascendant sign the borrower will profit and if a malefic planet he will lose；but if a benefic planet is in the seventh place the lender will profit from his loan and if a malefic planet is there he will lose．${ }^{1}$

3 （1）If $\langle$ someone $\rangle$ poses a question about money that has been taken or stolen－whether it has been given back or not？－observe：if the lord of the second place gives power to the lord of the first place，or if the lord of the second place is in the ascendant sign，it has been already given back．${ }^{1}$

4 （1）If $\langle$ someone $\rangle$ poses a question about something he wants to buy， whether he will profit from it，observe the second place and its lord and the position of Jupiter and the lot of the Moon and the lord of its［the Moon＇s］lot．${ }^{1}$（2） $\mathrm{Sa}^{\text {＇} 1 \mathrm{~d}^{2}}$ said that anything someone buys when the Moon is in its smaller domain will bring great profit when sold，and the opposite applies if it 〈the Moon〉 is in the domain of the Sun．${ }^{3,4}$

1 (1) הבית השלישי11: אם ישאל שואל בעבור אחיו או קרוביו², אם יתחבר עמו, שים המזל3 הצומח ובעליו4 לשואל והבית השלישי ובעליו בעבור הנשאל5. (2) ואם6 מצאתם7 נחברים או מביטים8, יתחברו׳. (3) והנה, אם היה בעל הבית השלישי במזל הצומח במהרה יבא אליו על מנת אם איננו חוזר לאחור, כי אם היה חוזר לאחור10, אחר שתהיה דעתו לבא, ינחם. (4) ואם בעל המזל הצומח בבית השלישי, לא יתחבר עמו צד שילך השואל אליו, ואם היה בעל הבית השלישי או מאדים מתחבר או" ${ }^{11}$ מביט אל בעל המזל12 הצומח ויביט אל המזל13 הצומח44, יורה כי יתחבר עמו. (5) ואם מצאת המורה שיתן הכח לבעל המזל הצומח או שיתחבר | עם ${ }^{15}$ בעל הבית השלישי או מאדים, או יהיה מבטי16 טוב עם אחד17 מהם, יורה שיתחברו18.

2 (1) ואם אדם ישאל על אחר919 שאיננו ממשפחתו, אם ישוב במהרה אל ביתו, הסתכל: אם מצאת בעל המזל הצומח בבית העשירי20 או בעל השצה, דע כי במהרהיבוא, ויותר קרוב אם היה המזל מהתפך, שיתכן21 שלא יתעכב ימים רק שעות ${ }^{21}$ שי (2) ואם היה בבית הראשון יהיה לו עכוב מעט ויבא, ואם היה בבית השביעי הוא ילך למקום 23 אחר. (3) וככה תדין אם ראית בעל המזל הצומח יוצאה ${ }^{24}$ ממזל25 אל מזל, אך ${ }^{26}$ ילך ממקום אל מקום. (4) ואם היה בעל המזל הצומח באחת היתדות חוזר אחורנית, במהרה יבאש, ואם היה בבית התשיעי או השלישי, יורה כי הוא בדרך רק יתאחר לבא. ואם היה בבית עשתי עשר28 או הבית החמישי, יבא אחר עכוב, ובשאר הבתים לא יבא.

3 (1) ומשאללה29 אמר30 שנסה שיותר כח יש לבעל השעה 31 ממה32 שיש לבעל המזל הצומח.
 סילמבש; א חסר. 5בעבור הנשאל] סישמא; ל בעבור השואל; ב לנשאל. ${ }^{6}$ אואם] סילבמ; ש אם; א חסר. Tצאתם] סילבמ; ש מצאת אותם; א חסר. צ'נחברים או מביטים] סילשמ; ב ש; א חסר. פואם מצאתם נחברים או מביטים יתחברו] סילמבש; א חסר. או] סילמבש; א חסר. 12המזל] סשא; ילבמ מזל. ${ }^{13}$ אהמזל] סישמא; ל מזל; ב חסר.
 חסר. $\left.{ }^{71}{ }^{17}\right]$ סילשמ; ב אחר טוב; א חסר. ${ }^{18}$ בעל הבית השלישי ... מהם יורה שיתחברו] סילמבש; א חסר. ${ }^{19}$ אחר] סילמא; ש אחד; ב א׳. חסר. 22שיתכן שלאיתעכב ימים רק שעות] סילמבש; א חסר. ${ }^{23}$ אלמקום] סילמבש; א במקום. $\left.{ }^{24}{ }^{24}{ }^{14}\right]$ סיבשמא; ל חסר. 25ממזל] סיבשמא; ל מן הזל. ${ }^{25}$ [אך ${ }^{*}$ [ ישמא; לב אז; ס חסר. 27יבא*] ילבמא; סש חסר.


1 (1) The third place. If a querent poses a question about his brothers or kin-whether he will come meet him-assign the ascendant sign and its lord to the querent and the third place and its lord to the object of the interrogation. (2) If you find that they [the lord of the ascendant and the lord of the third place] are in conjunction or in aspect, they will meet each other. ${ }^{1}$ (3) Now if the lord of the third place is in the ascendant sign, he [the brother or kinsman] will come to him [to the querent] soon, on condition that it [the lord of the third place] is not retrograde; for if it is retrograde ${ }^{2}$ he will change his mind after having decided to come. (4) If the lord of the ascendant sign is in the third place, he will not meet him until the querent goes to him; but if the lord of the third place or Mars is in conjunction with or aspects the lord of the ascendant sign or the ascendant sign, it indicates that he [his brother or relative] will come meet him $^{3}$ [the querent]. (5) If you find that the significator gives power to the lord of the ascendant sign or is in conjunction with the lord of the third place or with Mars, or it is in a fortunate aspect with anyone of them, it signifies that they will meet.

2 (1) If someone asks whether someone who is not his kin will return home soon, observe: if you find the lord of the ascendant sign or the lord or the hour in the tenth place, know that he will come soon, and even sooner if it is in a tropical sign, since it is possible that it is only hours away and not days. ${ }^{1}$ (2) If it [the lord of the ascendant sign or the lord or the hour] is in the first place he will come after a short delay, but if it is in the seventh place he will go to another place. (3) Pronounce a similar judgment if you see that the lord of the ascendant sign moves away from one sign to another sign; 〈in this case〉 he will go from one place to another place. (4) If the lord of the ascendant sign is retrograde in one of the cardines, he will come soon, ${ }^{2}$ and if it is in the ninth or the third place, it signifies that he is on his way but will be delayed. If it is in the eleventh or fifth place he will come after a while, but $\langle$ if it is $\rangle$ in the other places he will not come.

3 (1) Māshāallāh said that he found by empirical experience that the lord of the hour is more powerful than the lord of the ascendant sign.

4 (1) ואם אדם ישאל ללכת אל דרך קרובה, הסתכל: אם מצאת השליט שהוא ברביעית הגלגל1 שתחלתו מהבית² העשירי עד המעלה הצומחת, או ברביעית האחרת שהיא מתחלת הבית הרביצי צד תחלת³ הבית השביצי4, דון כי לא יוכל ללכת כלל, ואם היה בשתי הרביעיות האחרות, הנה עדות אחת על הליכתו. (2) ואם בעל המזל הצומח יתן הכח5 לבעל הבית6 השלישי או לכוכב שהוא בבית השלישי, ויהיה7 אותו הכוכב המקבל הכח ברביעיות ${ }^{8}$ שהם" ${ }^{9}$ נקבות10, יתכן הליכתו, ואם 11 ברביעיות212 שהם זכרים313, לא יתכן14. (3) ואם היה15 בעל המזל הצומח או בעל הבית השלישי או המקבל כחם חוזר אחורנית, לא יתכן הליכתו כלל באי זה רביעית שיהיה, רק אם היה ברביציות הנקבות כאשר יהיה ישר16 בהליכתו אז יתכן הליכתו.

1 (1) הבית הרביעי: השואל בעבור דבר שירצה להחל, איך תהיה אחריתו, הסתכל אל הבית הרביעי. (2) אם הוא מן המזלות הישרים גם הלבנה במזל ישר, הנה שנים17 עדים כשרים כי האחרית תהיה18 טובה. (3) וככה אם יהיה19 כוכב טוב בבית הרביעי,

 שלטון שם, או באחת היתדות ולא שב אחורנית"27. (5) והפך הדבר אם היהבי בית בית הרביעי מהמזלות המעוותים,
 בבית32 הרביעי, או יהיה בעל בית הרביעי33 נשרף או שב אחורנית או" בבית³5 רע.

2 (1) והשואל בעבור קרקע ומצאת שבתאי36 בבית הרביעי, איננו מזיק, כי 2 וֹי הוא יורה על הקרקצות

[^54]4 （1）If someone poses a question about taking a short journey，observe： if you find that the ruler is in the quadrant of the zodiac from the cusp of the tenth place until the ascendant degree，or in the other quadrant from the cusp of the fourth place to the cusp of the seventh place，judge that he will not be able to take the journey at all，but if it［the ruler］is in＜either of）the other two quadrants，this is one witness for his going．（2）If the lord of the ascendant sign gives power to the lord of the third place or to a planet that is in the third place，and the planet that receives power is in 〈one of〉 the feminine quadrants，the journey might be possible； but if $\langle$ it is $\rangle$ in $\langle$ one of $\rangle$ the masculine quadrants，$\langle$ the journey $\rangle$ is not possible．（3）If the lord of the ascendant sign or the lord of the third place or 〈the planet that〉 receives their power is retrograde，〈the journey〉 is not possible for him at all，no matter the quadrant，but if it is in a feminine quadrant and direct in its motion，then the journey might be possible．${ }^{1,2}$

1 （1）The fourth place．〈If the querent〉 poses a question about the end of an activity he wishes to begin，observe the fourth place．（2）If it is in one of the straight signs and the Moon too is in a straight sign，these are two fit witnesses that the end will be fortunate．（3）The same applies if a benefic planet is in the fourth place，as well as if the Moon is in its house［Cancer］or in conjunction or aspect with a benefic planet．（4） Observe also the lord of the place where the Moon is，whether it is direct in its motion，or under the $\langle$ ray of the $\rangle$ Sun，or in a place where it［the lord of the house where the Moon is］exercises lordship，or in one of the cardines；the same applies to the lord of the fourth place if it is in a fortunate place and is neither burnt nor retrograde．（5）But the opposite applies if the fourth place is one of the crooked signs，or if the Moon is in a crooked sign together with a malefic planet in conjunction or in aspect，or if a malefic planet is in the fourth place，or if the lord of the fourth place is burnt or retrograde or in an unfortunate＜horoscopic〉 place．${ }^{1}$

2 （1）〈If the querent〉 poses a question about land and you find Saturn in the fourth place，this is not unfortunate，because it［the fourth place］ signifies landed estates．${ }^{1}$（2）But if Mars is there［in the fourth place］，it is very inauspicious．${ }^{2}$

3 (1) ואם היה השואל שלטון1, וירצה לדעת אם יקשרו אנשי ארצו עליו או לא, כי הבית² הרביעי שהוא בית הקרקעות הוא בית מדינות המלך, הסתכל אל בעל הבית³ הרביצי4. (2) אם היה במבט נכח עם המזל הצומח או עם בעליו, או יהיה כוכב בבית הרביעי מביט מבט5 רע אל בעל המזל הצומח, או תהיה הלבנה נכח השמש, הנה אלה עדים כי יקשרו, ואם לא היה ככה לאיקשרו. (3) ובבית השביעי אפרש לך אם יקשרו6 ומיר ינצח.

4 (1) ויש מחכמי המזלות שדברו על דבר המטמונות, והנה אומר לך${ }^{8}$ דבריהם. (2) אמר דורוניאוס9: אם יטמין10 אדם דבר תחת הארץ והלבנה תחת אור השמש, לאימצא לעולם. (3) אמר משאללה11: יש לך לחפשי12 בתחלה אם יש שם313 מטמון או לא. (4) קח המעלה הצומחת ברגע השאלה, ותקן מקום הכוכבים, ודע אם יש להם מרחב מחשב אפודת הגלגל14. (5) והנה, | אם מצאת מאדים באחת היתדות, יורה כי אין שם כלום, וככה שבתאי15. (6) רק אם היה בעל אחת היתדות באחד מהםם, יורה כיור כי כבר חפשו אחריו והוציאוהו, ואם היה שם צדק או נגה, ואף כי אם היו בבית ${ }^{17}$ השביעי, אין ספק ששם מטמון רק18 שלא יהיו נשרפים ולא שבים אחורנית, ואם היו שם כוכבים טובים

ומזיקים, כבר נמצא ממנו ונשאר מקצת
5 (1) ואם020 רצית לדעת מקומו, רבע המקום 5 לארבע הטוב שיורה על המטמון באיזה יתד הואי, ואותו יתד מאי זה חלק מן הפאות הוא, ככתוב בספר ראשית חכמה24.

6 בו. (2) וקח לכל שבע" ${ }^{28}$ מעלות וחצי מזל אחד ותחל לספור מן המזל ששם הכוכב, ודע 29 אותו מזל לאי זה פאה מארבע30 הרוחות ${ }^{30}$ הוא הוא. (3) ועוד תוכל לדקדק, שתדע בעל המזל שנפל בו החילוק, לאי זה פאה הוא³, ודע כמה מעלות עבר מן המזל, וקח
 ילא; ש עליו אנשי ארצו או לא דע כי הבית; מ אנשי ארצו עליו או לא דע כי הבית; ב או שיארע עליו או לא דע כי הבית. ${ }^{3} ש^{3}$ בוא בית הקרקצות הוא בית מדינות המלך הסתכל אל בעל הבית] סילמא;

 10יטמין] סיש; לבמא יטמון. באי [11 ${ }^{11}$ ימאללה] סב; י מאשא אלה; א מאשא אללה; מ מאשה אלה; ש משאלה; ל אללה. 15 15בתאי] סש; ילבמא שבתי. בבית] סמ; יבא הבית; לש בבית. מ נפסק באמצע הדף. סלא; יב לד'; שלארבעה. החכמה; ב בראשית חכמה.
 חסר. סילשא; ב חסר; כאן א נפסק.

3 （1）If 〈the querent〉 is a ruler and wishes to know whether the people of his country will conspire against him，observe the lord of the fourth place－for the fourth place，which is the place of landed estates，is also the place of the king＇s cities．${ }^{1}$（2）If it［the lord of the fourth place］is in opposition to the ascendant sign or to its lord，or if a planet in the fourth place is in an unfortunate aspect with the lord of the ascendant sign，or if the Moon is in opposition to the Sun，these are witnesses that they will conspire $\langle$ against the king $\rangle$ ；${ }^{2}$ but otherwise they will not conspire〈against him＞．（3）In the seventh place I will explain to you whether they will conspire and who will be victorious．${ }^{3}$

4 （1）Some astrologers discussed the topic of hidden treasure，${ }^{1}$ and now I will tell you what they said．（2）Dorotheus said：if someone buries something under the earth when the Moon is under the ray of the Sun， it will never be found．${ }^{2}$（3）Māshā’allāh said：first you should find out whether or not there is a buried treasure．（4）Take the ascendant degree at the time of the interrogation，determine the position of the planets， and find out whether they have any latitude with respect to the ecliptic． （5）Now if you find Mars in any of the cardines，it signifies that there is no 〈treasure〉，and the same applies to Saturn．${ }^{3}$（6）But if the lord of any of the cardines is in one of them，it signifies that people have already looked for it and removed it，and if Jupiter or Venus is there， particularly if it is in the seventh place，there is no doubt that there is a buried treasure，${ }^{4}$ 〈but only〉 on condition that it 〈Jupiter or Venus〉 is neither burnt nor retrograde；and if benefic and malefic planets are there，it has already been found and only a small part of it has been left．

5 （1）If you wish to know its location，divide the place into four quad－ rants，find the cardo in which the benefic planet that signifies the treasure is located，and which is the cardinal point of this cardo，${ }^{1}$ as explained in the Book of the Beginning of Wisdom．${ }^{2}$

6 （1）Māshā’allāh said：find out how many degrees this planet has moved from the 〈beginning of the〉 sign it is in．（2）Assign one sign to every seven and a half degrees and begin counting from the sign where the planet is， and find out in which of the four cardinal points this sign is．（3）You may be even more precise if you find out the cardinal point of the lord of the sign which was assigned by this division，〈then〉 find out how many degrees it has moved from this sign，and assign one sign to every seven

לכל1 שבע² מעלות וחצי מזל ועשה כדרך שהראתיך33 בראשונה. ועשה עוד פעם
שלישית אם רצית.4.
7 (1) אמר אבו עלי: אם רצית לדעת מקומו הסתכל5: אם היה הכוכב שיורה על המטמון ${ }^{6}$ במזל עומד, הוא תחת${ }^{7}$ הארץ, ואם היה8 במתהפך, הוא בתקרת הגג, ואם הוא9 במזל משני גופות, הוא בקיר. (2) ואם היתה הלבנה עם הכוכב הטוב או תביט אליו, הוא סמוך לפתח הבית, ואם תביט השמש ואין שם מבט הלבנה, יהיה באמצע, ואם הכוכב הטוב10 יתן כחו לשבתאי, הוא במקום מטונף התפלה, ומאדים על מקום 12 מוקד האש, והשמש על המקום הנכבד שיש בבית, ונגה על המטה31, וכוכב חמה14 על מקום הלמוד והאומנות.

8 (1) אמר אלכנדי: עשה עגול בבית כאלו הוא¹5 חשב אפודת הגלגל, ודע הכוכב שיורה על המטמון באי זה בית הוא, ובאותו הצד16 בקש והסתכל כמה רחבו. (2) והנה¹7, אם מצאת שהוא בחשב האפודה, הנו בקו העגול18, ואם שמאלי, הנו מחוץ לעגול, ואם דרומי, לפנים19 מן העגול 20. (3) ואם היה הכוכב במקום גבהותו, דע כי היה המטמון ${ }^{21}$ במקום עמוק מאד 22 , והפך זה אם היה במקום שפלותו.

9 (1) ואם השואל ישאל על דבר שיסתיר23 ותרצה לדעת מה הוא, דע המעלה הצומחת, ואנה הוא בעל המזל44, ועם25 אי זי זה כוכב יתחבר או יביט אליו, גם דעי מקום הלבנה. (2) והנה, אם היה המזל27 הצומח אחד ממזלות²8 העפר ובעל המזל במזל29 העפר30 וככה הלבנה, הנו דבר נבזה שתולדתו מן הארץ, כמו אבן ועפרב131, ושבתאי יורה על תבן. (3) ואם המזל העולה הוא ממזלות האש, הוא דבר נכבד כמו זהב ואבן יקרה, וככה תורה השמש אם היה במזל הצומח. (4) ואם המזל העולה ממזלות המים, יורה32, אם יביט נוגה אל המזל הצומח, אל בדולחה33, ואם אינו מביט, הוא דבר נבזה שיוצא מן המים, כמו קנה. (5) ואם המזל34 הצולה ממזלות הרוח, יורה על דבר בינוני, לא נכבד ולא נבזה.




 "18הצגול] סיבשא; ל העיגול. המטמון*] א; ס היה הטמון; ל הממון; יש הואיש; ב היה. ב > מסתיר. "גם דע] סיבשא; ל אם ידע. ש ממזל. בדולח*] ישא; ל על בדולח; ב יורה אל קר ולח. ${ }^{3}$ בהמזל] סשא; ילב היה.
and a half degrees and proceed as I have already indicated above．If you wish you may proceed the same way a third time，too．${ }^{1}$

7 （1）Abū＇Alī1 said：if you wish to know its［the buried treasure＇s］ location，observe：if the planet that signifies the treasure is in a fixed sign， it is under the earth；if in a tropical 〈sign〉，it is in the rafters；and if in a bicorporal $\langle\operatorname{sign}\rangle$ ，in the wall．（2）If the Moon is with a benefic planet or aspects it，it is close to the door of the house；if it［the Moon］aspects the Sun but there is no aspect with the Moon［i．e．，the planet that signifies the treasure does not aspect the Moon］，it is in the center 〈of the house〉； and if the benefic planet gives its power to Saturn，it is in a filthy place．（3） Jupiter signifies the place of prayer，Mars the hearth，the Sun the 〈most〉 honorable place in the house，Venus the bed，and Mercury the place of learning and crafts．${ }^{2}$

8 （1）Al－Kindī said：draw a circle in the house，as if it were the ecliptic， find out in which 〈horoscopic〉 place is the planet that signifies the treasure，and determine its［the planet that signifies the treasure］latitude on that side 〈of the ecliptic〉．（2）Now if you find that it［the planet that signifies the treasure］is in the ecliptic，it［the treasure］is in the circle， and if it is northern 〈to the ecliptic〉，it is outside the circle，and if it is southern 〈to the ecliptic〉，it is inside the circle．（3）If the planet is at its apogee，know that the treasure is in a very deep place，and the contrary if it is at its perigee．${ }^{1}$

9 （1）If the querent poses a question about something he is going to hide and you wish to know what it is，find out the ascendant degree， where the lord of the sign $\langle$ of the ascendant〉 is，with which planet it is in conjunction or in aspect，and also find out the position of the Moon． （2）Now if the ascendant sign is one of the earthy signs and the lord of the sign 〈of the ascendant〉 and the Moon are in an earthy sign，it［the hidden thing］is an ignoble thing of an earthy nature，such as a stone or dust；Saturn signifies straw．（3）If the rising sign is one of the fiery signs， it is a noble thing，such as gold or a precious stone，and this is what the Sun signifies if it is in the ascendant sign．（4）If the rising sign is one of the watery signs，and if Venus aspects the ascendant sign，it signifies〈that the hidden thing is〉 a crystal，but if it does not aspect，〈it signifies〉 something ignoble that grows in water，like reeds．（5）If the rising sign is one of the airy signs，it signifies something intermediate，neither noble nor ignoble．${ }^{1}$

10 (1) הנה, יש לנו לערב המזל הצומח ובעל המזל באיזה זה מזל הוא, ומקום הלבנה באי זה מזל הוא¹0. (2) ואם מצאת כוכב במזל הצומח, הנח כל העדויות וקח מה שיורה הוא לבדו², ובראשית חכמה³ תמצא כל מה שיורו שי שבעה4 המשרתים5. (3) ואם ואם היה בעל המזל הצומח מזרחי מן השמש6, הוא חל חדש, ואם מע מערבי, הוא ישן. (4) ושבתאי

 שבתאי הוא שחור, ואם צדק ירוק יפה מעורב, ואם ככב חמה" גוונים18 רבים יש לו19, והלבנה תורה על לבן שאינו זך.

## 5§

1 (1) הבית החמישי: אם שאל20 שואל על דבר אשה, אם היא הרה ואם 1 (1) לא, הסתכל


 מביט אל המעלה הצומחת, אז יורה על הריון. (3) ואם היה המורה נותן כחו לכוכב שהוא31 באחד הבתים הנופלים, או יהיה ${ }^{31}$ המבוֹ המזל הצומח מתהפך, לאות כי אין שם הריון33, ואם מצאת המזל הצומח מהמזלות שיש להם של שני לעי34 גופות, לאות על ההריון. (4) אמר דורוניאוס35: לעולם הסתכל אל בעל השעה. אם היה באחתבא" היתדות, והוא
 ואם היה" ${ }^{40}{ }^{41}$ מתהפך, עדותו חצי עדות.

2 (1) ואם שאל שואל אם יהיה 2 (124343 בן, הסתכל: אם היה בעל הבית החמישי במזל הצומח ואיננו נשרף ולא חוזר, יורה שיהיה לו בן. (2) וככה אם היה בעל המזל45 הצומח

1ומקום הלבנה באי זה מזל הוא*] ילבא; ס ומקום הלבנה; ש חסר. ${ }^{*}$ לבדו] סיבשא; ל לה וכדאי. 3 ובראשית חכמה] סב; ילא ובראשית החכמה; שובספר ראשית החכמה. ${ }^{4}$ שבבצה] סל; י הז׳; ש השבעה;

 מעפש*] יבשא; סל חסר.
 > הוא. סא; ילש יש בו; ב חסר. סבא באל] סילשא; ב ישאל. ס; ילבא היה המורה; ש המורה היה. חסר. 25 על] סיבש; לא חסר. סילמבש; א חסר. סר
 ל חסר. 323יהיה] סבשא; יל היה. ילמבשא שתי. סל; יב ב'שמא שתי. [14 ${ }^{41}$ ] סישמא; לב המזל. מזל. $\left.{ }^{45}{ }^{45}\right]$ סא; ילמבש חסר.

10 （1）Now we should associate the ascendant sign with the lord of the sign 〈and find out〉 in which sign it is，and 〈find out〉 the sign in which the Moon is located．${ }^{1}$（2）But if you find a planet in the ascendant sign，leave all the 〈other〉 witnesses and take what it［the planet in the ascendant sign］signifies alone；in 〈the Book of〉 the Beginning of Wisdom you will find everything the seven planets signify．${ }^{2}$（3）If the lord of the ascendant sign is oriental of the Sun，〈the hidden thing〉 is new，but if it is occidental，it is old．${ }^{3}$（4）Saturn signifies anything old and moldy， Jupiter signifies old things that are not moldy，and the planets that are below the Sun signify anything new．（5）The lord of the hour signifies the color：if $\langle$ the lord of the hour〉 is Saturn，$\langle$ the hidden thing is〉 black；if Jupiter，green；if Mars，red；if the Sun，pure white；if Venus，beautiful and mixed＜colors〉；if Mercury，many colors；the Moon signifies white but not pure．${ }^{4}$

## § 5

1 （1）The fifth place．If the querent poses a question about a woman－ whether she is pregnant or not－observe the significator．If it is in one of the cardines，and，even better，in one of the bicorporal signs，it signifies pregnancy．（2）Likewise，if it［the significator］gives its power to a planet that is in one of the cardines，or if the planet is in the fifth place，or if it gives its power to the lord of the ascendant sign or to the lord of the fifth place，if it aspects the ascendant degree，then it signifies pregnancy．（3） But if the significator gives its power to a planet that is in one of the cadent places，or if the ascendant sign is a tropical $\langle$ sign $\rangle$ ，this is an indication that there is no pregnancy，although if you find that the ascendant sign is in a bicorporal sign，this is an indication of pregnancy．${ }^{1}$（4）Dorotheus said：always observe the lord of the hour．If it is in one of the cardines，and it is in a fixed or in a bicorporal sign，do not ask for any further testimony because it signifies pregnancy；but if it is in a tropical sign it is 〈only〉 half a testimony．

2 （1）If the querent asks whether he will have a son，observe：if the lord of the fifth place is in the ascendant sign and it is neither burnt nor retrograde，it signifies that he will have a son．（2）The same applies if the lord of the ascendant sign is in the fifth place and Jupiter aspects it，

בבית החמישי ויביט צדק אליו, או שיתן הכח בעל ${ }^{1}$ הצומח² לצדק וצדק באחת³${ }^{3}$ התתים $^{2}$ הטובים4, או שיתן הכח בעל המזל הצומח לכוכב שהוא בבית החמישי5, על ${ }^{5}$ ה מנת שלא יהיה נשרף ולא שב אחורנית. (3) והסתכל אל7 בעל בעל השעה אם היה באחת היתדות, ואית
 לו בן. (4) גם שתף המורה בשאלה הזאת, כי אם היה עם השמש במחברת או נכח,
 לו בן. (5) והסתכל אל המזלות העקרים י13, שאם היה שם צדק והמורה"14 ובעל הבית
 הבית החמישי, או17 בינו ובין צדק ושני לויהם מביטים אל המעלה הצומחת, יורה שיהיה לו בן, ואם לא יביט לא יהיה לו בן.
 הסתכל אל בעל השעה, ואל מקום השמש ביום ואל הלבנהבי22 בלילה, ואל מקום מקום בעל הבית החמישי, ואל מקום צדק בכל השאלות. (2) וראה אם הם אלה הנזכרים במזלות
 העליונים כשיראו25 מתחת אור השמש עד המעמד הראשון, וככה הרביצית השית השנית גם







וכפי המספר הרב ככה תדין.

[^55]or the lord of the ascendant gives power to Jupiter and Jupiter is in one of the fortunate places，${ }^{1}$ or if the lord of the ascendant sign gives power to a planet that is in the fifth place，on condition that it is neither burnt nor retrograde．（3）Observe whether the lord of the hour is in one of the cardines，〈because〉 it signifies that he will have a son；but if it is in the sixth，eighth，or twelfth place，${ }^{2}$ he will not have a son．（4）Associate the significator，too，in such an interrogation，for if it is in conjunction with or opposition to the Sun，or in conjunction with Saturn or Mars， or in an unfortunate aspect with any of them，it signifies that he will not have a son．（5）Observe the barren signs：${ }^{3}$ if Jupiter and the significator and the lord of the fifth place are there，this is an indication that he will not have a son．（6）If there is an aspect between the lord of the ascendant sign and the lord of the fifth place，or between the latter and Jupiter and both aspect the ascendant degree，it signifies that he will have a son，but if it［the lord of the ascendant sign］does not aspect，he will not have a son．${ }^{4}$

3 （1）If 〈the querent〉 poses a question about a pregnant woman，to find out whether she will give birth to a boy or a girl，Al－Kindī said：observe the lord of the hour，the position of the Sun by day and of the Moon by night，the position of the lord of the fifth place，and the position of Jupiter in all the interrogations．（2）Find out whether the aforementioned are in masculine or feminine signs and whether they are in the quadrant that is considered to be masculine with respect to the Sun（this applies to the upper planets when they are seen under the ray of the Sun up to the first station［i．e．，where a direct planet becomes retrograde］），and likewise 〈whether they are in〉 the second quadrant＜that is considered to be〉 masculine 〈with respect to the Sun〉，too，（this applies from the beginning of opposition to the Sun up to the second station［i．e．，where a retrograde planet becomes direct］）．（3）Also observe the quadrants of the zodiac，two of which are masculine and two 〈of which〉 are feminine；the masculine are the quadrants from the line of midheaven to the ascendant degree and from lower midheaven to the degree of the descendant．（4） Also find out the nature of the lord of the hour，whether it is masculine or feminine，and likewise $\langle$ find out $\rangle$ the nature of the lord of the fifth place． （5）As for the lower planets and the Moon，their masculine quadrants are the opposite of the 〈masculine quadrants of the〉 upper planets．（6）Now， regarding all the aforementioned，you have to count how many portions of power signify masculine and how many 〈portions of power signify〉 feminine，and pass judgment according to the larger number．${ }^{1}$

1 (1) הבית הששי: השואל על חולה1 אם ימות מחליו או ירפא², הסתכל: אם היה בעל המזל הצומח נשרף³ מהשמש, יורה4 על מותו, ואף אם היה בעל הבית השמיני במזל הצומח או בעל המזל6 הצומח7 בבית השמיני. (2) ואם היה בעל המזל ${ }^{8}$ הצומח באחד הבתים9 הטובים, ואיננו נשרף ולא חוזר אחורנית, יורה כי ינצל. (3) גם הסתכל אל המורה, שאם10 היה במחברת או עם מבט רע עם שבתאי או מאדים, יורה על סכנה11, ואם היה במחברת או באי זה מבט שיהיה עם הטובים, יורה שיתרפא². (4) ודע כי אם313 בעל הצומח עם בעל הבית הששי או בעל בית השנים עשר, או שיהיה בעל הצומח באחד אלו14 ${ }^{14}$ הבתים, יורה על רע, ואם הוא קרוב שיצא מאלה הבתים,יורה כי יתרפא מהרה. (5) ודצ כי המזלות העומדים יורו על ארך החלי, והמתהפכים יורו על המהירות, בין לטוב בין לרעי15, והמזלות שיש להם שתי16 גופות יורו שיצא מחלי אל חלי. וזה17 שהזכרתי הוא על דרך דורוניאוס18 ומשאללה"19 (6) כבר אמרתי20 בתחלת הספר כי חנוך | ובטלמיוס אינם מודים בשאלות. (7) רק הם 344 שניהם אומרים, וחכמי המזלות עמהם, כי ממקום הלבנה ברגע תחלת החלי22 יוכל אדם לדעת אם יחיה או ימות ואי זה יום הוא"23 גבולו, וכבר פרשתי24 בספר המאורות שלי.

2 (1) והשואל בעבור עבד או אמה שירצה לקנות, הסתכל אל בעל הבית הששי25. אם היה במבט אהבה עם המזל הצומח ועם בעליו, טוב הוא26 לקנותם, והפך הדבר27 אם היה במבט רע. (2) ואם המורה עם אחד הכוכבים הטובים, יורה על טוב, והפך הדבר אם היה עם הרעים, ויותר טוב אם היה המורה במזל שהוא על צורת בן אדם. (3) וכולם הסכימה דעתם שאם היה המורה בדגים, כי העבד יחשוב ${ }^{28}$ אדוניו שימכרנו ולא יהיה לבו טוב לעולם 29, ,ואם בי3 במזל ${ }^{30}$ אריה, יתגאה על אדוניו, ואם היהיה33 במזל גדי,

יברח, ואם במזל קשת, יחלה.

10חולה] סיבשמא; ל החולה. ${ }^{1}$ 2ימות מחליו או ירפא] סילמבש; א יחיה או ימות.




 19ומשאללה] סב; י ומאשא אלה; שומשאלה; לא ומאשא אללה; מ ומאשה אלה. ס סאמרתי] סילשמא; ב הזכרתי. ישא; ל פרשתיו; מ > זה. 27 הדבר] סילבמא; ש הדברים.


1 （1）The sixth place．〈If the querent〉 poses a question about an ailing person－whether he will die from his illness or recover－observe：if the lord of the ascendant sign is burnt by the Sun，it signifies his death， particularly if it is in one of the cardines；${ }^{1}$ and the same applies if the lord of the eighth place is in the ascendant sign or if the lord of the ascendant sign is in the eighth place．（2）But if the lord of the ascendant sign is in one of the fortunate places，${ }^{2}$ and is neither burnt nor retrograde，it signifies that he will survive．${ }^{3}$（3）Also observe the significator，for if it is in conjunction or in a malefic aspect with Saturn or Mars it signifies danger，but if it is in conjunction or in any aspect with the benefics it signifies that he will recover．（4）Know that if the lord of the ascendant is with the lord of the sixth place or the lord of the twelfth place，or if the lord of the ascendant is in one of these places，it signifies misfortune； but if it is about to move away from these places，it signifies that he will recover soon．${ }^{4}$（5）Know that the fixed signs signify that the illness will linger on，and the tropical 〈signs〉 signify quick changes，for good or evil，and the bicorporal signs signify that after one illness he will come down with another illness．${ }^{5}$ What I have just mentioned corresponds to the method of Dorotheus and Māshā＇allāh．（6）I have already said at the beginning of the book that Enoch and Ptolemy do not acknowledge $\left\langle\right.$ the value〉 of interrogations．${ }^{6}$（7）But both say，${ }^{7}$ and the astrologers concur，that from the position of the Moon at the moment of the onset of the illness one may know whether he will survive or die and which is his day of crisis；${ }^{8}$ I have already explained 〈this〉 in my Book of the Luminaries．${ }^{9}$

2 （1）〈If the querent〉 poses a question about a male slave or a female slave he wishes to buy，observe the lord of the sixth place．If it is in an aspect of love with the ascendant sign or with its lord，it is worthwhile to buy them，but the opposite applies if it is in an unfortunate aspect．${ }^{1}$ （2）If the significator is with one of the benefic planets，it signifies good fortune，and the opposite applies if it is with the malefics，but it is even more auspicious if the significator is in a sign with a human shape．${ }^{2}$ （3）All $\langle$ the astrologers〉 concur that if the significator is in Pisces，the slave will think that his master intends to sell him and will never be content；if 〈the significator〉 is in Leo，he will be arrogant towards his master；if in Capricorn，he will run away；and if in Sagittarius，he will be sick．${ }^{3}$

1 (1) הבית השביעי יתחלק לארבעה¹ חלקים. (2) החלק האחד² לשואל3 בעבור אשה. הסתכל: אם היה נגה במזל הצומח או בעל המזל עם נגה באחד הבתים הטובים, יורה כי יתכן לו חפצו, על מנת שלא יהיה נגה4 נשרף ולא חוזר אחורנית. (3) וככה5 אם יתן המורה כחו לבעל המזל הצומח, על מנת שיהיה בעל המזל הצומח באחת היתדות ${ }^{6}$ או בבית עשתי עשר7${ }^{1}$ או בבית החמישי, ואם לא היה כן ${ }^{8}$ לא ${ }^{9}$ יהיה. (4) והסתכל אל בעל הבית השביעי; אם היה במזל הצומח ואיננו נשרף ולא חוזר אחורנית יורה כי יתכן לו חפצו, וככה אם היה בעל המזל הצומח בבית השביעי, על מנת שלא יהיה נשרף ולא חוזר אחורנית, וככה אם היה בעל הבית השביעי במחברת או במבט טוב עם10 בעל המזל11 הצומח, אז יורה כי12 יתכן ככל13 רצונו. (5) ודע כי אם היה שבתאי באחת היתדות, יורה על עיכוב, ואם מאדים, יורה 14 על מריבות, ואם כוכב חמהא5, יורה16 על דברים מכציסים שאין להם עיקר. (6) גם הסתכל אל בעל17 השצה. אם היה באחת היתדות ואיננו18 נשרף ולא חוזר אחורנית, יורה כי יהיה19 הדבר.

2 (1) החלק השני20. אם ישאל שואל על דברי21 שותפות, הסתכל: אם ראית מאדים
 אם היה כך, יורה שאין תועלת בה, והכוכבים הטובים יורו על ריוח וטובי25. (3) ואם היה בעל הבית השביעי במקום טוב והוא מביט אל בעל המזל הצומח מבט טובשי, יורה כים טוב יהיה לו בשותפות, והפך הדבר אם היה במקום רע או במבט רע. (4) ולעולם הסתכל אל הגורל הטוב הנלקח ביום ובלילה מהמרחק שיש בין השמש ובין הלבנה. (5) והנה, אם היה במחברת עם אחד הכוכבים הטובים או במבט, יורה על טוב ,והפך הדבר אם היו מזיקים. (6) וככה, הסתכל לבעל הגורל הטוב²8, כי הוא יורה על אחרית הדברף, וכאשר תראה מעניניו ככה 30 תדין על סוף

השותפות.

 הצומח באחת היתדות] סיבשמא; ל חסר. ${ }^{\text {¹ }}$ " סיבמא; ל חסר. כי"צם*] ילמבשא; ס או. 33 ככל] סילבש; מ כל; א חסר. סילשמא; ב חסר. סי 16יורה] סיבשמא; ל חסר. ב שאינו. 22 השביעי] סלמא; יבש הזי. סבילעה] סיבשמא; ל דעה.
 29 הדבר* ילבשא; מס דבר.

1 (1) The seventh place is divided into four parts. (2) The first part relates to someone who poses a question about a woman. Observe: if Venus is in the ascendant sign or the lord of the sign $\langle$ of the ascendant $\rangle$ is with Venus in one of the fortunate places, it signifies that his wishes may come true, on condition that Venus is neither burnt nor retrograde. (3) The same applies if the significator gives its power to the lord of the ascendant sign, on condition that the lord of the ascendant sign is in one of the cardines or in the eleventh place or in the fifth place; otherwise it will not be ${ }^{1}$ [i.e., he will not get his wish]. (4) Observe the lord of the seventh place; if it is in the ascendant sign and is neither burnt nor retrograde, it signifies that his wishes may be fulfilled, and the same applies if the lord of the ascendant sign is in the seventh place, on condition that it is neither burnt nor retrograde; so too if the lord of the seventh place is in conjunction or in a fortunate aspect with the lord the ascendant sign, it signifies that all his wishes may be fulfilled. ${ }^{2}$ (5) Know that if Saturn is in one of the cardines, it signifies a delay; if Mars, it signifies quarrels; and if Mercury, it signifies annoying and meaningless things. (6) Also observe the lord of the hour. If it is in one of the cardines and is neither burnt nor retrograde, it signifies that it [his wish] will come true.

2 (1) Second part. If the querent poses a question about a partnership, observe: if you see Mars in the seventh place, it signifies an unfortunate partnership that will end in injury and quarrels. (2) Saturn, too, if it is in such a place, signifies that it [the partnership] will not yield any benefit, but the benefic planets signify good profit. (3) If the lord of the seventh place is in a fortunate position and it aspects the lord of the ascendant sign in a fortunate aspect, it signifies that he will find the partnership fortunate, and the opposite applies if it is in an unfortunate position or in an unfortunate aspect. (4) Always observe the lot of Fortune that is cast by day and by night from the distance between the Sun and the Moon. (5) Now if it is in conjunction with one of the benefic planets or in aspect to it, it signifies good fortune, but the opposite applies if it is with the malefics. (6) Likewise, observe the lord of the lot of Fortune, because it signifies a fortunate outcome, and pronounce judgment about the outcome of the partnership from its [the lot of Fortune's] conditions. ${ }^{1}$

3 (1) החלק השלישי במלחמות. (2) הסתכל: אם היה השואל הוא בעצמו¹ הנלחם, והנה שים המזל הצומח שלו, והמזל השוקע של² אויבו. (3) והנה, אם היה³ בעל המזל הצומח תקיף, אם הוא מהעליונים שיהיה מזרחי מן השמש4 ואם מהשפלים שיהיה מערבי, ולא יהיה תחת אור השמש ולא שב אחורנית, והוא בבית הראשון או העשירי5 או בבית6 עשתי עשר7, והוא בבית שלטונו או בגבולו ואין כוכב מזיק ${ }^{6}$ מביט אליו,
 כוכב עליון11 או שפל. (4) ואם בעל הבית השביצי יהיה כדרך ${ }^{12}$ שהזכרתי לבעל
 או שפל, ינוצח16 השואל. (5) ואם"17 שניהם תקיפים, הסתכל אי זה מהם בעליו18 הואו19
 הסתכל אל בעל המזל הצומח ובעל22 הבית השביעי. (7) אם היה זה עם זה במבט23 נכח או במבט רביצית, תהיה המלחמה, ואם הם ${ }^{24}$ במבט ששית או שלישית, לא תהיה המלחמה25. (8) ואם מאדים באחת היתדות, יחזק המלחמה וירב החללים6, ואם שבתאי, יאריך המלחמה, ואם צדק, יכנסו אנשים ביניהם לעשות שלום, וככה נגה. (9) ויש לך27 לשתף המזלות שהם בו בעל הצומח28 ובעל השוקע, כי אם היוי29 במזלות עומדים תהיה המלחמה ארוכה30, ואם במתהפכים הפך הדבר, ואם בשני גופות המלחמה פעמים 32. (10) ואם השני33 הבעלים 34 הם הם המתחברים, 35, יש לך להסתכל אי זה מהם הואר ${ }^{36}$ קרוב אל מקום גבהותו מפאת גלגלו הגדול37 שמוצקורחוק מגלגל הארץ, כי ההוה קרוב מן הגבהות הוא ינצח האחר כפי גבהותו38 ושפלות ${ }^{39}$ האחר, וחשוב
 קרוב אל גבהות גלגלו46 הקטן47, וההוה קרוב ינצח את הרחוק, שלשה94. (12) גם הסתכל אם יש להם מרחב50, כי ההוה בחשב אפודת הגלגל ינצח את הדרומי, וההוה בצפון ינצח את ההוה בחשב אפודת הגלגל 51 ואת הדרומי52. (13) ואם מרחב שניהם צפוני53, הסתכל מי שיש לו את המרחב הרב, הוא ינצח את האחר, ואם

1"השואל הוא בעצמו] סילבמא; ש הוא בעצמו בעצמו. [של] סילבא; שמ על. ${ }^{2}$ היה] סיבשמא; ל חסר.


 סיבשמא; ל חסר. ${ }^{13}$ המזל] סילבמא; ש חסר. פימזל] סיש; לבמא המזל. > יהיה. 19 19א] סילמבש; א חסר. סיבשמא; ל חסר. שלישית לא תהיה המלחמה] סיבשמא; ל חסר. ס סהחללים] סש; ילבמא חללים. חסר. ${ }^{28}{ }^{28}$ ] סילמבש; א > המזל.
 [34 ${ }^{34}$ ] יבשמא; לס חסר. ${ }^{37}$ הגדול* ילשמא; ב חסר; ס הקרוב. סיבשמא; ל ושפלותו. היה. כך. 19 49שלשה] סמא; יב ג'; ל > פעמים; שח חסר. 50 5ההוה קרוב ינצח ... אם יש להם מרחב] סילבמא; ש חסר. 151 51הוה בצפון ינצח את ההוה בחשב אפודת הגלגל] סילבשא; מ חסר. חסר. ${ }^{53}$ צפוני×] ילמבשא; 0 צפונים.

3 （1）The third part is about wars．（2）Observe：if the querent himself is a combatant，assign the ascendant sign to him and the sign of the descen－ dant to his enemy．${ }^{1}$（3）Now if the lord of ascendant sign is the stronger， $\langle$ that is，$\rangle$ if it is one of upper planets and is oriental of the Sun or if it is one of the lower planets and is occidental 〈to the Sun $\rangle$ ，if it is neither under the ray of the Sun nor retrograde，if it is in the first or tenth or eleventh place，and if it is in the house where it holds lordship or it is in its term and no malefic planet aspects it（the opposite applies for the lord of the seventh place），then the querent will be victorious，whether the lord of the ascendant sign is an upper or a lower planet．（4）But if the lord of the seventh place is in the same relation as I have $\langle j u s t\rangle$ mentioned with the lord of the ascendant sign，and the lord of the ascendant sign is weak， the querent will be defeated，whether the lord of the seventh place is an upper or a lower planet．（5）If both are strong，find out which of them ［of the ascendant sign or of the seventh place］has an upper planet as its lord；this one will be victorious over the lower planet．${ }^{2}$（6）If you wish to know whether war will break out between them，observe the lord of the ascendant sign and the lord of the seventh place．（7）If they are in opposition or quartile，war will break out；but if sextile or trine，there will not be war．（8）If Mars is in one of the cardines，the war will be fierce and there will be many casualties；if Saturn，the war will last a long time； if Jupiter，people will intercede to make peace；and the same applies to Venus．${ }^{3}$（9）You should also take into account the signs where the lord of the ascendant and the lord of the descendant are：if they are in the fixed signs the war will be long，the opposite applies if they are in the tropical〈signs $\rangle$ ，and if they are in the bicorporal 〈signs〉 the war will be sporadic． （10）If the two lords are in conjunction，find out which of them is closer to the apogee of its eccentric circle，${ }^{4}$ because the one that is closer to the apogee will be victorious over the other，according to the apogee and the perigee of the other．Consider this power as equivalent to four portions of power．（11）Then observe which of them is closer to the apogee of its epicycle，and the one that is closer is victorious over the one which is far $\langle$ from the apogee〉．Consider this power as equivalent to three $\langle$ portions of power $\rangle$ ．（12）Also observe whether they have latitude 〈with respect to the ecliptic ，for the one that is in the ecliptic is victorious over the one that is southern 〈with respect to the ecliptic〉，and the one that is north－ ern is victorious over the one that is in the ecliptic or southern．（13）If both are northern，find out which has the greater latitude［i．e．，is more northern］，and this one will be victorious over the other；and if both are－ southern，the one whose latitude is less 〈southern〉 will be victorious over

שניהם דרומיים, הסתכל מי שמרחבו מעט ינצח את האחרי, וחשוב זה הכח במספר² שנים3. (14) גם הסתכל מי שהוא4 במזל שיש במקומו שלטון, ותן לו כח אחד5. (15) ודע כי אם היה夭 אחד מהכוכבים העליונים8, והוא מזרחי, בכחו הרב, תן לו חמישה9 במספר מן הכח10, ואם היה מערבי, חלש, חשוב לו11 מן החלישות חמישה (16) (16) והפך הדבר אם היו מהכוכבים השפלים כי כחם במערב יותר מן המזרח. (17) גם יש להסתכל באי זה בית הוא כל אחד מהבעלים, כי ההוה בבית העשירי תן לו ששה כחות, ובבית הראשון חמישה, ובעשתי עשר13 ארבעה, ובשביעי14 שלשה, וברביעי שנים, ובחמישי15 אחד. (18) וחשוב כל כח שיש16 לכל אחד ואחד, ואשר13 מספרו רב ינצח את האחר. (19) והנה ככה תעשה אם היה השואל הוא הנלחם.

4 (1) רק18 אם שאל19 אדם ${ }^{18}$ צל שנים21 שלטונים, אי זה מהם ינצח את חבירו, הנה השתבשו22 בדבר זה32 חכמי המזלות. (2) אמר משאללה"24: שים המזל הצומח לקטן מהם בשנים25 והשוקע לגדול בשנים. (3) אמר דורוניאום26: שים המזל הצומח לאשר החל להלחם והשוקע לאויבו. (4) אמר אבו עלי: שים המזל הצומח לאשר הוא השואל ברשותו או יאהבהו27 יותר. (5) אמר אבו מעשר: קודם שתשאל, שים המזל הצומח28 לאי זה מהם29 שתרצה. ואם השואל אדם אחר, אמור לו שלא ישאל רק מהם, אם ינצח. ונראו לי דברי זה החכם משאר הדברים. (6) והנה, תעשה בדרך שצויתיך32, ודע כי הכוכב שנפרד ממנו המורה יורה על השואל, והכוכב שיתחבר עמו או יתן הכח לו יורה על האויב. (7) ודרך משאללהה33 שיסתכל אל המורה; והנה, אם מצאו" שאין כוכב מביט אליי, ינהגהו אל 35 המזל השני לו ויסתכל אם יביט אליו כוכב. (8) ככה יעשה תמיד בשאלותיו6, כי הוא אומר שלא יהיה מבט כנגד מספר המעלות, או פחות מהם מעט, רק אם היו המביטים במזלות שיביטו זה אל זה. (9) ולפי דעתי שלא דבר נכונה, רק לעולם נסתכל אל מבט רביצית שיהיה קרוב מצ, ${ }^{37}$ מעלות, ולנכח מאה ושמנים38 כפי אור גוף הכוכב, כי אין במזלות מקומות מובדלים ולא יבדלו המזלות 39 כי אם במחשבת הלב לא יותר.

1"ואם שניהם דרומיים הסתכל מי שמרחבו מעט ינצח את האחר] סיבשמא; ל חסר. ${ }^{2}$ במספר] סלבשמא;






 בדבר הזה; ב ש; ש בזה. 25בשנים] סיבשמא; ל שנים. ${ }^{26}$ סורוניאוס] סמא; ; ילב דורוניוס; ש דוריאנוס. יאהבנו; סש אם יאהבנו; ל חסר.

 ל מצאנו.

the other．Consider this power as equivalent to two $\langle$ portions of power $\rangle$ ． （14）Also observe 〈if〉 one of them is in a sign over which it holds lordship， and assign to it one portion of power．${ }^{5}$（15）Know that if it is one of the upper planets and it is oriental $\langle$ of the Sun $\rangle$ ，it has the greatest power； assign it five portions of power．But if it is occidental $\langle$ of the Sun〉，it is weak；assign it five portions of weakness．（16）The opposite applies to the lower planets，since they are more powerful when they are occidental than when they are oriental $\langle$ of the Sun $\rangle$ ．（17）You should also observe in which place each of the lords is：if it is in the tenth place，assign it six portions of power；in the first place，five＜portions of power〉；in the eleventh $\langle$ place〉，four；in the seventh，three；in the fourth，two；in the fifth， one．（18）Count all the portions of power that were assigned to each of them；the one to which the greater number was assigned will defeat the other．（19）Proceed in this manner if the querent is one of the combatants．

4 （1）But if someone posed a question about two rulers，which of them will defeat the other，the astrologers were confused．（2）Māshāallāh said： assign the ascendant sign to the younger of them and the $\langle$ sign of the $\rangle$ descendant to the older．（3）Dorotheus said：assign the ascendant sign to the one who began the war and the descendant to his enemy．（4）Abū＇Alī said：assign the ascendant sign to the one under whose authority is the querent or $\langle$ to the ruler whom the querent $\rangle$ favors．（5）Abū Ma＇shar said： before you make an interrogation［i．e．，before you cast the horoscope of the interrogation］，assign the ascendant sign to whichever $\langle$ of the rulers $\rangle$ you wish．If the querent is a third party［i．e．，is not one of the combatants］， tell him to ask about only one of the parties－whether it will be victorious $\langle$ over the other〉．This scholar＇s statements seem to me more satisfactory than all the other statements．${ }^{1}$（6）Now proceed as I have enjoined you， and know that the planet that parts from the significator signifies the querent，and the planet that conjoins it［the significator］or gives power to it signifies the enemy．（7）Māshāallāh＇s method is that one should observe the significator．Then，if you find that no planet aspects it［the significator］，direct it to the next sign and find out whether some planet aspects it．（8）He proceeds in this manner in all his interrogations，for he says that an aspect is not a certain number of degrees or slightly less， unless the aspecting planets are in aspecting signs．${ }^{2}$（9）In my opinion he is wrong，for we should always observe an aspect of quartile when〈the distance〉 is approximately $90^{\circ}$ ，and opposition 〈when the distance is $180^{\circ}$ ，taking into consideration the ray of the planet＇s body，for the signs are not separate places and the signs are separated only in the mind．${ }^{3}$

5 (1) ואם ישאל שואל על מדינה שהיא עומדת במצור, אם תלכד 1 אם² לא, הסתכל אם ידעת מזל המדינה, והטעם המזל3 שנוסדה בו, |והסתכל אל מחברת צדק ושבתאי ההוה קודם היותה במצור. (2) ואם היה המזל שלה בלא מבט רע ולא מחברת מאחד המזיקים, וככה בעל המזל, תנצל המדינה, ואם היה אחד ${ }^{4}$ המזיקים במזל המדינה בשעת5 ${ }^{5}$ המחברת או בשנת6 התקופה שהוא במצור ובעל המזל נשרף או שב אחורנית7, ואף כי אם היה באחת8 היתדות, תלכד המדינה. (3) ויש לך להשמר כאשר תשמע שאני אומר9 בעל המזל הצומח10, כי פעמים יהיה בעל הבית, ופעמים יהיה אחר שלטון עליו. (4) ודמיון זה נחשוב כי המזל הצומח13 ברגע שאלת השואל היה סרטן עשרים ואחת14 מעלות515 והיה שם צדק, וידוע כי הוא בעל הכבוד ובעל הגבול והנה יש לו כח יותר מהלבנה. והנה נסתכל אליון16 ונצזבנה17, ולא נאמר כי בעל המזל הצומח הוא כוכב שפל מפני הלבנהה, , רק עליון19 מפני צדק שהוא עליון20. ${ }^{19}$ (5) גם לעולם נשתף21 כל כוכב שיהיה במזל הצומח, שאם היה כוכב שפל ${ }^{21}$ נדין נדין23 ככח השפלי24, ואם25 עליון ככח עליון. (6) וככה, אם הואש26 בבית השביעי, נדין על האויב. (7) ואם היה כוכב מזיק במזל הצומח יזיק27 לנלחם28, ואם בשוקע יזיק29 לאויב. והפך זה אם היה כוכב30 טוב.

6 (1) ואם היה 6 השואל 32 בעבור המדינה33, הוא הנלחם עליה, שים לו"34 המזל הצומח לשואל35 והמזל השוקע למדינה, ואם אדם36 ישאל על מדינה אם תלכד או לא, ואיננו נלחם עליה, קח ${ }^{37}$ המעלה הצומחת ${ }^{38}$ והסתכל אל מקום המורה. (2) והנה ${ }^{38}$, אם היה עםל ${ }^{40}$ אחד מהם אחד ${ }^{41}$ המזיקים, תלכדד ${ }^{43}$ המדינה, והפך זה הטובים. (3) ואם היה בעל המזל הצומח נשרף או במבט רע עם אחד המזיקים, ואחד44 המזיקים45 באחת46


 וצומח. 11יהיה אחר] ס; ילבשא אחר; מאחד. בישיש] סילשא; ב יש לו. ש המעלה הצומחת. [14 צשרים ואחת] סלמ; יבשא כ״א. .15 היה סרטן עשרים ואחת מעלות] סילבמא;
 הלבנה] סמ; ב כמו נכח השפל; שלאי חסר. ${ }^{19}$ דק עליון ${ }^{19}$ שלאי; ב ואין עליון; 0 רק כדוננו עליון; מ רק כדוננו . נשתף*] מילנשא; ס ושותף; ב חסר. היה כוכב שפל] סילשמא; ב חסר.
 רע. סילבמא; ש חסר.
 סיבשמא; ל הצומח.
 454מזיקים] סימא; ש >מן; לב חסר. ${ }^{46}$ באחת] סימא; לש באחד; ב חסר.

5 （1）If the querent poses a question about a city under siege－whether it will be captured or not，observe，if you know it，the sign of the city，${ }^{1}$ meaning the sign that 〈was in the ascendant when〉 it was founded，and observe the $\langle$ last $\rangle$ conjunction of Saturn and Jupiter ${ }^{2}$ that occurred before it was besieged．（2）If its［the city＇s］sign is not in a malefic aspect or in conjunction with one of the malefics，or $\langle$ if $\rangle$ the lord of the sign $\langle$ of the city is not in a malefic aspect or in conjunction with one of the malefic planets $\rangle$ ，the city will be delivered；but if one of the malefics is in the sign of the city at the moment of the conjunction 〈of Saturn and Jupiter〉 or at the revolution of the year in which the city is under siege，${ }^{3}$ and the lord of the sign is burnt or retrograde，particularly if it is in one of the cardines， the city will be captured．${ }^{4}$（3）Be careful when you hear me using the〈term〉＂lord of the ascendant sign，＂because sometimes it denotes the lord of the house ${ }^{5}$ and sometimes another 〈planet〉 that exercises lordship over it［the ascendant sign］．（4）As an illustration，suppose that the ascendant sign at the moment of the querent＇s question is Cancer $21^{\circ}$ and Jupiter is there；it is known that it［Jupiter］is the lord of the exaltation ${ }^{6}$ and the lord of the term，${ }^{7}$ and therefore it exercises more power $\langle$ there $\rangle$ than does the Moon［i．e．，Cancer is the Moon＇s house］．Consequently，we should observe Jupiter and ignore the Moon，and should not say that the lord of the ascendant sign is a lower planet，meaning the Moon，but an upper〈planet〉，meaning Jupiter，which is an upper 〈planet〉．${ }^{8}$（5）We should always take into account any planet that is in the ascendant sign；if it is a lower planet we should pass judgment according to the power of the lower $\langle$ planet $\rangle$ ，and if an upper planet we should pass judgment according to the power of the upper $\langle$ planet $\rangle$ ．（6）Likewise，if it［any planet］is in the seventh place，we should pass judgment about the enemy．（7）If a malefic planet is in the ascendant sign it will harm the side that makes war，and if it is in the descendant it will harm the enemy；the opposite applies in the case of a benefic planet．${ }^{9}$

6 （1）If the querent poses a question about a city he is waging war against， assign the ascendant sign to the querent and the sign of the descendant to the city；but if someone poses a question about a city－whether it will be captured or not－and he is not fighting against it，find the ascendant sign and observe the position of the significator．（2）Now if one of the malefics is with one of them［the ascendant sign or the significator］， the city will be captured，and the opposite applies for the benefics．（3） If the lord of the ascendant sign is burnt or in an unfortunate aspect to one of the malefic planets，and one of the malefic planets is in one of the

היתדות, תלכד המדינה¹ ויהרגו אנשיה. (4) ואם היה בעל הבית השביעי או השמיני או השנים עשר כוכב טוב ואחד המזיקים ביתדות, תלכד המדינה רק לא יהרגו אנשיה. (5) המשו בוֹ

 הלבנה במבט רע עמהם, ובעל המזל הצומח בבית הששי או בשמיניני או בשנים עשר8, יהיו אנשי המדינה במצור ובמצוק ותלכד המד ות ותינה בסוף9. (7) ואם המזיקים באחת היתדות ובעל המזל10 הצומח בבית התשיעי או השלישי11 ואיננו נשרף ול ולא שב אחו ורו ורנית, יברחו רובי אנשי12 המדינה וימלטו. (8) וחנוך אמר כי הבית השני יורה על המארב. והנה, אם היה שם אחד מן המזיקים¹3, יורה על רעה גדולה יעש יעשה האורב על המדינה, ואם שם אחד מן הכוכבים 14 הטובים, יבא גדוד לעזר15 המדינה.

7 (1) החלק הרביצי בגניבות. אמר משאללהשי16: הסתכל על 7 (17 דבר18 הגנב19 אל הבית השביעי ואל בעל הבית, ואם שם כוכב, אי זה כוכב שיהיה, הנח בעל הבית וקח אותו הכוכב. (2) והנה, אם ראית כי בעל הבית השביעי, או הכוכב שהוא בבית השביעי20, יתן הכח לבעל המזל הצומח, ישיב הגנב הגניבה לבעליה העיה. (3) וככה, אם מצאת בעל הבית השביעי21 תחת אור השמש, והוא מביט אל בעל בעבור פחד שלטון24. (4) וככה תדין אם היה כוכב הבית השביעי ונותנו אל בעל הצומח, וזה הדבר תוכל להבינו מראשיתל וככה אם היה בעל הבית השני28 במזל הצומח ויסתכל בעל המזל הצומח אל בעל הבית השביעיי29, וככה אם היה בעל הבית השמיני נותן הכח לבעל הבית השית השני והוא מביט אל ועל המזל הצומח30. (6) ודע כי אם מצאת בעל הבית הת השני ובעי ובעל השוקע ביתדות31, דע
 לשמש או לבעל המזל הצומח, יורה כי הגניבה תשוב, ואם מצאת בעל הבית השני נותן

[^56]cardines，the city will be captured and its inhabitants will be killed．（4） If the lord of the seventh or eighth or twelfth place is a benefic planet and one of the malefic planets is in the cardines，the city will be captured but its inhabitants will not be killed．（5）If some malefic planet is in the twelfth place and the ray of its body reaches the ascendant degree，the city will be captured quickly，but in the case of a benefic planet the city will be delivered quickly．（6）If one of the malefic planets is in 〈one of〉 the cardines or if the Moon is in an unfortunate aspect with them，and the lord of the ascendant sign is in the sixth or eighth or twelfth place，the people of the city will be under siege and in distress［Deut．28：53］and in the end the city will be captured．（7）If the malefic planets are in one of the cardines and the lord of the ascendant sign is in the ninth or third place and it is not burnt or retrograde，most of the inhabitants of the city will run away and escape．${ }^{1}$（8）Enoch said that the second place signifies an ambush．${ }^{2}$ Now if one of the malefic planets is there it signifies that the side that lays the ambush will cause a great calamity to the city，but if one of the benefic planets is there，an army will come to assist the city．

7 （1）The fourth part is about stolen goods．Māshā＇allāh said：regarding the thief，observe the seventh place and the lord of $\langle$ this $\rangle$ place，and if some planet is there，whichever planet it may be，ignore the lord of the place and take that planet．（2）Now if you see that the lord of the seventh place or the planet that is in the seventh place gives power to the lord of the ascendant sign，the thief will return the stolen article to the owner．（3） Likewise，if you find that the lord of the seventh place is under the ray of the Sun and it aspects the lord of the ascendant sign，the thief will return the stolen article because he is afraid of the authorities．（4）You should pass a similar judgment if the planet takes the ray of the Sun or the ray of the lord of the seventh place and gives it to the lord of the ascendant；you can understand this from the $\langle$ Book of the $\rangle$ Beginning of Wisdom．${ }^{1}$（5）The same applies if the lord of the second place is in the ascendant sign and the lord of the ascendant sign aspects the lord of the seventh place，and the same $\langle$ also〉 applies if the lord of the eighth place gives power to the lord of the second place and it aspects the ascendant sign．（6）Know that if you find the lord of the second place and the lord of the descendant in the cardines，the thief and the stolen article have not left the city．（7）Also take into account the position of the significator，because if it gives its power to the Sun or to the lord of the ascendant sign，it signifies that the stolen article will be returned；but if you find that the lord of the second place gives power to the lord of the ascendant sign and it is not in any

הכח לבעל המזל¹ הצומח, והוא | איננו באחת היתדות, יורה כי הגנבה לא תשוב. (8) הא וככה אם היה בעל הבית השמיני בצומח או בעל הבית השני בשמיני, וככה אם היה בעל הבית² השמיני3 נותן ${ }^{4}{ }^{3}{ }^{3}$ הכח לבעל הבית השביעי. (9) ואם היה בעל הבית השני נותן הכח לבעל הבית השלישי, או לבעל הבית התשיעי, או לכוכב שיהיה בבתים האלה, אז5 תדין כי הגנבה כבר הוצאה6 מהמדינה. (10) ואם היה בעל לעל הבית לית השני

 בעל הבית נפרד7 במחברת או במבט מבעל הצומח ומו ונותן הכח לבעל השו השוקע, לא לא תמצא הגנבה. (12) ואם מצאת בעל8 הצוּ הצומח והשוקע9 נותנים כחם לכוכב שהוא באו באחת היתדות, יודע הגנב, וככה אם היה המורה עם אחד המזיקיםבו", וככה אם היה בעל
 יתן כחו בעל השוקע אל בעל הבית השלישי או התשיעי, או לכוכב שי שיהיה באחת לוכת אלו
 הסתכל אל הכוכב ההוה בבית השביעי, ואם אין שם כוכב קח בעל השוקע באי זה מקום מוּ וֹת שיהיה, וראה מה תולדתו313, אם זכר אם נקבה, וכה, והמזל שהוא שם, והרב הגלגל ומפאת השמש, וככה תדין. (15) וצורת הכוכבים כבר הזכרתים בראשית חכמה¹5. (16) ואם הוא מזרחי מהשמש, הוא קטן16 בשנים, והפך הדבר אם הוא מערבי.

8 (1) ואם אדם ישאל על עבד שברח, הסתכל אל המזל הצומח. (2) ואם מצאת בעל הבית שב אחורנית או יתן כחו לכוכב שהוא שב אחורנית ${ }^{17}$ שי, יורה כי הבורח ישוב מעצמו8.18. (3) ואם הוא יתן הכח לכוכב שהוא בבית הששי או השנים עשר¹9, יאסרוהו,
 יורה כי שליח ישגר האדון בעבור העבד וישוב אליו. (5) ואם היה בעל השוקע מתפרד

[^57]of the cardines，it signifies that the stolen article will not be returned．（8） The same applies if the lord of the eighth place is in the ascendant or the lord of the second place is in the eighth place，and the same 〈also〉 applies if the lord of the eighth place gives power to the lord of the seventh place． （9）If the lord of the second place gives power to the lord of the third place，or to the lord of the ninth place，or to a planet that is in any these places，judge that the stolen article has already been taken out of the city． （10）If the lord of the second place gives power to the lord of the tenth place，it signifies that the thief will offer a bribe to the authorities to cover up 〈his action $\rangle$ ．（11）If you find that the significator gives power to the lord of the seventh place，the stolen article will not be found；likewise，if the lord of the 〈seventh $\rangle$ place parts from conjunction or an aspect with the lord of the ascendant and gives power to the lord of the descendant， the stolen article will not be found．（12）If you find that the lord of the ascendant and the 〈lord of the〉 descendant give their power to a planet that is in one of the cardines，the thief will be identified，and the same applies if the significator is with one of the malefic planets，and so too if the lord of the seventh place is burnt．（13）If the significator is with one of the benefic planets，the thief will not be captured；likewise，if the lord of the descendant gives its power to the lord of the third or ninth place，or to a planet that is in any of these places，it signifies that the thief has already escaped from the city．${ }^{2}$（14）If you wish to know the 〈outward〉 form of the thief，observe the planet that is in the seventh place，and if there is no planet there take the lord of the descendant wherever it is，and find out its nature，whether masculine or feminine，and 〈observe〉 the sign that is there，and the quadrants with respect to the zodiac and with respect to the Sun，${ }^{3}$ and pass judgment accordingly．${ }^{4}$（15）I have already discussed the shape of the planets in the $\left\langle\right.$ Book of the〉 Beginning of Wisdom．${ }^{5}$（16）If it is oriental of the Sun，he［the thief］is young，and the opposite applies if it is occidental $\langle$ of the Sun $\rangle$ ．

8 （1）If someone poses a question about a slave who has run away， observe the ascendant sign．（2）If you find that the lord of the place ［i．e，the lord of the ascendant sign］is retrograde or gives its power to a retrograde planet，it signifies that the fugitive will return on his own．${ }^{1}$ （3）If it gives power to a planet that is in the sixth or twelfth place，he will be imprisoned，and if there is an aspect between the lord of the ascendant and 〈the lord of〉 the descendant he will be captured．（4）If the significator gives power to the lord of the ascendant，it signifies that the master will send a messenger to get the slave and bring him back

מבעל הצומח, לא ימצאנו¹, וככה אם לא יביט הכוכב שנפרד ממנו המורה אל הכוכב שיתן הכח לו². (6) ואם המורה יתן הכח לכוכב נשרף³, ימות העבד בדרך. (7) ואם רצית לדעת מקומו, הסתכל4: אם נתן המורה כחו אל כוכב שהוא לוא בין הבית הרביעי
 כבר הלך9${ }^{9}$ ממקום שתחשוב10 שהוא שם11, , ואם ברביעיות האחרות12, עודנו שם, והכלל במקום קרוב ממקום אדניו. (8) והסתכל אל הכוכב שיתן המורה הכח לוב13: אם הוא בעל הבית השמיני או הששי או השנים העשר¹4, יתפש במקום שהוא שם¹5 ולא16 ימלט.

9 (1) ואם רצית לדעת מתי יתפש, הנה17 אתן לך דרך כלל לדבר הזה¹8, ולכל דבר
 יש בין השליט על השואל ובין21 השליט על דבר הנשאלוּי ${ }^{22}$, בין במחברת בין במבט, וטעם המבט שיהיה פחות ממעלות המבט. (3) וזהל ${ }^{23}$ הדמיון נחשוב כי הצומח בתולה, ובעל השוקע צדק, שהוא בעל דגים, ובעל הצומח כוכב חמהבי
 מעלות, והנה נשארו חמשי28 מעלות להשלמת ${ }^{29}$ המבט המ. והנה, אחר חמישה ימים יה יהיה הדבר המבוקש. (4) ויש לך לדעת ${ }^{30}$ תולדת הדבר ששאל בשבילו, כי אם היה בחור ואין לו אשה ושאל מתי יהיה לו בן ${ }^{31}$ כשיקח אשה זה53.3 (5) ויש לך לשתף כח המזלות, כי המזל העומד יורה על איחור, והמתהפך על על מהירות, ובעל"36 שתי גופות שנים, ובעל שתי339 גופות על חדשים, והמתהפך על ימים ימים. והנכון מה שהזכרתי לך ועוד, הסתכל אל השליט שיורה על הדבר שיהיה: אם הוא ממתין | בהליכתו יתאחר 246 הדבר41, ואם מהיר יהיה במהרה, ואם הוא שב אחורנית42 כאשר יתישר יהיהלי4, גם

[^58]to him．（5）If the lord of the descendant parts from the lord of the ascendant，he［the messenger］will not find him，and the same applies if the planet that the significator parts from it does not aspect the planet to which it gives its power．（6）If the significator gives power to a burnt planet，the slave will die en route．（7）If you wish to know where he ［the slave］is，observe：if the significator gives power to a planet that is between the fourth place and the ascendant，or in opposition to these places，which are the two feminine quadrants，know that the slave has already left the place where you think he is；and if in the other quadrants he is still there，and 〈this means〉 generally in a place close to his master＇s place．${ }^{2}$（8）Observe the planet to which the significator gives power：if it is the lord of the eighth，sixth or twelfth place，he will be captured in the place where he is and will not escape．

9 （1）If you wish to know when will he be captured，I give you now a general method for this and for everything about which someone may ask：when it will happen？${ }^{1}$（2）Ptolemy said：find out how many equal degrees there are between the ruler over the querent and the ruler over the object of the interrogation，either in conjunction or in aspect（ $\langle$ here $\rangle$ aspect means 〈several $\rangle$ degrees less than the degrees of the［full］aspect）． （3）As an illustration，suppose that the ascendant is Virgo，the lord of the descendant is Jupiter，which is the lord of Pisces，and the lord of the ascendant is Mercury．We suppose that it［Mercury］is at Gemini $10^{\circ}$ and Jupiter is at Pisces $15^{\circ}$ ，so that there are $85^{\circ}$ between them，which is $5^{\circ}$ short of completing the $\langle$ full $\rangle$ aspect．Consequently，the object of the interrogation will occur after 5 days．（4）You need to know the nature of the object of the interrogation，for if 〈the querent）is male and unmarried， and asks when he will have a son after he marries，you should judge that $\langle$ this will happen〉 in 5 years 〈and not in 5 days〉．（5）You should also take into account the power of the signs，for the fixed signs signify delay，the tropical 〈signs〉 swiftness，and the bicorporal 〈signs〉 are intermediate． Therefore many said that the fixed signs signify years，the bicorporal $\langle$ signs $\rangle$ months，and the tropical 〈signs〉 days．But the correct approach is the one that I have mentioned to you．${ }^{2}$（6）In addition，observe the ruler that signifies the object of the interrogation：if it is moving slowly，the object 〈of the interrogation〉 will be delayed；if it is moving rapidly，it will happen soon；and if it is retrograde it will not happen until it［the ruler］ becomes direct［i．e．，in the second station，where a retrograde planet becomes direct］．Sometimes it will happen when the planet that signifies the object $\langle$ of the interrogation $\rangle$［i．e．，the ruler over the object of the

יהיה¹ הדבר פעמים כשיגיע בהליכתו הכוכב שיורה על הדבר אל מקום הכוכב² האחר³ אל בית הצורך. (7) ויאמר³ אבו מעשר: לעולם נסתכל במזל5 ששם השליט,
 שנותיו, ככתוב בספר ראשית חכמה8. (8) גם יש פעמים שיהיה הדבר בהשתנות מרחב הכוכב, לצפון או לדרום, גם בשנותו מקומוּ שיצא ממזל אל אל מזול. (9) והתקיף ביף ביותר ממה שאמרתי לך הם המעלות, ועליהם תסמוך.

8 §


#### Abstract

 הסתכל אל בעל הצומח והמורה¹4. (2) אם היו מביטים אל הצוּ הצומח ואין כוכב מוֹ מזיק מביט אליהם, אמור לו שישב לבטח כי לא ירצ בי15 לו שום נזק, ואם היה בעל הצוּ הומח  היה אחד המזיקים מביט מבטי 19 רע אליו או ${ }^{19}$ או אל הצומח, או יהיו במחברת עמו או עם הצומח ${ }^{21}$ בשרנו22 כי יקרנו רע יותר מאשר יפחד ${ }^{23}$ י23 (4) ואם היה המזיק השמיני יורה עד שימות525, ואם היה ${ }^{25}$ בעל הבית השני, יורה כי יארע ${ }^{26}$ י27 לו רעה גדולה רק ינצל ממנה באחרונה. (5) ויש לך להסתכל אל המזלות אשר בו הבית השמיני²8, כי  יורה כי יעמוד ימים רבים, ואם המזל בעל שתי30 גופות יורה כי ינצל יוצל מהרעה ויקרנו  יושם בי34 בית הסוהר, ואם היה535 בעל הבית הששי והוא על צורת האדם, יתפש בשביה.


 סילמבש; א אמר. 5במזל] סילמבש; א המזל. ${ }^{6}$ אתולדת] סיבשמא; ל תו. 7ימי] סילבמא; שימים. 8ס ${ }^{8}$ חסר. 11שאל] סילבא; שמ ישאל.
 17בית השמיני] ס; יב הח׳; שא ח'; למ השמיני. 19 19בט] סילבמא; ש במבט. ${ }^{19}{ }^{20}$ סיבשמא; ל חסר. מ חסר. 22בשרנו*] ילבמא; 0 בשר אותו; ש יורו. ממה שיפחד. סיבשמ; ש > מזיב; לא חסר. 27 יארע] סל; יבשמא ירע. ${ }^{27}$ אששר בו הבית השמיני] סמ; ילבשא המזלות. 29במהרה] סילבשא; מ במקרה. ${ }^{29}$ שתי] סלבשמא; י ב׳י. סמא; ילבש י״ב. 33ורה] סיבשמא; ל חסר. 34יושם] סילמבש; א יושב. 35יה] סילשמא; ב חסר.
interrogation］catches up with the position of the other planet［i．e．，the ruler over the querent］$\langle$ or $\rangle$ with the required place ${ }^{3,4}$［i．e．，the horoscopic place whose indication suits the object of the interrogation］．（7）Abū Ma＇shar said：we should always observe the sign where the ruler is and， taking account of the nature of the object of the interrogation，assign to it ［the object of the interrogation］as many hours，days，or years，as the days or years of the lord of the sign，${ }^{5}$ as is written in the Book of the Beginning of Wisdom．${ }^{6}$（8）Sometimes it［i．e．，the object of the interrogation］will occur when the planet changes its 〈ecliptical〉 latitude，namely，〈when it moves〉 north or south 〈with respect to the ecliptic〉，or when it changes its place and moves from one sign into another．（9）The best method among those I have mentioned to you is $\langle$ to count $\rangle$ degrees，and you can rely on them．${ }^{7}$

1 （1）The eighth place．If the querent poses a question about something he is afraid of－whether it will occur or not－observe the lord of the ascendant and the significator．（2）If they aspect the ascendant and no malefic planet aspects them，tell him［the querent］that he may rest assured that nothing unfortunate will befall him；but if the lord of the ascendant is in the sixth or eighth or twelfth place，it indicates that most of what he is afraid of 〈will come true〉．${ }^{1}$（3）If one of the malefics aspects it［the lord of the ascendant］or the ascendant in an unfortunate aspect，or if they［the malefics］are in conjunction with it［the lord of the ascendant］ or with the ascendant，inform him that a greater calamity than what he was afraid of will befall him．（4）If the malefic 〈planet〉 is the lord of the eighth place，it signifies that he will die，and if it is the lord of the second place it indicates that a great calamity will befall him but he will be saved from it at the end．（5）Observe the signs where the eighth place is，for a tropical sign signifies that that fear or 〈expected〉 misfortune will soon disappear；if it is in a fixed sign it signifies that 〈the fear〉 will linger for many days；and if it is a bicorporal sign it indicates that he will escape the misfortune but it will happen some other time．（6）If the malefic planet that afflicts the lord of the ascendant is the lord of the twelfth place，it indicates that he will be put in prison；if it is the lord of the sixth place and it is 〈in a sign $\rangle$ with a human shape，he will be held captive．


#### Abstract

1 (1) הבית התשיעי: אם שאל1 שואל על שמועה ששמע, אם היא אמת אם² לא, הסתכל: אם היה המורה באחת היתדות, הוא אמת, ואם בבתים הנ הנופלים, איננו אמת, ואם בסמוכים, קצתו4 אמת. (2) ודע אי זה הוא5 המזל הצומח, והמזל ששם המורה, והמזל ששם ${ }^{6}$ בעד הצומח, כי המזל העומד יורה על אמת, והמתהפך על כזב, ובעל שתי8 גופות על היות קצתו אמת ולא כלוי. (3) וחכמי המזלות הסכימה דעתם, כי אם היה אחד המזיקים באחת היתדות, השמועה היא אמת. (4) ודבריהם נכונים21, רק ${ }^{13}$, אם היתה השמועה על אדם שמתה, יותר15 יורה16 ${ }^{13}$ עליו שבתאי17 שהוא מזיק מאשר יורה צדק ונגה, בעבור כי ככה תולדתו.


2 (1) והשואל על דבר שליח וכתב, הסתכל הכוכב שנפרד המורה ממנו, והוא18 יורה על משגר השליח או כותב הכתב; וככה תשים לו עוד הצומח. (2) והכוכב שיתן המורה הכח לו יורה19 עם ${ }^{19}$ מקום המורה על הדבר שיש בכתב, כי אם הוא עם

 מצאנוהו32 עם מבטי33 רע עם ${ }^{33}$ אחדד35 המזיקים, ואף כי אם היה בבית36 רע, אז נדין כי בכתב דברים קשים שי שיעצבו38 לב האיש ששולח הכתב אליו, והפך הדבר אם היה עם הטובים.

3 (1) ואם שאל שואל על הליכתו, איזה טוב39 לו בים או ביבשה, הסתכל: אם היה המזל הצומח אחד מזלות40 האש, אמור לו שישמר14 ${ }^{41}$ מן הים כי צער גדול יהיה לו שם, ואם היה שבתאי באחת היתדות ואין כוכב טוב מביט, יטבע בים, ואם היה בבית התשיעי42, יארעי43 לו פחד גדול וימלט. (2) אמר דורוניאום ו4 : שבתאי בבית התשיעי45 יזיק לארחות46 ימים, ולא ככה מאדים, רק יזיק ביבשה אם היה בבית התשיעי מפני47 לסטים48|שיצאו עליו בדרך, ואף כי49 אם היה הבית התשיעי מהמזלות שהם על צורת 474

[^59]1 （1）The ninth place．If the querent poses a question about a rumor he heard－whether or not it is true－observe：if the significator is in one of the cardines，it is true；if in the cadent places，it is not true；and if in the succedent places，it is partially true．（2）Find out the type of the ascendant sign，and the 〈type of sign in which the significator is，and ＜the type of〉 sign in which the lord of the ascendant is；for a fixed sign signifies truth，a tropical sign signifies falsehood，and a bicorporal sign signifies that it is true in part but not wholly so．（3）The astrologers agreed that if one of the malefics is in one of the cardines，the rumor is false，and if one of the benefic planets，it is true．（4）Their statements are correct； but if the rumor is that someone has died，Saturn，which is a malefic， indicates this more $\langle$ strongly $\rangle$ than Jupiter or Venus do，because that is its nature．${ }^{1}$

2 （1）〈If the querent〉 poses a question about a messenger and a letter， observe the planet from which the significator parts，for it signifies the sender of the messenger or the writer of the letter；also assign the ascendant to him．（2）The planet to which the significator gives power， together with the position of the significator，signifies the content of the letter，for if it［the planet to which the significator gives power］is with a malefic planet，it signifies bad news in the letter，and if it is with a benefic $\langle$ planet〉，it signifies good news．（3）Māshā’allāh said：regarding letters，you should always take the position of Mercury into account．（4） Now if we find that it［Mercury］is in an unfortunate aspect with one of the malefics，particularly if it is in an unfortunate place，we should pass judgment that the letter brings bad news that will sadden the recipient， and the opposite applies if it［Mercury］is with the benefics．${ }^{1}$

3 （1）If the querent poses a question about his journey－whether it is more auspicious to travel by sea or by land－observe：if the ascendant sign is one of the fiery signs，tell him to avoid the sea because a great calamity awaits him there；if Saturn is in one of the cardines and no benefic planet aspects $\langle\mathrm{it}\rangle$ ，he will drown in the sea；and if it［Saturn］is in the ninth place，he will have a great scare but will survive．（2）Dorotheus said：Saturn in the ninth place is inauspicious for journeys by sea，but not Mars，which is inauspicious for overland journeys only if it is in the ninth place，because bandits will attack him on the road，particularly if

בן ${ }^{1}$ אדם. (3) ובדרך² שהראתי3 בדרכים הקרובים4, ככה5 ${ }^{3}$ הסתכל בדרכים הרחוקים6. (4) ואם היי7 כוכבים טובים במזלות המים ואין כוכב² מזיק מביט', הליכתו בים10 טובה, ואם הם בשאר המזלות ואין מזיק, הליכתו11 בים12 טובהי13.

1 (1) הבית העשירי: אם ישאל אדם על נפשו, אם 14 יהיה לו15 שולטנות ${ }^{15}$ או ממשלה על מקום, או אי זה"17 דבר שיבקש מאת המלך, הסתכל18: אם מצאת בעל הצומח במחברת עם בעל הבית העשירי, או במבט טוב עמו, והם בבתים טובים, יורה כי תהיה שאלתו ויאהבנו המלך. (2) ותוכל לדעת הזמן ממספר המעלות, כאשר פירשתי, או בהגיע בעל הבית העשירי אל הצומח ${ }^{19}$ או אל מקום בעליו, או בהגיע בעל הצומח20 אל מקום בעל 21 הבית העשירי או שיכנס בבית העשירי. (3) ואם המורה יביט אל בעל הצומח, הנה יורה כי ישלים חפצו כרצונו22. (4) ואם ${ }^{22}$ אין ${ }^{23}$ בעל בעל הצומח מביט אל בעל הבית העשירי ויביט אל השמש מבט טוב והשמש בבית טוב, יורה כי יהיה הדברי25 ויטיב לו המלך, ואם השמש בבית רע, יורה כי יהיה הדבר רק בסוף ישנאהו26 המלך ${ }^{27}$ ויענישהו. (5) ואם היה רק פחות מששה עשר ${ }^{30}$ חלקים, שהם חצי אלכסון השמש, והכוכב 31 בחשב ${ }^{32}$ האפודה והם בבתים טובים, יורה כי המלך יאהבנו כנפשו" ${ }^{33}$ תמיד, ואם הם ${ }^{34}$ בבית רע בתחלה, יאהבנו ולבסוף ${ }^{35}$ ישנאנו6. (6) ואם יש לכוכב ${ }^{36}$ יא מרחב, יכנו המלך וישים ${ }^{38}$ בכבל רגליוי39, ואם יביט מאדים או שבתאי, יהרגנו, וככה תדין אם היה ${ }^{40}$ בעל המזל ${ }^{4}$ אל הצומח נשרף מהשמשי43. (7) ואם בעל הצומח יתן הכח לבעל הבית העשירי, השואל יבקש להיותו33 קרוב למלכות, ואם בעל הבית העשירי יתן הכח לבעל הצומח או השמש תתן הכח לו, המלך יבקשנו ויפייסנו או יכריחנו להיות עמו. (8) ועל זה הדרך44 תדין
 [4 ${ }^{4}$
 ילמבשא חסר. ${ }^{9}$ מביט] סילבשא; מ > אליו. מזיק הליכתו] סילשמא; ב חסר. סיבשמא; ל ואם. [צילו] סשא; ילבמ חסר. חסר. ${ }^{18}$ הסתכל] סיבשמא; ל חסר. ${ }^{19}$ פהצומח] סילבמא; ש> בעל. ${ }^{19}$ בהגיע בעל הצומח] סילבמא; ש חסר. 21 או בהגיע בעל הצומח אל מקום בעל] סיבשמא; ל חסר.
 26 26שנאהו] סילמבש; א ישמרהו. ${ }^{27}$ אמלך ${ }^{27}$ ילמבשא; 0 מלך.
 [בחשב*] ילמבשא; 0 > והם. סמ; ילבשא ובסוף. [36 36נאנו] סילמבש; x ישנאהו. [37לכוכב* ילמבשא; ס אל הכוכב.

 להיות. ${ }^{44} \mathrm{~T}_{\text {הרך] סיבשמא; ל } . ~}^{\text {ח. }}$
the ninth place is in one of the signs with a human shape．${ }^{1}$（3）For long journeys proceed as I have explained for short journeys．（4）If benefic planets are in the watery signs and no malefic planet aspects，his journey by sea will be fortunate；if they are in the other 〈types of signs and no malefic planet $\langle$ aspects $\rangle$ ，his journey by sea will be fortunate．
$\$ 10$

1 （1）The tenth place．If someone poses a question about himself－whe－ ther he will rule or govern some place，or what he should request from the king－observe：if you find the lord of the ascendant in conjunction with the lord of the tenth place，or in a fortunate aspect with it，and they are in fortunate places，it signifies that his request will come true and the king will love him．（2）You may know when this will happen（as I have explained）${ }^{1}$ from the number of degrees $\langle$ until $\rangle$ the lord of the tenth place arrives at the ascendant or at the position of its［the ascendant＇s］lord，or the lord of the ascendant arrives at the position of the lord of the tenth place or enters the tenth place．（3）If the significator aspects the lord of the ascendant，this signifies that he will attain the object of his desire．（4） If the lord of the ascendant does not aspect the lord of the tenth place but aspects the Sun in a fortunate aspect and the Sun is in a fortunate place， it signifies that the thing will come true and the king will favor him；but if the Sun is in an unfortunate place it signifies that the thing will come true but in the end the king will hate him and punish him．（5）If the lord of the ascendant conjoins with the Sun in the same degree and＜the distance $\rangle$ between them is less than $16^{\prime}$ ，which is equal to half the Sun＇s diameter，${ }^{2}$ and the planet［the lord of the ascendant］is in the ecliptic and they［the lord of the ascendant and the lord of the tenth place］are in fortunate places，it signifies that the king will always love him as he loves himself；but if they are in an unfortunate place，he will love him at first but in the end he will hate him．（6）If the planet has 〈some ecliptic〉 latitude，the king will have him flogged and placed in leg－irons；if Mars or Saturn are in aspect，he will have him killed．Pass a similar judgment if the lord of the ascendant sign is burnt by the Sun．（7）If the lord of the ascendant gives power to the lord of the tenth place，the querent will request to be close to the king，but if the lord of the tenth place gives power to the lord of the ascendant or the Sun gives power to it［the lord of the ascendant］，the king will request，urge，or force him to be with him．${ }^{3}$（8）Pass a similar judgment with respect to the other places：if the

בשאר הבתים, כי אם היה בעל הבית התשיעי, שיורה על הדרכים, במזל הצומח ואיננו שב אחורנית¹, יתחדש על השואל, או² ${ }^{1}$ על הנולד מדרך מולדו, דבר שיצטרך בעל בעל כרחו³ ללכת, ואם בעל ${ }^{3}$ המזל5 ${ }^{3}$ הצומח יהיה בבי
 הדבר אם הדבר10 הפוך. (10) וככה, אם היה הצומח, הנשים יפייסוהו12 שיקחם, והפך הדבר אם הדבר הפוך וֹבי.

2 (1) ואם שאל14 שואל על נפשו, או על אדם15 אחר, אם 2 (26 ירד מגדולתו, הסתכל אל



 בעל הצומח באחת היתדות או בבית עשתי עשר או בחמישי ואי ביננו נשרף. (5) ושתף המורה בשאלה הזאת, כי אם היה נותן כחו לכוכב שהואבא באו באחת היתדות" ${ }^{26}$, יורה כי
 בעל הבית העשירי בבית התשיעי, יוסר מגדולתו, וככה אם נתן הכח לכוכב שיהיה בבית התשיעי30 או בבית השלישי.

3



 הצומח. (4) והנה53, אם היא ${ }^{35}$ במחברת|או במבט עם צדק, שהוא בעל הבית העשירי, 347


 ממנו. ${ }^{10}$ הם הדבר] סילבשא; מ חסר.
 "אם*] ילמבשא; ס חסר. 17 17בעליו*] ילשמא; ס ואל בעליו; ב או בעליו.

 ואם בעל הצומח יהיה נשרף באחת היתדות*] ילבשא; סמ חסר. חסר. 26שהוא] סיבמא; ש> צומד; ל חסר. ${ }^{26}{ }^{27}$ בבית עשתי עשר ... שהוא באחת היתדות] סיבשמא;
 הכח לככב שיהיה בבית התשיעי] סיבשא; ל חסר. ס33 שבע] סלמא; יבש זי. בנ4 בעלת] סיבמא; ל ואל בעל; ש בעל. סיבשמא; ל הוא.
lord of the ninth place, which signifies journeys, is in the ascendant sign and is not retrograde, something will happen to the querent, or to the native according to his natal chart, on account of which he will have to undertake a journey against his will; but if the lord of ascendant sign is in the ninth place, he will undertake the journey voluntarily. (9) Likewise, if the lord of the second place gives power to the lord of the ascendant, he will attain money effortlessly, but the opposite will occur in the opposite case. (10) Likewise, if the lord of the seventh place gives power to the lord of the ascendant, women will exhort him to marry them, but the opposite will occur in the opposite case. ${ }^{4}$

2 (1) If the querent poses a question about himself or about another person-whether he will fall from his high position-observe the ascendant and its lord. (2) If you find one of the malefics in one of the cardines, it is an unfortunate indication for him; but if one of the benefics, it is a fortunate indication for him. (3) If the lord of the ascendant is burnt in one of the cardines, there is no doubt that he will soon be removed from his high position and he will perhaps die; but if you find the lord of the tenth place in one of the cardines and no malefic planet aspects it, it signifies that he will retain his high position. (4) The same applies if the lord of the ascendant is in one of the cardines or in the eleventh or fifth place and is not burnt. (5) In this type of interrogation take into account the significator, too, because if it gives its power to a planet that is in one of the cardines it signifies that he will retain his high position, but the opposite applies if the planet is in one of the cadent places. (6) If the lord of the tenth place is in the ninth place, he will be removed from his high position; the same applies if it gives power to a planet that is in the ninth or third place.

3 (1) If the ascendant sign is in one of the signs in which the division of the places changes, such as $\langle\mathrm{in}\rangle$ the extreme north or extreme south, ${ }^{1}$ proceed as follows. (2) I give you an illustration: suppose that the ascendant sign is Cancer $5^{\circ}$ in a city whose latitude is $42^{\circ} 30^{\prime} ;{ }^{2}$ consequently, the cusp of the tenth place for the latitude of the country is Pisces $7^{\circ}$, even though it [Pisces] is the ninth place according to the number of signs [i.e., Pisces is the ninth sign starting the count with Cancer], because Aries $5^{\circ}$ is the cusp of the tenth place according to the number of signs. ${ }^{3}$ (3) Now observe the Moon, the lord of the ascendant [i.e., Cancer, the ascendant, is the Moon's house]. (4) In this case, if it [the Moon] is in conjunction or aspect with Jupiter, which is the lord of the tenth place [i.e., Pisces,

או במבט¹ טוב עמו או עם² כוכב שיהיה במזל דגים, אז יורה כי תהיה³ לו גדולה, רק
 אין הלבנה מתחברת ולא מבטת אל צדק ולא אל אל כוכב שהוא מוא ממזל דגים, והיא מבטת אל מאדים מבט טוב, שהוא בעל הבית העשירי במספר המעלות, או תביט מבט טוב² אל
 והנה, אם מצאנו כי הלבנה, שהיא בעלת וֹא ${ }^{14}$ הבית העשירי, תתן הכח לנגה והוא טוב, או נגה מביט16 מבט טוב אל כוכב שיהיה במזל סרטן והוא מקובל ממנו, אז תהיה לו מעלה גדולה כרצונו ויותר.

## $11 \S$

1 1) בית עשתי עשר: אם שאל17 אדם אם ימצא חן בעיני אדם אחר, הסתכל אל בעל זה הבית. (2) אם הוא במבט טוב אל המזל הצומח, או הוא שם, או הוא עם בעליו, או עם ${ }^{18}$ מבטי ${ }^{19}$ טוב עמו והם בבתים טובים, ימצא חן בעיניו כרצונו, ואם והם ${ }^{22}$ בבתים רעים, ישנאנו23 בסוף. (3) ויש לך לדעת אהבת ${ }^{24}$ מי יבקש, כי אם יבקש
 עשר29, יורה כי יהיה חפצו כרצונן30, רק אם בם שבתאי יה יהיה שב אחורניתם בי32 או בעל בית"33 שנים העשר34, יורה כי בסוף תהיה ביניהם ${ }^{35}$ מריבה גדולה. (4) ואם הוא יבקש אהבת דיין וכומר36 ומצאת צדק בבית טוב, יורה כי יהיה חפצו, ואם ואם היה עם אחד
 במבט טוב אל הצומח ואל בעליו, יהיה חפצו, ואם במבט רע בעל בית עשתי עשר בצומח. (6) ואם הוא מבקש אהבת שלטון והשמש במקום טוב,

[^60]which coincides with the tenth place, is Jupiter's house], or in a fortunate aspect with it or with a planet in Pisces, it signifies that he will attain high rank, ${ }^{4}$ but not as high as he wishes; that is, he will attain two-thirds of his expectations. (5) But if the Moon is not in conjunction or in aspect with Jupiter or with any planet in Pisces, and is in a fortunate aspect with Mars, which is the lord of the tenth place according to <the division into equal〉 number of degrees [Aries is Mars' house], or is in a fortunate aspect with a planet in Aries, he will attain only a third of his expectations. (6) However, if the rising sign is Libra, there is no doubt that Cancer is always the tenth place. ${ }^{5}$ (7) Now if we find that the Moon, which is the lord of the tenth place [i.e., Cancer, the tenth sign counting from Libra, is the Moon's house], gives power to Venus, which is in a fortunate place, or that Venus is in a fortunate aspect with a planet in Cancer and it [the planet] is received by it [Venus], then he will attain a rank as high as he desires or even higher.

## $\$ 11$

1 (1) The eleventh place. If someone asks whether he will find favor with another person, observe the lord of this place [i.e., the eleventh place].
(2) If it [the lord of the eleventh place] is in a fortunate aspect with the ascendant sign, or if it is there [in the ascendant sign], or if it is with its lord [the lord of the ascendant], or in a fortunate aspect with it [the lord of the ascendant] and they are in fortunate places, he will find favor with him, as he wishes; and if they are in this condition but in unfortunate places, he will hate him in the end. ${ }^{1}$ (3) You need to know whose love he seeks; if he seeks the love of old people and Saturn is in a fortunate place at the time of the interrogation, even though it [Saturn] is not the lord of the eleventh place, it signifies that his wish will come true as he expects; but if Saturn is retrograde or if it is the lord of the twelfth place, ${ }^{2}$ it signifies that a bitter quarrel will break out between them in the end. (4) If he seeks the love of a judge or a priest and you find Jupiter in a fortunate place, it signifies that his wish will come true, but if it [Jupiter] is with one of the malefics it will not come true. (5) If he seeks the love of a general or of a warrior and Mars is in a fortunate aspect with the ascendant or with its lord, his wish will come true; but if it is in an unfortunate aspect it will not come true, even though the lord of the eleventh place is in the ascendant. (6) If he seeks the love of the ruler and the Sun is in a fortunate position, and is in a fortunate aspect with the ascendant and its lord, all

מביט¹ מבט טוב אל הצומח ואל בעליו, יהיה כל חפצו². (7) ואם הוא יבקש³ אהבת נשים ונגה במקום טוב ויביט מבט טוב4 אל הצומח ואל בעליו, יהיה חפצו5 , ואם יביט מאדים מבט רע אל אחד ${ }^{6}$ מהם, לא יא יהיה. (8) ואם הוא הוא יבקש${ }^{7}$ אהבת חכם הסתכל אל

 ואין כוכב מזיק10 מביט אם היה הגורל להפך. (10) ואם ישאל על אבר אדם, אם הוא אהובו1515, הסתכל אל בוב בעל
 רע, דון ששונאו הוא, ואם אין ביניהם שום מבט, לא אוהב ולא שוא שונא. (11) וגם הסתכל אל בעל הצומח: אם הוא בבית הראשון או בבית עשתי עשר או בוּ בית בוּ השביעי18, או שיהיה במבט טוב עם בעל השביעי, דון שאהבתו מכוסה ואין לבו לו שלם בם 19. (12) ושתף בכל שאלה שתהיה ככה בעל בית
 להסתכל דברים רבים. האחד, אם יצא במהרה מה שאומר לך. (2) ראה אם המורה מהיר בהליכתו, ובעל הצומח, ואי ואם הם באחת היתדות ונותנים כחם לכוכב שהוא בבית השלישי והתשיעי בי, או לבעלי הבי התים הזי הזנכרים, על מנת שיהיה בעל הבית 27 התשיעי או השלישי מהיר בהליכתו. והנה, כל אלה יורו כי יצא במהרה. (3) ואם בעל הבית השלישי או התשיעי יתן הכח לבעל הצוּ ואומח, והי והוא באחת הרביעיות ${ }^{28}$ הנקבות, ואף כיצ29 אם היה מהיר בהליכתו, הנה יצאי
 ככה המזל הצומח או בעליו במזל מהתפך או הלבנה שם, והמזלות העומדים יורו על

1מביט] סמבש; א ותביט; יל חסר. ${ }^{1}$ אואם במבט רע לא יהיה ... בעליו יהיה כל חפצו] סבשמא; יל חסר. 3יבקש] סילשא; ב מבקש. ${ }^{4}$ יויביט מבט טוב] סישא; ב ומביט מבט טוב; ל חסר. סואם הוא יבקש אהבת ... בעליו יהיה חפצו] סילבשא; מ חסר. ${ }^{6}$ אחד] סשמא; י א׳; ב אחת; ל שלשה.
 בעליו במקום טוב ואין כוכב מזיק] סבשא; ילמ חסר. ל חסר. 16 19ואם ישאל על אדם אם הוא אהובו ... מכוסה ואין לבו שלם] סבשמ; ילא חסר.


 סילבמ; שא משעתו.
his wish will come true．${ }^{3}$（7）If he seeks the love of women and Venus is in a fortunate position and is in a fortunate aspect with the ascendant and its lord，his wish will come true；but if Mars is in an unfortunate aspect with one of them［the ascendant or its lord］，it will not come true．（8）If he seeks the love of a scholar observe Mercury and proceed according to the rule．${ }^{4}$（9）If the querent poses a question about merchandise－ whether he will profit from it－observe the lot of Fortune：if it is in a fortunate position and no malefic planet aspects it，and $\langle i f\rangle$ its［the lot of Fortune＇s］lord is in a fortunate position and no malefic planet aspects it， the merchandise is very good because he will profit from it as he wishes； the opposite applies if the lot 〈of Fortune〉 is in an opposite condition．${ }^{5}$ （10）If 〈the querent〉 asks whether someone loves him，observe the lord of the ascendant and the Moon：if they are in conjunction or there is a fortunate aspect between them，judge that he loves him；if 〈there is $\rangle$ an unfortunate aspect 〈between them $\rangle$ ，judge that he hates him；and if 〈there is $\rangle$ no aspect $\langle$ between them $\rangle$ ，he neither loves nor hates him．（11）Also observe the lord of the ascendant：if it is in the first，eleventh or seventh place，or in a fortunate aspect with the lord of the seventh place，judge that his love is hidden and not wholehearted．（12）In any similar interrogation take into account the lord of the eleventh place as well，and do not forget the significator，because it plays a role in it．

## § 12

1 （1）The twelfth place．If the querent poses a question about a pris－ oner in jail，you should observe many things．First，whether he will be soon released from jail．Now observe everything I tell you．（2）Observe whether the significator and the lord of the ascendant are moving rapidly， and whether they are in one of the cardines and give their power to a planet that is in the third or ninth place，or to the lords of the aforemen－ tioned places，on condition that the lord of the ninth or third place is moving rapidly．So，all these 〈conditions〉 signify that he will be released soon．（3）If the lord of the third or ninth place gives power to the lord of the ascendant，and if is in one of the feminine quadrants，particularly if it is moving rapidly，he will be released on its day［i．e．，the day under the charge of the lord of the ascendant］，and if it is a benefic planet during its hour ${ }^{1}$［i．e．，the hour under the charge of the lord of the ascendant］．（4）The tropical signs signify swiftness，if the ascendant sign or its lord are there， that is，in a tropical sign，or the Moon is there［i．e．，in a tropical sign］．The

עיכוב¹, ובעלי שני² גופות יורו על זמן בינוני. (5) ודע כי אם היה שבתאי באחת היתדות |
 כי היתדות בדבר הזה הם קשים, וככה אם יתן המורה כחו לכוכב בוכ שהוא בית ביתד. (6) ויותר רע אם היה בעל צומח בבית שנים עשר או בבית הששי או בשמית וכיני3, כי4 אז



 אחת יתדות המזל הצומח, יורה כי אחר שיצא ישוב10 אל בית בית הסוהר, וככה אם היה בעו בעל הצומח נותן הכח לכוכב שהוא בבית השני או השמיני11. (9) והסתכ בובל אל בעל הבית השביעי, אל כוכב שיהיה12 שם: אם היה במבט טוב עם בעל הצומח, יורה כי כי השליט האוסר אותו אין במחשבתו לעשות רע, ואם היה במבט¹3 רע, יורה על הפך הדבר.

2 בבית¹5 שנים העשר, איננה טובה לו16, כי יורה שיפול ממנה ויבא לידי נזק. (2) וככה אם היה בעל זה"17 הבית בבית השביעי, או על מבט נכח עם בעל הצומח, או מבט רביעית, ויותר אם היה כוכב מזיק. (3) גם הסתכל אל המורה, כי אם אם היה עם כוכב טוב יורה על טוב, ואם רע עלי19 רע. (4) ואם היה אחד בי20 הטובים בבית שנים העשר, או יהיה בעל זה הבית במזל הצומח או בעשתי עשר או בחמישי, הנה בוב עדות שלימה על טוב, ואם הוא בבית השמיני או הששיבי23, הנה סימן רע. (5) ואם יביטי24 מבט טוב אל בעל הצומח, הנה אות טוב, והפך הדבר אם היה מבט רעי ודע אי זה מן ממני הבהמה ירצה לקנות, והסתכל אל הל המשרת שיש בחלקו אותו
 תקיף מפאת השמש, ומפאת הבתים, ומפאת ${ }^{29}$ שיש30 לו כח במקומו, הנה אות ${ }^{31}$ גמור

1 עיכוב] סילמבש; א עייפות.

 הכוכב ] סיבשמא; לחסר. 10ישוב] סילבמ; שא יושב. ס"בבית השני או השמיני] סילשמא; ב בבית הג׳ או הט'או הח'. 15בבית] סיבשמא; ל חסר. ${ }^{15}$ סלו] סיבשמא; ל חסר. 19 19ל] סיבמ; לשא > יורה.

 ילמבשא; ס חסר. סומפאת] סיבשמא; ל חסר. ${ }^{29}$ סשיש] סילבמא; ש > מי. ${ }^{31}$ אות] סיבשמא; ל חסר.
fixed signs signify delay; and the bicorporal sign signify an intermediate period of time. (5) Know that it is an unfortunate indication if Saturn is in one of the cardines. The same applies if the lord of the ascendant is in the fourth place, because it is the worst of all the cardines and the cardines are unfortunate in this regard. The same applies if the significator gives its power to a planet that is in a cardo. (6) It is more unfortunate if the lord of the ascendant is in the twelfth, sixth or eighth place, because then it signifies that he will die in jail, and the same applies if the lord of the twelfth or eighth place aspects it [the lord of the ascendant]; and it is even less fortunate if it is a malefic planet. (7) If you find that the lord of the ascendant or the significator give power to a planet that is in the third or ninth place, it signifies that he will soon be released, if this planet is moving rapidly. (8) Now you should observe: if this planet is the lord of one of the cardines of the ascendant sign, it signifies that after he is released he will return to jail; the same applies if the lord of the ascendant gives power to a planet that is in the second or eighth place. (9) Observe the lord of the seventh place 〈and any〉 planet that may be there [in the seventh place]: if it is in a fortunate aspect with the lord of the ascendant, it signifies that the ruler who imprisoned him does not intend to harm him; but if it is an unfortunate aspect, it signifies the opposite. ${ }^{2}$

2 (1) If someone poses a question about an animal he wishes to buy, observe: if one of the malefics is in the twelfth place, this is not auspicious for him, because it signifies that he will fall off it and be injured. (2) The same applies if this lord is in the seventh place, or in opposition to the lord of the ascendant, or in quartile, and particularly if it is a malefic planet. ${ }^{1}$ (3) Observe also the significator, because if it is with a benefic planet it signifies good fortune, and if with a malefic planet misfortune. (4) If one of the benefics is in the twelfth place, or if the lord of this place is in the ascendant sign, or in the eleventh or fifth place, this is a complete testimony about good fortune; but if it is in the eighth or sixth place it is a bad portent. (5) If it is in a fortunate aspect with the lord of the ascendant, this is a good portent, but the opposite applies if it is in a unfortunate aspect. (6) Find out what species of animals he intends to buy and observe the planet in whose portion this species is, as written in the Book of the Beginning of Wisdom. ${ }^{2}$ (7) Now if you find at the time of the interrogation that it [the planet] is strong with respect to the Sun, and with respect to the places, and because it exercises power in its position, this is an absolute portent of good fortune, but the opposite applies if

על טוב, והפך הדבר אם היה חלש. (8) ואע״״פי1 שיש שותפות בדברי האויבים לבית הזה, אין צורך להזכירם, כי כבר דיברתי עליהם מה שיספיק בבית השביעי.

נשלם ספר השאלות²<br>ולשם רובי תהילות<br>מאמץ ידים נחשלות 3<br>ולו נתכנו עלילות

it is weak. (8) Even though this place also applies to enemies, there is no need to mention them $\langle$ here $\rangle$, because I have already discussed them sufficiently in the seventh place. ${ }^{3}$

The Book of Interrogations is complete.
Praised be the Lord
Who strengthens weak hands
And by Whom actions are weighed.

PART EIGHT

NOTES TO THE FIRST VERSION OF THE BOOK OF INTERROGATIONS
${ }^{[1]}$ 1: The astrologers ... interrogations. Corresponds to She' elot II, §1:1, where kings Ptolemy and Dorotheus, respectively, personify these two schools of thought. See note there.
${ }^{[2]}$ 2: Enoch. Enoch, or Hermes, is a legendary figure who derives from the god incarnate Hermes Trismegistus (who represents the Egyptian god Thoth and is also viewed as the author of philosophical, scientific, and magic works) and was taken up in the Muslim world divided into the triple Hermes. It was probably Abū Ma'shar who was responsible for the creation and dissemination of this myth (Kitāb al-Ulūf, 1968, pp. 14-19; Tabaqāt al-'Umam, 1991, pp. 19, 36; Burnett, 1976, pp. 231234; Plessner, 1954; Plessner, 1971, pp. 45-59). Ibn Ezra follows closely in Abū Ma'shar's footsteps and refers to the triple Enoch in three separate sections of ‘Olam I ( $\$ 36: 1-2 ; \$ 37: 1-2 ; \$ 56: 1-15$, pp. 76-77, 88-89). Ibn Ezra also invokes "Enoch," with no accompanying epithet; this is how Enoch's astrological and astronomical work is frequently referred to throughout Ibn Ezra's oeuvre, usually in an approving tone (Moladot, MS BNF 1056, f. 47a; Țéamim I, §2.4:3, pp. 42-43; §3.6:13, pp. 66-69;
 "As a general rule, only what Enoch said is true and corroborated by experience, and is compatible with nature"). Based on the position that Enoch is supposed to have given for the star Cor Leonis (Te‘amim I, \$1.2:3, pp. 30-31), Ibn Ezra believed that Enoch lived 1,700 years before his own time. See Sela, 2003, pp. 184185.
${ }^{[3]}$ 2: Ptolemy. See note on $M e$ 'orot $\$$ 16:2.
[4] 2: Mundane affairs ... natives. Here "mundane affairs," דברי העולם, is an allusion to historical astrology, and "natives," נולדים, is a reference to the doctrine of nativities, because natives are the subjects of natal horoscopes, the main tool of the latter doctrine. Historical astrology and nativities are mentioned here together not only because they are the weightiest branches of astrology but especially because these two doctrines are the main topics of Ptolemy's Tetrabiblos. The latter idea is explicitly stated in She'elot II, $\$ 1: 2$ : "He [Ptolemy] has three books on mundane affairs as well as nativities." See note there.
${ }^{[5]}$ 2：The first is the school ．．．no substance．Corresponds to She＇elot II， $\$ 1: 2$ ，where the rejection of the doctrine of interrogations is ascribed exclusively to Ptolemy．Note that in Ptolemy＇s Tetrabiblos there is no reference to the doctrine of interrogations，while in Pseudo－Ptolemy＇s Centiloquium one can hardly find such a rejection of the doctrine of interrogations．Ibn Ezra appears here to have drawn on＇Alī ibn abī－ l－Rijāl＇s Kitāb al－bāri＇fi akhām an－nujūm（eleventh century）or some related Arabic astrological source，where such a rejection of the doctrine of interrogations（and of elections as well）is attributed to Ptolemy，along with praise of the doctrine of nativities．See Iudizios de las estrellas，1954， I：5，p．20，quoted in note on She＇elot II，§1：2．
${ }^{[6]}$ 5：Since man＇s soul ．．．〈from what is caused by the stars〉．This refers to the wise or rational soul，the highest component of the tripartite human soul，which，in Ibn Ezra＇s view，is the main instrument by which human beings can evade，at least in part，the decrees of the stars．For a definition of the human supernal soul，in the framework of the tripartite human soul，see note on Mivharim I $\$ 1.1$ ．The current passage echoes similar statements in Mivharim I $\$ 1.1$ and Mivharim II 1：3．See notes there．
${ }^{[7]}$ 5－6：Since man＇s soul $\ldots$ ．may think of．Cf．below，$\S_{3: 1-2 .}$
${ }^{[8]} 3-6$ ：$\langle$ This is $\rangle$ their reasoning ．．．may think of．This appears to be Ibn Ezra＇s own view about how astrologers who reject the truth of the doc－ trine of interrogations buttress their stand．The basic question behind the discussion in this and the next paragraph $(\$ 1: 1-7 ; \$ 2: 1-2)$ is the scope of astrological influence．The underlying idea is that for the doctrine of interrogation to be reliable the influence of the stars must be exercised not only over a person＇s physical make－up but over his soul as well．This is because interrogations are based on the belief that＂the configuration of the planets with respect to one other produces in a man＇s mind a question that is analogous to the＜celestial〉 configuration＂（\＄3：4）．Thus，according to Ibn Ezra，the opponents of the doctrine of interrogation maintain that human beings are not completely dependent on astrological influence． The human tripartite soul，which includes the supernal soul，endows man with a degree of free will that limits the determinism of astrological influence；and this undermines the validity of the doctrine of interroga－ tions．
${ }^{[1]}$ 1: Dorotheus, Hebrew דורוניוס. This astrologer is to be identified with Dorotheus of Sidon, author of the well-known Pentabiblos (Carmen astrologicum, 1976). Here and elsewhere Ibn Ezra refers to Dorotheus as Doronius, a mistake produced by a mispointing of the Arabic text. "Doronius" as an explicit appellation for Dorotheus of Sidon is found in an early twelfth-century Iberian setting in the Liber Aristotilis De ducentis LVque Indorum voluminibus universalim questionum tam genetialium quam circularium summam continens (The Book of Aristotle containing the totality of the questions, both genethlialogical and revolutionary, from the 255 volumes of the Indians), an astrological treatise by Hugo of Santalla dedicated to Michael, bishop of Tarazona from 1119 to 1151. Hugo of Santalla ascribes 13 works of astrology to Doronius, eight of which (divided into 89 chapters) deal with historical astrology; the other five constitute a single work, of which the first four are on genethlialogy and the fifth on interrogations (Liber Aristotilis, 1997, pp. 1, 4, 15). This is the fifth book, on interrogations, of the didactic poem on horoscopic astrology known in Greek as the Pentateuch ("five books") (Carmen astrologicum, 1976, pp. 264-322). But in a Byzantine translation of a bibliography, Māshā’allāh ascribes 11 works to Dorotheus: four on genethlialogy, three (rather than one) on interrogations, three on calculation, and one (rather than eight) on conjunctions (Liber Aristotilis, 1997, pp. 4, 201-214). Dorotheus' Pentabiblos was translated into Arabic by 'Umar b. al-Farrukhān al-Țabarī and Māshā’allāh from a previous translation into Pahlavī (Pingree, 1997, p. 46). That Ibn Ezra was acquainted with the Arabic translations of Dorotheus' work, which were contaminated with Sasanian material and references to Hermes and other astrologers, is suggested by the fact that in She'elot II, $\S_{1}: 1$, as well as in 'Olam I, 'Olam II, and Țe'amim I, Dorotheus is referred to as a king ('Olam I, §32:1, pp. 72-73; ‘Olam II, §24:1, pp. 172-173; TTe'amim I, $\$ 2.18: 2$, pp. $58-59$ ), just as in the translation of Dorotheus' work (Carmen astrologicum, 1976, p. 262).
${ }^{[2]}$ 1-2: The second school ... based on nativities. Corresponds to She' elot II, $\$ 1: 3$, where an approving view of interrogations is ascribed exclusively to Dorotheus. Here, too, Ibn Ezra seems to be drawing on a recent Arabic tradition, as expressed in 'Alī ibn abī-l-Rijāl's Kitāb al-bāri' fi akhām annujūm. See notes on She'elot II, $\S 1: 3$.
${ }^{[3]}$ 3: This is their reasoning ... thoughts and interrogations. Here Ibn Ezra explains the opinion of the supporters of the doctrine of interrogations: it is reliable and correct because the scope of astrological influence lies beyond shaping the physical make-up of human beings and affects their soul and thoughts as well. This stands in contrast to the way in which he interpreted the viewpoint of the opponents (\$1:3-6), who restrict the scope of astrological influence to the physical make-up alone, thereby undermining the foundations of the doctrine of interrogations. See note on $\S 1: 3-6$. Al-Kindī, one of Ibn Ezra's most important astrological sources in general, and for the doctrine of interrogations in particular (see below, note on $\$ 7: 1$ ), conveys a similar opinion in his epistle On the Explanation of the Proximate, Agent Cause of Generation and Corruption: "It is found that the actions of the soul follow on the mixture of bodies, and the mixtures vary with the variation of the stars" (quoted from Adamson, 2002, p. 264).
${ }^{[1]}$ 1: Māshā’allāh. See note on She'elot II, $\S 1$ 1:4.
${ }^{\text {[2] 2: Details }\langle o f ~ t h e ~ n a t a l ~ h o r o s c o p e\rangle, ~ H e b r e w ~ פ ר ט י ם . ~ F o r ~ t h i s ~ m e a n i n g ~}$ of פרטים, see Mivḩarim I, $\S 1: 1$ and Mivḥarim II, $\S$ 5:2.
${ }^{[3]}$ 2: This is true $\ldots\langle$ of the natal horoscope $\rangle$. The meaning of this statement appears to be that, although the astrologer can read the querent's thoughts because they are usually determined by the celestial bodies, the querent can sometimes cheat the astrologer, because man is endowed with free will and his soul is not entirely determined by the celestial configuration. This statement, which echoes Mivharim I, $\$ 1.1$ (see note there) and $\$ 1: 5-6$ above, is Ibn Ezra's own comment on the quotation from Māshā'allāh in $\S_{3: 1}$.
${ }^{[4]}$ 3: He also said ... judgment correctly. This statement draws on a passage from a text whose original Arabic is lost, but has been preserved in a Hebrew translation entitled ספר השאלות למאשא אללה (Book of Interroga-
 כי המורה צריך להשתמר מד' דברים ... השני מפאת השואל שלא בלא ידע לשאול כהו כהוגן בצו ... דע כי יותר נכון כשהשואל יחשוב בלבו על שאלתו יום ולילה או יותר ולא פחות, בעבור כי הגלגל יורה על מחשבת לב השואל. ואכן, מי שיהיה זריז בשאלותיו, ישיב לו
"In the name of God, I begin the Book of Interrogations by Māshā’allāh. Know that the astrologer should be cautious regarding four things. ... The second relates to the querent, when he does not pose the question appropriately. ... Know that the querent's intentions are more accessible 〈to the astrologer〉 if the querent retains his question in his heart for a whole day and night, or even longer, but not less time, because the orb signifies the querent's thoughts. Indeed, one who is diligent when he poses his questions, the astrologer will provide him with a correct reply, according to God's decree" (Māshäallāh on Interrogations, MS OBL 160, f. 154a). The same text has been also translated into Latin and variously entitled De inventione occultorum, De inventionibus occultorum, and Libellus interpretationum. See Thorndike, 1956, pp. 54-56 (incipit: Scito quod aspiciens). Note that a similar statement is ascribed to Dorotheus in She'elot II, $\S 1.3$.
${ }^{\text {[5] }} \mathbf{6}$ : Abū Ma'shar. Born in Balḥ in the Persian province of Hurāsān in 787 CE; died in al-Wāsiṭ in central Iraq in 886. Abū Ma'shar was the most prominent astrologer of the Middle Ages. He formulated the standard expression of Arabic astrology in its various branches, creating a synthesis of the Indian, Persian, Greek, and Harranian theories current in his day. See Fihrist, 1970, II, pp. 656-658; Pingree, 1970, pp. 32-39; Pingree, 1990, pp. 298-298; Kitāb al-Madḥal, 1996, I, pp. 1-49. Abū Ma'shar is also Ibn Ezra's most important Arabic astrological source, referred to frequently but unevenly in his astrological treatises. Ibn Ezra's attitude towards Abū Ma'shar varies: (a) He takes an approving attitude towards his work on interrogations (She'elot I, §3:6-7, §7.4:5; She’elot II, $\S 9.2: 7$ ). (b) He adopts a neutral attitude towards his work on elections and nativities (Mivḥarim I, § 1.2:2, § 1.9:1-2, § 5.4:2, §7.2:4, §7.5:1, §12.1:3; Moladot, MS BNF 1056, ff. 51a, 53b, 58b). (c) He refers disapprovingly to Abū Ma'shar's work on historical astrology in 'Olam I ( $\$ 1: 1-$ 2, pp. 52-53; §61:1-5, pp. 92-93). (d) He draws heavily on Abū Ma'shar's introductions to astrology without mentioning his name; thus, substantial parts of Reshit Hokhmah I (chapters 5-7) are Hebrew paraphrases of or word-for-word translations from Abū Ma'shar's Kitāb al-Madhal; e.g., Reshit Ḥokhmah, 1939, V, li: 9-liii: 18 (cf. Kitâb al-Madḥal, 1996, VII: 6, v, pp. 304-308).
${ }^{[6]}$ 6-7: Abū Ma'shar said ... judgment will be true. Corresponds to She'elot II, $\S 6: 1-2$. Abū Ma'shar's statement is based on one of Mars' properties: it indicate lies and falsehood. Ibn Ezra's middle-ground
position tries to reconcile the negative property adduced above by Abū Ma'shar with another of Mars' prominent indications-war and killing. Both properties are commonplace in medieval introductions to astrology. See, for example, Abū Ma'shar's Abbreviation of the Introduction to Astrology: "Mars is a malefic ... it indicates ... conflagration ... military affairs ... war, killing ... lying, slander ..." (1994, V: 11-13, p. 63). See
 כי הוא שופך דם כשר הטבחים או ינצח מלחמה ... והוא יורה על שקר וכזב ומרמות " = "Mars. It is called so because it is red, because it sheds blood as the chief executioner (Gen. 37:36 et passim) or is victorious in battle. ... It signifies lies, falsehood, and fraud" (MS Schoenberg 57, f. 79).

## $\$ 4$

${ }^{[1]}$ 1: Now I begin ... querent is thinking. A similar discussion, showing the disagreement among astrologers about this subject, may be found in 'Alī ibn abī-l-Rijāl's Kitāb al-bāri' fi akhām an-nujūm: "E desacordaron otrossi en saber la cogitacion del demandador e de que manera lo entendran e que significacion deven aver sobre el ..." = "They also disagreed regarding the querent's thoughts, how they may know them, and which signification they may obtain from them ..." (Iudizios de las estrellas, 1954, I: v, p. 22).
${ }^{[2]}$ 2: Gives power ... as is written in the Book of the Beginning of Wisdom. The condition of "giving power" is explained in Reshit Hokhmah as
 או בגבולו או בפניו, ויתחבר עם כוכב אחר או יביט אליו, הנה יתן כח עצמו אליו.״ = "Giving power: this means that a planet is in its house, or in the house of its exaltation, or in the house of its triplicity, or in its term, or in its decan, and it conjoins another planet or aspects it, and then it gives its own power to it" (Reshit Hokhmah, 1939, VII, lix: 12-14).
${ }^{[3]}$ 3: The Moon ... any interrogation. Corresponds to She'elot II, $\S$ 1.5:1.
${ }^{[4]}$ 3: Its light ... light disappears. An almost identical statement may be found in Me'orot $\$ 1: 11$ and Ṭe'amim II: גון ורו "In its light, it is also similar to the fetus that emerges from its mother's womb and grows until a certain time, and then its light begins to wane" ( $\$ 2.4: 7, \mathrm{pp} .192-193$ ).
${ }^{[1]}$ ：The lord of the ascendant ．．．lord of the decan．This passage refers to the five essential dignities，that is，five distinct zodiacal positions where a planet is said to acquire strength，for good or for evil，according to its nature．See Me＇orot $\$ 30: 5$ and note．The five are：（a）the planetary house（see below，note on $\$ 7.5: 3$ ）；（b）the exaltation（see below，note on $\S 7.5: 4$ ）；（c）the triplicity（see note on Mivharim I，$\S 11.2: 5$ ）；（d）the term（see below，note on $\$ 7.5: 4$ ）；（e）the decan（see note on She＇elot II，$\S 8: 4$ ）．These dignities are considered to be arranged in a hierarchy and to bear on determining which planet is the lord or ruler over some zodiacal position．With this purpose，powers（or portions of power） are assigned to the planets according to the precedence of their dig－ nities（house，exaltation，triplicity，term，decans）with respect to this zodiacal position．See，for instance，Reshit Hokhmah，1939，I，viii：12－

 ＂The planets are assigned lord－ ship over the orb：there is lordship over the 〈planetary〉 house，lordship over 〈the house of $\rangle$ exaltation，lordship over the triplicity，lordship over the term，and lordship over the decan．Lordship over the 〈planetary〉 house has five 〈portions of power，lordship over 〈the house of〉 exal－ tation has four 〈portions of power〉，〈lordship over〉 the triplicity has three，〈lordship over〉 the term has two，and 〈lordship over〉 the decan has one 〈portion of power〉＂．For similar statements see：Mishpetei ha－ Mazzalot（Ms Schoenberg 57，f．80）；Moladot（BNF 1056，f．48a）；Kitāb al－Tafhim（1934，§495，pp．307－498）；Tetrabiblos（1980，III：2，pp．232－ 233）；Al－Qabīṣī，2004，I：22，p．33；Epitome（1548，Lib．I，cap．ii，sig． $\mathrm{F}_{2}{ }^{\mathrm{r}}$ ）．These dignities are quantified to determine the relative strength of a planet vis－à－vis another，that is，to determine which planet＂is victori－ ous＂over another．See，for example，the following passage in＇Olam II：

 הבית ממיני הכח חמשה；ובעל הכבוד ארבעה；ובעל הגבול שלשה；ובעל השלישות ＂Find the sign of the ascendant and its lord． You can find it in this manner：calculate the number of 〈portions of〉 power that 〈each〉 planet has in it［in the sign of the ascendant］；the one that has the greatest number is victorious and is called the ruler．The lord of the house has five of the various types of 〈portions of power； the lord of exaltation $\langle\mathrm{has}\rangle$ four＜portions of power〉；the lord of the
term, three; the lord of the triplicity, two; the lord of the decan, one〈portion of power)" ( $\$ 16: 2-3$, pp. 166-167).
${ }^{[2]}$ 1: Dorotheus said ... designated the ruler. Corresponds to She'elot II, $\$ 8: 1-4$, where Dorotheus is not mentioned. See note there. Also corresponds to Epitome totius astrologiae: "Quid in omni quaestione potissimum considerandum sit. In omni quaestione est querendus dominus signi ascendentis, \& Luna, et suscipe eum potissimum, qui aspicit ascendentem. Si ambo aspiciunt, suscipe eum que habet plus fortitudinis in loco suo ratione domorum, ver respectu Solis, vel suae potestatis" (Epitome, 1548 , Lib. III, cap. ii, sig. $\mathrm{O}_{4}^{\mathrm{r}}$ ).
${ }^{[3]}{ }_{1}$-2: Dorotheus said.. their division. Such a statement cannot be found in the fifth part of Dorotheus' Pentabiblos, devoted to interrogations, as it has been conserved in an Arabic translation (Carmen astrologicum, 1976). Corresponds to 'Alī ibn abī-l-Rijāl's Kitāb al-bāri' fi akhām an-nujūm: "Dize Dorothius: Quando quisieres saber la cogitacion del demandador, para mientes al sennor del ascendente [in the source: al sennor de la triplicidat del ascendente el primero] e cata si fuere en su casa $o$ en su exaltacion o en su triplicidat o en su termino e iudga por el logar o fuere en qual casa fuere ... e iudga de las significationes de aquella casa." = "When you want to know what the querent is thinking, observe the lord of the ascendant, and determine whether it is in its house, or in its exaltation, or in its triplicity, or in its term ... pass judgment according to the location and the place where it is, and pass judgment according to the signification of this place" (Iudizios de las estrellas, 1954, I: v, p. 22).
${ }^{[1]}{ }_{1}$ : I have already mentioned in the Book of Nativities ... wars and partnership. This reference is to Sefer ha-Moladot, composed in Béziers in 1148. See Moladot, MS BNF 1056, ff. 55a-56a.
${ }^{[2]}$ 1: The nature of the planet, as explained in $\langle$ the Book of the〉 Beginning of Wisdom. This reference is to Reshit Hokhmah, the first component of the astrological encyclopedia composed in Béziers in 1148. See Reshit Hokhmah, 1939, IV, xlii: 22-li: 8, where the seven planets' natures, that is, their astrological properties, are discussed in seven separate sections.
${ }^{[1]}$ 1: Ya'qub al-Kindī. Al-Kindī, known as the "philosopher of the Arabs," wrote about the Greek philosophy that was then being introduced to the Muslim world. Although he criticized the inconsistent views of astrologers, Al-Kindī wrote extensively on all branches of contemporary astrology (see Burnett, 1993; Adamson, 2007, pp. 181-206). Ibn Ezra, for his part, frequently quotes from Al-Kindi’'s astrological oeuvre, usually without specifying the title, in his introductions to astrology (Téamim I, § 1.4:2, pp. 32-33; §2.13:9, pp. 53-53; §3.1:2, pp. 58-59; §10.1:5, pp. 9697; Țéamim II, § 2.1:6, pp. 184-185; §4.8:1, pp. 212-213; §8.5:2, pp. 252253), and in his works on nativities (Moladot, BNF 1056, ff. 53a, 54a, 55a, 55b, 56b, 57b), interrogations (She'elot I, §7:1; §4.8:1; §5.3:1; She'elot II, $\$ 12.5: 1 ;$ § 12.6:1), elections (Mivharim I, $\S 1.7: 1 ; \$ 7.6: 10$; Mivharim II, $\$ 1.3: 1$ ), and general astrology ('Olam I, §44:1-6, §60:1-2, pp. 82-83, 9091).
${ }^{[2]}$ 1: The lot of Fortune ... as explained in the Book of Reasons. Refers
 הוא האמת, בעבור כי יבקש מעלה שתהיה ערכה אל הלבנה, שהיא קרובה אל הארץ, כערך המעלה הצומחת אל השמש, וזה הוא גורל הלבנה; על כן אמר שיוקח ביום כי Ptolemy (Baṭalmiyûs) acknowledges that the lot of the Moon alone is true, because he seeks a degree whose ratio to the Moon, which is close the Earth, is as the ratio of the degree of the ascendant to the Sun, and this is the lot of the Moon; therefore, he said that it [the lot of the Moon] should be taken by day and by night from the Moon" ( $\$ 9.1: 1, \mathrm{pp} .92-93$; see also note on p. 170). A similar definition of the lot of Fortune is offered in Țéamim II, §7.1:1, pp. 242-243, but there Ptolemy is designated King Talmai. For the lots, in general, and the lot of Fortune, in particular, see note on She'elot II, $\S 10: 2$.
${ }^{[3]}$ 1: Yáqub al-Kindī said ... interrogation from it. Corresponds to She'elot II, §9:1, where a similar statement is ascribed to Māshāallāh. See note there. Also corresponds closely to 'Alī ibn abī-l-Rijāl's Kitāb albāri' fi akhām an-nujūm: "Almubtez segund la oppinion de Alquindi ... E el significador del demandador es la planeta que mas dignidades aya en las V yles, que son el Sol e la Luna e el ascendente e pars fortune e el logar de la coniunction o de la opposicion en que fuere la demanda." = "The Al-Muten [i.e., ruling planet] according to Al-Kindī ... The significator of the querent is the planet with most dignities in the five hyl' egs [i.e., the
five places of life], which are: the Sun, the Moon, the ascendant, the lord of Fortune, and the position of the conjunction or opposition in which was made the interrogation ..." (Iudizios de las estrellas, 1954, I: v, p. 26).
${ }^{[1]}$ 2-4: I 〈now give you ... about government. The gist of this illustration is the following dilemma. Because Aries is the ascendant and Saturn is in Aries, Saturn's houses-Aquarius and Capricorn-correspond to the tenth and eleventh horoscopic places, which signify government and lovers, respectively. The dilemma is which of the two subjects signified by these two places-government or lovers-are in the querent's thoughts. Because Saturn also aspects its two houses-Aquarius in trine and Capricorn in quartile-Ibn Ezra resolves the dilemma by means of the rule presented in $₫ 8: 1$ : "Combine the nature of what is indicated by the place with the planet's nature." Consequently, as Saturn's nature is "to seek domination, to do violence but not to seek love," Ibn Ezra prefers the signification of the tenth place, government, to the signification of the eleventh house, lovers.
${ }^{[2]} 1-4$ : Be careful ... about government. In the translation of this section I have consistently used "place" and not "house" to translate the Hebrew word despite the fact that in $\$ 8: 1$ reference is made to the two houses of the planet (״ואשם יביט לשניהם״). But note that in §8:3 Capricorn and Aquarius, Saturn's houses, coincide with the tenth and eleventh places, because Aries is in the ascendant. Indeed, Ibn Ezra employs בית ambiguously to denote both house or place, but here it is clear that he is thinking of horoscopic places and not of planetary houses: the eleventh בית as characterized as signifying lovers and the tenth בית as signifying government-the typical characteristics of the eleventh and tenth horoscopic places.
${ }^{[1]}$ 3: Ninth-part. According to this doctrine of Indian origin, each sign is divided into nine equal parts (Hebrew תשיעיות, Arabic nawbahra, Latin novenarii) and each ninth-part is associated with a sign. The lords of these signs are the lords of the corresponding ninth-parts. Like contemporary
introductions to astrology（Kitāb al－Madhal，1996，V：17，v，pp．203－204； Kitāb al－Tafhīm，1934，§455，pp．266－267；Al－Qabīṣī，2004，2004，IV：16－ 17，pp．129－131），Ibn Ezra states that this doctrine rests on the triplicities （see note on Mivharim I，$\$_{11.2: 5 \text { ）：first，because nine is the number of }}^{\text {n }}$ signs that separate the first and the last signs in any triplicity；second， because in every case the assignment of the lords of the ninth－parts starts from the tropical sign of the triplicity．But Ibn Ezra goes further when he applies a property of the decimal positional system and claims that the signs were divided into nine parts because＂there are a total of nine digits．＂
 מזל הוא המזל האחרון שהוא כתולדתו，שמו כחות תשעה מזלות במזל אחד，ויחלו מהמזל המתהפך בעבור כי הארבע תקופות הנם ראשים，ויש אומרים בעבור היות סך ＂The power of the ninth－part．Since the ninth sign from any sign is the last sign 〈whose nature〉 is as its own nature，they put the powers of nine signs in one sign；they began from the tropical sign because the 〈beginnings of the〉 four seasons are＇heads，＇but others say that this is because there are a total of nine digits＂（\＄2．9：9，pp．202－ 203）．See also Te＇amim I，§2．10：1－5，pp．48－49；Mishpetei ha－Mazzalot， MS Schoenberg 57，f． 71.
${ }^{[2]}$ 3：The place ．．．as it is explained in the Book of the Beginning of Wisdom．This refers to the second chapter of Reshit Hokhmah，where，in each of the sections allotted to each of the twelve signs，Ibn Ezra lists the lords of the corresponding ninth－parts．This is the account of the ninth－

 והתשיעי לצדק；והנה תשיעית המזל שלש מעלות ושליש，וכל התשיעיות כתולדת המזל ＂The beginning of its［Aries＇］ninth－parts is Mars，second Venus，third Mercury，fourth the Moon，fifth the Sun，sixth Mercury， seventh Venus，eighth Mars，and ninth Jupiter；so the ninth－part extends over three and one－half degrees，and each ninth－part has the nature of the sign and of the lord of the sign＂（BNF 1056，f．3b）．
${ }^{[3]} 4$ ：I now give you ．．．question about money．This illustration is inten－ ded to show that the subject－matter of the interrogation is signified by the horoscopic place that coincides with the sign assigned to the corresponding ninth－part，as pointed out in $\$ 9: 3$ ．In the illustration， the ascendant is Taurus $14^{\circ}$ ．Taurus belongs to the earthy triplicity， so the count of the ninth－parts begins from the tropical sign in the earthy triplicity（see note above，on＂ninth－part＂），that is，Capricorn．Thus
the ninth-parts of Taurus are assigned to Capricorn, Aquarius, Pisces, Aries, Taurus, Gemini, Cancer, Leo, and Virgo. Because each ninth-part covers $3^{1 / 2^{\circ}}$, Taurus $14^{\circ}$ corresponds precisely to the beginning of the fifth ninth-part in Taurus ( $14=3^{1 / 2} \times 4$ ), which is assigned to Taurus. As the corresponding ninth-part is also assigned to Taurus, which is the sign of the ascendant, it turns out that the signification of Taurus $14^{\circ}$ corresponds to that of the first place: length of life and bodily health. To clarify the issue, Ibn Ezra adds that had the ascendant corresponded to the next ninth-part, which is assigned to Gemini, the subject-matter of the interrogation would correspond to the signification of the next horoscopic place-the second-that is, money.

$$
\$ 10
$$

${ }^{[1]} 1-3$ : Māshā’allāh said ... about vain things. Corresponds to She'elot II, $\S 10: 1$.
$\$ 11$
${ }^{[1]}$ 1: Razeq. Refers probably to Abū Bakr Muhammad ibn Zakariyā Rāzī (865-925), a Persian alchemist, chemist, physician, philosopher and scholar known to medieval Latinists as Rhazes or Rasis. He was a medical authority who became chief of the hospital in Baghdad. Fihrist, 1970, II, pp. 701-709. He is mentioned again in $\$$ 2.2:2.
${ }^{[2]}$ 1: In any interrogation ... its lord. Corresponds to She'elot II, §10:2. See note there.
${ }^{[3]}$ 2: Lord of the hour. See note on Mivharim $I$, $\S$ 3.1:7.
${ }^{[4]}$ 2: I, Abraham ... in interrogations. Corresponds to She'elot II, $\S 8: 5$. See note there.

## § 1.1

${ }^{[1]} 4$ : If on behalf $\ldots$ judgment from there. Cf. below $\$ 3 \cdot 1: 1-4$ and She'elot II, $\$ 3.1: 1-3$. The third place is the place of brothers (Reshit Hokh-
mah, 1939, III xli: 20) and Mars signifies brothers (Reshit Hokhmah, 1939, IV xlvi: 23).
${ }^{[2]}$ 5: If he poses ... or an enemy. This is virtually identical with She'elot II, §3.3:1. The fourth place signifies the father (Reshit Hokhmah, 1939, III xli: 25).
${ }^{[3]}$ 6: If he poses a question about a quarrel, look at the seventh place. The seventh place signifies quarrels (Reshit Hokhmah, 1939, III xlii: 5).
${ }^{[4]}$ 4-7: But the truth ... at the tenth place. Corresponds to Sahl Ibn Bishr al-Yahūdī’s On Interrogations: "And if you were asked about some matter (of the matters which are in the twelve signs), give the Ascendant and its Lord and the Moon as significators of that man who asks you; the sign of the quaesited matter and its Lord to the quaesited matter" (On Questions,
 \$6:2.

## $\$ 1.2$

${ }^{[1]}$ 1: Places of life as you do for a native. For the "places of life," see note on She'elot II, $\S 1.1: 1$ and Mivharim I, $\S 4.1$. The "native" is mentioned here to indicate that reference is to a procedure used in the doctrine of nativities.
${ }^{[2]}$ 2: Ruler of the place of life. This is a reference to the ruler of the nativity. See Mivharim I, §4.1 and note.
${ }^{[3]}$ 2: Great years ... least years. These are two of the four degrees of years-least, mean, great and greatest years-ascribed by astrologers to each of the planets. According to Al-Bīrūnī, "astrologers of the present day use only the three former degrees [i.e., least, mean, and great years] for determining the length of life at a nativity, and the numbers which they thus elicit must not be interpreted literally as years, but freely, for sometimes they represent years, but sometimes months, weeks, days, or hours" (Kitāb al-Tafhīm, 1934, §394, p. 239). The least and great years of the planets are as follows: Saturn: 30, 57; Jupiter: 12, 79, Mars: 15, 66; the Sun: 19, 120; Venus: 8, 82; Mercury: 20, 76; the Moon: 25, 108. According to Te'amim I, "the number 〈of degrees〉 of the terms assigned to any of
the planets in any of the signs are the numbers of its great years＂（\＄2．9：1－ 2，pp．48－49）；the same rule occurs in Abū Ma＇shar＇s Great Introduction （Kitāb al－Madḥal，1996，V：8，v，p．197）．In addition，the idea that the great years of the Sun，namely， 120 years，correspond to the natural life－span of human beings is echoed in Țéamim I（\＄4．5：7，pp．76－77），Țéamim II （ $\$ 5.1: 10$ ，pp．218－219），and Ibn Ezra＇s commentary on Genesis 6：3．Ibn Ezra argues that the least years correspond to the planets＇cycles．Thus， for Saturn，＂after thirty years it returns approximately to its first degree＂ （TTe＇amim I，§4．2：11，pp．72－73）and＂the reason for the least 〈years〉，in the opinion of the Indian scientists，is that the Sun conjoins the Moon every nineteen 〈years〉＂（T．e‘amim I，§4．5：7，pp．78－79）．
${ }^{[4]}$ 2：If you find that the ruler ．．．least years of the ruler．This refers to one of the procedures used to determine the length of life in the doctrine
 אם היה מהכוכבים העליונים，והוא מזרחי，ישר בהליכתו，או הוא בתחלת המעמד השני על חמש וארבעים מעלות，והוא באחת היתדות，או שיהיה צדק בבית עשת עשר והוא השליט，יחיה הנולד כפי שנות הכוכב הגדולות，ואם היה באחת הבתים הסמוכים，יהיו חייו כפי שניו האמצעיות，ואם היה באחד הבתים הנופלים יחיה כפי התי ＂Observe the ruler 〈of the nativity〉．If it is one of the upper planet，oriental $\langle$ of the Sun〉，direct in its motion，or it is at the beginning of the second station at $45^{\circ}$ ，and it is in one of the cardines， or Jupiter is in the eleventh place and it is the ruler＜of the nativity $\rangle$ ， the native will live as long as its great years，but if it is in one of the succedent places，he will live as long as its mean years，and if it is in one of the cadent places as long as the least years＂（Moladot，MS BNF 1056， f． 49 b ）．
${ }^{[5]}$ 3：You should rely on the directions ．．．in the Book of Nativities．For the procedure of directions，see note on Mivharim III，$\$ 7.3: 3$ ．The current
 לך דבר נכון ומנוסה．דע כי כל מה שהזכרתי לך הוא קרוב אל האמת כי כאשר נדע
 ימות הנולד באותה שנה ．．．אמר בטלמיוס：אם היה מקום החיים ברביע הגלגל היורד
 כי לא ננהגנו כי אם במשפט．וככה אמר בטלמיוס שוּ שראוי לנהג הגורל הטוב אחורנית．
 בטלמיוס גם בדרך דורוניוס．ולא ידינו דין גמור בגעת מקום החיים אל מל מקום כרת ברת
 בהיות כאשר הזכרתי בספר הטעמים．＂＝＂I now explain you something that
is correct and that has been tested by experience．Know that all I have mentioned to you is close to the truth，for when we 〈wish to〉 know the length of life we should direct the place of life that is appropriate to direct．So if it［the place of life］reaches a place of death，the native will die this year ．．．Ptolemy said：if the place of life is in the descending quadrant of the circle，which extends from the line of midheaven to the setting degree，we should always direct it backwards［contrary to the direction of the signs］．But Dorotheus said that we should only direct it according to the rule［in the direction of the signs］．Likewise，Ptolemy said that it is appropriate to direct the lot of Fortune backwards．Those who came after him directed the lot of Fortune，also the place of life， when it is in the descending half of the circle，according to Ptolemy＇s method and also according to Dorotheus＇method．But they would not pronounce an absolute judgment when the place of life reaches the place of death according to one of the methods，unless it reaches the place of death according to the second method，and I tested it in this way．It is worthwhile to calculate the directions as I have explained in the Book of Reasons＂（MS BNF 1056，f．50a；cf．Ṭéamim I，§10．3：1－5，pp．96－97）． See also Reshit Hokhmah，1939，lxxvi：21－23；Mishpeței ha－Mazzalot，MS Schoenberg 57，f．25a；Tetrabiblos，1980，III：10，pp．279－307；Al－Qabīṣī， 2004，IV：11－13，pp．121－129；Kitāb al－Tafhīm，1934，§522， 523 pp．324－ 325，326－327．
${ }^{[6]}$ 3：Direct it ．．．as written in the Book of the Reasons．This refers to
 דעת כלם על הניהוגים שהם על שני דרכים．הניהוג האחד במעלות גלגל המזלות הישרות，והניהוג השני משתנה，כי אם היתה המעלה שתרצה כתה לתה לנהג אותה，או אחד המאורות שיהיה שם，בתחלת הבית העשירי או הרביעי，לעולם תנהג במעלות גלגל היושר．ואם המעלה שתרצה לנהג היא הצומחת，תנהגנה במצעדי הארץ．וככהת， אם רצית לנהג המעלה השוקעת，לעולם תנהגנה בנכח מעלתה，שהות שהיא הצומחתת． ואם לא היתה המעלה שתרצה לנהג באחד היתדות הנזכרות，הסת התכל מרו מרחקה מקו חצי השמים，אם היתה המעלה ברביעית שהיא בין קו חצי השמים ובין המעלה ＂In like manner，all agreed that the directions are 〈reckoned〉 by two methods．The first 〈method of〉 direction uses equal zodiacal degrees，and the second 〈method of direction follows several different procedures：if the degree you want to direct，or one of the luminaries that happens to be there，is at the cusp of the tenth house or the fourth， you should always direct in sphaera recta degrees．But if the degree you want to direct is the ascendant，you should calculate the direction in rising times for the country．In like manner，if you want to direct the
degree of the descendant，you should always calculate it as 〈if it were〉 the diametrically opposed degree，which is the ascendant．If the degree you want to direct is in none of the above－mentioned cardines，find its distance from midheaven，given that the degree is in the quadrant between midheaven and the degree of the ascendant＂（ $\$ 10.3: 1-5$ ，pp．96－ 97）．
${ }^{[7]}{ }_{1} \mathbf{- 3}$ ：Māshā＇allāh said ．．．as is written in the Book of Reasons．Corre－ sponds to She＇elot II，$\$ 1.1: 1-2$ ，where Māshäallāh is not mentioned．See notes there．This section，and the parallel section in She＇elot II， $\mathbb{\$}$ 1．1：1－2， fuses the doctrines of nativities and of interrogations．On the one hand， instructions such as to＂look at the places of life as you do for a native＂ （ $\$ 1.2: 1$ ），＂you should rely on the directions as I explained 〈them〉 for you in the Book of Nativities＂（ $\$ 1.2: 3$ ），and to direct the place of the Moon as it as it is written in the Book of Reasons（ $\$ 1.2: 3$ ），imply that the interro－ gation for determining the querent＇s length of life is made on the basis of classical procedures of the doctrine of nativities，using the natal horo－ scope．On the other hand，Ibn Ezra makes clear that he is implement－ ing nativity procedures in the framework of interrogations：to predict the native＇s lifespan on the basis of the＂the great years＂of the ruler of the nativity of the native＇s natal chart，Ibn Ezra instructs not to＂follow the same procedure in interrogations if the querent is an old person＂（\＄1．2：2）； and regarding the Moon＇s role in the context of the doctrine of direc－ tions，also pivotal in nativities，Ibn Ezra states that＂the Moon has more power in interrogations than in nativities＂（\＄1．2：3）．In any case，although， according to Ibn Ezra＂in most cases interrogations are reliable，but they are not as powerful as nativities＂（ $\$ 3: 5$ ），he never spells out whether the astrologer should use the querent＇s natal chart or the horoscope at the time of the interrogation．

## $\$ 1.3$

${ }^{[1]} 1-2$ ：If the querent $\ldots$ he is dead．Corresponds to She＇elot II，$\S$ 1．2：1－2． Coincides with Epitome totius astrologiae：＂Quod si pro aliquo an vivat， an non，quaeretur，aspice dominum ascendentis，qui si est sub luce Solis， iste de quo quaerebetur est mortuus．＂（Epitome，1548，Lib．III，cap．iii，sig． $\mathrm{O}_{4}^{\mathrm{v}}$ ）．
${ }^{[2]}$ 2－3：If you find... benefic planet．Corresponds to She＇elot II，§ 1．2：5．

## $\$ 1.4$

${ }^{[1]} 1$ The eighth place. The eighth place signifies death.
${ }^{[2]}$ 1-2: Māshā allāh said ... lord of the hour. This is identical word-forword with She' elot II, § 1.3:1-2.
${ }^{[3]}$ 3: The twelfth $\langle$ place $\rangle$. The twelfth is the place of prison.
${ }^{[4]}$ 3: The fourth $\langle$ place $\rangle$. The fourth is the place of landed estates, treasure, and hidden things.
${ }^{[5]}$ 3: The sixth $\langle$ place $\rangle$. The sixth is the place of diseases.
${ }^{[6]} 5$ : If the lord ... but escaped. This is identical word-for-word with She'elot II, §1.3:1-3.
§ 2.1
${ }^{[1]} 4$ : In the seventh place I will discuss times. See below, $\$ 7.9: 1-9$.
[2] 11: Incompatible positions, Hebrew: מקומות משונים. These are zodiacal positions separated by an aspect of quartile or opposition. For this terminology and meaning, see TTe‘amim I, §3.2:9, pp. 60-61 and TTe'amim II, §4.7:5, pp. 212-213.

## § 2.2

${ }^{[1]}$ 2-4: Razeq said... will lose. Corresponds to She'elot II, §2.3:1-5.

## $\$ 2.3$

${ }^{[1]}$ 1: If $\langle$ someone〉 poses ... already given back. This is identical word-for-word with She'elot II, \$2.1:1.
${ }^{[1]}$ 1: If $\langle$ someone $\rangle \ldots$ [the Moon's] lot. This is identical word-for-word with She'elot II, § 2.2:1.
${ }^{[2]}$ 2: $\mathrm{Sa}{ }^{\text {ind }}$. I could not identify this astrologer, who is also mentioned in She'elot II, § 2.2:2.
${ }^{[3]}$ 2: The Moon is in its smaller domain ... in the domain of the Sun. For the division of the zodiac into a "smaller domain," assigned to the Moon, and a "larger domain," assigned to the Sun, see note on Mivharim I, § 2.1:1.
${ }^{[4]}$ 2: $\mathrm{Sa}^{\text {© }}{ }^{1} \mathrm{~d}$ said ... domain of the Sun. This is word-for-word identical with She'elot II, $\$ 2.2: 2$. Corresponds to Mivharim I, $\$ 2.1: 1-2$, where a similar statement is ascribed to Ptolemy, and to Mivharim II, §2:1, but without attribution. In Téamim I (\$2.5:1-6, pp. 44-45), a similar statement is attributed to the "scholars who rely on experience," in the same locus where Ibn Ezra explains the division of the zodiac into a "smaller domain," assigned to the Moon, and a "larger domain," assigned to the Sun. See note on Mivharim I, $\$ 2.1: 1$. It corresponds also to the Epitome totius astrologiae, where, curiously enough, the Moon's smaller domain of the circle is interchanged with the Sun's larger domain of the circle: "De emptione causa lucri. Volens causa durandi aliquid emere, emas cum Luna fuerit in parte magna circuli, quae dicitur Solis, \& est a capite Cancri ad finem Sagittarii, \& melius si sit velox, nec sit iuncta planetae infortunae, vel eius aspectui, \& melius ea existente in coniunctione, vel aspectu fortunae planetae, vel in aspecto Solis trino vel sextili" (Epitome, 1548, Lib. IV, cap. iiii, sig. R4 ${ }^{\mathrm{r}}$ ).
$\$ 3.1$
${ }^{[1]}$ 1-2: If a querent poses ... meet each other. Corresponds to She'elot II, $\S 3.1: 1-2$, where a similar statement is presented as Ibn Ezra's own opinion.
${ }^{\text {[2] }}$ 3: For if it is retrograde. Here Ibn Ezra puns on חוזר לאחור "retrograde." The same phrase also means "if he comes back."
${ }^{[3]} 4$ : He will not meet him ... but if the lord of the third place or Mars is in conjunction ... he [his brother or relative] will come meet him. Here Ibn Ezra plays with the plain meaning of the Hebrew technical term מתבחר "being in conjunction," which also denotes that the querent will meet יתחבר his brother.

$$
\$ 3.2
$$

${ }^{[1]}$ 1: If someone asks... not days. Corresponds to She' elot II, $\$ 1.4: 5$.
${ }^{[2]}$ 4: If the lord $\ldots$ he will come soon. Corresponds to She'elot II, $\S$ 1.4: 1-2.
$\$ 3.4$
${ }^{[1]} 3$ : If it is ... direct in its motion, then the journey might be possible, Hebrew: אם היה ... ישר בהליכתו אז יתכן הליכתו. Here Ibn Ezra plays with the double meaning of הליכה: motion and journey.
${ }^{[2]}$ 1-3: If someone poses ... might be possible. Corresponds to She' elot II, $\$ 9.1: 5$, where Ibn Ezra ascribes such an approach to journeys to Māshā'allāh, although expressing reservations thereof. For feminine/ masculine quadrants, see note on Mivharim II, $\$$ 5.1:2.

## $\$ 4.1$

${ }^{[1]}{ }_{1-5}$ : $\langle$ If the querent $\rangle \ldots$ unfortunate $\langle$ horoscopic $\rangle$ place. Corresponds to She'elot II, $\S 4.1: 1-5$. For fortunate and unfortunate horoscopic places, see note on Mivharim II, $\$ 2$ :3. For straight and crooked signs, see note on Mivharim II, §7.1:6, s.v. "long or short signs."
$\$ 4.2$
${ }^{[1]}$ 1: It [the fourth place] signifies landed estates. For a typical characterization of the fourth place, see, for example, the account in Reshit Hokhmah: הבבית הרביעי יורה על האב, ועל הקרקצות, והבתים, והשדות,
"The fourth place signifies the father, landed estate, houses, fields, cities, buildings, treasures and everything that is hidden" (BNF 1056, f. 15a).
${ }^{[2]}{ }_{1-2}:\langle$ If the querent $\rangle ..$. very inauspicious. Corresponds to She'elot II, \$4.2:1. Cf. Mivharim I, §4.4:2-3; Mivharim II, §4.1:4.

## $\$ 4.3$

${ }^{[1]}{ }_{1}$ : The fourth place ... place of the king's cities. Corresponds closely to Mivharim II, \$4.2:1. A very similar statement is found in Sefer haMoladot: וזוה הבית יורה על הקרקע במולד כל האדם ובמולד המלכים לבדם" "This place [the fourth place] signifies land in the nativity of every person and in the nativity of kings it signifies the cities over which he rules" (Moladot, MS BNF 1056, f. 53b).
> ${ }^{[2]}$ 2: If the Moon ... conspire 〈against the king〉. Corresponds to Mivharim I, § 10.2:2, Mivharim II, § $10.4: 2$ and ‘Olam I, $\S$ 68:1, pp. 96-97: וכל' שנה שתמצא הלבנה על מבט נכח עם השמש או מבט רביצית תורה על קשר על המלך "Every year in which you find the Moon in opposition to the Sun or in quartile, it portends a conspiracy against the king in every city where the Moon is, meaning that it is in its sign [the sign of the city]."

${ }^{[3]} 3$ : In the seventh place $\ldots$ will be victorious. The seventh place of She'elot I includes no reference to this topic. Only in the seventh place of She'elot II ( $\$ 7.5: 1-3$ ) do we find a section on "whether a city will conspire against the king."

## $\$ 4.4$

${ }^{[1]}{ }_{1}$ : Some astrologers discussed the topic of hidden treasure. This topic has been aptly discussed in Burnett et al., 1997: "Methods for finding buried treasure were much sought after in the medieval Islamic and Western European worlds. Several stories in The Arabian Nights concern treasure hunts involving a wide range of magical and divinatory practices. Most of these stories originate in Egypt where there was a real prospect of finding a richly endowed Pharaonic tomb. This quest led to the existence
of a professional group of muṭālibūn ('treasure hunters') and an extensive literature. Astrologers were not slow to respond to the demand, and chapters in several astrological manuals, and even whole treatises, were written on the subject" (pp. 57-90, esp. 57). Among these works, the following may be mentioned (see Burnett et al., 1997, pp. 57-58, 61-62): (a) two chapters in 'Umar ibn al-Farruḥān's K. al-masā̀il fi aḥkām alnugūm; (b) two chapters in the Book of Māshä'allāh, in MS Istanbul, Laleli 2122; (c) an isolated chapter by Māshā’allāh entitled Faṣl fi al-ḥabāyā wa-al-dufūn (Chapter on Hidden and Buried Things). The last is probably the original Arabic work that was later translated into Hebrew and Latin: the Hebrew translation was entitled ספר השאלות למאשא אללה (Book of Interrogations by Māshāallāh; see Māshä’allāh on Interrogations, MS OBL 160, ff. 154a-158a) and the Latin translation was variously entitled De inventione occultorum, De inventionibus occultorum, and Libellus interpretationum (Thorndike, 1956, pp. 54-62, Steinschneider, 1870, $\$ 379$, pp. 600-661); (d) a chapter by Abū 'alī al-Ḥyiyyāt in his K. almasāंil; (e) a fragment entitled Masāंil 'an al-dufā̀in wa-al-kunūz wa-al-ḥabāyā wa-al-amwāl (Questions about buried things, treasures, hidden things and wealth) by Abū al-Ḥasan ibn Abi al Ḥaṣib al-Kūf; (f) an anonymous text, divided into five chapters, entitled Risāla fi amr al-dafin (Letter on the matter of buried thing); (g) Fī al-mawādic allatī yuzannu anna al-dafīn fïhā min kanzin aw gayrihi (Concerning the places in which it is thought that there is something buried) by Al-Kindi; (h) a similar text in Al-Kindī's comprehensive work on astrological judgments, The Forty Chapters.
${ }^{[2]}$ 2: Dorotheus said ... never be found. Corresponds to Dorotheus' account of the Moon's "corruption" in Pentabiblos: "If the Moon is under the Sun's rays [and] its light is destroyed and it is not seen, then it is corrupted, but it is beneficial for one who desires theft or treachery or something which is kept secret against him, and for every hidden or secret action which its master does not wish to made public. If it is an action which its master wished to keep secret, commence it when the Moon is immersed under the Sun's rays as there is good for him" (Carmen astrologicum, 1976, V: 5, p. 264). Corresponds to Mivḥarim I, $\S 4.5: 1$ and Mivharim II, §6:7. But see She'elot II, § 12.5:1, where Ibn Ezra writes: "Buried treasure. I have not found that Dorotheus said anything about it."
${ }^{[3]}$ 5: Now if you find ... applies to Saturn. Corresponds to She'elot II, $\$ 12.5: 2$ and Mivharim I, $\$ 4.5: 2$. See note there.


#### Abstract

${ }^{[4]}$ 3-6: Māshā'allāh said ... there is a buried treasure. Corresponds to She'elot II, $\$ 12.5: 2$, where, besides Māshāallāh, this statement is ascribed to Al-Kindī as well. See the Hebrew translation of the Book of Interrogations by Māshāallāh, where part of this statement is ascribed  הארץ, שהוא מזל רביעי מן הצומח, ואם תמצא שם מכוכבים טובים דע כי שם הטמון״ = "Dorotheus said ... also observe the lower cardo, which is the fourth place after the ascendant; if you find benefic planets there know that there is a treasure there" (Māshā’allāh on Interrogations, MS OBL 160, f. 156a). This corresponds also to Al-Kindī's approach to ascertain whether there is some chance of getting hold of the treasure, as reported in the Latin translation of Al-Kindī's Forty Chapters (Burnett et al., 1997, pp. 7879). The same information is found in 'Alī ibn abī-l-Rijāl's Kitāb al-Bāri: "Dixo Alqindi en la cosa soterrada e dixo bien" (Iudizios de las estrellas, 1954, I: XXXIX, pp. 41-42).


## $\$ 4.5$

${ }^{[1]}$ 1: If you wish ... point of this cardo. Corresponds to She'elot II, $\$ 12.5: 3$. This is the first stage in a procedure by Māshā’allāh intended to find the hidden treasure gradually by quartering the area repeatedly. This procedure is continued in $\S 4.6$ :3 below. See note there.
${ }^{[2]}$ 1: As explained in the Book of the Beginning of Wisdom. Refers to
 רביעית הגלגל ההווה מקו חצי השמים עד המעלה הצומחת הוא מזרחי ... והרביעית שהוא בין קו חצי השמים עד המעלה השוקצת הוא דרומי ... והרביעית שהיא מהמעלה השוקצת עד קו התהום הוא מערבי ... והרביעית שהוא מקו התהום עד המעלה "The zodiac is divided at any minute from any hour into four parts. The quadrant of the zodiac between the midheaven and the ascendant degree is eastern ... the quadrant between the midheaven and the descendant degree is southern ... the quadrant between the descendant degree and the lower cardo is western ... and the quadrant between the lower cardo and the ascendant degree is northern" (1939, III, xl: 5-17).
${ }^{[1]}{ }_{1-3}$ ：Māshā＇allāh said ．．．third time，too．Corresponds to She＇elot II， $\$ 12.5: 4-5$ and continues the procedure whose description was begun in the previous section．The parallel accounts in She＇elot I ，$\$ 4.5: 1, \$ 4.6: 1-3$ and She＇elot II，$\$_{12.5: 3-5}$ are abridgements of Māshā’allāh＇s procedure for locating a hidden treasure by repeatedly quartering the area．The full account may be found in the Hebrew translation entitled Book of Interrogations by Māshäalläh（ספר השאלות למאשא אללה）：חלק הבית או＂ המקום לד＇חלקים，שתדע החלק מזרחי והמערבי והצפוני והדרומי．ואחר הבט כמה מעלות הלך בעל השעה במזל שהוא שם，וכפול אותם המעלות בשנים עשר， והצולה חלק על המזלות ותן לכל מזל שלשים מעלות ותתחיל מן הצומחת עד שתכלה החשבון，ודע באי זה מזל יכלה החשבון，אם הוא מזרחי או מצרבי או דרומי או צפוני， ובאותו הרביעית שם הטמון בגז＇האל．ואחר חלק פעם אחרת החלק הרביעית לד＇ חלקים，והבט אנה בעל המזל שכלה שם החשבון וכמה מעלות הלך מאותו המזל． וחלק המעלות במזלות，שתתן לכל מזל ז＇מעלות וחצי，והחל מהמזל ששם הכוכב， והבט המזל שכלה שם החשבון，אם הוא מזרחי או מערבי או דרומי או צפוני，ובאותו החלק יהיה שם．ואחר כמו כן חלק אותו החלק לארבע חלקים，ודע בעל המזל שכלה שם החשבון באי זה בית הוא ובכמה מעלות，וחלק המעלות במזלות שתתן לכל מזל ז＇מעלות וחצי，והחל מן המזל שהוא שם והמזל שתכלה שם החשבון，דע אם הוא מזרחי או מערבי או אחד מהם，ובאותו החלק שם יהיה．ככה תעשה עד ＂Divide＂שיהיה המקום מדת ב＇זרתות ברוחב ובאורך，ושם תמצא בגז＇הצור．＂ the house into four parts and find out which part is eastern，western， northern or southern．Next find out how may degrees the lord of the hour moved in the sign where it is，multiply these degrees by 12 ，divide the result by sign when you assign $30^{\circ}$ to each sign，beginning from the ascendant until you complete the calculation，and find out in which sign the calculation is completed，and whether it is eastern，western， southern or northern．The treasure will be in this quarter，if God wills． Next divide again this quarter into four parts，find out where is the lord of the sign where the calculation was completed and how many degrees it moved in this sign．Divide the degrees by sign，giving $7^{1 / 2}{ }^{\circ}$ to each sign， beginning from the sign where the planet is，and find out in which sign the calculation is completed，whether it is eastern，western，southern or northern，and 〈the treasure〉 in is in this part．Next divide this part into four parts，find out in which sign is the lord of the sign where the calculation was completed，divide the degrees by sign，giving $7^{1 / 2}$ 號 each sign，beginning from the sign where the planet is，find out whether it is eastern or western and so on，and 〈the treasure〉 is in this part．Proceed likewise until the height and width of the place is of 2 zeret［ $2 \cdot 20 \mathrm{~cm}$ ．］，
and there you will find 〈the treasure〉, if God wills" (Māshä’allāh on Interrogations, MS OBL 160, f. 156b). For an English version of the Latin translation of Māshāallāh's procedure, see On Hidden Things, 2008, pp. 431-432.

## $\$ 4.7$

${ }^{[1]} \mathbf{1}$ : Abū 'Alī. This refers to Abū 'Alī Al-Khayyāt, an Arabophone astrologer who flourished in the first half of the ninth century. See note on She'elot II, §1.5:2.
${ }^{[2]}$ 1-3: Abū 'Alī said ... learning and crafts. Corresponds to She'elot II, $\$ 12.6: 1-2$, where similar statements are ascribed to Al-Kindī. Also corresponds to Epitome totius astrologiae: "Caeterum signa firma significant res subterraneas, mobilia res in tectis, duorum corporum in pariete. Sol significat in loco sibi patenti, Luna propre ianum, Saturnus in loco faetido \& humido, Iupiter in divino \& obsequii loco, Mars in lare ignis, Venus in loco thalami, Mercurius in domus clausura" (Epitome, 1548, Lib. III, cap. viii, sig. $\mathrm{P}_{2}{ }^{\mathrm{v}}$ ).

## $\$ 4.8$

${ }^{[1]}$ 1-3: Al-Kindī said $\ldots$ at its perigee. Corresponds to She' elot II, §12.6: 3-6. This is in tune with Al-Kindī's approach for locating a hidden treasure, as reflected, for example, in Hugo de Santalla's Liber Alkindi de Iudiciis. See Burnett et al., 1997, pp. 78-83. Corresponds closely to the Epitome totius astrologiae: "Alchindus dicit quod est parcienda domus, quam quis censum habere suspicatur in partes duodecim, in modum cinctura signorum, et ex latitudine significantis planetae inveniri posse an sit a dextro vel sinistro, ex proportione vero quae est a loco alto circuli parvi potest inveniri, quantum sit sub terra depressus, idem ex remotione, quam habet a principio domus in qua est" (Epitome, 1548, Lib. III, cap. viii, sig. $\mathrm{P}_{2}{ }^{\mathrm{v}}$ ). See also 'Alī ibn abī-l-Rijāl's Kitāb al-bāri' fi akhām an-nujūm: "Dixo Alquindi en la cosa soterrada aspect dixo bien ..." (Iudizios de las estrellas, 1954, I: xxxix, pp. 41-42).

## $\$ 4.9$

${ }^{[1]} 1-5$ : If the querent $\ldots$ noble nor ignoble. She'elot $\mathrm{II}, \S$ 12.7:2.includes an abbreviated version of this procedure. Corresponds closely to the Epitome totius astrologiae: "Aspice etaim quid sit res ex natura domini termini loci Lunae, \& signi in quo est, \& ex natura signi ascendentis, \& domini eius loci. Et si est ascendens unum ex signis igneis vel aeris, erit carum. Si unum ex signis aquosis, vel terrenis, erit vile" (Epitome, 1548, Lib. III, cap. viii, sig. $\mathrm{P}_{3}{ }^{\mathrm{r}}$ ).

## $\$ 4.10$

${ }^{[1]}$ 1: Now we should ... Moon is located. This is a repetition of $\$ 4.9: 1$. See note there.
${ }^{[2]}$ 2: But if you find ... planets signify. Corresponds to She' elot II, $\$ 12.7: 1$, which expands upon the present text. Also corresponds to the Epitome totius astrologiae (Epitome, 1548, Lib. III, cap. viii, sig. P3 ${ }^{\text {r }}$; quoted in note on She'elot II, $\S 12.7: 1$ ). The current passage includes a reference to the fourth chapter of Reshit Hokhmah, where the astrological properties of the seven planets are discussed in seven separate sections. For a similar reference to the same locus see above, $\S 6$ :1. See Reshit Hokhmah, 1939, IV, xlii: 22-li: 8.
${ }^{[3]} 3$ : If the lord ... it is old. Corresponds closely to the Epitome totius astrologiae: "Si dominus ascendentis est orientalis a Sole erit novum, si occidentalis verus" (Epitome, 1548, Lib. III, cap. viii, sig. $\mathrm{P}_{3}{ }^{\mathrm{r}}$ ).
${ }^{[4]}$ 5: The lord of the hour ... but not pure. Corresponds to She'elot II, § 12.7:3. The Epitome totius astrologiae ascribes a similar statement to Māshā’allāh: "Messahala autem Indorum in iudiciis solertisimus dicit posse inveniri quale sit quod quaerens celat, per dominum horae in colore \& significatione, \& supra annotaviums colores significatos a quibuslibet in Isagogis" (Epitome, 1548, Lib. III, cap. viii, sig. P2 ${ }^{\mathrm{v}}$ $\mathrm{P}_{3}{ }^{\mathrm{r}}$ ).
${ }^{[1]}$ 1-3: If the querent ... indication of pregnancy. Corresponds to She'elot II, $\S 5.2: 1-2$ and She'elot III, $\S 5.1: 1-3$. Corresponds to the Epitome totius astrologiae (Epitome, 1548, Lib. III, cap. ix, sig. $\mathrm{P}_{3}{ }^{\mathrm{r}}-\mathrm{P}_{3}{ }^{\mathrm{v}}$; quoted in notes on She'elot III, \$5.1:1-3).
$\$ 5.2$
${ }^{[1]}$ 2: Fortunate places. These are the cardines, the fifth place, and the eleventh place. For the fortunate horoscopic places, see note on Mivharim II, $\S 2: 3$ and She'elot II, $\$ 5.1: 3$, where they are explicitly enumerated.
${ }^{[2]}$ 3: Sixth, eighth, or twelfth place. These are the unfortunate horoscopic places. See note on Mivharim II, $\$ 2: 3$.
${ }^{[3]}$ 5: Barren signs. In Reshit Hokhmah, the barren signs are Gemini, Leo, Virgo, and Aquarius (1939, II, xiv: 13, xx: 25, xxiii: 6, xxxiii: 21); so too in Abū Ma'shar's Kitāb al-Madḥal (1996, VI: 16, v, p. 254).
${ }^{[4]}$ 1-6: If the querent... have a son. Corresponds to She' elot II, $\S$ 5.1:1-5 and to the Epitome totius astrologiae (Epitome, 1548, Lib. III, cap. ix, sig. $\mathrm{P}_{3}{ }^{\mathrm{v}}$; quoted in note on She'elot II, $\left.\S 5.1: 1-5\right)$.

## $\$ 5.3$

${ }^{[1]}$ 1-6: If $\langle$ the querent $\rangle$... larger number. Corresponds to She'elot II, $\$ 5.3: 1-4$ and She'elot III, $\$ 5.2: 1-4$. Corresponds to the Epitome totius astrologiae: "Pro sexu autem filiorum aspice ascendens, \& eius dominum, an aspiciat ipsum, qui si non aspiciat, sumas dominum honoris vel faciei, secundum quod quisque eorum aspicit ascendens, \& domum quintam, quae est directa secundum latitudinem terrae cum suo domino. Et tunc aspice naturam signi ascendentis, an sit masculinum vel foemininum, \& dominum eius signi in quo est. Sic \& quintam domum cuo suo domino, \& signo in quo est, \& dominum horae, an sit par vel impar. Vide etaim naturam signi in quo est dominus horae, \& in qua quarta orientales vel occidentales ratione Solis vel ascendentis sint singuli significatores, quod si testimonia masculorum superant, erit filius masculus, si foeminorum, erit foemina" (Epitome, 1548, Lib. III, cap. ix, sig. $\mathrm{P}_{3}{ }^{\mathrm{v}}$ ).

## $\$ 6.1$

${ }^{[1]}$ 1: If the lord of the ascendant ... in one of the cardines. Corresponds to the Epitome totius astrologiae: "Si dominus ascendentis est sub luce Solis, \& peius is est in angulo cum pertingit ad cremationem, dificit" (Epitome, 1548, Lib. III, cap. x, sig. P4 ${ }^{\mathrm{v}}$ ).
${ }^{[2]}$ 2: Fortunate places. See note on Mivharim II, § 2:3.
${ }^{[3]}$ 1-2: $\langle$ If the querent $\rangle \ldots$ he will survive. Corresponds to She'elot II, §6.1:1-2 and She'elot III, $\$ 6.1: 1-3$.
${ }^{[4]}$ 4: Know that... recover soon. Corresponds to She' elot II, $\S 6.1: 4$ and She'elot III, $\S 6.1: 10$. Also corresponds to the Epitome totius astrologiae (Epitome, 1548, Lib. III, cap. x, sig. P4 ${ }^{\mathrm{v}}$; quoted in note on She'elot III, \$6.1:10).
${ }^{[5]}$ 5: Know that $\ldots$ another illness. Corresponds to She' elot II, $\S 6.1: 5$; She'elot III, $\$ 6.2: 2$; Me'orot $\$ 17: 1$. Corresponds to the Epitome totius astrologiae: "Signa duorum corporum significant permutationem in alium morbum" (Epitome, 1548, Lib. III, cap. x, sig. P4 ${ }^{\text {v }}$ ).
${ }^{[6]}$ 6: I have already said $\ldots$ of interrogations. See above, $\$ 1: 2-7$.
${ }^{[7]} 7$ : But both say. Ptolemy's mention of the days of crisis, when a disease tends to reach a climax, for better or for worse (see note on Me'orot $\$_{3: 3}$ ), refers to the sixtieth aphorism of what Ibn Ezra called Sefer ha-Peri (Book of the Fruit), known in Latin Europe as Centiloquium, a short work organized in 100 aphorisms that during the Middle Ages was considered



 עשרה צלעות. זה אחר שיהיה ענין העלול זמן על השווי ולא הרתיעהו דבר מחוץ. וכאשר מצאת באלו הזוויות מצליח מן הקיימים או הנבוכים הורה על העתק טוב וא ואם מצאת בו מזיקים הורה על העתק רע אלא אם כן יהיה המזיק הפכי לעלה והוא בגבולו. והירח באלו המרכזים יורה על העלות החדות והשמש על העלות הישנות
 Ptolemy said: the true days of crises of diseases-they are the times when the condition of the patient appears to quickly turn for good or evil-
occur when the Moon is in the angles of a square circumscribed by the sphaera recta．The change that precedes and portends it，is when the Moon is in the angles of an octagon，and what precedes it is when it［the Moon］is in an angle of a figure with sixteenth sides．This is so when the condition of the patient develops normally and nothing external disturbs him．If you find in one of these angles a benefic，either a fixed star or a planet，it signifies a fortunate change，but if you find＜one of）the malefics，it signifies an unfortunate change，unless the＜nature of the〉 malefic is the opposite of 〈the nature of〉 the disease，and it ［the planet］is in its term．The Moon in these centers signifies acute diseases and the Sun chronic diseases．The same applies for any star， according to the characteristics of this star＂（Sefer ha－Peri，BNF 1055， f．61a）．
${ }^{[8]} 7$ ：And the astrologers concur ．．．day of crisis．This shows that Ibn Ezra was aware of a long astrological tradition about the medical doctrine of the critical days，running from Antiquity through his own time．The earliest example is the fifth book，＂on interrogations，＂of the Pentabiblos by Dorotheus（fl．25－75），written before Ptolemy＇s Almagest and Galen＇s On Critical Days．See Carmen astrologicum，1976，V，41：15－20，p． 317. A paraphrase of Dorotheus＇statement about the critical days is found in Apotelesmatics by Hephaistion of Thebes（fl．ca． 415 CE ）．See quotation in Klein，1984，p．66．Sahl Ibn Bishr al－Yahūdī（ca．786－ca．845），a Jewish astrologer known to Ibn Ezra，drawing on Dorotheus，also devotes a section to the＂critical days by the place of the Moon＂in his On Interrogations，among the procedures corresponding to the sixth place． See On Questions，2008，$\$ 6.2$ ，p． 90 ．The same holds true for Kitāb al－ Bāri by the Tunisian astrologer Alī ibn abī－l－Rijāl（d．after 1037），who in the second book，devoted to interrogations，in the chapter allocated to the sixth place，devotes a section to the critical days of the Moon．See Iudizios de las estrellas，1954，II：vii，pp．66－67．
${ }^{[9]} 7$ ：I have already explained $\langle$ this $\rangle$ in my Book of the Luminaries．Refers to the main topic of Sefer ha－Me＇orot．See Me＇orot $\$ 3: 1-2$ et passim． Corresponds to She＇elot III，$\$ 6.2: 6$ ．A similar approach，incorporating the critical days in the agenda of the astrological doctrine of interrogations－ more specifically in the framework of the procedures related to the sixth place，which signifies diseases－is noticed in Hellenistic and Arabic astrological works devoted to the astrological doctrine of interrogations． See previous note．
§6.2
${ }^{[1]} \mathbf{1}$ : $\langle$ If the querent $\rangle \ldots$ unfortunate aspect. Corresponds to She'elot II, §6.2:1.
${ }^{[2]}$ 2: But it is even ... human shape. Corresponds to Mivḥarim I, $\S 6.1: 2$ and Mivharim II, $\S 6.1: 5$. The signs with a human shape are Gemini, Virgo, and Libra and the first halves of Sagittarius and Aquarius.
${ }^{[3]}$ 3: All $\langle$ the astrologers〉 ... will be sick. Corresponds to Mivḥarim I, §6.2:1 and Mivharim II, §6.1:4.

## $\$ 7.1$

${ }^{[1]}$ 3: The same applies ... it will not be. Corresponds to She'elot II, § 12.3:1.
${ }^{[2]}$ 4: Observe the lord ... may be fulfilled. Corresponds to the Epitome totius astrologiae: "Si quis pro uxore habenda querit, invenias, si dominus ascendentis habet aliquam ex Lunae praedictis coniunctionibus vel aspectum cum domino septimae domus, vel contra dominus septimae est in tali positu cum domino ascendentis tunc enim habebit eam, de qua quaerit" (Epitome, 1548, Lib. III, cap. xi, sig. Q1 ${ }^{\text {v }}$ ). Corresponds to She' elot II, § 12.3:1.

## $\$ 7.2$

${ }^{[1]}$ 1-6: If the querent ... [the lot of Fortune's] conditions. Corresponds to She'elot II, §7.8:1-2. She'elot I, §7.2:4-6 corresponds to Mivharim I, $\S 7.7: 2$ and Mivharim II, $\S 7.5: 2$. See notes there.

## $\$ 7.3$

${ }^{[1]}$ 1: Observe ... to his enemy. Corresponds closely to the Epitome totius astrologiae: "Si quaerens facturus sit bellum, pro ipso quaeras dominum ascendentis \& ascendens, \& septimam domum, \& dominum eius pro eo, cum quo est conflicturus" (Epitome, 1548, Lib. III, cap. xii, sig. Q1 ${ }^{\mathrm{v}}-\mathrm{Q}^{\mathrm{r}}$ ).
${ }^{[2]} 3-5$ : Now if the lord ... lower planet. Corresponds to She'elot II, §7.1:2-4 and Mivharim III, §7.1:1-4.
${ }^{[3]}$ 8: If Mars ... applies to Venus. Corresponds closely to She'elot II, \$7.2:4.
${ }^{[4]} 10$ : Its eccentric circle, Hebrew גלגלו הגדול שמוצקו רחוק מגלגל הארץ, lit. its great circle whose center is distant from the circle of the Earth. Ibn Ezra denotes here the concept of eccentric circle by means of the two following points: (a) The eccentric circle is a "great circle," גלגל גדול, meaning a deferent, that is, a circle on which an epicycle is carried. The term "great circle" also connotes that an eccentric circle is different from a "small circle," גלגל קטן, that is, an epicycle. See note on Mivharim I, § 2.5:4. (b) The eccentric circle is a circle whose center is offset from the center of the Earth. To denote this idea Ibn Ezra employs here and elsewhere the neologism מוצק muṣaq, (Job 38:16 and 38) lit. "solid, stable, strong," but also meaning center. See note on Mivharim II, \$4.3:2.
${ }^{[5]}$ 10-14: If the two lords ... one portion of power. Corresponds closely
 הכח מהנחברים, הסתכל ההווה מהם קרוב ממקום גבהות גלגלו הגדול, הוא ינצח בוּ את חבירו. וחשוב זה הניצוח שהוא כחשבון ארבע כחות, וההווה מהם במקום גבהות גלגלו הקטן ינצח את חבירו בשלשה כחות. וההווה מהם בפאת שמאל מחבירו, בין

 מה שיהיה הכוכב קרוב אל הישוב יראה לו יותר כח. ואם שניהם דרומיים מי שיש
 ממעשה מחברתם כי אם פחות מחצי. וזה הניצוח בפאה יש לו שני כחו כחות, ומי שיש לו יותר ממשלה במקום שיתחברו בו יש לו כח אחד. וכאשר תחשב הכחות, אז תדע מי "If you wish to know which of the conjoining 〈planets〉 has power, look for the one that is closer to the apogee of its eccentric circle; this one will be victorious over its companion. Consider this victory as equivalent to four powers; the one that is at the apogee of its epicycle will be victorious over its companion by three powers. If one of them is north of its companion, whether the latter is in the zodiac or is southern, the northern will emerge victorious; if both of them are northern, the one that is more northern will be victorious over the other. The reason for this, as I have already explained, is that the closer a planet is to the ecumene, the more power it appears to have. But if both are southern, the one whose latitude is smaller will be victorious over the one whose latitude is greater;
if the [difference in] latitude between them is great, less than half their conjunction will be seen. The victory on account of the direction 〈with respect to the zodiac) is assigned two powers. The one that exercises more lordship in the place where they are in conjunction has one power. When you add up the powers you can know which of them is victorious" ( $\$ 7.1: 4-9$, pp. 88-89). Corresponds also to She'elot II, § $\$ 7.2: 2$, TTe'amim II, $\$ 4.4: 1-3$, pp. 210-211, and the Epitome totius astrologiae: "Quod si utrisque domini sint iuncti, aspice quis vincet secundum iudicium in Isagogis positum" (Epitome, 1548, Lib. III, cap. xii, sig. Q2 ${ }^{\text {r }}$ ). The latter reference points to Epitome, 1548, cap. xxiii, sig. $\mathrm{D}^{\mathrm{V}}-\mathrm{D}_{4}^{\mathrm{r}}$.

## $\$ 7.4$

${ }^{[1]}{ }_{1}-5$ : But if someone.. other statements. Corresponds closely to the Epitome totius astrologiae, which even expresses the same preferences for the last opinion that Ibn Ezra expresses in this passage. The Epitome, by contrast, does not disclose the sources, as She'elot I does: "Astrologi discordati sunt. Quidam enim dicunt primam domum \& eius dominum debere suspici pro habente pauciores annos, septimam vero cum suo domino pro aetate maiori, alii domum primam, \& eius dominum pro inceptore. Septimam autem et eius dominum pro altero ponunt. Alii vero dicunt Astrologum ante horam quaestionis eligere in animo, pro quo primam \& pro quo septimam debeat suspicere. Hanc vero postremam rationem experimentis caeteris praeponimus" (Epitome, 1548, Lib. III, cap. xii, sig. Q $^{\mathrm{r}}$ ). Corresponds also to She elot $\mathrm{II}, \S 7 \cdot 3: 1-4$, which generally does not cite its sources, either.
${ }^{[2]} 8$ : For he says ... aspecting signs. This method for reckoning the aspects, assigned here to Māshāallāh, seems to be the one adopted by Al-Kindī, as reported in Țe‘amim I: אממר יעקב אל כנדי: אחר שהמזלות הם" שנים עשר, הנה יתחלקו לחצי, והוא הנכח, ולשלישית ולרביצית ולשישית, ולא יתחלק "Ya'qub al-Kindī said: Given that there are twelve signs, they can be divided into two parts, which is opposition, and also into three, four and six parts; but they cannot be divided into other parts" (\$3.1:2, pp. 58-59).
${ }^{[3]} 9$ : For the signs ... in the mind. This is a reference to the controversy about whether the division of the zodiac into twelve signs represents a physical reality or is only a mental construct. This controversy recurs in
various loci in Ibn Ezra＇s scientific oeuvre．In Țe‘amim I，\＄2．12：13，the
 חלקו המזלות בשוה רק כפי מראית העין，והטעם הצורות，ובטלמיוס וחביריו כפי ＂In fact，the Indian scientists divided the signs into equal parts relying on observation alone，meaning the shapes $\langle o f$ the constellations〉，but Ptolemy and his colleagues 〈divided the signs〉 according to what is appropriate by the method of $\langle$ giving $\rangle$ proofs＂ （pp．52－53）；but in TTe‘amim I，$\S 8.1: 5-6$ ，the same debate is held between the scientists of Persia and Ptolemy，and Ibn Ezra sides with the latter： ״ומה שאמרו，שהכוכב הוא חלש עד היותו בחמש מעלות מהמזל，זו דעת חכמי פרס． ובטלמיוס לועג עליהם והדין עמו，כי אין המזלות נבדלים זה מזה，כי מחל מחלוקתם הם כפי מחשבת הלב מתחלת מחברת שני הגלגלים הגדולים או ממקום ידוע למראו ＂As for what they said，namely，that a planet is weak until it is five degrees from〈the beginning of〉 the sign，this is the opinion of the Persian scientists． But Ptolemy laughs at them and he is correct，because the signs are not separated one from the other，given that their divisions，based on a mental construct，begin at the intersection of the two great circles or at a particular observable spot 〈and end at〉 another particular spot；following either method the signs are not separated＂（pp．90－91）．Again，in Liber de rationibus tabularum，the debate is between Ancients and the Indians， on the one hand，and Ptolemy，on the other：＂De particione circuli in 12 partes secundum duas sententias．Sciendum est ergo quod partitio circuli firmamenti per 12 secundum duas sententias facta est，altera secundum cogitationem，altera secundum sensum visus est sententia；ea quidem que secundum cogitationem sententia est ea Ptholomei sententia est，que vero secundum visum est antiquorum et indorum est，et utraque harum vera est et ad artem tota admodum necessaria．Sed ea que Ptholomei est stare potest per se，altera vero sine illa nequaquam，nam sententia Ptholomei est scientia et ratio altera vero probatio iudiciorum＂（1947， pp．83－84）．

## $\$ 7.5$

${ }^{[1]}$ 1：Sign of the city．This term is also defined in Sefer ha－＇Olam II：ודע＇מודע＇ ＂כי מה שאמרתי מזל מדינה זה פירושו המזל שהוא עולה בעת הוסדה．＂＂Know that when I referred to the sign of a city I meant the sign that was the ascendant when it was founded＂（＇Olam II，$\$ 15: 1$ ，pp．164－165）．Sefer ha－＇Olam I offers a list of 22 cities and their respective zodiacal signs
('Olam I, $\$ 38: 1-24$, pp. 76-79) and Sefer ha-'Olam II a similar list of 23 cities ('Olam II, §15:2-25, pp. 164-167). Applications of the sign of the city in mundane astrology are extensively offered in the two versions of Sefer ha-'Olam. See 'Olam I, $\$ 25: 1-5$, pp. 68-69; §34:1-7, pp. 7475; §35:1-7, pp. 74-77; §53:1-7, pp. 86-87; §68:1, pp. 96-97; 'Olam II, §9:6, pp. 162-163; §20:1-7, pp. 170-171; §23:1-3, pp. 170-173. See also Mivharim II, $\S 4.2: 8$. The doctrine of the sign of the city is mentioned by Ptolemy: "... in the case of metropolitan cities, those regions of the zodiac are most sympathetic through which the sun and moon, and of the centres especially the horoscope, were passing at the first founding of the city, as in a nativity" (Tetrabiblos, 1980, II: 3, p. 161); "In similar fashion ascertain which of the cities, either from their horoscope at the time of their founding and the position of the luminaries at the time, or from the mid-heaven of the nativity of their then rulers, are sympathetic to the zodiacal sign of the eclipse" (ibid. II: 5, p. 163). See also BouchéLeclercq, 1899, pp. 368-371.
${ }^{[2]}$ 1: The $\langle$ last $\rangle$ conjunction of Saturn and Jupiter. The use of the cycles of the conjunctions of Saturn and Jupiter for world predictions or historical analysis is the most prominent Persian doctrine received by the Arabic world and later bequeathed to Hebrew and Latin culture. In its standard form, these conjunctions are divided into three types or cycles: the "small" conjunction, with a period of 20 years between two successive conjunctions; the "middle" conjunction, with a period of 240 years between shifts from one triplicity to another; and the "great" conjunction, with a period of 960 years between two conjunctions in the head of Aries. Ibn Ezra devoted two long sections of both versions of Sefer ha-'Olam to the exposition of the tripartite model of conjunctionalism ('Olam I, §7:1-4; §8:1-4; §9:1-6; §10:1-2, pp. 56-57; ‘Olam II, §3:14, pp. 156-157). A comprehensive picture of the historical weight of conjunctionalism is provided by another remarkable passage in 'Olam II ( $\$ 11: 1-3,162-163$ ). The three types of Saturn-Jupiter conjunctions mark the rhythm of human history at almost all its levels: the great Saturn-Jupiter conjunction gives an indication "about every nation," the middle conjunction "about the kings of every nation," the small conjunction "about an increase or decrease in the kingdom." This theory of Persian origin gained great popularity in late eighth- and ninth-century Islam, when it was employed to interpret the history of Islam. Starting in the tenth and particularly during the twelfth century, Jewish intellectuals, building on Arabic astrology, began putting conjunctionalism to
good use for the reinterpretation of Jewish history. In 'Olam I (\$10:2, pp. 56-57) we read that the great conjunction "signifies that a prophet will come to found a nation." In a remarkable passage of 'Olam II (\$14:16, pp. 164-165) Ibn Ezra provides a succinct but comprehensive picture of how the conjunctions of Saturn and Jupiter brought about the emergence of the three monotheistic religions. As a rule, though, in the two versions of Sefer ha-'Olam the Saturn-Jupiter conjunctions play the relatively modest role of shaping the history of cities, signifying war, high or low prices, famine, and drought or plenty ('Olam I, $\$ 25: 1-5$, pp. 68-69; §32:1-8, pp. 72-75; §39:1-9, pp. 78-79; §40:1-3, pp. 7879; §42:1-7, pp. 8o-81; §57:1-4, 88-91; 'Olam II, §21:1-2, pp. 170171).
${ }^{[3]}$ 2: At the moment of the conjunction ... city is under siege. For the "revolution of the year," see note on Mivḥarim III, $\$ 7.4: 5$, s.v. "revolution of the world-year." It is not surprising that the time for knowing whether the city will be captured is couched here in terms of a dilemma (either the moment of a Saturn-Jupiter conjunction or in the revolution of the
 כח בחכם להוציא המזל הצומח בשעת התחברות הכוכבים העליונים. וזה לא יתכן.' = "Many think that scientists can determine the sign of the ascendant at the hour of the conjunction of the upper planets. But this is impossible" ( $\$ 11: 1-2, \mathrm{pp} .58-59$ ). This is the start of a long digression ('Olam $\mathrm{I}, \$ 11-$ $\$ 18, \mathrm{pp} .58-65$ ) on the difficulties involved in finding the ascendant sign at the hour of the conjunction of the upper planets.
${ }^{[4]}$ 1-2: If the querent poses $\ldots$ will be captured. Corresponds closely to She'elot II, $\S 7.6: 1-2$. Also corresponds to the Epitome totius astrologiae: "De urbe vel castro obsessis. Si quis pro castro vel urbe quaerit, an sint capienda vel non, comperi signum illius urbis, vel castri in anno constructionis eius. Quod si dominus eius civitatis male se habet, \& provenerit noticia annorum civitatis ad signum, in cuius exordio fuit infortuna, nec aspicit ipsum planeta fortunatus, capietur civitas, quod si fortis fuerit, vel fortunatus non capietur" (Epitome, 1548, Lib. III, cap. vii, sig. $\left.\mathrm{P}_{1}{ }^{\mathrm{v}}\right)$.
${ }^{[5]}$ 3: Lord of the house. Mishpeței ha-Mazzalot enumerates the houses, or "הבתים: : domiciles, over which each of the seven planet exerts lordship בתי הלבנה אחד, והוא סרטן; בית השמש אחד, והוא אריה; בתי בואי כוכב חמה תאומים ובתולה; בתי נגה שור ומאזנים; בתי מאדים טלה ועקרב; בתי צדק קשת ודגים; בתי
" "Houses: the Moon has one house, Cancer; 〈also〉 the Sun has one house, Leo; Mercury's houses are Gemini and Virgo; Venus' houses are Taurus and Libra; Mars' houses are Aries and Scorpio; Jupiter's houses are Sagittarius and Pisces; Saturn's houses are Capricorn and Aquarius." (MS Schoenberg 57, f. 69). Ibn Ezra explains extensively the reasons behind the planetary houses in Țéamim I, §2.4:1-12, § 2.5:112, pp. 42-47 and TTe‘amim II, $\$ 2.5: 1-10, \$ 2.6: 1-7$, pp. 194-197.
${ }^{[6]}$ 4: Exaltation, Hebrew כבוד, lit. honor. A neologism by Ibn Ezra, a calque from the Arabic sharaf. The exaltation is one of the planets' five essential dignities (house, exaltation, triplicity, term, decan). Ibn Ezra explicates the term in Țéamim I , $\$ 2.16: 1-14(\mathrm{pp} .54-57)$ and TTe'amim II, \$2.7:1-14 (pp. 199-201). See: Kitāb al-Madḥal, 1996, V: 5-7, v, pp. 187196; Abbreviation, 1994, pp. 15-23; Kitāb al-Tafhìm, 1934, §443, p. 258; Al-Qabīṣī, 2004, I: 15, p. 25.
${ }^{[7]}$ 4: Term. The "terms" (Hebrew: גבולים; Arabic ḥudūd; Latin: fines) are unequal divisions of the signs; for each of them a planet, except the Sun and the Moon, is associated as "lord of the term." Introductions to astrology usually provide lists of the terms in each sign; in some cases they also refer to various methods. The most common are the terms of the Chaldeans or Babylonians, of the Hindus, of the Egyptians, and of Ptolemy. See Kitāb al-Tafhìm, 1934, §453, pp. 265-266; Kitāb alMadḥal, 1996, V: 8, v, pp. 196-200; Abbreviation, 1994, p. 89; Al-Qabīṣī, 2004, I: 19, pp. 27-29; Almagest, 1984, I: 21-22, pp. 91-107. Whereas Reshit Hokhmah gives the terms of the Egyptians or Babylonians and the terms of Ptolemy separately for each sign, Mishpeṭei ha-Mazzalot lists the terms of the Egyptians only. See Reshit Hokhmah II, x: 23-27 et passim; Mishpetei ha-Mazzalot, MS Schoenberg 57, f. 70. It turns out that in the current passage, when Ibn Ezra writes that Jupiter is considered to be "the lord of the term" because it is at Cancer $21^{\circ}$, he is referring to the terms of the Egyptians, not to the terms according to Ptolemy.

 "These are the terms according to the Egyptians and the astrologers: Mars, $6^{\circ}$; Venus, $6^{\circ}$; Mercury, $6^{\circ}$; Jupiter, $7^{\circ}$; Saturn, $4^{\circ}$; but according to Ptolemy: Mars, $7^{\circ}$; Jupiter, $6^{\circ}$; Mercury, $7^{\circ}$; Venus, $7^{\circ}$; Saturn, $4^{\circ " \text { (BNF 1056, }}$ f. 9a; this passage is miscopied in Reshit Hokhmah, 1939, II, xviii: 2527).
${ }^{[8]}$ 3-4: Be careful ... upper 〈planet〉. This digression shows the criteria used to choose the בעל הבית, the lord of the horoscopic "place" and, in this particular case, the בעל המזל הצומח, the lord of the ascendant sign, that is, the lord of the first place. It turns out that what matters is the cusp or beginning of the horoscopic place, which highlights that Ibn Ezra does not endorse the whole sign-whole place system of the Ancients (in which the boundaries of the signs coincide with the boundaries of the houses). This example also shows that the lord of the planetary house (that is, the lord of the sign that coincides with the cusp of the place) is not automatically considered to be the lord of the place. Other factors may play a key role, such as the lord of exaltation or the lord of the term with respect to the cusp of the house. In other words, there is a sort of competition among the dignities that a certain planet has in a certain place, a competition in which being the lord of the house is not always the predominant factor. Ibn Ezra focus on an example where the ascendant is Cancer $21^{\circ}$ yet Jupiter comes out to be the lord of the place, even though Cancer is the Moon's planetary house and we would expect the Moon to be the lord of this place. This is because Cancer is Jupiter's exaltation, because Cancer $21^{\circ}$ coincides with Jupiter's term in Cancer (so that Jupiter is considered to be the lord of the term there), and because Jupiter is an upper planet (in contrast to the Moon, which is a lower planet).
${ }^{[9]}$ 5-7: We should always... benefic planet. See above, $\$ 7.3: 1$ and note.
${ }^{[1]}{ }_{1-7}$ : If the querent ... run away and escape. Corresponds to She'elot II, $\S 7.6: 3-6$. Also corresponds closely to the Epitome totius astrologiae (Epitome, 1548, Lib. III, cap. vii, sig. P2 ${ }^{\mathrm{v}}$, quoted in note on She'elot II, §7.6:3-6).
${ }^{\text {[2] }}$ 8: Enoch said that the second place signifies an ambush. Corresponds to Mishpeṭei ha-Mazzalot: והבית השני ... והוא בית מארב כי יתחדש לו מה" "The second place ... is the place of ambush because it engenders for him what is unforeseen by him" (MS Schoenberg 57, f. 72).
${ }^{[1]}$ 4：The planet takes the ray ．．．Beginning of Wisdom．This termi－ nology（＂taking＂the ray of a planet and＂giving＂it to another）is not found elsewhere in Ibn Ezra＇s astrological work，except for She＇elot II， §11．1：2．Ibn Ezra is offering a metaphoric description of one of the plan－ etary conditions described in the seventh chapter of Reshit Hokhmah，

 ＂Transfer－ ence is of two kinds ．．．the second is when a quick planet conjoins another that is slower than it is，and the slow 〈planet conjoins〉 another〈planet that is〉 slower than it is，then the intermediate one transfers the ray of the quick 〈planet〉 to the last slower 〈planet）＂（BNF 1056， f．26a）．
${ }^{[2]}$ 1－13：The fourth part ．．．escaped from the city．Corresponds to She＇－ elot II，§7．7：1－11．Cf．Sahl Ibn Bishr al－Yahūdīs On Interrogations（On Questions，2008，$\$ 7.13$ ，pp．106－108）．Also corresponds closely to the Epitome totius astrologiae＂De servo fugitivo，aut re furto ablata．In quaes－ tione domini sevi fugitivi vel furti，aspice si dominus septimae domus dat vim domino ascendentis，latro sponte redibit cum furto，vel servus fugiens ad dominum．Si dominus septimae est sub luce Solis，reddet cen－ sum vi aut pavore，si dat vim domino ascendentis．Si Sol，vel domus decimae dominus dat vim domino ascendentis，rex ei subveniet，qui amisit．Si dominus secundae domus est in ascendente liber a luce Solis， sine laboris recuperabit．Sic quocque，si dat vim domino ascendentis， vel si dominus octavae dominus，dat vim domino secundae，\＆dominus ascendentis aspicit utrunque，capietur latro cum quaerendis，vel alieno furto． Si autem dominus secundae domus，\＆dominus septimae sint ambo in angulo，latro cum furto in ambitu urbis vel vici，ubi est fac－ tum concluditur．Si Luna dat vim Soli，vel domino ascendentis，signifi－ cat furtum inveniendum．Si dominus secundae domus dat vim domino ascendentis，\＆dominus ascendentis est in domo lapsa，non inveni－ etur．Sic etiam si dominus octavae domus est in ascendente，\＆domi－ nus secundae in octava．Similiter domino octavae domus vim tribuente domino septimae．Si vero dominus secundae domus dat vim domino tertiae vel novae，latro est egressus de civitate nocte，qua fecit furtum． Si Luna dat vim domino septimae domus，vel dominus septimae est digressus a coniunctione vel aspectu domini ascendentis，latro vel furtum
non invenietur．Si dominus secundae domus dat vim domino decimae domus，fur habet cum rege conventum．Sic domino secundae domus dante vim domino decimae，quae recipiatur．Si vero dominus secun－ dae dat vim domino tertiae vel nonae domus，vel planetis qui sunt his domibus，fur est egressus nunquam reperiendus．Si dominus septimae domus \＆dominus ascendentis dat vim planetae，qui sit in angulo quo－ vis，\＆melius si in medio coelis fur capietur．Si dominus septimae sub luce Solis est，fur a rege capietur＂（Epitome，1548，Lib．III，cap．xiii，sig． $\mathrm{Q}^{\mathrm{v}}-\mathrm{Q} 3^{\mathrm{r}}$ ）．
${ }^{[3]}$ 14：The quadrants with respect to the circle and with respect to the Sun．For these two kinds of quadrants，see above，$\S$ 5．3：2－3．
${ }^{[4]}$ 14：If you wish ．．．judgment accordingly．Corresponds to＇Alīi ibn abī－ l－Rijāl＇s Kitāb al－bāri＇fi akhām an－nujūm：＂Sepas que ．．．e la VIIa casa significador del ladron ．．．E iudga la forma e la qualidat del ladron segund aquella planeta que fuere su significador ．．．etc．＂＝＂Know that the seventh place signifies the thief ．．．You may know the shape and quality of the thief through the planet that signifies the thief ．．．etc．＂（Iudizios de las estrellas，1954，II：xxxiiii，pp．85－87）．
${ }^{[5]}$ 15：I have already discussed the shape of the planets in the $\langle$ Book of the $\rangle$ Beginning of Wisdom．This is a reference to the passages，in the seven sections devoted to each of the planets in the fourth chapter of Reshit Hokhmah，on the＂shapes of the planets，＂that is，the physical attributes of natives born under the sway of the corresponding planet．As an example， this is the description of the physical shape of a man born under the

 ולחה．ואם היה מערבי，יהיה גופו ישר，רק לא יה יהיה הלובן שלו נקי，ושער ראשו הפ ופר תלתלים，והוא קרח，ותרבה בו הלחה．והכלל שהוא יורה על אדם שיש לו וֹ נפש טוב טובה， It 〈Jupiter〉 signifies，as for the shape of a man，if it 〈Jupiter〉 is oriental 〈of the Sun〉，a considerable stature，his［the native＇s］body white with red，of scarce hair，beautiful eyes，esteemed in all his deeds，and his nature is hot and moist；but if it $\langle J u p i t e r\rangle$ is occidental $\langle$ of the Sun〉，his body will be upright，not completely white，his hair is not curly and he is bald，of abundant moist． The rule is that it signifies a man of good soul，good instinct，beautiful eyes，nice beard，and of thin hair＂（Reshit Hokhmah，1939，IV，xlv：16－ 21）．
${ }^{[1]}$ 1-2: If someone poses ... on his own. Corresponds closely to She' elot II, $\S 8.1: 1-2$, and to the Epitome totius astrologiae: "De servo fugitivo. Si quis querit pro servo qui fugerit, aspice dominum ascendentis, qui si est retrogradus, vel dat vim retrogrado planetae dedibit, sponte sua fugitivus" (Epitome, 1548, Lib. III, cap. xv, sig. Q3 ${ }^{\text {v }}$ ).
${ }^{[2]} 7$ : If you wish ... master's place. Corresponds closely to the Epitome totius astrologiae: "De loco fugitivo. Aspice cui planetae Luna dat vim, qui si est a domo prima ad quartam, vel in quarta huic contraria, fugiens est ex patria extorris. Si qua vero aliarum quartarum planetam receperit, futitivus est prope locum unde fugit" (Epitome, 1548, Lib. III, cap. xvi, sig. Q3 ${ }^{\mathrm{v}}$ ).

## $\$ 7.9$

${ }^{[1]}$ 1: If you wish ... will happen? This statement, and the section that follows it, which are part of the seventh place and continue the discussion about a fugitive slave, correspond to She'elot II, $\$ 12.8: 1-12$, as detailed in the following notes.
${ }^{[2]} 5$ : But the correct $\ldots$ mentioned to you. This refers to $\$ 7 \cdot 9: 2-4$, above.
${ }^{[3]}$ 6: $\langle\mathrm{Or}\rangle$ with the required place, Hebrew אל בית הצורך. The Hebrew text here is probably corrupt and the translation is tentative.
${ }^{[4]}$ 2-6: Ptolemy said ... the required place. Corresponds to She'elot II, $\$ 12.8: 2-10$ and to the Epitome totius astrologiae, which includes this statement, as does She' elot I, in a section on a fugitive slave: "Si planeta cui dat vim Luna est tardus in suo intinere, tarde invenietur. Si velox, cito, \& aspice quot sint gradus a domino ascendentis, ad dominum septimae domus, vel a Luna ad planetam infortunam quem aspicit, \& numera pro quovis gradu diem vel mensem, secundum quod est in signo firmo, vel mobili, vel in angulo. Et aspice consumationem coniunctionis, vel aspectus domini ascendentis cum domino septimae domus, vel econverso, vel dominus septimae intret ascendens" (Epitome, 1548, Lib. III, cap. xvi, sig. $\left.\mathrm{Q} 3^{\mathrm{v}}-\mathrm{Q} 4^{\mathrm{r}}\right)$.
${ }^{[5]} 7$ ：Abū Ma＇shar said ．．．lord of the sign．Corresponds to She＇elot II， $\$ 12.8: 12$ ，where $A b \bar{u} \mathrm{Ma}^{\prime}$ shar is not credited．
${ }^{[6]} 7$ ：As the days or years ．．．Beginning of Wisdom．This refers to the day of the week under the charge of a planet and to the various types of years assigned to a planet，as presented in the sections on each of the planets in the fourth chapter of Reshit Hokhmah．As an example，this is the account
 והגדולות שבע וחמישים，והאמצעיות שלש וארבעים וחצי，והקטנות שלשים，ושנות ＂Of the days $\langle$ of the week〉，Saturday $\ldots$ its greatest years， 256 ．the great 〈years〉， 57 ，the middle $\langle$ years $\rangle 43^{1 / 2}$ ，the least， 30 ，and the years of the period that is called the fardār， 11 ＂（Reshit Hokhmah，BNF 1056，f．20a）．
${ }^{[7]}$ 9：The best method ．．．rely on them．As in $\S 7.9: 5$ ，refers to $\$ 7.9: 2-3$ ， above．
§8．1
${ }^{[1]}$ 1－2：If the querent ．．．〈will come true〉．Corresponds to She＇elot II， §8．3：1－3．
$\$ 9.1$
${ }^{[1]}$ 1－4：The ninth place... its nature．Corresponds to She＇elot II，§9．2：1－ 6．Also corresponds to the Epitome totius astrologiae，which unexpectedly deals with＂rumors，whether or not they are true＂in one of the first sections of the third part：＂De rumoribus，utrum sint veri an non．Vide si signum ascendens est de firmis．Et si est eius dominus in signo firmo vel angulo，vel si dat vim planetae sic disposito，erit verum．Sic \＆testimonia Lunae aspice＂（Epitome，1548，Lib．III，cap．iiii，sig．P1 ${ }^{\mathrm{v}}$ ）．
$\$ 9.2$
${ }^{[1]}$ 1－4：$\langle$ If the querent $\rangle \ldots$ the benefics．Corresponds to She＇elot II，§9．3： 1－2．

## $\$ 9.3$

${ }^{[1]}$ 2：Dorotheus said ．．．human shape．Corresponds to She＇elot II，§ 9．1：3， where a similar statement is ascribed to Ptolemy．Also corresponds to Mivharim I，§ 3．2：9 and Mivharim II，§9．2：3．
§ 10.1
${ }^{[1]}$ 2：as I have explained．See above，$\S 7 \cdot 9: 2-6$ and note．
${ }^{[2]}$ 5：If the lord ．．．Sun＇s diameter．As Te＇amim I explains，this is the necessary condition for a planet to be considered in conjunction with
 מחצי אלכסון השמש，כי בהיות הכוכב דבק חלק בחלק האמצעית של כוכב דביקה עם הנקודה האמצעית של השמש．וזה לא לא יקרה לאו לאחד מהכוכבים העליונים עד היותו במקום גבהות גלגלו הקטן，אז יהיה רחוק מהארץ， ＂＝ואם היה במקום גבהותו כנגד הגלגל הגדול，אז יהיה במרחק הרחוק מהארץ．״ The reason why a 〈planet in〉 conjunction is less than 16 minutes 〈away from the Sun $\rangle$ is that this number is close to half the diameter of the Sun；when a planet is in full conjunction with the Sun，the center of the planet coincides with the center of the Sun．This occurs only when one of the upper planets is at the apogee of its epicycle，when it is far from the Earth；and if it is $\langle$ also $\rangle$ at apogee with respect to its eccentric circle it is at its furthest distance from the Earth＂（\＄6．2：1－2，pp．86－ 87）．
${ }^{[3]}{ }_{1-7}$ ：If someone poses $\ldots$ with him．Corresponds to She＇elot II，$\S 10.1$ ： 1－9 and Epitome totius astrologiae：＂Si quis quaerit an sit habiturus potestatem an non，aspice si dominus ascendentis habet coniunctionem vel aspectum cum domino decimae domus，\＆si est receptus，\＆est dominus decimae in quovis angulo，vel in domo undecima，vel quinta， tunc habet potestatem．Similiter si dominus decimae in ascendente．Si dominus decimae dat vim domino ascendentis，erit regi necessarius，qui dominus decimae，si planeta est fortuna vel fortunatus，fructum capiet ex eo．Si dominus ascendentis est sub luce Solis，\＆Sol est in domo decima vel undecima，vel ascendente，vel quinta，estque receptus a Sole， amorem，honorem，fructum habebit ex eo，si non est receptus habebit dominium cum timore absque damno＂（Epitome，1548，Lib．III，cap．xviii， sig． $\mathrm{Q}^{\mathrm{v}}$ ）．
${ }^{[4]} \mathbf{8 - 1 0}$ : Pass a similar ... opposite case. This digression is intended to show how the pattern of a prediction (something will happen to the querent voluntarily or against his will) related to an interrogation connected to some horoscopic place (i.e., the tenth place) may be transposed to the pattern of predictions related to interrogations connected to other horoscopic places (i.e., the ninth, second, and seventh places). This may happen when the pattern of the astrological conditions that brought about the prediction with respect to one of the horoscopic places (i.e., the lord of the ascendant gives power to the lord of the relevant place, and vice-versa) occurs with respect to the other places. The pattern of the astrological conditions and the pattern of the prediction are presented in $\$ 10.1: 7$ (with respect to the tenth place). Later, $\$ 10.1: 8$ shows how this pattern works with respect to the ninth place (travels), $\S 10.1: 9$ with respect to the second place (wealth), and $\S 10.1: 9$ with respect to the seventh place (women). Moreover, $\$ 10.1: 8$ implies that the same methodology may be transposed from interrogations to nativities ("something will happen ... to the native according to his natal chart").

## $\$ 10.3$

${ }^{[1]}$ 1: One of the signs ... extreme south. This is a reference to Cancer and Capricorn, which divide the zodiacal signs into two groups according to their rising times: long or straight (from Cancer to Sagittarius), with rising times longer than the rising times at sphaera recta, and short or crooked (from Capricorn to Gemini), with rising times shorter than the rising times at sphaera recta. See note on Mivharim II, §7.1:6.
${ }^{[2]}$ 2: A city whose latitude is $42^{\circ} 30^{\prime}$. This latitude corresponds to the neighborhood of Béziers, where Ibn Ezra wrote She'elot I. See Matthew, 1996, p. 232. 'Olam I, composed in Béziers after She'elot I, also uses latitude $42^{\circ} 30^{\prime}$ to demonstrate that "nobody can know when the Sun enters Aries in any particular city unless he knows the latitude of the place, meaning its latitude with respect to the equator" ('Olam I, $\S 15: 1$, pp. 60-61).
${ }^{[3]}$ 2: I give you an illustration ... number of signs. A very similar example is offered in TTe‘amim I, to illustrate the division of places according to
 עליה. כי אם היה המזל הצומח תחלת סרטן בגבול החמישי, לעולם יהיה בחצי השמים
 כן בעבור היות אלה שניהם סוף צפון ודרום. והנה כל חכמי המזלות מודים כן, גם "The second method is to correct the places according to the latitude of the country and the rising times of the signs there. For if the ascendant degree in the fifth climate is the beginning of Cancer, then less than the middle of Pisces, which is the ninth place, will always be at midheaven; the opposite happens if the ascendant degree is the head of Capricorn. This is so because these two [i.e., the beginnings of Cancer and Capricorn] are 〈in〉 the extreme north and south. All the astrologers agree about that, as well as the experts with the astrolabe, because there are many proofs for that" (\$10.2:4-6, pp. 96-97). See also, below, $\$ 10.3: 6$, which continues this topic and offers a complementary example where Libra is the ascendant sign.
${ }^{[4]}$ 4: In this case ... high rank. This applies the rule stated above, at $\$ 10.1: 1$ : "if you find the lord of the ascendant in conjunction with the lord of the tenth place ... it signifies that his request will come true and the king will love him."
${ }^{\text {[5] }} \mathbf{6}$ : If the rising sign ... tenth place. This is the continuation of the illustration offered above, $\S 10.3: 1-2$. See notes there.
$\$ 11.1$
${ }^{[1]}$ 1-2: If someone asks ... the end. Corresponds to the Epitome totius astrologiae: "De amicitia. Si dominu undeciame domus inveneris aspecire dominum ascendentis amicitiae aspectu, vel siquis eorum apicit ascendens, vel si ambo coniuncti sunt, vel si est dominus ascendentis receptus, invenerit amicitiam fructiferam quidem si quis horum fortunatus fuerit, infoelicem vero si infortunatus" (Epitome, 1548, Lib. III, cap. xxi, sig. $\mathrm{R}^{\mathrm{v}}$ ).
${ }^{[2]}$ 3: Twelfth place. The twelfth place signifies jealousy and hate, as mentioned in Reshit Hokhmah, 1939, III, xlii: 19.
${ }^{[3]} 3$-6: You need to know ... come true. Corresponds closely to Mivḥarim II, § 11.2:1-4.
${ }^{[4]} 7$－8：If he seeks the love ．．．the rule．Corresponds closely to Mivharim II，§11．4：1－2．
${ }^{[5]} 9$ ：If the querent poses ．．．opposite condition．Corresponds closely to Mivharim I，§9．1：1．
§ 12.1
${ }^{[1]} 3$ ：Its day $\ldots$ its hour．This refers to a doctrine that assigns each of the seven days and nights of the week，and each of the twelve hours of each of the seven days and the nights of the week，to one of the seven planets．Ibn Ezra explains this in Tee＇amim I：＂Know that the days $\langle$ of the week begin from Sunday；the astrologers found out by experience that the Sun has more power on this day than on any other day．When they divided the day into twelve hours they always assigned the first hour to the Sun，the lord of the day，and the second hour to Venus，whose orb is beneath the Sun＇s orb．For this reason they said that the lord of the second 〈hour〉 of Sunday is Venus and that it is in partnership with the Sun，the lord of the day，which has most of the power，and similarly with the other planets．Then the eighth hour is again under the charge of the Sun．Proceeding with this method，the diurnal part of Saturday is in the portion of Saturn，and of the nights Wednesday night 〈is in its portion〉＂ （ $\$ 4.2: 10, \mathrm{pp} .72-73$ ）For a similar explanation，see also Kitāb al－Tafhīm， $1934, \$ 390$, pp．237－238：＂With regard to the distribution of the days of the week among the planets，it is natural that the first hour of the first day Sunday should be given to the planet which is the cause of day and night， viz．the sun．The second hour is allotted to the next lower planet Venus， the third to Mercury，the fourth to the moon，the fifth to Saturn and so on till the second day Monday whose first hour falls to the moon，second to Saturn，and so on in the same way until another Sunday arrives，when the first hour is again the turn of the sun．The lords of the hours having been determined in this way it was natural that the days of the week should be assigned to the planet associated with the first hour thereof．＂
${ }^{[2]}{ }_{1-9}$ ：The twelfth place ．．．the opposite．Corresponds to She＇elot II， $\$ 12.1: 1-14$ and the Epitome totius astrologiae，although the latter inverts the order of presentations and begins with the cases unfavorable for the prisoner：＂De incarceratis．Considera ascendens eiusque dominum si inveneris in quovis angulo，\＆peius si in quarta，tardabitur liberatio．Sic
etiam Luna existente in quovis angulo, \& peius, si dominus duodecimae est coniunctus cum ea, vel aspicit, vel etiam si sextae domus dominus vel octavae cum domino ascendentis coniunctionem vel aspectum habeat. Cum est infortunatus dominus ascendentis, deficiet captivus in carcere. Si Luna dat vim domino ascendentis, tarde liberabitur. Sic si ascendens est de signis firmis. Similiter si Luna tarda est in eundo. Mobilia vero signa significant cito evasurum, \& si Luna sit velox in eundo, vel tribuat vim domino domino tertiae vel nonae, aut iuncta sit domino ascendentis, \& sit velox, \& melius si habeat aspectum cum domino tertiae vel nonae, et si ipse dominus tertiae vel nonae sit in ipsa domo est melius, vel si dat vim planetae, qui sit in aliqua harum, nona vel tertiae, vel si dominus ascendentis, velox est in quarta, quae est ab ascendente ad quartam domum, vel in quarta ad quartam domum, vel in quarta huic contraria, \& melius, si est infortunatus" (Epitome, 1548, Lib. III, cap. xxvi, sig. R2${ }^{\text {v }}$ ).
$\$ 12.2$
${ }^{[1]}$ 1-2: If someone ... malefic planet. Corresponds to She'elot II, § 12.2:23; Mivharim I, § 12.1:1; Mivharim II, § 12.1:1-2.
${ }^{[2]}$ 6: As written in the Book of the Beginning of Wisdom. In each of the sections devoted to each of the planets in the fourth chapter of Reshit Hokhmah, Ibn Ezra lists the animals that are under the sway of the corresponding planet. As an example, these are Saturn's animals: "ומן החיות הפילים, והגמלים, וכל חיה שהיא גדולה גם מכוערת, כמו החזירים, והזאבים, והקופים, והכלבים השחורים, והחתולים השחורים. ובחלקו וֹלו מהעופות כות כל וֹל עוף גדול שצוארו ארוך, כבת היענה והנשר והרחם, וכל עוף שוֹ שקולו משומם, והעורב, והעטלף, וכל צוף מראהו שחור. ומן רמש האדמה הפרעושים, והפשפשים, והזבובים, = והעכברים, וכל רמש משחית ונבאש שהוא בתוך הארץ." Saturn's sway $\rangle$, elephants, camels, and any animal that is big and ugly, as pigs, wolfs, monkeys, black dogs and black cats. Of the birds that are in its [Saturn's] portion, any bird that is big and its neck is long, as the ostrich, the eagle, and the bustard, any bird with a frightening voice, crows, bats, and any bird whose outward appearance is black. Of the animals that creep on the earth, fleas, bugs, flies, mice, and any corrupting and reeking insect that dwells inside the earth" (BNF 1056, f. 19b).

[^61]PART NINE
SECOND VERSION OF THE BOOK OF INTERROGATIONS
BY ABRAHAM IBN EZRA

HEBREW TEXT AND ENGLISH TRANSLATION

ואתן לך תהלות<br>בספר המזלות והשאלות1 1

1 (1) ראשי² חכמי המזלות היו שנים, האחד תלמי והשני דורוניוס3, ושניהם היו 2134 מלכים4. (2) ותלמי מודה משפטי המזלות, ויש לו ספרים שלשה בדברי העולם גם במולדות, ואיננו מודה כי השאלות הם נכונות5. (3) והנה דורוניוס6 אמר שהוא נסה7 פעמים רבות והם אמת, רק שלא יהא׳ השואל מנסה או לועג, רק יהיה לבו בשאלתו, ובבא9 סימן10 ששם לנפשו יקח מיד המעלה הצומחת. (4) ומשאללה11 היה12 חכם גדול בשאלות ויש לו ספרים רבים בהם313, והנה"14 גם אני15 רדפתי אחריו ויצאתי

בעקבותיו. (5) והנה, אתן לך כלל16 לכל השאלות.
2 (1) המזלות שהם עומדים יורו על כל דבר אמת ונכון ועומד, בין טוב ובין רע. (2) והמתהפכים יורו על שוא ושקר וכל דבר שלא יעמד ולא יהיה, רק רק אם יהיה וֹה השאלה על מלך אם יוסר ממלכתו18 מהרה יהיה, וכן להליכת הדרך19 יורה על מהירות ההליכה. (3) המזלות בעלי שני גופות20 יורו על ${ }^{21}$ היות קצת" ${ }^{22}$ הדבר לא כלו32; גם יורו24 על דבר שישוב פעם שנית ${ }^{25}$.

3 (1) המשרתים בהיותם באחת26 היתדות יורו על נכון ואמת 3 הרי. (2) והיתד העשירי הוא מהיר, ואחריו היתד הראשון, ואחריו השביצי28, ואחריו הרביעי. (3) ואם היה היתד העשירי במספר לוח הארץ גם במספר מעלות ישרות הוא יותר תקיף, כי אם היה הבית העשירי בית עשתי עשר במספר המעלות יחסר מהכח קרוב מרביציתוי29, ואם היה הבית העשירי בלוח הארץ הבית התשיעי במספר המעלות יחסר שלישית

1 ${ }^{1}$ ד בשם עושה גדולות, ולו נתכנו עלילות, אחל ספר השאלות, לאבן עזרא נגיד המעלות; נ בשם עושה גדולות, אחל ספר השאלות; רצ בשם עושה גדולות, ולו נתכנו עלילות, אחל ספר השאלות; ח ספר השאלות לחכם אבן עזרא. הראשי] כצפדנח; ר ראש.


 היה; פנג גם הוא; דח גם כן היה; רגם היה.
 כפנ; דח מלכותו; רצ ממלכותו.
 כצדנר; פ יורה. 25 בגם יורו על דבר שישוב פעם שנית] כצפדנר; ח חסר. 27 ${ }^{27}$ רמרתים בהיותם באחד היתדות יורו על נכון ואמת] כצפדנר; ח חסר. ${ }^{28}$ בואחריו השביעי] כצפדנח; ר חסר. ${ }^{29}$ מרביעיתו*] צרח; כנפ רביצית; ד שלישית.

I will praise You<br>In the Book of the Zodiacal Signs and Interrogations

1 （1）There have been two leading astrologers：one of them Ptolemy and the other Dorotheus；both of them were kings．${ }^{1}$（2）Ptolemy endorses astral judgments；${ }^{2}$ he has three books on mundane affairs as well as nativities，but he does not agree that interrogations are accurate．${ }^{3,4}$（3）But Dorotheus said that he had tested 〈them〉 by experience many times and found them to be truthful，${ }^{5}$ on condition that the querent is not testing or mocking $\left\langle\right.$ the astrologer〉 but is sincere in his question，${ }^{6}$ and that when the indication that he［the astrologer］has determined comes to his mind， he immediately takes the ascendant degree．${ }^{7}$（4）Māshā＇allāh was a great scholar of interrogations and wrote many books on this topic，and I too have pursued him and followed in his footsteps．${ }^{8}$（5）Now I give you a general rule for all interrogations．

2 （1）The fixed signs signify anything that is true and right and stable， whether for good or for evil．（2）The tropical 〈signs〉 signify falsehood and lies and anything that will not persist．If the interrogation is whether a king will be overthrown－it will occur soon；and if it relates to a journey it signifies the speed of journey．（3）The bicorporal signs signify that the〈desired〉 thing will be partly achieved but not entirely；they also signify that something will happen again．${ }^{1}$

3 （1）The planets，when they are in one of the cardines，signify correct－ ness and truth．${ }^{1}$（2）The tenth cardo［the tenth place］is fast，next comes the first cardo，next the seventh，and next to it the fourth．${ }^{2}$（3）If the num－ ber $\langle$ of degrees $\rangle$ of the tenth cardo［the tenth place］〈as found〉 accord－ ing to the latitude plate $\langle\text { of the astrolabe }\rangle^{3}$ is the same as the number $\langle$ of degrees of the tenth place measured $\rangle$ in equal degrees，then it［the tenth place］is the strongest；for if the tenth place 〈according to the latitude plate of the astrolabe〉 is 〈equal to $\rangle$ the eleventh place in $\langle$ equal $\rangle$ degrees then it lacks almost a fourth of the power，and if the tenth place 〈according to the degrees〉 on the latitude plate 〈of the astrolabe〉 is 〈equal to〉 the ninth place in 〈equal〉 degrees then it［the tenth place］lacks a third of the power．Therefore the first and seventh cardines［the first and seventh

הכח, צל כן היתד הראשון |והשביעי בכל מקום קיימים¹ (4) ובהיות המשרת במעלת 135\$ תחלת היתד, הנה כל הכח יש לו, ונשים להיות כחו במספר שמנה, והנה אם רחק חמש מעלות יחסר כח אחד, ואם רחק עשר² מעלות יחסר שני כחות", ואם" חמשה עשר5 יחסר6 שלשה ${ }^{7}$ כחות8, ואם עשרים יחסר ארבעהּ, ואם חמשה ועשרים10 ישארו11 לו כחות שלשה. (5) ויאמר ${ }^{12}$ תלמי כי הכוכב ההווה קרוב13 מתחלת הבית הראשון פחות מחמש מעלות הוא בכח היתד. (6) ואמת אמר שהוא בכחו רק איננו14 כמוהו, כי ההוה רחוק חמש מעלות יש לו חמישית הכח6, ואם שתים רביעית, ואם שלש שלישית16, ואם ארבע" ${ }^{17}$ החצי.

4 (1) וככה, 18 ,יש לך לדעת כי יש במזלות העומדים שאינם נאמנים כל 19 עת בעבור תולדת בעלי הבתים, כמו עקרב. (2) ועוד כי תולדתו כתולדת המים, על כן אמרו הקדמונים כי שור עומד מחביריו20. (3) וחנוך אמר21 כי כל דלי חזק מכולם, ויותר עומד בעבור היותו בית שבתי22, והוא נכון בעיניני, וגםם במת במהפכים אין גדי כמו טלה כי טלה יותר מתהפך. (4) גם בבעלי הגופות"25 השנים יותר עומדים הם בתי צדק מבתי כוכב חמה בעבור היותו כוכב עליון ובעבור תולדתו.


#### Abstract

5 (1) ויש לך26 להסתכל אל הכוכב27 העליון או השפל. (2) כי אם היהב28 ישר בהליכתו יורה על כל דבר שישלם ויהיה, ואם הוא שב אחורנית לא יקום 29 הדברבי, ואם הוא במעמדו השני יהיה אחר יאושי31, ואם במעמדו הראשון ישחת הדבר אחר שיהיה קרוב שיצשה"32. (3) ואם צבר הכוכב העליון מבט33 מרובע" ${ }^{34}$ מהשמש והוא מזרחי ממנה יהיה קצת האחר. (4) וכוכב חמה גם נגה, אם יהיי38 מערביים, והטעם שישקעו אחר39 השמש


1 ואם היה היתד הצשירי ... בכל מקום קיימים*] צפרנ; כ ואם היה היתד במספר לוח הארץ גם במספר מעלות ישרות הוא יותר תקיף כי אם היה הבית העשירי בית עשתי עשר במספר המעלות יחסר ... שלישית הכח על כן היתד הראשון והשביעי בכל מקום קיימים; חואם היתה היתד הי׳ ביתד לוח הארץ גם במספר המעל' ... יחסר מהכח קרוב מרביעיתו ואם היה הבית הי׳ בלוח הארץ הבית הט' במספר המעלות יחסר שלישית הכח צ״כ היתד הא׳ והז׳ בכל מקום קיימים; ד ואם היה היתד העשירי במספר לוח הארץ גם במספר מעלות ישרות הוא יותר תקיף כי אם היה הבית העשתי עשר לשתי עשר במספר המעלות יחסר שלישית הכח על כל היתד הראשון והשביצי בכל מקום קיימים ואם היה הבית העשירי בלוח הארץ בית

 ח ג׳; פנ חמשה. ${ }^{\text {® }}$ " כ״ה. כצדרח; פנ אפס. 15 כצפנח; דר ארבצה. מחברו; ר מחבירו. בעיניו. 424גם] כ; צפדנרח גם. כצפנח; ד כוכב. < ולא יקום. 31 אחרר יאוש] כצפנרח; ד אחריות. כצדרח; פנ ומבט. 34 מרובע] כצדרח; פנ מרובה. ${ }^{34}$ [צת] כצדח; פנר קצה. 36יהיה] כ; פדנרח היה; צ היה הדבר. ${ }^{37}{ }^{37}$ [פדנר; כ חסר; ח בית. 38היוי] כח; צפדנר היו. צ39 אחר] כפנח; צדר אחרי.
places］keep the same power in every location $\langle$ on the Earth $\rangle .{ }^{4}$（4）When a planet is in the first degree of the cardo it exercises its greatest power and we assign it［the planet］eight 〈portions of power〉，but if it［the planet］is 5 degrees distant［from the cusp］it loses one 〈portion of power，and if it is 10 degrees distant it loses two 〈portions of〉 power，and if 15 degrees it loses three 〈portions of〉 power，and if 20 degrees it loses four 〈portions of power，and if 25 degrees，$\langle$ only $\rangle$ three 〈portions of power〉 are left it． （5）Ptolemy said that a planet that is less than $5^{\circ}$ distant from the cusp of the first place exercises the same power as the cardo．${ }^{5}$（6）He was right when he said that 〈the power of the planet that is less than $5^{\circ}$ distant from the cusp $\rangle$ is similar to its power［the power of the cusp of the first place］but it is not 〈exactly equal to its power，for if it［the planet］is $5^{\circ}$ distant［from the cusp］it exercises the fifth of the power，and if it is $2^{\circ}$ $\left\langle\right.$ distant exercises〉 a fourth $\left\langle\right.$ of the power〉，and if $3^{\circ}$ a third，and if $4^{\circ}$ a half．

4 （1）Likewise，you should know that some of the fixed sign are not always trustworthy，and this is because of the nature of the lords of the signs，like Scorpio．${ }^{1}$（2）In addition，$\langle$ this is $\rangle$ because its［Scorpio＇s］nature is watery；therefore the Ancients said that Taurus is more stable than its companions ${ }^{2}$［the other fixed signs］．（3）But Enoch ${ }^{3}$ said that Aquar－ ius is the strongest and is more stable because it is Saturn＇s house；and this is correct in my opinion．${ }^{4}$ Among the tropical 〈signs〉 Capricorn is not the same as Aries，because Aries is more changeable．（4）Among the bicorporal 〈signs〉，too，Jupiter＇s houses are more stable than Mer－ cury＇s houses，because it［Jupiter］is an upper planet and because of its nature．${ }^{5}$

5 （1）$\langle$ You $\rangle$ should observe the upper or the lower planet．（2）For if its motion is direct it signifies，for anything，that it will be fully realized and persist，but if it is retrograde the thing 〈asked about〉 will not be realized， and if it is in its second station it will be realized $\langle o n l y\rangle$ after despair［i．e．， after it was despaired of］，and if it is in the first station ${ }^{1}$ it will be thwarted after being close to realization．（3）If the upper planet has gone beyond quartile with the Sun and is oriental of it，the object of the interrogation will be realized in part，and the same applies if it［the upper planet］is between the second station and the next quartile．（4）As for Mercury and Venus，if they are occidental $\langle$ of the Sun $\rangle$ ，meaning that they set after the

עד¹ היות מנתם תשעים מעלות², יורה על אמת ונכון, ומשם עד המעמד הראשון³, צל


 כי אם על רע, בין שיהיה הכוכב מן הטובים או מן הרעים. (7) ובהיות הלבנה מלאה אורה על מהירות והמתאחר13 על איחור141

6 (1) ויש לך להסתכל לעולם אל15 תולדת הכוכבים. (2) כי כל שאלה שתהיה
 א׳״צ׳״פ שמאדים יורה על שקר, כמו שאלה על דבר18 מלחמה. (3) והנה צדק יורה לעולם על אמת, רק אם היתה ${ }^{19}$ שאלה בעבור מלו בעבור שתולדתו לעשות שלום. (4) וככה, אם השאלה
 אם השאלה לעשות דבר שלא כדת וכתורה להוֹ ${ }^{26}$ וצדק באחת היתדות, לא יצ יעשה הדבר, ואם יעשה
 אם הוא חי או מת והיה שבתי באחד היתדות, יורה שהוא מת ולא כן מאדים.

7 (1) ויש לך להסתכל, לכל דבר, אם לך33 שנים עדים, תדין בהם כאשר פרשתי
 השנים כוכבים בי37 הממונים על השאלה, והטעם בע בעל בית בי39 המזל העולה מחוברת עם בעל בית שוה44 בפאה"45 אחת, רק אם היו בשתי פאות הנה זאת46 המחברת ${ }^{46}$ חצצי עדות. (3) ואם

[^62]Sun up to where their $\langle$ true $\rangle$ anomaly ${ }^{2}$ is $90^{\circ}$ ，their indication is certain and reliable，and from there to the first station 〈they signify〉 that it will be realized partially but not in full．The opposite applies to the upper planets．（5）The lower planets，when they are oriental $\langle$ of the Sun $\rangle$ ，are weak and do not indicate full realization of the thing asked about，and the same applies to the upper planets when they are occidental＜of the Sun $\rangle.{ }^{3}$（6）When any of them［either a lower or a upper planets］is with the ray of the Sun〈＇s body〉，${ }^{4}$ particularly if it is under the rays of burning，${ }^{5}$ none of them signifies good fortune but rather misfortune，regardless of whether it is a benefic or a malefic planet．${ }^{6}$（7）The Moon is a more reliable indicator when it is full than when it is not full．（8）A rapid planet indicates quickness and a laggard one slowness．

6 （1）You should always observe the nature of the planets．（2）For in any interrogation whose object is of Mars＇nature and it［Mars］is in one of the cardines，the object of the interrogation will take place and become true despite the fact that Mars signifies untruth，as in an interrogation about war．${ }^{1}$（3）Now Jupiter＇s indication is always reliable，but if the interrogation is about war and Jupiter is in a cardo the object of the interrogation will not be realized，because its［Jupiter＇s］nature is to make peace．（4）Likewise，if the interrogation is about love and Mars is in one of the cardines，things will happen to part the lovers，through perils and quarrels．（5）Likewise，if the interrogation is about doing something that is against religion and law，and Jupiter is in one of the cardines， he should not do it，and if he does he will suffer dishonor，shame，and afflictions，despite the fact that Jupiter is a benefic 〈planet〉．（6）Saturn， too，is unreliable when it is in the house of its dejection or detriment，${ }^{2}$ but if the interrogation is whether a man is alive or dead and Saturn is in one of the cardines，it signifies that he is dead；but Mars does not．

7 （1）For every question you should observe whether you have two witnesses，and pronounce judgment based on them，as I have explained in the Book of Nativities；${ }^{1}$ and observe all the aspects and the conjunctions ［i．e．，of both witnesses］．（2）If two planets are rulers of the interrogation－ meaning the lord of the place of the rising sign is in conjunction with the lord of the place signifying the object of the interrogation－the object ＜of the interrogation〉 will be realized if there is no latitude between them or they have the same latitude on the same side 〈with respect to the ecliptic〉，but if they are on two 〈different〉 sides 〈with respect to the ecliptic〉 this conjunction is only half a testimony．${ }^{2}$（3）If 〈the two lords〉

במבט הנכח ואין1 לאחד מהם מרחב הנה הדבר שלם, ואם לאחד² רוחב³ יחסר
 ואם בפאה אחת הנה9 חצי עדות.

8 (1) והנה אתן לך כלל |בממונה שהוא כנגד השואל. (2) הסתכל לעולם בעל הבית: 136א
 אם יש למזל כבוד בו לאחד המשרתים, עזוב 11 בעל הבית וקחי12 בעל הכבוד. (3) ואם לא יביט בעל הכבוד או אין כבוד לכוכב בבית¹3, קח בעל הגבול אם יביט, והוא
 לו כח. (5) והסתכל לעולם מי הוא בעל השעה, שאם היה לו כח במעלה הצומחתת, שיהיה17 בעל הבית או בעל הכבוד או הגבול או השלישות, קו קח אותו ועו ועזוב הכל, אפילו בעל הבית, כי כח גדול יש לבעל השעה בכל השאלות, וזה דבר מנוסה.
להסתכל אם יתן הכח30 לכוכב העליון ממנו, מה הם בתי אותו הכוכב כנגד המעלה
הצומחת, ולבית שיביט אליו בעליו יותר כח מהבית ${ }^{31}$ האחר.

1 ${ }^{1}$ כצפדנר; ח חצי מהעדות. ${ }^{5}$ רוב הרוחב] כפדנר; ח רוב המרחב; צ רוחב המרחב. ${ }^{6}$ רחבם] כפדנרח; צ רחבה. ${ }^{7}$ רוב הרוחב ואם רחבם שוה] כצפדנח; ר רוחב הרחב ואם רחבה מזה. ${ }^{8}$ ואם] כ; צפדנר
 חסר. 12 1קח] כפדנח; ר לקח; צ ולקח.
 פדנח משאללה; ר מאשאללה. צפדנרח; כ שישאל. 22 22 השואל*] צפדנרח; כ >הסתכל. כצפנר; דח חסר. 25 בחמשת השרים] כצפנ; דח בחמשה; ר בחמשה השרים.
 ח מתולדתו; כ ומתולדת. 30 להסתכל אם יתן הכח] כפ; צדח להסתכל; נר אם הכח. כצפדנח; ר מכח הבית.
are in opposition and neither of them has any latitude，the object 〈of the interrogation）will be fully realized；but if one of them has some latitude the testimony will lose value proportional to the latitude．（4）If they have the same latitude and are on two 〈different〉 sides 〈with respect to the ecliptic〉 the testimony is complete，but if they are on the same side it is only half a testimony．${ }^{3}$

8 （1）I now give you a general rule about 〈how to choose〉 the ruler over the querent．（2）Always observe the lord of the place 〈signifying the object of the interrogation）：if it aspects the ascendant degree then it is the ruler 〈over the querent〉，but if it does not aspect 〈the ascen－ dant degree $\rangle$ ，whereas the lord of the exaltation does，ignore the lord of the place and take the lord of the exaltation，on condition that some planet is the lord of the exaltation of this sign．${ }^{1}$（3）But if the lord of the exaltation does not aspect 〈the ascendant degree〉 or if none of the planets exercises the exaltation of this sign，take the lord of the term if it aspects $\langle$ the ascendant degree $\rangle$ ，and $\langle$ make it〉 the ruler 〈over the quer－ ent $\rangle$ ．（4）But if it［the lord of the term］does not aspect 〈the ascendant degree〉 either，take the lord of the triplicity if it aspects 〈the ascendant degree）；but the lord of the decan ${ }^{2}$ has no power．${ }^{3}$（5）Always find out which is the lord of the hour，${ }^{4}$ for if it exercises power in the ascen－ dant degree－〈for instance〉 if it［the lord of the hour］is the lord of the place 〈signifying the object of the interrogation〉 or the lord of the exal－ tation or 〈the lord of $\rangle$ the term or 〈the lord of $\rangle$ the triplicity－take it［the lord of the hour］and ignore all the others，even the lord of the place ＜signifying the object of the interrogation＞，because the lord of the hour exercises great power in all interrogations；this has been tested by expe－ rience．${ }^{5}$

9 （1）Māshā’allāh said：if you want to know the object of the querent＇s interrogation，always observe the lord of the orb，meaning 〈the planet〉 that has more lordship over the five rulers，${ }^{1}$ meaning 〈more lordship〉 over their positions，which are the places of life．${ }^{2,3}$（2）You can know the object of the interrogation from what is signified by the place where the lord is，and from its［the lord＇s］nature，and from the nature of the planet that conjoins or aspects it．（3）You should observe whether it ［the lord］gives power to the planet that is above it，what are the houses of this planet with respect to the ascendant degree；and 〈know〉 that the house that is aspected by its lord has more power than the other house．

10 (1) ויאמר בספר אחר כי לעולם נסתכל1 אל הלבנה ואל² מקומה ומאי זה כוכב נפרדה במחברת או במבט, כי כח גדול יש לה. (2) גם יש להסתכל אל הגורל הטוב, שהוא גורל הלבנה. (3) גם אמר שנסתכל בי3 אל כח התשעה מה מהמזל ${ }^{3}$ הע העולה, ובאיזה

 שלטון11 במקומו. (5) והסתכל מה תולדתו ומה הבתים יש לו ממשלה עליהם ועשה כדרך שהראתיך בספר המולדות, כי שבתי יורה על כל דבר קדמון ועל ולי הפחד
 על האחים והקרובים16 והמלחמות והמריבות¹7, והשמש על החיים והמלכים והשררה

 נהפכות42. (6) והנה אדבר עתה על השאלות525 על דרך שנים עשר בתים ${ }^{26}$.

1 (1) הבית הראשון: אם ישאל אדם על חייו הנשארים, בקש מקומות 1 (1) החיים, שהם ${ }^{27}$



 אל המבטים שהם עשויים בלוח הארץ, כי יש להם כח רב"36 מכח ${ }^{36}$ המבטים ${ }^{36}$ במעלות

ישרות99.

2 (1) ואם היתה שאלה40 צל אדם אם הוא חי או מת, הסתכל: (2) אם מצאת בעל הבית נשרף מהשמש או הואי ואף כי ביתד הרביעי, כבר נקבר, ואם היה בבית שנים עשר או הששי, גם הוא רע. (3)

 ג > לך. כצפנרח; ד שלושטן. ${ }^{12}$ ועל] כצפנרח; ד על. ${ }^{13}$ בוהיראה] כצפנרח; ד ויראה. וחלאים; ר וחוליים. והמריבות] כצדנר; פח ט. צ חסר. 3424
 ישרות* צפדחנר; כממעלות הישרות. כפנ; צדחר הנה. ד חסר. בדימכח] כצפנר; דח מבין.


10 （1）He［Māshāallāh］said in another book that we should always look at the Moon and at its position and 〈find out〉 from which planet it［the Moon］has parted 〈after being〉 in conjunction or aspect，because it［the Moon］has great power．${ }^{1}$（2）$\langle$ He also said that we〉 should look at the lot of Fortune，namely，the lot of the Moon．${ }^{2,3}$（3）He also said that we should look at the power of the ninth－part from the rising sign and 〈find out〉 to which sign the power of the ninth－part is assigned．${ }^{4}$（4）These things he said，too，are close to the truth；but one should always observe whether a planet is in the first cardo and give it power，even if does not have lordship in its position．（5）Find out its nature and what signs it holds lordship over，and proceed as I showed you in the Book of Nativities：${ }^{5}$ Saturn signifies anything ancient，fear，awe，landed estates，death and diseases； Jupiter signifies money，sons and peace；Mars signifies brothers，relatives， wars，and quarrels；the Sun signifies life，kings，authority，and the father； Venus 〈signifies〉 women，pleasures，and the younger sister；Mercury signifies all kinds of sciences，books，and art；the Moon signifies the female，life，and confused thoughts．（6）Now I will discuss interrogations according to the twelve $\langle$ horoscopic $\rangle$ places．

1 （1）The first place．If someone asks how many years he has left，find the places of life－there are five of them－according to the method that I mentioned in the Book of Nativities．${ }^{1,2}$（2）Always assign one year to each degree（in equal degrees）from the position of the Moon and observe when $\langle$ the direction $\rangle$ reaches an unfortunate position，${ }^{3}$ whether by conjunction or by aspect，in equal degrees．${ }^{4}$（3）Now if there is one witness 〈along〉 with it，this is full testimony to know how long he will live．${ }^{5}$（4）Do the same，taking a whole degree according to the latitude of the country，and look at the aspects as calculated on the latitude plate ＜of the astrolabe〉，because their power is stronger than the power of the aspects calculated in equal degrees．${ }^{6}$

2 （1）If the interrogation is about whether someone is alive or dead， observe 〈as follows〉．（2）If you find that the lord of the $\langle$ first $\rangle$ place is burnt by the Sun，or is under the rays of the Sun and its 〈ecliptic〉 latitude is southern，he is dead；${ }^{1}$ if it is under the Earth，notably in the fourth cardo ${ }^{2}$［fourth place］，he has already been buried；and if it is in the twelfth or the sixth place it is also unfortunate．（3）Therefore，do not

לכן, לא תדין עד שיתחבר כח אחר, והוא שתסתכל לעולם אל מקום הלבנה. (4) והנה, אםם היתה במזל הצומח ותתן² כחה לכוכב שהוא³ תחת הארץץ, ואף כי בבית ${ }^{3}$ הצ הרביצי ממנה, כבר מת ונקבר. (5) והנה, אם היה בעל הבית או הלבנה למעלה מהארץ, הנו חי, ואם בעל הבית הצומח בבית השמיני, הנו מת, וככה אם היה בעל5 השמיני במעלה הצומחת, אפילו שיהיה כוכב טוב.

3 (1) ומשאלה6 אמר כי אם היה בעל המזל7 הצומח8 מקובל מבעל הבית השמיני, לא יורה על מת רק על9 פחד. (2) וזה הדבר הוא נכון ${ }^{10}$ אם יהיה11 לבעל הבית השמיני שלטון, אפילו היה² מעט, במזל הצומח, או13 יהיה בעל השעה. (3) ואם בעל הצומח תחת הארץ והכח יתן14 לכוכב שהוא למעלה מהארץ, וככה הלבנה, יורו על סכנה

ונזק שעבר על הנשאל בשבילו וימלט15.
4 (1) ואם השאלה היא16 על אדם אם יבא במהרה, הסתכל אם היה בעל המזל הצומח באחד ${ }^{17}$ היתדות, ואף כי העשירי או הראשון, או ככה הלבנה ${ }^{18}$ באחד 19 אלה20 ${ }^{18}$ אל המקומות, או יהיה בעל המזל21 הצומח שב לאחור.|(2) אם היתה²2 השאלה על אדם 137א שהלך ${ }^{23}$ מתי ישוב לביתו, ואם היה שב באחד היתדות"24 יבא ${ }^{24}$ יותר26 ${ }^{25}$ מהרה, והמזל המתהפך יותר קרוב27 לבא, ואחריו בעל שני הגופות. ${ }^{27}$ (3) ואם היה29 בעל הצומח ישר בהליכתו והוא ${ }^{30}$ איננו מביט אל המעלה13 הצומחת, יורה על איחור. (4) וככה אם היה נותן כח לכוכב שהוא בבית התשיעי או השלישי, וככה אם היה בעל הצומח בבית השביעי, ואף כי אם 33 ${ }^{3}$ הת הלבנה הכח לכל כוכב שהוא בבית. (5) ובעל השצה יש לון ${ }^{34}$ כח רב, כי אם 35 היה ביתד העשירי, הנה מהרה יבא6", ויתכן אם היה המזל מתהפך, יורה37שלאיתעכב ימים רק שעות. (6) ואחר שראית שיבא, הסתכל כמה מעלות יש בין בעל38 הצומח והכוכב שהוא ביתד, ותן לכל מעלה יום אחד כפי המחברת או המבט או ביום שיתחברו או ישלים המבט.

[^63]pronounce judgment without adding another power；namely，you should always look at the position of the Moon．（4）Now if it［the Moon］is in the ascendant sign and gives its power to a planet that is under the Earth，particularly if it is in the fourth place after it［the Moon］，he is already dead and has been buried．（5）If the lord of the 〈first〉 place or the Moon is above the Earth he is alive，but if the lord of the ascendant sign is in the eighth place he is dead；and the same applies when the lord of the eighth 〈place〉 is in the ascendant degree，even if it is a benefic planet．${ }^{3}$

3 （1）Māshā＇allāh said that if the lord of the ascendant is received by the lord of the eighth place，${ }^{1}$ it indicates not death but fear．（2）This is true if the lord of the eighth place exercises lordship，even to a small extent，over the ascendant sign，or if it is the lord of the hour．（3）If the lord of the ascendant is below the Earth and gives power to a planet that is above the Earth（so too for the Moon），they signify that the object of the interrogation has been in danger and has been hurt，but escaped．${ }^{2}$

4 （1）If the interrogation is about whether someone will come soon， observe whether the lord of the ascendant sign is in one of the cardines， particularly in the tenth or first 〈place〉，or 〈whether〉 the Moon is in one of these positions，or 〈whether〉 the lord of the ascendant sign is retrograde．（2）If the interrogation is about when someone who has left his home will return，${ }^{1}$ he will return sooner if 〈the lord of the ascendant〉 is retrograde in one of the cardines；${ }^{2}$ and 〈if the lord of the ascendant is in〉 a tropical sign，this signifies that he will return almost as soon，and if in a bicorporal sign 〈he will return〉 later．（3）But if the lord of the ascendant is direct in its motion and does not aspect the ascendant degree，it signifies delay．（4）The same applies if it［the lord of the ascendant］gives power to a planet that is in the ninth or the third place，as well as if the lord of the ascendant is in the seventh place，particularly if the Moon gives power to any planet that is in its house．（5）The lord of the hour has a great power：if it is in the tenth cardo［tenth place］，he will return soon； and if it［the lord of the hour］is in a tropical sign it may signify that it will not be days but $\langle$ only $\rangle$ hours before he returns．${ }^{3}$（6）After you know that he will return，find out how many degrees there are between the lord of the ascendant and the planet that is in the cardo，and assign a day to each degree according to the conjunction or the aspect or on the day when they conjoin or when the aspect is full．${ }^{4}$

5 (1) גם ללבנה כח גדול בכל שאלה¹, רק אם היתה² בבית השני או השמיני או הששי או השנים עשר או התשיצי עזוב אותה³. (2) ויאמר אבו עלי4 כי אם היה המזל העולה אריה או קשת5 או דלי מעט נחוש6 מהלבנה ולא כן בשאר המזלות, והדין עמו בעבור צרך ביתו אל הבתים הנזכרים.

1 (1) הבית השני: אם ישאל7 אדם על ממון שנלקח או שנגנב8, אם9 הושב אם לא, הסתכל: אם ${ }^{10}$ בעל הבית השני יתן הכח לבעל הבית הראשון, או אם היה11 בעל הבית השני במזל הצומח, כבר הושב הממון. (2) ובדרך הזה12 תעשה אם בעל עשירי כדמות

בעל שנים צשר, וכן לכלם13.
2 (1) ואם 14 ישאל אדם על דבר שירצה לקנות, אם ירויח בו, הסתכל איך הוא הבית השני, ובעל הבית, ומקום צדק וגורל הלבנה ובעל הגורל. (2) ויאמר סעיד¹5 כי כל דבר שיקנה אדם והלבנה בחלקה ימצא בו ריוח גדול בהמכרו, והפך ${ }^{16}$ הדבר אם היתה17 בחלק השמש.

3 (1) ושאלה18 על אדם שילוה ממון או ימכור19 דבר שינתן לו המחיר בזמן קצוץ20, שים המזל21 העולה ללוה והסתכל מי הוא בעל המזל, והבית השביעי22 למלוה, ולהלואה23 מקום הלבנה וכוכב חמה. (2) והנה, אם היה שבתי מביט אל אחד מאלה לאיקח לעולם הלואתו4, ואם היה המביט אליהם או אל אחד מהם מם מאדים לא יוכל לקחת הלואתו כי אם בקושי26 ובמריבות, ואם היה צדק או נגה27 מביט יקח הלואתו בלא קושי רק כרצונו וחפצוצי. (3) וככה, אם הם היה29 כוכב טוב במזל העולה תדין30 כי הלווה ${ }^{31}$ ירויח כאשר קנה ויתן המחיר במהרה32 ${ }^{32}$ ואם כוכב רע הפך ${ }^{33}$ (43 הדבר. (4) ואם היה הכוכב הטוב ${ }^{34}$ בבית השביצי, טוב הוא ${ }^{35}$ ללווה ולמוכר, ואם רע יותר טוב היה לו3 שלא ילוה ושלא 37 ימכור, כי אם הלוה38 לא יקחנו ואם ימכרנו יפסיד המחיר


5 （1）The Moon，too，has great power in any interrogation，${ }^{1}$ but ignore it if it is in the second，eighth，sixth，twelfth，or ninth place．${ }^{2}$（2）Abū＇Alī̄ said that if the rising sign is Leo，Sagittarius，or Aquarius ${ }^{4}$ we should pay little attention to the Moon，but the opposite applies to the other signs． He is right，because of the relationship between its house［Cancer］and the aforementioned signs．${ }^{5}$

1 （1）The second place：If $\langle$ someone $\rangle$ poses a question about money that has been taken or stolen－has it been given back or not？－observe：if the lord of the second place gives power to the lord of the first place， or if the lord of the second place is in the ascendant sign，the money has already been given back．${ }^{1}$（2）Proceed similarly if the lord of the tenth $\langle$ place $\rangle$ is like the lord of the twelfth $\langle$ place $\rangle$ ，and likewise regarding all．${ }^{2}$

2 （1）If someone poses a question about something he wants to buy－ whether he will profit from it－observe the second place，the lord of the place，and the positions of Jupiter，of the lot of the Moon，and of the lord of the lot．${ }^{1}$（2） Sa © $\overline{\mathrm{i} d}$ said that anything that someone buys when the Moon is in its $\langle$ smaller $\rangle$ domain will bring great profit when sold，and the opposite applies if it $\langle$ the Moon $\rangle$ is in the domain of the Sun．${ }^{2,3}$

3 （1）〈As for〉 an interrogation about someone who lends money or sells something to be paid for at a fixed time［i．e．，sells on credit］，assign the rising sign to the borrower and find out which is the lord of the sign， $\langle$ assign $\rangle$ the seventh place to the lender，and $\langle$ assign $\rangle$ the position of the Moon and Mercury to the loan．（2）Now if Saturn aspects one of the aforementioned，he will never get his loan back；if it is Mars that aspects them（or one of them）he will get his loan back only with trouble and quarrels；and if Jupiter or Venus aspects 〈them〉 he will get back the loan without difficulty when he wishes．（3）Likewise，if a benefic planet is in the rising sign，judge that the borrower will profit when he buys and returns the loan quickly，but the opposite applies if a malefic planet 〈is in the ascendant sign $\rangle$ ．（4）If a benefic planet is in the seventh place，this is fortunate for the lender and the seller，but if a malefic＜planet is in the seventh place〉 he would have done better had he neither loaned nor sold， because if he loaned he will not get it［the loan］back and if he sells $\langle$ on

במהרה. (5) ואם היה הכוכב הרע¹ בעל היתד, לא יורה על רע² גמור, וככה יחסר לו3 הטוב³ בהיותו ביתד אם לא יהיה5 בעל אחד היתדות.

 מביטים, יתחברו; ואם לא היה כן ויתחבר או יביט בעל המזל ואי
 עם18 בעל הבית השלישי או עם מאדים, או יהיה עם מבט טוב עם עם אחד מהם, יורה כי יתחברו19; ואם לא יהיה ככה, לא יתחברו. (3) ואם היוֹי20 נחברים או מביטים והם ביתדות, מהרה 21 יהיה, ויותר אם היה היתד מהמזלות המתהפכים.

2 (1) ובבית התשיעי אדבר22 על הדרכים הקרובים והרחוקים23
3 (1) ובדרך הזאת²4 שהזכרתי על האחים, ככה יעשה אם ישאל על אב, שתסתכל 3 25 על בעל או על ${ }^{30}$ עבד או על מלך או על אשה או על אוהב או על שונאי ${ }^{31}$.
 הסתכל הבית הרביעי אם הוא מהמזלות הישרים, והנה ואם הוא מהמעוותים37 הפך הדבר³. (2) ואם כוכב טוב בבית הרביעי או מביט ${ }^{39}$ אליו,
ח חסר. 12 למאדים] כ; צחר אל מאדים; ד אל מאד.
151יתחבר או יביט בעל המזל הצומח למאדים לא יתחברו ואם לא היה כן] כדצרח; פנ חסר. כישה
כדפנר; ח כי היא. 17שואל] כפנר; צדח דבר שואל. ${ }^{18}$ ציצם] כצפחנר; ד אם. 19יתחברו] כצפנר; ד
יתחבר; חשיתחבר. 20היו] כצחר; פניהיו; ד חסר.
525 שתסתכל] כ; צפדחנר שיסתכל.
וככה הדין מי שישאל על אחיו שתסתכל על בעל הבית השלישי.
צפדחנר או אשה או מלך או אוהב או שונא. 32ישאל] כפנ; צ ישאל שואל; דחר שאל שואל.
דבדמהעוותים*] צ; כפר מהמתהפכים; דחנ מהמשרתים. ראו שאלות א׳ 4.1:5.
דבר; כ חסר. ${ }^{39}$ מביט] כ; צרפנ מביט.
credit〉 he will lose the price quickly．（5）If the malefic planet is the lord of a cardo it does not signify complete misfortune，and likewise good fortune is diminished when $\langle$ a malefic planet $\rangle$ is in a cardo if it is not the lord of one of the cardines．${ }^{1}$

1 （1）The third place．In my opinion，if someone poses a question－ whether he will meet his brother－he［the astrologer］should observe the lord of the ascendant sign and the lord of the third place．（2）Now if they ［the lord of the ascendant sign and the lord of the third place］conjoin or aspect，they［the querent and his brother］will meet；otherwise，if the lord of the ascendant sign is in conjunction with or aspects Mars，they will not meet；otherwise，if the Moon，which gives an indication for any querent，is in conjunction with the lord of the third place or with Mars，or is in a fortunate aspect with any of them，it signifies that they will meet； otherwise，they will not meet．${ }^{1}$（3）If they conjoin or aspect and are in〈one of）the cardines，this will happen soon，and even sooner if the cardo is in 〈one of〉 the tropical signs．

2 （1）In the ninth place I will discuss short and long journeys．${ }^{1}$
3 （1）Use this method I mentioned for brothers if someone poses a question about $\langle$ his $\rangle$ father，but observe the lord of the fourth place instead of the lord of the third place．Judge similarly for someone who poses a question about a son，a slave，a king，a woman，a lover，or an enemy．${ }^{1}$

1 （1）The fourth place．If 〈the querent〉 poses a question about the outcome of something he has begun－whether it will be fortunate or unfortunate－find out whether the fourth place is in one of the straight signs，which is an indication that the outcome will be fortunate，but the opposite applies if $\langle$ the fourth place is $\rangle$ in $\langle$ one of $\rangle$ the crooked $\langle$ signs $\rangle$ ． （2）If a benefic planet is in the fourth place or aspects it，particularly in an aspect of love，and even more so if it exercises lordship over the fourth

ויותר טוב1 אם הוא מבט אהבה, ויותר אם ${ }^{1}$ איה היה לו שלטון בבית הרביעי, הנה אות שני שהסוף טוב, והפך הדבר אם היה כוכב רע. (3) והסתכל3 אל הכוכב שה שהוא בעל בית הלבנה5, אם הוא ישר בהליכתו6 או תחת השמש, או במקום שו שו שיש לו לו שלטון או בו באחד היתדות, או הפוך7 כל אלה, והנה הוא אות ${ }^{7}$ ה שלישי שיורה על סוף הדבר9. (4) ואם היתה הלבנה בביתה, הסתכל הכוכבים שיביטו אליה ולמי10 תתן ${ }^{11}$ הכחח, וקח הסוף
 היתה כן, צזוב הלבנה וקח בעל הבית¹6 הרביעי.

 אם היה בהפך
 אם הוא רע. (4) ומנהג משאלה הגורל, וממנו ידין. (5) ולפי דעתי שבעל הבית הרביעי יותר חזק, והוא הנכון.

## 5§

1 (1) הבית החמישי. אם ישאל אדם אם יהיה לו בן, הסתכל 1 (19 אל ${ }^{39}$ בעל הבית החמישי אם הוא במזל העולה, או הסתכל אות כי יהיה ${ }^{44}$ לו בן, והפך זה אם לא יסתכל. (2) ועוד, אם היה
 או בבית עשתי עשר", יורה על בן, ובשאר המקומות לא"47. (4) ואם הלבנה תביט אל

1 טוב] כ; צרפנ חסר. ${ }^{2}$ בבית הרביעי או מביט אליו ויותר טוב אם הוא מבט אהבה ויותר אם] כצפנר; דח
 מקום הלבנה. ${ }^{5}$ הלבנה] כדצ; נפ > במקום הלבנה; צר במקום הלבנה (בשוליים). 6ישר בהליכתו*] צפדחנר; כ ם. ${ }^{\text {T }}$, "10ולמי] כצפנר; דח ומי. כיתתן] כצפדנר; ח יתן.

 עליו האדם. כצפחנר; ד בבית. כ; צפדנרח ולא על. כדחצ; ר ויותר יזיק מאדים; פניותר יזיק ומאדים. 29 הקרקצות] כצדחר; פנ קרקצות.
 אם על טוב*] צפדחנר; כ שיורה על טוב. חמשא אללה. תסתכל. הוא עמו במחברת הנה] כצפדנר; ח חסר.

place，this a second indication that the outcome will be fortunate，but the opposite applies if it is a malefic planet．（3）Observe the planet that is the lord of the house of the Moon，whether it is direct in its motion or under the $\langle$ ray of the $\rangle$ Sun，or in a position where it exercises lordship or in one of the cardines，or the opposite of all the aforementioned cases，and this is a third indication of the outcome of the matter．（4）If the Moon is in its house［Cancer］，observe the planets that aspect it and to which ＜planet＞it［the Moon］gives power，and determine the outcome＜of the activity）from this．But if it［the Moon］does not give 〈power〉 to any planet，find out its［the Moon＇s］own specific power．（5）Many said that if it［the Moon］is like that，you should ignore the Moon and use the lord of the fourth place．${ }^{1}$

2 （1）If the interrogation is about a landed estate concerning which someone is anxious，like a sown field or a vineyard，observe the fourth place：if Mars is not there or there is no unfortunate aspect，he has nothing to be afraid of，but the opposite applies in the contrary situation．（2） Mars is more inauspicious than Saturn with regard to landed estates， because Saturn signifies landed estates．${ }^{1,2}$（3）Many said：observe also the position of Saturn；if it is in a fortunate position，it does not signify evil but good，but the opposite applies if it is in an unfortunate position．${ }^{3}$（4） Māshā＇allāh＇s method is that you should observe the lot of the estate，${ }^{4}$ the planets that aspect it，and the lord of the lot，and pronounce judgment from this．（5）In my opinion the lord of the fourth place is stronger，and this is correct．${ }^{5}$

1 （1）The fifth place．If someone asks whether he will have a son，observe whether the lord of the fifth place is in the rising sign，or observe whether the lord of the rising sign is in conjunction with it［the lord of the fifth place］，for this is an indication that he will have a son；the opposite applies if he does not observe 〈the aforesaid conditions〉．（2）If Jupiter is in the rising sign，it too signifies a son．（3）The lord of the hour exercises great power，for if it is in one of the cardines，or in the fifth place，or in the eleventh place，${ }^{1}$ it signifies a son，but in the other places it does not． （4）If the Moon aspects the lord of the fifth place，and both aspect the

בעל הבית החמישי, ושניהם מביטים אל המזל העולה, יהיה לו בן. (5) והנה, אל תדין על¹ היות הבן אם לא יהיו לך שנים עדים.




אין שם הריון, וככה אם היה בעל השעה במקום נופל.
 ובעל הבית החמישי, ודע15 תולדת1615 בצל השעה, ותולד ולדת המזל הצומח ובעליו17, ותולדת הבית החמישי ובעליו, וספור כמה זכרים וכמהי18 נקבות. (2) גם תתן כחת לרביעית שהיא ${ }^{20}$ בחלק זכר ו21 או נקבה והמספר הרב בכח הוא האמת, אם וֹב עמהם מקום השמש ביום ומקום הלבנה בלילה. (4) ונכון הדבר²7, רק מזל29 הצומח ובעל הבית החמישי.

1 (1) הבית השישי. אם ישאל 1 שואל30 ${ }^{31}$ על חולה, אם יתרפא
 לא ימות. (2) וככה אם היה בבית החמישי או בבית העשתי עשרי באל, ואם היה בבית
 רע, ימות. (3) וככה, הסתכל יחזק לו44 החולי, וככה אם נם נתן הכח45 בעל הצ הצומח אל בעל הבית הששי או אל כוכב רע4. (4) גם בעל הבית47 השנים עשר רע מאד, קרוב כבעל הבית"48 הששי.


 כח; צמר שנים גופות; פנ חסר. ${ }^{11}{ }^{11}$ [אם המזל העולה ממזלות שנים גופים גם היא עדות] כצחדר; פנ חסר. [12 12אם] כפדחנ; צר והנה אם.
 חסר. 18וכמה] כחנרצ; פד כמה. ${ }^{19}$ "תתן כח*] פנ; ח תתן הכח; רצ תן כח; כ הקח. פנ חסר. מפאת] כצדחר; פנ חסר. פגם בם] כצפחנר; ד או. תשתתף. ח חסר. 30ישאל] כ; ח שאל; צפדנר חסר. 31 בואל] כצפדנר; ח חסר. 32 באם יתרפא] כצפדנר; ח שיתרפא ת״ל.

 יהיה. 42ואם] כ; צפדחנר או. ${ }^{43}$ בהסתכל] כחרצ; פדנ תסתכל.

rising sign，he will have a son．（5）Now do not pass judgment about a son unless you have two witnesses．${ }^{2}$

2 （1）If someone asks whether a woman is pregnant or not，now，if the Moon is in one of the cardines，and it is more auspicious in the bicorporal signs，this is a valid testimony 〈that she is pregnant）；${ }^{1}$ if the rising sign is one of the bicorporal signs，this too is a testimony 〈that she is pregnant $\rangle$ ． （2）But if Saturn or Mars is in one of the cardines，there is no pregnancy， and the same applies if the lord of the hour is in a cadent place．${ }^{2}$

3 （1）If 〈the querent〉 asks about 〈the sex of the baby the pregnant woman will give birth to，observe the lord of the hour，the lord of the ascendant sign，and the lord of the fifth place，and know the nature of the lord of the hour，the nature of the ascendant sign and its lord， and the nature of the fifth place and its lord，and count how many masculine and feminine 〈witnesses〉 there are．（2）Also assign 〈portions of）power to the quadrant that is considered to be masculine or feminine with respect to the ascendant degree or with respect to the Sun．${ }^{1}$ The truth as to whether $\langle$ the baby $\rangle$ will be male or female emerges from the larger number of powers $\langle$ of the masculine or feminine witnesses $\rangle .{ }^{2}$（3） Dorotheus said that you should associate them with the position of the Sun by day and the position of the Moon by night．（4）This is correct， but the root is the lord of the ascendant sign and the lord of the fifth place．

1 （1）The sixth place．If the querent poses a question about an ailing person－whether he will recover－observe：if the lord of the ascendant sign is in one of the cardines and is neither under the ray of the Sun nor retrograde，he will not die．（2）The same applies if it［the lord of the ascendant］is in the fifth or eleventh place，but if it is in the eighth place he will die，${ }^{1}$ or，〈conversely，if the lord of the eighth place is in the rising sign and is a benefic planet，he will survive，but if $\langle i t$ is $\rangle$ a malefic $\langle$ planet $\rangle$ he will die．${ }^{2}$（3）Likewise，observe the position of the Moon：if it gives power to the lord of the sixth place，the illness will be aggravated，and the same applies if the lord of the ascendant gives power to the lord of the sixth place or to a malefic planet．（4）The lord of the twelfth place， too，is very unfortunate，almost as much as the lord of the sixth place．${ }^{3}$
(5) והמזלות העומדים יורו על אורך החולי, והמתהפכים יורו על קוצר החולי, ובעלי שני הגופים² יורו³ שישתנה חליו לחלי אחר. (6) ואם היה הכוכב הרע, המזיק למזל5 הצומח במחברת או במבט, או ככה׳ ללבנה או לבעל המזל ה הצומח, מתאחר בהליכתו, יורה על איחור, והפך הדבר אם היה מהיר. (7) ואם היה בעל הצומח רץ בהליכתו8, ויכנס אל מזל אחר במהרה9 או יצא מבית לבית הבית הששי או השנים עשר, מיד יסור חליוי13. (8) והסתכל אם יש מבט או מחברת בין בעל הצומח15 או הלבנה עם בעל הבית הרע; והיום שיפרד13 ממנו"17, אם במחברת כדי אור הכוכב שהוא בעל הבית הרע, ואם במבט כדי מעלה אחת, אז יחלוֹ לסור חולי החולה 19 . (9) וכבר הודעתיך תולדת הכוכבים. (10) ולעולם הסתכל אל בעל20 הבית הששי באיזה בית הוא,|והטעם המזל כאשר הוא מחולקוֹל כל הגלגל על האיברים 138 וההתחלה22 ממזל טלה, ואל תשכח כאב הכוכבים בכל מזל.

2 (1) והשואל לקנות עבד, יסתכל אל בעל הצומח גם הלבנה איך הם עם²3 בעל הבית24 הששי, וכח גדול יש לכוכב חמה בעבדים.

1 (1) הבית השביצי. זה הבית יורה על המלחמות, ועל הגניבה, ועל השותפים5., ועל הנשים26 בסוף הספר. (2) והנה הסתכל: אם היה בעל הצומח מהכוכבים העליונים ובעל הבית השביעי מהשפלים, ושניהם חוקים, ינצח העליון, ואם היה השפל חוק מאד והעליון אמצעי לא ינצח27 העליון28. (3) וככה משפט כל כוכב שיהיה בבית הראשון או בבית ${ }^{29}$ השביעי, אם שפל אם עליון30. (4) וכל שפל או עליון, אם היה ${ }^{33}$ נשרף תחת השמש, אין לו כחה ${ }^{32}$ הוא מנוצח, וככה השב לאחור יורה שיחלשי33, רק אם היה מהעליונים34 לא תהיה חלישותו35 שלמה.

[^64]（5）The fixed signs signify a long illness，the tropical 〈signs〉 signify a short illness，and the bicorporal 〈signs〉 signify that after one illness will come another illness．${ }^{4}$（6）If the malefic star that afflicts the ascendant sign in conjunction or in aspect，or 〈that afflicts〉 the Moon or the lord of the ascendant sign，is moving slowly，it signifies delay，but the opposite applies if it is moving rapidly．${ }^{5}$（7）If the lord of the ascendant is moving rapidly and will soon enter another sign，or if it leaves one sign and enters another，his illness will recede at once，${ }^{6}$ on condition that it［the other sign that the lord of the ascendant enters］is neither the sixth nor the twelfth place．（8）Observe whether there is an aspect or a conjunction between the lord of the ascendant or the Moon and the lord of the unfortunate place；the day when it［the lord of the ascendant or the Moon］parts from it［the lord of the unfortunate place］－in conjunction，past the ray of the planet that is the lord of the unfortunate place，in aspect，one degree past〈it〉－is when the patient＇s illness will begin to recede．（9）I have already told you the nature of the planets．${ }^{7}$（10）Always observe the lord of the sixth place and find which sign it is in，meaning the sign according to the division of the entire zodiac into the limbs $\langle o f$ the body $\rangle$ ，beginning from Aries；${ }^{8}$ and do not forget the pains of the planets in each sign．${ }^{9}$

2 （1）If someone poses a question about buying a slave，observe the position of the lord of the ascendant and also of the Moon with respect to the lord of the sixth place．${ }^{1}$ Mercury exercises great power regarding slaves．${ }^{2}$

1 （1）The seventh place．This place signifies wars，stolen articles，part－ ners，and women 〈about whom I will expand〉 at the end of the book．（2） Now observe：if the lord of the ascendant is one of the upper planets and the lord of the seventh place is one of the lower planets，and if both are strong，the upper planet is victorious；but if the lower planet is very strong and the upper planet is intermediate 〈in its power〉，the upper planet will not be victorious．（3）The same rule applies to any planet that is in the first or seventh place，be it an upper or a lower planet．（4）Any upper or lower planet，if it is burnt under the 〈ray of the〉 Sun，has no power and is not victorious；the same applies to a retrograde 〈planet〉 and this signifies that it will grow weaker，but if it is one of the upper planets its weakness will be not complete．${ }^{1}$

2 (1) ואם ${ }^{1}$ השמש תביטם מבט טוב אל בעל3 הבית הראשון, יעזרוהו${ }^{4}$ המלכים5, ואם הלבנה שאר בני אדם, וככה תדין אם היו כן ${ }^{2}$ עם בעלף הבית השביעי. (2) ואם היו נחברים בעלת הבית הראשון ובעל הבית השביעי אוּ הממונה על כל אחד מהם"10, אם לאא היה היה מביט בעל הביתהי11, הסתכל מי ינצח כאשר כתבתי בספר ראשית חכמה313. (3) ויורו שילחמו שניהם, וככה מבט הנכח, וינצח מי שיש לו יותר כח, כאשר פרשתי לך בספר העולם, והנה1314 יורה15 שילחממו. (4) ובין כך ובין כך, אם יהיה מאדים16 באחד ${ }^{17}$ היתדות, ישפך18 דם רב, ואם היה עמו או במבטו שבתי19, יאריך המלחמה20 ולא תפסקו" ${ }^{21}$ מהרה, ואם צדק באחד ${ }^{20}{ }^{22}$ היתדות, יבואו אנשים להכנים שלום בין שני הנלחמים, וככה"24 אם היה נגהר במקום טוב, ואם היה26 כוכב חמה במבט רע, יכנים27 איבה בלב שניהם28 בעבור דברים.

3 (1) והנה, מחלוקת גדולה ישי29 אם ישאל השואל30 על שני מלכים, אי זה מהם ינצח. (2) יש אומרים, שישים המזל31 העולה לאשר הוא קטן32 בשנים והמזל השביצי לגדול ממנו. (3) ואחרים אמרו לא, כי33 רק יהיה המזל34 העולה לאשר יחל המלחמה והשביעי לאחר. (4) ודורוניוס35 אמר כי הנכון36 שישים בלבו השואל, אי זה מהם

שירצה קודם שישאל, והטעם
4 (1) גם כן השתבשו חכמי המשפטים אם היה המזל העולה עקרב ומאדים בשור, וידוע כי אם היה בעל המזל העולה בעל הבית השביעי43 במזל העולה. (2) והנה, זהם השבוש הוא הא ${ }^{45}$ בעבור היות מאדים כוכב עליון: יש אומרים שינוצח46 השואל ואחרים אמרו הפך הדבר. (3) ולפי דעתי

1ואם] כפנחרצ; ד חסר. 4יצזרוהו] כפנחרצ; ד יצזור. ${ }^{4}$ [המלכים] כפנחרצ; ד > והם.

 כפנחרצ; ד והם. כיו יורה] כפדנח; רצ יורו. 16 16יהיה מאדים] כ; פדנחרצ ש. .
 המלחמות. כצדחר; פנ לשים. כפנחרצ; ד חסר. 27 27כנים] כפנחצ; דר ויכנים. כחרצ; ד מחלוקת גדולה; פנ מחלוקת ישאר גדולה. שאל שואל; ר אם שואל שואל; פנ שאל שואל.
 כצדחר; פנ אין נכון. [7הטעם] כדנחרצ; פ הטעם. נהיה.


2 （1）If the Sun is in a fortunate aspect with the lord of the first place， kings will assist him［the person who makes a war］，and if the Moon〈aspects the lord of the first place〉，other people 〈will assist him〉；pass a similar judgment if they［the Sun and the Moon］are in the same position with respect to the lord of the seventh place．（2）If the lord of the first place and the lord of the seventh place，or the rulers over each of them ［the first and seventh place］，are in conjunction，as long as the lord of the〈first〉 place does not aspect $\langle$ them $\rangle$ ，you can find out which of them is victorious $\langle$ by the method $\rangle$ I have explained in the Book of the Beginning of Wisdom．${ }^{1,2}$（3）〈In this configuration〉 they indicate that both 〈parties〉 will fight；the same applies to the aspect of opposition．The victor will be the one with more power，as I have explained in the Book of the World，${ }^{3}$ so that it［the planet with more power］signifies that they will wage war〈against each other〉．（4）In any case，if Mars is in one of the cardines，there will be a great bloodshed；if Saturn is together with it［Mars］or aspects it，the war will be long and will not end quickly；if Jupiter is in one of the cardines，people will come to make peace between the two warring parties，and the same applies if Venus is in a fortunate position；and if Mercury is in an unfortunate aspect，it will instill enmity in the hearts of the two $\langle$ rival $\rangle$ parties because of $\langle$ various $\rangle$ things．${ }^{4}$

3 （1）There is a major disagreement about the querent who asks which of two kings will be victorious．（2）Some say that he［the astrologer］should assign the rising sign to the younger and the sign of the seventh place to the older．（3）Others disagreed 〈and said〉 that the rising sign should be assigned to the side that starts the war and the seventh 〈place〉 to the other〈side〉．（4）Dorotheus said that the correct approach is for the querent to make up his mind which side he prefers，meaning which side he likes more，before he poses the question，and the rising sign should be assigned to it．${ }^{1}$

4 （1）The astrologers were also confused about the case in which Scorpio ［i．e．，Mars＇house］is the rising sign，and Mars［that is，the lord of the ascendant］is in Taurus［Taurus is the seventh place after Mars＇house and is Mars＇detriment］，since it is known that if the lord of the rising sign is in the seventh place，he［the side that begins the war］will be defeated， and the opposite applies if the lord of the seventh place is in the rising sign．（2）Now，this confusion arises because Mars is an upper planet： some said that $\langle$ consequently $\rangle$ the querent will be defeated，and others said the opposite．（3）In my opinion misfortune will befall the querent

שרעה תבוא לשואל ולאויב1; והנה תסתכל²: אם היה נגה תקיף, אז³ יהיו שוים4 ברעה5, ואם לא6 יהיה תקיף7, אז ינוצח השואל8.

5 (1) ואם ישאל9 $\mid$ | השואל10 על מדינה, אם תקשור על המלך, הסתכל11: אם היה 139 השואל12 בעל המדינה, שים המזל העולה לפקיד עליה והבית השביעי למדינה. (2) ואם לא יהיה"13 הפקיד שואלם 14, הסתכל איך מקום השמש עם ${ }^{15}$ בעל המזל העולה:

 יש לעשירי, שהוא²3 כפי חשבון המעלות הישרות, כח, רק כחו24 פחות מהראשון.

6 (1) והשואל על מדינה או מבצר שהם במצור, אם תפתח המדינה, הסתכל, אם ידעת, מזל המדינה. (2) אם היתה25 במבט רע עם כוכבים מזיקים26 בתקופת השנה,
 ידעת מזלהם, קח לה"34 שאלה, והסתכל: אם היה בעל המזל הצומח והלבנה עם כוכבים רעים, תפתח המדינה, והפך הדבר אם היו עם כוכבים35 טובים. (4) ואם היה שבתי או מאדים באחד היתדות, תלקח בכח, ואם היה בעל המזל הצומח36 בבית" ${ }^{37}$ שנים עשר או השמיני, יהרגו אנשי המדינה, ואם היו כוכבים רעים וטובים ביתדות, הסתכל למי הכח, כאשר פירשתי בספר ראשית החכמה 38, וככה תדין. (5) ויש לך להסתכל, כי אם היה במזל39 העולה בעל הבית השביצי או השמיני או הששי או השנים עשר והוא כוכב רע, הוא רע לגמרי, ואם טוב, תלקח המדינה ולא ימותו אנשיה, ואם היה הכוכב ${ }^{40}$ הרע ביתד הראשון והוא בעל הבית, יביא פחדים בנפשות ולא יזיק שתלקח המדינה. (6) ודע שאם היה כוכב בבית שנים עשר והוא קרוב מהמעלה הצומחת, קרוב ${ }^{41}$ מאורו, יורה על ${ }^{42}$ תפישת המדינה כאשר יכנס הכוכב בתחלת הביתי", על כן, אם היה חוזר לאחור, לא יוכל להזיק.






 כצדחר; פכ במרחב. ${ }^{23}{ }^{23}$ בהוא] פדנחר; כ >

 כפנחרצ; ד חסר.
 חסר. ${ }^{33}$ 3צומח] כ; פדנחרצ חסר. 39 במזל] כפנחרצ; ד המזל. כוכב בבית ... מאורו יורה על] כפנחרצ; ד חסר.
and the enemy；now observe：if Venus［i．e．，Taurus is Venus＇house］is strong，then 〈both sides〉 will be equally unfortunate，but if it［Venus］is not strong，then the querent will be defeated．${ }^{1}$

5 （1）If the querent poses a question about a city－whether it will conspire against the king－observe：if the querent is the lord of the city， assign the rising sign to its［the city＇s］ruler［who is the querent］and the seventh place to the city．（2）If the lord 〈of the city〉 is not the querent， observe the position of the Sun with respect to the lord of the rising sign：if they are in opposition or in quartile，the people of the city will conspire against the king，and the same applies if the lord of the ascendant is with the lord of the tenth place，that is，the tenth 〈place〉 according to the $\langle$ division of the places based on the〉 latitude of the country．（3）The tenth $\langle$ place $\rangle$ ，too，according to the 〈division of the places based on $\rangle$ equal degrees，exercises $\langle$ some $\rangle$ power，but this power is less than the former．${ }^{1}$

6 （1）〈If the querent〉 poses a question about a city or a fortress under siege－whether the city will surrender－observe，if you know it，the sign of the city．${ }^{1}$（2）If it［the sign of the city］is in an unfortunate aspect with malefic planets at the revolution of the year，${ }^{2}$ the city will surrender，and the opposite applies if benefic planets aspect $\langle$ its sign $\rangle .{ }^{3}$（3）If you do not know its sign，make an interrogation on its［the city＇s］behalf，and observe：if the lord of the ascendant sign and the Moon are with malefic planets，the city will surrender，and the opposite applies if they are with benefic planets．（4）If Saturn or Mars is in one of the cardines，it will be taken by assault；if the lord of ascendant sign is in the twelfth or eighth place the city＇s inhabitants will be killed；if malefic and benefic planets are in the cardines，find out which exercises 〈more〉 power，as I have explained in the Book of the Beginning of Wisdom，${ }^{4}$ and pass judgment accordingly．（5）You ought to observe：if the lord of the seventh，eighth， sixth，or twelfth place is in the rising sign and it is a malefic planet，this is wholly unfortunate；if it is a benefic planet，the city will be captured but its inhabitants will not be killed；if the malefic planet is in the first cardo and it is the lord of the place，it will arouse panic but it is not an inauspicious sign that the city will be captured．（6）Know that if a planet is in the twelfth place and it is as close to the ascendant degree as the ray ＜of its body〉，it signifies the capture of the city when the planet enters the cusp of the place；therefore，if it is retrograde，it cannot be inauspicious $\left\langle\right.$ for the city〉．${ }^{5}$

7 (1) ובדבר1 1 הגניבה, הסתכל: אם נתן הכח בעל הבית² השביעי לבעל המזל העולה³ ישיב הגנב הגניבה4 לבעליו. (2) וככה אם היה תחת אור השמש, והשמש במזל הצומח או תתן הכח לבעל5 הצומח, אז׳ ישיב הגנבה7 על ידי8 מלך ${ }^{9}$ ופחדו ממנו. (3) וככה אם יתן כוכב10 כח השמש או כח בעל הבית השביצי אל בעל הצומח. (4) ואם היה בעל הבית השני במזל העולה11, ישוב12 ממונו לבעליו, וככה אם"13 יביטי14 בעל הבית השביעי אל בעל הצומח ויתן בעל הבית השני הכח אל בעל הצומח15, וכככה אם יתן15 הכח בעל השמיני17 לבעל הבית השני ויהיה בעל הבית השני ביתד הראשון או העשירי. (5) ואם מצאת בעל הבית ${ }^{18}$ השביעי19 באחד היתדות" ${ }^{19}$, דע כי הגבב לא סר ${ }^{21}$ מהמדינה, וככה אם היה בעל הבית השני באחד היתדות22: עוד הגניבה שגנבה שם. (6) ודע כי אם היתה23 הלבנה נותנת הכחב ${ }^{24}$ לבעל הצומח, הוא חצי עדות שתשוב הגניבה, וככה אם נתנה הכח לשמש. (7) ואם מצאת בעל הבית השני נותן25 הכח לבעל הצומח והוא לא יביט אל ${ }^{26}$ הצומח, לא תמצא הגניבה, וככה אם היה בעל הבית | השמיני בצומח27 או בעל הבית השני בבית השמיני18, וככה אם היה בעל הבית השמיני נותן29 כחו30 לבעל הבית התשיעי. (8) ואם היה בעל הבית השביעי בבית השלישי ${ }^{31}$ או בבית32 התשיעי, כבר יצא הגנב מהמדינה, ואם היה באחד מאלה33 הבתים בעל הבית השני, כבר הוצאה"34 הגניבה מהמדינה53. (9) ואם היתה הלבנה נותנת הכח לבעל הבית השביעי636, לא ימצא הגנב. (10) ואם הלבנה עם כוכב טוב, הוא טוב ${ }^{36}$ לגגב ורע לבעל הממון, והפך הדבר אם היה עם38 כוכב רע. (11) ואם נותן39 בעל הבית השביעי ובעל הצומח כחם לכוכב שהוא באחד היתדות, ילקח הגנב ותשוב הגניבה על יד אחר ${ }^{40}$ כפי תולדת הכוכב שהוא ביתד וכפי משפט בי היתד: כי אם היה היתד העשירי יהיה על יד מלך, ואם בראשון הגנב יבא" ${ }^{42}$ ילד3 ${ }^{43}$ בעל הממון, ואם בבית4 ${ }^{44}$ הרביעי על יד אחר ממשפחתו ומאבותיו, ואם בשביעי54 צל ידי שותפין46.

[^65]7 （1）As for stolen articles，observe：if the lord of the seventh place gives power to the lord of the rising sign，the thief will return the stolen article to its owner．（2）The same applies if it［the lord of the seventh place］is under the ray of the Sun and the Sun is in ascendant sign or gives power to the lord of the ascendant；in this case $\langle$ the thief $\rangle$ will return the stolen article through the king because he is afraid of him．（3）The same applies if a planet gives the power of the Sun or the power of the lord of the seventh place to the lord of the ascendant．（4）If the lord of the second place is in the rising sign，〈the thief〉 will return the money to its owner； the same applies if the lord of the seventh place aspects the lord of the ascendant and the lord of the second place gives power to the lord of the ascendant；the same applies if the lord of the eighth place gives power to the lord of the second place and the lord of the second place is in the first cardo or the tenth 〈cardo〉［tenth place］．（5）If you find the lord of the seventh place in one of the cardines，know that the thief has not yet left the city，and the same applies if the lord of the second place is in one of the cardines：the stolen article is still there．（6）Know that if the Moon gives power to the lord of the ascendant，this is half a testimony that the stolen article will be returned，and the same applies if it［the Moon］gives power to the Sun．（7）If you find that the lord of the second place gives power to the lord of the ascendant and it［the lord of the second place］ does not aspect the ascendant，the stolen article will not be found；the same applies if the lord of the eighth place is in the ascendant or the lord of the second place is in the eighth place，and the same $\langle$ also $\rangle$ applies if the lord of the eighth place gives its power to the lord of the ninth place． （8）If the lord of the seventh place is in the third or ninth place the thief has already left the city；and if the lord of the second place is in one of the aforementioned places，the stolen article has already been taken out of the city．（9）If the Moon gives power to the lord of the seventh place，the thief will not be discovered．（10）If the Moon is with a benefic planet，this is fortunate for the thief and unfortunate for the owner of the money，and the opposite applies if it［the Moon］is with a malefic planet．（11）If the lord of the seventh place and the lord of the ascendant give their power to a planet that is in one of the cardines，the thief will be captured and the stolen article will be returned by another person，according to the nature of the planet that is in the cardo and according to the judgment of the cardo：if the tenth cardo［the tenth place］〈it will be returned〉 by the king，if the first cardo the thief will come to the money＇s owner，if the fourth place by one of his relatives or kinsmen，and if the seventh place by partners．${ }^{1}$

8 (1) והשואל בעבור השותפות1, הסתכל": אם היה בעל הבית השביעי במבט³ טוב עם בעל הצומח4, ויש לו ממשלת בבית השני או בגורל הלבנה, אז יהיה טוב והאחרית טובה. (2) ואם היה夭 מאדים או שבתי בבית השביצי, ירמוהו השותפין${ }^{\text {ויכזבו לו }}$

## 8 §

1 (1) הבית השמיני. שאלה על אבדה 1 או על9 עבד שברח, הסתכל10 אל המזל הצומח. (2) אם היה בעליו111 שב לאחור אויתן הכח לכוכב שב לאחור, ישוב העבד אל אדוניו, וככה אם היה בעל הצומח עם כוכב רע, והפך הדבר או יהיה עם כוכב טוב. (3) ורבים אמרושתשים המזל13 העולה לאדון12 העבד והשביעי לעבד. (4) אםם היה בעל הבית השביעי נותן הכח616 לבעל הצומח, ישוב העבד מאליו, ואם היה בעל הבית השביעי תחת אור השמש, יתפש העבד, ואם היה בבית הששי או הבית השנים צשר, אז הוא17 יותר רע. (5) והנה מחלוקת בין חכמי השאלות בדבר הזה, ואני נסיתי פעמים רבות"18 שהראוי19 שילקח ${ }^{19}$ שי בעל המזל21 הצומח בעבור העבד, והשמש והבית העשירי לאדוניו.

2 (1) ועל דבר האבדה, הסתכל לבעל האבדה המזל22 הצומח ובעליו, ועל דבר אבדתו בבית במקום טוב, והסתכל26 אל הגורל הטוב2, וכאשר תראה כן תדין28.

3 (1) והשואל על דבר שיפחד ממנו929, הסתכל: אם היה בעל המזל30 הצומח והלבנה במקום טוב בגלגל, ואין כוכב רע באחד היתדותל ${ }^{31}$ ולא עם בעל המזל או הפקיד, אם לאש ואם עבר הפקיד או בעל הבית או הלבנה מחברת"36 עם כוכב רע כדי אורו או או" מעלה אחת במבטים, יהיה לו הפחד38 בנפש39 ובמחשבות גם בדברים שידבר40 ובחלומות,

[^66]8 （1）〈If〉 someone poses a question about partnership，observe：if the lord of the seventh place is in a fortunate aspect with the lord of the ascendant and exercises lordship over the second place or over the lot of the Moon，〈the partnership〉 will be fortunate and will have a happy outcome．（2）But if Mars or Saturn is in the seventh place his partners will cheat him，disappoint him，and plunder him．${ }^{1}$

1 （1）The eighth place．〈If someone poses〉 a question about a lost article or a fugitive slave，observe the ascendant sign．（2）If its lord is retrograde or gives power to a retrograde planet，the slave will return to his master； the same applies if the lord of the ascendant is with a malefic planet，but the opposite applies if it is direct in its motion or it is with a benefic planet．${ }^{1}$（3）Many said that you should assign the rising sign to the slave＇s master and the seventh 〈place〉 to the slave．（4）If the lord of the seventh place gives power to the lord of the ascendant，the slave will return of his own free will；if the lord of the seventh place is under the ray of the Sun，the slave will be caught；and if it is in the sixth or twelfth place，then it is more unfortunate．（5）But there is a disagreement among the experts in interrogations regarding this issue．I have tested this many times by experience and found that the lord of the ascendant sign should be assigned to the slave and the Sun and the tenth place to his master．

2 （1）As for a lost article，observe the ascendant sign and its lord＜and assign them $\rangle$ to the owner of the lost article，and the eighth and second place to the lost article．${ }^{1}$（2）The lord of the lot of the Moon，too，exercises great power if it is in a fortunate position．Observe the lot of Fortune and pass judgment according to what you observe．${ }^{2}$

3 （1）$\langle$ If the querent $\rangle$ poses a question about something of which he is afraid，observe：if the lord of the ascendant sign and the Moon are in a fortunate position in the zodiac，and $\langle i f\rangle$ no malefic planet is in one of the cardines，or with the lord or the ruler of the sign $\langle$ of the ascendant $\rangle$ ， $\langle$ and $\rangle$ if the lord $\langle$ of the ascendant $\rangle$ does not aspect the ascendant degree， his fear will not come true．（2）If the ruler or the lord of the sign $\langle$ of the ascendant $\rangle$ or the Moon passed through conjunction with a malefic planet within 〈the distance of the ray of its body or aspects 〈within〉 one

רק לא יבא לעולם לידי מעשה¹. (3) ואם בעל המזל היה² תחת אור השמש, או בבית שנים עשר או בבית3 הששי או" השמיני, יהיה לו לו הפחד5 ולא יהיה לו לו נזק רב. (4) רק אם היה6 אחד |מן הכוכבים הרעים באחד היתדות, או הוא עם7 בעל הצומח באחת 140א היתדות, אז היא9 רעה גדולה"10 ולאימלטי ${ }^{11}$ מן הרעה². (5) ואם יביטו כוכבים טובים, תדין כפי כח313 הטובים והרעים, ככתוב בספר ראשית החכמה14.1

4 (1) ודע כי חכמי השאלות אמרו דברים רבים לדעת מקום הגנב15 ומקום העבד שברח ומקום הדבר הטמון, ומה הם אלה¹6 הדברים אכתבם בסוף17 הספר.

1 (1) הבית התשיעי. השואל על דבר הליכה, הסתכל18: אם19 בעל המזל העולה בבית התשיעי, ילך ברצון נפשו, ואם היה בעל הבית התשיעי בבית הראשון, לאות כי יבא לו דבר20 ויתחדשי ${ }^{21}$ שילך ממקומו, ואם היה בעל הצומח נותן הכח לבעל הבית
 הסתכל25 לבעל הבית השלישי בדרכים הקרובים, והסתכל אל מקום הלבנה שיש לה־23 כח רב בהליכת הדרכים, וככה מאדים. (3) ויאמר תלמי: אם היה שבתי בבית התשיעי בהליכה בים, 27, יורה על סערה גדולה בים, ואם היה מאדים בבית התשיעי בהליכה ביבשה", יורה על לסטים שיצאו אליו929 בדרך. (4) ויאמר משאלה"30: אם היה הממונה, שהוא הפקיד, באחד הרביעיות ${ }^{31}$ של הגלגל 32 כנגד המעלה הצומחת שהם נקבות, יורה על הליכה. (5) ולפי דעתי33 איננו נכון, רק אם היה בבית השביעי בלבד.

2 (1) ובעבור היות 2 מה שדברו39 הקדמונים. (2) אמרו: אם היה המזל העולה אחד מהמזלות העומדים, הוא אמת, רק מחלוקת גדולה במזל עקרב40, והנכון שלא יסמוך אדם"41 עליו. (3)

1מעשה] כפנחרצ; ד מעלה. ${ }^{2}$ בעל המזל היה] כ; פדנחרצ היה בעל המזל. ${ }^{3}$ בבית] כ; פדנחרצ חסר.
 ד היה; פנ חסר. ${ }^{8} \mathbb{א}^{8}$ הוא עם בעל הצומח באחת היתדות] כצדחר; פנ חסר. ${ }^{\text {צאז היא] כחרצ; ד או }}$ היה; פנ אספו. 10גדולה] כ; פדנחרצ חולה. 11ימלט] כח; צפדנר תמלט. מהרעה; פדנ מרצה. ${ }^{13}{ }^{13}$ כצדר; פנ הכוכבים; ח כוכבים. ${ }^{14}$ החכמה] כצדחר; פנ חכמה. ${ }^{14}$ [הגנב*] צפדנר; כ הגניבה; ח הגנב ומקום הגנבה. ${ }^{16}$ [הם אלה] כ; דרצ הוא אלה; פנח הוא. ${ }^{17}$ [בסוף] כצדחר; פנ
 הדבר. 121יתחדש] כ; פדנחרצ > לו. 22וכל זה] כצדחר; פנ ועל זה הוא.
 בים*] פדנחרצ; כ בהליכת הים. ${ }^{28}$ בהליכה ביבשה*] פדנחרצ; כ בהליכת יבשה. רצ אליך. ${ }^{30}$ משאלה] כצ; פדנח משאללה; ר מאשא אללה. הרביצית. הנה הגלגל*] צפנר; כדח גלגל. פדנחרצ; כ חסר.
 כצדחר; פנ צפר.
degree，he will feel fear in his mind and thoughts and in what he says and in his dreams，but it will never come true．（3）If the lord of the sign is under the ray of the Sun，or in the twelfth，sixth，or eighth place，his fear will come true but will not injure him severely．${ }^{1}$（4）But if one of the malefic planets is in one of the cardines，or if it is with the lord of the ascendant in one of the cardines，then a great misfortune will befell him and he will not be able to escape it．（5）If benefic planets are in aspect， pass judgment according to the power of the benefics and the malefics， as is written in the Book of the Beginning of Wisdom．${ }^{2}$

4 （1）Know that the experts in interrogations said many things about discovering the location of a thief，the location of a fugitive slave，and the location of buried treasure，and I will discuss these topics at the end of the book．${ }^{1}$

1 （1）The ninth place．$\langle\mathrm{If}\rangle$ someone poses a question about journeys， observe：if the lord of the rising sign is in the ninth place，he will set out willingly；if the lord of the ninth place is in the first place，this indicates that something will happen to him and prompt him to leave home；and if the lord of the ascendant gives power to the lord of the ninth place， or vice versa，he will set out．${ }^{1}$ Everything I just told you refers to long journeys．（2）As for short journeys，observe the lord of the third place；〈also〉 observe the position of the Moon，since it has a great power in journeys，and the same applies to Mars．（3）Ptolemy said：if Saturn is in the ninth place in 〈an interrogation about〉 a journey by sea，it signifies a fierce storm at sea；if Mars is in the ninth place in 〈an interrogation about〉 a journey by land，it signifies that bandits will assault him en route．${ }^{2}$（4） Māshā’allāh said：if the ruler，that is，the lord，is in one of the feminine quadrants of the zodiac with respect to the ascendant degree，${ }^{3}$ it indicates that he will set out．${ }^{4}$（5）In my opinion this is correct only with respect to the seventh place．

2 （1）Since this place［the ninth place］is the place of rumors，because travelers spread them，I mention what the Ancients said 〈in this regard $\rangle$ ． （2）They said：if the rising sign is one of the fixed signs，〈the rumor〉 is true；but there is a great disagreement regarding Scorpio and in fact no one should place his trust in it．（3）If the rising sign is one of the tropical

ואם היה המזל העולה אחד מהמתהפכים, יורה על כזב ושקר, ואם1 אחד² מבעלי שני גופות3, יש ממנו נכון ויש ממנו כזב. (4) והסתכל אל מקום הלבנה, כי ממנה תקח העדות4 אם היה5 במזל עומד או מתהפך או בעל שני גופות. (5) והכוכבים הטובים יורו על אמת6 אם היו באחד היתדות, והרעים הפך הדבר. (6) רק אם היתה השמועה על דבר מלחמה ומריבה7 ומאדים באחד היתדות, הדבר הוא אמת, ואם היה שם צדק אל תסמוך שהוא אמת, בעבור שהוא דבר8 הפך תולדתו; וככה אם היה שבתי באחד היתדות והשמועה על מת או שבוי או חולה, הדבר הוא אמת9 כי כן10 תולדתו. (7) ויאמר אבו מעשר בספריו11 ${ }^{11}{ }^{12}$ השמר לך אם היה מאדים באחד היתדות, ואף כי בית השביעי, אל תדין, כי כל מה שתדין יהיה כזב, וככה אמרו1313 רבים על מזל עקרב. (8) והנה, אם מצאת המזל מתהפך ול והוא באחד5 14 היתדות, רוב הדבר הוא אמת, כי יותר כח־16 יש ליתד ממה שיש למזל המתהפך". (9) ולעולם הבט: אם הייתה הלבנה נותנת כח לכוכב באחד היתדות, הדבר הוא אמת, ואם הוא בנופל, הוא כזבי, ואם באמצעי, יש ממנו אמת ויש ממנו כזב19. (10) ואם היה הכוכב המקבל כח הלבנה|ביתד הראשון, 140 הדבר20 הוא אמת ועוד לא נשמע והתברר ${ }^{21}$ אצל הכל, והפך זה אם הבית העשירי, ואם היה בבית22 הרביעי יתעלם כל23 ${ }^{23}$ ומן.

3 (1) ואם שאל ל24 על שליח, באיזה"25 דברים ישוב, או26 על כתב חתום, אם יש בו טוב או רע, הסתכל לאשר שלח הכתב מהכוכב ${ }^{27}$ שנבדלה ממנו הלבנה, בין במבט ובין במחברת, וככה מבעל המזל הצומח28. (2) והסתכל לאשר 29 נכתב אליו הכתב, או שולח השליח, מבעל הבית השביעי, והכוכב שתתן הלבנה הכח לו, וממקום הלבנה ומבט הכוכבים אליה, אם ${ }^{30}$ טובים ואם רעים, וככה מקום כוכב חמה, כי יש לו כח גדול בכתבים, וככה תדין.

[^67]signs，it signifies deceit and falseness；if one of the bicorporal signs，part of it is true and part is false．（4）Observe the position of the Moon， from which you should take the testimony if it［the Moon］is in a fixed， tropical，or bicorporal sign．（5）The benefic planets signify truth if they are in one of the cardines，and the malefic planets 〈signify〉 the opposite． （6）But the rumor is true if it is about war or quarrels and Mars［a malefic planet］is in one of the cardines；and if Jupiter［a benefic planet］ is there［in one of the cardines and the rumor is about war or quarrels］ do not assume that it is true，because this is the opposite of its nature； the same applies if Saturn is in one of the cardines and the rumor is about a dead person or a prisoner or a sick person；〈although Saturn is a malefic planet $\rangle$ it is true because that is its nature．${ }^{1}$（7）Abū Ma＇shar ${ }^{2}$ said in 〈one of〉 his books：when Mars is in one of the cardines，and particularly 〈if Mars is〉 in the seventh cardo［the seventh place］，be careful not to pass judgment，because any judgment you pass will be false；and many said the same thing about Scorpio．${ }^{3}$（8）Now if you find a tropical sign in one of the cardines，most of the rumor is true，because the cardo is more powerful than the tropical sign．（9）Always observe： if the Moon gives power to a planet that is in one of the cardines，the rumor is true；if it is in a cadent place，it is false；and if it is in an intermediary place，it is part true and part false．（10）If the planet that receives the Moon＇s power is in the first cardo，the rumor is true but it has not yet been heard or investigated by all；the opposite applies if〈it is in〉 the tenth place．If it is in the fourth place it will be ignored forever．${ }^{4}$

3 （1）If 〈the querent〉 poses a question about a messenger－what he will bring back－or about a sealed letter－whether it brings good or bad news－for the sender of the letter observe the planet from which the Moon has parted，either from an aspect or a conjunction；and so too the lord of the ascendant sign．（2）Observe the lord of the seventh place，and the planet to which the Moon gives power，and the position of the Moon and the aspects of the planets to the Moon，be they benefics or malefics，for the recipient of the letter，or for the person to whom the messenger was sent；the same applies to the position of Mercury， because it exercises a great power regarding letters，and pass judgment accordingly．${ }^{1}$

1 (1) הבית העשירי. אם ישאל השואל אם יתם לו לו המלך מקום² שיהיה נגיד עליו, הסתכל לשואל מבעל הבית הצומח. (2) והנה, אם היה עם השמש באחד היתדות והוא מקובל33 ממנו, תנתן ${ }^{4}$ שאלתו, ואם לא היה באחד היתדות, יאמר לו המלך לעשות חפצו ולא יעשה, ואם לא היה מקובל מהשמש והוא נשרף באחד היתדות, יכעס עליו המלך ויתנהו בבית הסוהר5.. (3) גם ככה תסתכל אל בעל6 הבית העשירי כפי מרחב הארץ, כי הוא יותר חזק מבעל הבית העשירי במעלות ישרות, א׳צ׳״פ שיש לו כח. (4) והנה, אם היה מביט אל בעל הצומח או הפקיד, אם לא יביט בעל הצומח אל המעלה הצומחת, תתכן ${ }^{1}$ שאלת השואל, וככה אם הלבנה תביט8 אל9 בעל הבית העשירי10 ותתן לו הכח, ואיננו שב לאחור או תחת אור השמש. (5) ואם היה בעל הבית הצשירי11 מביטי12, הסתכל אי זה מבט313 הוא, אם טוב אם רע, וככה תדין. (6) ואם היה14 בעל הבית העשירי במזל הצומח ואיננו שב לאחור ולא תחת אור 12 השמש, תנת ואם בעל הצומח יהיה בבית העשירי ויביט אליו כוכב טוב, תנתן בקשתו. (7) וככה תדין אם יתן הכח בעל הצומח או17 הלבנה לכוכב שהוא בבית העשירי, ויותר טוב אם היה מהכוכבים הטובים 18, כי הרעים לא יחלקו כבוד רק אם היו חזקים מפאת השמש ויהיו במזל אחד הכוכבים הטובים, גם בגבולם, והטוב מכולם מבט הטובים אליהם. (8) ואחר שהראיתי לך הדרכים שתוכל לדעת בהם אם יצשה המלך חפצו, תוכל לדעת הפך הדבר, שאם לא19 יביט בעל הבית העשירי אל בעל הצומח, ולא יהיה בצומח, ולא יביט בעל הצומח20 לכוכב שהוא בבית העשירי, וככה הלבנה, או אם יביטו ואינם ביתדות, לא יצא לידי מעשה כלל. (9) ואם ראית שיתכן21 חפצו ותרצה לדעת זמנו, צוד אפרשנו בסוף²2 הספר.

[^68]1 （1）The tenth place．If the querent poses a question－whether the king will give him a place over which he will be governor－observe the lord of the ascendant sign for the querent．（2）Now if it［the lord of the ascendant］is with the Sun in one of the cardines and it［the lord of the ascendant］is received by it［the Sun］，his request will be granted；but if it is not in one of the cardines，the king will promise to grant his wish but will not do so；and if it［the lord of the ascendant］is not received by it［the Sun］and it［the lord of the ascendant］is burnt in one of the cardines，the king will be angry with him and put him in prison．（3）Also observe the lord of the tenth place $\langle$ calculated $\rangle$ according to the latitude of the country，because it is more powerful than the lord of the tenth place $\langle$ calculated $\rangle$ in equal degrees，even though it has 〈some〉 power．（4） Now，if it［the lord of the tenth place］aspects the lord of the ascendant or the ruler，〈then，〉 on condition that the lord of the ascendant does not aspect the ascendant degree，the querent＇s wish will be fulfilled；the same applies if the Moon aspects the lord of the tenth place and gives it power， on condition that it［the lord of the tenth place］is neither retrograde nor under the ray of the Sun．（5）But if the lord of the tenth place aspects ＜the lord of the ascendant＞，determine whether it is a fortunate or an unfortunate aspect and pass judgment accordingly．（6）If the lord of the tenth place is in the ascendant sign and is neither retrograde nor under the Sun＇s ray，his wish will be granted；and if the lord of the ascendant is in the tenth place and a fortunate planet aspects it，his wish will be granted． （7）Pass a similar judgment if the lord of the ascendant or the Moon gives power to a planet that is in the tenth place；it is even more auspicious if it is one of the benefic planets，because the malefics do not bestow honor unless they are strong with respect to the Sun and are together with benefic planets in one sign，also in their term．The most auspicious of all is if benefics aspect them．（8）Since I have shown you the ways by which you may know whether the king will carry out the wish $\langle$ of the querent $\rangle$ ，you can know the opposite：if the lord of the tenth place does not aspect the lord of the ascendant and is not in the ascendant，or if the lord of the ascendant does not aspect a planet that is in the tenth place （the same applies for the Moon），or if they aspect but they are not in the cardines，$\langle$ his wish $\rangle$ will not come true at all．${ }^{1}$（9）If you find that his wish will come true and you want to know when，I will discuss this later at the end of the book．${ }^{2}$


 היה כוכב14 לוקח אור15 בעל הצומ לומח ונותנו לבעל השביעי תשלם16 הסחורה על ידי17

 אפילו שלישות ${ }^{21}$ והכוכב שתתן לו הכח22 הוא סימן הקונה, ואם לא תמצא שני הדברים ללבנה עזוב אותה²3.

2 (1) ואם ישאל 24 צל סחורה שיש לאדם, אם יוכל למכרה ולא יזכור אדם ידוע שיהיה קונה",25, הסתכל: אם היה בעל הצומח באחד 2 (26 היתדות לא ימכור וזמן רב²8. (2) ואם היה כוכב הסחורה, והפך ${ }^{31}{ }^{31}$ אם אם היה כוכב טוב.

3 ירצה למכור, ואם בבית השביעי, לא ימצא קונה, ואם בבית העשירי, תתיקר בר36 הסחורה ולא ירצה למכור מאשלה כוכב טוב להפך. (3) ואם היה בעל הבית השני במזל הצומח, ביחד תמכר כלה.

[^69]1 （1）The eleventh place．If the querent poses a question about merchan－ dise－whether he will be able to sell it to a certain person－assign the ascendant sign to the owner of the merchandise，who is the seller，and observe：if there is any aspect between the lord of the ascendant and the lord of the seventh place，which 〈signifies〉 the buyer，the deal will be completed．${ }^{1}$（2）Likewise，if a planet takes the ray of the lord of the ascendant and gives it to the lord of the seventh place，${ }^{2}$ the deal will be completed through an intermediary．Otherwise the merchandise will not be sold．（3）Also observe the planet from which the Moon has parted， which signifies the seller；if the Moon holds power of lordship over the position of the ascendant degree，even 〈the power of lord of the〉 triplicity； and the planet to which it［the Moon］gives power signifies the buyer．But if you do not find the Moon in 〈one of〉 these two 〈configurations〉，ignore it．${ }^{3}$

2 （1）If $\langle$ the querent $\rangle$ poses a question about merchandise that belongs to someone－whether he will be able to sell it－but does not specify the identity of the buyer，observe：if the lord of the ascendant is in one of the cardines he will sell it only after a long delay．（2）If there is a malefic planet in one of the cardines and it［the malefic planet］does not exercise lordship over its position，the merchandise will not be sold，but the opposite applies if there is $\langle$ there $\rangle$ a benefic planet．${ }^{1}$

3 （1）Dorotheus said：if a malefic planet is in the rising sign，it signifies that the seller does not wish to sell；if it is in the seventh place，no buyer will appear；if it is in the tenth place，the price of the merchandise will rise and the seller will not wish to sell；if it is in the fourth place，the merchandise will be sold immediately．（2）Māshā’allāh said：if a malefic planet is in the rising sign，the merchandise will be damaged and its owner will lose，but the opposite applies if a benefic planet 〈is there $\rangle$ ． （3）If the lord of the second place is in the ascendant sign，all of the merchandise will be sold．

## 12 §

1 1 (1) בית שנים עשר¹. זה הבית יורה² צל בית הסוהר³, גם יורה כן הבית הששי, ויש אומרים גם הבית השמיני, וחנוך אמר³ היתד הרביעי פיתי. (2) הסתכל במרוצה, יורה על מהירות צאתו, והפך הדבר אם היה מתאחר. (3) ואם היתה ביתד
 נתנה הכח לבעל הבית התשיעי או השלישי10 ולא יהיה באחד דנת על הלבנה ככה תדין על בעל ${ }^{13}$ הצומח. (5) ודע כי כח גדול יש לרביעיות
 הדבר הרביעיות האחרות. (6) והמזלות המתהפכים יורו על מהירות, והעומדים הפך הדבר, ומזלות שני18 גופות אמצעיות ${ }^{19}$, גם גם ית יתכן אחר שיצא שיושב היתדות22, לא יצא מבית הסוהר, ויותר רע אם היה בעל הצומח בבית הרביעי, או
 יותר רע8, או או שיתן הכח בעל הצומח ${ }^{29}$ לכוכב שהוא באחד היתדות. (8) ואם היהבי30
 ימות בבית הסוהר. (9) ודע שאם תתן הלבנה הכח33 לבעל המזל הצומחל ${ }^{33}$ (0, גם הוא

 החוזר ${ }^{41}$ לאחור לא יוציאב ${ }^{42}$ מהרה, ואם בעל הצומח יהיה נשרף, אין ספק שלא יצא, ואם לא יהיה מקובל מן השמש, שם ימות. (12) ואם רצית לדעת איך לבי בבית הסוהר, הסתכל אל בית יביט בעל הבית ויביט הוא"47 הממונה. (13) ודעי היאך הי הם הם מבטיו עם המזל העולה,

 8 השלישי או בבית התשיעי.
 16 הרביעיות] כדחצ; פנ הרביצית. בחזקה נקבה. [21 21יושב] כנצ; פ שישוב בבית הסוהר; ד שישוב; ח יושב. ליתדות; ח ראית בעלי היתדות ביתדות; ד היה בעלי היתדות ביתדות; צ אחת בעלי היתדות ביתדות.
 ולבעל; ד חסר. חסר. פנ חסר. 30לכוכב שהוא באחד היתדות ואם היה] כדנחצ; פ חסר. שהוא; נח הכוכב ההוא. לכוכב שהוא באחד היתדות. 35גם הוא סימן רע ודע] כפנחצ; ד לכוכב שהוא באחת היתדות. ${ }^{35}$ שאםם] כפם; ד ואם; נחצ כי אם. בר 37יה] כד; פנחצ כי אם יהיה. בהליכתו] כ; דחצ מהיר; פנ ממהר. ${ }^{40}$ [חסר*] פדג; כח יתחסר; צ תחסר. חוזר. ${ }^{42}$ [וציא] כפנחצ; ד יוצא.


1 （1）The twelfth place．This place signifies prison；the sixth place，too， signifies this，and some say the eighth place as well，but Enoch says the fourth cardo［tenth place］．${ }^{1}$（2）Observe：if the Moon is moving rapidly，it signifies his swift release，and the opposite applies if it is slow． （3）If it［the Moon］is in the cardo and gives power to a planet in the third or ninth place，it signifies his swift release，and the same applies if it gives power to the lord of the ninth or third place and it is not in one of the cardines．（4）Pass judgment on the basis of the lord of the ascendant as you passed judgment on the basis of the Moon．（5）Know that the quadrants of the zodiac exercise great power with respect to the ascendant：the feminine quadrants signify the prisoner＇s swift release， and the opposite applies to the other quadrants．（6）The tropical signs signify swiftness，the fixed signs the opposite，the bicorporal signs are intermediate，and it is also possible that after his release he will be jailed again．（7）If $\langle$ the lord of the ascendant $\rangle$ is in one of the cardines，he will not be released from prison．It is more unfortunate if the lord of the ascendant is in the fourth place or if the lord of the twelfth place gives power to the lord of the ascendant，and even more unfortunate if the lord of the ascendant $\langle$ gives power $\rangle$ to it［to the lord of the twelfth place］ or if the lord of the ascendant gives power to a planet that is in one of the cardines．（8）It is very unfortunate if the planet that is in one of the cardines is malefic；if it is the lord of the eighth place＜the prisoner〉 will die in prison．（9）Know that it is also an unfortunate indication if the Moon gives power to the lord of the ascendant sign．（10）Know that if the planet that is in one of the cardines is moving slowly，it is even more unfortunate；but if it is not moving slowly its unfortunate influence is less．（11）You should also take into consideration that a retro－ grade planet does not cause a swift release 〈from prison〉；if the lord of the ascendant is burnt，it is certain that he will not be released；and if it ［the lord of the ascendant］is not received by the Sun he will die there． （12）If you wish to know what the person who put him in prison intends， observe the seventh place and determine its lord or ruler（if the lord of the place does not aspect［the ascendant sign］，it［the lord of the place］ aspects the ruler）．（13）Determine how it［the lord of the seventh place］ aspects the rising sign，and the lord of the ascendant，and the Moon，and

ועם בעל הצומח, ועם הלבנה, וכפי¹ המבטים² תדיץ³ (14) ודע כי דרך השבוי כמו הנאסר, א׳ין ביניהם הפרש.

2 (1) ואם ישאל השואל4 צל בהמה שירצה5 לקנות, הסתכל: אם היה כוכב טוב בבית שנים עשר, או ${ }^{6}$ היה כן עם בעל הבית והוא בוא במקום טוב${ }^{7}$ כנגד המעלה הצומחת, אז
 ואם היה כוכב טוב, לא יזיקנו, ואם רע, יזי מיקנו הרבה. (3) וככה, אם היה בעל הע הבית שנים העשר לו14 פחד ולא יפול רק אם היה בעל הבית הראשון חוזר לאחור.

3 (1) הנשים15. הסתכל אם היה בעל הצומח מביט או מתחבר16 עם בעל הבית
 טוב¹8, וככה אם19 נתנה הלבנה20 הכח לבעל הצומח21 והוא באחד היתדות. (2) ואם לא ${ }^{22}$ מצאת ככה וראית שכוכב יבדל23 מבעל השביעי24 או הראשון ויתן הכח לאחד מהם, ישלם הזיווג על ידי אמצעי. (3) ואם ראית לבית שבעל בית השביעי25 יתן הכח לבעל הצומח, הוא לאות כי האשה תאהב הבעל הל יותר מדים 27, והפך הדבר אם היה28 להפך. (4) גם הסתכל אל מקום נגה בשאלות הזכרים, כי אם היה נותן הכח לבעל הצומח, יתם29 הזווג. (5) וככה אם אם היתה במזל הצומח ובי ויש לו לו שם שלטון, ואם ראית שאין מבט בין בעל הבית השביעי ובין בעל הצוּ הצומח, ואין נגה מביט אל הלבנה"30, או הלבנה תתן ${ }^{31}$ הכח לכוכב שהוא נופל, ואף כי אם היה הכוכב מהרעים, (6) והסתכל ${ }^{3}$ (63 הבית ששם הכוכב הרע", ${ }^{33}$ משם תצאל ${ }^{34}$ המריבה והנזק עד שלא ישלם ${ }^{35}$ הזווג: אם36 בבית הראשון, בעבור השואל להשלים, ואם בבית השני40, בעבור הממון, וככה כל הבתים בדרך שיורה כל בית

[^70]pass judgment according to these aspects．（14）Know that one should proceed with a captive as for a prisoner－there is no difference between them．${ }^{2}$

2 （1）If the querent poses a question about an animal he wishes to buy， observe：if there is a benefic planet in the twelfth place，or if it is there ［in the twelfth place］with the lord of the place and it is in a fortunate position with respect to the ascendant sign，then it is auspicious to buy the animal．（2）If the lord of the twelfth place is in the seventh place， he will fall off it；if it［the lord of the twelfth place］is a benefic planet， it［the animal］will not harm him，but if it is malefic it will injure him severely．（3）Likewise，if the lord of the twelfth place is in opposition to the lord of the ascendant，the animal will throw him；〈if it is $\rangle$ in quartile， he will get a fright but will not fall off，unless the lord of the first place is retrograde．${ }^{1}$

3 （1）Women．Observe whether the lord of the ascendant aspects or conjoins the lord of the seventh or ninth place in the rising sign and is not retrograde or under the $\langle$ ray of the $\rangle$ Sun．$\langle\mathrm{If}$ so $\rangle$ ，then the match will be fortunate；${ }^{1}$ the same applies if the Moon gives power to the lord of the ascendant and it［the lord of the ascendant］is in one of the cardines．${ }^{2}$ （2）If you do not find this but you see that a planet parts from the lord of the seventh or of the first 〈place〉 and gives power to one of them， the match will be arranged by an intermediary．（3）If you see that the lord of the seventh place gives power to the lord of the ascendant，this is an indication that the woman will love the husband too much，and the opposite applies in an opposite configuration．（4）Observe the position of Venus in interrogations about men，too，because if it gives power to the lord of the ascendant the match will come to an end．（5）The same applies if it［Venus］is in the ascendant sign and it exercises lordship there，if you see that there is no aspect between the lord of the seventh place and the lord of the ascendant，if Venus does not aspect the Moon，or if the Moon gives power to a cadent planet［i．e．，a planet that is in a cadent place］， particularly if the planet is one of the malefics．（6）Observe the place where the malefic planet is，〈because〉 quarrels and damage will come from there，to such an extent that the match will not be concluded：if $\langle$ the malefic planet is $\rangle$ in the first place，this will be because of the querent， who will change his mind and not wish to conclude $\langle$ the match $\rangle$ ；if in the second place，because of money；and likewise for all the places according to what each of them indicates，as I have explained in the Book of the

ובית, כאשר הזכרתי בספר ראשית החכמה1. (7) וכאשר תסתכל² לשאלות הזכרים, ככה³ הסתכל4 בשאלות5 הנשים, ושים במקום נגה והלבנה, מאדים והשמש.

4 (1) מקום הגניבות6. הסתכל מקום בעל7 הבית השביצי והשמיני, איזה מהם יהיה חזק באיזו רביצית הוא כנגד המעלה הצומחת, כי אם היה בין הבית העשירי והמעלה הצומחת, הנה הגניבה בפאת דרום ממקום הגניבה, ואם בין הצומחת9 והיתד הרביעי, הוא בפאת מזרח, ואם בין היתד הרביעי אל השביעי, הוא בפאת צפון, ואם מהבית השביעי אל הבית העשירי, הואי10 בפאת מערב. (2) ואם רצית לדעת הצפוני או הדרומי11 אם הוא מזרחי או מערבי, וככה המזרחי או המערבי12 אם הוא ${ }^{12}$ אפ צפוני אן14 דרומי, הסתכל15 אל המזל ששם בעל הבית השביעי או השמיני, ודון16 כפי תולדתו. ואם אתה17 בקשת | בדרומי ומצאת שהכוכב18 במזל דרומי, הסתכל תולדת הכוכב 142 ועזוב הכל19. (3) וכבר הזכרתי לך כי צדק יורה על צפון, ומאדים על דרום, והשמש וכוכב חמה על מזרח, והלבנה ושבתי על מערב. (4) ויש מחלוקת גדולה בכוכב נגה, רק דורוניום20 אמר כי הוא מערבי, על כן הוא כבודו הפך כבודו21 כוכב22 חמה, גם משאלה23 אמר כי שבתי מזרחי, בעבור שיש לו שותפות במזלות המזרחיים.

5 (1) המטמון. לא מצאתי לדורוניוס24 דבר בו, ותלמי אמר25 כי לא יוכל אדם ${ }^{26}$ (26 לדעתו, והנה אכתוב לך מה שאמר27 משאלה לה אמרו"31: אם היה אחד מהכוכבים הטובים באחד היתדות, המטמון הוא אמת32, וככה המאורות, אם היו במבט טוב עם כוכבים טובים, ואם היה33 אחד מהרעים באחד היתדות, המטמון הוא שוא וכזב34, ואם היה בביתו, הוא והנה, אמר שתסתכל היתד ששם הכוכב הטוב, אם הוא ${ }^{36}$ מזרחי או מערבי או צפוני או דרומי37, ושם הוא. (4) ואחר כן, קח83 ממקום הכוכב הטוב לכל שבע מעלות וחצי39,






 23 23שאלה] כצ; פדנח משאללה. ${ }^{24}$ מלדורוניוס] כפדנחר; צ לדורוניאוס.





Beginning of Wisdom．${ }^{3}$（7）When you conduct interrogations about men， do just as you did when you conducted interrogations about women，but put 〈the positions of〉 Mars and the Sun instead of the positions of Venus and the Moon．${ }^{4}$

4 （1）The location of stolen articles．Observe where the lords of the seventh and the eighth place are $\langle$ and find out〉 in which quadrant each of them is strong with respect to the ascendant degree：if it is $\langle$ in the quadrant $\rangle$ between the tenth place and the ascendant degree，the stolen article is south of the site of the theft；if between the ascendant and the fourth place，it is east $\langle$ of it $\rangle$ ；if between the fourth place and the seventh $\langle$ place $\rangle$ ，it is north $\langle$ of it $\rangle$ ；and if from the seventh place to the tenth place， it is west $\left\langle\right.$ of it〉．${ }^{1}$（2）If 〈you have located it in $\rangle$ the northern or southern ＜quadrant〉 and you ask whether it is in the eastern or western 〈half of that quadrant $\rangle,{ }^{2}$ and likewise if $\langle y o u$ have located it in $\rangle$ the eastern or western〈quadrant and you ask〉 whether it is in the northern or southern 〈half of that quadrant $\rangle,{ }^{3}$ observe the sign where the lord of the seventh or eighth place is，and pass judgment according to its nature．If you looked in the southern 〈quadrant〉 and found that the planet is in a southern sign，rely on the planet＇s nature and ignore everything 〈else〉．（3）I have already mentioned that Jupiter signifies the north，Mars the south，the Sun and Mercury the east，and the Moon and Saturn the west．${ }^{4}$（4）There is a major disagreement regarding Venus，but Dorotheus said that it is western，so its exaltation［Pisces］is the opposite of Mercury＇s exaltation ${ }^{5}$［Virgo］；and Māshā’allāh said that Saturn is eastern，because it has partnership with the eastern signs．

5 （1）Buried treasure．I have not found that Dorotheus said anything about it，${ }^{1}$ but Ptolemy said that nobody can know this［where buried treasure is located］．Now I write for you what Māshā＇allāh and Al－Kindī from India ${ }^{2}$ said．（2）They said：if one of the benefic planets is in one of the cardines，it is true that there is a buried treasure，and the same applies if the luminaries are in a fortunate aspect with benefic planets．But if one of the malefics is in one of the cardines，the treasure is a fiction；and if it［one of the malefics］is in its house，there was indeed a treasure but it has already been taken away．${ }^{3}$（3）Now he［Māshā’allāh］said that you should observe the cardo where the benefic planet is 〈and determine〉 whether it is eastern，western，northern or southern；it［the treasure］is there［in the corresponding quadrant］．（4）Afterwards，〈starting〉 from the position of the benefic planet，assign one sign to every seven degrees

שהם¹ רביצית², מזל אחד, והחל לספור ממזל הכוכב הטוב³, והטעם המזל ${ }^{3}$ ה שהוא שם, וראה המזל שיפול שם החשבון. (5) ואחר כן, קח בעל המזל, ועשה בדרך הזה עד שתדע המקום5.

6 (1) וכנדה אמר6: הסתכל, אם היה הכוכב הטוב7 במזל עומד, הוא תחת הארץ, ואם
 בגג14 ${ }^{14}$ במקרה. (2) ואמר: אם היה הכוכב במבט עם מאדים, הוא במקום ${ }^{15}$ שידליקו שם אשׁ16 או אור הנר ${ }^{16}$ (2), ואם במבט שבתי, הוא קרוב לבית במקום20 קרוב לערש12 ${ }^{21}$, ואם במבט לבנה, הוא סמוך הוא בחצר מגולה24 לעיני השמש, ואם במבט כוכב חמה, הוא במקום ששם דבר כתובוב או מצויר. (3) ויאמר בספר אחר: עשה מהמקום26 כדמות עגולה לקו לקו המו המזלות, וראה הכוכב הטוב באי זה מקום הוא, ודעי ${ }^{27}$ אם הוא דרומי או צפוני. (4) והנה, אם הוא דרומי, הוא לפנים מקו עגולת המזלות, ואם הוא צפוני, חוץ ממנו. (5) ואמר שיסתכל כמה רוחב הכוכב, ומה ערך יש לו אל
 קרוב מהארץ32, וזה הפך שיקול הדעת הוא", ${ }^{34}$, רק53 הוא" ${ }^{36}$ אומר שככה נסה ועלה בידו.

7 (1) והשואל מה היהל 77 הדבר הטמון, דע כי שבתי יורה על העופרת, ועל התבן, ועל העצים והאבנים, ועל כל דבר קר38 וכבד39 ונבזה, וצדק ודבר יקר, ומאדים יורה
 חמה יורה"49 על כל דבר מצוייר בציורים50 ${ }^{45}$ משונים ועל כסף חי, והלבנה יורה על הכסף52. (2) ואם היה המזל העולה מאש53 או מאויר54, הוא דבר נכבד, וככה

[^71]and a half（equivalent to a quarter 〈of a sign〉），and begin counting from the＜beginning of the〉 sign of the benefic planet－meaning the sign where it is－and find the sign where the count is complete．（5）Then take the lord of that sign and proceed likewise 〈repeatedly until you know the location $\langle$ of the treasure $\rangle .{ }^{4}$

6 （1）Al－Kindī said：observe，if the benefic planet is in a fixed sign，it ［the treasure］is underground；if it is in a bicorporal sign，it is in a wall； and if it is in a tropical sign，it is in the rafters，meaning in the roof．${ }^{1}$ （2）He said：if the planet is in aspect with Mars，it［the treasure］is in a place where one makes a fire or lights a candle；if in aspect with Saturn， it is close to the privy；if in aspect with Venus，it is in a location close to the bed；if it is in aspect with the Moon，it is close to the door；if in aspect with the Sun，it is in an open yard exposed to the Sun；and if in aspect with Mercury，it is in a place where things are written or drawn．${ }^{2}$（3）In another book he［Al－Kindī］said：draw a circle in the place，as if it were the ecliptic，observe the position of the benefic planet， and find out whether it is south or north 〈of the ecliptic〉．（4）Now if it ［the benefic planet］is southern，it［the treasure］is inside the line that represents the ecliptic，and if it is northern it is outside $\langle\mathrm{it}\rangle$ ．（5）He said that one should determine the 〈ecliptic〉 latitude of the planet，and its ratio to its complete latitude，which is the one written at the end of the tables $\langle$ of ecliptic $\rangle$ latitude；then he will know the place of the treasure． （6）$\langle\mathrm{He}$ also said that $\rangle$ the farther it［the planet］is from the eccentric circle，the closer it［the treasure］is to the earth；this is counter to common sense，but he said that he tested it by experience and found it to be correct．${ }^{3}$

7 （1）$\langle$ If $\rangle$ the querent poses a question about the nature of the treasure， know that Saturn signifies lead，straw，wood，and rocks，and anything cold，heavy，and base；Jupiter signifies tin，wheat，and anything expen－ sive；Mars signifies iron，knives，coins，and anything bitter；the Sun sig－ nifies gold and precious stones；Venus signifies copper and every type of women＇s jewelry；Mercury signifies anything imagined in strange forms and quicksilver；and the Moon signifies silver．${ }^{1}$（2）If the rising sign is fiery or airy，it is a valuable object，and the same applies if the lord of the

אם יהיה שם בעל המזל הצומח, ואם בבית קלונו, הוא נבזה, וככה במזלות | המים 2142 והצפר. (3) ומראה המטמון¹ יודע² מבעל השעה: שבת שת

 ידוע ${ }^{6}$ מהכוכב המביט אל הלבנה, ודע${ }^{7}$ כי תולדת המזלות כתולדת${ }^{1}$ בעלי הבתים, כי אם היתה הלבנה בבית השמש, ויביט שבתי אליה, לא יהיה שחור לגמרי.

8 (1) כלל בכל השאלות. מאד השתבשו חכמי המזלות לדעת הזמן שיהיה הדבר,
 במזלות שהם עומדים, או בעלי שני גופים9, או מתהפכים, ודע לו כוֹ כמה מעלות יש בין בעל הצומח ובין בעל הדבר שישאל עליו. (3) ואם לא יביט הוא הוא, קח השה השליט, ואם
 חדש, או שנה, בין13 במחברת14 בין בין במבטים, וכל זה זה תעשה במעלות ישרות. (5) ואם לואם היתה השאלה15 לאדם גדול, ויש לך לדקדק אותה בי16 כהוגן, עשה המבטים כפי מרחב
 הלבנה, ותן לכל מעלה כפי התקון בחשבון הנזכר¹8. (6) ותוכל לדעת זה ממקומותי בוּי רבים: האחד 20, מתולדת121 הדבר ששאל השואל בשבילו; והשני, מהיתדות, כי העשירי ממהרת, והראשון אחריו, והשביעי אחריו, והרביעי סוף הכלי ובים. (7) ואם הכוכבים בבתים שהם אחרי היתדות, והם אמצעיים ובנופלים, מתאחרים, רק אם הים היתה השאלהי24 בדבר תנועה. (8) והסתכל המזלות²5, אם הם עומדים או מתהפכים או בעלי שני גופות"26, והסתכל
 העליונים32. (9) ואם אחד העליונים קרוב ממעמדו השני33, כאשר יתישר בהליכתו

 כצדחר; פנ ותולדת. פששי גופים] כ; פדנחרצ גופות שנים. יביט גם השליט. "14 במחברת] כפדנחצ; ר מחברת.
 כדנחרצ; פ במקומות. 20האחד] כפדנחצ; ר אחד. ${ }^{20}$ בתתולדת] כצפדנר; חתולדת.
 כל. ל2 והסתכל המזלות אם הם עומדים או מתהפכים או בעלי שני גופות] כצדחר; פנ חסר. ביוהסתכל]
 [31 3קלים] כדנחרצ; פ קלים. [32העליונים] כצדחר; פנ בעליונים. 33 השני] כפנחרצ; ד חסר.
ascendant sign is there［the ascendant sign］；but if it is in the house of its dejection，it is base，and the same applies if it is in the watery or earthy signs．${ }^{2}$（3）The color of the treasure may be known from the lord of the hour：〈if the lord of the hour is〉 Saturn 〈the treasure is〉 black；Jupiter，light green；Mars，red；the Sun，white；Venus，like a plant； Mercury，multicolor and not a single color；the Moon according to the planets it conjoins or aspects．${ }^{3}$（4）Many said that the color may be known from the planet that aspects the Moon．Know that the nature of the sign is as the nature of the lords of the signs，but if the Moon is in the house of the Sun and Saturn aspects it will not be completely black．

8 （1）A rule for all interrogations．The astrologers were very confused about finding the time when something will occur．Now I give you the correct methods．${ }^{1}$（2）Observe the nature of the object＜of the interro－ gation $\rangle$ before you find out whether the signs are fixed，bicorporal，or tropical，and find out how many degrees there are between the lord of the ascendant and the lord of the object of the interrogation．（3）If it［the lord of the ascendant］is not in any aspect $\langle$ to the lord of the object of the interrogation〉，take the ruler，and if the ruler does not aspect 〈it〉，take the Moon．（4）Assign to each degree an hour，or a day，or a week，or a month，or a year，whether 〈they are〉 in conjunction or in aspect，and do this in equal degrees．（5）If the interrogation is about a prominent per－ son，and you have to be very precise about it，calculate the aspects accord－ ing to the latitude of the country，as I have explained to you in the Book on the Use of the Tables．${ }^{2}$ Observe whether the lord of the ascendant or the Moon aspects 〈the lord of the object of the interrogation〉 and assign to each degree $\langle$ the time $\rangle$ according to the aforementioned correction of the reckoning．（6）You may know this from many factors：first，from the nature of the thing that is the object of the querent＇s question；sec－ ond，from the cardines，for the tenth 〈cardo〉［tenth place］is quick，next $\langle$ comes $\rangle$ the first $\langle$ cardo $\rangle$ ，then the seventh $\langle$ cardo ［seventh place］，and finally the fourth $\langle$ cardo ［fourth place］．（7）If the planets are in the places that follow the cardines，$\langle$ that is，$\rangle$ in the succedent or cadent $\langle$ places $\rangle$ ，they cause delay，unless the interrogation is about movement．（8）Observe the signs，whether they are fixed，tropical，or bicorporal．Observe whether the planet that receives 〈power〉 is moving rapidly or slowly，and observe the nature of the planet that receives 〈power〉：if it is one of the quick ［i．e．lower］planets，it signifies the near future，and the opposite applies to the upper planets．（9）If one of the upper planets is close to its second

יהיה הדבר. (10) והסתכל היום שיתחבר בעל הצומח עם¹ בעל הדבר ששאל² בשבילו, או ישלים33 מבטו, או יכנס במקום זה״, או יכנס בוֹ בעל הדבר ששאל עליו
 שהזכרתי. (12) גם רבים יסתכלו במספר ימות7 כל משרת, והם לעולם כמספר8 שנותיו הקטנות.

## ברוך נותן ליעף כח ולאין אונים עצמה ירבה9

[^72]station, ${ }^{3}$ the <expected $\rangle$ thing will occur when it turns direct in its motion. (10) Observe the day when the lord of the ascendant conjoins the lord of the thing that is the object of the interrogation, or 〈the day when $\rangle$ it [the lord of the ascendant] completes its aspect, or when it [the lord of the ascendant] enters this position [the ascendant], or when the lord of the object of the interrogation enters the ascendant, on condition that no malefic planet aspects it. ${ }^{4}$ (11) Assign to each sign the number that I have mentioned. ${ }^{5}$ (12) Many also take into consideration the number of days of each planet, which is always equal to the number of its least years. ${ }^{6}$

Blessed be He who gives power to the faint; and to him that has no might He increases strength (after Isa. 40:29).

## PART TEN

NOTES TO THE SECOND VERSION OF THE BOOK OF INTERROGATIONS
${ }^{[1]}$ 1: Two leading astrologers ... both of them were kings. In multiple places throughout his scientific work Ibn Ezra crowns the astrologers Ptolemy and Dorotheus kings. For King Ptolemy, see note on Me'orot §16:4. For King Dorotheus, see note on She'elot I, §2.1; TTe‘amim I, $\$ 2.18: 2$, pp. 58-59; 'Olam I, §32:1, pp. 72-73; 'Olam II, §24:1, pp. 172173. As for Ptolemy, this singular coronation has surprised some scholars, who, to absolve Ibn Ezra of responsibility for this confusion, blame the medieval copyists of his treatises for affixing the royal title to the name of the Alexandrian scientist (Liphchitz, 1982, pp. 204-210). Here, though, Ptolemy's and Dorotheus' regal titles are an integral part of a deliberate explanatory statement and cannot possibly be an interpolation, and consequently cannot be imputed to the medieval copyists.
${ }^{[2]}$ 2: Judgments, Hebrew משפטים. For this neologism, see note on Me'orot \$9:2.
${ }^{[3]}$ 2: He has three books ... interrogations are accurate. Ibn Ezra refers here to books II, III and IV, respectively, of Ptolemy's Tetrabiblos, which deal with mundane astrology (1980, II, pp. 117-219) and the doctrine of nativities (1980, III, IV, pp. 221-459).
${ }^{[4]}$ 2: Ptolemy endorses ... interrogations are accurate. Corresponds to She'elot I, $\$_{1: 2}$, where the rejection of the doctrine of interrogations is associated, not only with Ptolemy, but also with Enoch and the Ancients. Note, however, that in the Tetrabiblos Ptolemy was not concerned with the doctrine of interrogations; nor is this doctrine rejected in PseudoPtolemy's Centiloquium (which Ibn Ezra believed it to be a genuine Ptolemaic work), although a number of the aphorisms in the latter refer to various aspects of the doctrine of interrogations in a matter-of-fact way. See aphorisms 2, 13, 26, 64, 93, 97 (Centiloquium Ptolomei, 1676, pp. 315-328). What, then, was Ibn Ezra's source for Ptolemy's rejection of the doctrine of interrogations? Ibn Ezra appears here to have drawn on 'Alī ibn abī-l-Rijāl's Kitāb al-bāri' fi akhām an-nujūm (eleventh century) or some related Arabic astrological source, which reports, like She' elot I, $\$ 1: 1-7, \$ 2: 1-3$ and She'elot II, $\S 1: 1-3$, a difference of opinion about the doctrine of interrogations and elections, between Ptolemy, who rejects this doctrine, and Dorotheus, Enoch and Vettius Valens, who endorse it. The relevant passage about Ptolemy's rejection of the doctrine of
interrogations, extracted from the medieval Spanish translation of 'Alī ibn abī-l-Rijāl's work, executed by Judah ben Moshe for Alfonso X of Castile in 1254 (El libro conplido en los iudizios de las estrellas) runs as follows: "Tolomeo niega questiones e electiones ... e la su razon sobre esto es tal que, pues que todos los antigos son acordados en las nacencias e en las revoluciones de sos annos, que el que oviere en su nacencia e en la revolucion de su anno que la carrera non l'es buena o el casamiento non l'es bueno, e alguno d'ellos fiziere por election o por question, non podra seer bueno, que la election ni la question pueda redrar ninguna cosa de lo que mostro la nacenzia et la revolucion del anno. E por eso crovo que las questiones e las electiones son nada e mentiras en que non a verdat ..." = "Ptolemy rejects the 〈doctrines of〉 interrogations and elections. ... This is his reasoning: all the Ancients endorse the doctrine of nativities and the revolutions of the years; therefore, if somebody is destined by his natal chart or by the horoscope of the revolutions of the year to have an unfortunate result or an unfortunate wedding, even if he makes an election or an interrogation, his fate cannot be fortunate, because neither the election nor the interrogation can put right what has been signified by the natal chart of the revolution of the year. Therefore, he believed that interrogations and elections are naught and are lies devoid of any truth ..." (Iudizios de las estrellas, 1954, I: 5, p. 20).
${ }^{[5]}$ 3: Dorotheus said ... be truthful. Corresponds to She'elot I, §2:1-2, where an approving viewpoint of interrogations is ascribed not only to Dorotheus but also to "the scientists of India, the scientists of Persia, the scientists of Egypt, and all the astrologers who are close to us." In 'Alī ibn abī-l-Rijāl's Kitāb al-bāri' fi akhām an-nujūm, too, Ptolemy's negative standpoint is juxtaposed with Dorotheus', who hold a somewhat more favorable view about the doctrines of interrogations and elections: "E dize Dorothius que las questiones son flaca cosa, e que la verdat es en las nacencias e siguenlas a las nacencias en la verdat las electiones, ca el nombra las electiones conpençamiento de los fechos e dize que las electiones son semeiantes a las nacencias, e la su razon en esta semeiança es atal que, pues que el atorga que las nacencias son verdaderas e las revoluciones de sos annos otrossi verdaderas, semeio los conpençamientos de los fechos a las nacencias, porque la nacencia es cosa que contecio en aquella hora, e otrossi qual quiere cosa que conpiecen es cosa que contecio en aquella hora. E el iudga sobre la figura del conpençamiento de la cosa segund iudga sobre la figura de la nacencia." = "Dorotheus says
that the doctrine of interrogations is weak，that the doctrine of nativi－ ties is truthful，which is followed in truthfulness by the doctrine of elec－ tions．For he considers the elections as the beginning of activities，and he says that they are similar to births．This is the reason behind this simi－ larity：he considers that 〈horoscopes based on〉 births are as truthful as ＜those based on〉 the revolutions of its years，and therefore he considers the beginnings of activities on a equal footing with the births，because a birth is something that occurs at a specified hour，just as the begin－ ning of an activity is something that occurs at some specified hour．He pronounces judgment based on the chart of the time of the beginning of an activity just as he does on the basis of the chart at the time of birth＂ （Iudizios de las estrellas，1954，I：5，p．20）．
${ }^{[6]}$ 3：On condition ．．．sincere in his question．Such a statement cannot be traced to the fifth part of Dorotheus＇Pentabiblos，as conserved in an Arabic translation（Carmen astrologicum，1976）．Corresponds to She＇elot I，$\$ 3: 1$ ，where a similar statement is ascribed to Māshā’allāh．Note that in the following sentence（ $\$ 1: 4$ ）Māshā＇allāh is mentioned as saying something similar in his works on interrogations．
${ }^{[7]}$ 3：When the indication ．．．ascendant degree．The indication that is required to come to the astrologer＇s mind is supposed to reveal what the querent is thinking and to reassure the astrologer that the querent is sincere in his question．She＇elot I discusses this point extensively：§3：1－7， $\S 4: 1-5, \S 5: 1-2, \S 6: 1-3, \S 7: 1, \S 8: 1-4, \S 9: 1-4, \S 10: 1-3, \S 11: 1-3$ ．
${ }^{[8]}$ 4：Māshā’allāh ．．．his footsteps．One of the early Abbasid astrologers who introduced Sassanian astrology to the Arabs，Māshāallāh was a Jew from Basra．According to Ibn al－Nadim（died 995 or 998）in his Fihrist， Māshā allāh＇s name was Mīshā，i．e．，Yithro（Jethro），and he lived from the reign of al－Manṣur（754－775）to that of al－Ma＇mūn（813－833）（Fihrist， 1970，II，p．650）．In Reshit Hokhmah（1939，IX，lxvii：14－15；quoted in note on Mivharim I，$\$ 7.2: 30$ ）and Téamim I（ $\$ 2.18: 2$ ，pp．58－59）， Ibn Ezra informs that Māshāallāh was from India．This curious notice about Māshāallāh＇s Indian origins is probably related to the fact that Māshā＇allāh was well acquainted with the work of Indian scientists，such as Kanaka，who visited the courts of al－Manṣūr and Hārūn al－Rashīd． The astrological work of Kanaka is mentioned in Reshit Hokhmah I and elsewhere in Ibn Ezra＇s work．Only a few of Māshā＇allāh＇s numerous works survive in Arabic；more of them are extant in Latin，Hebrew，and Persian．

Four of his treatises on interrogations have been conserved in Latin translations. See Thorndike, 1956, pp. 54-62, Steinschneider, 1870, §379, pp. 600-661.

We may wonder why in the current passage Ibn Ezra refers in such favorable terms to Māshā'allāh's work on interrogations, although he neither quotes nor paraphrases any of his statements on interrogations. The answer seems to be that Ibn Ezra tacitly recognized that, according to his sources, Māshā’allāh's viewpoint on interrogations is identical or similar to that ascribed to Dorotheus in the previous passage ( $\$ 1: 3$ ). Indeed, Ibn Ezra explicitly ascribes such a statement to Māshāallāh in She'elot I, $\$ 3: 1$. See note there. Moreover, on the basis of She' elot I , $\S_{3: 1-3}$, we know that Ibn Ezra was acquainted with at least two of Māshä'allāh's works on interrogations. One of them, variously entitled De inventione occultorum, De inventionibus occultorum, and Libellus interpretationum, is conserved in a Hebrew text entitled the Book of Interrogations by Māshäallāh (ספר (השאלות למאשא אללה Ezra (though without any substantial basis). See Māshäallāh on Interrogations, MS OBL 160, ff. 154a-158a. A passage from the Hebrew translation of the other treatise, variously entitled De cogitatione, De interpretatione cogitationis, and De cogitationibus, is included in the same Hebrew manuscripts that contain the Book of Interrogations by Māshäa alläh, just before the beginning of the latter work (MS OBL 160, f. 154a).

## $\$ 2$

${ }^{[1]}$ 1-3: The fixed signs ... happen again. For the tripartite classification of the twelve zodiacal signs into fixed, tropical, and bicorporal signs, see note on Mivharim I, § 1.2:3. Corresponds to She' elot II, §9.2:2-3. For their role in interrogations, see Carmen astrologicum, 1976, V: 3-4, p. 263; Epitome, 1548, Lib. III, cap. i, sig. O3 ${ }^{\mathrm{v}}$.

## $\$ 3$

${ }^{[1]}$ 1: The planets ... correctness and truth. Corresponds to She'elot I, §9.1:1. Cf. Me'orot $\$ 12: 1 ;$ § 16:1.
${ }^{[2]}$ 2: The tenth cardo ... the fourth. Ibn Ezra is in the habit of designating the horoscopic places that correspond to the four cardines, that is, the
first, fourth, seventh, and tenth horoscopic places, as the first, fourth, seventh, and tenth cardo, even though the fourth place corresponds to the second cardo, the seventh place to the third cardo, and the tenth place to the fourth cardo. For examples, see below, $\$ 1.2: 2 ; \$ 1.4: 5 ; \$ 7.7: 11 ; \$ 9.2: 7$;
 גם כן היתד הראשון, גם אלה השנים מקומות יורו על מהירות והית והיתד העליון יותר,
 "הרביעי יותר מהיתר השביעי, ואף כי אם היה באחד מהמזלות העומדים. already informed you that the upper cardo is the strongest, and also the first cardo, and that these two places portend swiftness, but the upper cardo even more, and particularly if it is one of the tropical signs. The cardo that portends extreme slowness is the fourth one, even more than the seventh cardo, particularly if it is in one of the fixed signs" (\$39:2-3, pp. 180-183).
${ }^{\text {[3] }}$ 3: Latitude plate $\langle$ of the astrolabe $\rangle$, Hebrew לוח הארץ. In all three versions of Sefer Keli ha-Nehoshet (Book of the Astrolabe), as well as in the Latin version, Ibn Ezra informs us that a standard astrolabe is equipped with seven thin plates-symbolically representing the seven climates of the ecumene-on which a stereographic projection of the heavens for these specific geographical latitudes is engraved. See Nehoshet I, BNF 1061, f. 150a; Neḥoshet II, MS Mantua 10, f. 36a; Neḥoshet III, MS Pinsker 26, f. 59b; Astrolabio, Vesp. A II, f. $38^{\mathrm{vo}}$; Astrolabio, Arundel 377, f. $64^{\mathrm{vo}}$; Astrolabio, 1940, p. 10. In Hebrew these plates are referred to as לוח הארץ "plate of the country (or earth)." See Neḥoshet II, MS Mantua 10, ff. 45a, 48b; Neḥoshet III, MS Pinsker 26, ff. 62a, 65b; cf. Neḥoshet I, BNF 1061, f. 163 a.
${ }^{[4]}$ 3: If the number ... location $\langle o n$ the Earth $\rangle$. This refers to two methods for correcting the horoscopic places-the "division of the rising times" and the "planar division"-which are assigned different portions of power. See note on Mivharim I, $\$ 10.1: 5$.
${ }^{[5]}$ 5: Ptolemy said $\ldots$ as the cardo. Refers to the Tetrabiblos: "In the first place we must consider those places prorogative in which by all means the planet must be that is to receive the lordship of the prorogation; namely, the twelfth part of the zodiac surrounding the horoscope, from $5^{\circ}$ above the actual horizon up to the $25^{\circ}$ that remains" (1980, III: 10 , 272-273).
${ }^{[1]}$ 1: You should know ... like Scorpio. This is because Scorpio is Mars' house, and Mars signifies lies and falsehood. See note on She'elot I, \$3:6-7.
${ }^{[2]}$ 2: Taurus is more stable than its companions. The fixed signs are Taurus of earthy nature, Leo of fiery nature, Scorpio of watery nature and Aquarius of airy nature. Taurus, of earthy nature, is considered to be more stable because earth is the most stable of the four elements.
${ }^{[3]}$ 3: Enoch. See note on She'elot I, §1:1.
${ }^{[4]}$ 3: Enoch said ... in my opinion. This echoes what Ibn Ezra writes about Saturn in Țe‘amim II: שבתאי ... ועומד על דרך אחת בעבור שאיננו" "Saturn ... it is stable in one way because it does not run in its course [i.e. it moves slowly]" (\$5.3:10, pp. 224-225).
${ }^{[5]} 4$ : Among ... of its nature. Two of the bicorporal signs are Jupiter's hou-ses-Sagittarius and Pisces-and the other two are Mercury's housesGemini and Virgo. Jupiter is more stable than Mercury, because Mercury, of "mercurial" nature, is the most unstable of all the planets: כוכב חמה" "Mercury ... quickly changes to any nature because it is temperate, and can be either benefic or malefic" (Țéamim II, $\S 5.7: 2$, pp. 232-233).
${ }^{[1]}$ 2: Second station ... first station. The stations are those parts of a planet's orbit where it appears to stand still briefly before changing its course (from direct to retrograde or vice versa). The "first station" is where a direct planet becomes retrograde; the "second station" is where a retrograde planet becomes direct.
${ }^{[2]} 4$ : $\langle$ True $\rangle$ anomaly. See note on Mivharim $\mathrm{I}, \S 10.4: 3$.
${ }^{[3]}$ 5: The lower planets ... occidental $\langle o f$ the Sun $\rangle$. Corresponds to Mishpeṭei ha-Mazzalot, MS Schoenberg 57, f. 74: וזה הכלל: כח השלשה כוכבים מעי בו" העליונים על השמש, כחם רב כשהם מזרחיים מאשר הם מערביים. והפך זה השלשה

השפלים מהשמש，כי בהיות אחד מהם מזרחי מהשמש אז הוא הולך אליה בוֹ על כל כן ＂This is the general rule：the power of the three upper planets that are above the Sun is greater when they are oriental $\langle$ of the Sun $\rangle$ than when they are occidental． But the opposite applies to the three 〈planets〉 that are beneath the Sun， because when any of them is oriental of the Sun it［the planet］is moving closer to it［the Sun］；so their power is greater and stronger when they are occidental 〈of the Sun〉 than when they are oriental．＂See also Reshit Hokhmah，1939，VI，liv：28－lvi： 8.
${ }^{\text {［4］}}$ 6：Ray of the Sun〈＇s body $\rangle$ ．The ray of a planet＇s body is an interval ahead or behind the planet where its influence is still felt．The ray of the Sun＇s body is $15^{\circ}$ before or after it．See note on Mivharim I，§3：2．
${ }^{[5]}$ 6：Under the rays of burning，Hebrew תחת אור השרפה．To be＂under the ray of burning，＂or in the＂domain of burning＂（גבול השרפה；see Mivharim III，$\S 7.3: 4$ ；Me＇orot $\$ 23: 4$ ？），or＂under the ray of the Sun＂（Mivharim II， §6：7），or simply＂burnt＂（נשרפים；see Mivḥarim I，$\$$ 2．2：2 et passim）is one of the conditions of the planets with respect to the Sun，as explained in Reshit Hokhmah（1939，VI，liv：19－lvi：9），Mishpeṭei ha－Mazzalot（MS Schoenberg 57，ff．74，75－76），and＇Olam II（ $\$ 17: 1-17 ; 168-169$ ，see note on pp．209－210）．Thus，Saturn and Jupiter are said to be＂burnt by the Sun＂if they are between $16^{\prime}$ and $6^{\circ}$ away from the Sun；Mars，if between $16^{\prime}$ and $10^{\circ}$ ；and Venus and Mercury，if between $16^{\prime}$ and $7^{\circ}$ ．When a planet is＂burnt＂it is without power．See note on Mivharim II，$\S 6: 7$ ．
${ }^{[6]}$ 6：A benefic or a malefic planet．For a definition，see note on Mivharim II，§ 2：1．
${ }^{[1]}$ 2：For in any interrogation ．．．about war．Corresponds to She＇elot I， $\$ 3: 6-7$ ．See note there．
${ }^{[2]}$ 6：House of its dejection or detriment，Hebrew בבית קלונו או רעתו，lit． house of its dishonor and evil．A planet is said to be in its house of dejection if it is in the house opposite its exaltation．See note on Mivharim II，$\$ 7.1: 5$ ．The house of detriment designates the opposite of the planetary house or the seventh sign from the planetary house of each planet．In
the astrological encyclopedia composed in Béziers in 1148, Ibn Ezra denotes the concept of the house of detriment through the expression , lit. house of hate: Reshit Hokhmah, 1939, II, xiii: 10 et passim; TTéamim I, $\S 2.6: 3$, pp. 46-47; Moladot, MS BNF 1056, ff. 51a, 53 b; ‘Olam I, $\$ 33: 3$, pp. 74-75. But here and in Téamim II ( $\$ 2.4: 10$, pp. 192-193) Ibn Ezra employs the alternative expression בית רעה, lit. house of evil, which creates a terminological link between Te'amim II and She'elot II.

## §7

${ }^{[1]}{ }_{1}$ : As I have explained in the Book of Nativities. This refers to the section in Sefer ha-Moladot that begins: לא תדין שום דין רק על פי שי "לוי "Do not pass any judgment unless you have two valid witnesses. Now I begin to explain for you the testimonies, which of them are valid or invalid" (MS BNF 1056, f. $48 \mathrm{a}-48 \mathrm{~b}$ ).
${ }^{[2]} 2$ : If two planets ... half a testimony. Corresponds to Me' orot, $\mathbb{\$}_{20: 1-3}$.
${ }^{[3]}{ }_{3}-4$ : If $\langle$ the two lords $\rangle \ldots$ half a testimony. Corresponds to Me'orot, \$21:1-2.
${ }^{[1]}{ }_{2}$ : On condition ... exaltation of this sign. Leo, Scorpio, and Aquarius, for example, have no exaltations.
${ }^{[2]} 4$ : Decan. Each of the twelve zodiacal signs is divided into three equal divisions, called decans (Hebrew פנים, lit. faces, Arabic wujūh, Latin facies), and each decan is assigned to a planet that functions as its lord. Several methods of allocation are used. See Kitāb al-Madhal, 1996, V: 15-16, v, pp. 202-203; Kitāb al-Tafhīm, 1934, §449-451, pp. 262-263; Al-Qabị̣̄ì, 2004, I: 20, IV: 18, pp. 29, 131; Ṭéamim I, §2.8:1-8, pp. 46-49; TTe‘amim II, §2.9:4-6, pp. 202-203; Mishpetei ha-Mazzalot, MS Schoenberg 57, ff. 70-71.
${ }^{[3]} 1$ 1-4: I now give... decan has no power. Corresponds to She' elot I , $\mathbb{\$} 5: 1$. See note there.
${ }^{[4]}$ 5: Lord of the hour. See note on Mivharim $\mathrm{I}, \S_{3.1}: 7$.
${ }^{[5]}$ 5: Always find ... tested by experience. Corresponds to She' elot I, $\$ 11: 2$, where such a statement is presented as Ibn Ezra's personal opinion. Cf. the Epitome totius astrologiae: "Magistri aut Indi aspiciunt dominum horae, sicut nos dominum ascendentis" (Epitome, 1548, Lib. III, cap. ii, sig. $\mathrm{O}_{4}{ }^{\mathrm{r}}$ ).

## $\$ 9$

${ }^{[1]}$ 1: The five rulers, Hebrew חמשת השרים. This is a reference to the five places of life (מקומות החיים), or aphetic places. See She'elot II, §1.1:1 and note. Besides the current passage, the only place in Ibn Ezra's astrological writings where the five places of life are also called השרים (rulers) is in the second version of Nehoshet II, the second version of Ibn Ezra's
 מקומות החיים, והם חמשה, יקראו השרים, והם: השמש, והלבנה, ומקום מחברתם או נכחם, איזה מהם יהיה יותר קרוב אל יום המולד ולא יסתכל כי אם אל המחברת או "The direction is a great principle in the judgments of the astrologers. They are in the habit of directing the places of life, which are five, and are called 'rulers.' They are: the Sun, the Moon, the place of their conjunction or oppositionwhichever of them is closer to the day of birth and one should not observe but the conjunction or the opposition which have just elapsedthe ascendant degree, and the lot of Fortune" (Nehoshet II, MS Mantua 10, ff. 48a-48b). In TTéamim II ( $\$ 6.2: 1$, pp. 236-237), as well, the five places of life are called "rulers," but by means of another Hebrew word: המושלים.
${ }^{[2]}$ 1: Places of life. See She'elot $\mathrm{II}, \S 1.1: 1$ and note.
${ }^{[3]}$ 1: Māshā’allāh said ... places of life. Corresponds to She'elot $\mathrm{I}, \S 7: 1$, where a similar statement is attributed to Al-Kindī. See note there. In one of the Latin translations of Māshā'allāh's works on interrogations, entitled De cogitationibus, the following instructions, which include a slightly different list, are given: "Cum ergo volueris hoc scire, scito primum significatorem secundum quod narrabo tibi, cuius scientia est, ut aspicias ascendens \& dominus eius, ac Luman ac dominum eius, Solem quoque \& dominum domus eius, \& dominum horae, ac partem fortunae.

Et operare per eum qui habuerit plures authoritates, \& in meliori loco fuerit" (De cogitationibus, 1549, sig. L2 ${ }^{\text {r }}$ ).

## $\$ 10$

${ }^{[1]}$ 1: He [Māshāallāh] ... great power. Corresponds to She'elot I , § 10:13.
${ }^{[2]}$ 2: The lot of Fortune, namely, the lot of the Moon. The lots are imaginary ecliptical points influential in the horoscope, whose calculation implies three horoscopic entities. The distance of two of them (place of the planets, cusps of horoscopic places, etc.) is added to the position of the third, usually the ascendant. Reshit Hokhmah explains the connection between the lot of Fortune and the lot of the Moon, and their meaning: וגורל הלבנה: חסר מקום השמש במזלה במעלות ישרות ממקום הלבנה במזלה" והיתרון שיש ביניהם הוסיפנו צל המעלה הצומחת, ובמקום שיצא שם הגורל אותו יקרא הגורל הטוב. ככה תעשה אם הנולד ביום, ואם בלילה תחסר מקום הלבנה ממקום השמש, והיתרון תוסיפנו על המעלה הצומחת, ושם הגורל הטוב. זאת דעת הקדמונים ובטלמיוס חולק עליהם, כי הוא אומר כי לעולם נחסר מקום השמש ממקום הלבנה, בין ביום ובין בלילה. והדין עמו כי ערך המזל הצומח אל השמש, ככה ערך הגורל הטוב אל הלבנה; על כן יקרא הצומח של הלבנה. וחכם הודו שהיה שמו מאשא אללה אמר בספר הנסיונות שלו כי גורל התעלומה בלילה יותר תקיף מגורל הטוב; והנה שב לדעת בטלמיוס ולא הרגיש בדבר. וזה הגורל הטוב יורה על הגוף, ועל החיים, ועל הממון, ועל ההצלחה, ועל השם הטוב, ועל התחלת כל המעשים, ואשר יש במחשבת "The lot of the Moon: subtract the position of the Sun at its zodiacal sign in direct degrees from the position of the Moon at its sign, and add the remainder between them to the ascendant degree. The position where the lot comes out is designated as the lot of Fortune. Proceed in this fashion if the native was born by day, but if by night subtract the position of the Moon from the position of the Sun, and add the remainder to the ascendant degree, and there is the lot of Fortune. This is the opinion of the Ancients but Ptolemy disagree with them, because he states that always we should subtract the position of the Sun from the position of the Moon, either by day or by night. He is right because the ratio of the ascendant sign to the Sun is as the ratio of the lot of Fortune to the Moon; consequently it [the lot of Fortune] is named the Moon's ascendant. An Indian scientist, whose name is Māshāallāh, said in his Book of Experiments that the lot of the Absent by night is stronger than the lot of Fortune; but he is going back to Ptolemy's opinion without
being aware of this．This lot of Fortune signifies the body，life，money， success，renown，the beginning of any action，and everything within man＇s thoughts＂（1939，IX，lxvii：7－18）．See also Țéamim I，§9．1：1，92－93 and TTe‘amim II，§7．1：1－7，242－245；Tetrabiblos，1980，III：10，pp．275－ 277；Kitāb al－Tafhīm，1934，§475，pp．279－281；Al－Qabīṣī，2004，V：3， p． 141 ．
${ }^{[3]}$ 2：$\langle\mathrm{He}$ also said that we $\rangle \ldots$ lot of the Moon．Corresponds to She＇elot I，$\S 11: 1$ ．The role of the lot of Fortune in finding the object of the interrogation is also highlighted in the Hebrew translation of the Book of Interrogations by Māshäalläh：והמורה השני，לדעת דורוניאוס ובטלמיוס וגיילייו，שתדע המזל באיזה חלק הטוב，כי המחשבת יהיה כפי ענין מן הבית ההיא
 ＝ישאל על ממון，וגם בשלישי ישאל על אחיו，וכן בשאר הבתים לפי הענין שמורים．״ ＂The second significator，according to Dorotheus，Ptolemy，and Vettius Valens，is that you should determine in which sign is the lot of Fortune， because the $\langle$ querent＇s $\rangle$ thoughts are according to the signification of the corresponding place with respect to the ascendant．Thus，if the lot of Fortune is in the ascendant he will ask about himself，and if it is in the second 〈place〉 he will ask about money，and if in the third 〈place〉 he will ask about his brother，and so on regarding the other places according to their respective significations＂（Māshāallāh on Interrogations，MS OBL 160，f．154a）．A similar statement may be found in＇Alī ibn abī－l－ Rijāl＇s Kitāb al－bāri＇fi akhām an－nujūm：＂E dize Anticos e Dorothius e Vuelius que almubtez toman de pars fortune e de su sennor e del logar en que es．＂＝＂The Ancients，Dorotheus and Vettius Valens say that the al－muten［the ruling planet］should be taken from the lot of Fortune， from its lord，and from the position where it is＂（Iudizios de las estrellas， 1954，I：ix，p．27）．Cf．She＇elot I，§ 7：1；\＄2．1：8；§7．2：4，6；§ 11．1：9；She＇elot II， \＄8．2：2．
${ }^{[4]}$ 3：The power of the ninth－part from the rising sign $\ldots$ is assigned． For the ninth－part，and the implementation of this doctrine，see She＇elot I，§9：3－4 and notes．
${ }^{[5]}$ 5：As I showed you in the Book of Nativities．This vague reference probably points to the significations of each of the twelve horoscopic places in each of the sections allocated to them．As such it may be a reference to either version of Ibn Ezra＇s Book of Nativities．
${ }^{[1]}$ 1: Find the places of life ... in the Book of Nativities. This is how Ibn Ezra defines the five places of life in the first version of Sefer ha"ידצנו כי מקומות החיים הם ה', הב׳ מקום שני המאורות ביום ובלילה, :Moladot והג׳ מקום מחברת המאורות או נכחם, ההוה מהם בתחלה קודם לדת הנולד, והד' המעלה הצמחת, והה' הגורל הטוב, כאשר פירשתיו בספר טעמי ראשית החכמה." = "We know that there are five places of life, namely, the two places of the luminaries by day and by night, and the third is the place of the conjunction or opposition of the luminaries (whichever occurs first prior to the birth of the native), and the fourth is the ascending degree, and the fifth is the lot of Fortune, as I explained it in the Book of the Reasons behind the Beginning of Wisdom" (Moladot, MS BNF 1056, f. 48a). These five zodiacal positions receive this name because they are a key factor in an astrological procedure aimed at calculating the native's length of life: after the selection of one the five places of life, which is called the ruler of the nativity, an arc of the zodiac is established between the latter and one of places of death (מקומות כרת, see Moladot, MS BNF 1056, f. 50a); the length of the native's life is determined by converting the degrees of the arc, usually projected on the equator, into a corresponding number of years, months, and days. The five places of life are also designated aphetic places (Greek: aphetikoi topoi or aphetes), but Arabophone astrologers, and Ibn Ezra among them, are in the habit of using the Persian word hyl'eg for any of the five "places of life" and kadkad' ah for the ruler of the nativity:: והפרסיים יקראו לה' מקומות החיים הילאג׳ והשליט אל כדכדאה ופירוש" "The Persians designate the five places of life hyleg and the ruler the kadkad'ah, meaning male and female" (Moladot, MS BNF 1056, f. 50a). See also Al-Bīrūnī's definition of the terms: "They look whether there is a haylâj or not. This they search for in five places: (1) the lord of the time, day or night; (2) the moon by day and the sun by night; (3) the degree of the ascendant; (4) the part of the fortune; (5) the degree of conjunction or opposition of the moon preceding the birth. The haylàj is one of these. After it has been determined according to the proper rules, then the most powerful planet as regarding dignities of those in an aspect to it is the kadkhuda" (Kitāb al-Tafhïm, 1934, §522, p. 324). Ibn Ezra's enumeration of the aphetic places is close to the corresponding account in medieval Arabic and Latin introductions to astrology: AlQabīṣī, 2004, VI: 4, pp. 110-115; Kitāb al-Tafhīm, 1934, \$522, p. 324; De iudiciis astrorum, 1551, IV: 3-4, pp. 147-151; Judgements of Nativities, 1988, II-III, pp. 4-5; Epitome, 1548, II: v-vi, sig. $\mathrm{I}^{\mathrm{r}}-\mathrm{I} 4^{\mathrm{v}}$. Cf. Carmen
astrologicum, 1976, III: 2, p. 242; Tetrabiblos, 1980, III: 10, pp. 272-275; but note that Ptolemy first mentions the first, seventh, ninth, tenth, and eleventh places, and only then the Sun, Moon, horoscope, and lot of Fortune.
${ }^{[2]}$ 1: If someone asks ... Book of Nativities. Corresponds to She' elot I, $\$ 1.2: 1-2$, where a similar statement is ascribed to Māshā'allāh. See note there.
${ }^{[3]}$ 2: Unfortunate position, Hebrew מקום רע. The use of this expression (מקום רע) as a synonym of "place of death" (מקום כרת) in the context of the procedure for determining the native's measure of life is rare in Ibn Ezra's astrological work. In addition to She' elot II, it can be found only in
 לעולם המעלה הצומחת, כי היא העיקר, ובהגיעה אל מקום רע ימות הנולד, כאשר (אפרש בספר המולדות, בעזרת האל." "But if we cannot take the 〈place of〉 life from any of the four aforementioned rulers we should always direct the degree of the ascendant, because it is the essence; when it arrives in an unfortunate position the native will die, as I shall explain in the Book of Nativities, with God's help" (\$6.2:11, pp. 238-239). This creates a linguistic link between She'elot II and Te'amim II.
${ }^{[4]}$ 2: Always assign ... equal degrees. Corresponds to She' elot $\mathrm{I}, \S_{1.2: 3 \text {. }}$ See note there. This is a reference to the procedure of direction as used in nativities to determine how long the native will live.
${ }^{[5]}$ 3: Now if there is ... he will live. This is an implicit reference to the section of Sefer ha-Moladot that discusses the testimonies. These are its initial lines: העדיות. עדות כל כוכב שהוא נשרף באור השמש אם לטוב" פסולה אם לרע קיימת. עדות כל כוכב שב אחורנית לטוב ולרע פסולה. עדות
 עדות, ואם השמש שם הוא עדות גמורה. עדות המשרת באחת היתדות לטוב ולרע "Testimonies. The testimony of any planet burnt under the Sun's ray, if for good, is invalid, and if for evil, is valid. The testimony of a retrograde planet, either for good or for evil, is invalid. The testimony of any planet that is in a cadent house is invalid, unless it is in the ninth place, for if it were there this a half testimony, and if the Sun is there, this is a complete testimony. The testimony of a planet in one of the cardines, either for good or for evil, is complete" (Moladot, MS BNF 1056, f. 48a).
${ }^{[6]}$ 4: Do the same ... equal degrees. This refers to the two methods that according to Ibn Ezra are employed to calculate the aspects. This
 האחד במעלות גלגל המזלות הישרות, ששים מעלות למבט ששית לפניו גם לאחריו, ולמבט רביעית תשעים לפניו גם לאחריו, ומבט שלישית מאה ועש וכרים לפנית מניו גם לאחריו


 בתחלת קו חצי השמים וקו התהום, שהם תחלת הבית העשירי והרביעי המתוקנים "In like manner, there are two methods for 〈reckoning〉 the aspects. The first method is in equal zodiacal degrees, 60 degrees for sextile before it or behind it, 90 degrees for quartile before it or behind it, and 120 degrees for trine before it or behind it. ... So if someone wants to direct the cusp of a house to the aspect of a planet, he should begin from the place, divided into equal degrees, and assign a year to each degree; then its aspects will be in equal degrees. The other method is to correct the aspect according to the correction of the places, because if the planet is in the degree of the ascendant, its aspect of quartile coincides with the line of midheaven and the line of lower midheaven, which are the cusps of the tenth and the fourth places corrected according to the rising times of the zodiacal signs" (\$10.4:1-5, pp. 98-99).

## $\$ 1.2$

${ }^{[1]}$ 1-2: If the interrogation ... he is dead. Corresponds to She'elot I, § 1.3:1-2.
${ }^{[2]}$ 2: Fourth cardo, Heb יתד רביעי. See above, §3:2.
${ }^{[3]}$ 5: If the lord of the $\langle$ first $\rangle \ldots$ benefic planet. Corresponds to She'elot I, § 1.3:2.

## $\$ 1.3$

${ }^{[1]} 1$ The eighth place. The eighth is the place of death.
${ }^{[2]}$ 1-3: Māshā'allāh said ... but escaped. This is identical word-for-word with She'elot $\mathrm{I}, \$ 1.4: 1-2$ and $\$ 1.4: 5$.
${ }^{[1]}$ 1-2: Retrograde ... will return, Hebrew שב לאחור ... ישוב לביתו. There is a clear astrological link between the signification of a retrograde planet and the fact that it indicates that "someone who has left his home will return." But Ibn Ezra plays here with words. Note the pun of שב לאחור and שב לביתו and its astrological analogy. For retrograde Ibn Ezra usually utilizes חוזר and not שב
${ }^{[2]}$ 1-2: If the interrogation ... retrograde in one of the cardines. Corresponds to She'elot I, §3.2:1-2; §3.2:4.
${ }^{[3]}$ 5: The lord of the hour ... before he returns. Corresponds to She'elot I, §3.2:1.
${ }^{[4]}$ 6: According to the conjunction ... aspect is full. The text here is probably corrupt. A possible meaning is that the counting ends when the direction reaches a fortunate/unfortunate position, whether by conjunction or by aspect of a benefic/malefic planet.

## $\$ 1.5$

${ }^{[1]}$ 1: The Moon, too, has great power in any interrogation. This is explained in She' elot I, §4:3-4.
${ }^{[2]}$ 1: Eighth, sixth, twelfth or ninth place. These are the unfortunate places. See note on Mivharim II, \$2:3.
${ }^{[3]}$ 2: Abū 'Alī. This is a reference to Abū 'Alī Al-Khayyāt, an Arabophone astrologer who flourished in the first half of the ninth century. According to Ibn al-Nadim (died 995 or 998) in his Fihrist, he was a student of Māshā'allāh's, "one of the most excellent of the astrologers," and composed the following works: The Introduction; Questions; The Meaning; Governments (Dynasties); Nativities; Revolution of the Years of the Nativities; The Prism; The Rod of Gold; Revolution of the Years of the World; Al Nukat (Fihrist, 1970, II, p. 655). In Latin sources he is known as Albohali mainly thanks to a work on nativities, entitled De iudiciis nativitatum, and translated by Plato of Tivoli in 1136 and again in 1153 by Johannes Hispalensis. Ibn Ezra refers to Abū 'Alī's work on nativities in Sefer
ha-Moladot (Moladot, MS BNF 1056, f. 51a, 55a, 58b) and his work on interrogations in She' elot I, $\S 4.7: 1 ; \$ 7.4: 4$ and She'elot II, $\S$ 1.5:2.
${ }^{[4]}$ 2: Leo, Sagittarius, or Aquarius. This is a reference to the "signs of power." See Mivḩarim I, $\S 7: 1-3$ and notes. See also Me'orot $\S 8: 4$ and Mivharim II, §6:5.
${ }^{[5]}$ 2: He is right ... aforementioned signs. This is because Leo, Sagittarius, and Aquarius are the second, sixth, and eighth signs after Cancer. See above, $\$ 1.5$ :1.

## $\$ 2.1$

${ }^{[1]}$ 1: If $\langle$ someone〉 poses a ... given back. This is identical word-for-word with She'elot II, §2.3:1.
${ }^{[2]}$ 2: Proceed similarly ... regarding all. This passage appears to be corrupt and the translation is tentative. See the readings of the seven manuscripts.

## $\$ 2.2$

${ }^{[1]}$ 1: If someone poses ... lord of the lot. This is identical word-for-word with She'elot I, §2.4:1.
${ }^{[2]}$ 2: The Moon is in its $\langle$ smaller〉 domain ... the domain of the Sun. For the division of the zodiac into a "smaller domain," assigned to the Moon, and a "larger domain," assigned to the Sun, see note on Mivharim I, § 2.1:1.
${ }^{[3]}$ 2: $\mathrm{Sa}^{\text {cid }}$ said ... domain of the Sun. This is identical word-for-word with She'elot I, $\$ 2.4: 2$. Corresponds to Mivharim I, $\$ 2.1: 1-2$, where a similar statement is ascribed to Ptolemy, and to Mivḥarim II, §2:1, without attribution to Ptolemy. In TTe'amim I (\$2.5:1-6, pp. 44-45) , a similar statement is attributed to the "scholars who rely on experience," in the same place where Ibn Ezra explains the division of the zodiac into a "smaller domain," assigned to the Moon, and a "larger domain," assigned to the Sun. See note on Mivharim I, $\$ 2.1: 1$. Corresponds also
to the Epitome totius astrologiae, where, curiously enough, the Moon's smaller domain of the circle is interchanged with the Sun's larger domain of the circle: "De emptione causa lucri. Volens causa durandi aliquid emere, emas cum Luna fuerit in parte magna circuli, quae dicitur Solis, \& est a capite Cancri ad finem Sagittarii, \& melius si sit velox, nec sit iuncta planetae infortunae, vel eius aspectui, \& melius ea existente in coniunctione, vel aspectu fortunae planetae, vel in aspecto Solis trino vel sextili" (Epitome, 1548, Lib. IV, cap. iiii, sig. R4 ${ }^{\mathrm{r}}$ ).

## $\$ 2.3$

${ }^{[1]} 1-5$ : $\langle$ As for $\rangle$ an interrogation ... the cardines. Corresponds to She' elot I, $\$ 2.2: 2-3$, where similar statements are ascribed to Razeq.

$$
\$ 3.1
$$

${ }^{[1]}$ 1-2: In my opinion ... they will not meet. Corresponds to She'elot I, §3.1:1-2.

## $\$ 3.2$

${ }^{[1]}$ : In the ninth place I will discuss short and long journeys. See below, \$9.1:1-5.
$\$ 3.3$
${ }^{[1]}$ 1: Use this method ... or an enemy. This is almost identical word-forword with She'elot I, §1.1:5.
$\$ 4.1$
${ }^{[1]}$ 1-5: If $\langle$ the querent $\rangle$ poses ... the fourth place. Corresponds to She' elot I, $\S 1.4: 1-5$. For a definition of straight and crooked signs, see note on Mivḥarim II, §7.1:6.
$\$ 4.2$
${ }^{[1]}$ 1－2：If the interrogation ．．．landed estates．Corresponds to She＇elot I， §4．2：1－2；Mivḥarim I，§4．4：2－3；Mivharim II，§4．1：4．
${ }^{\text {［2］}}$ 2：Saturn signifies landed estates．This property does not appear in medieval introductions to astrology in such explicit fashion．But in Țéamim II，in the section devoted to Saturn＇s astrological properties，Ibn
 והוא יעצור כח הגוף，והקבר מקום שלא יזוז אדם ממנו，וככה תולדתו כי הוא כבד ＂The reason 〈Saturn indicates〉 the grave is that it indicates landed estates，since it has the spleen 〈assigned to it〉，which checks the power of the body；and the grave is a place from which a man does not move．Similarly with its nature，because its motion is sluggish＂（\＄5．3：7， pp．222－225）．In addition，Saturn is considered to be extremely cold and dry，which are the qualities of the element earth．See，i．e．，Kitāb al－Tafhīm， 1934，§396，p． 240.
${ }^{[3]}$ 3：Many said ．．．unfortunate position．Corresponds to Mivharim II， §4．1：4．
${ }^{[4]}$ 4：Lot of the estate．This lot is defined in Ibn Ezra＇s introductions to astrology and in other medieval works of the same genre as pertaining to the fourth horoscopic place and as taken by day and night from Saturn to the Moon，and cast out from the ascendant．See Mishpetei ha－Mazzalot， MS Schoenberg 57，f．83；Reshit Hokhmah，1939，IX，lxviii：28－29；Al－ Qabīṣī，2004，V：7，p．143；Kitāb al－Tafhīm，1934，§476，p．284；Kitāb al－ Madhal，1996，VIII：4，v，p．342；Abbreviation，1994，p．73．In Țe‘amim
位＝＂The lot of the estate． The Moon 〈indicates the〉 body and Saturn indicates everything pre－ existing and dust；this is the explanation for this lot＂（\＄7．2：13，pp．246－ 247）．
${ }^{[5]}$ 5：In my opinion ．．．and this is correct．Corresponds to Mivḥarim I， \＄4．4：1 and Mivharim II，\＄4．1：1．
$\$ 5.1$
${ }^{[1]}$ 3: In one of the cardines ... eleventh place. These are the fortunate horoscopic places. See note on Mivharim II, §2:3.
${ }^{[2]}$ 1-5: The fifth place ... two witnesses. Corresponds to She'elot I, § 5.2:6 and to Epitome totius astrologiae: "Si quis an sit habiturus filios nec ne, quaerit, \& si sit Iupiter in ascendente, vel dominus horae in quovis angulo, \& melius si dominus horae sit dominus quintae domus, nonae vel undecimae, aut si dominus ascendentis aspiciat dominus quintae domus, vel si dominus quintae domus est in signo ascendente, vel si Luna ipsi vim suam tribuit, cum habet vim in signo ascendente ipsa Luna, haec testimonia filios significant" (Epitome, 1548, Lib. III, cap. ix, sig. P3 ${ }^{\text {v }}$ ).

## $\$ 5.2$

${ }^{[1]}$ 1: If someone asks ... 〈that she is pregnant〉. Corresponds to She' elot I, $\S 5.1: 1-3$ and She'elot III, $\S 5.1: 1$. Corresponds to the Epitome totius astrologiae (Epitome, 1548, Lib. III, cap. ix, sig. P3 ${ }_{3}$; quoted in note on She'elot III, §5.1:1).
${ }^{[2]}$ 2: But if Saturn ... cadent place. Corresponds to She' elot I, $\S$ 5.1:3 and She'elot III, $\S_{5.1: 2-3 \text {. Corresponds to the Epitome totius astrologiae }}$ (Epitome, 1548, Lib. III, cap. ix, sig. $\mathrm{P}_{3}{ }^{\mathrm{r}}-\mathrm{P}_{3}{ }^{\mathrm{v}}$; quoted in note on She'elot III, $\$$ 5.1:2-3).

## $\$ 5.3$

${ }^{[1]}$ 2: Quadrant that is considered ... respect to the Sun. These two different types of masculine/feminine quadrants, i.e., with respect to the ascendant degree or with respect to the Sun, are explained in She'elot I, §5.3:2-3.
${ }^{[2]}$ 1-2: If $\langle$ the querent $\rangle$ asks ... $\langle$ of the masculine or feminine witnesses $\rangle$. Corresponds to She'elot I, $\S 5.3: 1-6$, where this procedure is ascribed to Al-Kindī, and to and She'elot III, $\S 5.2: 1-4$. Also corresponds to the Epitome totius astrologiae (Epitome, 1548, Lib. III, cap. ix, sig. P3 ${ }^{\text {v }}$; quoted in note on She'elot I, §5.3:1-6).
§6.1
${ }^{[1]}$ 2: In the fifth or eleventh place, but if it is in the eighth place he will die. The fifth and eleventh are fortunate places; the eighth is one of the unfortunate places and the place of death. See note on Mivharim II, $\$ 2: 3$.
${ }^{[2]}$ 1-2. If the querent $\ldots$ he will die. Corresponds to She'elot $\mathrm{I}, \S 6.1: 1-2$ and She'elot III, §6.1:1-3.
${ }^{[3]} 4$. The lord of the twelfth ... sixth place. Corresponds to She'elot I, §6.1:4 and She' elot III, §6.1:10.
${ }^{[4]}$ 5. The fixed signs ... another illness. Corresponds to She'elot $\mathrm{I}, \S 6.1: 5$; She'elot III, $\$ 6.2: 2$; Me' orot $\$ 17: 1$. Corresponds to the Epitome totius astrologiae (Epitome, 1548, Lib. III, cap. x, sig. P4 ${ }^{\mathrm{v}}$ ).
${ }^{[5]} \mathbf{6}$. If the malefic ... moving rapidly. Corresponds to the Epitome totius astrologiae: "Si planeta infortunatus est in cursu tardo ... aegrotabit infirmus diutissime. Si planeta sit infortunium, qui offendat dominum ascendentis cursu volox ... cito evadet a morbo" (Epitome, 1548, Lib. III, cap. x, sig. $\mathrm{P}_{4}{ }^{\mathrm{v}}$ ).
${ }^{[6]} 7$. If the lord $\ldots$ recede at once. Corresponds to She'elot III, $\S 6.2: 1$.
${ }^{[7]} 9$ : I have already told you the nature of the planets. See above, $\S 6: 1-6$.
${ }^{[8]} 10$ : Division of the entire zodiac into the limbs $\langle o f$ the body $\rangle$, beginning from Aries. This is a reference to the doctrine of "melothesia," which distributes the parts of the body amongst the zodiacal signs. See note on Mivharim I, § 1.8:1.
${ }^{[9]}$ 10: Pains of the planets in each sign. This is a reference to the doctrine of the pains of the planets in the zodiacal signs. By contrast with introductions to astrology, which include no more than lists of the pains of the planets in the signs (see Reshit Hokhmah, 1939, II, x: 11-16; Al-Qabīṣī, 2004, I: 37-48, pp. 37-41), in three of his introductions to astrology Ibn Ezra undertakes to elucidate the mechanism behind the distribution of the pains of the planets among the signs. This is his explanation in Ţéamim I: . טלוא זה טעמו: ישימו הבית הראשון של הכוכב כנגד מזל טלה שהוא כמו מזל טלה, על

כן יאמרו כי כאב צדק בקשת，שהוא הבית הראשון מבתיו，בראש，כמו טלה שיורה על הראש．ועל כן כאב מאדים בטלה הוא הראש，והנה יצא בחלק דאי דגים הרגלים כנגד מזל טלה．על כן，אמרו כי כאב נגה בטלה בוא הוא הרגליים，כי כי ערך מזו מל טל טלה אל ביתו הראשון，שהוא שור，כערך דגים אל כל טלה．והם אמרו，כפי הפי החלוק שהחלו לעשות מטלה，כי סרטן יורה על החזה שהוא רביעי כי לטי לטלה，והנה בי בית שית שבתאי הראשון הוא גדי，והנה מזל טלה כנגדו בית רביעי לו，על כן אמרו כי כאב שבתאי בו החזה， ＂The Egyptian scientists said that the chest is the pain of Saturn in it［Aries］，and the heart 〈is the pain〉 of Jupiter 〈in Aries〉．This is the reason for it：they put the first house of the planet facing Aries as if it were equivalent to Aries，and there－ fore say that the pain of Jupiter in Sagittarius，which is the first of its houses，is in the head，just like Aries，which indicates the head．There－ fore the pain of Mars in Aries is in the head．The feet were assigned to Pisces＇portion with respect to the sign of Aries［i．e．，the feet are the pain of Mars in Pisces］．Therefore they said that the pain of Venus in Aries is the feet，because the number of 〈signs separating〉 Aries from Venus＇first house，namely，Taurus，is equal to the number of $\langle$ signs sep－ arating $\rangle$ Pisces from Aries．They also said，in accordance with the divi－ sion that they begin from Aries，that Cancer indicates the chest because it is the fourth $\langle$ sign $\rangle$ after Aries，and 〈we know that〉 the first house of Saturn is Capricorn；and because Aries is the fourth with respect to it ［Capricorn］，they said that the pain of Saturn in it［Aries］is the chest． This is the reason for each of the pains in each of the signs＂（\＄2．3：3－7， pp．40－41）．See also TTéamim II，$\$ 4.10: 1-7$ ，pp．214－215 and Mishpetei ha－Mazzalot，MS Schoenberg 57，f．73，where，in addition to couching the same mechanism in similar terms，Ibn Ezra attributes its elucidation
 ＝לדעת זה ．．．כבר גיליתי לך סוד，העלימוהו הקדמונים ולא הזכירוהו בספריהם״ ＂The Ancients mentioned the pains of each planet in each sign．．．．I offer you a comprehensive method to understand them．．．．I have now dis－ closed to you a secret；the Ancients concealed it and did not reveal it in their books＂．

Two astrological tenets underlie Ibn Ezra＇s clarification of this doc－ trine：（a）each zodiacal sign，beginning with Aries，is assigned to a part of the human body，from head to toe（see note on Mivharim I，§1．8：1－ 3）；（b）one of the two houses of each planet，except for the luminaries， is considered to be the＂first＂house．The procedure to find the pain of a planet in some zodiacal sign consists basically of two steps：（a）The zodi－ acal sign in which the pains of the planets are being sought is considered as equivalent to Aries；in other words，this sign is assigned to the head，
the next sign is assigned to the neck, and so on. (b) The pain of some planet in this sign is then established by counting, counterclockwise, the number of signs that separate the "first" house of this planet from this zodiacal sign; if the "first" house of the planet coincides with this sign, the "first" house is considered as equivalent to Aries and the pain of this planet in this sign is the head, namely, the part of the body assigned to Aries. If, for example, the "first" house is separated by five signs from the relevant zodiacal sign, the "first" house is considered as equivalent to the fifth sign after Aries, namely, Leo, and the pain of this planet in this sign is the heart, which is the part of the body normally assigned to Leo.
$\$ 6.2$
${ }^{[1]}$ 1: If someone poses ... sixth place. Corresponds to She'elot I, §6.2:1.
${ }^{\text {[2] }}$ 1: Mercury exercises great power regarding slaves. Corresponds to Mivharim I, $\S 6.2: 4$. See note there.

## $\$ 7.1$

${ }^{[1]}$ 2-4: Now observe ... not complete. Corresponds to She'elot I, §7.3:35 and Mivḥarim III, §7.1:1-4.

## $\$ 7.2$

${ }^{[1]}$ 2: You can find out which of them is victorious $\langle$ by the method $\rangle$ I have explained in the Book of the Beginning of Wisdom. Such a discussion is not to be found in the first version of Reshit Hokhmah (Beginning of Wisdom), which strongly suggests that the current reference is to the second version of Reshit Hokhmah. A similar reference to the Book of the Beginning of Wisdom, with regard to determining which of two or more planets is victorious over the other/others, may be found in Mivharim III, $\S 7.4: 3$. See note there.
${ }^{[2]}$ 2: If the lord ... Beginning of Wisdom. Corresponds to She'elot I, $\$ 7.3: 10-18$, Me'orot $\$ 30: 1-7$, Țe‘amim I, $\$ 7.1: 4-9$, pp. 88-89 (quoted in
note on She＇elot I，§7．3：10－18），Țéamim II，§4．4：1－3，pp．210－211，and the Epitome totius astrologiae（Epitome，1548，Lib．III，cap．xii，sig．Q1 ${ }^{\text {v．}}$ ； quoted in note on She＇elot $\mathrm{I}, \S 7 \cdot 3: 10-18$ ）．
${ }^{[3]}$ 3：The victor will be the one with more power，as I have explained in
 בשנת מחברת השנים העליונים בתחלת בתי התי השלישיות אי זה מה מזל הוא העולה ומי הוא הממונה עליו．וככה תוכל לדעתו，שתחשוב מספר כל כח שיש למש למשת בוּ בו，ומי שיש לו מספר רב הוא המנצח，והוא יקרא הפקיד．בעל הבית ממיני הכח חמשה；ובעל הכבוד ארבצה；ובעל הגבול שלשה；ובעל השלישות שנים；ובעל הפנים אחד．ההוה בבית הראשון יש לו מחלקי הכח שנים עשר；ובית העשירי אחד עשר כח；ובית עשי ובתי עשר，עשרה；ובית השביעי，תשעה；וברביעי，שמונה；ובחמישי，שבים ובעה；ובתשיעי，ששׁה； ＝ובששי，חמישה；ובשני，ארבעה；ובשמיני，שלשה；ובשנים עשר，שנים；ובששי，אחד．＂ ＂Now I give you a general rule：in a year 〈when there is〉 a conjunction of the two upper planets at the beginning of the houses of the triplicities， find the sign of the ascendant and its lord．You can find it in this manner： calculate the number of 〈portions of power that 〈each〉 planet has in it ［in the sign of the ascendant］；the one that has the greatest number is victorious and is called the ruler．The lord of the house has five of the various types of 〈portions of p power；the lord of exaltation 〈has〉 four ＜portions of power〉；the lord of the term，three；the lord of the triplicity， two；the lord of the decan，one 〈portion of power〉．〈The planet〉 that is in the first place has twelve portions of power；〈the planet that is〉 in the tenth place $\langle$ has $\rangle$ eleven $\langle$ portions of power〉；in the eleventh place，ten； in the seventh place，nine；in the fourth，eight；in the fifth，seven；in the ninth，six；in the sixth，five；in the second，four；in the eighth，three；in the twelfth，two；in the sixth，one＂（ $\$ 16: 1-4$ ，pp．166－167；see notes on pp．209，299）．
${ }^{[4]}$ ：In any case $\ldots$ 〈various〉 things．Corresponds closely to She＇elot I， §7．3：8．
${ }^{[1]}$ 1－4：There is a major ．．．assigned to it．Corresponds closely to She＇elot I，$\S 7.4: 1-5$ ，which also discloses the sources of the various opinions presented in this fragment．Thus，Māshā̉allāh is the source of $\$ 7.3: 2$ ，
 of $\$ 7.3: 4$ ，Corresponds also closely to the Epitome totius astrologiae，
which also does not disclose the sources (Epitome, 1548, Lib. III, cap. xii, sig. Q2 ${ }^{\mathrm{r}}$; quoted in note on She'elot $\mathrm{I}, \S 7 \cdot 4: 1-5$ ).

## $\$ 7.4$

${ }^{[1]}$ 1-3: The astrologers ... will be defeated. Corresponds closely to Mivharim III, § 7.2:2-4, Mivḩarim I, § 7.2:1-4 and Mivḥarim II, § 7.3:1-2. The same example appears in the Epitome totius astrologiae, whose author endorses the same opinion voiced by Ibn Ezra: "Magistri Astrologiae dicunt cum est ascendens Taurus, \& est in ipsa Mars dominus septimae, eius significatio vincetur, sed secundum veritatem ambo patientur" (Epitome, 1548, Lib. III, cap. xii, sig. Q2 ${ }^{\text {r }}$ ). The "confusion" of the astrologers, presented at $\$ 7.2$ :1 , derives from the following contradiction: (a) on the one hand, Scorpio is the ascendant and Mars is in Taurus; consequently, Mars, which is the lord of the ascendant, is in the seventh place, and therefore the side that commences the war "will be defeated" ( $\$ 7.4: 1$ ); (b) on the other hand, Mars is an upper planet, and "some said that $\langle$ consequently $\rangle$ the querent will be defeated, and others said the opposite" (\$7.4:2). An analogous dilemma is presented in Mivharim I, $\$ 7.2: 1-4$ (see note there), and notably in Mivḩarim III, §7.2:2-4 (see note there), where Ibn Ezra presents the same solution as in the current place: "According to what I have verified many times by experience, harm will befall both antagonists in accordance with the power coming to Mars and Venus from the Sun." But according to Mivharim I, $\S 7.2: 4$ and a section of the third version of Sefer ha-She'elot, extant only in Latin, it turns out what Ibn Ezra presents here, in Mivḥarim II, $\$ 7.3: 1-2$, and in Mivharim III, $\$ 7.2: 2-4$ as his own solution to the problem, as well as the opinion endorsed by the author of Epitome totius astrologiae, is based on Abū Ma'shar. "Dicit Even Maasar si fuerit Scorpio asc et Mars in septima magnum malum eveniet ambobus bellatoribus" (Interrogacionum, Erfurt, f. 27a).

## § 7.5

${ }^{[1]}$ 1-3: If the querent ... than the former. Surprisingly, this section is referred to by She'elot I, $\$ 4 \cdot 3: 3$. Corresponds to Mivharim II, $\$ 10.4: 2-$ 3. Cf. Mivharim I, $\$ 10.2: 2-3$. Also corresponds to the Epitome totius astrologiae: "De urbe vel homine, utrum rebelles fiant. Aspice si dominus
ascendentis habet aspectum malum com domino domus decimae, tunc enim subditi regi insurgent ... sic est considerandus aspectus Solis, ad dominum ascendentis. Quod si Sol vel dominus decimae habet bonum aspectum cum domino ascendentis, mutua erit inter regem \& subditos amicitia" (Epitome, 1548, Lib. III, cap. xx, sig. R1 ${ }^{\mathrm{r}}$ ).
$\$ 7.6$
${ }^{[1]}$ 1: Sign of the city. For a definition, see She' elot $\mathrm{I}, \S 7.5$ :1 and note.
${ }^{[2]}$ 2: Revolution of the year. See note on Mivharim III, $\$ 7.4: 5$, s.v. "revolution of the world-year."
${ }^{[3]}$ 1-2: $\langle$ If the querent $\rangle$ poses ... aspect $\langle$ its sign $\rangle$. Corresponds to She' elot I, $\S 7 \cdot 5: 1-2$ and the Epitome totius astrologiae (Epitome, 1548, Lib. III, cap. vii, sig. P1 ${ }^{\mathrm{v}}$; quoted in note on She' elot $\mathrm{I}, \$ 7.5: 1-2$ ).
${ }^{[4]}$ 4: If malefic and benefic ... as I have explained in the Book of the Beginning of Wisdom. This vague reference may be to any of the sections devoted to each of the planets in the fourth chapter of the first version of Reshit Hokhmah (1939, IV, xlii: 22-li: 8), or to a section that mentions the relative power of the cardines (1939, III, xli: 1-2). But it may also be a reference to a now-lost section of the second version of Reshit Hokhmah.
${ }^{[5]} 3-6$ : If you do not know ... inauspicious 〈for the city〉. Corresponds to She'elot I, §7.6:1-8 and Epitome totius astrologiae, which takes the same approach as She'elot II when the sign of the city is not known: "Nesciens signum civitatis, sumas quaestionem pro urbe, quod si dominus ascendentis \& Luna se male habet, capietur. Sic etiam si signum ascendens fuerit infortunatum ex aspectu Saturni vel Martis contrario, vel quadrato, vel si alter horum sit in signo ascendente, aut in domo duodecima, \& si eius splendor sit super gradum ascendentem, capietur. Quod si fortunatus sit in ascendente vel in domo, quae fuit septima, octava, vel duodecima in eius constitutione, capietur hominibus tamen illesis \& incolomibus. Si vero dominus ascendentis est in aliquo angulorum, \& est infortunatus capietur, hominibus interemptis. Si in domo lapsa, \& est infotunatus, angustabuntur indigenae morte \& infirmitate. Quod si in domo tertia vel nona fuerit, fugient multi ex urbe" (Epitome, 1548, Lib. III, cap. vii, sig. P2 ${ }^{\text {v }}$ ).
${ }^{[1]}$ 1-11: As for stolen articles ... by partners. Corresponds to She' elot I, $\$ 7.7: 1-13$ and the Epitome totius astrologiae (Epitome, 1548, Lib. III, cap. xiii, sig. Q2 $\left.{ }^{\mathrm{v}}-\mathrm{Q} 3^{\mathrm{r}}\right)$. See note on She' elot I , $\S 7.7: 1-13$.
$\$ 7.8$
${ }^{[1]}$ 1-2: $\langle\mathrm{If}\rangle$ someone poses ... plunder him. Corresponds to She'elot I, $\$ 7.2: 1-6$. The reference in $\$ 7.8: 1$ to the lot of the Moon as identical with the lot of Fortune (see notes on She'elot I, $\S 7$ :1; She'elot II, $\S 10: 2$ ) corresponds to Mivharim I, $\S 7.7: 2$ and Mivharim II, $\S 7.5: 2$. See notes there.
§8.1
${ }^{[1]}{ }_{1-2}$ : $\langle$ If someone poses $\rangle \ldots$ benefic planet. Corresponds closely to She'elot $\mathrm{I}, \$ 7.8: 1-2$, and to the Epitome totius astrologiae (Epitome, 1548, Lib. III, cap. xv, sig. Q3 ${ }^{\mathrm{v}}$; quoted in note on She' elot I , $\S 7.8: 1-2$ ).
§8.2
${ }^{[1]}$ 1: As for a lost $\ldots$ lost article. Cf. Mivharim I, §8.1:1.
${ }^{[2]}$ 2: The lord of the lot.. you observe. See above, $\$ 10: 2$ and note, where the lot of the Moon and the lot of Fortune are made identical.

## $\$ 8.3$

${ }^{[1]}{ }_{1-3}$ : $\langle$ If the querent $\rangle \ldots$ him severely. Corresponds to She'elot $\mathrm{I}, \S 8.1$ : 1-2.
${ }^{[2]}$ 5: As is written in the Book of the Beginning of Wisdom. This vague reference may be to any of the sections devoted to each of the planets in the fourth chapter of the first version of Reshit Hokhmah (1939, IV, xlii: 22-li: 8). But it may also be a reference to a now-lost section of the second version of Reshit Hokhmah.

## §8.4

${ }^{[1]} 1$ : I will $\ldots$ at the end of the book. See below, $\$ 12.4: 1-4$.
$\$ 9.1$
${ }^{[1]}$ 1: The ninth place. $\langle$ If $\rangle$ someone ... set out. Corresponds to the Epitome totius astrologiae: "De itinere. In quaestione quaerentis de suo itinere, si dominus ascendentis est in domo nona, vel tertia, perficiet iter. Sic si dominus nonae est in ascendente, aut si dominus ascendentis habet iuncturam, vel aspectum cum domino nonae, quod si est aspectus amicitiae, iter eius pro ipsius arbitrio erit, si inimicitiae, eveniet cum contentione \& labore" (Epitome, 1548, Lib. III, cap. xvii, sig. Q4 ${ }^{\mathrm{v}}$ ).
${ }^{[2]}$ 3: Ptolemy said ... en route. This statement could have been based on the chapter of Ptolemy's Tetrabiblos that deals with "foreign travel" (1980, IV: $8,423-427$ ). Note, however, that reference is made there to the roles of Saturn and Mars along different lines than in the current passage. The same applies to the 55th aphorism of Pseudo-Ptolemy's Centiloquium (Centiloquium Ptolomei, 1676, p. 322), which also refers to Mars' role. Corresponds to She'elot I, $\$ 9.3: 2$, where a similar statement is assigned to Dorotheus. Also corresponds to Mivḥarim II, §9.2:3 and Mivharim I, \$3.2:9.
${ }^{[3]} 4$ : Feminine quadrants $\ldots$ ascendant degree. See She'elot $\mathrm{I}, \$$ 5.3:3.
${ }^{[4]}$ 4: Māshā’allāh said ... set out. Corresponds to She'elot I, §3.4:1-3, where this statement is fleshed out.
$\$ 9.2$
${ }^{[1]}$ 1-6: Since this place ... its nature. Corresponds to She'elot I, §9.1:1-4 and the Epitome totius astrologiae (Epitome, 1548, Lib. III, cap. iiii, sig. $\mathrm{P}_{1}{ }^{\mathrm{v}}$, quoted in note on She'elot $\left.\mathrm{I}, \$ 9.1: 1-4\right)$.
${ }^{[2]} 7$ : Abū Ma'shar. See note on She'elot $\mathrm{I}, \S 3: 6$.
${ }^{[3]} 7$ : When Mars ... about Scorpio. Corresponds to Mivharim I, §4.3:2. Corresponds to the Epitome totius astrologiae: "Scorpio autem in omnio mendax, sic etiam eo ascendente. Sic significat Marte existente in aliquo angulo, \& peius si in domo septima." (Epitome, 1548 , Lib. III, cap. iiii, sig. $\mathrm{P}_{1}{ }^{\mathrm{v}}$ ).
${ }^{[4]} \mathbf{9 - 1 0}$ : Always observe ... for good. Corresponds to the Epitome totius astrologiae: "Quod si Luna dat vim planetae existenti in domo decima, res erit vera \& manifesta. Si existenti in quarta domo, res erit occulta" (Epitome, 1548, Lib. III, cap. iiii, sig. P1 ${ }^{\mathrm{v}}$ ).
$\$ 9.3$
${ }^{[1]}$ 1-2: If $\langle$ the querent $\rangle \ldots$ judgment accordingly. Corresponds to She'elot $\mathrm{I}, \S 9.2: 1-4$.
§ 10.1
${ }^{[1]}$ 1-8: The tenth place ... true at all. Corresponds to She' elot $\mathrm{I}, \$ 10.1: 1-7$ and the Epitome totius astrologiae (Epitome, 1548, Lib. III, cap. xviii, sig. Q4 ${ }^{\mathrm{v}}$; quoted in note on She'elot $\mathrm{I}, \S 10.1: 1-7$ ).
${ }^{[2]} 9$ : I will discuss this later at the end of the book. See below, $\$ 12.8: 1-12$, and notes.
§ 11.1
${ }^{[1]}$ 1: If the querent ... be completed. Corresponds to the Epitome totius astrologiae: "De eventu negocii ... Sunt etiam qui aspiciunt commune ex hac domo, sed rectius ex septima, qua quaestione si dominus septimae domus, \& primae habent coniunctionem vel aspectum inter se, bonum commune proficiet et crescet, si non econtra" (Epitome, 1548, Lib. III, cap. xxii, sig. $R 1^{v}$ ).
${ }^{\text {[2] }}$ 2: A planet takes the ray of the lord of the ascendant and gives it to the lord of the seventh place. This terminology ("taking" the ray of a planet and "giving" it to another) is not anywhere else in Ibn Ezra's astrological work, except for She' elot I, §7.7:4. See note there.
${ }^{[3]}$ 2-3: Likewise, if a planet ... ignore it. Compare with the Epitome totius astrologiae: "De venditione. Aspice ut in communi societate, et si quis planeta dat vim alteri horum suspiciens ab altero, aliquid per mediatorem vendet. Sic si Luna habet vim ullam in ascendente, vide a quo planeta sit disiuncta coniunctione vel aspectu, \& cui planetae tribuat vim, quod si eandem respicitis cui vim dat \& a quo est disiuncta vendet, si non contra" (Epitome, 1548, Lib. III, cap. xxiii, sig. R1 ${ }^{\mathrm{v}}$ ).

## $\$ 11.2$

${ }^{[1]}{ }_{1-2}$ : If $\langle$ the querent $\rangle \ldots$ benefic planet. Corresponds to Epitome totius astrologiae: "Utrum mercimonium sit vendentum. Si dominus ascendentis est in aliquo angulo tarde vendetur, sic existente planeta infortuna in angulo, vel in loco carente vi" (Epitome, 1548, Lib. III, cap. xxiiii, sig. $\mathrm{R}_{2}{ }^{\mathrm{r}}$ ).

## $\oint 12.1$

${ }^{[1]}$ 1: This place signifies ... [tenth place]. This classification of the places is reflected in Reshit Hokhmah, where both the sixth and twelfth places are said to signify prison (1939, III, xlii: 2, 19).
${ }^{[2]}$ 1-14: The twelfth place ... between them. Corresponds to She'elot I, $\$ 12.1: 1-9$ and the Epitome totius astrologiae (Epitome, 1548, Lib. III, cap. xxvi, sig. R2 ${ }^{\mathrm{v}}$; quoted in note on She' elot $\left.\mathrm{I}, \S 12.1: 1-9\right)$.
$\$ 12.2$
${ }^{[1]}$ 2-3: If the lord $\ldots$ is retrograde. Corresponds to She' elot I , § 12.2:1-2; Mivḥarim I, § 12.1:1; Mivḥarim II, § 12.1:1-2.

## § 12.3

${ }^{[1]}$ 1: Observe whether the lord ... be fortunate. Corresponds to She' elot I, $\S 7.1: 4$ and the Epitome totius astrologiae (Epitome, 1548, Lib. III, cap. xi, sig. Q1 ${ }^{\mathrm{v}}$; quoted in note on She' elot $\mathrm{I}, ~ § 7.1: 4$ ).
${ }^{[2]}$ 1：The same applies... the cardines．Corresponds to She＇elot $\mathrm{I}, \S 7.1: 3$ ．
${ }^{[3]}$ 6：As I have explained in the Book of the Beginning of Wisdom．This vague reference may be to the third chapter of the first version of Reshit Hokhmah，specifically a section in which the significations of each of the twelve places are presented（1939，III，xli： $10-x l i i: 21$ ）．But it may also be a reference to a now－lost section of the second version of Reshit Hokhmah．
${ }^{[4]} 7$ ：When you conduct ．．．the Moon．Corresponds to Mivḥarim I，§7．6：1 （see note there）and $\$ 7.6: 9$ ，and to the Epitome totius astrologiae：＂Quaes－ tio esta est viti．Si autem foemina querat，ponas dominum ascendentis，\＆ ascendens pro muliere \＆septimam，\＆dominus eius pro viro \＆Solem et Martem＂（Epitome，1548，Lib．III，cap．xi，sig．Q1 ${ }^{\mathrm{v}}$ ）．

## § 12.4

${ }^{[1]}$ 1：If it is $\langle$ in the quadrant $\rangle \ldots$ west $\langle$ of it $\rangle$ ．This method of assigning the four cardinal points to the four quadrants is at variance with Reshit Hokhmah，1939，III，xl：5－20．But Ibn Ezra endorses here the position of the astrolabists，as explained in Țe‘amim I：אממר אברהם：יש מחלוקת＂ בין חכמי זאת האומנות，כי יש אומרים כי מן המעלה הצומחת עד קו התהום הוא
 השוקצת שמאלי，ומהמעלה השוקעת עד קו חצי השמים מערבי．וככה חלקוהו וֹתו בעלי ＂Abraham said：there is a disagreement among the scholars of this art．Some say that 〈the quadrant〉 between the degree of the ascendant and the line of lower midheaven is eastern， and 〈the quadrant〉 from the line of midheaven to the degree of the ascendant is southern，and $\langle$ that $\rangle$ from the line of lower midheaven to the degree of the descendant is northern，and $\langle$ that $\rangle$ from the degree of the descendant to the line of midheaven is western．This is the way in which it was divided by the experts in the astrolabe，and I tend to agree with them＂（\＄3．4：8－9，pp．62－65）．Indeed，the same position is endorsed in the third version of Ibn Ezra＇s Book of the Astrolabe．See Nehoshet III，
 הוא דרומי，והרביע שהוא בין קו מזרח ובין קו תהום הוא מזרחי，והרביע שיע שהוא בין קו התהום ובין קו מערב הוא צפוני，והרביע שהוא בין קו מערב או קו תהום שהוא ＂Know that the quadrant between the line of midheaven and the line of east is southern，and the quadrant between
the line of east and the line of lower midheaven is eastern, and the quadrant between the line of lower midheaven and the line of west is northern, and the quadrant between the line of west and the line of midheaven is western".
${ }^{[2]}{ }_{2}$ : You ask ... eastern or western 〈half of that quadrant). This means: if the stolen article is in the northern or southern quadrant and you want to track it down and know whether it is in the eastern or western half thereof.
${ }^{[3]}$ 2: And likewise whether ... northern or southern $\langle$ half of that quadrant $\rangle$. This means: if the stolen article is in the eastern or western quadrant and you want to track it down and know whether it is in the northern or southern half thereof.
${ }^{[4]}$ 3: I have already mentioned ... Saturn the west. This passage refers to no earlier section of She'elot II. Hence it must refer to some other work by Ibn Ezra, written around the same time as She'elot II, whose title he did not specify here. As this is a unicum in Ibn Ezra's astrological corpus (usually he identifies the targets of the cross-references), it is plausible that the reference is to a work to which he had already referred in She' elot II in so close proximity to the current reference that he thought it superfluous to mention the name again. To judge by the subject matter, the cardinal points of the planets, one expects to find such information in an introduction to astrology, and the most natural place is Reshit Hokhmah, which has been referred to here on four occasions (\$7.2:2, $\$ 7.6: 4, \S 8.3: 5, \$ 12.3: 16)$, the last time only a few lines above. Indeed, in the sections devoted to the astrological properties of each of the planets in the fourth chapter of Reshit Hokhmah I, we find the cardinal points assigned to them. However, the cardinal points assigned to Saturn, Mars, Venus, Mercury, and the Moon in Reshit Hokhmah I are not the same as those assigned to these planets in She' elot II. This suggests that the current passage refers to Reshit Hokhmah II, an assumption that may be extended to all four previous references in She'elot II to the Book of the Beginning of Wisdom. This hypotheses is strengthened by the fact that Mishpeteei ha-Mazzalot, another of Ibn Ezra's introductions to astrology, which has been found to be very similar to the second version of Reshit Hokhmah (Sela, 2010, pp. 43-66), also brings the cardinal points of the planets in the sections devoted to the astrological properties of each of the planets. In Mishpetei ha-Mazzalot, however, only the cardinal point of Mercury
does not coincide with the account in She'elot II, while the Moon's cardinal point is omitted. The following table details these findings.
$\left.\begin{array}{llll} & \text { She'elot II } & \begin{array}{l}\text { Reshit } \\ \text { Hokhmah I }\end{array} & \begin{array}{l}\text { Mishpetei } \\ \text { ha-Mazzalot }\end{array} \\ & \$ 12.4: 3-4 & \begin{array}{l}\text { 1939, IV, xliv: } \\ \text { 12, xlv: } 24, \\ \text { xlvii: } 7, \text { xlvii: } 2,\end{array} & \text { MS Schoenberg } \\ \text { xlix: 2, l: 7, li: } 3\end{array}\right]$.
${ }^{[5]} 4$ : There is a major ... Mercury's exaltation. Very little can be gleaned from the Arabic translation of Dorotheus' Pentateuch regarding this passage: "〈The ascent, which is the exaltation〉 of Venus in twenty-seven degrees of Pisces, and of Mercury in fifteen degrees of Virgo. The descent of each one of them is opposite to its ascent" (Carmen astrologicum, 1976, I: 2, p. 162). But according to Téamim II, the exaltations of Venus and Mercury are opposite each other [Pisces against Virgo] because the cardinal points of the winds assigned to them are opposite each other. "וכבוד נגה במזל דגים, כי בהיותו שם אז תתגבר הרוח המערבית, ובית קלונו בתולה "The exaltation of Venus is in Pisces, because when it is there the west wind becomes stronger, and its house of dejection is Virgo; the opposite applies to Mercury, because it indicates the east wind" ( $\$ 2.7: 7$, pp. 198-199).

## § 12.5

${ }^{[1]} 1$ : I have not found that Dorotheus said anything about it. By contrast, in She' elot I, \$4.4:2 we read: "Dorotheus said: if someone buries something under the earth when the Moon is under the ray of the Sun, it will never be found." See note there.
${ }^{[2]}$ 1: Māshāallāh and Al-Kindī from India. For these two, see notes on She'elot II, $\S 1: 4$ and She'elot I, $\S 7: 1$. This curious notice about Māshāal-
lāh's and Al-Kindī's Indian origins is probably related to the fact that they were well acquainted with the work of Indian scientists. In the Epitome totius astrologiae, too, Māshāallāh and Al-Kindī are presented together in the section devoted to interrogations about hidden treasure, and Māshā’allāh is designated there as "Messahala Indorum in iudiciis solertisimus" (Epitome, 1548, Lib. III, cap. viii, sig. $\mathrm{P}_{2}{ }^{\mathrm{v}}-\mathrm{P}_{3}{ }^{\mathrm{r}}$ ). Here I have preferred the reading of MS כ (see above, p. 390), not only because it is the oldest among the manuscripts consulted, but also because the statements in the current as well as in the following section ( $\$ 12.6: 1-6$ ) correspond to Al-Kindī's approach about buried treasure. But note that MSS צח provide a reading that may be understood as to Kanaka of India, who more than anyone else represents the partial dependence of Arabic science on Sanskrit sources (Pingree, 1997, pp. 51-62). Kanaka of India was well known to Ibn Ezra (Reshit Hokhmah, BNF 1056, f. 4b; Ibn alMuthannä’s Commentary, 1967, p. 302; Liber de Rationibus Tabularum, 1947, p. 92), but, as far as I know, he did not state any opinion about buried treasure.
${ }^{[3]}$ 2: They said ... been taken away. Corresponds to She'elot $\mathrm{I}, \S 4.4: 3-$ 6, where Māshā’allāh but not Al-Kindī is mentioned. Corresponds to Al-Kindī's approach, as reported in the Latin translation of Al-Kindī's The Forty Chapters: "When a question has been put concerning treasure and anything hidden-whether, that is, a place that is suspected contains it-before all else let the ascendant and the cardines be established. Any beneficent planet in the ascendant affirms that it is in the place that has been pointed out" (Burnett et al., 1997, pp. 78-79). The same information is offered in 'Alī ibn abī-l-Rijāl's Kitāb al-Bāri: "Dixo Alqindi en la cosa soterrada ... E si fallares en el ascendente o en alguno de los angulos fortuna, di que en el logar a thesoro o cosa soterrada." = "AlKindī said about a buried thing ... if you find in the ascendant or in any of the cardines benefic planets say that in this place there is a treasure or a buried thing" (Iudizios de las estrellas, 1954, I: XXXIX, pp. 4142). Corresponds to Epitome totius astrologiae: "De thesauro abscondito ... aiunt enim si in quastione inveneris unum ex planetis fortunis in quoquam angulo, census re ibi latet unde erat quaestio" (Epitome, 1548, Lib. III, cap. viii, sig. $\mathrm{P}_{2}{ }^{\mathrm{v}}$ ).
${ }^{[4]}$ 3-5: Now he [Māshā 'allāh] ... location $\langle o f$ the treasure $\rangle$. Corresponds to She'elot I, $\$ 4.5: 1, \$ 4.6: 1-3$, which offers an abridgement of Māshā̉allāh's procedure for gradually locating an hidden treasure by means of
repeatedly dividing the area into quarters. The full account may be found in Mäshäalläh on Interrogations, MS OBL 160, f. 156b, quoted in note on She'elot I, \$4.6:1-3.
§ 12.6
${ }^{[1]} 1$ : It is in the rafters, meaning in the roof, Hebrew: הוא בְמְקרֶה, והטעם בגג המקרה. This clarification may be intended to distinguish between ,מִקרָה, meaning upper chamber, attic (Judges 3:20) and meaning roof (Eccl. 10:18).
${ }^{[2]}$ 1-2: Al-Kindī said.. written or drawn. Corresponds to She'elot I, \$4.7:1-3, where similar statements are ascribed to Abū 'Alī. Corresponds to Epitome totius astrologiae (Epitome, 1548, Lib. III, cap. viii, sig. P2 ${ }^{\text {v }}$; quoted in note on She'elot $\mathrm{I}, \$ 4.7: 1-3$ ). These instructions, ascribed here to Al-Kindī, correspond neither with Al-Kindī’s epistle "Concerning the places in which it is thought that there is something buried" nor with the chapter on finding hidden treasure in Al-Kindi's comprehensive work on astrological judgments, The Forty Chapters.
${ }^{[3]}$ 3-6: In another book ... to be correct. Corresponds to She' elot I, $\$ 4.8: 1-3$. Ibn Ezra's abridged relation concurs in rough lines with the accounts for locating hidden treasure in both Al-Kindi's "Concerning the places in which it is thought that there is something buried" and the chapter on finding hidden treasure in Al-Kindī's Forty Chapters (Burnett et al., 1997, pp. 67-83). But note that Ibn Ezra shows serious reservations about Al-Kindī's approach ("this is against rational thinking"). Corresponds closely to the Epitome totius astrologiae (Epitome, 1548, Lib. III, cap. viii, sig. P2 ${ }^{\text {v }}$; quoted in note on She'elot I , $\S 4.8: 1-3$ ) and 'Alī ibn abī-l-Rijāl's Kitāb al-bāri' fi akhām an-nujūm (Iudizios de las estrellas, 1954, I: xxxix, pp. 41-42).

## § 12.7

${ }^{[1]}$ 1: $\langle$ If $\rangle$ the querent ... signifies silver. Corresponds to and expands on She'elot I, $\$ 4.10: 2$. Corresponds to the Epitome totius astrologiae: "Semper autem aspiciendus est planeta, qui est in signo ascendente, qui si est Venus, erit muliebre mercimonium, si Saturnus est grave et vile.

Si Iupiter erit grave \& carum, vel in divinos usus electum. Si Mars erit ferrum, \& verius si fuerit in signo naturae ignis. Si Sol, erit clarissmum, ut aurum vel lapis preciosis. Si Mercurius erit pictum, scriptum vel sculptum. Si Luna \& est in suo honore, significat argentum vel cristallum, vel lapidem album" (Epitome, 1548, Lib. III, cap. viii, sig. $\mathrm{P}_{3}{ }^{\text {r }}$ ).
${ }^{[2]}$ 2: If the rising sign ... earthy signs. Corresponds to She'elot I, §4.9:15. Corresponds to the Epitome totius astrologiae (Epitome, 1548, Lib. III, cap. viii, sig. $\mathrm{P}^{3}$; quoted in note on She' elot I , $\left.\S 4 \cdot 9: 1-5\right)$.
${ }^{[3]}$ 3: The color ... conjoins or aspects. Corresponds to She'elot $\mathrm{I}, \$ 4.10: 5$ and the Epitome totius astrologiae, where such a statement is ascribed to Māshā’allāh (Epitome, 1548, Lib. III, cap. viii, sig. $\mathrm{P}_{2}{ }^{\mathrm{v}}-\mathrm{P}_{3}{ }^{\mathrm{r}}$; quoted in note on She'elot I, §4.10:5).
§ 12.8
${ }^{[1]}$ 1: A rule ... correct methods. This statement, and the section that follows it, correspond to She'elot I, §7.9:1-9, as detailed in the following notes.
${ }^{[2]}$ 5: As I have explained to you in the Book on the Use of the Tables. This refers to the canons that accompanied and explained the use of the astronomical tables that Ibn Ezra compiled. Thus ספר מעשה הלוחות, Book on the Use of the Tables may be an alternative name for ספר טעמי הלוחות, Book of Reasons behind Astronomical Tables. See Sela, 2003, pp. 22-27. A book with the name ספר מעשה הלוחות is mentioned twice in the past tense in Țe'amim II ( $\$ 8.5: 6, \S 8.6: 3$, pp. 252-255) and twice in the future tense in Nehoshet II (MS Mantua 10, ff. 42b, 43a), creating an interesting chronological link between these two works and She'elot II.
${ }^{[3]} 9$ : Second station. See above, note on $\$ 5: 2$.
${ }^{[4]}$ 2-10: Observe the nature ... planet aspects it. Corresponds to She' elot I, $\$ 7.8: 2-6$ and the Epitome totius astrologiae (Epitome, 1548, Lib. III, cap. xvi, sig. Q3 ${ }^{\mathrm{v}}-\mathrm{Q} 4^{\mathrm{r}}$; quoted in note on She'elot $\left.\mathrm{I}, \$ 7.8: 2-6\right)$.
${ }^{[5]}$ 11: Assign to each sign the number that I have mentioned. This probably refers to $\$ 12.1: 6$, which mentions the tropical, mixed and bicorporal
signs and the relative speed signified by them. So here the word "number" means relative speed in bringing about the conclusion of some issue.
${ }^{[6]}$ 12: Many also take ... least years. Corresponds to She'elot I, §7.8:5-6 (see note there), where a similar statement is assigned to Abū Ma'shar.

## PART ELEVEN

THIRD VERSION OF THE BOOK OF INTERROGATIONS BY ABRAHAM IBN EZRA

 צדק או נוגה, וככה אם היה המורה מקובל במקומו², וככה אם היה הצומח נותן כות כחו לכוכב בחמישי, וככה אם היה המזל העולה מזל שתי גופות. וכי (2) ויורה שאין שם הריון
 כוכב מזיק באחד היתדות, כי אז יורה כי תפיל האשה. (3) וככה אם נתן בעל החמישי הכח לכוכב רע שאין לו מעלה בצומחת או בבית החמישי³, וככה תדין אם לא יביט המורה אל בעל הצומח ואל הבית החמישי.

2 המביט אם זכר או נקיבה בתולדותו, ואם הוא בפאת זכרות כנגד המעלה הצוּ ומשת גם כנגד הצרך אל השמש. (2) וראה המזל שהוא בו, אם זכר או נקיבה, גם כן הבית ובית

 וספור כל אלה הכחות ותדין לפי הרב במספר.

[^73]1 （1）．．．cadent from the cardines．If the question is whether a woman is pregnant，observe and state that 〈the women is pregnant〉 if the sig－ nificator gives its power to a planet that is in a cardo；so too if the lord of the hour is in a cardo and if Jupiter and Venus 〈are there〉；so too if the significator is received in its position；so too if the ascendant gives its power to a planet that is in the fifth $\langle$ place $\rangle$ ；and so too if the sign of the ascendant is a bicorporal sign．${ }^{1}$（2）But it indicates that 〈the woman〉 is not pregnant if the significator gives its power to a planet in a cadent place，and so too if the ascendant is a tropical sign and a malefic planet is in one of the cardines，for then it indicates that the woman will have a miscarriage．（3）The same occurs if the lord of the fifth 〈place〉 gives power to a malefic planet that has no dignity in the ascendant or in the fifth place；you should pass a similar judgment if the significator does not aspect the lord of the ascendant or $\left\langle\right.$ the lord of〉 the fifth place．${ }^{2}$

2 （1）If the question is whether the pregnant woman will give birth to a boy or a girl，find out whether the lord of the ascendant or the ruler that aspects 〈the ascendant〉 is male or female in its nature，and whether it is in a masculine quadrant［lit．side］with respect to the ascendant degree or with respect to the Sun．${ }^{1}$（2）Also observe whether the sign where it ［the lord of the ascendant］is located is male or female，as well as the fifth place and its lord，and the lord of the hour，and the sign where the Moon is and its position with respect to the Sun and according to its nature．（3）Know that an even－numbered hour is under the power of the masculine $\langle$ signs $\rangle$ and an odd－numbered $\langle$ hour $\rangle$ is under the power of the feminine $\langle$ signs $\rangle .{ }^{2}$（4）Count all these portions of power and pass judgment in accordance with the larger number．${ }^{3}$

1 (1) הששי. שאילה על חולה, אם ימות אם ירפא, ואם בארוכה ואם בקצר'. (2) ואלה הדברים אשר יורו: שיהיה בעל הצומח נקי ממבט כוכב רע, ושי ושיהיה במקום טוב
 בספר ראשית החכמה לך. (3) וככה אם היה בעל הצומח מביט או מתחבר עם וכי כוכב טוב שהוא באחד היתדות². (4) וככה דנו הקדמונים, ואני אברהם ניסית ביתי פעמי',
 כי הוא בית הקבר. (5) אם המורה בבית הרביעי ומוסיף אורו, ירפא מחליו כי הוא מהיר³. (6) אמרו הקדמונים: ראה כח המשרתים, אם הם למעלה עם הכוכב מכו מכוכבי בוֹ היום, והפך במשרת שהוא כוכב הלילה. (7) (7) גם שתף בדבר המורה, כים כי יש לו לו כח גד גדול בדבר הזה. (8) ואמר דורינוס שתשמנו לעולם עם בעל הצומח, המורה, ובעל בל השל השלישות
 מורים, בעל השעה, ואל תדין שימות רק אחר שיתחברו אלה השלשה או השנים, או היו חזקים מאד. (10) ותדין שימות האדם ואם היה בעל הצומחת בשישי או בשמיני או בבית י״״ב, או יזיקנו במבט או במחברת אחד מבעלי אלה השלשה בתים. (11) ובעל הבית
 או במבט נוכח אל הצומחת ואל בעליה או אל המורה, סימן רע.

2 הפקיד כשיהיה שב אחורנית. (2) והמזלות הנאמנים קשים מאד, ובעלי שתי שתי גופות יורי פורו שישוב החולה [צ״ל חולי] או יתחדש עליו חלי אחר, והמתהפכי׳ יורו על מהירות

 .malo quia festina est ipsa

1 （1）Sixth $\langle$ place $\rangle$ ．A question about a sick person－whether he will die or recover，either slowly or quickly．（2）These are the things that signify ＜that the sick person will recover＞：the lord of the ascendant has no［lit． is clean of］aspect with a malefic planet；it［the lord of the ascendant］ is in a fortunate place with respect to the ascendant；it is not burnt or enters under the ray of the Sun ${ }^{1}$ by the number of degrees that I told you in the Book of the Beginning of Wisdom．${ }^{2}$（3）The same occurs if the lord of the ascendant aspects or is in conjunction with a benefic planet that is in one of the cardines．（4）The Ancients judged in this fashion； and I，Abraham，have tested $\langle$ many $\rangle$ times $\langle$ and found $\rangle$ that if the lord of the ascendant gives power to or is in conjunction with a planet in the fourth place，the sick person will die，because this is the place of the grave． （5）If the significator is in the fourth place and its light waxes，the sick person will recover because it is moving rapidly．（6）The Ancients said： observe the power of the planets，whether they are above 〈the Earth〉 together with one of the diurnal planets，and the opposite applies to a planet that is the nocturnal planet．（7）Also include the significator in this judgment，because it has a great power in this judgment．（8）Dorotheus said that，together with the lord of the ascendant，you should always put the significator and the first lord of the triplicity ${ }^{3}$ in the ascendant， because it exercises a great power．（9）Māshā’allāh said：also include the lord of the hour together with these three significators，and do not judge that $\langle$ the sick person〉 will die except when these three，or two 〈of them〉， are in conjunction，or if they are very strong．（10）Judge that the $\langle$ sick $\rangle$ person will die if the lord of the ascendant is in the sixth，eighth，or twelfth〈place，，${ }^{4}$ or if it［the lord of the ascendant］is afflicted either in aspect or in conjunction by the lords of any of these three places．${ }^{5}$（11）If the lord of the eighth place is in the ascendant，this is an unfortunate indication， whether it is a benefic or a malefic planet．It is an unfortunate indication if a malefic 〈planet〉 is in the aspect of a quarter of the circle［quartile］or in opposition to the ascendant or to its［the ascendant＇s］lord or to the significator．

2 （1）Know that his disease will be prolonged if the significator is moving slowly，${ }^{1}$ and so too for the lord of the ascendant or the ruler when they are retrograde．（2）The fixed signs ${ }^{2}$ are very unfortunate；the bicorporal〈signs〉 signify that the disease will return or that the sick person will contract a new disease；and the tropical $\langle$ signs $\rangle$ signify that life or death

לחיים או למות. ואם היה הכוכב, המזיק אל הצומחת או אל בעליו, מהיר בהליכתו ויצא במהרה אל המזל האחר, יתרפא. (3) ואם מצאת בעל הצומח בומ בצאתו מן הבית,
 סוף צפון. (4) ויום המות² בהיות בעל הצומחת באחד היתידות, והוא בסוף מבט בעל הבית השמיני, או התחברו עמו, או בהגיעו אל מקום בעל הבית השמיני. (5) ואם היה הכוכב המורה, שהוא בעל הצומח, במקום שאין שם מבט, הסתכל אל אל מבטי המוֹ המול השיני שהוא סמוך לו ותנהגנו. (6) ואם ידעת מקום הלבנה ברגע ששכב החולה על מטוּ מטתו, אז
 בעל בית הששי. אם הוא בבית י״״ב חולה הוא כי בית י״״ב הוא בית הסהר³.

## 7 §

1 (1) השביעי. יש בו ארבעה שאילות. האחת על דבר מריבות אשה. ראה אם יתן הכח בעל הצומחת, במבט או במחברת, אל בעל השביעי הבעל ...

1 in fine meridiei י״״ב חולה הוא כי בית י״ב הוא בית הסהר] ג בשוליים.
will come quickly．${ }^{3}$ If a planet that afflicts the ascendant or its lord is moving rapidly and will soon move into another sign，〈the sick person〉 will recover．（3）If you find that the lord of the ascendant moves away from the place，$\langle$ the sick person〉 will recover if a benefic planet aspects it［the lord of the ascendant］or is in conjunction with it［the lord of the ascendant］，or when they［the lord of the ascendant and the benefic planet］are together in a degree of longitude in the extreme north or the extreme south．${ }^{4}$（4）The day of death $\langle$ comes $\rangle$ when the lord of the ascendant is in one of the cardines and is at the end of an aspect with the lord of the eighth place，or when they［the lord of the ascendant and the lord of the eighth place］conjoin in it［one of the cardines］，or when it［the lord of the ascendant］reaches the place of the lord of the eighth place．（5）If the planet that is the significator（meaning the lord of the ascendant）is in a position where there is no aspect，find out the aspects to the next sign，namely the adjacent $\langle\operatorname{sign}\rangle$ ，and direct it．（6）If you know the position of the Moon at the moment when the sick person fell ill，this is more reliable，as is written in the Book of the Luminaries regarding the critical days．${ }^{5,6}(7)$ To know if someone is ill，observe the lord of the sixth place．If it is in the twelfth place，he is ill，because the twelfth place is the place of prison．${ }^{7}$

1 （1）The seventh $\langle$ place $\rangle$ ．This includes four queries．The first is about quarrels related to women．Find out whether the lord of the ascendant gives power，either in aspect or in conjunction，to the lord of the 7 th place－〈in this case〉 the husband ${ }^{1} \ldots$

## PART TWELVE

NOTES TO THE THIRD VERSION OF THE BOOK OF INTERROGATIONS
$\$ 5.1$
${ }^{[1]}$ 1: If the question ... bicorporal sign. Corresponds to She' elot I, $\S$ 5.1:13, She'elot II, $\$ 5.2$ :1, and the Epitome totius astrologiae: "Se scire volueris de aliqua utrum sit praegnans vel non, considera si Luna dat vim planetae, qui est in angulo, vel si dominus ascendentis aut horae sit in domo quinta, vel si dominus quintae dat vim domino ascendentis, vel si Luna dat vim domino quintae domus, vel si ascendens ipsum est signum bicorpoerum. Haec testimonia significant mulierem esse praegnantem" (Epitome, 1548 , Lib. III, cap. ix, sig. $\mathrm{P}_{3}{ }^{\text {r }}$.
${ }^{[2]}{ }_{2}$-3: But it indicates ... fifth place. Corresponds to She' elot $\mathrm{I}, \S_{5.1: 3}$, She'elot II, $\$ 5.2: 2$, and the Epitome totius astrologiae: "Si vero Luna dat vim planetae qui est in domo lapsa, vel signum ascendens est domus mobilis, nec aspiciat dominum ascendentis, nec horae, nec Luna dominum domus quintae, mulier non est praegnans. Si dominus quintae domus dat vim planeta infortunio, qui est in angulo, parturiet foetum abortium" (Epitome, 1548, Lib. III, cap. ix, sig. $\mathrm{P}_{3}{ }^{\mathrm{r}}-\mathrm{P}_{3}{ }^{\mathrm{V}}$ ).

## $\$ 5.2$

${ }^{[1]}$ 1: A masculine quadrant ... the Sun. These two different types of masculine/feminine quadrants, i.e., with respect to the ascendant degree or with respect to the Sun, are explained in She'elot I, $\$ 5.3: 2-3$.
${ }^{[2]}$ 3: Know that $\ldots$. feminine $\langle$ signs $\rangle$. Corresponds to Mivḥarim I, $\S$ 5.1:1 and $\S 7.6: 12$, where this procedure is ascribed to Al-Kindī, and TTe'amim II, $\S 6.1: 1, \mathrm{pp} .234-235$, where this procedure is ascribed to Māshā’allāh.
${ }^{[3]}$ 1-4: If the question ... larger number. Corresponds to She'elot I, $\$ 5.3: 1-6$, (where this procedure is ascribed to Al-Kindī,) She'elot II, §5.2:1-2, and the Epitome totius astrologiae (Epitome, 1548, Lib. III, cap. ix, sig. $\mathrm{P}_{3}{ }^{\mathrm{v}}$; quoted in note on She'elot $\mathrm{I}, \S 5 \cdot 3: 1-6$ ).
$\$ 6.1$
${ }^{[1]}$ 1-2: A question ... ray of the Sun. Corresponds to She'elot I, §6.1:1-2 and She'elot II, §6.1:1-2.
${ }^{[2]}$ 2: By the number of degrees that I told you in the Book of the Beginning of Wisdom. For the upper planets, see Reshit Hokhmah, 1939, VI, liv: 32-lv: 5; for the lower planets see Reshit Hokhmah, 1939, VI, lv: 25-27. See note on Me'orot $\$ 14: 1-8$.
[3]8: First lord of the triplicity, Hebrew בעל השלישות הראשונה, lit. lord of the first triplicity. For the four triplicities and their lords, see note on Mivharim I, $\$ 11.2: 5$. Here and elsewhere Ibn Ezra (probably because he is literally translating from his Arabic sources) habitually designates the first, second, or third lord of any of the four triplicities, as the lord of the first, second, or third triplicities, respectively. This is how Ibn Ezra, in Țe'amim I, explains the reasons for including and excluding certain


 עמהם בעבור כי הוא יורה על רוח דרומית ומזלות העפר הם דרומיים, והוציאו כוכו כוכב "Venus was made first lord of the triplicity [lit. lord of the first triplicity] of the earthy signs by day, because the sign of Taurus belongs to Venus [i.e., Taurus is the planetary house of Venus]. They also said that the Moon is the first by night because it is the lord of the exaltation of this house and because its power is more noticeable by night than by day. They designated Mars as their partner because it indicates the southerly wind and 〈because〉 the earthy signs are southern; they excluded Mercury and Saturn because they have no power over the southerly winds" (TTe'amim I, § 2.17:2-4, pp. 56-57).
${ }^{[4]}$ 10: Sixth, eighth, or twelfth $\langle$ place $\rangle$. Refers to the unfortunate horoscopic places. See note on Mivharim II, § 2:3.
${ }^{[5]}$ 10: Judge that the $\langle$ sick $\rangle ..$ three places. Corresponds to She' elot I, $\$ 6.1: 4$, She'elot II, $\S 6.1: 4$, and the Epitome totius astrologiae: "Si dominus ascendentis habet coniunctionem cum domino sextae, octavae vel duodecimae, \& est quem aspicit infortuna, \& dominus est infortunatus ex ea, cum consumabitur aspectus, vel coniunctio, ea hora deficit aeger" (Epitome, 1548, Lib. III, cap. x, sig. P4 ${ }^{\text {v }}$ ).

## $\$ 6.2$

${ }^{[1]}$ 1: Know that ... moving slowly. Corresponds to She'elot II, $\$$ 6.1:7.
${ }^{[2]}$ 2: Fixed signs, Hebrew מזלות נאמנים, lit. enduring signs. In Ibn Ezra's several introductions to astrology, the "fixed signs" (Taurus, Leo, Scorpio, and Aquarius) are referred to as מזלות עומדים 'standing signs'. (Reshit Hokhmah, 1939, II, xi: 16-17 et passim; Țe‘amim I, \$2.13:1, pp. 52-53; Téamim II, §2.3:3, pp. 188-189. Reshit Hokhmah II, OBL 707, f. 116a). By contrast, מזלות נאמנים is employed in She'elot III, $\S 6.2: 2$ as well as in Me'orot $\S 17: 1$, Mivharim III, $\S 8.1: 4$ and in Sefer ha-Tequfah (JNUL $8^{\circ}$ 3916, f. 59a). This creates a significant terminological connection among these latter works.
${ }^{[3]}$ 2: The fixed signs ... come quickly. Corresponds to She' elot $\mathrm{I}, \S 6.1: 5$, She' elot II, $\$ 6.1: 5$, Me'orot $\$ 17: 1$, and the Epitome totius astrologiae (Epitome, 1548, Lib. III, cap. x, sig. P4 ${ }^{\text {v }}$ ).
${ }^{[4]}$ 3: When they ... extreme north or the extreme south. The Hebrew text here is difficult to read and the tentative translation is based on the Latin text. The solstices (Cancer $o^{\circ}$ or Capricorn $0^{\circ}$ ) are designated here as "extreme south or the extreme north." Similar pairs of degrees are also referred to in Mivharim I, $\S 6: 1$ (see note there), $\$ 2.1: 2$; Mivharim II, §6:15; and Me'orot $\$ 15: 1-2$ (see note there), $\$ 35: 2$.
${ }^{[5]}$ 6: Critical days. These are days in the development of a disease when it tends to reach a climax, for good or evil. From Antiquity through the Middle Ages, they were considered to be connected to and even caused by the Moon's positions and conditions with respect to its position at the onset of the disease. See above, pp. 5-6 and note on Me'orot $\$ 3: 3$.
${ }^{[6]}$ 6: If you know ... as is written in the Book of the Luminaries regarding the critical days. Refers to the main topic treated in Sefer ha-Me' orot. See Me'orot $\S 3: 1-2$ et passim. Corresponds to She'elot I, $\S 6.1: 7$. See notes there.
${ }^{[7]}$ 7: The twelfth place is the place of prison. See Mishpeṭei ha-Mazzalot, MS Schoenberg 57, f. 73; Reshit Hokhmah, 1939, III, xlii: 19.

## § 7.1

${ }^{[1]}$ 1: The seventh $\langle$ place〉 ... the husband. Corresponds to She'elot I, $\$ 7.1: 4$ and She'elot II, $\$ 12.3: 1$.

## PART THIRTEEN

BOOK OF THE LUMINARIES BY ABRAHAM IBN EZRA

> אלהים חי היה עזרה בצרות לבן צזרא אבי חכמות ושירות לשומו קץ לראשית תחלואים ואחריתם בספר המאורות1

1 (1) מפיל אני תחנתי לפני אלהי אבי כל עוד נשמתי בי, לשלוח² אורו ואמתו 118 וֹא אל לבבי3, כי מתוק אורו וטוב לעיני הנשמה לראותו, ולילה³ כיום יאיר ועננים לא יסתירוהו, ואיננו כאור5 השמש שיכה6 יומם7 ולא כירח בלילה, ולא יחס ול ול כחס כחרון8
 ומאור המאור הגדול אצל ויתן על המאור11 הקטן להיותו מושל בלילהי12, גם צבאי13 השמים וכל כוכבי אור מושלים עם המאור הקטן14. (3) לכן כח שני המאורות גדול מכח הכוכבים, בעבור היות השמש קרובה אל הארץ, כי הוא בגלגל השני על דרך האמת, והיא גדולה מאוד בעצמו. (4) ובעבור היות"17 צבא השמים18 במעלה העליונה לא תשתנה הליכתם, ולא יפרדו איש מעל אחיו כי רחבם עומד תמיד19 על דרך אחד ${ }^{19}$ צים . (5) ואין כן משפט
 מהארץ24 ופעם25 יקרבו, ופעם26 הולכים דרך ישר ופעםם27 שבים אחורנית, ופעם בקו

1* אלהים חי היה ... ואחריתם בספר המאורות] ע; י אלהים חי היה צזרה בצרות לבן עזרא אבי חכמות ושירות לשומו קץ לראשית תחלואים ואחריתם בספר המאורות י׳’ אורי יהי בעזרי; ת נורא תהלות עשה גדלות עזר לכלות מולדי מזלות בשנת הקצ״ו ירח עם אשר מט אל ונשמט מבית מסלות ובעז מרחם שבת מנחם אחל לתחם ספר מאורות; ל ולשם רוב התהלות המאמץ ידים נחלשות ולו נתכנו עלילות אלהים חי היה עזרה בצרות לבן עזרא אבי חכמות ישרות לשומו קץ לראשית תחלואים ואחריתם בספר המאורות. ספר המאורות; מ יי אורי יהי בעזרי אלהים חי היה עזרה בצרות לבן עזרא אבי חכמות ושירות לשומו קץ לראשית תחלואים ואחריתם בספר המאורות. ספר המאורות; 0 בשם עושה גדולות ולו נתכנו אלילות אחל ספר המאורות אלהים חי היה עזרה בצרות לבן עזרא אבי חכמות ושירות לשומו קץ לראשית תחלואים ואחריתם בספר המאורות; א אלהים חי היה עזרה בצרות לבן עזרא אבי חכמות ושירות לשומו קץ לראשית תחלואים ואחריתם בספר המאורות. ספר המאורות. ²לשלוח] עימסא; לת לשלח. ${ }^{3}$ ללבבי] עתימס; א לבי; ל לבו. ${ }^{4}$ לראותו ולילה] עתלמסא; י ש. עתימ; אס שיכהה; ל שיככה. 7יומם] עיתמסא; ל > ולילה. ${ }^{\text {² }}$ " ל וזהו. $\left.10{ }^{10}\right]$ עתימסא; ל > ממנו. 11 11גדול לממשלת היום ... ויתן על המאור] עתימסא; ל חסר. 12 להיותו מושל בלילה] ציתמ; א להיותו מושל הלילה; 0 לממשלת הלילה. חסר. ${ }^{14}$ להיותו מושל בלילה ... עם המאור הקטן] עתימסא; ל חסר.
 עיתלמא; ס חסר. [22 22 לגל] עתימסא; ל חסר. ציתלמס; א ופעמים. 6ופעם] ציתלמס; א ופעמים. [ופעם] ציתלמס; אופעמים.

The living God, be a help in trouble to Ibn Ezra, master of sciences and poems, to put an end, by means of the Book of the Luminaries, to the onset of diseases and their consequences

1 (1) I present my supplication to (Jer. 38:26 et passim) the God of my father (Gen. 31:42), as long as my breath is in me (Job 27:3), that He sends forth His light and His truth (after Ps. 43:3) to my heart; for His light is sweet, and a pleasant thing for the eyes of the soul to behold (after Ecc. 11:7); it [His light] illuminates both night and day (after Ps. 139:12) and the clouds do not hide it [i.e., His light]; it is not like the Sun's light that smites by day, nor like the Moon <that smites $\rangle$ by night (after Ps. 121:6), and does not wane the way its [the Moon's] light wanes. (2) God emanated this great light from Himself ${ }^{1}$ and gave it to the greater luminary to rule over the day (Gen. 1:16), and He took from the light of the greater luminary and gave it to the lesser luminary so that it might rule by night (after Gen. 1:16); and the host of heaven ${ }^{2}$ and all the luminous stars ${ }^{3}$ (Ps. 148:3) rule with the lesser luminary ${ }^{4}$ (after Gen. 1:16). (3) Therefore the power of the two luminaries is greater than the power of the stars, because the Sun is close to the Earth and, in the correct arrangement, in the second orb, ${ }^{5}$ and it is very large, but the Moon is even closer to the Earth and its light is the Sun's own light. ${ }^{6}$ (4) Because the host of heaven is in the highest level their motions are immutable, and they do not move away from one other, because their latitude is always the same. (5) This does not apply to the luminous stars, namely, the planets, for their motion changes with respect to the zodiac: sometimes they move away from the Earth and sometimes they move closer $\langle$ to it $\rangle$, sometimes their motion is direct and sometimes retrograde, sometimes in the ecliptic, sometimes northern,

המזלות ופעם בשמאל ופעם בימין, ופעם1 יתחברו אלה עם אלה ופעם² יפרדו. (6) וכל זה היה בעבור היותם במדרגה התיכונה. (7) והלבנה לבדה במדרגה השפלה כנגד התיכונה, כי יש ללבנה תנועות רבות, וישתנה ארכה ורחבה, גם יקרנה מקרה שלא יקרה למשרתים, שיוסיף אורה ויחסר, ופעם יהי | נעדר גם תקדר בצל הארץ. (8) 2118 ואיננו כן קדרות השמש, כי היא בעצמה לא נקדרה, רק הלבנה הסתירתהו³ ממראה הצין. (9) ואשר תחת הלבנה ישתנו ולא יצמדו רגע אחד על מתכונת אחת בעצמם, ואף כי במחשבותיהם ומעשיהם וענייניהם, בעבור השתנות תנועות המשרתים. (10) והנה הם4 במעלה השפלה5 שאין שפלה ממנה6. (11) ובעבור שהלבנה דומה באורה לילוד, שיגדל כחו־ואחר כן יחסר, על כן היא8 לאות על כל דבר ותחלת כל מחשבה ומעשה

ומולד.
2 (1) והנה מעשה9${ }^{9}$ השמש כמעשה כל, כי הוא המוליד קיץ וחורף וקור וחום ויום ולילה ${ }^{10}$ (2) ובהיותה בבית גבהותה, שהוא מזל טלה, והטעם במזלו1 שתחל בו להיותה קרובה מהישוב, אז יציצו כל העצים, וישמחו כל החיים, וירפאו כל החולים. (3) ובהיותה בתחלת דרום, שהוא מזל מאזנים, יבלו העלים212, וידאגו כל החיים, וירבו כל התחלואים. (4) ועוד דבר מנוסה וידוע¹3, כי רובי החולים יקל חוליים מחצי הלילה צד חצי היום, בעבור היות ${ }^{14}$ השמש בחצי הגלגל העולה, והפך זה בהיותה ביורד. (5) (5) גם שומרי הרוחות יכירו, כאשר נסו, בשוב השמש אל מקום ידוע כנגד גלגל המזלות.

3 (1) גם ללבנה מעשים רבים נראים, מהם בימים ובנחלים ובצמחים שלחם15 רב, כמו הקשואים, והקרות, ומוח כל עצמות החיים, וכל זרע שיזרע ואור ${ }^{16}$ הלבנה חסר 17 לאא18 יגדל כמשפט. (2) גם הדיינים יורו19 כפי מלאכתם ${ }^{19}$ (20, ובעלי המזלות נסו דברים רבים21 ככתוב בספריהם. (3) וחכמי הרפואות הגדולים בים בקשו לדעת סבת היות ${ }^{22}$ (23 גבול התחלואים ביום השביעי, ויום ${ }^{24}$ ארבעה עשר ${ }^{24}$, ויום עשרים או אחד ועשרים, ${ }^{26}$,

[1פעם] ציתלמס; א ופעמים. 2ופעם] עיתלמס; א ופעמים.
 א הימנה. 10ולילה] עתימסא; ל > וגו'. פ עתימסא; ל חסר. ${ }^{14}$ "היות] עלימסא; ת חסר. עישלחם] עסליא; שלהם מת. שלהם] עתימס; ל לחה והטעם שהליחות שלהם הנו. 16ואור] ציתלמסא; ע מוסיף מעל לשורה: וכאשר אור. ${ }^{16}$ שחר] ציתלמס; א חסר. [בברים רבים] עלימא; ס דברים; ת חסר.
 ועשרים] עסא; לי וביום עשרים או כ״א; ת ויום אחד ועשרים; מ אחד ועשרים. יתל שבע ועשרים; א כ״ון. ציתלסא; מ > זה. ;מדרך] ציתלסא; מ ממסך.
and sometimes southern，sometimes they conjoin and sometimes they move apart．（6）All of this is because they are in the intermediate level． （7）Only the Moon is in the lower level，below the intermediate 〈level〉； the Moon has many motions，its latitude and longitude change，and it has a variability that the planets do not：its light waxes and wanes，sometimes it disappears and sometimes it is eclipsed by the Earth＇s shadow．（8）The Sun＇s eclipse is different，because the Sun itself is not darkened；rather the Moon conceals it from sight．${ }^{7}$（9）And what is under the Moon changes and does not remain in the same condition for a moment，and so too their thoughts，their deeds，and their endeavors，〈and this is〉 because of the variation in the motions of the planets．（10）For they are in the lowest level，than which nothing is lower．${ }^{8}$（11）Because the Moon＇s light is similar to a newborn，who grows stronger and then weaker，it［the Moon］signifies everything and the beginning of any thought，act，and birth．

2 （1）Now the Sun＇s action is like the action of everything，for it generates summer and winter，cold and heat，day and night（Gen．8：22）．（2）When it［the Sun］is in the house of its exaltation，${ }^{1}$ which is Aries，meaning the sign where it begins to be closer to the ecumene，then all the trees begin to bud，all creatures rejoice，and all the sick recover．${ }^{2}$（3）When it［the Sun］is at the beginning of the south，which is Libra，the leaves wither，all creatures are troubled，and all diseases increase．${ }^{3}$（4）It is a matter of experience and well known，too，that the diseases of most sick persons are alleviated from midnight to noon，because the Sun is 〈then〉 in the ascending semicircle，and the opposite occurs when it is in the descending 〈semicircle〉．${ }^{4}$（5）Also those who＂watch the winds＂${ }^{5}$（Eccl． 11：4）recognize，as they verified by experience，when the Sun returns to a certain position in the zodiac．

3 （1）The Moon，too，has many visible effects，on the seas and the streams，on plants with a lot of moisture，such as melons，pumpkins， and the marrow of living creatures；${ }^{1}$ and any seed sown when the Moon is waning will not grow properly．（2）Those knowledgeable about the judgments $\langle\text { of astrology }\rangle^{2}$ acknowledged $\langle$ this $\rangle$ in accordance with their art，and the astrologers tested many things by experience，as it is written in their books．${ }^{3}$（3）The great physicians investigated why the crises ${ }^{4}$ of diseases take place on the seventh，fourteenth，twentieth or twenty－first， and twenty－seventh or twenty－eighth day $\langle$ after the onset of the disease $\rangle$ ． （4）The only explanation they could find involved the Moon，as long as

אם1 יעמוד | החולי עד חדש ימים ויסור, רק אם לא יסור יביטו² אל השמש שהיא³ ${ }^{3}$ א למעלה על הלבנה, כאשר אפרש. (5) ואל תשים לבך לדברי4 המהבילים האומרים בעבור הזוגות, כי הנה יום ארבעה עשר5 הוא זוג, גם כן עשרים', גם כן יש' בי ביום הרביעי גבול. (6) ושורש הגבול בהיות הלבנה על מבט רביצית8 צם מקומה בתחלת החולי, ויום ארבעה עשר9 על מבט נכח, ויום עשרים או היום הבא אחריו על המבטוי הרביצית השגי, ויום כ״ז או כ״ח ישוב אל מקומו. (7) והיה היום הרביעי כדמות יום גבול, בעבור שהוא חצי המבט11, כדרך מפתחות הלבנה, וככה ביום אחד עשר12 ושבעה עשר13 וארבעה ועשרים14.

4 (1) ודע כי מהלך הלבנה ישתנה בעבור היות מוצק גלגלה15 רחוק ממוצק הארץ, גם"16 בעבור תנועת הגלגל הקטן. (2) והנה, יש יום שהלבנה"17 הולכת חמש עשרה18 מעלות, ויש יום שהיא הולכת בו19 פחות משתים עשרה²0 מעלות, והנה אם היתה הלבנה מהירה בהליכתה תגיע21 אל המרובע אחר ששת ימים מתחלת החולי ושעות מעטות. (3) והאמת לחשוב מעת ששכב מהיום הבא, יום אחד (5). (4) והנה יהיה בין26 בקר יום ראשון אל בקר יום ראשון אחר27 שבעה ימים שלמים. (5) ואם היתה הלבנה28 ממתנת לא תגיע29 למרובע עד שבעה ימים 30 שלמים ${ }^{31}{ }^{31}$ מחרוב מחצי יום32; והנה יהיה בחשבון כל האדם33 יום תשיצי34, אז תגיע הלבנה אל מרובעה"; ואם היתה הלבנה במהלך39 האמצעי, תגיע אל המרובע קודם שבעה ימים שלמים בקרוב מחמש שצות. והנה יתכן להיות40 הנכח" ${ }^{41}$ יום י״דד22, רק אם היתה מהירה
 בעבור המהלך האמצעי, הנה יתכן48 להיות הגבול יום עשרים אוי ${ }^{49}$ אחד ועשרים, וככה51 טעם כ״ץ או כ״ח, כי הלבנה תשלים גלגלה בשבעה ועשרים52 יום ושמנה שצות במהלך האמצעי. (8) ופעמים יהיה גבול53 ביום החמישי54, בהיות הלבנה על מבט

[^74]the disease lasts for up to one month and passes；but if it does not pass they look at the Sun，${ }^{5}$ which is above the Moon，as I shall explain．${ }^{6}$（5）Pay no attention to the statements of the praters who say that it is a matter of even numbers，inasmuch as the fourteenth day is even－numbered，and so is the twentieth day，and there may also be a crisis on the fourth day．${ }^{7}$ （6）But the root of the crisis takes place when the Moon is in quartile to its place at the onset of the disease，and $\langle\mathrm{on}\rangle$ the fourteenth day when〈the Moon is〉 in opposition 〈to its place at the onset of the disease〉，and $\langle o n\rangle$ the twentieth day or the following day 〈when the Moon is〉 in the second quartile，and $\langle$ on $\rangle$ the twenty－seventh or twenty－eighth day when the Moon returns to its position 〈at the onset of the disease〉．（7）The fourth day resembles a crisis day because it is a demi－aspect，like the keys of the Moon，${ }^{8}$ and the same applies to the eleventh，seventeenth， and twenty－fourth $\langle$ days $\rangle .{ }^{9}$

4 （1）Know that the Moon＇s motion varies because the center ${ }^{1}$ of its circle is offset from the center of the Earth，and also because of its motion on its epicycle．（2）Therefore，one day the Moon moves $15^{\circ}$ ，but another day it moves less than $12^{\circ}$ ，so that if it is moving rapidly it reaches quadrature in six days and a few hours after the onset of the disease．（3）The correct approach is to count one $\langle$ whole $\rangle$ day from the time that the patient lay down on his sickbed until the same time on the next day．（4）Thus from Sunday morning to the next Sunday morning there are seven whole days〈and not eight days＞．${ }^{2}$（5）If the Moon is moving slowly，it will not reach quadrature until almost seven and a half days；as people usually count， it is thus the ninth day when the Moon reaches its quadrature；this is why many have said that the ninth day is the day of crisis．（6）But if the Moon is moving according to its mean motion，it will reach quadrature around five hours before seven full days．Opposition can be on the 14th day；if it［the Moon］is moving very rapidly it［opposition］can take place the 13th 〈day after the onset of the disease〉，but this occurs only in rare cases．（7）At mean motion，the crisis can take place the 20th or 21st day， and so too on the 27 th or 28 th $\langle$ day $\rangle$ ，because the Moon，at mean motion， completes its cycle in 27 days and 8 hours．${ }^{3}$（8）Sometimes the crisis takes place the fifth day，when the Moon is in sextile with the position where

ששית אל¹ מקומה הראשון שהיה² בתחלת החולי, ויום אחד עשר³ תהיה הלבנה4 פעמים על מבט שלישית אם הלבנה ממתנת בהליכתה, גם יהיה ביום התשיעי אם היתה ממהרת. (9) ואני אראה לך דרך שתוכל להבין אם יהיה גבול לחולה בימים הנזכרים אם לא5.

5 (1) שאל6 שאואל: הנה אין גבול לבעל הקדחת7 השלישיה והרביעיה. ${ }^{7}$ (2) תשובה: כי הלבנה לא תסיר תולדת החולי, רק תוסיף או תגרע כפי הכח¹0.

6 (1) ואם11 אמר עוד: אם הגבולים תלויים 6 במהלך הלבנה וכפי מבטי13 הכוכבים המשרתים וכוכבי הגלגל העליון אליו, הנה שנים יחלו רגע אחדו"14 ואין גבול זה כגבול זה? (2) התשובה: דע כי כח העושה ישתנה בעבור השתנות כח המקבל, כי הנה15 השמש תלבין הבגד ותחשיך פני כובסו. (3) והנה, אם החולה האחד16 יהיה נער שתולדתו חמה ולחה17 והשני יהיה בחור או זקן, צל כן ישתנה¹8 הגבול. (4) ועוד שהימים יוסיפו, כי19 אם היה זמן קיץ יותר יזיק20 לנער ממה שיזיק ${ }^{21}$ לזקן. (5) ועוד, אם היתה הלבנה בתחלת החולי עם מאדים, שתולדתו על פי דרך קבול כחו חמה ויבשה, וחולי החולה האחד מחום, אז22 יחזק²3 חליו, ואם מקור לא יזיקנו ככהה.

7 (1) ואם השיב25 לאמור626, הנה27 שני החולים28 ${ }^{28}$ תהיינה שוות וחליים מחום, יש להשיב כי ישתנו בעבור ממסך גופם, כי זה יהיה29 בתולדתו חם וזה קר. (2) ואם ענה עוד שתולדת שניהם אחת היא, זה"30 לא יתכן כלל שלא יהיה תולדת האחד בתוספת או במגרעת. (3) וידוע כי תשעה ממסכים הם על|דרך הכלו3, רק בפרטים לאיתכן היות 120\$ שני אנשים שוים בתולדתם ומאכלם ומעשיהם ומחשבותיהם. (4) ואילו היינו אומרים שתולדתם שוה, לא יתכן סבת חולי זה32 כסבת ${ }^{33}$ חולי זה43, כי יתקבצו דברים משונים יום אחר יום.

[^75]it was at the onset of the disease，or on the 11th day when the Moon is sometimes in trine，if it is moving slowly；but this may also be on the ninth day if it is moving rapidly．（9）I shall show you a way to determine whether the patient will have a crisis on the aforementioned days，or not．${ }^{4}$

5 （1）Someone may ask：why does a person who suffers a tertian or quartan fever not experience a crisis？${ }^{1}$（2）Answer：because the Moon does not abolish the disease＇s nature，${ }^{2}$ but only augments or diminishes $\langle$ the disease $\rangle$ according to $\langle$ its $\rangle$ power．${ }^{3}$

6 （1）If he asks further：if the crises depend on the Moon＇s motion and on its aspects with the planets and the stars of the upper orb，${ }^{1}$ how can two patients fall ill at the same time but not experience the same crisis？（2） Answer：Know that the power of the active 〈agent〉 varies according to the variation in the power of the receiver，for the Sun whitens the garment but blackens the face of the person who launders it．${ }^{2}$（3）Now if one patient is a youth with a hot and moist nature and the other is in the prime of life or elderly，the crisis will be different．（4）The seasons，too，may add〈an effect〉，because summer is more detrimental to a youth than to an old person．（5）In addition，if at the onset of the illness the Moon is with Mars，whose nature is hot and dry in keeping with the way in which its power is received，and the illness of one of the patients is caused by fever， this will aggravate his illness，but if 〈the illness is caused〉 by cold，〈this configuration）will not harm him so much．

7 （1）If he retorts $\langle$ with the case of〉 two patients who suffer the same dis－ ease，which is caused by heat，we should respond that 〈the two patients〉 differ on account of their bodily complexion，inasmuch as one may have a hot nature and the other a cold 〈nature〉．${ }^{1}$（2）If he replies that the two have the same nature，〈we should respond that〉 it is utterly impossible that the nature of one of them does not $\langle$ differ from the nature of the other〉 by an increase or decrease $\langle$ of heat or cold $\rangle$ ．（3）It is known that there are nine general complexions，${ }^{2}$ but when it comes to details it is impossible for two persons to have the same nature，nutrition，behavior， and thoughts．（4）Even if we suppose that their natures are the same，the cause of one disease cannot be the same as the cause of another disease， because strange things happen together day after day．

8 (1) ועוד ידוע¹ בחכמת המזלות כי כל חולי שיקרה לאדם והלבנה במקום שבתי² ${ }^{2}$ (1) מאדים או כוכב חמה, אם היה בממסך רע במולד³ החולה³ כי יקשה עליו החולי. (2) וכמשפט המקומות5 ${ }^{5}$ ככה משפט המבטים בראשונה, והפך הדבר אם היתה הלבנה במקום צדק או נגה. (3) גם יתכן שיזיק צדק או נגה אם היו לבעל המולד בעלי בתים
 על האחד6, והשני אין כח לה במולדו7 בעבור היותה תחת השמש, או הו המזל העולה הוא

 ועוד כי יתכן שיהיהי ${ }^{10}$ הלבנה במולד האחד ${ }^{11}$ במבט רע עם שבתי12, ובמולד השני13 איננה¹4 כן, והנה יזיק שבתי15 לאחד16 מה שלא יזיק לשני.

9 (1) ואם טען טוען: אם דבבריך די אמת הנה לא תדע הגבולים באמת אם לא ידעת המולד דרך כלל, כמו שכוכב נגה יורה על הנשים וכוכב חמה על החכמה, והשי והשי דרך דרך פרט, כמו בעל הבית השביעי יורה על הנשים ובעל התשיעי על הל החכמה. (4) והפרט לא
 במקום טוב, יבא לו נזק מפאת הנשים, א׳״צ׳״פ שיבא לו מעט טוב פעם אחת על |

 הלא ירפאו הרופאים על דרך כלל, כי הראוי באמת שידע הרופא דפק האדם שחלה בהיותו בריא בגופו ומימיו ורובי ענייניו.

[^76]8 （1）It is also known in astrology that whatever disease a man comes down with when the Moon is in the position of Saturn，Mars，or Mer－ cury，${ }^{1}$ his disease will be aggravated if it［Saturn，Mars，or Mercury］was in an unfortunate complexion ${ }^{2}$ in the patient＇s natal horoscope．（2）The aforementioned rule about the positions 〈of Saturn，Mars or Mercury〉 also applies to the aspects 〈of the Moon with Saturn，Mars or Mercury〉 at the onset 〈of the disease〉，but the opposite applies if the Moon is in the position of Jupiter or Venus．（3）Jupiter or Venus，too，may be baleful if they［Jupiter or Venus］are the lords of unfortunate places in the native＇s natal horoscope，such as the sixth，eighth，and twelfth places．${ }^{3}$（4）It is also possible that the Moon rules over 〈the natal horoscope of one of them， but is powerless in the natal horoscope of the other，because it［the Moon］ is under $\left\langle\right.$ the ray of〉 the Sun，${ }^{4}$ or because the rising sign is Leo，Sagittar－ ius or Aquarius，${ }^{5}$ or 〈because〉 the Moon is with Saturn and the latter is the ruler of the nativity ${ }^{6}$ of one of the patients，so that it［Saturn］does not cause him the same harm as 〈it does〉 to the other．（5）These cases are boundless．（6）It is also possible that the Moon is in an unfortunate aspect with Saturn in the natal horoscope of one $\langle$ of the patients〉，but not in the natal horoscope of the other，so that Saturn harms one but not the other．

9 （1）Should someone argue：if what you have said is true，then you can－ not truly know the crises unless you know the time of birth．（2）Answer： know that there are two methods for judgments ${ }^{1}$ in astrology．（3）The first is a general method，as when Venus signifies women and Mercury wisdom，and the second is a method that applies to the individual，as when the lord of the seventh place 〈of the natal horoscope〉 signifies 〈the native＇s〉 women and the lord of the ninth 〈place〉 signifies 〈the native＇s〉 wisdom．${ }^{2}$（4）But the $\langle m e t h o d$ that applies to the $\rangle$ individual does not cancel out the general 〈method〉．${ }^{3}$（5）For if we find Venus in an unfortu－ nate position then，even though the lord of the seventh place $\langle$ of the natal horoscope〉 is in a fortunate position，he［the native］will be harmed on account of women，even though he may once enjoy some slight bene－ fit from women．${ }^{4}$（6）The same applies to the doctrine of elections．${ }^{5}$（7） Now the Moon，according to the general method，signifies the onset of any disease．（8）But the truth is that if we know the patient＇s nativity，〈so that we can〉 know the individuals［meaning：so that we can apply the individual method］，then 〈the prognosis will be〉 more correct．${ }^{6}$（9） Indeed，physicians heal using the general method，since a physician really ought to know the patient＇s pulse，urine，and general behavior when he was healthy？${ }^{7}$

10 (1) שער1. אם² הלבנה, בהיותה על מרובע מקומה בתחלת החולי או לנכח³, בביתה או בבית כבודה, הוא חצי סימן טוב, א״צ׳״פ שלא תתחבר עם אליה. (2) וככה דרך השמש אם יאריך החולי5, והפך הדבר אם היו בבית שפלותם6 או הבתים שהם נכח ביתם7.

11 (1) שער. אם היתה הלבנה בתחלת החולי בלא מבט כוכב ויום הגבול כן, לא
 חליו. (2) ואם הלבנה בתחלהו10 בלא מבט וביום הגבול יביט אליה כוכב טוב או רע, יתחדש על החולה דבר טוב או רע כפי תולדת הכוכב שלא עלה על לב. (3) ואם היתה בתחלת החולי על מבט כוכב, או מחברת עמו, ויום הגבול איננו כן, יקרה11 לחולה מקרה שלא יהיה לו גבול ביום הנודע12. (4) ואם 13 בתחלה"14 ובהיותה על מבט15 מקומה יהיה מבט כוכב, אז תדין דין אמת טוב או רע כפי המבט, כאשר אפרשם12 17.16.

12 (1) שער 18 . ${ }^{18}$ אם הלבנה תהיה באחת היתדות המזל19 הצומח בתחלת החולי, אז יורה על אמת בין טוב ובין רע, ואם בסמוכים אל היתד שאינם קשורים עם המזל הצומח אות רע, ואם באחרים אות טוב, ואם ${ }^{20}$ בנופלים אין עדות הלבנה קיימת ${ }^{21}$ לבדה, רק ${ }^{22}$ עם23 בעל המזל הצומח.
 החולי או הנוכח, הואי23 סימן רע כפי הקדרות. (2) וככה דרך השמש בקדרותה28, אם יאריך החולי.

[^77]10 （1）Chapter．${ }^{1}$ If the Moon，when it is in quadrature or opposition to the position where it was at the onset of the disease，is in its house or in the house of its exaltation，${ }^{2}$ this is half of an auspicious sign，even though it［the Moon］does not conjoin a planet or is not aspected by one．（2）The same applies to the Sun if the disease persists，but the opposite applies if they［the Moon or the Sun］are in the house of their dejection ${ }^{3}$ or in the signs opposite their houses［their detriment］．${ }^{4}$

11 （1）Chapter．If the Moon is not aspected by a planet，neither at the onset of the disease nor on the day of crisis，it［the Moon］provides no indication about good or bad fortune and we should seek knowledge about the patient from the ascendant sign at the time of the＜onset of the〉 disease．（2）If at the onset 〈of the disease〉 the Moon does not aspect 〈any planet〉 but it is aspected by a benefic or a malefic planet on the day of the crisis，the patient will experience something unexpected， either fortunate or unfortunate，according to the planet＇s nature．${ }^{1}$（3） If the Moon is in some aspect with a planet or in conjunction with it at the onset of the disease but not on the 〈expected $\rangle$ day of crisis， the patient will not experience a crisis on the expected day．（4）If at the onset 〈of the disease〉 and when it［the Moon］aspects the position〈where it was at the onset of the disease〉 〈the Moon〉 is aspected by some planet，then you can pronounce a true judgment，for better or for worse，according to the $\left\langle\right.$ nature of the〉 aspect，${ }^{2,3}$ as I will explain［i．e．，the aspects］．${ }^{4}$

12 （1）Chapter．If the Moon is in one of the cardines of the ascendant sign at the onset of the disease，it gives a true indication either for better or for worse：if it is in the succedent 〈places〉 to the cardo that are not connected to the ascendant sign，〈it indicates〉misfortune，and if 〈it is $\rangle$ in the other 〈succedent places $\rangle$ ，〈it indicates〉 good fortune，and if〈it is〉 in the cadent 〈places〉 the testimony of the Moon is not valid alone， but only with the lord of the ascendant sign．${ }^{1}$

13 （1）Chapter．If the Moon is eclipsed in the Earth＇s shadow when it is in quadrature with the position where it was at the onset of the disease or in opposition 〈to this position〉，this is an inauspicious sign in proportion to〈the degree of〉 the eclipse．${ }^{1}$（2）The same applies to the Sun in its eclipse， if the disease persists．

14 (1) שער. אם² הלבנה בתחלת החולי3 צם מבט כוכב שהוא תחת אור השמש, לא תדין רק כאילו4 אין שם מבט, וככה בימי הגבול. (2) רק אם היה שבתי5 או צדק מזרחיים, והטעם עולים6 קודם7 השמש ויש ביניהם שש מעלות או יותר, יש להם חצי עדות. (3) ואם בין מאדים ובין השמש פחות מעשר מעלות והוא מזרחי, והטעם שיעלה קודם עלות השמש, הנה עדותו פסולה, ויותר מזה עד ט״ו מעלות חצי עדות. (4) ומאדים ושבתי̊ וצדק אחרי ט״ו עדותם קיימת אם הם מזרחיים. (5) ואם אלה השלשה הם מערביים, והטעם שישקעו אחר שקיעת9${ }^{9}$ השמש, וביניהם ובינו10 ט״ו מעלות, צדותם ${ }^{11}$ פסולה. (6) ונגה וכוכב חמה, הסתכל: אם היו מזרחיים והם פחותים מט״ו מעלות, עדותם פסולה12. (7) ואם נגה מערבי ובינה"13 ובין השמש עשר מעלות, הנה חצי עדות, ואם היה רחבהע"12 שמאלי הנה עדות קיימת. (8) ואם היה כוכב חמה מערבי ובינן15 ובין השמש י״ב16 מעלות עדותו אמצעית, ואם רחבו שמאלי עדותו קיימת.

15 (1) שער 17. יש לך להסתכל בהגיע18 הלבנה למעלה19 ${ }^{19}$ דומה במרחק למעלת ${ }^{19}$ (20
 כמו עשר מעלות מדגים עם כ׳24 מטלה ${ }^{24}$, וראש בתולה עם22 סוף טלה, ושש מגדי עם כ"ד מתאומים, או מעלה שהיא דומה 3 בהתחהלף ${ }^{27}$ היום והלילה, כמו כ'39 מקשת עם , 30 מסרטן. (3) והנה אם היתה הלבנה"31 במבט טוב אוב32 רעצ ${ }^{32}$ בהיותה עם המעלה הדומה, אז יתחדש על החולה דבר |שלא עלה34 על לב הרופא.

16 (1) שער 16 . ${ }^{35}$ הם היה המזל העולה בתתלת החולי ראש טלה או מאזנים והלבנה באחת היתדות, הנה הגבולים יהיו נאמנים בלי ספק בהגיע הלבנה אל הנכח. (2) רק אם היה המזל הצומח רחוק מאד, כמו סוף דרום או סוף צפון, אז לא יהיו הגבולים נאמנים. (3) רק בכל מקום שרחבו מעט9, רק הנכח יהיה ישר לעולם, גם

1 ${ }^{1}$ [צר] עיתלמא; 0 > רביעי.

 עיתלמא; ס חסר. ${ }^{11}{ }^{11}$ צדותם] ציתלמס; א חסר. ${ }^{12}$ בונגה וכוכב חמה ... מעלות עדותם פסולה] ציתמסא; ל חסר. ${ }^{13}$ ובינה] עלמא; ית ובינם; ס ובינו. ${ }^{14}$ סרחבה] עיתלמא; 0 רחבו. [16י״ב] ציתמסא; ל י״ג. עיתל חסר; ס אל מעלה; א חסר. החולי. [מחחברת] ציתלמס; א המחברת. 25מטלה] עלסמיא; ת כ' מעלה. עמסא; ית בהתחלת; ל בתחלת. [31 הלבנה] עיתלמס; א > אז. עיתמסא; ל חסר. מרובע. ${ }^{38}{ }^{38}$ עיתלמא; 0 > על.

14 （1）Chapter．If the Moon at the onset of the disease is aspected by a planet that is under the ray of the Sun，judge as if there were no aspect；the same applies to the days of crisis．（2）But if Saturn or Jupiter is oriental， meaning that they rise before the Sun，and there is $6^{\circ}$ or more between them，they give half a testimony．（3）If there is less than $10^{\circ}$ between Mars and the Sun and it［Mars］is oriental，meaning that it rises before the Sun， its testimony is invalid；from this［ $10^{\circ}$ ］up to $15^{\circ}$ it gives half a testimony． （4）When Mars，Saturn，and Jupiter are more than $15^{\circ}$ 〈from the Sun〉 their testimony is valid，if they are oriental．（5）If these three［Saturn， Jupiter，Mars］are occidental，meaning that they set after the Sun sets，and there is $15^{\circ}$ between them and the Sun，their testimony is invalid．（6）As for Venus and Mercury，observe：if they are oriental and they are less than $15^{\circ}\langle$ from the Sun $\rangle$ ，their testimony is invalid．（7）If Venus is occidental and there is $10^{\circ}$ between it and the Sun，this is half a testimony，but if its 〈ecliptic〉 latitude is northern，the testimony is valid．（8）If Mercury is occidental and there is $12^{\circ}$ between it and the Sun，its testimony is intermediate［between valid and invalid］，and if its 〈ecliptic〉 latitude is northern，its testimony is valid．${ }^{1}$

15 （1）Chapter．Note when the moon reaches the degree that is the same distance 〈from the equinoxes or from the solstices〉 as its position 〈at the onset of the disease $\rangle$ ．（2）This means the distance from the line of the intersection of the $\langle$ two great $\rangle$ circles ${ }^{1}$［i．e．，Aries $o^{\circ}$ or Libra $o^{\circ}$ ］，or from the line that intersects the extreme south and north $\langle$ of the ecliptic $\rangle$［i．e．， Capricorn $0^{\circ}$ or Cancer $0^{\circ}$ ］，such as Pisces $10^{\circ}$ and Aries $20^{\circ}$ ，or the head of Virgo and the end of Aries，or Capricorn $6^{\circ}$ and Gemini $24^{\circ}$ ；or a degree that is the same $\langle$ distance $\rangle$ from the solstices［i．e．，Cancer $o^{\circ}$ or Capricorn $\left.0^{\circ}\right]$ ，such as Sagittarius $20^{\circ}$ and Cancer $10^{\circ} .{ }^{2}$（3）Now if the Moon is in a fortunate or unfortunate aspect 〈with some planet〉 when it is at a degree that is the same 〈distance as its position at the onset of the disease〉，the patient will experience something that was not foreseen by the physician．

16 （1）Chapter．If the rising sign at the onset of the disease is the head of Aries or Libra and the Moon is in one of the cardines，the crises will undoubtedly be severe（Deut．28：59）when the Moon is in quadrature or opposition 〈to the position where it was at the onset of the disease〉．${ }^{1}$（2） But if the ascendant sign 〈at the onset of the disease〉 is very far 〈from the head of Aries or Libra〉，such as the extreme south or north［i．e．，the head of Capricorn or Cancer］，then the crises will not be severe．${ }^{2}$（3）But 〈if the Moon is $\rangle$ in any position at a low latitude，$\langle$ the crisis that takes place

גבול שובו אל מקומו. (4) על¹ כן אמר תלמי המלך כי המבטים² המרובצים, אם הם במזלות³${ }^{3}$ הצרים בעלותם במקום שרחבו הרבה, יהיו המבטים ${ }^{4}$ הששיים, והדין עמו, ואם היו במזלות ארוכים יהיו5 המרובעים6 במבטים השלישיים. (5) והפך הדבר, כי המבטים הששיים במזלות ארוכים יהיו כמרובעים והמרובעים כשלישיים במזלות

קצרים8.
17 (1) שער9. אם הלבנה בתחלת החלי10 במזל מתהפך, יורה על מהירות דברי החולה, בין טוב ובין רע, ואם היה במזל נאמן, יאריך החולי, ואם היה במזל שיש לו שני גופים11, יצא מחולי אל חולי.

18 (1) שער¹2. אם היה13 סבת החולי תוספת בגוף ואור הלבנה יוסיף, הוא דבר קשה, ואם אורה יחסר, הוא יותר טוב. (2) ואם סבת החולי מחסרון ואורה חסר, הוא דבר קשה, ואם יוסיף, הוא יותר14 טוב.

19 (1) שער51. אם היתה הלבנה בתחלת החולי במזל שהוא כתולדת16 שהתגברה על הגוף ${ }^{17}$ שהולידה החולי, הדבר קשה. (2) ואם היתה במזל הפך ${ }^{17}$ החולי19, הוא סימן טוב. (3) וכל מה שהזכרתי20 הוא אמת אם אין שם מבטיםם, כי עקר המשפטים הם המבטים, רק המחברת גדולה מכולם.

20 (1) המחברת²2. אם לא יהיה ללבנה גם לכוכב שתתחבר עמו רוחב, אז תהיה 122 עדות הלבנה קיימת, ואם רחבה"23 מעט, יחסר מכח העדות. (2) ואם רחבם ${ }^{23}$ הרבה, והם525 בפאה" ${ }^{26}$ אחת, והרוחב שוה, צדותם שלמה, ואם איננו שוה, יחסר מן העדות. (3) וככה, אם היה27 רחבם מעט והם בשתי פאות, יחסר מעדותם כפי רוחב כל אחד מהם, ואם רחבם רב, עדות הלבנה פסולה, אל תאמין בה.

[^78]when the Moon is〉 in opposition 〈to the place where the Moon was at the onset of the disease $\rangle$ will always be severe，and so too the crisis that takes place when it［the Moon］returns to its position $\langle$ at the onset of the disease $\rangle$ ．（4）Therefore，King Ptolemy ${ }^{3}$ said that quartile aspects，if they take place when short signs rise in positions of high latitude，are 〈like〉 sextile aspects，and he is right；but if quartile aspects take place in long signs ${ }^{4}$ they are $\langle$ like $\rangle$ trine aspects．（5）The opposite $\langle$ is also true〉：sextile aspects in long signs are like quadratures，and quartile aspects are 〈like〉 trine aspects in the short signs．${ }^{5}$

17 （1）Chapter．If at the onset of the disease the Moon is in a tropical sign，it signifies a rapid change in the patient＇s condition，whether for better or for worse；if it［the Moon］is in a fixed sign，${ }^{1}$ the disease will be protracted，and if in a bicorporal sign，after he recovers from a disease he will contract another disease．${ }^{2}$

18 （1）Chapter．If the cause of the disease is an excess $\langle$ of a humor $\rangle$ in the body ${ }^{1}$ and the Moon＇s light is waxing，this is very serious 〈for the patient〉， but the situation is more auspicious if its light is waning．（2）If the cause of the disease is a deficit 〈of a humor〉 and the Moon＇s light is waning，this is very serious，but the situation is more auspicious if it is waxing．${ }^{2}$

19 （1）Chapter．If the Moon at the onset of the disease is in a sign 〈whose nature〉 corresponds to the nature $\langle\text { of the humor }\rangle^{1}$ that has increased in the body and produced the disease，this is serious 〈for the patient〉．（2） But if it is in a sign 〈whose nature〉 is the opposite of the 〈nature of the〉 disease，this is an auspicious sign．${ }^{2,3}$（3）Everything I have mentioned is correct if there are no aspects，${ }^{4}$ because the aspects are the basis of〈astrological〉 judgments，${ }^{5}$ but conjunction is stronger than all of them．

20 （1）Conjunction．If the Moon and the planet with which it conjoins are on the ecliptic［lit．have no 〈ecliptic〉 latitude］，then the Moon＇s testimony is valid，but if it［the Moon］is at a low latitude，the testimony＇s power is diminished．（2）If they are at a high latitude and are on the same side $\langle$ of the ecliptic $\rangle$ ，and their latitude is identical，their testimony is absolute，but if 〈their latitude〉 is not the same，the 〈power of their〉 testimony is diminished．（3）Likewise，if they are at a low 〈ecliptic〉 latitude and are on two sides 〈with respect to the ecliptic〉，〈the power of〉 their testimony will be diminished in proportion to their latitude；but if they are at a high latitude，the Moon＇s testimony is invalid and you should not rely on it．${ }^{1}$

21 (1) הנכח¹. אם תהיה הלבנה והכוכב בפאה² אחת ורחב ${ }^{1}$ (1 ורחבם או רחב אחד מהם הרבה³, יחסר הרבה מעדות הלבנה, טוב או רע, כפי הרוחב. (2) ואם הם בשתי פאות ורוחב זאת4 כרוחב זה5 5 , הנה עדות הלבנה קיימת, ואם אין רחבם שוה, יחסר מעדות הלבנה כפי החסרון.

22 (1) המבט6 המרובע. דע כי על דרך חכמי המזלות הכוכב${ }^{7}$ שיהיה8 באחת ${ }^{9}$ ² היתדות הוא על מבט מרובע עם השנים בם1, ומבט נכח עם היתד השלישית
 מהיתד. (3) והנה, אם היה¹4 בתחלת הבית השני, הוא על מבט מרובע עם תחלת
 צורך לדעת המזל העולה בתחלת חולי החולה, כי יורנו על אמת עם הוראת הלבנה

כאשר הזכרתי.


 שתים עשרה²4 מעלות 25, איננו רע שלם. (3) ואם המזל שהם ${ }^{24}$ בו בו מהמזלות הארוכים ומקום החולה רחוק מקו השוה הרבה²7, יחסר מהרע, ואם שניהם במזלות קצרים, הנו רע ${ }^{28}$ שלם. (4) ואם יצאה הלבנה מתחת גבול השרפה, שהם ששׁב והשמש במזלות קצרים, והחולה במקום שיש לו רוחב הרבה, הנה מחצי; ואם היתה ביניהם קרוב מקשת המראה, לא יורה על רע ולא על על טוב היתה הלבנה במחברת השמש ועמהם ${ }^{32}$ הכוכבים הרצים, לפי דעת הקדמונים שהוא
 לא יחסרו ממנה ${ }^{35}$, כי אין להם כח, ירק אם יהם יהיו הכוכבים בגבולם והשמש איננו בגבולו; ואז, אם היה עם הכוכבים הרעים36, יזיקו, ועם הטובים, ייטיבו.

13 הנכח] עיתלמא; 0 > שער י״א. עיתלמא; ס זה.



 עיתלמס; א עדיין. ס חסר. צישתים עשרה] עיתלמס; א י״ב. "הרבה] ציתלמא; ס חסר. עיתלמס; א הנו. לע צעל רע ולא על טוב* מהרע] עיתמסא; ל ממנה.
 גבולים לשמש והוא איננו עם הכוכבים הרעים; א רק עם שהם גבולים לשמש והוא איננו עם הכוכבים רעים; לית רק אם שהוא גבולים לשמש והוא איננו עם כוכבים רעים; ע מוסיף בשים בשוליים: רק אם שבו הגבולים לשמש ואם היתה הלבנה עם כוכבים רעים; ס רק אם שבו הגבולים לשמש והיא היתה עם כוכבים רעים.

21 （1）Opposition．If the Moon and the planet are on the same side $\langle$ with respect to the ecliptic $\rangle$ and one or both are at a high latitude，the power of the Moon＇s testimony is reduced considerably，for better or for worse， in proportion to the latitude．（2）If they are on two sides $\langle$ with respect to the ecliptic $\rangle$ but at the same latitude，the Moon＇s testimony is valid；but if their latitudes are different，the 〈power〉 of the Moon＇s testimony will be reduced in proportion to the difference $\langle$ in the latitudes $\rangle .{ }^{1}$

22 （1）Quadrature．Know that in the astrologers＇system a planet that is in one of the cardines is in quadrature with the second $\langle$ cardo $\rangle$ and in opposition to the third 〈cardo〉．（2）This is true if it［the planet］is at the cusp of the cardo or if its distance from the 〈cusp of the〉 cardo is equal to the distance of its aspect from the 〈cusp of the〉 cardo．（3）So if it［the planet］is at the cusp of the second place，it is in quadrature with the cusp of the sixth and the twelfth place，and the same rule applies to sextile and trine．${ }^{1}$（4）Now we need to know the rising sign at the onset of the disease， because it will give a true indication，along with the Moon＇s indication， as I have mentioned．${ }^{2}$

23 （1）Chapter of the conjunctions．The Moon＇s conjunction with the Sun is a very inauspicious sign，and it is even more inauspicious if there is less than $6^{\circ}$ between the Moon and the Sun and the Moon has not yet reached the Sun．（2）If the conjunction takes place in Aries or Leo， the misfortune will be diminished slightly；${ }^{1}$ if there is $12^{\circ}$ between them， the misfortune is not absolute．${ }^{2}$（3）If they are in one of the long signs and the patient＇s location is very far from the equator，the misfortune will be diminished，but if both［the Moon and the Sun］are in short signs，${ }^{3}$ the misfortune is absolute．（4）If the Moon has left the domain of burning，which is six degrees，${ }^{4}$ and the Moon and the Sun are in short signs，and the patient is in a location with a high latitude，this is 〈only〉 half inauspicious or even less than half；and if 〈the distance〉 between them $\langle$ is $\rangle$ close to the arc of vision，${ }^{5}$ it indicates neither ill fortune nor good fortune．（5）If the Moon is in conjunction with the Sun and malefic planets are with them，according to the Ancients this is absolute misfortune，but if 〈they are〉 with benefics，the misfortune will be diminished．（6）In my opinion they［i．e．，the malefic planets］do not increase misfortune and the benefics do not reduce it，because they are powerless，unless the planets are in their terms and the Sun is not in its term；${ }^{6}$ in this case，if it［the Sun］is with malefic planets they will cause harm，and $\langle$ if it is $\rangle$ with benefics they will be of benefit．
 בהליכתו יוסיף רע, ואם מהיר יחסר5. (3) ואם הוא שב אחורנית והוא קודם נכח
 הלבנה ממתנת בהליכתה, הנה סימן רע, כי יורה על אורך והסוף ${ }^{10}$ לרע, ואם ממהרת בהליכתה, יחסר מהרע. (5) ואם הלבנה עם שבתי11 ואורה יגדל, מעט יזיק שבתי12 ואם1313 יחסר אורה1414, הנה רעה על רעתו15. (6) ואם שבתי16 מזרחי מהשמש, והטעם שיעלה קודם השמש, והחולי מקור, יחסר מהרע שיורה עליו, ואם החולי מחום, יוסיף רע על רעצי1. (7) ואם היה18 שבתי19 מערבי מהשמש והחולי מחום, יחסר מהרע, ואם מקור, יוסיף רע על רע. (8) ואם שבתי120 במקום גבהותו או קרוב ממנו משאר ${ }^{20}$ הפאות | והחולי יש בו עצור, הנה יוסיף רע על רע, ואם היה22 במקום השפל 23 או קרובוב24 ממנו בשתי הפאות, יחסר מרעתו. ואם היה במקום השפל והחולי יש בו שלשול, יוסיף רעה על רעהה, ובמקום גבוה"26 או קרוב ממנו בשתי הפאות, יחסר מרעתו"27. (9) ורבים אמרו כי מחברת הלבנה עם כוכב28 שב לאחור יורה על קיא. (10) ואם הלבנה באחד בתי שבתי29 יחסר מעט מהרע, רק ${ }^{30}$ אם היה החולי משעול. (11) וככה במזל מאנים אם היתה שם המחברת, יחסר מהרע רק אם היה אחר כ״א מעלות ממנו. (12) ורבים אמרו אם13 היתה הלבנה מתחברת עם שבתי32 בבית שלישות שבתי33 או מקום גבולו, יחסר מהרע. (13) ואיננונ34 אמת, כי אין לשלישות גם לגבולים זה הכח. (14) וכבר הזכרתי כי תולדת המזל35 יוסיף גם יגרע. והכל יש לך לך להסתכל. (15) ורבים ${ }^{36}$ אמרו כי שבתי37 זיק לזקנים יותר38 מאשר יזיק לנצרים, ולפי דעתי הדבר39 הפוך.

25 (1) מבט40 שלישית 25 עם ${ }^{41}$ שבתי43 לאיזיק, רק אם היו שניהם במזלות קצרים. (2) והמבט הרביעית ${ }^{44}$ קשה, רק אם הםיו שניהם במזלות קצרים54. (3) וה והמבט46 השישית קרוב אל טוב, רק אם היו שניהם במזלות ארוכים. (4) כי47 עקר המחברת איננו שיהיה
 עיתלמא; ס שבתאי. 5 צאם מהיר יחסר*] מא; ס ס ואם ממהר יחסר; יתל חסר. שבתי. 7אם אחר השמש* יתמא; ל ואם היה אחר השמש; ס ואם הוא של לאחור אחר נכח השמש. ${ }^{\text {¹א }}$ שבתי ממתין בהליכתו יוסיף רע. ואם מהיר יחסר. ואם הוא שב אחורנית והוא קודם נכח השמש הנה אחר
 צ חסר.

 עיתלמ; סא חסר. לא חסר. שפל. על רעה, ובמקום גבוה] ציתמא; ל חסר. ${ }^{27}$ במקום השפל או קרוב ... הפאות יחסר מרעתו] ציתלמא; ס חסר. רק] ציתמסא; ל חסר. עיתלמא; ס חסר. [34 34איננו] ציתלמס; א ואינם. מ חסר.
 עיתלמא; ס שבתאי. במזלות קצרים] ציתמסא; ל חסר. 46והמבט] עס; יתלמא ומבט. 74כי] ציתלמא; 0 > ויש לך לדעת.

24 （1）The Moon＇s conjunction with Saturn signifies misfortune and a long disease．（2）If Saturn is moving slowly，the misfortune is increased， and if is moving rapidly，〈the misfortune〉 is diminished．（3）If it［Saturn］ is retrograde and before opposition with the Sun，after the patient is cured he will fall ill again；${ }^{1}$ and if $\langle$ Saturn is $\rangle$ after $\langle o p p o s i t i o n ~ w i t h ~ t h e\rangle ~ S u n, ~ t h e ~$ misfortune will be diminished．（4）If the Moon is moving slowly，this is an inauspicious sign because it signifies a long 〈disease〉 and an unfortunate end，but if it is moving rapidly，the misfortune will be diminished．（5） If the Moon is with Saturn and its light is waxing，Saturn will cause little harm；but if its light is waning，one misfortune will follow another misfortune．（6）If Saturn is oriental of the Sun，meaning that it rises before the Sun，and the disease is caused by cold，the misfortune that it signifies will be diminished；but if the disease is caused by heat，misfortune will be added to misfortune．（7）If Saturn is occidental of the Sun and the disease is caused by heat，the misfortune will be diminished；but if $\langle$ it is caused $\rangle$ by cold，misfortune will be added to misfortune．（8）If Saturn is at its apogee or close to it on either side and the disease involves constipation，misfortune will be added to misfortune；but if it is at its perigee or close to it on either side，its maleficence will be diminished． If it is at its perigee and the disease involves diarrhea，misfortune will be added to misfortune；but if it is at apogee or close to it on either side，its maleficence will be diminished．${ }^{2}$（9）Many said that a conjunction of the Moon with a retrograde planet signifies vomiting．${ }^{3}$（10）If the Moon is in one of Saturn＇s houses the misfortune will be diminished somewhat， unless the disease involves coughing．（11）The same applies if it［the Moon］is in conjunction in Libra－the misfortune will be diminished only if it is more than $21^{\circ}$ from it［Libra］．${ }^{4}$（12）Many said that the misfortune will be diminished if the Moon is in conjunction with Saturn in Saturn＇s triplicity or in its term．（13）But this is not true，because the triplicity and the terms do not have such a power．（14）I have already mentioned that the sign＇s nature can increase or reduce $\langle$ misfortune $\rangle .{ }^{5}$ You should pay attention to everything．（15）Many said that Saturn causes more harm to the elderly than to the young，but in my opinion the contrary is true．

25 （1）Trine with Saturn is not inauspicious，unless both are in short signs．（2）Quartile is ill－fated，unless both are in short signs．（3）Sextile is close to being auspicious，unless both are in long signs．${ }^{1}$（4）The essence of conjunction is not that Saturn＇s ray ${ }^{2}$ coincides with the Moon＇s ray，as

אור¹ שבתי² צם אור הלבנה³ כאשר אמרו רבים, רק עד שיהיה גוף הלבנה עם אור שבתי4, ואם יש5 ${ }^{5}$ ללבנה רוחב או לשבתי6 קח המעלות שיהיו עמהם בחצי השמים, ככתוב¹ בספר הלוחות.

26 (1) ואם 8 הלבנה עם צדק הנו${ }^{9}$ סימן טוב, ויותר טוב אם לא היה בעל בית רע כנגד
 על טוב. (2) ואם במזל גדי, יחסר מהטוב. (3) ואם צדק שב אחורנית11, יחסר מהטוב אם עבר נכח השמשי12, ואם |לא עבר לא ישאר מהסימן הטובי13 כי אם מעט. (4) ואם בוּ בוב החולי מקור, יותר יועיל צדק מאשר יועיל אם היה מחום. (5) וככה אם היר ביה חם כנגד ביר
 ימיו מאשר יראה בחולה קטן בשנים. (7) ומבט צדק

הוא במעט יגיצה ועמל לחולה, ומבט הששית והשלישית אין למעלה ממנו בטובה¹7.
27 (1) ואם18 הלבנה עם מאדים, הוא 19 סימן רע. (2) ואם היתה הלבנה חסרה באורה20, יחסר מהרע ${ }^{21}$ והפפך הדבר אם אור הלבנה יוסיף, כי אז יוס יוסיף מכאוב על מכאוב. (3) ואם מאדים אחר נכח השמש, יחסר מרעתו. (4) ואם היה בפאה שה שהשמש שם כנגד גלגלו הקטן, הנו סימן רע. (5) ואם מאדים במקום גבהותו מגלגל המוצק, או קרוב ממנו, והחולי יש בו יבושת ${ }^{22}$, הנה ${ }^{23}$ תוספת רעה, ואם הפך ואם הוא במקום השפל והחולי יש בו לחלוח, יוסיף מהרע בבית מאדים או בבית כבודו, יחסר מרעתו.

28 (1) ואם 28 הלבנה עם נגה, הנו סימן טוב, כדרך כוכב צדק. (2) ואם החולה נצר או אשה, הוא יותר טוב מהזקן הבא³2 בימים. (3) ואם החולי מחום, יותר יועיל נגה


 החלי] ציתלמא; ס חסר. שב ... ישאר מהסימן הטוב] ציתמסא; ל חסר. בשבתאי. ${ }^{16}{ }^{16}$ [סאא; יתל מצדק; מ > ללבנה. ${ }^{17}$ קומבט הששית והשלישית אין למעלה ממנו בטובה*]
 באורה] עיתלמא; ס הלבנה חסרה. ${ }^{21}$ סמהע] עיתמסא; ל עם הרע. 22יבושת*] יתמסא; צ יבשת; ל בושת. עיתלמא; 0> יש בו. 27יבשת] צימ; לסא יבושת; ת יבשות.
 [הבא] ציתלא; מ ובא; ס בא.
many said，but that the body of the Moon coincides with Saturn＇s ray；but if the Moon or Saturn has 〈some ecliptic〉 latitude，take their degrees at midheaven，as is written in the Book of Tables．${ }^{3}$

26 （1）It is an auspicious sign if the Moon is with Jupiter，${ }^{1}$ and it is even more auspicious if it［Jupiter］is not the lord of an unfortunate place ${ }^{2}$ with respect to the rising sign at the beginning of the disease；but if the conjunction takes place in Jupiter＇s house or in the Moon＇s house，good is added to good．（2）If it takes place in Capricorn，the good fortune will be diminished．${ }^{3}$（3）If Jupiter is retrograde，the good fortune will be diminished if it has passed opposition to the Sun；and if it has not passed 〈opposition to the Sun〉，very little of the auspicious indication will be left．（4）If the disease is caused by cold，Jupiter is more beneficent than if $\left\langle\right.$ the disease〉 is caused by heat．${ }^{4}$（5）The same applies，with regard to its［Jupiter＇s］epicycle if it［the disease］is 〈caused by〉 heat，as I have told you regarding Saturn．${ }^{5}$（6）Jupiter＇s power will be more manifest in a patient who has passed the midpoint of his life than in a young patient．${ }^{6}$ （7）Jupiter in opposition or quadrature is wholly auspicious，although the patient will experience some toil and effort，but nothing can be better than trine and sextile．

27 （1）It is an auspicious sign if the Moon is with Mars．（2）If the Moon＇s light is waning，the misfortune will be diminished；and the opposite applies if the Moon＇s light is waxing，because then pain will be added to pain．（3）If Mars is after opposition to the Sun，its maleficence will be diminished．（4）It is an inauspicious sign if it［Mars］is on the same side of its epicycle as the Sun is．（5）If Mars is at its apogee on its eccentric cycle，${ }^{1}$ or close to it，and the disease involves dryness，there is an increase of misfortune；and in the opposite case，the misfortune will be diminished． （6）If it［Mars］is at its perigee and the disease involves moistness，its maleficence will be increased，but if 〈the disease involves〉 dryness，the misfortune will be diminished．（7）〈For Mars，〉 trine and sextile have the same signification as those I have mentioned regarding Saturn；${ }^{2}$ likewise， if the Moon is in Mars＇house or in the house of its［Mars＇］exaltation，its maleficence will be diminished．

28 （1）It is an auspicious sign if the Moon is with Venus，just as in the case of Jupiter．（2）This 〈configuration〉 is more auspicious if the patient is a youth or a woman than a very old person．（3）If the disease is caused by heat，Venus is more beneficent than Jupiter，but if 〈it is caused〉 by cold

מצדק1, ואם מקור יותר יועיל צדק מנגה². (4) ובהיותו מערבי3, והטעם4 שישקע5 אחר
 שב ${ }^{11}$ אחורנית; ובהיותו שב ${ }^{12}$ אחורנית משפטו כמשפטי13 צדק, וככה כל מבטיו4י1 (5) ואם החולי בעבור | חשק, יותר יועיל כוכב15 צדק מכוכב נגה", ואם סבת החולי17 124 עבודת השם18 ומחשבות העולם הבא, יותר יועיל נגה מצדק19.1.

29 (1) ואם20 הלבנה עם כוכב חמה ואיננו תחת אור השמש, או21 יש ביניהם יותר מעשרו22 מעלות32 ${ }^{23}$ והוא שוקע אחר שקוע השמש, הסתכל: אם היה בבית כוכב טוב, אז יורה על חצי טוב, ואם בבית כוכב רע, על חצי רע, ואם בביתו בעצמו, יורה על טוב מעט, ואם בבית הפך בתיו, יורה על רע מעט; ומבט נכח, מעט רע, ומבט רביעית, פחות ברע מהנכח, והששית, מעט טוב, ומבט שלישית, יותר טוב. (2) ישׁי ל24 לך להסתכל בממסכו25, שאם היה בממסך26 רע, בין במחברת בין במבט, עם ${ }^{25}$ שבתי28 או מאדים, איננו29 רעה חולה30 ${ }^{32}$ כמו רעת 31 כוכב חמה, כי אז יסיר32 דעת החולה ויבא לידי סכנה. (3) ואם הוא בממסך טוב עם נגה או צדק, הנו טוב וכל מבטיו טובים.(4)
 גדול35, והפך הדבר אם הוא להפך מהטוב קרוב משלישותו38, כי המחברת והמבטי39 יותר חזקיא ${ }^{38}$ והפך הדבר אם היה

בממסך רע ובבית כוכב טוב.


#### Abstract

30 (1) אם 30 היתה"42 הלבנה במחברת34 שבתי44 וצדק, הסתכל למי הנצוחת", כי ההווה46 קרוב ממקום גבהותו בגלגל המוצק ינצח ההווה47 קרוב ממקום48 שפלותותו49, וההווה50 קרוב מגבהות ${ }^{51}$ גלגלו52 הקטן ינצח ההווה53 קרוב54 ממקום שפלותו.




 10 10וסיף חום בו והפך הדבר אחר היותו עם השמש] צילמסא; ת חסר. 11והוא שב] עיתלמא; ס והיא שבה. [12 ובהיותו שב] ציתלמא; ס ובהיותה שבה. 13משפטו כמשפט] ציתלמא; ס כדרך. ${ }^{14}$ סמבטיו] ציתלמא; ס מבטיה. 15 15וכב] עס; יתלמא חסר. 18ואם סבת החלי עבודת השם] עיתמסא; ל חסר. ${ }^{18}$ צנגה מצדק] ציתלמא; 0 מחברת נגה ממחברת צדק. 20 20 בם] ציתלמא; 0 > שער י״ח. עסא; יתלמ מזלות. ממסך. עילמא; תס חסר.
 37 לכוכב] עסא; מ מכוכב; יתל וכוכב. ${ }^{37}$ [משלישותו] עיתמס; לא משלישיתו.
 שער י״ט. ואם. ס שבתאי. ציתלמא; 0 ההוא. רחוק ממקום; ל חסר. 49שפלותו*] יתלמא; ע גבהותו; 0 > ואתה תוכל לדעתו מהמוצק המתוקן שאם היה מ״ב מעלות. ${ }^{50}$ מהההוה] עיתלמא; ס ההוא.


Jupiter is more beneficent than Venus．${ }^{1}$（4）When it［Venus］is occidental， meaning that it sets after sunset，it adds heat to him［the patient］，and the opposite occurs when it［Venus］is with the Sun in the same degree and is retrograde；when it［Venus］is retrograde Jupiter＇s rule applies to it，and likewise all its aspects．（5）If the disease is venereal，Jupiter is more beneficent than Venus，but if the disease is caused by divine worship and reflections about the afterlife，Venus is more beneficent than Jupiter．${ }^{2}$

29 （1）If the Moon is with Mercury when it［Mercury］is not under the ray of the Sun，or if there are more than $10^{\circ}$ between them［the Moon and Mercury］and it［Mercury］sets after sunset，${ }^{1}$ observe：if it［Mercury］ is in the house of a benefic planet，it signifies half good fortune，but if in the house of a malefic planet，〈it signifies〉 half misfortune；if 〈it is $\rangle$ in its own house，it signifies some slight good fortune，and if in a house opposite its houses，it signifies some slight misfortune；〈if it is〉 in opposition，some slight misfortune，$\langle i f\rangle$ in quartile，less misfortune than in opposition，$\langle$ if $\rangle$ sextile，some slight good fortune，$\langle\mathrm{if}\rangle$ trine， more good fortune．（2）You should examine its［Mercury＇s］complexion． If it is in an unfortunate complexion ${ }^{2}$ with Saturn or Mars，whether in conjunction or in 〈some other〉 aspect，this does not signify such a great calamity as the maleficence of Mercury，because in the latter case the patient will go mad and be in $\langle$ mortal $\rangle$ peril．（3）If it［the Moon］is in a fortunate complexion with Venus or Jupiter，it is auspicious and all its［the Moon＇s］aspects are auspicious．（4）If it［Mercury］is in conjunction，〈in a〉 complexion of conjunction，or 〈in some〉 aspect with the place in which it［Venus or Jupiter］is，this is a great signification that everything will be fortunate，but the opposite holds in the opposite case．（5）If the complexion is fortunate but the house belongs to a malefic planet，its good fortune will be diminished by approximately a third， because conjunction and the aspect are stronger 〈than the house〉，and the opposite applies if it is in an unfortunate complexion and in the house of a benefic planet．

30 （1）If the Moon is in conjunction with Saturn and Jupiter，find out which $\langle$ of them $\rangle$ is victorious，for the one that is close to the position of its apogee on the eccentric circle is victorious over the one that is close to its perigee，and the one that is close to the apogee on its epicycle is victorious over the one that is close to its perigee $\langle$ on its epicycle〉．
(2) וזה1 תוכל לדעת² ממנת³ הכוכב המתוקנת4, שאם היתה5 ממאתים ושבעים ${ }^{4}$ מעלות עד סוף המזלות7, צד תשצים ${ }^{8}$ מעלות9, הנו בגבהותו10, והפך הדבר | בשפלותו. (3) והנצוח הראשון תוכל לדעתו, שאם היה בין מקום הכוכב11 המתוקן12 ובין מקום גבהות המוצק ${ }^{13}$ פחות מצ׳14 ${ }^{14}$ מעלות, לפניו או לאחריו, הינו בפאת גבהותו, ואם יותר מזה, הנו בפאת שפלותו515. (4) ואם יש לאחד מהם16 רוחב בפאת שמאל17 והשני בקו גלגל המזלות אן18 רחבו דרומי919, יצצח השמאלי. ואם שניהם שמאליים20, ינצח בעל המרחב הרב. ואם האחד בקו המזלות ורוחב השני דרומי, ינצח ההווה בקובי. 21. ואם שניהם דרומיים ינצח בעל המרחב המעטו בביתו, או בבית כבודו, או שלישותו, או גבולול 25, או פניון26, ינצח האחר 27 שי שהוא פחות ממנו בפקידות. (6) ואם היו מאלה הדרכים לאחדבי28, גם יהיו29 לאחרים לאחרבי30,
 שלשה"36, ולמנצח מפאת המרחב שנים ל, ולמנצח מפאת"38 הפקידות אחד"39. (7) והנה, אם יתחברו אלה ארבעה40 נצוחים41 לאחד, יהיה24 ${ }^{42}$ הנצוח גמור. (8) והנה, אם ינצח שבתי43 בהיות הלבנה עמו ועם צדק, ימות החולה. (9) לכן בעבור צדק ירויח מעט לחולה בחוליו, ולא יכבד עליו הרבה, ולא ידאג. (10) ואם ינצח צדק, יחיה רק אחר

סכנה גדולה ומחשבת44 מות ואימות אסון45.
31 (1) ואם 36 הלבנה עם מחברת שבתי47 וצדק ונגה848, יוציל מעט, רק 49 לא יציל רק אם שבתי50 שב אחורנית ${ }^{51}$ וצדק הולך ישר. (2) ואם צדק על מבט רביצית הדבר בספק52, ותדין53 כפי כח כל54 אחד מהם. (3) ואם על מבט שלישית, יציל55, ואם על

（2）You may know this from the planet＇s true anomaly，${ }^{1}$ for if it is between $270^{\circ}$ and the end of the signs，and 〈continuing on〉 as far as $90^{\circ}$ ，it is at apogee，and the opposite is its perigee．（3）You may recognize the first 〈type of〉 victory［i．e．，on account of the eccentric circle］as fol－ lows：if there is less than $90^{\circ}$ ，either forward or backward，between the corrected position of the planet and the position of the apogee on the eccentric circle，it is on the side of its apogee，and if it is more than that，it is in the side of its perigee．${ }^{2}$（4）If one of them has some northern 〈ecliptic〉 latitude and the second is in the ecliptic or has some southern 〈ecliptic〉 latitude，the northern one is victorious．If both are northern，the one at the higher latitude is victorious．If one is in the ecliptic and the other has some southern 〈ecliptic〉 latitude，the one that is in the ecliptic is victorious．If both are southern，the one at the lower latitude is victorious．（5）You should also observe：the 〈planet〉 that is in its house，or in the house of its exaltation，or in its triplic－ ity，or in its term，or in its decan，is victorious over the other that is inferior in rulership．${ }^{3}$（6）If one of 〈the planets〉 has a share in these types $\langle$ of rulership〉［i．e．，house，exaltation，triplicity，term，decan］，but another 〈planet〉 has also a share in the other 〈types〉 as well［i．e．，vic－ torious on account of the eccentric circle，the epicycle or the ecliptic latitude］，assign four portions of power to the planet that is victorious on account of the eccentric circle，three 〈portions of power〉 to the one that is victorious on account of the epicycle，two 〈portions of power〉 to the one that is victorious on account of the 〈ecliptic〉 latitude，and one〈portion of power〉 to the one that is victorious on account of rulership ［i．e．，house，exaltation，triplicity，term，decan］．（7）Now if all four victo－ ries are joined in one $\langle$ planet $\rangle$ ，the victory is total．${ }^{4}$（8）Thus if Saturn is victorious when the Moon and Jupiter are with it，the patient will die． （9）However，because of Jupiter［i．e．，because Jupiter is with the victori－ ous Saturn］，the patient 〈will die but〉 will not suffer so much from the disease，which will not weigh so heavily upon him，and he will not be troubled．（10）But if Jupiter is victorious 〈over Saturn〉，it will be［i．e．，the patient will be cured］only after a great danger，thoughts of death and fears of disaster．

31 （1）If the Moon is in conjunction with Saturn，Jupiter，and Venus，it is slightly beneficent，but it will not save 〈the patient〉 unless Saturn is retrograde and Jupiter is direct 〈in its motion〉．（2）If Jupiter is in quartile the matter is uncertain，and you should pronounce judgment according to the power of each of them．（3）If it［Jupiter］is in trine，it will save

מבט' ששית, יחסר מהרע² רק לא יציל. (4) ומבטי השמש כולם ללבנה טובים, רק

32 (1) ואם הלבנה עם שבתי7 ומאדים, הוא פחות מחצי סימן8 רעצ', בעבור כי זה
 החולה. (3) ואם הלבנה עם שבתי13 ומאדיםם14 או כוכב15 חמה על מבט נכח או רביעית, זו"16 רעה חולה"17, ומבטי18 הכוכבים19 ${ }^{19}$ הטובים לא יועילו. (4) וככה תדין20 אם הלבנה עם מאדים וכוכב חמה או21 שבתי22 צל מבט נכח, או23 הלבנה עם כוכב חמה ומאדים או שבתי על מבט נכחל, , ואם הם במבט רביעית על הדרך שהזכרתי, הוא חצי רע,
 לנכחם, הוא חצי סימן טוב, ואם על מבט רביצית, קרוב מסימן טוב, ומבט שלישית או ששית סימן טוב גמור. (6) ואם הלבנה עם שבתי28, והשמש על מבט נכח ומאדים על מבט רביעית, איננו לא סימן טוב ולא סימן29 רע, וככה אם השמש עם מאדים. (7) ואם הלבנה עם מאדים30 והשמש על מבט נכח, הנו סימן רע, ומבט רביעית חצי סימן טוב13, ומבט שלישית או ששית לא ייטב ולא ירעם32. (8) ואם הלבנה עם מאדים, יותר יועילו מבטי נגה ממבטי צדק, ואם הלבנה עם שבתי33, יותר יועילו מבטי צדק ממבטי נגה.

33 (1) ואם הלבנה בתחלת החולי עם מחברת אחד מהכוכבים34 הצליונים שהם

 מיושבת עליו בעבור כי זה הכוכב העליון ממוסך מתולדת נגה42 וכוכב חמה. (3) ודע כי הכוכבים שהם בגלגל השמיני הם34 גבוהים44 ולא יתכן להיותם ${ }^{45}$ ממוסכים מהשפלים, רק הטעם שיולידו בארץ ויעשו מעשה נגה וכוכב חמה בהתחברם. (4) ואם
 במאזנים] ציתלמס; א מדלי או ממאננים. צוהמחברת] ציתלא; מ > הזאת. אומבטי השמש כולם ... רעה מכל המחברות] ציתלמא; ט חסר. 'ששבתי] עיתלמא; ס שבתאי. \&מחצי סימן] ציתלמא; ס מסימן. 9מכל המחברות ואם ... מחצי סימן רע] ציתמסא; ל חסר. פ10 טגה*] סיתלמא; ע נגה.
 כוכב] עתלמסא; י וכוכב. לומבט. 19 הכוכבים] עילמסא; ת כוכבים. עם. על בשבתי] עיתלמא; 0 שבתאי. 23 או] אמסי; ע אל; לת חסר. שבתי על מבט נכח] עאסליס; ת חסר. 25 25יטב] ציתלמ; סא יטיב. 26 26ירע] עיתלמס; א יירע. עיתלמא; ס שבתאי. הלבנה עם מאדים] צילמסא; ת חסר. [טוב] ציתלמ; סא רע. 32ייטב ולא ירע] ציתלמס; א ייטיב ולא
 36כפי ממסך] עיתלמא; ס כאשר הוא ממסך. ${ }^{36}$ [הגבור] עא; ס כמו הכוכב הנקרא הנסמך; יתמ הגבוה; ל הכברה. ציתלמא; ס ושדעת. ס ממסך הכוכב מנגה.
＜the patient＞；if in sextile，it will decrease the misfortune but will not save $\langle\mathrm{him}\rangle$ ．（4）All of Sun＇s aspects with the Moon are fortunate，but if it［the Sun］is in opposition in Aquarius or Libra，${ }^{1}$ the good fortune will be diminished，and a conjunction 〈of the Sun and the Moon〉 is the worst of all the conjunctions．

32 （1）If the Moon is with Saturn and Mars，this is less than half of an inauspicious sign，because one cancels the effect of the other．${ }^{1}$（2）If Jupiter or Venus aspects them［the Moon or Saturn］，in any aspect，the patient will be saved．${ }^{2}$（3）If the Moon is in opposition to or quartile with Saturn，Mars，or Mercury，this is a great calamity，${ }^{3}$ and the aspects of the beneficent planets will be of no avail．（4）Pronounce a similar judgment if the Moon is with Mars when Mercury or Saturn are in opposition，or〈if〉 the Moon is with Mercury when Mars and Saturn are in opposition， but if they［Mercury／Saturn or Mars／Saturn］are in quartile，as I have mentioned，${ }^{4}$ this is a half of an inauspicious $\langle\operatorname{sign}\rangle$ ，and trine and sextile are neither beneficial nor detrimental．（5）If the Moon is in conjunction with Saturn，and the Sun is in opposition to them，this is half of an auspicious sign；if it［the Sun］is in quartile 〈with them〉，it is almost an auspicious sign，and trine or sextile is a wholly auspicious sign．（6） If the Moon is with Saturn，the Sun is in opposition，and Mars is in quartile，it is neither an auspicious nor an inauspicious sign，and the same applies if the Sun is with Mars．（7）If the Moon is with Mars and the Sun is in opposition，this is an inauspicious sign；but quartile is half of an auspicious sign，and trine or sextile is neither beneficial nor detrimental． （8）If the Moon is with Mars，Venus＇aspects are more beneficent than Jupiter＇s aspects，and if the Moon is with Jupiter，Jupiter＇s aspects are more beneficent than Venus＇aspects．

33 （1）If at the onset of the disease the Moon is in conjunction with one of the upper stars of the first or second magnitude that has some 〈ecliptic〉 latitude，this too signifies good fortune or misfortune，depending on the star＇s complexion，like the＂Warrior without the Spear＂${ }^{1}$ that signifies good fortune．（2）Also the patient＇s mind will be calm because this upper star is tempered by the nature of Venus and Mercury．（3）Know that the stars of the eighth orb are $\langle$ very $\rangle$ high and cannot be tempered by the lower 〈stars〉［i．e．the planets］；so the meaning 〈of the above〉 is that they generate and exert the effect of Venus and Mercury $\langle o n l y\rangle$ when they conjoin．（4）If the Moon is at a southern 〈ecliptic〉 latitude the power of

היה רוחב הלבנה¹ דרומי, יותר יראה כח² הכוכב³ הנזכר4, ואם רחבו שמאלי, יתעלם ${ }^{3}$ ¹ וכמעט שלא6 יראה. (5) וככה משפט כל־ האחרים, כעין השור ולב אריה ${ }^{1}$ (5 ולב עקרבבי, רק הכוכבים שיש להם מרחב הרבה, כמו הנשר הנופל, יתעלם10 כל ${ }^{10}$ אששר יורו מטוב ועד12 רע. (6) וכאשר דברתי על המחברת"13 כן משפט המבטים14.

34 (1) שער. הסתכל15 ביום הגבול גם בשצה, כאשר הזכרתי, בשוב הלבנה אל מעלה
 ושמונים19, והכל מעלות ישרות²0. (2) והנה כלל אתן לך1121 החולי על מבט אחד המשרתים22 או הוא23 מתחבר עמו, הסתכל ${ }^{23}$ בהגיע הלבנה25 אל מקום מרובע מקומה
 ובין רעצ33, ולא יתחדש על החולה דבר שיצשה לו טוב או רע43. (4) ואם לא היה אותו הכוכב שהתחברה הלבנה עמו או הביט אליה, אם לא יהיה ביום הגבול מביט אליה או מתחבר עמה, ויתחבר כוכב אחר או יתחבר עם הלבנה ברגע הגבול35, אז 36 יתחדש על החולה דבר שלא עלה על לב, בין טוב ובין רע ${ }^{37}$ כפי תולדת המשרת. ${ }^{38}$ (5) ואם המבט או המחברת היה עם אחד העליונים, לא יתחדש על החולה דבר |מחוץ כלליץ, כי לא ישתנה מהלך הכוכב העליון40 בשנה אחת, רק פחות מחלק אחד, ואף כי לימים מעטים.

1 ${ }^{1}$ כוכב. ${ }^{4}{ }^{4}$ נזכר] עיתמא; ל הניכר; 0 חסר. 5יתעלם] עיתלמא; 0 יעלם.
 כמו לב העקרב ולב אריה ולב דגים. 10יתעלם] עמסא; יתל יתעלה. ${ }^{10}$ ו"כל*] תלמס; ימכל; א על כל. [12 מטוב ועד] ציתלמא; ס טוב צד. ${ }^{13}$ טמחברת] צלמסא; ית המחברות. ${ }^{13}$ [משפט המבטים] עיתלמא; ס במבטים. ק" ${ }^{17}$ [ עמא; 0 ת תשים; ת מ׳; יל חסר. ק״פ; למאה ושתים. ביוהכל מעלות ישרות] ציתלמא; ט חסר.
 עילמא; 0 בהגיעו; ת ברגע הלבנה.

 ציתלמא; ס נכונה. 35 35ם לא היה אותו הכוכב ... הלבנה ברגע הגבול] ע; א ואם לא היה אותו הכוכב שהתחברה הלבנה עמו או הביט אליה אם לא יהיה ביום הגבול מביט אליה או מתחבר עמה ויתחבר כוכב אחר עם הלבנה ברגע הגבול; ל ואם לא היתה אתו הכוכב שהתחברה הלבנה עמו או הביט אליה אם לא יהיה ביום הגבול מביט אליה או מתחבר אליה ויתחבר כוכב אחר או יתחבר עם הלבנה ברגע הגבול; מ ואם לא היה אותו הכוכב שהתחברה הלבנה עמו או הביט אליה ביום הגבול מביט אליה או מתחבר עמה ויתחבר כוכב אחר עמו או יתחבר עם הלבנה ברגע הגבול; י יואם לא היה אותו הכוכב שהתחברה הלבנה עמו או הביט אליה אם לא יהיה ביום הגבול מביט אליה או מתחבר עמה ויתחבר כוכב אחר או יתחבר עם הלבנה ברגע הגבול; ת ואם לא היה אותו הכוכב שהתחברה הלבנה עמו או הביט אליה אם לא יהיה ביום הגבול מביט אליה או מתחברת עמה ויתחבר כוכב אחר או יתחבר עם הלבנה ברגע הגבול; ס ואם לא היה אותו הכוכב שהתחבר עמו ביום הגבול מביט אליו ויביא כוכב אחר שלא נתחבר עמו. א3אז] ציתלמא; ס חסר. [37תחדש על החולה דבר שלא עלה על לב, בין טוב ובין רע] ציתלמא; 0 שם.

the aforementioned star will be more manifest，but if its latitude is northern 〈the power〉 will vanish and will be almost imperceptible．（5） The same rule applies to all the other 〈stars〉，such as the＂Eye of the Bull，＂ the＂Heart of the Lion，＂and the＂Heart of the Scorpion＂；${ }^{2}$ but as for stars at a high latitude，such as the＂Falling Eagle，＂3 everything indicated by them， for better or worse will vanish．（6）What I said apropos of the conjunction applies to the aspects as well．

34 （1）Chapter．Observe the day and hour of the crisis，when，as I have mentioned，${ }^{1}$ the Moon returns to the degree whose distance from the position where the Moon was at the onset of the disease is $90^{\circ}$ ，either forward or backward，or $180^{\circ}$（all this 〈measured〉 in equal degrees）．（2） Now I give you a general rule：if the Moon at the onset of the disease was aspected by one of the planets or was in conjunction with it，when the Moon arrives at quadrature or opposition with respect to its position〈at the onset of the disease〉，find out whether the planet 〈again〉 aspects the Moon or is in conjunction with it．（3）If it［the Moon］is aspected〈by the planet〉 as it was at the onset 〈of the disease〉，then the rule of the crisis is valid，${ }^{2}$ for better or for worse，and nothing unforeseen will happen to the patient that will make him better or worse．（4）But if the planet that was in conjunction with the Moon or aspected it $\langle$ at the onset of the illness＞does not aspect it［the Moon］or conjoin it on the day of the crisis，and another planet conjoins it［the Moon］at the moment of the crisis，something unforeseen will happen to the patient，for better or for worse，depending on the planet＇s nature．（5）But if the aspect or the conjunction is with one of the upper stars，nothing unforeseen will happen to the patient，because in one year the position of the upper star changes less than a minute，${ }^{3}$ 〈so that it scarcely moves at all $\rangle$ in a few days．

35 (1) שער1. אם עבר החולי עד שוב הלבנה אל מקומה ולא היה גבול טוב או רע גמור, יש לך² להסתכל אל מקום השמש בתחלת החולי והבט אל המתחברים עמה או³

 או דרום מרחק שוה7, או מעלה שידמו זמני שעתה ביום כזמני שעה האחרת בת בל בלילה, ככתוב9 בספר ראשית החכמה, כי כח גדול יש להם. (3) וזה הכלל: כל השלת בשרים שהזכרתי בלבנה ככה הם בשמש. (4) ואם עברה שנה, הסתכל בתחה בתחלת השנה השנית
 תקופת השנה¹3, שתוסיף על המעלה הצומחת"14 שבע ושמונים מעלות גם חמישה עשר חלקים ראשונים15, והסתכל איך יביטו הכוכבים13 אל המזל הל הראשון גם אל אל השני, אע״פּ שהעיקר הוא17 השמש, לכן גם אלה שניהם יוסיפו ויגרעו. (6) וכן תעשה שנה בשנה.

שבח לאל, נשלם זה הספר, הנותן אמרי שפר18

[^79]35 （1）Chapter．If the disease lingers until the Moon returns to its position 〈at the onset of the disease〉 and neither a wholly fortunate nor wholly unfortunate crisis took place，you should look at the position of the Sun at the onset of the disease ${ }^{1}$ and observe the planets or upper stars that conjoined or aspected it［the Sun］．（2）〈Proceed〉 likewise at the quadratures or opposition or when it［the Sun］reaches the degrees in the circle that are the same 〈distance as its position at the onset of the disease〉，this means 〈two degrees〉 equidistant from the equator［i．e．， Aries $0^{\circ}$ or Libra $0^{\circ}$ ］，or from the extreme south and north 〈of the ecliptic〉 ［i．e．，Capricorn $0^{\circ}$ or Cancer $o^{\circ}$ ］，or a degree whose rising time by day is the same as the rising time of another 〈degree〉 by night，${ }^{2}$ as is written in the Book of the Beginning of Wisdom，${ }^{3}$ because they have a great power．${ }^{4}$ （3）This is the rule：all the 〈contents of the〉 chapters I mentioned for the Moon apply to the Sun as well．（4）If a year has passed，at the beginning of the second year observe all the aspects and all the crises．（5）If you know the rising sign at the onset of the disease，determine the revolution of the year，adding $87^{\circ} 15^{\prime 5}$ to the ascendant degree，and observe how the planets aspect the first sign，also the second $\langle\operatorname{sign}\rangle$ ，although the Sun is the root，so that these two［the rising sign at the onset of the disease and the revolution of the next year］increase and decrease．（6）Proceed likewise every year．

God be praised，this book，which gives goodly words（after Gen．49：21），has been completed．

PART FOURTEEN

NOTES TO THE BOOK OF THE LUMINARIES
${ }^{[1]}$ 1－2：He sends forth His light ．．．great light from Himself．This begins the cosmological prelude of the introduction to Sefer ha－Me＇orot and inquires about the source of the Sun＇s and the Moon＇s light in the frame－ work of a cosmology that divides reality into＂three worlds．＂It corre－ sponds to the presentation of the＂uppermost world＂in the theological－ exegetical excursus embedded in the long commentary on Exodus 3：15， where Ibn Ezra refers to＂the light of the angels．＂See long comm．on Ex． 3：15，§3：1，below，pp．553－555．Because Ibn Ezra uses the terms＂angels，＂ ＂holy angels，＂＇Elohim，the Tetragrammaton，and other designations of the divine interchangeably，a reasonable assumption is that here too he is referring to the metaphysical supernal domain of the separate intelli－ gences．
［2］2：Host of heaven，Hebrew צבא השמים．Ibn Ezra construed this biblical expression（Deut．4：19，17：3； 2 Kings 17：16，21：3，5，23：4，5；Isa．34：4 et passim）as encompassing all of the fixed stars of the eighth orb．The
 שחלקו חכמי המזלות הצורות על שמנה וארבעים，הוא למעלה מגלגלי המשרתים， ＂ומצאנו שהוא מתנועע ממערב למזרח מעלה אחת בשבעים שנה．＂＂Therefore we know that the host of heaven，that is，the immense multitude 〈of stars〉 that the astrologers have divided into 48 constellations，is above the orbs of the planets；we have found that it［the host of heaven］moves from west to east 〈at a rate of〉 one degree in 70 years＂（ $\$ 1.2: 4, \mathrm{pp} .182-183$ ）． He employed this expression extensively in his biblical commentaries （comm．on Ps．8：4；19：2；82：1；89：8；103：21；136：4；146：6；148：2；long comm．on Ex．3：15；20：13；33：21；long comm．on Gen．1：14；1：16；2：1； comm．on Deut．4：19；comm．on Eccl．1：13；1：19；comm．on Hos．2：1； comm．on Dan．7：14），as well as in one of his theological monographs （Ha－Shem，1985，p．428）．

［3］2：The luminous stars，Hebrew כוכבי אור．Below，at $\$ 1: 5$ ，Ibn Ezra spells out this expression and writes：＂the luminous stars，namely，the planets．＂He took the expression from Ps．148：3，and explained it in
 ואחר כן הזכיר כל כוכבי אור，בעבור שיש להם אור גדול，בעבור היותם קרובים ＂he mentioned first＇Sun and Moon＇，because they are the rulers，then he mentioned＇all luminous stars＇，because they have a great light，because they are close to the Earth．＂A similar opinion，making the
 אין לה אור כי אם מאור השמש, ואין ככה שאר המשרתים ולא הכוכבים העליונים "The Moon, the lowest of all, has no light of its own but only the light coming from the Sun; but this does not apply to the rest of the planets or the upper stars, which are themselves luminous" ( $\$ 1.3: 12$, pp. 32-33). Ibn Ezra conveys a similar opinion in his answer to a query about the calendar posed by David b. Joseph of Narbonne (Three Questions, 1847, p. 2), and in his Sefer ha-'Ibbur (Book of intercalation), a work about the Jewish calendar ('Ibbur, 1874, p. 5b). Ibn Ezra probably picked up this idea from Avicenna (ca. 395-1037), although Macrobius (395-493), too, endorsed this opinion (Grant, 1996, p. 393).
${ }^{[4]}$ 2: God emanated ... lesser luminary. In this passage Ibn Ezra uses the peculiar terminology of Gen. 1:16 and echoes the main ideas he read in this verse ("And God made the two great luminaries: the greater luminary to rule the day, and the lesser luminary to rule the night; and the stars."): the Sun is designated "the greater luminary" and it "rules over the day," the Moon is designated "the lesser luminary" and it "rules by night"; the stars, which in Gen. 1:16 rule by night together with the Moon, are designated "the host of heaven and all the luminous stars [that] rule with the lesser luminary."
${ }^{[5]}$ 3: The Sun is close ... second orb. This is the only locus in Ibn Ezra's entire oeuvre where he categorically places Mercury and Venus above the Sun. As a rule, in his astrological works he employs the traditional Ptolemaic order of the planetary orbs: Saturn, Jupiter, Mars, Sun, Venus, Mercury, Moon. See, for example, Reshit Hokhmah, 1939, I, vii: 15-18; Mishpeṭei ha-Mazzalot, MS Schoenberg 57, f. 71; Ṭe‘amim II, § 2.6:5-6, pp. 196-197; Moladot, MS BNF 1056, f. 6ob. Maimonides, too, places Mercury and Venus above the Sun in the Guide of the Perplexed (written around 20 years after Ibn Ezra's death), where he not only sketches the history of the controversy about the relative position of Mercury and Venus with respect to the Sun but also lets us know that this system had prominent supporters in Muslim Spain (where both Ibn Ezra and Maimonides were born): "The doctrine of all the ancients was that the spheres of Venus and Mercury are above the sun. Know this and keep it entirely present in your mind. Then Ptolemy came and decided in favor of the opinion that they were both below the sun, saying that the greatest likeness to a natural order would be manifested in the sun's being in the middle with three planets above and three below. Then came
latter-day groups of people in Andalusia who became very proficient in mathematics and explained, conforming to Ptolemy's premises, that Venus and Mercury were above the sun. In fact, Ibn Aflah of Sevilla, whose son I have met, has written a celebrated book about this" (Guide of the Perplexed, 1963, II: 9, p. 268). Ibn Ezra, in the two versions of Sefer haTe'amim, acknowledges a partial heliocentric system according to which


 לכל אחד מהם. ולפי דעתי שדברי כולם אמת, כי פעם הם למטה ופעם הם למעלה, "There is a great dispute among scholars about whether Venus and Mercury are above or below the Sun; this uncertainty arose because nobody can see them when they are in conjunction with the Sun, and also because they both have the same eccentric circle. But in my opinion all of them are right, for sometimes they [i.e. Venus and Mercury] are below and sometimes they are above 〈the Sun〉, and this requires a long explanation" (Te‘amim II, $\$ 2.5: 1-2, \mathrm{pp} .194-195$ ); see also TTe‘amim I, §1.3:8-9, pp. 30-33.
${ }^{[6]}$ 3: Therefore the power ... Sun's own light. This passage applies the same argument that Ibn Ezra puts forward in his two commentaries on Gen. 1:16 to explain why the power of the two luminaries should be regarded as greater than the power of the stars, even though the Moon is one of the smallest celestial bodies: what matters is the luminaries' closeness to the Earth, not their size. See long commentary on Gen. 1:16: וחכמי המדות מודים כי השמש היא הבריאה הגדולה, רק הלבנה קטנה מכב הככבים, שהם צבא השמים והמשרתים, חוץ מככב חמה ונוגה; אם כן איך יקרא הכתוב הירח המאור הגדול? והתשובה: כי הכתוב לא דבר, רק כיר כנגד האור ההוה בארץ, על כן לא הזכיר שם 'ירח', רק 'מאור', והיה אורה גדול בעבור היותה קרובה "The astronomers agree that the Sun is the great created entity, but the Moon is the smallest among the stars, that is, the host of heaven and the planets, except for Mercury and Venus. How, then could Scripture designate the moon the 'great luminary'? Answer: this is because Scripture refers to the light that falls on Earth; hence it does not mention 'the Moon,' but the 'luminary', and its light is great because it is close to the Earth."
${ }^{[7]} 4-8$ : Because the host $\ldots$ conceals it from sight. This passage provides a full description of the superlunar domain, which is divided into the same three levels as the "middle world" in the long commentary on

Exodus 3:15: the upper level of the fixed stars (see Me'orot $\S 1: 4$; corresponds to long comm. Ex. 3:15, $\$ 2: 4$, below, pp. 553-554), the middle level of the five planets and the Sun (see Me'orot $\S 1: 5-6$; corresponds to long comm. Ex. 3:15, \$2:2, below, pp. 553-554), and the lower level of the Moon (see Me’orot $\$ 1: 7$; corresponds to long comm. Ex. 3:15 § 2:3, below, pp. 553-554). By leaving the Moon by itself in the lower third level of the superlunar domain, Me'orot $\$ 1: 7$ prepares the reader for the chief role that the Moon is about to play in the following discussion of the critical days.
${ }^{[8]} \mathbf{9 - 1 0}$ : And what is under ... nothing is lower. This passage offers a succinct description of the sublunar domain, which corresponds closely to the presentation of the "lower world" in the long commentary on Exodus 3:15 ( $\$ 1: 2-7$, below, pp. 553-554), focusing on the constant mutability of this domain, which is a consequence of the variations in the motions of the superlunar bodies.

## $\$ 2$

${ }^{[1]}$ 2: Exaltation, Hebrew: גבהות, lit. highness. To denote the astrological concept of exaltation (see note on She'elot I, $\S 7.5: 4$ ), in his astrological oeuvre as well as elsewhere in Sefer ha-Me'orot (see below, $\S 10: 1 ; \$ 27: 1$; §30:5), Ibn Ezra generally uses כבוד, lit. honor, a neologism that is a calque from the Arabic sharaf. Here, though, Ibn Ezra uses גבהות, lit. highness, a calque from the Greek hypsoma (Bouché-Leclercq, 1899, pp. 192199). Note also that to denote the astrological concept of dejection, which is the counterpart of exaltation, at $\$ 10: 2$ below Ibn Ezra uses שפלות, lit. lowness, a word that also betrays a Greek origin. The use of גבהות in Sefer ha-Me'orot is a unicum in Ibn Ezra's astrological oeuvre. For these two Hebrew words of Greek origin Ibn Ezra drew, in all likelihood, on the Baraita de-Shemu'el/Baraita de-Mazzalot, two interrelated astronomicalastrological works dating from seam between Antiquity and the Middle Ages, or on the astrological history embedded in the fifth chapter of Abraham Bar Hiyya's Megillat ha-Megalleh (Scroll of the Revealer). See Baraita de-Mazzalot, 1998, ch. 14; Baraita de-Shmu'el ha-Qatan, 1998, ch. 8; Megilat haMegaleh, 1924, pp. 121, 129, 130, 132, 133, 137 et passim.
${ }^{[2]}$ 2: When it is ... all the sick recover. A similar explanation of why Aries is the Sun's exaltation is given in Țe‘amim I: וזה המזל הוא בית כבוד"
（השמש בעבור כי שם תחל לנטות לפאת הישוב，ויראה כחה בעולם．״＂This sign ［i．e．，Aries］is the house of exaltation of the Sun because that is where it begins to incline towards the ecumene and its［the Sun＇s］power becomes perceptible in the world＂（ $\$ 2.6: 1, \mathrm{pp} .46-47$ ）．
${ }^{[3]}$ 3：When it［the Sun］．．．diseases increase．This is why Libra is the

 העולם．והפך זה בהכנס השמש במזל מאזנים，כי אז יחלו העלים לבלות ויחל האדם ＂Ptolemy said that the whole sign of Aries is the exaltation of the Sun，meaning that there its power resembles the power of a king，because the world is renewed then．The opposite occurs when the Sun enters the sign of Libra，for then the leaves begin to wither and men begin to sicken and the soul is depressed＂（\＄2．7：1－2，pp．198－199）． Cf．Tetrabiblos，1980，I：19，p． 89.
${ }^{[4]} 4$ ：In the ascending semicircle ．．．in the descending $\langle$ semicircle $\rangle$ ．The terms＂ascending semicircle＂and＂descending semicircle＂are defined in
 ומהמעלה הצומחת עד קו התהום，יקרא חצי הגל העלגל העולה；והחצי הצי האחר，שהו שהוא מקו התהום עד המעלה השוקצת ומהמעלה השוקעת עד קו חצי השמים，חצי הגלגל ＂The two quadrants，from the midheaven to the ascendant degree，and from the ascendant degree to the lower midheaven，are called the ascending semicircle；the other half，from the lower midheaven to the descendant degree，and from the descendant degree to the midheaven，$\langle$ is called〉 the descending semicircle＂（Reshit Hokhmah，1939，III，xl：23－26）． Here Ibn Ezra probably draws on Al－Qabīṣīs Introduction to Astrology： ＂The two quadrants of the $\langle$ circle $\rangle$ from the midheaven to the ascendant point and from the ascendant point to the fourth are called the ascending half；the two remaining quadrants are called the descending half＂（2004， I：56，pp．48－49）．A similar definition is offered in Mishpetei ha－Mazzalot， MS Schoenberg 57，f． 72.
${ }^{[5]}$ 5：Those who＂watch the winds．＂Ibn Ezra picked up this expression from Eccl．11：4；in his commentary on this verse he explained it as follows：：
 ＂This＇wind’ indicates that in the following days it will not rain；then，why should I take my possession，the seeds，and bury it in the earth？．．．Therefore 〈one who watches the wind〉 should
not rely on his knowledge and on what he has experienced, because weather is changeable." Thus, according to Ibn Ezra, those who "watch the winds" are people who use experimental and observational astronomical knowledge to find out "when the Sun returns to a certain position in the zodiac" in order to forecast the weather. For the use of this figure in an astrological context, Ibn Ezra may have been inspired by the introduction to Ptolemy's Tetrabiblos: "The more observant farmers and herdsmen, indeed, conjecture, from the winds prevailing at the time of impregnation and of the sowing of the seed, the quality of what will result; and in general we see that the more important consequences signified by the more obvious configurations of sun, moon, and stars are usually known beforehand, even by those who inquire, not by scientific means, but only by observation" (Tetrabiblos, 1980, I: 2, 8-9).

## $\S 3$

${ }^{[1]}$ 1: The Moon ... living creatures. Ibn Ezra offers a similar description of the Moon's astrological properties in Mishpetei ha-Mazzalot: ... הלבנה ברי ויראה כחה בכל צמח ובכל לח, בקשואים והקרות, בנהרות הסמוכים אל הים הגדול, "The Moon ... its power is visible in every plant and in everything moist, in melons and pumpkins, in the rivers that are near the ocean, in the brain and in the bone marrow" (MS Schoenberg 57, f. 78). See also Liber de Rationibus Tabularum: "Nunc vero de Luna ... Cognita autem mutatio quam facit in mari et in flaminibus mari vicinis et in omnibus humidis talibus qualia sunt cerebrum et medulla animantium, in augmento quoque et diminutione lactis, et in cucumenti et cucurbita et melonibus." (1947, p. 97).
 lit. judges: For this meaning, see in Sefer ha-Moladot the expressions דייני המזלות, lit. judges of the zodiacal signs (MS BNF 1056, f. 46b), and דורוניוס שהוא ראש הדיינים, meaning: Dorotheus, the leading astrologer (MS BNF 1056, f. 491). See also in the glossaries, s.v. "judge," Hebrew דן.
${ }^{[3]}$ 2: Those knowledgeable ... in their books. This is how Ibn Ezra refers to his astrological sources for the aforementioned astrological properties of the Moon. As a rule, he is reticent about revealing his sources in his introductions to astrology, where one expects to find this sort of information. However, in Țe‘amim I he writes: וטעם תולדת המשרתים"

קשה ונמצא בספר הארבעה שערים לבטלמיוס, שאמר כי הלבנה קרה ולחה בעבור "The explanation of the natures of the planets is complicated and may be found in the Tetrabiblos by Ptolemy, who said that the Moon is cold and moist because of the vapor that ascends from the Earth to it and because it is below the Sun" ( $\$ 1.5: 1, \mathrm{pp} .32-33$ ). Similar accounts of the Moon's astrological properties may be found in medieval Arabic introductions to astrology: Kitāb al-Madḥal, 1996, IV: 1, v, pp. 137-138; VII: 9, v, pp. 316-317; AlQabīṣī, 2004, II: 36-41, pp. 83-87; Kitāb al-Tafhīm, 1934, §396-434, pp. 240-253; Abbreviation, 1994, V: 28-31, p. 67.
${ }^{[4]}$ 3: Crisis, Hebrew: גבול, lit. limit. For an explanation of this term, see above, pp. 4-5. To denote the notion of crisis, Ibn Ezra coined the word גבול, lit. limit (pl. גבולים), a calque of the Arabic al-buḥrān, which is in turn a transliteration from the Syriac buḥrānā. Note that the Hebrew גבול, in the context of Ibn Ezra's astrological works, denotes also "term" (see Me'orot $\$ 23: 6 ; \$ 24: 12,13 ; \$ 30: 5$ ) and "climate" (see TTe‘amim, 2007 [Glossary of Technical Terms], s.v. "climate," p. 379). But the use of גבול for crisis is confined to Sefer ha-Me'orot, with only two exceptions, She'elot I, $\$ 6.1: 6$ and She'elot III, $\$ 6.2: 6$. This is no accident, since there we find explicit references to Sefer ha-Me'orot in close connection to medical crises. Ibn Ezra eschews בחראנים, the Hebrew transliteration of al-buḥrān used by other Jewish medieval authors. See, for example, Kelal Qaṭan, 2005, 55, 67, 70, 73, 94, pp. 51, 55, 57, 59 et passim; Wars of the Lord, 1923, V, 2:6, p. 204.
${ }^{[5]} 3-4$ : The great physicians ... they look at the Sun. The two main ideas regarding the critical days, attributed here to the "great physicians," can be found in Kitāb 'ayyām al-buḥrān, the Arabic translation of Galen's De diebus decretoriis by Ḥunayn Ibn Isḥaq al-'Ibādī (809-873):
(a) As for the idea that the Moon is accountable for occurring the critical days in the 7 th, 14 th, 20 th or 21 th, and 27 th or 28 th days after the onset of the disease, Galen writes: "This is because we find, if we examine this, that the cause of all (changes) which occur in everything in the numbers of the days is the Moon, and that most of its change occurs to things when it comes into quadrature or in opposition. For, if women conceive or give birth, or if the beginning of something occurs when the Moon arrives in Taurus, then the great change occurs in this thing when the Moon revolves in the circle of the Zodiac, and it arrives in Leo or in Scorpio or in Aquarius. Nevertheless, it arrives in Leo at the quarter
of the circle in one week, and it arrives in Scorpio at the opposition in two weeks. And likewise it arrives in Aquarius at the quarter also in three weeks. This must be the case due to the fact that the Moon, as I said before, traverses the circle of the Zodiac in approximately $27^{1 / 3}$ days ... Accordingly, I say that the Moon, when it comes in quartile or in opposition, and the beginning of the illness is a good beginning, then the illness will make a good change. But if the beginning of the illness is bad, then it makes a bad change. This accords with what the astronomers agree about, so you are able to investigate it, and to become acquainted with it in the patients" (On Critical Days, 1999, §3.5.4, p. 213; §3.6.4, p. 216).
(b) As for the second idea, namely, that the Moon is involved in acute diseases that last for up to one month, whereas the Sun is involved in chronic diseases, Galen writes: "Among the periods, some occur in a certain number of days, and some occur in a certain number of the months. The periods which occur in the number of the days are the weeks, and their progression is in accord with the progress of the Moon. As for the periods which occur in the number of the months, their progression is the progression of the Sun" (On Critical Days, 1999, §3.7.1, p. 217).
${ }^{[6]} 4$ : But if it does not ... as I shall explain. The explanation of the conditions for the reliance on the Sun for chronic diseases and presentation of the corresponding procedures are deferred to the very last section of Sefer ha-Me'orot. See below, $\$ 35: 1-6$; see also $\$ 10: 2$ and $\$ 13: 2$.
${ }^{[7]}$ 5: Pay no attention ... on the fourth day. This is a reference to the numerological interpretation of the critical days, as found in some of the Hippocratic treatises, which must be interpreted against a background of Pythagorean beliefs. See, for example, Epidemics, I: 3: "Fevers attended by paroxysms at even number of days, reach their crisis also in an even number. ... The first period [of fever] in those maladies which reach the crisis in an even number of days is, $4,6,8,10,14,20,24,30,40$, 60,80 , or 120 days. ... It must be noted that if a crisis occurs on any other day than those mentioned, there will be a relapse and also it may prove a fatal sign" (Hippocratic Writings, 1978, p. 101). See also Lloyd, 1987, pp. 265-266. Ibn Ezra could have learnt about this theory from AlKindỉs On the Reasons of the Crises of Acute Diseases, where Hippocrates is explicitly mentioned as the source for the doctrine that if a crisis occurs on an odd day the disease is alleviated; on an even day, it is aggravated
(Al-Kindī, 1975, pp. 163-164, 182). But Ibn Ezra's outright rejection of this interpretation echoes Galen's own sharp criticism of this approach, as conveyed in Kitāb 'ayyām al-buḥrān: "If there were a power in the number of the days itself, for the working of the crisis, then it would not necessarily follow that the crisis occur in the acute illnesses in the odd days for the most part, and in the even days for the least part. ... Therefore, it is not due to the fact that every even number is feminine, and every odd number is masculine that the crisis occurs in the acute illnesses in the odd days, since one must not generalize that the odd number is stronger than the even number. Nor if we were to generalize that it is stronger than it, is it necessary that the feminine be the weaker of the two, and the stronger of the two be masculine. Nor if we say furthermore that the even number is feminine, and the odd masculine is it necessary that the crisis of the acute illnesses occur in a masculine number, and the crisis of the chronic illnesses occur in a feminine number. And all of their speaking nonsense about the strengths of the numbers is between repulsiveness and ugliness. Often when Pythagoras comes to mind. I marvel at him since he was a wise man, and (at the same time) he was content to say about the numbers that their power could reach that much. But this is not the time for speaking nonsense with him who speaks nonsense" (On Critical Days, 1999, §3.8.8, p. 223; §3.8.9, p. 224).
> ${ }^{[8]} 7$ : Keys of the Moon. Ibn Ezra defines the keys of the Moon in 'Olam I ( $\$ 48: 1-14, \mathrm{pp} .84-85$ ) and 'Olam II ( $\$ 18: 1-13, \mathrm{pp} .168-169$ ) as 12 points in the Moon's orbit that play a role in forecasting rain ('Olam $\mathrm{I}, \S 47: 4$, pp. 84-85): conjunction and opposition with the Sun ( 1 and 7 ), $12^{\circ}$ ahead or behind conjunction or opposition with the Sun ( $2,6,8$ and 12), $90^{\circ}$ from the Sun (4 and 10), and $45^{\circ}$ from the Sun (3,5,9 and 11). For Ibn Ezra's sources thereof, see notes in 'Olam, 2010, pp. 137-139, 210-211. Note that nowhere else does Ibn Ezra refer to the distances between the keys of the Moon in terms of aspects or demi-aspects. A similar use of the keys of the Moon in connection with the crises, but without mention of the keys of the Moon, may be found in Al-Kindīs On the Reasons of the Crises of Acute Diseases (Al-Kindī, 1975, pp. 182-183).

${ }^{[9]}$ 6-7: But the root ... twenty-fourth $\langle$ days $\rangle$. This passage, which comes just after Ibn Ezra's condemnation of the "statements of the praters," paraphrases the continuation of the passage in Kitāb 'ayyām al-buḥrān (quoted above in note on $M e$ 'orot $\$ 3: 5$ ) where Galen criticizes the numerological Pythagorean interpretation of the critical days: "It suffices
at this point that the Moon changes what is on the Earth, and that the greatest of its change occurs in the weeks, and then afterward, that it effects a change inferior to this in the halves of the weeks" (On Critical Days, 1999, \$3.8.9, p. 224).

## $\$ 4$

${ }^{[1]}$ 1: Center, Hebrew מוצק. See note on Mivharim II, $\$$ 4.3:2.
${ }^{[2]}$ 3-4: The correct approach ... 〈and not eight days〉. Here an attempt is made to distinguish between the regular reckoning, on the one hand, and the Greek reckoning that counts the first and the last day, on the other. Thus whereas tertian fevers are counted every other day in the regular reckoning, in the Greek reckoning they are counted every third day. See Hippocratic Writings, 1978 ("Introduction") p. 22.
${ }^{[3]}{ }^{1-7}$ : Know that $\ldots$ and 8 hours. Such an account, in which the eccentric circle, the epicycle, and the mean motion of the Moon are taken into account to determine the critical days, is unique in Ibn Ezra's oeuvre. But Ibn Ezra mentions the three circles of the Moon and the irregularities in its motion in Liber de Rationibus Tabularum: "Antequam dicam de diversitatem itineris eius, ratiocinabor de recto itinire eius et quanto tempore redeat ad punctum unde processit. Nec est dissensio inter Ptholomeum et indos quin luna tres magnos circulos habeat, unum similem circulo firmamenti, alterum circulum declinationis secundum latitudinem, tertium cuius centrum egressum est a centro terre qui circulus spatio 27 dierum et fere quia paulo minus 8 horarum peragat totum firmamentum. Indi autem asserunt lunam in hoc circulo fixam esse sicut sol fixus est in suo circulo excentrici. Et Ptholomeus ratione ostendit lunam brevem circulum habere in quo ipsa movetur cuius centrum est in quarti circuli circumferentia" (1947, pp. 98-109). In addition, in the introduction to his short commentary on the Pentateuch, in a calendrical discussion about the beginning of the month, Ibn Ezra offers an account of the periods of the Moon's orbit according to its return to a given position in the zodiac (sidereal month), its motion in its eccentric cycle, its motion in its epicycle, and its return to its ascending node (draconitic month):עוד הדבר" וער וער
 מוגבלות, ואם צד סוב גובה גלגל היוצא, אשר מוצקו רחוק סוב גלגל התלי כדעת חכמים, כי מהלך הגלגל הקטן הפך זה באמת ותמים.״ "Still
the most crucial issue remains，whether the month 〈begins〉 when the Moon completes a revolution around the zodiac，which is 27 days and several hours，or whether when it completes a revolution of the eccen－ tric circle，whose center is offset from the center of the Earth，or whether when it completes a revolution of the circle of the Dragon［i．e．，the epicy－ cle］，as the scientists maintain，for the motion of the 〈Moon on the〉 epicy－ cle is absolutely in the other direction．＂
${ }^{[4]} 9$ ：I shall show... days，or not．See below，$\S 11: 1-4, \S 16: 1-5, \S 34: 1-3$ ．

## §5

${ }^{[1]}$ 1：Someone may ask ．．．experience a crisis？A tertian fever is one that appears every third day；a quartan fever，every fourth day．Here Ibn Ezra appears to echo Galen＇s line of thinking about these two types of fevers as conveyed in On the Critical Days：＂The best physician bears the slanders against him，however difficult．For they（i．e．the slanderers）seek from us that we determine the outcome of the illness always，even if we have not found a trustworthy sign，and that we rely on it．．．．When it is possible for you to rest upon something reliably，then decide his case by what has become clear to you．And if the sign which appeared to you is unclear， then look at a day，and investigate the condition of the patient on the day after it．But if it is also impossible for you in this to judge anything in him which is trustworthy for you，and to rest upon its reality，then keeping silent is more appropriate for you than prognosticating a judgement（i．e． giving a prognosis）in which you are mistaken ．．．So，I say（for example） that this fever which begins is an every－other－day fever（tertian），or a quartan，or a fever with paroxysms everyday（quotidian），or that it is not one of these fevers，but it is a continuous acute fever which will not surpass the fourth day．However，it is not possible for you in the beginning of every fever to know its outcome，unless its beginning reliably indicates what kind of fever it is．You know this also from the theory of the crisis＂ （On Critical Days，1999，§1．12．5，p．154；§1．12．6－7，p．155）．
${ }^{[2]}$ 2：Nature，Hebrew תולדת．For this neologism，see note on Mivḥarim II， §5：3．
${ }^{[3]}$ 2：Because the Moon ．．．according to $\langle$ its $\rangle$ power．Here Ibn Ezra adopts the same approach he develops regarding the doctrine of elec－
tions, namely, that the ad hoc indications of the electional horoscope, or the ad hoc indications of the Moon on the critical days may be compatible with the deterministic astrological judgments of the natal horoscope. In other words: on the critical days the Moon does not have power to totally annul the disease or its nature, which were already determined by the patient's natal horoscope; but the Moon does have the power "to augment or reduce anything signified by the stars" (as nicely put in Mivharim I, $\S 1: 1$ ), that is, to alter the development of the disease to some extent, as a function of the Moon's relative power vis-à-vis the astrological system on the critical days.
$\$ 6$
${ }^{[1]}$ 1: Upper orb, Hebrew: הגלגל הצליון. Here, as well as in 'Olam I, §17:7 (pp. 62-63), 'Olam I, §1:2 (pp. 156-157), Reshit Hokhmah, 1939, X, lxxv: 15,18 and elsewhere, the upper orb is identical with the eighth orb of the fixed stars. However, in other parts of his oeuvre (notably Țe‘amim II §1.2:5 [pp. 184-185], Reshit Hokhmah [1939, IX, lxxv: 3], comm. on Amos 5:8, long comm. on Ex. 20:13, and elsewhere), Ibn Ezra places the upper orb above the orb of the zodiacal signs and the fixed stars and makes it identical with the ninth orb, which transmits the daily motion to all the orbs below it. This ambiguity mirrors the problematic cosmological status of the ninth orb: because it is starless, it lacks the basic raison dètre of the other orbs. In TTe'amim II Ibn Ezra regards the existence of the ninth "upper" orb as logically compelling because of the slow motion of the orb of the fixed stars (Te'amim II $\$ 1.2: 4-6$, pp. 183-185 [and notes on pp. 264-266]; Sela 2003, pp. 224233).
${ }^{[2]}$ 2: Know that the power ... who launders it. A similar idea, illustrated by the same example, is found in Ibn Ezra's introduction to his commentary on Ecclesiastes, written in Rome in 1140, the first biblical commentary he composed after he left Muslim Spain:הנה ראינו: ילבינו" הבגדים השטוחים לשמש, ויחשכו פני הכובס; והלא הפועל תועל אחד יוצא מפועל אחל אחד

 "We have seen that the garments spread out in the Sun are whitened, whereas the launderer's face is blackened, even though the action is performed
by the same agent！Therefore the effects of actions change according to the difference in the natures of the receivers 〈of these actions $\rangle$ ．Also the thoughts of men change according to the difference in the nature of each body，and the natures 〈of bodies〉 change according to the differ－ ences in the upper configurations，in the position of the Sun，in the one who receives its power，in the cities，religions，and foods；who can count them！＂

## $\$ 7$

${ }^{[1]}$ 1：We should respond ．．．cold 〈nature〉．Al－Kindī，in On the Reasons of the Crises of Acute Diseases，also presents an example showing that if three patients have different bodily constitution，they will have different critical days．Al－Kindī，1975，pp．167－168，186－187．
${ }^{[2]} 3$ ：It is known that there are nine general complexions．This is a ref－ erence to the nine Galenic temperaments or mixtures，as explained in Galen＇s Mixtures：＂There are pure，unadulterated qualities－heat，cold－ ness，dryness，and moisture．Clearly the bodies that receive these quali－ ties will be hot，cold，dry，or wet in the full，accurate sense．Now，these bodies should be considered as the elements of all objects subject to growth and decay，while all other bodies－those of animals，plants，and all inanimate things，such as bronze，iron，stone，or wood－have some intermediate status between these primary elements．None of these lat－ ter types of body is either completely hot or completely cold，completely dry or completely wet；they are either absolutely midway between these opposites $\ldots$ or else they are closer to one or the other of the qualities in each of the two oppositions．In the former case，where the body is exactly in the middle of both oppositions，．．．the body is termed＇well balanced＇without qualification．Where one quality predominates over the other，in either one or both of the oppositions，the body is not well balanced．．．．If the above is a correct account－and it is－then we may confidently assert that there are nine different kinds of mixture in all：one well balanced，the other eight not well－balanced；of these eight four which are ill balanced in a simple sense（wet，dry，cold，or hot）， and another four which are ill balanced in a composite way（hot and wet，hot and dry，cold and wet，cold and dry）＂（Galen，1997，pp．223－ 225）．
${ }^{[1]}$ 1：Saturn，Mars，or Mercury．Mercury is placed here together with Saturn and Mars，the two malefics，because，as Ibn Ezra puts it，Mercury is＂a mixed planet，sometimes benefic and sometimes malefic．＂See note on Mivḥarim II，§2：1．
${ }^{[2]}$ 1：Complexion．See below，note on $\$$ 29：2．
${ }^{[3]}$ 3：Sixth，eighth，and twelfth places．These are the unfortunate horo－ scopic places．See note on Mivharim II，§ 2：3．
${ }^{[4]}$ 4：Powerless ．．．under $\langle$ the ray of $\rangle$ the Sun．For the condition of being a planet under the ray of the Sun and its power in this condition，see below note on $\$ 14: 1-8$ ．
${ }^{[5]}$ 4：Leo，Sagittarius，or Aquarius．This is a reference to the＂signs of power．＂See Mivharim I，$\S 7: 1-3$ and notes．See also She＇elot II，$\S 1.5: 2$ and Mivharim II，§6：5．
${ }^{[6]}$ 4：Ruler of the nativity．See note on Mivharim $\mathrm{I}, \S 4: 1$ ．
${ }^{[1]}$ 2：Judgments，Hebrew משפטים．This Hebrew neologism is used by Ibn Ezra throughout his work and by later Jewish medieval authors in two main senses：（a）the various manifestations of astrological influence，as if they were divine decrees working through the agency of the heav－ enly bodies；（b）the rules by which the astrologer can determine astro－ logical influences．Like the Latin iudicia（employed by Ibn Ezra in his Latin writings），משפטים is derived from the Arabic aḥkām al nujukūm （lit．judgments of the stars）．But Ibn Ezra identified a source in Psalm
 השמש，ויש משפטים בערכים מכחישים אלה לאלה ובעבור זה יטעו בעלי הדין， ＂Judgments of［the Lord］—It is known that the judgments of astrology are according to the configura－ tion of the planets in relation to the Sun；because some 〈astrological〉 judgments are mutually contradictory，the experts in 〈astrological〉 judg－ ments make mistakes；therefore it is written that the judgments of the

Lord are true and righteous altogether＂（comm．on Ps．19：10，1525）．For the usage of this term，see Sela，2003，pp．116－123．
${ }^{[2]}$ 2－3：Know that there are two methods，．．．a general method ．．．and ．．． a method that applies to the individual ．．．〈the native＇s〉 wisdom．Here Ibn Ezra uses the lexical pair פרט and כלל＂particular＂and＂general，＂ to give the gist of two methodologies used in astrology：פרט，meaning ＂particular，＂encapsulates the method that considers the astrological fate of human beings individually，through analysis of their natal horoscope， which is the main method employed in the doctrine of nativities；כל， meaning＂general，＂applies to the second method，which includes human beings in larger social，physical，or geographical units；this is the chief method employed in world astrology．
${ }^{[3]}$ 4：But the $\langle$ method that applies to the $\rangle$ individual does not cancel out the general 〈method〉．The same approach is tersely defended by Ibn Ezra in the introduction to Sefer ha－Moladot（Book of Nativities），where he uses the same lexical pair：＂דיני הכללים יבטלו הפרטים＂＝＂judgments about collectives take precedence over those about individuals＂（Moladot，MS BNF 1056，f．46a）．For the text and an analysis of this introduction， see＇Olam，2010，pp．34－40，281－291．For similar uses of פרט and כלל， see Mivharim II，§5：2（and note there），＇Olam I，§7：2，pp．56－57；Reshit Hokhmah，1939，vi：2－3；X，lxxv：25－26．
${ }^{[4]}$ 5：For if we find ．．．benefit from women．This illustrates the second method，which incorporates human being into larger social，physical，or geographical units．This method focuses on the general significations of the planets，which affect various collectives of human beings as a function of their place of birth，nationality，religion，age，gender，craft，social status， etc．It corresponds closely to the second method，which，according to Ibn Ezra，is employed in the doctrine of elections．See Mivharim I，$\S 5: 1-2$ ， Mivharim II，$\$_{5: 1-3}$ ，and corresponding notes．
${ }^{\text {［5］}}$ 6：The same applies to the doctrine of elections．Ibn Ezra applies the same twofold method outlined here，at $\$ 9: 2-3$ ，in the doctrine of elections．See Mivharim I，$\S 1: 4$ and Mivharim II，$\S 1: 6$ ．For the first， general method，see Mivharim $\mathrm{I}, \S 5: 1-2$ and Mivharim $\mathrm{II}, \S 5: 1-3$ ；for the second method，which applies to the individual，see Mivḥarim I，§2：1－3， $\S 3: 1-3, \$ 4: 1-2$ and Mivharim II，$\$ 2: 1-4, \$ 3: 1-3$ and $\$ 4: 1-2$ ．Moreover， in Mivharim II，\＄5：2 Ibn Ezra employs the same lexical pair פרט and
,כלל, "particular" and "general", to illustrate how the same two methods are applied in the doctrine of elections. See note there.
${ }^{[6]}$ 8: But the truth... more correct. Corresponds to Mivharim II, $\$_{5: 2}$, where Ibn Ezra emphasizes that a harmonious combination of the two method results in more effective astrological predictions. See note there.
${ }^{[7]} 9$ : Indeed ... was healthy? Here Ibn Ezra shows how the aforementioned rule (above, $\S 9: 4$ ), according to which "the method that applies to the individual does not cancel out the general method" (or, as he put in Sefer ha-Moladot, "judgments about collectives take precedence over those about individuals"), works in medicine: physicians should state their prognosis taking into account the pulse, urine, and general behavior of the patient when healthy, as reflecting the general characteristics of healthy human beings, although they should also take into consideration the particular symptoms of the disease, which ultimately depend on the patient's nativity.

## $\$ 10$

${ }^{[1]}$ 1: Chapter, Hebrew שצר. The chapters of Ibn Ezra's books are usually headed by this word; for example, Sefer ha-'Ibbur (the Book of Intercalation) and 'Iggeret ha-Shabbat (the Epistle on the Sabbath), which are divided into three such "chapters," and Reshit Hokhmah and the first version of Sefer ha-Te'amim, which are divided into ten. In Sefer ha-Me'orot, by contrast, Ibn Ezra employs this word sporadically to introduce sections ( $\$ \$ 10-19, \$ 21$ and $\$ \$ 34-35$ ).
${ }^{[2]}$ 1: Exaltation, Hebrew כבוד. See note on She'elot I, §7.5:4. To denote the concept of exaltation, Ibn Ezra uses גבהות above, at \$2:1, instead of כבוד. See note there.
${ }^{[3]}$ 2: Dejection, Hebrew שפלות. lit. lowness. A planet is said to be in its house of dejection if it is in the house opposite its exaltation. Ibn Ezra generally uses קלון to denote the astrological concept of dejection. Here, though, Ibn Ezra uses שפלות, lit. lowness, a calque from the Greek tapeinoma (Bouché-Leclercq, 1899, pp. 192-199). As such, this Hebrew word is the counterpart of גבהות, denoting the concept of exaltation, betraying a Greek origin, too, and used above, at $\$ 2: 1$. As in the case
of גבהות，שפלות is used to denote the astrological concept of dejection in Baraita de－Shemu＇el，Baraita de－Mazzalot，and in the astrological history embedded in the fifth chapter of Abraham Bar Hiyya＇s Megillat ha－ Megalleh（Scroll of the Revealer）．See Baraita de－Mazzalot，1998，ch．14； Baraita de－Shemu＇el ha－Qatan，1998，ch．8；Megilat haMegaleh，1924， pp．130，132，136， 137 et passim．See Glossary，s．vv．＂house of dejection，＂ ＂degree of dejection．＂
${ }^{[4]}$ 1－2：If the Moon ．．．houses［their detriment］．This is identical word－ for－word to Kelal Qaṭan，2005，78－79，p． 57.

## $\$ 11$

${ }^{[1]}$ 2：If at the onset ．．．planet＇s nature．This is identical word－for－word to Kelal Qaṭan，2005，80，p． 58.
${ }^{\text {［2］}}$ 1－4：If the Moon ．．．〈nature of the〉 aspect．This passage studies the four possible cases in regard to whether the Moon is aspected or not by a planet at the onset of the disease and on the day of crisis：（a）If the Moon is aspected by a planet neither at the onset of the disease nor on the day of crisis，which is what occurs in the majority of the cases，the prognosis should be based on an ad hoc horoscope cast at the time of the onset of the disease．This is similar to the case in which a client turns to the astrologer with a question in the framework of the doctrine of interrogations．That this is a central aspect of the prognosis is borne out by the fact that Ibn Ezra continues to discuss this subject in $\S 12: 1, \S 16: 1-5, \S 17: 1, \S 19: 1-3$ ， $\$ 22: 4$ ．（b）If the Moon is aspected only on the day of crisis，the prognosis is based on the nature of the aspecting planet．（c）If the Moon is aspected only at the onset of the disease，the patient will not experience a crisis on the expected day．（d）Only if the Moon is aspected both on the day of the onset of the disease and on the day of crisis is the nature of the aspect （see note on Mivharim I，$\S 2: 1$ ）taken into account for the prognosis．
${ }^{[3]} 4$ ：If at the onset $\ldots$ 〈nature of the〉 aspect．Corresponds to $\$ 34: 2-3$ below．
${ }^{[4]} 4$ ：As I will explain［i．e．，the aspects］．See below，$\$ 22: 1-4, \S 26: 7, \$ 27: 7$ ， § 29：1，§31：2－4，§32：4－11．
${ }^{[1]}$ 1: If the Moon ... ascendant sign. This passage resumes the discussion of the point made at $\S 11: 1$ : taking into account that the Moon is not aspected by a planet-neither at the onset of the disease nor on the day of crisis-it assumes that one should seek knowledge about the patient from the indications of an ad hoc horoscope cast at the time of the onset of the disease. For the cardines, the places that are succedent to the cardines, and the cadent places, see note on Mivharim $\mathrm{I}, \$ 2: 1$. The succedent places that are "not connected to the ascendant sign" and indicate misfortune are the second and eighth places; this is because they have no aspect to the ascendant. By contrast, the fifth place is associated with the ascendant by trine and the eleventh place by sextile; consequently they indicate good
 כי הוא סמוך אל היתד הנכבד, והוא למעלה מהארץ והוא במבט ששית אל המעלה הצומחת. ואחריו הבית החמישי: א׳״צ״פ שהוא תחת הארץ הוא עם המעלה הצומחת "Of the succedent places the strongest is the eleventh, because it is adjacent to the dignified cardo, which is above the Earth, and is in sextile to the degree of the ascendant. Next 〈in power〉 is the fifth place: although it is beneath the Earth it is in trine to the degree of the ascendant" (\$3.5:8-9, pp. 64-65).

## $\$ 13$

${ }^{[1]}$ : If the Moon ... the eclipse. This is identical word-for-word to Kelal Qaṭan, 2005, 81, p. 58.
${ }^{[1]}$ 1-8: If the Moon ... testimony is valid. Ibn Ezra devoted the sixth chapter of Reshit Hokhmah I, a section of Mishpeṭei ha-Mazzalot, and a section of 'Olam II to an exposition of the various conditions in which a planet, after being in conjunction with the Sun, gradually moves away from it and then approaches it until it again conjoins the Sun. In this process, the planet's power gradually waxes and wanes. The current passage applies this conditions of the planets vis-à-vis the Sun to determine the extent to which the testimony of a planet that aspects the Moon at the onset of the disease should be regarded as valid for the prognosis
of the disease．For the conditions of the upper planets vis－à－vis the Sun，see Reshit Hokhmah，1939，VI，liv：19－lv：23，which follows closely Kitāb al－Madhal，1996，VII：2，v，pp．276－277，Mishpeṭei ha－Mazzalot， MS Schoenberg 57，f．74，and＇Olam II，$\S 17: 1-15$ ，pp．168－169．For the conditions of the lower planets vis－à－vis the Sun，see Reshit Hokhmah， 1939，VI，lv：24－lvi：9；Mishpeṭei ha－Mazzalot，MS Schoenberg 57，ff．75－ 76；and＇Olam II，$\S 17: 16-17$ ，pp．168－169．For the conditions of the Moon vis－à－vis the Sun，see Reshit Hokhmah，1939，VI，lvi：9－19．Thus， according to Reshit Hokhmah，Saturn and Jupiter are＂burnt＂（נשרפים）or in the＂domain of burning＂（גבול השרפה）when between $16^{\prime}$ and $6^{\circ}$ from the Sun；Mars，between $16^{\prime}$ and $10^{\circ}$ ；Venus and Mercury，between $16^{\prime}$ and $7^{\circ}$ ；and the Moon，between $16^{\prime}$ and $6^{\circ}$ ．Saturn and Jupiter are said to be ＂under the rays of the Sun＂（תחת אור השמש）when they are between $6^{\circ}$ and $15^{\circ}$ from the Sun；Mars，between $10^{\circ}$ and $18^{\circ}$ ；Venus and Mercury， between $7^{\circ}$ and $12^{\circ}$ ；and the Moon，between $6^{\circ}$ and $12^{\circ}$（Mishpeṭei ha－ Mazzalot gives slightly different values）．As for the planets＇powers in
 ＝והוא תחת האור אז תשוב הכח אליו מעט，וכל מה שיהיה רחוק הוא יותר טוב״ ＂When a planet is burnt it has no power，and when it leaves the domain of burning and is under the rays $\langle$ of the Sun〉，it regains its power；and the further away the better＂（ibid．，VI，lv：5－8）．
${ }^{[1]}$ 2：Intersection of the $\langle$ two great〉 circles．This refers to the two points where the zodiac intersects the equator．These two circles stand，respec－ tively，for the eighth orb of the fixed stars and the ninth starless orb that imparts the daily motion to the other inferior orbs．Ibn Ezra refers to the intersection of these two circles whenever he alludes to the vernal and autumnal equinox，Aries $0^{\circ}$ and Libra $0^{\circ}$ ．See，for example，the introduc－
 והוא מתחבר בשני מקומות，שהוא ראש טלה ומאזנים，עם גלגל המזלות，ואז ישתוו היום ＂We know that there is a sort of uppermost orb above all 〈the other orbs $\rangle$ ，and all $\langle$ the orbs $\rangle$ are driven by its motion．It［the superior orb］intersects the orb of the zodiacal signs in two places，namely，the head of Aries and the head of Libra，and then day and night are equal＂ （ $\$ 1.2: 5-6$, pp．182－185）．See also ‘Olam I，§13：1，pp．58－59；TTe‘amim I， $\$ 2.12: 3,6$, pp．50－51；§8．1：6，pp．90－91；Țe‘amim II，$\$ 2.7: 10$, pp．198－199； ＇Ibbur，1874，p．81；comm．on Amos 5：8．
${ }^{[2]} 1-2$ : The degree that is the same $\ldots$ as Sagittarius $20^{\circ}$ and Cancer $10^{\circ}$. This passage defines a degree A on the path of the Moon, whose distance from the equinoxes or from the solstices (degree $C$ ) is the same as the distance between degree $C$ and degree $B$, which represents the position where the Moon was at the onset of the disease. In other words, degrees $A$ and $B$ are equidistant from degree $C$. In this definition, the equinoxes (Aries $0^{\circ}$ and Libra $0^{\circ}$ ) are referred to as "the intersection of the $\langle$ two great〉 circles" and the solstices (Cancer $0^{\circ}$ or Capricorn $0^{\circ}$ ) are referred to as "extreme south and north." Ibn Ezra repeatedly mentions similar pairs of degrees in his astrological works on elections and interrogations. See Mivharim I, $\S 6: 1, \S 2.1: 1$; Mivharim II, $\S 6: 15$, She'elot III, $\S 6.2: 3$. But the current passage stands out because it is accompanied by examples that clarify the definition. See below, $\$ 35: 2$, where Ibn Ezra directs the reader to Reshit Hokhmah for an additional definition. See note there.

$$
\text { § } 16
$$

${ }^{[1]} 1$ : If the rising sign ... onset of the disease $\rangle$. This is identical word-forword to Kelal Qaṭan, 2005, 82, p. 58.
${ }^{[2]}$ 1-2: If the rising sign $\ldots$ will not be severe. This passage is focused on the "rising sign at the onset of the disease," and continues the discussion from $\S 11: 1$ above. The main point of this discussion is that when the Moon is not aspected by a planet-neither at the onset of the disease nor on the day of crisis-one should seek knowledge about the patient from an ad hoc horoscope cast at the onset of the disease. Here the severity is a function of two factors: (a) whether the ascendant at the time of the onset of the disease comes out at the equinoxes (head of Aries of Libra) or close to them, or at the solstices ("the extreme south of north") or close to them; (b) whether this ascendant is calculated at a geographical location of a low or of a high latitude. This is analogous to the factors that play a role in the rectification of the horoscopic places, where the sizes of the places, notably the tenth place, become increasingly distorted (i.e., more or less than $30^{\circ}$ ) as the latitude where the horoscope is cast is higher and as the ascendant is closer to "the extreme south or north. For an example, see She'elot I, $\$ 10.3: 1-2$ and $\$ 10.3: 6$. Te'amim I gives an account of the methods used by the astrologers for calculating the horoscopic places. These methods highlight the role of the zodiacal position of the ascendant and of the location where the horoscope is cast:'ועתה שים לבך: דע כי תקון"

הבתים על שני דרכים. הדרך האחד במעלות גלגל המזלות, שהם ישרות בין שיהיה המזל העולה ראש טלה, או חציו, או ראש סרטן, או חציו, בכל הגבולים. והכלל שתתן לכל בית ובית שלשים מעלות, ותחל מהמעלה הצומחת. והדרך השני להיות הבתים מתוקנים כפי מרחב הארץ ומצעדי המזלות עליה. כי אם היה המזל הצומח תחלת סרטן בגבול החמישי, לעולם יהיה בחצי השמים פחות מחצי דגים, שהוא הבית התשיעי, והפך זה אם היה המזל הצומח ראש גדי, והיה כן בעבור היות אלה שניהם סוף צפון ודרום. והנה כל חכמי המזלות מודים כן, גם חכמי כלי הנחושת, כי יש ראיות רבות על זה." = "Now pay attention: know that there are two methods for correcting the places. The first method is in degrees of the zodiac, which are equal whether the degree of the ascendant is the head of Aries, or its middle, or the head of Cancer, or its middle, in any of the climates. The general rule is that you should assign 30 degrees to any place and begin from the degree of the ascendant. The second method is to correct the places according to the latitude of the country [i.e., of the native] and the rising times of the zodiacal constellations there. For if the degree of the ascendant in the fifth climate is the beginning of Cancer, then less than the middle of Pisces, which is the ninth place, will always be at midheaven; the opposite happens if the degree of the ascendant is the head of Capricorn. This is so because these two [i.e., the beginnings of Cancer and Capricorn] are $\langle\mathrm{in}\rangle$ the extremes of the north and of the south [i.e., in the tropics]. All the astrologers agree about that, as well as the experts with the astrolabe, because there are many proofs for that" ( $\$ 10.2: 1-6, \mathrm{pp} .96-97$ ).
${ }^{[3]}$ 4: King Ptolemy, Hebrew תלמי המלך. Claudius Ptolemy is Ibn Ezra's most important astrological and scientific source; he refers to him more often than to any other scientist or astrologer. The persona known to Ibn Ezra, however, is not the historical scientist of classical antiquity but a compound of legend and myth. This is reflected in the fact that there are two very different ways in which Claudius Ptolemy is designated in Ibn Ezra's astrological, scientific and non-scientific work:
(1) Batalmiyūs, that is, Ptolemy in an Arabic accent, is used in all of the astrological works that we know for certain were part of the astrological encyclopedia composed in Béziers in 1148: Reshit Hokhmah I, Tee'amim I, Sefer ha-Moladot, She'elot I, Mivharim I, and 'Olam I. For Reshit Ḥokhmah I, see Reshit Hokhmah, 1939, I, vi: 12 et passim; for Te'amim I, see TTe'amim, 2007 ("Authorities and Sources"), p. 355, s.v. "Ptolemy"; for Sefer ha-Moladot, see Moladot, MS BNF 1056, f. 46b et passim; for 'Olam I, see 'Olam, 2010, ("Authorities and Sources"), p. 321, s.v. "Ptolemy"; for She'elot I, see below, Appendix E, on p. 548, s.v. "Ptolemy"; for Mivharim I, see below, Appendix D, on p. 545, s.v.
"Ptolemy." Baṭalmiyūs is also used in the comm. on Amos 5:8; HaShem, 1985, pp. 424, 425 et passim; Ibn al-Muthannä’s Commentary, 1967 (Parma version, "introduction") p. 301; Neḥoshet I, BNF 1061, f. 148b, 156a.
(2) King Talmai, or Talmai, the post-biblical or talmudic Hebrew equivalent of king Ptolemy, is used in all the other astrological works: She'elot II, Mivharim II, 'Olam II, Țe'amim II, Sefer ha-Me'orot, Sefer Mishpeṭei ha-Mazzalot, and the recently found Sefer ha-Tequfah. For She'elot II, see below, Appendix E, on p. 548, s.v. "Ptolemy"; For Mivharim II, see below, Appendix D, on p. 545, s.v. "Ptolemy"; for 'Olam II, see 'Olam, 2010, ("Authorities and Sources"), p. 321, s.v. "Ptolemy"; for TTe‘amim II, see Țe‘amim, 2007 ("Authorities and Sources"), p. 355, s.v. "Ptolemy"; for Sefer ha-Me'orot, see below, Appendix F, on p. 551, s.v. "King Ptolemy"; for Mishpeṭei ha-Mazzalot, see Mishpeṭei ha-Mazzalot, MS Schoenberg 57, f. 69 et passim; for Sefer ha-Tequfah, see Tequfah, JNUL $8^{\circ} 3916$, f. 59a. King Talmai is also used in Neḥoshet I, BNF 1061, f. 151b; Neḥoshet II, MS Mantua 10, f. 37a; Ibn al-Muthannä’s Commentary, 1967 (Parma version, "introduction") p. 301; 'Ibbur, 1874, pp. 81, 88; Mispar, 1895, p. 45.

Ibn Ezra probably inherited the mythical king Ptolemy from Abū Ma‘shar’s Kitāb al-Madhal: "Post Alexandrum Macedonem Grecie Reges Egypto cclxxv annis imperasse narrantur, quorum $x$, continuo succedentes omnes uno Ptholomei nomine vocati sunt. Ex quibus unus ex Philadelphia ortus in Egypto regnans astronomie Librum Almagesti ionica lingua scripsit. Eidem nonnulli et Astrologie Tractatum Quatuor Partium ..." (Kitāb al-Madḥal, 1996, IV: 9, viii, p. 56 [translation of Hermann of Carinthia]). Ibn Ezra in turn created a new mythical king Ptolemy who sponsored the translation of the Septuagint. See long comm. on Ex. 33:21 (quoted and analyzed in 'Olam, 2010, p. 273). See also She'elot II, $\S 1: 1$ and note. For King Ptolemy in Ibn Ezra's work, see Sela, 2003, pp. 296305.
${ }^{[4]} 4$ : Short signs ... long sings. See note on Mivharim II, §7.1:6, s.v. "long or short signs."
${ }^{[5]} 4-5$ : Therefore, King Ptolemy ... short signs. The earlier discussion in $\$ 16: 1-3$ is fleshed out in the current passage by showing how at high latitudes the aspects are distorted as a function of whether they are measured in the long signs (quartiles become trines and sextiles become quartiles) or in the short signs (quartiles become sextiles and
trines become quartiles). The same rule is laid down and attributed to Ptolemy in Sefer ha-Moladot, where Ibn Ezra asserts that he tested it and found it to be faulty and that those who came after Ptolemy disagreed
 ששית במזלות ארוכים במצעדים כפי מרחב הארץ, אלה שמית שניהם יחשבו כמבט רביעית;
 "Ptolemy said: if trine takes place in the signs of short rising times, or sextile in the signs of long rising times according to the latitude of the country, these two will be considered as quartile; if quartile takes place in the signs of short rising times, it will be considered as sextile. But the scientists who came after him did not agree with him; I also tested this and found their statements to be right" (Moladot, MS BNF 1056, f. 50a). That Ibn Ezra thought that Ptolemy's Tetrabiblos was his source for this statement may
 ארבעה שערים שבטלמיוס אומר שאם היה הכוכב בתחלת הבית העשירי, נתן למבטו הרביעית תשעים מעלות, ולשלישית מאה ועשותרים במעלות גלגל היושר, ואם היה הכוכב במעלה הצומחת, נתן למבטו השלישית מאה ועשרים מעלות במצעדי הארץ.״ $=$ "In the Tetrabiblos, too, we find that Ptolemy says that if a planet is at the cusp of the tenth place, he gives its aspect of quartile 90 degrees and 〈its aspect of〉 trine 120 degrees at sphaera recta, and if the planet is at the degree of the ascendant he gives its aspect of trine 120 degrees at the rising times for the country" ( $\$ 10.1: 3, \mathrm{pp} .94-95$ ). I could not find such a precise statement in Tetrabiblos. But see Tetrabiblos, 1980, III: 10, pp. 287-307.
${ }^{[1]}$ 1: Fixed sign, Hebrew מזל נאמן, lit. enduring sign. In Ibn Ezra's various introductions to astrology, the "fixed signs" (Taurus, Leo, Scorpio, and Aquarius) are referred to as מזלות עומדים 'standing signs' (Reshit Hokhmah, 1939, II, xi: 16-17 et passim; Ṭe‘amim I, § 2.13:1, pp. 52-53; Téamim II, §2.3:3, pp. 188-189. Reshit Hokhmah II, OBL 707, f. 116a). By contrast, מזל נאמן is employed in Me'orot $\$ 17: 1$ as well as in Mivharim III, §8.1:4, She' elot III, §6.2:2 and Sefer ha-Tequfah (JNUL $8^{\circ} 3916$, f. 59a). This creates a significant terminological link among these works.
${ }^{[2]}$ 1: If at the onset $\ldots$ another disease. Corresponds to She'elot $\mathrm{I}, \$ 6.1$ : 5; She'elot II, $\S 6.1: 5$; She' elot III, $\S 6.2: 2$; Me'orot $\$ 17: 1$; Epitome totius
astrologiae（1548，Lib．III，cap．x，sig．P4 ${ }^{\text {v }}$ ）．This is identical word－for－word to Kelal Qaṭan，2005，83，p．58．For the tropical，fixed，and bicorporal signs，see note on Mivharim I，$\$ 1.2: 3$ ．

## § 18

${ }^{[1]}$ 1：If the cause of the disease is an excess $\langle$ of a humor $\rangle$ in the body．This statement is grounded in the Hippocratic－Galenic theory that health and illness are determined by the mixture and proportion of the four humors （blood，phlegm，black bile，and yellow bile）in the body．Human health depends on preserving the natural equilibrium of the＂temperament，＂ that is，the mixture of the four humors．Illness was considered to be a violation of this equilibrium，i．e．，the excess of one of the humors．
${ }^{[2]}$ 1－2：If the cause $\ldots$ it is waxing．This is identical word－for－word to Kelal Qaṭan，2005，84－85，p． 58.
${ }^{[1]}$ 1：A sign 〈whose nature〉 corresponds to the nature $\langle$ of the humor〉． Because each of the four humors was associated with one of the four basic elements（yellow bile，fire；black bile，earth；blood，air；phlegm， water），and because the twelve signs were divided into four triplici－ ties，each linked to one of the four basic elements that was considered to be its identical nature（see note on Mivharim I，$\$ 11.2: 5$ ），each of the twelve signs was correspondingly associated with one of the four humors，which was likewise considered to be its＂nature＂：Aries，Leo，and Sagittarius—yellow bile；Taurus，Virgo，and Capricorn—black bile；Gem－ ini，Libra，and Aquarius－blood；Cancer，Scorpio，and Pisces－phlegm． This is how the humors are associated with the signs in introductions to astrology，such as Al－Qabīṣỉs Introduction to Astrology（2004，I：16， pp．24－25）．By contrast，Reshit Hokhmah I，in the sections on each of the zodiacal signs，presents the humor associated with the sign in ques－ tion．See Reshit Hokhmah，1939，II，xi：22，xiv：14，xvii，5－6 et passim．The correspondences there between signs and humors tally with the afore－ mentioned correspondences between triplicities and humors，except for Aries，a fiery sign that is associated with blood instead of yellow bile．See Reshit Hokhmah，1939，II，ix：5．This is not a scribal error：Ṭéamim I，
a commentary on Reshit Hokhmah I, repeats the association between Aries and blood and comments on it (\$2.2:10, pp. 38-39).
${ }^{[2]}$ 2: If it is in a sign ... auspicious sign. Taking into consideration that planets and zodiacal signs were held to have a nature that is cold or hot, dry, or moist, and that diseases were taken to be caused by cold or heat, dryness or moistness, zodiacal signs or planets were held to heal or alleviate a disease if their nature was the opposite of the disease's cause and to aggravate a disease or to be of no benefit for its cure if their nature was the same as the disease's cause. Sefer ha-Me' orot offers several examples of this type: $\S 6: 5, \S 24: 6-7, \S 26: 4, \S 27: 5-6$.
${ }^{[3]} \mathbf{1 - 2}$ : If the Moon ... auspicious sign. This is identical word-for-word to Kelal Qaṭan, 2005, 86-87, p. 58.
${ }^{[4]}$ 3: Everything I have ... no aspects. This means, if the Moon does not form any aspect at the onset of the disease or on the day of crisis, as specified above, at $\$ 11: 1$.
${ }^{[5]}$ 3: The aspects are the basis of $\langle$ astrological $\rangle$ judgments. An almost identical statement is made in the closing sentence of 'Olam I ( $\$ 70: 8$, pp. 96-97).
${ }^{[1]} 1-3$ : Conjunction ... should not rely on it. Corresponds to She'elot II, §7:2.
$\$ 21$
${ }^{[1]}$ 1-2: Opposition ... 〈in the latitudes $\rangle$. Corresponds to She'elot II, §7:34.
${ }^{[1]}$ 1-3: Know that in the astrologers' system ... sextile and trine. The "astrologers' system" for reckoning the aspects, which presupposes that a
horoscope has been previously cast at the time of the onset of the disease and calculates the aspects by means of setting them in the framework of the horoscope's cardines and places, is explained in Ṭe‘amim I: ויהדרך" האחרת המבט המתוקן כפי תקון הבתים, כי אם היה הכוכב במעלה הצומחת, הנה מבט רביציתו בתחלת קו חצי השמים וקו התהום, שהם תחלת הבית העשירי והרביעי המתוקנים במצעדי המזלות. והכלל: אם היה בתחלת יתד, מבטו בשאר היתדות מבט רביעית ונכח. ואם היה במעלה הצומחת והיה מבטו מבט ששית, בתחלת הבית השלישי הוא המבט השמאלי, והימני בתחלת בית עשתי עשר, ומבטו מבט שלישית השמאלי בתחלת הבית החמישי, והימני בתחלת הבית התשיעי. והכלל שהוא ראוי להיות מבטו מבט שלישית הימנית נכח מבט ששית השמאלית, ומבטו מבט שלישית השמאלי נכח מבט ששית הימנית, ואם היה הכוכב בחצי הבית, ראוי להיות מבטיו בחצי כל בית "The other method is to correct the aspect according to the correction of the places, because if the planet is in the degree of the ascendant, its aspect of quartile coincides with the line of midheaven and the line of lower midheaven, which are the cusps of the tenth and the fourth places corrected according to the rising times of the zodiacal signs. This is the general rule: if it is at the beginning of a cardo, its aspects of quartile and opposition are at the other cardines. And if it is in the degree of the ascendant and its aspect is sextile, $\langle$ then $\rangle$ the left〈sextile〉 aspect is at the cusp of the third place, and the right one is at the cusp of the eleventh $\langle$ place $\rangle$, and its left aspect of trine is at the cusp of the fifth place, and the right one at the cusp of the ninth place. (8) The general rule is that its right aspect of trine should be diametrically opposed to the left aspect of sextile, and its left aspect of trine should be diametrically opposed to the right aspect of sextile; if the planet is in the middle of the place, its aspect should fall in the middle of the respective places, when the places are corrected according to the rising times" ( $\$ 10.4: 5-8$, pp. 9899).
${ }^{[2]}$ 4: Now we need... as I have mentioned. See above, $\$ 11: 1$.

$$
\$ 23
$$

${ }^{[1]}{ }_{2}$ : If the conjunction ... diminished slightly. This is because Aries is the Sun's exaltation and Leo is the Sun's planetary house.
${ }^{[2]}$ 1-2: The Moon's conjunction ... not absolute. Sixteen conditions of the Moon vis-à-vis the Sun are presented in the sixth chapter of Reshit "והלבנה:Hokhmah I. The current passage refers to the first three of them

יש לה מהשמש ששה עשר דרכים．האחד שתהיה דבקה עמה，או קודם השמש או אחריה，
 והיא מערבית，זו היא הדרך השנית אז יחל מעט כחה．והשלישית בהיותה רחוקה י״״ב ＂The Moon has sixteen conditions vis－à－vis the Sun．The first when they conjoin，or when it is up to $16^{\prime}$ ahead or behind the Sun．This is the first condition．The second condition when it［the Moon］is distant〈up to〉 $6^{\circ}$ and occidental 〈of the Sun〉；this is the second condition and then its power begins to diminish．The third condition is when it is distant〈up to〉 $12^{\circ ">}$（Reshit Hokhmah，BNF 1056，fol．25a）．
${ }^{[3]}$ 3：Long signs ．．．short signs．See note on Mivharim II，§7．1：6．
${ }^{[4]}$ 4：If the Moon ．．．six degrees．Being in the＂domain of burning＂is the second of the three aforementioned conditions vis－à－vis the Sun，that is， when the Moon is between $16^{\prime}$ and $6^{\circ}$ from the Sun，and the Moon is occidental of the Sun．See above，note on $\$ 23: 1-2$ ．When the Moon，or any other planet is in the＂domain of burning，＂it is said to be＂burnt．＂ When the Moon，or any other planet，leaves the＂domain of burning，＂ it is said to be＂under the rays of the Sun．＂See above，note on $\$ 14: 1-$ 8.
${ }^{[5]}$ 4：Arc of vision，Hebrew קשת המראה：In the second version of Keli ha－ Nehoshet Ibn Ezra explains how to measure the＂arc of vision＂with an astrolabe and defines it as the angular distance between the sun and the moon on the night of the new crescent，plus／minus two－thirds of the northern／southern latitude of the place from which the observation is made．This value is used to determine whether the moon will be visible on the night of the new crescent：if the arc is at least $12^{\circ}$ the moon will be seen，otherwise not．See Nehoshet II，MS Mantua 10，f．44b－45a； Nehoshet I，BNF 1061，f．157b；Yesod Mora＇，2007，I：3，p．74；＇Iggeret ha－Shabbat，1894／5，p．71；＇Ibbur，1874，p．11a；long commentary on קxodus 12：2．For the same concept，Maimonides uses the expression קשת הראייה．See Sanctification of the New Moon，1967，pp．69，71，82， 109 et passim．
${ }^{[6]}$ 6：The planets are in their terms and the Sun is not in its term．The terms are unequal divisions of the signs；for each of them a planet，except the Sun and the Moon．See note on She＇elot I，$\S 7.5: 4$ ．How，then，could Ibn Ezra refer to the Sun＇s term？As explained in TTe＇amim I，the Sun has power in its＂domain＂（the interval from the beginning of Leo to the end
of Capricorn) like the planets in their terms: ליק לקל כן אמרו חכמי המזלות כי" מתחלת אריה עד סוף גדי הוא חלק השמש, והוא החלק הגדול. ויש לשמש כח בחלקה ככח המשרתים בגבולם, גם ככה הלבנה בחלקה הקטן, שהוא מראש דלי עד סוף "Therefore the astrologers said that from the beginning of Leo to the end of Capricorn is the domain of the Sun, and this is the larger domain. The Sun has power in its domain like the power of the planets in their terms; the same applies to the Moon in its smaller domain, which is from the beginning of Aquarius to the end of Cancer" (\$2.5:3-4, pp. 4445). A similar explanation is offered in TTe'amim II, $\S 2.3: 8$, pp. 188-189 and in Al-Qabīṣịs Introduction to Astrology: "The half of the circle from the beginning of Leo to the end of Capricorn is also called the greater half, and this is the half of the Sun, because the same kind of lordship that planets have in their terms, belong to the Sun in the whole of this half; the half from the beginning of Aquarius to the end of Cancer is called the smaller half, and this is the half of the Moon, because in the whole of this half also the Moon has the same kind of lordship as the Sun has in the greater half" (2004, I: 10, pp. 21-22). See also Tetrabiblos, 1980, I: 17, p. 79; Kitäb al-Tafhīm, 1934, §440.

## $\$ 24$

${ }^{[1]}$ 1-3: The Moon's conjunction ... fall ill again. This is identical word-for-word to Kelal Qaṭan, 2005, 88-90, p. 58.
${ }^{[2]}$ 8: If Saturn ... will be diminished. Corresponds to Mivḥarim I, $\$ 4: 1$, where a similar statement is assigned to Dorotheus. See note there. This is identical word-for-word to Kelal Qaṭan, 2005, 91, p. 58.
${ }^{[3]}$ 9: Many said ... signifies vomiting. Corresponds closely to Mivharim I, § 1.3:4 and Mivharim II, § 1.2:3. See note on She'elot I, §4:2, s.v. "giving power."
${ }^{[4]}$ 11: The same applies ... $21^{\circ}$ from it [Libra]. Here Ibn Ezra applies Enoch's approach to Saturn's exaltation, as explained in Te'amim II: "ויאמר חנוך כי כבוד שבתאי בכ״א ממאזנים, שיהיה רחוק מנכח השמש שתי מעלות, " = "Enoch said that the exaltation of Saturn is at Libra $21^{\circ}$, in order that it be $2^{\circ}$ distant from opposition to the 〈exaltation of the〉 Sun, lest it be damaged" ( $\$ 2.7: 7$, pp. 198-199). See also TTe'amim I, $\$ 2.7: 7$, pp. 56-57.
${ }^{[5]}$ 14: I have already mentioned ... reduce $\langle$ misfortune $\rangle$. See above, §19:1-2.

## $\$ 25$

${ }^{[1]}$ 1-3: Trine with Saturn ... long signs. For the distortion of trine, quartile, and sextile in short and long signs, see above, $\S 16: 4-5$ and note.
${ }^{[2]} 4$ : Ray. The ray of a planet is an interval ahead or behind the planet where its influence is still felt. See note on Mivharim $I, \S_{3: 2}$. For examples showing the role that rays play in planetary aspects, see Mivharim II, $\$ 2: 4$ and note, Mivharim I, $\S_{3: 1-3}$.
${ }^{[3]}$ 4: As is written in the Book of Tables. Ibn Ezra presumably composed four versions of the Book of 〈Astronomical〉 Tables (ספר לוחות), two in Hebrew and two in Latin. See Sela and Freudenthal, 2006, pp. 19, 20, 21, 31, 36, 38, 42; Sela, 2003, pp. 22-27. These were accompanied by their canons, a Book of the Reasons behind Astronomical Tables (ספר טעמי הלוחות), or Book on the Use of the Tables (ספר מעשה הלוחות). See She'elot II, $\$ 12.8: 5$ and note. In various parts of his astrological and astronomical work Ibn Ezra provides forward and backward references to a Book of Tables composed by him. For backward references, see: Téamim II, §2.3:5, pp. 188-189; ‘Olam II, §45:4, pp. 184-185; Mishpetei ha-Mazzalot, MS Schoenberg 57, f. 72; Moladot, BNF 1056, f. 76a, 88a, 89a. For forward references, see: Neḥoshet II, MS Mantua 10, ff. 37b, 39a, 48a; Nehooshet III, MS Pinsker 26, f. 58b, 59a.

$$
\$ 26
$$

${ }^{[1]}$ : It is an auspicious sign if the Moon is with Jupiter. This is identical word-for-word to Kelal Qaṭan, 2005, 92, p. 58.
${ }^{[2]}$ 1: Unfortunate place. See note on Mivharim II, §2:3.
${ }^{[3]}$ 2: If it takes place ... will be diminished. This is because Capricorn is Jupiter's dejection. See note on Mivharim II, $\S 7.1: 5$.
${ }^{[4]} 4$ : If the disease ... caused by heat. This is because Jupiter is considered to be a planet with a hot nature. See Reshit Hokhmah, 1939, IV, xliv: 1819.
${ }^{[5]} 5$ : As I have told you regarding Saturn. See above, $\S 24: 8$.
${ }^{[6]}$ 6: Jupiter's power ... young patient. This is because Jupiter holds sway over people between youth and old age, as explained in $T \underset{e}{ }$ amim I, $\$ 4.3: 5$, pp. 74-75. This corresponds to Kelal Qaṭan, 2005, 92, p. 59.
$\$ 27$
${ }^{[1]}$ 5: Eccentric cycle, Hebrew גלגל המוצק. See note on Mivharim II, § 4.3:2.
${ }^{[2]} 7$ : Trine and sextile ... regarding Saturn. For Saturn's trine and sextile with the Moon, see above, $\$ 25: 1$ and $\$ 25: 3$, respectively.
$\$ 28$
${ }^{[1]}$ 3: If the disease ... beneficent than Venus. The underlying theory behind this procedure is that a disease is cured or alleviated by an astrological effect whose nature is the opposite of the disease's cause. Thus a disease caused by heat is cured by the effect of a planet with a cold nature, like Venus (Reshit Hokhmah, 1939, IV, xlviii: 8; xliv: 18-19).
${ }^{[2]}$ 5: If the disease is venereal ... than Jupiter. The rational behind this procedure is the same as in $\$ 28: 3$, above. See note there. Thus, a venereal disease is cured by Jupiter, which signifies "worshipers of God ... houses of prayer and places of God's worship" (Reshit Hokhmah, 1939, IV, xliv: 23,26), and a disease caused by divine worship and reflections about the afterlife is cured by Venus, which signifies "love and promiscuity" (Reshit Hokhmah, 1939, IV, xlviii: 20-21).

$$
\$ 29
$$

${ }^{[1]}$ 1: When it [Mercury] ... sets after sunset. See above, $\S 14: 1-8$ and note.
［2］2：Complexion，Hebrew ממסך．Reshit Hokhmah I explains this term

 הקדמונים שיורה על טוב，והאמת שהאחד יבטל מעשה חבירו וינצל הנולד מן הנזק． ＂Complexion：when one star conjoins another，$\langle$ meaning $\rangle$ they are planets，a new nature is generated from their two natures．As in the case of Saturn and Mars，which are two malefics：it is a fortunate signification when they conjoin，as said by the Ancients．But the truth is that the one cancels the action of the other and the native is saved from harm，so that 〈in fact〉 they do not signify good fortune insofar as their beneficence consists in that they do not harm＂ （BNF 1056，f．25b）．
${ }^{[1]}$ 2：True anomaly，Hebrew מנה מתוקנת．See note on Mivharim I，$\$$ 10．4：3．
${ }^{[2]}$ 2－3：You may know ．．．its perigee．This is fleshed out in Mishpeṭei
 למקום גבהות הגלגל הקטון；הוא יהיה רודה ומושל על ההוה במו במקום שפלותו，ומהמנה המתוקנת תוכל לדעת זה．כי אם היו בין הגבהות והשפלותות，ראה מי שמנתו המו המתוקנת
 מרחק קטון מן הגבהות קרוב יותר אל הגבהות．ואם היו בין השפלות ואו והגבהות ותות ראה מי שמנתו גדולה מהמספר，הוא הרודה；פירוש：שהוא קרוב אל הגבהות מצד אחד ＂Now if two planets are in conjunction，find out which of them is closer to apogee on the epicycle； it governs and rules over the one that is at perigee；and you may know this from the true anomaly．If they are between apogee and perigee，find out the one whose true anomaly，〈measured $\rangle$ in degrees，is smaller than $\langle$ the one $\rangle$ whose true anomaly is greater，and this one is the ruler；explanation： the one whose distance from apogee is smaller is closer to apogee．If they were between perigee and apogee，find out the one whose true anomaly is greater than the number 〈of the other planet＇s true anomaly〉，and this is the ruler；explanation：this one is closer to apogee on one side than that $\langle$ planet $\rangle$ ，whose true anomaly is small because it is at perigee＂（MS Schoenberg 57，f．76）．
${ }^{[3]}$ 5：You should also ．．．inferior in rulership．In astrology，to determine which planet in some astrological configuration is the most powerful
or the ruler（פקיד），the planets participating in this astrological con－ figuration are assigned powers，or portions of power，according to the precedence of their dignities：house，exaltation，triplicity，term，decans． This precedence derives from the fact that，according to the astrologers， these dignities have a hierarchy．This is explained，for instance，in Reshit Hokhmah，1939，I，viii：ולמשרתים ממשלת בגלגל：יש ממשלת בית，：12－15 וממשלת כבוד，וממשלת שלישות，וממשלת גבול，וממשלת פנים．וממשלת הבית חמשה $=$ ＂The planets are assigned lordship over the orb：there is lordship over the 〈planetary〉 house，lordship over 〈the house of exaltation，lord－ ship over the triplicity，lordship over the term，and lordship over the decan．Lordship over the 〈planetary〉 house has five $\langle$ portions of power， lordship over 〈the house of exaltation has four 〈portions of power〉，〈lordship over〉 the triplicity has three，〈lordship over〉 the term has two，and 〈lordship over〉 the decan has one 〈portion of power〉＂．For similar statements see：‘Olam II（ $\$ 16: 3$, pp．166－167）；Mishpetei ha－ Mazzalot（Schoenberg 57，f．80）；Moladot（BNF 1056，f．48a）；Kitāb al－ Tafhìm（1934，§495，pp．307－498）；Tetrabiblos（1980，III：2，pp．232－ 233）；Al－Qabị̣̄i，2004，I：22，p．33；Epitome（1548，Lib．I，cap．ii，sig． $\mathrm{F}_{2}{ }^{\mathrm{r}}$ ）．
${ }^{[4]} 1-7$ ：If the Moon is in conjunction ．．．the victory is total．Discussions about finding out which of two conjoining planets is＂victorious＂over the other（Arabic al－mubtazz）are commonplace in Ibn Ezra＇s astrologi－ cal corpus．These discussions usually entail a comparison of four factors， which Ibn Ezra designates types of＂victory＂（נצוח）：（a）being close to the apogee on the eccentric circle；（b）being close to the apogee on the epicy－ cle；（c）being on the ecliptic or at the higher ecliptical latitude；（d）deter－ mining which of the two is the ruler according to the precedence of their dignities（house，exaltation，triplicity，term，decan）．The following pas－ sage from＇Olam I shows how this procedure works regarding a conjunc－ tion of Saturn and Jupiter，just as in Sefer ha－Me＇orot，although instead of medical astrology the comparison there bears on historical astrology： ＂ובעת המחברת הסתכל אל צניני שבתאי וצדק．וראה אי זה מהם יותר קרוב ממקום גבהותו או ממקום שפלותו כנגד גלגלם הגדול שמוצקו רחוק ממוצק הארץ．והסתכל גם איזה מהם קרוב אל מקום גבהות גלגלו הקטן，ואם שניהם ישרים בהליכתם או שבים אחורנית，ואי זה מהם רחבו צפוני או דרומי，וכמה רחבו，והסתכל לאיזה מהם יש שלטון בבית．והנה，אם מצאת כי שבתאי הוא קרוב אל גבהותו יותר מצדק，או רחבו צפוני וצדק דרומי，או הוא בחשב האפודה，או מרחב שבתאי צפוני יותר רב ממרחב צדק והוא צפוני，או שבתאי בחשב האפודה ומרחב צדק דרומי，או שניהם דרומיים ומרחב

שבתאי פחות ממרחב צדק, גם שבתאי במקום שיש שם שלטון, אז יורה כי העם הקדמון "At the time of the conjunction observe the characteristics of Saturn and Jupiter. Find out which of them is closer to apogee or perigee on their great circle, whose center is different from the center of the Earth. Also observe which of them is closer to apogee on its epicycle, whether both are direct in their motion or retrograde, whether their latitude is southern or northern and how many 〈degrees〉 is its latitude, and observe which of them has lordship in its place. So if you find that Saturn is closer to apogee than Jupiter, or that its latitude is northern whereas Jupiter's is southern, or that it is on the ecliptic, or that Saturn's northern latitude is greater than Jupiter's northern latitude, or that Saturn is on the ecliptic whereas Jupiter's latitude is southern, or that both are southern but Saturn's latitude is less than Jupiter's, or that Saturn is in a place where it has lordship, then it [Saturn] portends that an ancient nation, regardless of where it resides, will not be defeated and will not go into exile" (\$21:1-4, pp. 64-67). For other examples, see She'elot I, §7.3:10-14 (see note there), Țe‘amim I, §7.1:4-9, pp. 88-89 (quoted in note on She' elot $\mathrm{I}, \S 7 \cdot 3: 10-18$ ), Țe‘amim II, §4.4:13, pp. 210-211, Mishpeṭei ha-Mazzalot, MS Schoenberg 57, f. 76, She'elot II, $\S 7.2: 2$, She'elot III, $\S 7.4: 3$. For discussions in medieval introduction to astrology, see Epitome totius astrologiae, 1548 , Lib. III, cap. xii, sig. Q2 ${ }^{\text {r }}$ (the latter reference points to Epitome, 1548, cap. xxiii, sig. $\mathrm{D}^{\mathrm{v}}-\mathrm{D} 4^{\mathrm{r}}$ ); Kitāb al-Tafhīm, 1934, §495, 307-308; Kitāb al-Madḥal, 1996, VII: 5, v, 293-297.
${ }^{[1]}$ 4: [The Sun] is in opposition in Aquarius or Libra. Aquarius is the Sun's detriment, the opposite of its planetary house (Leo), and Libra is the Sun's dejection, the opposite of its exaltation (Aries).
${ }^{[1]}$ 1: One cancels the effect of the other. This is because both Saturn and Mars are malefics. See note on Mivharim II, §2:1.
${ }^{[2]}$ 2: The patient will be saved. This is because both Jupiter and Venus are benefics. See note on Mivḥarim II, §2:1.
> ${ }^{[3]} 3$ : A great calamity. This is because Mercury changes its nature according to the nature of the planets that are close to it, and because opposition and quartile are unfortunate aspects.

${ }^{[4]} 4$ : As I have mentioned. See above, $\$ 32: 3$.
[1]2: The Warrior without the Spear, Hebrew: הגבור שהוא בלא רומח. a Virginis, Arabic: al-simāk al- 'a'zal, "the star on the left hand called 'Spica,'" No. 14 in the constellation of Virgo in Ptolemy's star catalogue (Almagest, 1984, VII: 5, p. 369). This star is found with the same Hebrew name in the star lists for the rete of Ibn Ezra's three versions of Sefer Keli ha-Nehoshet (Book on the astrolabe): Nehoshet I, BNF 1061, f. 159b; Nehoshet II, MS Mantua 10, f. 39b; Nehoshet III, MS Pinsker 26, f. 67b. The same star is also catalogued in Reshit Hokhmah I, in the section on Libra's astrological properties, with a different Hebrew name (הנסמך שאינוי מזויין), but is assigned the same astrological characteristics as in Sefer ha-Me'orot: ושם מן הכוכבים הגבוהים הנסמך שאיננו מזויין, הנקרא סמאך אל עזל, והוא במעלת י״ב בזמן הזה, ורחבו דרומי ב׳ מעלות, והוא מהכבוד הראשון, "There [in Libra], among the upper stars, is the 'unarmed warrior,' called al-simāk al-'a'zal, at $12^{\circ}\langle$ in Libra $\rangle$ at the present time, of southern $\left\langle\right.$ ecliptical〉 latitude $2^{\circ}$, of the first magnitude, of the complexion of Venus and Mercury" (Reshit Hokhmah 1939, II, xxvi: 68).
${ }^{[2]}$ 5: The Eye of the Bull, the Heart of the Lion, and the Heart of the Scorpion, Hebrew: צין השור ולב אריה ולב עקרב. Respectively, a Tauri, $\alpha$ Leonis, $\alpha$ Scorpii; Arabic: al-dabarān, qalb al-asad, qalb al-‘aqrab, No. 14 in the constellation of Taurus (Aldebaran), No. 8 in the constellation of Leo (Regulus), and No. 8 in the constellation of Scorpio (Antares) in Ptolemy's star catalogue (Almagest, 1984, VII: 5, pp. 362, 367,372 ). These stars appear with the same Hebrew names in the lists of stars for the rete of Ibn Ezra's three versions of Sefer Keli ha-Nehoshet (Book on the astrolabe): Nehoshet I, BNF 1061, ff. 157a-159b; Nehoshet II, MS Mantua 10, f. 39a-40a; Nehoshet III, MS Pinsker 26, f. 67a. As they belong to the zodiacal constellations, Reshit Hokhmah I, provides a brief description of their astronomical and astrological characteristics in the sections allocated to the corresponding signs. This is the
description of the＂eye of the bull＂：ושם כוכב המאיר הנקרא עין השור＂ השמאלית，והוא במעלת כ״ח，ורחבו דרומי חמש מעלות וחצי，והוא מהכבוד הראשון ממסך מאדים ונגה，והוא מהכוכבים הממיתים בהגיע בעל ממשלת החיים אליו．״ ＝＂There is there［in Taurus］a luminous star designated the＇northern eye of the bull，〈Taurus〉 $28^{\circ}$ ，of southern 〈ecliptical〉 latitude $2^{1} 2^{\circ}$ ，of the first magnitude，of the complexion of Mars and Venus；it is one of the stars causing death when the lord of the governance over life reaches it＂（BNF 1056，f．6b）．This is the description of the＂Heart of the Lion＂： ＂ושם לב האריה，והוא במעלת י״״ח בזמן הזה，ורחבו שמאלי י״ חלקים，והוא מהכבוד ＂There is the＇heart of the lion，＇$\langle$ Leo $\rangle 18^{\circ}$ at the present time，of northern $\langle$ ecliptical $\rangle$ latitude $10^{\prime}$ ，of the first magnitude，of the complexion of Mars and Jupiter；it is one of the stars causing death＂（BNF 1056，f．10a）．This is the description
 ＂There is the＇heart of the scorpion，＇$\langle$ Scorpio $\rangle 28^{\circ}$ ，of southern $\langle$ ecliptical $\rangle$ latitude $3^{\circ}$ ，of the second magnitude，of the complexion of Mars and Jupiter＂（BNF 1056， f．13a）．
${ }^{[3]}$ 5：The Falling Eagle，Hebrew הנשר הנופל．a Lyrae，Vega，No． 1 in the constellation of Lyra in Ptolemy＇s star catalogue．The＂falling eagle＂is described in the first chapter of Reshit Hokhmah I as an asterism of 10 stars belonging to the eighth among the 21 constellations that are northern to the 12 zodiacal constellations（BNF 1056，f．3b）．TTe＇amim
 ＂Ptolemy called the 〈constellation of the〉＇falling eagle＇the＇almond tree，＇changing the name according to the shape he observed＂（ $\$ 1.2: 5, \mathrm{pp} .30-31$ ）．In the star catalogue in the Almagest，Ptolemy describes this star as follows： ＂The bright star on the shell，called Lyra＂（Almagest，1984，VII：5，p．349）． The name of the star alludes to the shell of the tortoise from which，in Greek myth，the infant Hermes constructed the first lyre．＂Almond tree＂ is a later ascription，accounted for by the shell that encloses this fruit． The attribution by Ptolemy of the same name（amigdala）to the same star appears in Epitome totius astrologiae：＂Est ibi Aquila Cadens in tertio gradu \＆ 45 minutos Latitudo eius in sinistro 62 graduum，\＆est honoris primi，quam Amigdalam Ptolomeus dicit＂（Epitome，1548，cap．x，sig． $\mathrm{Cl}^{\mathrm{v}}$ ）．
${ }^{[1]} \mathbf{1}$ : As I have mentioned. See above $\$ 3: 3, \$ 4: 1-8$.
${ }^{[2]}$ 2-3: Now I give you ... crisis is valid. Corresponds to $\$ 11: 4$, above.
${ }^{[3]}$ 5: Because in one ... less than a minute. This is a reference to the precession of the equinoxes, which in Antiquity and the Middle Ages was considered to be a steady eastward motion of the fixed stars. Throughout his work, Ibn Ezra endorses al-Ṣūfī’s value of a steady motion from west to east of one degree in 70 years for the fixed stars, which corresponds to 51 seconds a year. See Țe‘amim I, § 2.12:10, pp. 50-51; TTe‘amim II, § 1.2:4, pp. 182-183; Neḥoshet I, BNF 1061, f. 159a; Neḥoshet II, MS Mantua 10, f. 39a; Neḥoshet III, MS Pinsker 26, f. 63a; Astrolabio, 1940, p. 20.
${ }^{[1]}$ 1: Look at the position of the Sun at the onset of the disease. This is the only section of Sefer ha-Me'orot that deals with the relationship between the Sun's motion and chronic diseases. The idea is based on a Galenic theory, as formulated in Kitāb 'ayyām al-buḥrān: "Among the periods, some occur in a certain number of days, and some occur in a certain number of the months. The periods which occur in the number of the days are the weeks, and their progression is in accord with the progress of the Moon. As for the periods which occur in the number of the months, their progression is the progression of the Sun, and they are as I am describing. I will make the key of my argument what Hippocrates said, namely that the summery illnesses resolve in the winter, and the wintry illness resolves in the summer. ... Therefore, the cause for the change of the illness which depends on its beginning is the Moon, and the cause of its change which depends on the change in the air (is two-fold): in the case of the whole year, it is the Sun; and in the case of each of the months, it is the Moon" (On Critical Days, 1999, $\S 3.7 .1$, p. 116; §3.7.4, p. 117).
${ }^{[2]}$ 2: The degrees in the circle ... another $\langle$ degree $\rangle$ by night. This refers to a pair of degrees on the path of the Sun, A and B , that are equidistant from a degree $C$, which represents one of the equinoxes (designated "the equator") or of the solstices (designated "the extreme north" or "the
extreme south＂）．In this definition，degree $A$ is the position on the path of the Sun at the time of the prognosis and degree $B$ is the position where the Sun was at the time of the onset of the disease．Similar pairs of degrees are referred to in Mivḩarim I，$\$ 6: 1$（see note there），$\$ 2.1: 2$ ；Mivharim II， $\$ 6: 15$ ；She＇elot III，$\$ 6.2: 3$ ，and above，Me＇orot $\$ 15: 1-2$（see note there）． Unlike all those passages，where the reference is to degrees on the path of the Moon or of a malefic planet，the current passage refers to the Sun＇s path．In addition，the current definition characterizes the pair of degrees in relation to the rising times by day and night．
${ }^{[3]}$ 2：A degree whose rising time $\ldots$ as is written in the Book of the Beginning of Wisdom．The contents of this reference，which character－ izes the pair of degrees defined in the previous note in relation to the rising times by day and night，correspond closely to a passage in the sev－ enth chapter of Reshit Hokhmah I，from which it may be inferred that Abū Ma＇shar＇s Kitāb al－Madhal was Ibn Ezra＇s source for these frequently used pair of degrees．The seventh chapter of Reshit Hokhmah I defines a series of astrological conditions（designated by colorful names）in which more than one planet is involved．The current passage is a reference to a digres－ sion in the section that defines the condition of＂separation＂（הפירוד）： ״ויש לך להסתכל לעולם אל המעלות שהן שוות במצעדיה ועיהן，והדמיון שיהיה כוכב
 שוה והנה יחשבו כאלו הם מתחברים．ודרך אחרתת，כמו שו שיהיו במעלה אחת שת שתהיינה
 מרחקם מראש סרטן שוה，וככה אם היה מרחקם מראש גדי．ואשר מרחקם מראש טלה או ממאזנים שוים יקראו מחברת ישרה，ואשר מרחקם שוה מנקודת צפון ודרום， ＂You should always observe the ＜pairs of〉 degrees that have the same rising times，as when one planet is at Aries $10^{\circ}$ and another at Pisces $20^{\circ}$ ，so that they are equidistant from the equator and they are considered to be as if they were in conjunction． Another way is to take 〈pairs of〉 degrees whose unequal hours are the same，as Leo $16^{\circ}$ and Taurus $14^{\circ}$ ，and this is because they are equidistant from the head of Cancer，and likewise if they were equidistant from the head of Capricorn．The 〈pairs of degrees〉 equidistant from the head of Aries or Libra are designated 〈as being in〉＇direct conjunction＇，and those equidistant from the 〈extreme〉 north or south，namely，the head of Can－ cer and of Capricorn，are designated 〈as being in〉＇opposite conjunction＇＂ （Reshit Hokhmah，BNF 1056，f．26a）．The whole seventh chapter of Reshit Hokhmah I draws heavily on the seventh chapter of Abū Ma＇shar＇s Kitāb al－Madḥal，which deals with virtually the same planetary conditions as

Reshit Ḥokhmah I (Kitāb al-Madḥal, 1996, VII: 5, v, pp. 292-304). Thus, the aforementioned digression in Reshit Hokhmah I echoes a passage in the seventh chapter of Kitäb al-Madhal that deals with the condition of "conjunction": "Et fit duobus modis. Uno videlicet, ex natura graduum signorum concordantium in ascensionibus, ut Aries et Piscis, Taurus et Aquarius, Gemini et Capricornus, Cancer et Sagittarius, Leo et Scorpio, Virgo atque Libra. Cum enim fuerit aliquis planeta in primo gradu Arietis, erit in natura planete qui fuerit in ultimo gradu Pisci, et ipse iungitur ei coniunctione naturali. Et cum fuerit planeta in minus X. gradibus in Ariete, erit iens ad coniunctionem per naturam gradus planete qui fuerit in Pisce in XX gradu ... Secundo: ex gradu signorum concordantium in horis diei. Quia planeta qui est in ultimo gradu Geminorum erit in fortitudine planete qui fuerit in promo gradu Cancri, et planeta qui fuerit in XII gradu Geminorum erit in fortitudine gradus planete qui fuerit in XVIII gradu Cancri ... Fit igitur coniunctio planete qui fuerit in Geminis cum gradu planete qui fuerit in Capricornio ... Et vocatur hec coniunctio oppositionis naturalis" (Kitäb al-Madhal, 1996, VII: 5, v, pp. 297-298).
${ }^{[4]}$ 2: Because they have a great power. For this characterization of these pairs of degrees, Ibn Ezra seems to have drawn on Al-Qabīṣī, who, in his Introduction to Astrology, calls them "powerful" and "sharing in power": "Every two degrees which are the same distance from the beginning of any of the tropical signs are called powerful and sharing in power. For example, the 20th degree of Capricorn and Cancer with the 10th degree of Sagittarius and Gemini, or the 2oth degree of Aries and Libra with the 1oth degree of Pisces and Virgo, and so on for the rest of the signs" (Al-Qabīṣī, 2004, I: 54, pp. 46-47).
${ }^{[5]} 3: 87^{\circ} 15^{\prime}$. This refers to the excess of revolution (Arabic: fadl ad-daur, Latin: revolutio anni), which may be defined as the time measured in degrees of the daily rotation $\left(360^{\circ}=24 \mathrm{~h}\right)$ by which the solar year exceeds the Persian (i.e., Egyptian) year of 365 days. (Kennedy, 1956, pp. 144, 147b). As explained in Țéamim II ( $\$ 6.3: 1-5, \mathrm{pp} .238-239$ ), an excess of revolution of $87^{\circ} 15^{\prime}$ is equivalent to 5 hours and 49 minutes. A similar value is endorsed by Sefer ha-Tequfah (JNUL $8^{\circ} 3916$, f. 67a) and Sefer
 אפילו חלק אחד, שתהיה בין תקופה לתקופה פ׳״ז מעלות גם ט״ו חלקים.״ "The truth is that it has been examined and tested by experience, from today over two hundred years, that between two revolutions there is $\langle$ an excess of) $87^{\circ} 15^{\prime}$ without an error of even one minute" (MS BNF 1056, f. 59a).

PART FIFTEEN

APPENDICES

## APPENDIX A

## MANUSCRIPTS

## Manuscripts of Mivharim I

1 Oxford—Bodleian Library MS Opp. Add. Qu. 160 [Neubauer 2518], (IMHM: F 22230), 1367, ff. 128b-140a.
2 Oxford-Bodleian Library MS Opp. 707 [Neubauer 2025], (IMHM: F 19310), 1410, ff. 156a-165a.
3 Jerusalem-The Jewish National and University Library Ms. Heb. $8^{\circ} 3916$, 15th century, (IMHM: B 546), ff. 82a-88b.
4 Munich, Bayerische Staatsbibliothek, Cod. Hebr. 304, (IMHM: F 01109), 14th-15th century, ff. 116b-228a.
5 Paris, Bibliothèque Nationale de France, héb. 189, (IMHM: F 04173), 14th-15th century, ff. 125b-133b.
6 Vatican, Biblioteca Apostolica Vaticana ebr. 47, (IMHM: F 686), 14th-15th century, ff. 36a-4ob.
7 Warszaw-Zydowski Instytut Historyczny 255, (IMHM: F 10122), 1460, ff. 50b-55a.
8 Firenze, Biblioteca Nazionale Centrale, Magl. III.36, (IMHM: F 11964), 15th century, ff. 14a-21a.
9 Madrid, Biblioteca de la Real Academia de la História 7, (IMHM: F 07370), 15th century, ff. 152a-158b.
10 Munich, Bayerische Staatsbibliothek, Cod. Hebr. 202, (IMHM: F 01649), 15th century, ff. 108b-116a.
11 Paris, Bibliothèque Nationale de France, héb. 1045, (IMHM: F 33996), 15th century, ff. 161a-168b.
12 Vatican, Biblioteca Apostolica Vaticana ebr. 390, (IMHM: F 472), 1436, ff. 76b-82a.
13 Dresden, Sächsische Landesbibliothek, Eb 384 (IMHM: F 20765), 15th century, ff. 65a-69a.
14 Paris, Bibliothèque Nationale de France, héb. 1056, (IMHM: F 14659), 15th-16th century, ff. 74a-79a.
15 New York, Jewish Theological Seminary Ms. 2623, (IMHM: F 28878), 1512, ff. 127a-138b.
16 Vatican, Biblioteca Apostolica Vaticana ebr. 477, (IMHM: F 00530), 1545, ff. 97a-108a.
17 Munich, Bayerische Staatsbibliothek, Cod. Hebr. 45, (IMHM: F 01139), 1552, ff. 510a-517b.
18 Berlin-Staatsbibliothek 219 (Preussischer Kulturbesitz) Or. Fol. 1618 (IMHM: F 1817), 1577, ff. 11-17.

19 Breslau-Juedisch-theologisches Seminar 54, (IMHM: F 46890), 16th century, ff. 41a-42b.
20 Cambridge-University Library Add. 1501 (IMHM: F 17118), 16th century, ff. 67a-73a.
21 Oxford-Bodleian Library MS Hunt. 606 [Neubauer 2026], (IMHM: F 19311), 16th century, ff. 3a-9a.
22 Oxford-Bodleian Library MS Hunt. 606 [Neubauer 2026], (IMHM: F 19311), 16th century, ff. 3a-9a.
23 Berlin-Staatsbibliothek 220 [Or. Qu. 679] (IMHM: F 1779), 16th-17th century, ff. 55a-6ob.
24 Paris, Bibliothèque Nationale de France, héb. 1057, (IMHM: F 14641), 16th-17th century, ff. 36a-36b (fragment from the introduction).
25 Jerusalem, Benyahu У131, (IMHM: F 44750), 17th-18th century, ff. 1a11 b .
26 Jerusalem, Benyahu ע133, (IMHM: F 44867), 1750, ff. 43a-49a.
27 Jerusalem-The Jewish National and University Library Ms. Heb. $8^{\circ} 3906$, (IMHM: B 812), 1749, ff. 84a-93a.
28 New York, Jewish Theological Seminary Ms. 9356, (IMHM: F 49957), 1770, ff. 72a-79a.
29 New York, Jewish Theological Seminary Ms. 2731, (IMHM: F 28984), 17th century, ff. 1a-9b.
30 Nürnberg, Stadtbibliothek, Cent.V.app.4, (IMHM: F 08783), 17th-18th century, ff. 328-356.
31 Oxford-Bodleian Library Mich. 39 [Neubauer 2023], (IMHM: F 19308), 1813, ff. 35a-48b.
32 Jerusalem, Rabbi Yosef Qafah 36, (IMHM: F 47427), 1893, ff. 185b186a.
33 New York-Columbia University X 893 Ib 53, (IMHM: F 42426), 19th century, ff. 34a-37a.

## Manuscripts of Mivharim II

1 Cambridge, University Library Add. 481, (IMHM: F 16778), 14th century, ff. 127a-134b.
2 Jerusalem-The Jewish National and University Library Ms. Heb $8^{\circ} 3573$, (IMHM: B 203), 14th century, ff. 7oa-76a.
3 Philadelphia-University of Pennsylvania, Schoenberg Collection Ljs 57/2, (IMHM: F 09357), 14th century, ff. 61-62 (up to the end of place one).
4 Cambridge-University Library Add. 1517 (IMHM: F 17454), 14th-15th century, ff. 47b-50a.
5 Vatican, Biblioteca Apostolica Vaticana ebr. 47, (IMHM: F 686), 14th-15th century, ff. 41a-44b.
6 Wien, Österreichische Nationalbibliothek, Cod. Hebr. 132 [Schwarz 185], (IMHM: F 01406), 14th-15th century, ff. 4a-5b.
7 Paris, Bibliothèque Nationale de France, héb. 1058, (IMHM: F 33996), 15th century, ff. 8b-13b.

8 Madrid, Biblioteca de la Real Academia de la História 7, (IMHM: F 07370), 15th century, ff. 164a-169a.
9 Firenze, Biblioteca Nazionale Centrale, Magl. III.139, (IMHM: F 11978), 15th century, ff. 133b-139b.
10 Munich, Bayerische Staatsbibliothek, Cod. Hebr. 202, (IMHM: F 01649), 15th century, ff. 144a-150a.
11 New York, Jewish Theological Seminary Ms. 2625, (IMHM: F 28878), 15th century, ff. 131a-139b.
12 New York, Jewish Theological Seminary Ms. 2601, (IMHM: F 28854), 15th century, ff. 124a-127a.
13 Cambridge—University Library Add. 1501 (IMHM: F 17118), 16th century, ff. 77a-85b (end is lacking).
14 Berlin-Staatsbibliothek 220 [Or. Qu. 679] (IMHM: F 1779), 16th-17th century, ff. 55a-6ob.
15 Paris, Bibliothèque Nationale de France, héb. 1057, (IMHM: F 14641), 16th-17th century, ff. 82a-87b.
16 Jerusalem-The Jewish National and University Library Ms. Heb. $8^{\circ} 3906$, (IMHM: B 812), 1749, ff. 84a-93a.
17 Moscow, Russian State Library, Günzburg 421, (IMHM: F 47781), 18th century, ff. 32b-36a.
18 St. Petersburg-Russian National Library Evr. II A 245, (IMHM: F 64521), 18th century, ff. 10a-16b.
19 St. Petersburg-Inst. of Oriental Studies of the Russian Academy B 447, (IMHM: F 53618), 18th-19th century, ff. 97a-103a.
20 Jerusalem-The Jewish National and University Library Ms. Heb $8^{\circ} 2738$, (IMHM: B 785), 1892, ff. 105-111.
21 Jerusalem, Rabbi Yosef Qafah 36, (IMHM: F 47427), 1893, ff. 179b185b.
22 St. Petersburg-Inst. of Oriental Studies of the Russian Academy B 294, (IMHM: F 53427), 18th-19th century, ff. 32a-38a.
23 New York-Columbia University X 893 Ib 53, (IMHM: F 42426), 19th century, ff. 34a-37a.
24 New York-Columbia University X 893 Ib 55, (IMHM: F 42427), 19th century, ff. 36a-39b.
25 New York, Jewish Theological Seminary Ms. 2629, (IMHM: F 28882), 19th century, ff. 123a-135a.
26 Sassoon 789, (IMHM: F 09153), 19th century, ff. 286-291 (up to the beginning of place four).
27 New York, Jewish Theological Seminary Ms. 8197, (IMHM: F 49770), 19th-2oth century, ff. 8a-1ob (end is lacking).
28 Paris, Bibliothèque Nationale de France, héb. 1044, (IMHM: F 33995), ff. 240a-249a.

## Manuscripts of She'elot I

1 Paris, Bibliothèque Nationale de France, héb. 1055, (IMHM: F 14658), 14th century, ff. 41a-48a.

2 Paris, Bibliothèque Nationale de France, héb. 189, (IMHM: F 04173), 14th-15th century, ff. 109a-120a.
3 Cambridge-University Library Add. 1517 (IMHM: F 17454), 14th-15th century, ff. 34a-38b.
4 Munich, Bayerische Staatsbibliothek, Cod. Hebr. 304, (IMHM: F 01109), 14th-15th century, ff. 13a-30b.
5 Vatican, Biblioteca Apostolica Vaticana ebr. 47, (IMHM: F 686), 14th -15 th century, ff. 70a-76b.
6 Oxford-Bodleian Library MS Opp. 707 [Neubauer 2025], (IMHM: F 19310), 1410, ff. 141b-155b.
7 Vatican, Biblioteca Apostolica Vaticana ebr. 390, (IMHM: F 472), 1436, ff. 58a-76a.
8 Napoli-Biblioteca Nazionale "Vittorio Emanuele III", III.F.12, (IMHM: F 11526), 1492, ff. 79b-83b.
9 Paris, Bibliothèque Nationale de France, héb. 1045, (IMHM: F 33996), 15th century, ff. 146a-155b.
10 Firenze, Biblioteca Nazionale Centrale, Magl. III.36, (IMHM: F 11964), 15th century, ff. 21b-30a.
11 Dresden, Sächsische Landesbibliothek, Eb 384 (IMHM: F 20765), 15th century, ff. 54b-6ob.
12 Munich, Bayerische Staatsbibliothek, Cod. Hebr. 202, (IMHM: F 01649), 15th century, ff. 91b-101b.
13 New York, Jewish Theological Seminary Ms. 2601, (IMHM: F 28854), 15th century, ff. 127a-132b.
14 Paris, Bibliothèque Nationale de France, héb. 1056, (IMHM: F 14659), 15th-16th century, ff. 62a-69b.
15 New York, Jewish Theological Seminary Ms. 2623, (IMHM: F 28878), 1512, ff. 76a-89a.
16 Cambridge—University Library Add. 1501 (IMHM: F 17118), 16th century, ff. 33b-45b.
17 Strasbourg, Bibliothèque nationale et universitaire 4024 (IMHM: F 3078), 17th century, ff. 1a-11b.
18 Nürnberg, Stadtbibliothek, Cent.V.app.4, (IMHM: F 08783), 17th-18th century, ff. 260-300.
19 New York, Jewish Theological Seminary Ms. 2631, (IMHM: F 28884), 1708, ff. 16b-23b.
20 Jerusalem, Benyahu ע133, (IMHM: F 44867), 1750, ff. 49a-56b.
21 St. Petersburg-Inst. of Oriental Studies of the Russian Academy A 82/5, (IMHM: F 46243, F52324), 1765, ff. 137b-148a.
22 Jerusalem-The Jewish National and University Library Ms. Heb $8^{\circ} 3931$, (IMHM: B 828), 1769, ff. 40a-56a.
23 New York, Jewish Theological Seminary Ms. 9356, (IMHM: F 49957), 1770, ff. 62a-71a.
24 St. Petersburg-Inst. of Oriental Studies of the Russian Academy B 150, (IMHM: F 53075), 18th century, ff. 181b-186a.
25 St. Petersburg-Inst. of Oriental Studies of the Russian Academy B 118, (IMHM: F 53792), 18th century, ff. 7a-17b.

26 Jerusalem, Benyahu У132, (IMHM: F 44866), 1800, f. 7.
27 St. Petersburg-Inst. of Oriental Studies of the Russian Academy B 70, (IMHM: F 53005), 18th-19th century, ff. 114a-121b.
28 St. Petersburg-Inst. of Oriental Studies of the Russian Academy B 447, (IMHM: F 53618), 18th-19th century, ff. 129a-141a.
29 New York-Columbia University X 893 Ib 53, (IMHM: F 42426), 19th century, ff. 37b-42a.

## Manuscripts of She'elot II

1 Cambridge, University Library Add. 481, (IMHM: F 16778), 14th century, ff. 134b-142b.
2 Philadelphia-University of Pennsylvania, Schoenberg Collection Ljs 57/2, (IMHM: F 09357), 14th century, ff. 63-68 (up to place eight).
3 Firenze, Biblioteca Nazionale Centrale, Magl. III.36, (IMHM: F 11964), 15 th century, ff. 21b-30a.
4 Firenze, Biblioteca Nazionale Centrale, Magl. III.139, (IMHM: F 11978), 15 th century, ff. 109b-118b.
5 Paris, Bibliothèque Nationale de France, héb. 1051, (IMHM: F 14656), 1482, ff. 95a-106b.
6 Wien, Österreichische Nationalbibliothek, Cod. Hebr. 132 [Schwarz 185], (IMHM: F 01406), 14th-15th century, ff. 5b-10b.
7 Madrid, Biblioteca de la Real Academia de la História 7, (IMHM: F 07370), 15th century, ff. 89a-96b.
8 Vatican, Biblioteca Apostolica Vaticana ebr. 477, (IMHM: F 00530), 1545, ff. 53a-53b (fragment).
9 New York, Jewish Theological Seminary Ms. 2631, (IMHM: F 28884), 1708, ff. 67a-74a.
10 Moscow, Russian State Library, Günzburg 421, (IMHM: F 47781), 18th century, ff. 28a-32b.
11 St. Petersburg-Inst. of Oriental Studies of the Russian Academy B 150, (IMHM: F 53075), 18th century, ff. 202a-204b.
12 St. Petersburg-Inst. of Oriental Studies of the Russian Academy B 228, (IMHM: F 69213), 18th century, ff. 131a-133a.
13 St. Petersburg-Russian National Library Evr. II A 245, (IMHM: F 64521), 18th century, ff. 1a-9b.
14 Jerusalem, Rabbi Yosef Qafah 36, (IMHM: F 47427), 1893, ff. 187a-194b.
15 St. Petersburg-Inst. of Oriental Studies of the Russian Academy B 70, (IMHM: F 53005), 18th-19th century, ff. 136a-137b.
16 New York-Columbia University X 893 Ib 55, (IMHM: F 42427), 19th century, ff. 39b-45a.
17 Sassoon 789, (IMHM: F 09153), 19th century, ff. 291-275 (up to place eight).
18 New York, Jewish Theological Seminary Ms. 8197, (IMHM: F 49770), 19th-2oth century, ff. 1a-8a.

## Manuscripts of Sefer ha-Me'orot

1 Oxford—Bodleian Library MS Opp. Add. Qu. 160 [Neubauer 2518], (IMHM: F 22230), 1367, ff. 118a-126a.
2 Paris, Bibliothèque Nationale de France, héb. 1055, (IMHM: F 14658), 14th century, ff. 48b-52b.
3 Vatican, Biblioteca Apostolica Vaticana ebr. 202, (IMHM: F 8699), 14th century, ff. 217a-218b (only the beginning).
4 Vatican, Biblioteca Apostolica Vaticana ebr. 390, (IMHM: F 472), 1436, ff. 138b-146a.
5 Warszaw—Zydowski Instytut Historyczny 255, (IMHM: F 10122), 1460, ff. 64b-68a.
6 Paris, Bibliothèque Nationale de France, héb. 259, (IMHM: F 27838), 1489, ff. 120a-126b.
7 Paris, Bibliothèque Nationale de France, héb. 189, (IMHM: F 04173), 14th-15th century, ff. 120a-125b.
8 Vatican, Biblioteca Apostolica Vaticana ebr. 47, (IMHM: F 686), 14th-15th century, ff. 54a-57a.
9 Cambridge-University Library Add. 1517 (IMHM: F 17454), 14th-15th century, ff. 45a-47a.
10 Firenze, Biblioteca Nazionale Centrale, Magl. III.139, (IMHM: F 11978), 15th century, 4 ff .
11 Dresden, Sächsische Landesbibliothek, Eb 384 (IMHM: F 20765), 15th century, ff. 61a-64a.
12 Paris, Bibliothèque Nationale de France, héb. 1045, (IMHM: F 33996), 15th century, ff. 155b-161a.
13 New York, Jewish Theological Seminary Ms. 2625, (IMHM: F 28878), 15th century, ff. 123a-131a.
14 New York, Jewish Theological Seminary Ms. 2626, (IMHM: F 28879), 15th century, ff. 134a-140a.
15 Munich, Bayerische Staatsbibliothek, Cod. Hebr. 202, (IMHM: F 01649), 15 th century, ff. 101b-108a.
16 Madrid, Biblioteca de la Real Academia de la História 7, (IMHM: F 07370), 15th century, ff. 72a-76b.
17 Leiden, Universiteitsbibliotheek, Scal. 14, (IMHM: F 19186), 15th-16th century, ff. 63a-71b.
18 Berlin-Staatsbibliothek (Preussischer Kulturbesitz) Or. Fol. 1618 (IMHM: F 1817), 1577, ff. 1-3.
19 Paris, Bibliothèque Nationale de France, héb. 1056, (IMHM: F 14659), 15th-16th century, ff. 70a-73b.
20 Paris, Bibliothèque Nationale de France, héb. 1057, (IMHM: F 14641), 16th-17th century, ff. 88a-93b.
21 Berlin-Staatsbibliothek 220 [Or. Qu. 679] (IMHM: F 1779), 16th-17th century, ff. 61a-64b.
22 St. Petersburg-Inst. of Oriental Studies of the Russian Academy B 150, (IMHM: F 53075), 18th century, ff. 196a-202a.
23 Nürnberg, Stadtbibliothek, Cent.V.app.4, (IMHM: F 08783), 17th-18th century, ff. 301-327.

24 Jerusalem, Benyahu У133, (IMHM: F 44867), 1750, ff. 70a-76a.
25 New York, Jewish Theological Seminary Ms. 2636, (IMHM: F 28889), 1772, ff. 144a-149b.
26 Warszaw—Zydowski Instytut Historyczny 112, (IMHM: F 10096), 1784, ff. $47 \mathrm{a}-51 \mathrm{~b}$.
27 Moscow, Russian State Library, Günzburg 414, (IMHM: F 43036), 18th century, ff. 26a-31a.
28 St. Petersburg-Inst. of Oriental Studies of the Russian Academy B 228, (IMHM: F 69213), 18th century, ff. 124b-130b.
29 St. Petersburg_Russian National Library Evr. II A 245, (IMHM: F 64521), 18th century, ff. 17a-24b.
30 Oxford—Bodleian Library Mich. 39 [Neubauer 2023], (IMHM: F 19308), 1813, ff. 72a-82a.
31 St. Petersburg-Inst. of Oriental Studies of the Russian Academy B 131, (IMHM: F 53073), 1816, ff. 61b-66b.
32 Manchester, John Rylands University Library, Gaster 59, (IMHM: F 15977), 1837, ff. 100a-107a.
33 Jerusalem, Rabbi Yosef Qafah 36, (IMHM: F 47427), 1893, ff. 173a-179b.
34 St. Petersburg-Inst. of Oriental Studies of the Russian Academy B 70, (IMHM: F 53005), 18th-19th century, ff. 130a-135b.
35 New York-Columbia University X 893 Ib 53, (IMHM: F 42426), 19th century, ff. 50a-52a.

## APPENDIX B

## CROSS-REFERENCES AND QUOTATIONS

This appendix examines three cross-references from other parts of Ibn Ezra's astrological corpus to Sefer ha-She' elot and Sefer ha-Mivharim, as well as three passages from Sefer ha-Me'orot that are quoted in Șafenat Pa'neah, a supercommentary on Ibn Ezra's commentary on the Pentateuch, composed in the fourteenth century by Joseph ben Eliezer Bonfils (or Tov Elem).
(1) Moladot, MS BNF 1056, f. 56b

> והנה יש לך לחשב מספרי כל הניצוחים שהזכרתי ואשר יהיה מספרו רב ינצח את האחר
> ובספר השאלות אפרש זה.

So you have to calculate all the types of victory that I have mentioned, and the one that has the larger number will be victorious over the other; I will explain this in Sefer ha-She'elot.

This refers to She'elot I, $\$ 7 \cdot 3: 10-18$ (see note there), where the various "types of victory" are assigned numeric scales of power according to various astronomical and astrological criteria. There is no clear parallel to this in She'elot II.
(2) 'Olam I, §34:5-6, pp. 74-75

ואם היה ביץ בעל מזל המדינה וביץ בעל הבית השביצי ממנו, הסתכל אם הם במחברת
 תדין.
If it [the lord of the seventh place] is between the lord of the sign of a city and the lord of the seventh place from it [i.e., from the sign of the city], find out whether they [the lord of the sign of the city and the lord of the seventh place] are in conjunction or whether they aspect one another. Also find out which of them is the stronger, as I mentioned in Sefer ha-Mivharim, and pronounce judgment accordingly.

All three versions of Sefer ha-Mivharim deal with choosing the best time to start a war (among other topics) in their seventh "place," which indicates strife and war. See Appendix C. But only in Mivharim I, §7.2:14 is the account focused entirely on the procedure for determining the stronger (תקיף) of the two planets involved.
(3) Moladot, MS BNF 1056, f. 53b

```
ותוכל לדעת מי ינצח כפי כח השליט על הנולד ואף כי אם הוא כוכב עליון כאשר אפרש
    בשצר המלחמות בספר המבחרים.
```

You can know which will be victorious according to the power of the ruler of the native, particularly if it is an upper planet, as I shall explain in the chapter on wars in Sefer ha-Mivharim.

This refers to Mivḥarim I, §7.2:1-4 (the same passage mentioned in the previous example), particularly $\$ 7.2$ :3, where Ibn Ezra reports Māshā’allāh's views on when an upper planet is victorious over another planet.
(4) Șafenat Pa'neah, 1911, II, p. 35:6-7

```
ובספר המאורות אמר כי יש שאמרו שהתוספת חלק ממאה ושבעים וששה ביום שהם ח'
                        חלקי שעה גם י״״א שניים. 
```

In Sefer ha-Me'orot he said that they said that the excess is the 176th part of a day, or 8 minutes and 11 seconds.

This reference to the length of the solar year cannot be found in the extant text of Sefer ha-Me'orot or elsewhere in Ibn Ezra's oeuvre.
(5) Ṣafenat Pa'neaḥ, 1911, II, p. 36:10-12

ובספר המאורות בשער השלישי אמר כי על דרך חשבון העבור יחסר מרביעית היום פ׳״ב חלקים משפה מחלקי הצבור, גם שבעה קטנים, שיהיה החלק האחד י״״ט, והנה החסרון חלק מן ש׳יח ביום.

In Sefer ha-Me'orot, in the third section, he said that according to the reckoning of the intercalation, the fraction that should be deducted from the quarter of a day is 82 parts of an hour from the parts of the intercalation, plus 7 seconds, when one part has 19 seconds, so that the shortfall is one 318th part of a day.

As in the case of the previous quotation, this reference to the length of the solar year cannot be found in the third chapter of the extant text of Sefer ha-Me'orot or elsewhere in Ibn Ezra's oeuvre.
(6) Ṣafenat Pa'neah. 1911, II, p. 13:19-22

ובספר המאורות במשפטי החליים אמר כי שרש הגבול בהיות הלבנה על מבט רביעית עם מקומה בתחלת החולי, ויום י״'ד על מבט נכח, ויום כ' או היום הבא אחריו על מבט הרביעית השני, ויום כ'ז או כ"ח ישוב אל מקומו.
In Sefer ha-Me'orot, in the judgments related to diseases, he said that the root of the crisis takes place when the Moon is in quartile to its place at the onset of the disease, and $\langle$ on $\rangle$ the fourteenth day when $\langle$ the Moon is $\rangle$ in opposition $\langle$ to its place at the onset of the disease $\rangle$, and $\langle$ on $\rangle$ the twentieth
day or the following day 〈when the Moon is〉 in the second quartile, and $\langle o n\rangle$ the twenty-seventh or twenty-eighth day when the Moon returns to its position.

This is a verbatim quotation from Me'orot $\$ 3: 6$.
APPENDIX C

## CONCORDANCES

| Topic | Mivḥarim I | Mivharim II | Mivharim III | She'elot I | She'elot II | She'elot III |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| A city under siege |  |  |  | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 7.5: 1-7 ; \\ & \$ 7.6: 1-8 \end{aligned}$ | \$7.6:1-6 |  |
| Beginning construction on a building | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 4.1: 1-2 ; \\ & \$ 4.2: 1-3 ; \\ & \$ 4.3: 1-4 \end{aligned}$ | §4.3:1-3 |  |  |  |  |
| Bloodletting | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 1.6: 1-2 ; \\ & \$ 1.7: 1-2 ; \\ & \$ 1.8: 1-3 \end{aligned}$ | §1.4:1-3 |  |  |  |  |
| Brothers or kin, etc. |  |  |  | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 3.1: 1-5 ; \\ & \$ 3.2: 1-4 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 3.1: 1-3 ; \\ & \$ 3.3: 1 \end{aligned}$ |  |
| Buried treasure |  |  |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { § } 4 \cdot 4: 1-6 ; \\ & \$ 4.5: 1 ; \\ & \$ 4.6: 1-3 ; \\ & \$ 4.7: 1-3 ; \\ & \$ 4.8: 1-3 ; \\ & \$ 4 \cdot 9: 1-6 ; \\ & \$ 4 \cdot 10: 1-5 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 12.5: 1-5 ; \\ & \$ 12.6: 1-6 ; \\ & \$ 12.7: 1-4 \end{aligned}$ |  |
| Buying | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 2.1: 1-5 ; \\ & \$ 2.5: 1-6 \end{aligned}$ | § 2.1:1-4 |  | § 2.4:1-2 | § 2.2:1-3 |  |


| Topic | Mivharim 1 | Mivharim II | Mivharim III | She'elot I | She'elot II | She'elot III |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Buying an animal | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 6.4: 1-2 ; \\ & \$ 12.1: 1-4 \end{aligned}$ | \$12.1:1-6 |  | \$12.2:1-7 | \$ 12.2:1-3 |  |
| Buying land | \$4.4:1-3 | \$4.1:1-4 |  |  |  |  |
| Buying slaves | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 6.1: 1-2 ; \\ & \$ 6.2: 1-6 ; \\ & \$ 6.3: 1-3 \end{aligned}$ | \$6.1:1-7 |  | \$6.2:1-3 | \$ 6.2:1 |  |
| Conspiracy against the king | \$ 10.2:2-3 | \$10.4:2-3 |  | \$4.3:1-3 | \$7.5:1-3 |  |
| Crowning a king | \$ 10.2:1-3 | \$10.4:1-3 |  |  |  |  |
| Determining a baby's sex | \$5.1:1-7 | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 5 \cdot 1: 1-4 ; \\ & \$ 5 \cdot 2: 1-3 \end{aligned}$ |  | \$5.3:1-6 | \$5.3:1-4 | \$5.2:1-4 |
| Doing something in secret | \$4.5:1-3 |  |  |  |  |  |
| Engaging in litigation |  | \$11.3:1-4 |  |  |  |  |
| Engaging in trade | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 2: 2 ; \\ & \$ 9.1: 1-3 \end{aligned}$ | §3:1; § 11.1:1 |  | \$11.1:9 | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 11.1: 1-3 ; \\ & \$ 11.2: 1-2 ; \\ & \$ 11.3: 1-2 \end{aligned}$ |  |
| Entering a public bathhouse | \$1.9:1-2 | \$ 5.4:1-3 |  |  |  |  |
| Fear |  |  |  |  | \$8.3:1-5 |  |
| Finding a lost object |  | \$8.1:1-3 | \$8.1:1-4 |  | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 8.1: 1-5 ; \\ & \$ 8.2: 1-2 \end{aligned}$ |  |
| Founding a city |  | \$4.2:1-8 |  |  |  |  |
| Fugitive slaves | \$8.1:1-7 |  |  | \$7.8:1-8 | \$8.1:1-5 |  |
| Getting married | \$7.6:1-10 | \$7.4:1-6 |  | \$7.1:2-6 | \$12.3:1-7 | \$7.1:1-3 |
| Getting an inheritance | \$8.2:1-3 |  |  |  |  |  |


| Topic | Mivharim I | Mivharim II | Mivharim III | She'elot I | She'elot II | She'elot III |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| How many years one has left to live |  |  |  | \$1.2:1-3 | §1.1:1-4 |  |
| Land |  |  |  | §4.2:1 | \$4.2:1-5 |  |
| Loans | \$2.3:1 | § 2.3:1-2 |  | \$2.1:1-4 | \$2.3:1-3 |  |
| Requesting something from a king, ruler or an important person | §10.1:1-9 | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 10.2: 1-6 ; \\ & \$ 10.3: 1-5 \end{aligned}$ |  | §10.1:1-10 | §10.1:1-9 |  |
| Long journeys | $\$ 9.1: 1-3$ [to trade] §9.3:1-6 [to study] | $\begin{aligned} & \text { \$9.1:1-4; } \\ & \text { [sea] } \\ & \text { \$9.2:1-3; } \\ & \text { \$9.3:1-5 } \end{aligned}$ |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { \$9.3:1-4; } \\ & \text { § } 10.1: 8 \end{aligned}$ | \$9.1:1-5 |  |
| Messenger and letters |  |  |  | \$9.2:1-4 | \$9.3:1 |  |
| Money | \$2.1:1-3 | \$ 2.2:1-3 |  | \$ 2.1:1-12 |  |  |
| Outcome of something that someone has begun |  |  |  | \$4.1:1-5 | $\S 4.1: 1-4$ |  |
| Partnership | \$7.7:1-2 | \$7.5:1-2 |  | \$7.2:1-6 | §7.8:1-2 |  |
| Preparing a feast | §5.3:1-2 | §5.3:1 |  |  |  |  |
| Putting on a new garment | \$5.2:1-4 |  |  |  |  |  |
| Question about another person |  |  |  | \$1.1:2-7 |  |  |
| Rumors |  |  |  | \$9.1:1-4 | \$9.2:1-10 |  |
| Seeking love | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 11.1: 1-3 ; \\ & \$ 11.2: 1-5 ; \\ & \$ 11.3: 1 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 11.2: 1-4 ; \\ & \$ 11.4: 1-4 \end{aligned}$ |  | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 8: 3-4 ; \\ & \$ 11.1: 10-12 \end{aligned}$ | §6:4 |  |
| Selling | \$2.4:1 |  |  |  |  |  |


| Topic | Mivharim I | Mivḩarim II | Mivḥarim III | She'elot I | She'elot II | She'elot III |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Short journeys | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 3.1: 1-7 ; \\ & \$ 3.2: 1-9 ; \\ & \$ 3.3: 1-4 ; \\ & \$ 3.4: 1-5 ; \\ & \$ 3.5: 1-3 ; \\ & {[\text { sea }]} \\ & \$ 3.6: 1-4 \end{aligned}$ | \$3.2:1-4 |  | \$3.4:1-3 | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 3.2: 1 ; \\ & \$ 9.1: 1-4 \end{aligned}$ |  |
| Something about which the querent is afraid-whether or not it will occur |  |  |  | §8.1:1-6 | §8.3:1-5 |  |
| Stolen money or goods |  |  |  | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 2.3: 1 ; \\ & \$ 7.7: 1-16 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 2.1: 1-2 ; \\ & \$ 7.7: 1-11 ; \\ & \$ 12.4: 1-4 \end{aligned}$ |  |
| Studying a science | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 2: 2 ; \\ & \$ 1.1: 1-3 ; \\ & \text { \$ } 1.2: 1-3 ; \\ & \$ 9.3: 1-6 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { § } 3: 1 ; \\ & \$ 3.1: 1-4 ; \\ & \$ 10.1: 1-4 ; \\ & \$ 10.3: 5 \end{aligned}$ | \$9.1:1-4 | §4.7:3 |  |  |
| Taking up a craft | §10.3:1-6 | \$ 10.1:1-4 |  | §4.7:3 |  |  |
| Taking a medicine | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 1.3: 1-4 ; \\ & \$ 1.4: 1 ; \\ & \$ 1.5: 1-3 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 1.1: 1-2 ; \\ & \$ 1.2: 1-4 ; \\ & \$ 1.3: 1-3 ; \\ & \$ 1.5: 1-4 ; \\ & \$ 1.6: 1-4 \end{aligned}$ |  |  |  |  |
| Wars | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 7 \cdot 1: 2-4 ; \\ & \text { \$7.2:1-4; } \\ & \text { \$7.3:1-4; } \\ & \text { §7.4:1-7; } \\ & \text { §7.5:1-13 } \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 7.1: 1-7 ; \\ & \$ 7.2: 1-7 ; \\ & \$ 7.3: 1-3 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { \$7.1:1-4; } \\ & \text { \$7.2:1-5; } \\ & \text { \$7.3:1-5; } \\ & \text { \$7.4:1-5; } \\ & \text { \$7.5:1-8 } \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 7.3: 1-19 ; \\ & \$ 7.4: 1-9 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 7 \cdot 1: 2-4 ; \\ & \$ 7.2: 1-4 ; \\ & \$ 7 \cdot 3: 1-4 ; \\ & \$ 7 \cdot 4: 1-3 ; \\ & \$ 7 \cdot 5: 1-3 \end{aligned}$ |  |


| Topic | Mivḩarim I | Mivḥarim II | Mivḩarim III | She'elot I | She'elot II | She'elot III |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Weaning a child | §5.4:1-3 |  |  |  |  |  |
| Welcoming or seeing someone | \$9.2:1-9 | §10.3:1-5 |  |  |  |  |
| When will something occur? |  |  |  | §7.9:1-9 | § 12.8:1-15 |  |
| Whether an ailing person will die or recover |  |  |  | §6.1:1-7 | §6.1:1-10 | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 6.1: 1-11 ; \\ & \$ 6.2: 1-7 \end{aligned}$ |
| Whether a prisoner will be released from jail |  |  |  | §12.1:1-9 | §12.1:1-14 |  |
| Whether a woman is pregnant |  |  |  | \$ 5.1:1-4 | §5.2:1-2 | \$5.1:1-3 |
| Whether someone is alive or dead |  |  |  | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 1.3: 1-2 ; \\ & \$ 1.4: 1-5 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 1.2: 1-5 ; \\ & \$ 1.3: 1-3 \end{aligned}$ |  |
| Whether someone will come soon |  |  |  | \$3.2:1-4 | § 1.4:1-6 |  |
| Whether someone will fall from his high position |  |  |  | §10.2:1-6 |  |  |
| Whether someone will find favor with another person |  |  |  | §11.1:1-12 |  |  |
| Whether someone will have a son |  | §5.2:4-8 |  | \$5.2:1-6 | §5.1:1-5 |  |
| Writing a book | \$1.1:3 | §10.1:1-4 |  |  |  |  |

APPENDIX D
AUTHORITIES AND SOURCES MENTIONED IN MIVḤARIM I, MIVḤARIM II AND MIVḤARIM III

| English |  | Mivharim I | Mivharim II | Mivharim III |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Abraham Ibn Ezra (implicit and explicit) | אני | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 1: 1 ; \text { § } 2: 1 ; \text { §4:1; } \$ 8: 2 ; \$ 1.5: 2 ; \\ & \$ 1.9: 2 ; \$ 2.2: 2 ; \$ 2.5: 1 ; \$ 3.2: 2,5 ; \\ & \$ 3.6: 1,2 ; \$ 5.1: 6 ; \$ 5.5: 1,4 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 6: 6 ; \$ 1.4: 3 ; \$ 1.5: 3 ; \$ 1.6: 4 ; \\ & \$ 3.2: 3,4 ; \text { §4.3:2; } \$ 5.1: 2 ; \$ 5.2: 4 ; \\ & \$ 7.3: 2 ; \$ 7.4: 6 ; \$ 9.1: 1 ; \S 9.2: 2 ; \\ & \$ 10.3: 1 ; \S 11.3: 1 \end{aligned}$ | \$7.2:5; § 7.3:5; §7.4:3,5 |
| Abū Ma'shar | אבו מעשר | $\begin{aligned} & \text { § 1.2:2; § 1.1:1; § } 5.4: 3 ; \text { § } 7.2: 4 ; \\ & \S 7.5: 1 ; \text { § 12.1:3 } \end{aligned}$ |  |  |
| al-Kindī | יעקב אלכנדי | \$ 1.7:1; § 7.6:10 | \$1.3:1 |  |
| Al-Andruzagar | אל אנדרוזגר אנדרוזגאר | \$7:1 | \$9.3:1 |  |
| all the astrologers who came after Ptolemy | כל הבאים אחריו | \$5.2:3 |  |  |
| Ancients | קדמונים | \$5.2:3 | § 6:14,19; § 1.3:3; § 3.2:3; §4.1:2; § 5.4:3; §7.3:1; § 7.4:3,6; §9.3:1; \$12.1:6 | \$7.3:2 |
| astrologers | חכמי המזלות חכמי משפטי המזלות | §3.5:1; § 7.2:1; § 10.1:5 | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 3: 3 ; \$ 1.5: 1 ; \$ 5.1: 3 ; \$ 5.2: 8 ; \\ & \$ 10.2: 1 \end{aligned}$ | \$7.2:4 |
| Book of Experiences by Māshāallāh | אללהר הנסיונות למאשא | \$7.2:3 |  |  |
| Book of Interrogations by Māshāallāh | ספר השאלות | \$4.3:2 |  |  |


| English |  | Mivharim I | Mivharim II | Mivharim III |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Book of Nativities (Ibn Ezra) | ספר המולדות | §4:1; §8:1 |  |  |
| Book of Secrets by Enoch | ספר הסודות לחנוך | §5.5:1 |  |  |
| Book of the Beginning of Wisdom (Ibn Ezra) | ספר ראשית חכמה | \$2.5:1 |  | \$7.4:3 |
| Book of the Judgments of the World (Ibn Ezra) | ספר משפטי העולם |  |  | \$7.4:5 |
| Dorotheus | דורוניוס | $\begin{aligned} & \text { § 1:3; § 1.4:1; § } 5 \cdot 4: 3 ; \text { § 7.2:2; } \\ & \$ 10.3: 3 ; \text { § 12.1:3 } \end{aligned}$ | § 6.1:7; \$9.2:1; \$9.3:3 |  |
| Enoch | חנוך | § 5.4:2; § 5.5:1 |  |  |
| Indian scientist | חכם הודו | \$4:1 |  |  |
| Indian scientists | חכמי הודו | §8:1; § 1.2:1; § 3.4:1 |  |  |
| Many | רבים | \$5.5:2 | §4:3 |  |
| Māshā'allāh | מאשא | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 3.2: 1,2 ; \S 3.3: 1 ; \S 4.3: 1 ; \S 5 \cdot 4: 3 ; \\ & \$ 6.2: 1 ; \S 6.3: 1 ; \S 7.2: 3 ; \S 7.4: 1 ; \\ & \$ 7.6: 3 ; \S 10.3: 4 ; \S 12.1: 3 \end{aligned}$ |  |  |
| Moses, our lord | משה אדוננו |  | § 1:1 |  |
| Our ancient sages | קדמונינו ז׳ול |  | §1:1 |  |
| Plato | אפלטון | §11.2:1 |  |  |

English
Ptolemy

| Ptolemy | בטלמיוס <br> תלמי | $\begin{aligned} & \text { § 1.5:1; § 1.8:1; § 2.1:1; §5.2:3; } \\ & \text { §11.3:1 } \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 1: 5 ; \$ 4: 1 ; \text { § } 1.2: 1 ; \text { § } 1.4: 1 ; \\ & \$ 1.6: 1 ; \S 4.3: 1,3 ; \text { § } 9.3: 2 \end{aligned}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Sages of the Torah | חכמי התורה |  | \$1:1 |
| scholars | חכמים | §8:1 |  |
| scholars who rely on experience | חכמי הניסיון | \$1.5:2 |  |
| Solomon | שלמה |  | \$1:2 |
| two methods for elections | המבחרים על שני דרכים | § 1:4; § 2:1; § 51 | §1:6; § 2:1; §5:1 |

APPENDIX E
AUTHORITIES AND SOURCES MENTIONED IN SHE'ELOT I SHE'ELOT II AND SHE'ELOT III

| English |  | She elot 1 | She elot II | She elot III |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Abraham Ibn Ezra (implicit and explicit) | אני | § $3: 5,7$; § $4: 1,5 ;$ § $6: 1 ;$ § $8: 2$; §9:4; § 2.3:4; § 1.1:4,6; § 1.2:3; \$ 2.1:4,9; § 4.3:3; § 4.4:1; \$4.6:3; \$6.1:6.7; \$7.3:4; §7.4:6; \$7.7:15; § 7.9:1,9; §9.3:3; § 10.1:2; § 10.3:2; § 12.1:1; \$12.2:8 | § 1:4,5; §7:1; §8:1; §10:1,6; <br> \$ 1.1:1; § 3.2:1; § $3.3: 1$; § 6.1:9; <br> \$7.2:2,3; \$7.6:4; \$8.1:5; § 8.4:1; <br> §9.1:1; §9.2:1; § 10.1:8,9; <br> § 12.3:6; § 12.4:3; § 12.5:1; <br> \$12.8:1,5,11 | \$6.1:2,4 |
| Abraham Ibn Ezra | אני אברהם | \$3:5; \$1.1:2 |  | \$6.1:4 |
| Abū 'Alī | אבו עלי | \$4.7:1; § 7.4:4 | \$1.5:2 |  |
| Abū Ma'shar | אבו מעשר | § $3: 6 ;$ § 4.7:9; § 7.4:4,5; § 7.9:7 | \$9.2:7 |  |
| Abū Ma‘shar in his books | אבו מעשר בסרפין |  | \$9.2:7 |  |
| al-Kindī | אלענד אלכנדי | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 4.8: 1 ; \S 5 \cdot 3: 1 \\ & \$ 7: 1 \end{aligned}$ | \$ 12.5:1; \$ 12.6:1 |  |
| Ancients | קדמונים | \$1:1 | \$4:2; \$9.2:1 | \$ 6.1:4,6 |
| another book <br> (al-Kindī) | ספר אחר |  | \$ 12.6:3 |  |


| English |  | She'elot I | She'elot II | She'elot III |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| another book (Māshāallāh) | ספר אחר |  | \$10:1 |  |
| astrologers | $\text { חככמי הממים המשפטים } \begin{array}{r} \text { חמיות } \\ \hline \end{array}$ |  | $\$ 1: 1 ; \$ 12.8: 1$ $\$ 7 \cdot 4: 1$ |  |
| astrologers who are close to us | חכמי המזלות שהם קרובים אלינו | \$2:1 |  |  |
| Book of Nativities (Ibn Ezra) | ספר המולדות | §6:1; § 1.2:3 | §7:1; § 10:5; § 1.1:1 |  |
| Book of Reasons (Ibn Ezra) | ספר הטעמים | \$7:1; \$1.2:3 |  |  |
| Book of the Beginning of Wisdom (Ibn Ezra) | ספר ראשית חכמה | $\begin{aligned} & \text { \$ 4:2; §6:1; §9:3; §4.5:1; } \\ & \text { \$4.10:2; §7.7:4,15; §7.9:7; } \\ & \text { §12.2:6 } \end{aligned}$ | § 7.2:2; § 7.6:4; § 8.3:5; § 12.3:6 | §6.1:2 |
| Book of the <br> Luminaries (Ibn <br> Ezra) | ספר המאורות שלי | \$6.1:7 |  |  |
|  | ספר המאורות |  |  | \$6.2:6 |
| Book of the World (Ibn Ezra) | ספר העולם |  | \$7.2:3 |  |
| Book on the Use of the Tables (Ibn Ezra) | ספר מעשה הלוחות |  | § 12.8:5 |  |
| Books by Abū Ma'shar | ספריו |  | \$9.2:7 |  |

She'elot III

| Dorotheus | דורוניוס דורוניאוס | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 2: 1 ; \$ 3: 4 ; \$ 5: 1 ; \$ 11: 3 ; \$ 4.4: 2 ; \\ & \$ 5.1: 4 ; \$ 6.1: 5 ; \$ 7.4: 3 ; \$ 9.3: 2 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { § } 1: 1,3 ; \text { § } 5.3: 3 ; \text { § } 7.3: 4 ; \S 11.3: 1 ; \\ & \S 12.4: 4 ; \text { § } 12.5: 1 \end{aligned}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Enoch | חנוך | § 1:2; § 6.1:6; § $7.6: 8$ | §4:3; § 12.1:1 |
| experts in interrogations | חכמי השאלות |  | §8.1:5;§8.4:1 |
| Indian scientists | חכמי הודו | \$2:1 |  |
| leading astrologers | ראשי חכמי המזלות |  | $\$_{1} 11$ |
| many | רבים | §9:3; § 7.9:5 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { § 4.1:5; §4.2:3; §8.1:3; §9.2:7; } \\ & \text { § 12.7:4; § 12.8:12 } \end{aligned}$ |
| many books on interrogations (Māshā'allāh) | ספרים רבים בשאלות |  | \$1:4 |
| Māshā'allāh | משאללה | $\begin{aligned} & \text { § } 3: 1 ; \text { § } 10: 1 ; \text { § } 11: 3 ; \text { § } 1.2: 1 ; \\ & \$ 1.4: 1 ; \text { § 3.3:1; §4.4:3; §4.6:1; } \\ & \$ 6.1: 5 ; \text { §7.4:2,7; §7.7:1; §9.2:3 } \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { § 1:4; § 9:1; § 10:1; § 1.3:1; } \\ & \$ 4.2: 4 ; \text { § } 9.1: 4 ; \text { § } 11.3: 2 ; \text { § } 12.4: 4 ; \\ & \text { § } 12.5: 1 ; \text { § } 12.5: 3 \end{aligned}$ |
| natural science | חכמת התולדת | \$2:3 |  |
| Ptolemy | בטלמיוס תלמי | § 1:2; §7:1; § 6.1:6; § 7.9:2 | § 1:1,2; § 3:5; §9.1:3; § 12.5:1 |
| Razeq | רזק | §11:1; § 1.2:2 |  |
| Sa'īd | סעיד | \$2.4:2 | \$2.2:2 |

English

| schools of thought regarding interrogations | תורות בשאלות | §1:1; § 2:1 |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| scientists of Egypt | חכמי מצרים | \$2:1 |  |
| scientists of Persia | חכמי פרס | \$2:1 |  |
| Three books on mundane affairs as well as nativities (Ptolemy) | ספרים שלשה בדברי העולם גם במולדות |  | §1:2 |

## APPENDIX F

## AUTHORITIES AND SOURCES <br> MENTIONED IN SEFER HA-ME'OROT

| Abraham Ibn Ezra (implicit and explicit) | אני | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 3: 4 ; \$ 4: 9 ; \S 11: 4 ; \$ 19: 3 ; \$ 22: 4 ; \\ & \$ 23: 6 ; \$ 24: 14,15 ; \$ 26: 5 ; \S 27: 7 ; \\ & \$ 32: 4 ; \$ 33: 6 ; \$ 34: 1,2 ; \$ 35: 3 \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Ancients | קדמונים | \$23:4 |
| astrologers | בעלי המזלות <br> חכמי המזלות | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 3: 2 \\ & \$ 22: 1 \end{aligned}$ |
| books (of the astrologers) | ספריהם | §3:2 |
| Book of Tables (Ibn Ezra) | ספר הלוחות | \$25:4 |
| Book of the Beginning of Wisdom (Ibn Ezra) | ספר ראשית החכמה | \$35:2 |
| elections | מבחרים | §9:6 |
| great physicians | חכמי הרפואות הגדולים | §3:3 |
| judgments in astrology | משפטי חכמת המזלות | §9:1 |
| knowledgeable about the judgments of astrology | דיינים | §3:2 |
| many | רבים | \$4:5; \$24:9,12,15; \$25:4 |
| physicians | הרופאים | \$9:9 |
| King Ptolemy | תלמי המלך | §16:4 |
| praters | מהבילים | §3:5 |

## APPENDIX G

## THE TRIPARTITE COSMOLOGY IN THE LONG COMMENTARY ON EXODUS 3:15

What follows is a fragment of the exegetical excursus in Ibn Ezra's long commentary on Exodus 3:15. The Hebrew is transcribed from the text of Ibn Ezra's commentary in the relevant volume of Miqra'ot Gedolot haKeter. I am grateful to Menachem Cohen, the editor of the series Miqra'ot Gedolot ha-Keter, for allowing me to consult and quote from the first part of this work, before its publication. I have added punctuation to the Hebrew text and, to facilitate references, divided it into sections and sentences. The English is divided into the same sections and sentences as the Hebrew.

2 (1) והעולם האמצעי על מעלות רבות. (2) והנה החמשה הכוכבים המשרתים מעלתם גדולה, כי הם צומדים בעצמם לא יכלו ולא יחסרו. ולא תשתנה תנועתם ולא תוסיף ולא תגרע. ולא יעלו ולא ירדו. רק כפי המערכת יש להם שינויים רבים, כי פעם הוא הכוכב בקו המזלות, ופעם שמאלי או ימיני רב או מעט, ופעם עולה בגלגלו הקטו הון גם בגלגלו הגדול, שהנה מוצקו רחוק ממוצק הארץ, ופעם עולה גלגלו או יורד, ופעם ירוץ ופעם יתמהמה, ופעם יעמד, ופעם ישוב אחורנית. וכל זה כנגד הארץ. ופעם יראה ופעם יסתר, ופעם במזרח ופעם במערב. וערכו אל חבירו, וגם אל צבא השמים מלמעלה, גם אל הלבנה מלמטה, לעולם משתנה עד אין חקר, כי פעם מתחבר, או לאחד השבעה המבטים, והנה המחברות לבדם במעלה אחת משלש מאות וששים, הם מאה ועשרים. ובעבור אילו השנויים ישתנו כל הנבראים בעולם השפל בעצמם ואף כי במקריהם. והם בעצמם ובאורם לא ישתנו. (3) על כן למטה מהם הלבנה, כי כל מקריהם יקרוה ויותר, כי יש לה שנים גלגלים שאין מוצקם כמוצק הארץ. ועוד, כי תנועתה בגלגלה הקטן, הפך תנועת הגלגל הגדול. ועוד, כי אין לה אור בעצמה, רק מהשמש. והעד, כי בהתחברה עמו עם ראש התלי או זנבו, לא תראה השמש אם היה ביום, ואם היתה לנכח השמש בלילה באחד המקומות הנזכרים, יהיה אור הלבנה נעדר. (4) והנה למעלה מהמשרתים הם כוכבי גלגל המזלות. והם קבועים בגלגל אחד, לא מתנועצים כמשרתים ולא ישתנה רחבם, ולא ערך זה לזה ותנועה אחת להם בלי תוספת ומגרעת. ערכם אל הארץ שוה, ושנוי הראותם במקומות ול הארץ ותנועת השמש.
3 (1) והעולם העליון הוא עולם המלאכים הקדושים, שאינם גופות ולא בגופות כנשמת האדם, ומעלותם נשגבו מדעות הנקלות כנגדם. וכל זה העולם כבוד וכולו עומד, ואין תנועה בשנוי

בערך，רק מעמדו איננו בעצמו רק בשם הנכבד לבדו．ונשמת האדם מאורם，ומקבלת כח
 תעמד בסוד המלאכים，ותוכל לקבל כח גדול מכח צליון שקבל על ידי אור המלאכים；אז יהי

1 （1）Know that there are three worlds．（2）One of them is the lower 〈world〉 and it has many levels，although three include 〈all of〉 them．（3）One is that of the metals，of which there are seven，corresponding to the seven planets．（4）Above them are the plants，which have many levels．（5）Above them are the animals， which have many levels．（6）Man is alone in the highest level with respect to the lower world．He is subject to change in his body，as well as in his soul，by his thoughts，and also in his undertakings and all his affairs．（7）The philosophers likened the species to general entities that endure，whereas individuals perish． They compared these enduring generic species to the shadow of a tree cast on water that is flowing constantly

2 （1）The middle world has many levels．（2）Now the five planets have a high rank，because they are unchanging in their essence and will not cease to exist and $\langle$ their light $\rangle$ will never be diminished．Their motions do not change，neither by addition nor by subtraction［i．e．，none moves faster or slower］．They neither ascend nor descend．But they have many alterations in their configurations，for at times the planet is in the ecliptic，at times 〈its ecliptic latitude is〉 northern and at times southern by a great or a little extent，at times it［the planet］ascends on its epicycle or on its great circle，whose center is far from the center of the Earth ［i．e．，its eccentric cycle］，sometimes its circle ascends or descends，sometimes it moves rapidly and sometimes slowly，sometimes it stands still and sometimes it is retrograde．But all this is with respect to the Earth．Sometimes it is seen and sometimes it is hidden，sometimes it is in the east and sometimes in the west． Its distance from its companion［i．e．，another planet］and from 〈any star of the host of heaven above and from the Moon below is always changing incalculably， for sometimes it is in conjunction or $\langle$ is $\rangle$ in one of the seven aspects 〈with other planets or stars〉，and there are 120 conjunctions 〈of the seven planets〉 alone ［i．e．，without counting the conjunctions with the fixed stars］in a single degree of the 360 〈of the circle〉．Due to these alterations，all creatures of the lower world change in both their essence and their accidents．But they［the planets］ never change in their essence or their light．（3）The Moon is below them［the five planets and the Sun］and all their accidents affect it，for it has two circles whose center is not the center of the Earth［i．e．，they are eccentric］．Further，its ［the Moon＇s］motion on its epicycle is opposite the direction of its great circle ［the eccentric circle］．In addition，it has no light of its own but only 〈the light coming $\rangle$ from the Sun．The proof is that when it［the Moon］conjoins it［the Sun］ at the Head or the Tail of the Dragon，the Sun is occulted when this happens by day［i．e．，a solar eclipse takes place］，and the light of the Moon disappears ［i．e．，a lunar eclipse takes place］if it［the Moon］is in opposition to the Sun by night at one of these locations［the Head or the Tail of the Dragon］．（4） The stars of the orb of the zodiacal constellations are above the planets．They are $\langle$ all $\rangle$ fixed in one orb；they do not move the way the planets do and their〈ecliptical〉 latitude remains the same；their distance from one another does not
＜change〉 and they all have the same motion，without addition or subtraction ［i．e．，none moves faster or slower than the others］．Their distance from the Earth remains the same，but how they appear varies according to the location on the Earth 〈from which they are seen〉 and according to the Sun＇s motion［i．e．，heliacal risings］．

3 （1）The uppermost world is the world of the holy angels，who are not bodies and do not $\langle$ reside $\rangle$ in bodies，unlike the soul of man．Their rank is far and above that of 〈human〉 minds，which are vile in comparison．This entire world is glorious and unchanging．There is no movement，either of change or position． This world is not self－sufficient，but its existence depends exclusively on the glorious Name．The soul of man 〈derives〉 from their［the holy angels＇］light and receives supernal power according to the configuration of the planets，〈and according to the position of）each planet in relation to the great host［the fixed stars］at the time of his birth．If the soul grows wiser，it can join the company of angels，and then it can receive a power greater than the supernal power it received from the light of the angels；then it［the wise man＇s soul］will be in conjunction with the glorious Name．

# BIBLIOGRAHPY 

## Works by Abraham Ibn Ezra

Astrolabio, 1940: Tractatus de astrolabio conscriptus dictante authori quodam egregio philosopho Mro. Abraham, ed. José M. Millás Vallicrosa, in "Un nuevo tratado de astrolabio de R. Abraham ibn Ezra," Al-Andalus, 5 (1940): 9-29.
Astrolabio, Arundel 377: Tractatus de astrolabio conscriptus dictante authori quodam egregio philosopho Mro. Abraham, MS British Library Arundel 377, fols. 63-68.
Astrolabio, Vesp. A II: Tractatus de astrolabio conscriptus dictante authori quodam egregio philosopho Mro. Abraham, MS British Library Cotton Vesp. A II, fols. 37-40.
Commentary on Esther: M. Gomez Aranda, ed., Dos comentarios de Abraham Ibn Ezra al libro de Ester (Edición crítica, traducción y estudio introductorio) (Madrid, 2007).
Commentary on Exodus, 1976: Abraham Ibn Ezra, Commentary on Exodus, in A. Weiser (ed.), Ibn Ezra's Commentary on the Torah, II (Jerusalem, 1976).

Commentary on Exodus, 2007: M. Cohen, ed., Miqra'ot Gedolot ha-Keter, Exodus, part II (Ramat Gan, 2007).
Diwan, 1886: E. Eiger, Diwan le-Rabbi Abraham Ibn Ezra (Berlin, 1886).
Eleccionum, Erfurt: Liber eleccionum, Erfurt, MS Amplon. O.89, ff. 39b-46b.
Ha-Shem, 1985: Abraham Ibn Ezra, Sefer ha-Shem, in Abraham Ibn Ezra Reader, Annotated texts with introductions and commentaries by I. Levin (New York-Tel Aviv, 1985), pp. 419-438.
Hay ben Meqitz, 1983: Iggeret Hay ben Meqitz, ed. I. Levin (Tel Aviv, 1983).
'Ibbur, 1874: Sefer ha-'Ibbur, ed. S.Z.H. Halberstam (Lyck, 1874).
Ibn al-Muthannä’s Commentary, 1967: Ibn al-Muthannä’s Commentary on the Astronomical Tables of al-Khwārizmī, ed. and trans. B.R. Goldstein (New Haven-London, 1967).
'Iggeret ha-Shabbat, 1894/5: 'Iggeret ha-Šabbat, ed. M. Friedlander, in Transactions of the Jewish Historical Society of England 2 (1894/5): 61-75.
Interrogacionum, Erfurt: Liber interrogacionum, Erfurt, MS Amplon. O.89, ff. 19b-30a.
Me'orot, 1933: Sefer ha-Me'orot, ed. J.L. Fleischer, in Sinai (Bucharest), (1933): xlii-li.
Mishpeṭei ha-Mazzalot, MS Schoenberg 57: Sefer Mishpeṭei ha-Mazzalot, MS Philadelphia-University of Pennsylvania, Schoenberg Collection Ljs 57, ff. 69-86.
Mispar, 1895: Sefer ha-Mispar, Das Buch der Zahl, trans. and ed. Moritz Silberberg (Frankfurt a.M., 1895).

Mivharim I, 1969: Sefer ha-Mivharim, ed. J.L. Fleischer (Jerusalem, 1969).
Moladot, MS BNF 1056: Sefer ha-Moladot, MS Paris, Bibliothèque Nationale de France, Héb. 1058, ff. 46a-61a.
Nativitatibus, 1484: Liber Abraham Iude de nativitatibus (Venetia, 1484).
Nativitatum, MS Erfurt: Liber Nativitatum, MS Erfurt, Amplon. O.89, ff. 53a68b.
Nehoshet I, BNF 1061: Keli ha-Nehoshet (first version), MS Paris, Bibliothèque Nationale, MS Héb. 1061 (IMHM: F 14645), ff. 148a-164a.
Nehoshet II, MS Mantua 10: Keli ha-Nehoshet (second version), MS Mantua, Biblioteca di Mantova, Fondo Ebraico Mantovano, MS Ebr. 10, ff. 35-51.
Nehoshet III, Pinsker 26: Keli ha-Nehoshet (third version), MS WarszawZydowski Instytut Historyczny, Pinsker 26, ff. 58-71, right col.
'Olam, 2010: The Book of the World, A Parallel Hebrew-English Critical Edition of the Two Versions of the Text, edited, translated, and annotated by Shlomo Sela (Leiden: Brill, 2010).
Rationibus tabularum, 1947: José M. Millás Vallicrosa, ed., El Libro de los Fundamentos de las Tablas Astronómicas de R. Abraham Ibn Ezra (MadridBarcelona, 1947).
Reshit Hokhmah, 1939: The Beginning of Wisdom, An Astrological Treatise by Abraham Ibn Ezra, edited by Raphael Levy and Francisco Cantera (Baltimore, 1939).

Reshit Hokhmah, BNF 1056: Sefer Reshit Hokhmah, MS Paris, Bibliothèque Nationale de France, MS Héb. 1056, ff. 3a-33b.
Reshit Ḥokhmah II, OBL 707: Sefer Reshit Hokhmah (second version), MS Ox-ford-Bodleian Library, Opp. 707 [Neubauer 2025] [IMHM: F 19310], ff. 116a-117a.
She'elot I, 1995: Sefer ha-She'elot, in Meir Yiṣ̣̣aq Bakal, ed., Goralot ha-Rab'a (Jerusalem, 1995), pp. 6-39.
Shirey ha-Qodesh, 1980: I. Levin, Shirey ha-Qodesh shel Abraham Ibn Ezra (Jesusalem, 1975-1980).
Țe‘amim, 2007: The Book of Reasons, A Parallel Hebrew-English Critical Edition of the Two Versions of the Text, edited, translated, and annotated by Shlomo Sela (Leiden: Brill, 2007).
Tequfah, JNUL 8 ${ }^{\circ}$ 3916: Sefer ha-Tequfah, MS The Jewish National and University Library Ms. Heb. $8^{\circ} 3916$, ff. 57a-59a.
Three Questions, 1847: 'Elu ha-shalosh she'elot, nish'alu le-rav hakham morenu R. Abraham Ibn Ezra, sha'alam tor ha-torah we-'edei ha-te'uda, rabenu David Bar Kavod Ravenu Joseph Narboni, in M. Steinschneider (ed.), Sefer Shne haMe'orot, Berlin, 1847.
Yesod Mora', 2007: Yesod Mora We-Sod Torah, An Annotated Critical Edition by Joseph Cohen and Uriel Simon (Ramat Gan: Bar-Ilan University Press, 2007).

## Primary Sources

Abbreviation, 1994: Abū Ma'shar, The Abbreviation of the Introduction to Astrol$o g y$, together with the Medieval Latin translation of Adelard of Bath, ed. and trans. Ch. Burnett, K. Yamamoto, M. Yano (Leiden, 1994).

Almagest, 1984: Ptolemy's Almagest, translated and annotated by G.J. Toomer (London, 1984).
Al-Qabiṣī, 2004: Al-Qabīṣī (Alcabitius): The introduction to Astrology, Editions of the Arabic and Latin texts and an English translation, Ch. Burnett, K. Yamamoto, M. Yano (London-Turin, 2004).
Andarzaghar, 1991: Ch. Burnett and A. Al-Hamdi, "Zādānfarrūkh al-Andarzaghar on Anniversary Horoscopes," Zeitschrift für Geschichte der arabischislamischen Wissenschaften, 7 (1991/1992): 294-398.
Astronomica, 1977: M. Manilius, Astronomica, ed. and trans. G.P. Goold (London: Loeb Classical Library , 1977).
Baraita de-Mazzalot, 1998: Baraita de-Mazzalot, in Po'al haShem, vol. I (Bne Braq, 1998).
Baraita de-Shmu'el ha-Qatan, 1998: Baraita de-Shmu'el ha-Qatan, in Po'al haShem, vol. I (Bne Braq, 1998).
Centiloquium Ptolomei, 1676: Ptolomy's Centiloquium Englished in Henry Coley, Clavis Astrologiae Elimata (London, 1767), pp. 315-328.
Carmen astrologicum, 1976: Dorotheus de Sidon, Carmen astrologicum, ed. and trans. D. Pingree (Leipzig, 1976).
Cognition, 2008: Māshāallāh, On the interpretation of Cognition, in: Works of Sahl \& Māshäallāh, translated by Benjamin N. Dykes, pp. 417-423 (Minnesota, 2008).
De cogitationibus, 1549: Māshāallāh, De cogitationibus, in: Messahalae antiquissimi ac laudatissimi inter arabes astrologi, ed. Joachimus Hellerus, sig. LiirLiiiv (Nüremberg: Joannes Montanus \& Ulricus Neuberus, 1549).
De electionibus, 1509: Sahl Ibn Bishr, De electionibus (Liber electionum Mesallach et Ptholemei feliciter incipit) (Venice, 1509).
De iudiciis astrorum, 1551: Albohazen Haly filii Abenragel libri de iudiciis astrorum, ('Alī ibn abī-l-Rijāl, Kitāb al-Bāri), ed. Henrichus Petrus (Basel, 1551).
De receptione, 1549: Māshā’allāh, Liber Messahalae de receptione, ed. Joachimus Hellerus, sig. Livr-Riiiv (Nüremberg: Joannes Montanus \& Ulricus Neuberus, 1549).

Epistle to Judah b. Barzilai, 1917: Abraham Bar Hiyya, "Epistle addressed to Rabbi Judah b. Barzilai of Barcelona," (Hebrew), in Festschrift Adolf Schwarz (Berlin and Vienna, 1917), pp. 23-36.
Epitome, 1548: Epitome totius astrologiae, conscripta a Ioanne Hispalensi Hispano Astrologo celeberrimo, ante annos quadringentos, ac nunc primum in lucem edita. Cum praefatione Ioachimi Helleri Leucopetraei, contra Astrologiae adversarios, ed. Iohannes Montanus and Ulricus Neuber (Nuremberg, 1548).
Fihrist, 1970: The Fihrist of al-Nadim, ed. and trans. Bayard Dodge (New York \& London, 1970).
Galen, 1997: Galen: Selected Works, Translated with an Introduction and Notes by P.N. Singer (Oxford, 1997)
Guide of the Perplexed, 1963: Moses Maimonides, The Guide of the Perplexed, translated with an Introduction and Notes by Shlomo Pines (Chicago, 1963).
Hippocratic Writings, 1978: Hippocratic writings edited with an introduction by G.E.R. Lloyd; translated from the Greek by J. Chadwick and W.N. Mann et al. (Harmondsworth: Penguin, 1978).

Iudizios de las estrellas, 1954: Aly Aben Ragel, El libro conplido en los iudizios de las estrellas, traducción hecha en la corte de Alfonso el Sabio, Introducción y edición por Gerold Hilty (Madrid, 1954).
Iudizios de las estrellas, 2005: Aly Aben Ragel, El libro conplido en los iudizios de las estrellas, Partes 6 a 8, traducción hecha en la corte de Alfonso el Sabio, Introducción y edición por Gerold Hilty (Zaragoza, 2005).
Judgements of Nativities, 1988: Abu 'Ali Al-Khayyat, The Judgments of Nativities, translated from the Latin version of John of Seville by James H. Holden (Tempe, 1988).
Kelal Qaṭan, 2005: G. Boss, Ch. Burnett, T.Y. Langermann, Hebrew Medical Astrology: David Ben Yom Tov Kelal Qaṭan (Philadelphia: American Philosophical Society, 2005).
Kitāb al-Madhhal, 1996: Abū Ma'shar al-Balhi (Albumasar), Kitāb al-madhal al-kabīr ila sinấat ahkām al-nujūm, Liber introductorii maioris as scientiam judiciorum astrorum, Edition critique par Richard Lemay (Napoli, 1996).

Kitāb al-Mawālīd, 1971: Māshā'allāh's Kitāb al-Mawālīd, in E.S. Kennedy and D. Pingree (eds. and trans.), The Astrological History of Mâshẩallâh (Cambridge, 1971), pp. 145-165.
Kitāb al-Tafhīm, 1934: Al-Bīrūnī, The Book of Instruction in the Elements of the Art of Astrology, ed. and trans. R. Ramsay Wright (London, 1934).
Liber Aristotilis, 1997: The Liber Aristotilis of Hugo of Santalla, ed. Ch. Burnett and D. Pingree (London, 1997).
Māshā'allāh on Interrogations, MS OBL 160: Sefer ha-She'elot le-Māshā’allāh, MS Oxford, Bodleian Library, Add. Qu. 160 [Neubauer 2518] (IMHM: F 22230), ff. 154a-158a.

Matheseos, 1975: Ancient Astrology: Theory and Practice-Matheseos Libri VIII by Firmicus Maternus, trans. Jean Rhys Bram (Park Ridge, N.J., 1975).
Megilat haMegaleh, 1924: Abraham Bar Hiyya, Sefer Megillat ha-Megalle von Abraham bar Chija, published by A. Poznanski with introduction and notes by J. Guttman (Berlin, 1924).
On Critical Days, 1999: G.M. Cooper, Galen's "On Critical Days": Greek Medicine in Arabic, doctoral dissertation (Columbia University, 1999).
On Elections, 2008: Sahl Ibn Bishr, On elections, in: Works of Sahl \& Māshā’allāh, translated by Benjamin N. Dykes, pp. 187-222 (Minnesota, 2008).
On Hidden Things, 2008: Māshā’allāh, On hidden things, in: Works of Sahl \& Māshāallāh, translated by Benjamin N. Dykes, pp. 425-436 (Minnesota, 2008).

On Questions, 2008: Sahl Ibn Bishr, On questions, in: Works of Sahl \& Māshä’allāh, translated by Benjamin N. Dykes, pp. 67-186 (Minnesota, 2008).
On Reception, 2008: Māshā̉allāh, Māshā'allāh's book on reception, in: Works of Sahl \& Māshā’allāh, translated by Benjamin N. Dykes, pp. 437-497 (Minnesota, 2008).
Sanctification of the New Moon, 1967: The Code of Maimonides, Sanctification of the New Moon, translated by S. Gandz, with an introduction by Julian Obermann and an astronomical commentary by O. Neugebauer (New Haven, 1967).

Şafnat Pa‘aneah, 1911: Joseph Bonfils, Sophnat Pane'ach, Ein Beitrag sur Pentateuchexegeses des Mittelalters von D. Herzog (Heidelberg, 1911).
Sefer ha-Peri, BNF 1055: Sefer ha-Peri, ha-Niqrah Meah Diburim, translated by Kalonimus with a commentary of Abū Jaffar Ahmad Ibn Ibrahim, MS Paris, Bibliothèque Nationale de France, Héb. 1055, ff. 52a-72a.
Ṣurat ha-'Areṣ, 1546: Abraham Bar Hiyya, Sefer Ṣurat ha-'Areṣ, ed. S. Munster (Basilea, 1546).
Tetrabiblos, 1980: C. Ptolemy, Tetrabiblos, ed. and trans. F.E. Robbins (London: Loeb Classical Library, 1980).
Wars of the Lord,1923: Die Kämpfe Gottes von Levi von Gerson (Berlin, 1923).

## Secondary Literature

Adamson, 2002: P. Adamson, "Abū Ma'shar, Al-Kindī and the Philosophical Defense of Astrology," Recherches de Théologie et Philosophie Médiévales 69,2 (2002): 245-270.

Adamson, 2007: P. Adamson, Al-Kindī (Oxford, 2007).
Alba, Sainz and Sela, 2010: A. Alba, C. Sainz de la Maza, S. Sela, "La obra astrológica de Abraham ibn Ezra en dos códices castellanos," Sefarad (2010): 375-398.
Baron, 1958: S. Baron, A Social and Religious History of the Jews (New York, 1958).

Barton, 1994: T. Barton, Ancient Astrology (London: Routlege, 1994).
Bouché-Leclercq, 1899: A. Bouché-Leclercq, L’Astrologie Grecque (Paris, 1899).
Burnett, 1976: Ch. Burnett, "The Legend of the Three Hermes and Abū Ma'shar's Kitāb al-Ulūf in the Latin Middle Ages," Journal of the Warburg and Courtauld Institutes 39 (1976):231-234. Reprinted as article V in C. Burnett, Magic and divination in the Middle Ages: texts and techniques in the Islamic and Christian worlds (Aldershot and Brookfield: Ashgate (Variorum), 1996).

Burnett, 1993: Ch. Burnett, "Al-Kindi on Judicial Astrology: ‘The Forty Chapters,'" Arabic Sciences and Philosophy 3 (1993): 77-117.
Burnett, 2008: Ch. Burnett, "Weather Forecasting, Lunar Mansions and a Disputed Atribution: the Tractatus pluviarum et aeris mutationis and Epitome totius astrologiae of 'Iohannes Hispalensis'," in Islamic Thought in the Middle Ages: Studies in Text, Transmission and Translation, in Honour of Hans Daiber, eds Anna Akasoy and Wim Raven (Leiden and Boston, 2008), pp. 219265.

Burnett, 2010, "Hebrew and Latin Astrology in the Twelfth Century: the Example of the Location of Pain," Studies in History and Philosophy of Science Part C: Studies in History and Philosophy of Biological and Biomedical Sciences 412 (June 2010): 70-75.
Burnett et al., 1997: Ch. Burnett, Keiji Yamamoto, and Michio Yano "Al-Kindi on Finding Buried Treasure," Arabic Sciences and Philosophy 3 (1997): 5790.

Charlap, 1995: L. Charlap, Innovation and Tradition in Rabbi Abraham Ibn-Ezra's

Grammar According to his Grammatical Writings and to his Bible Exegesis Dissertation submitted to Bar Ilan University (Hebrew) (Ramat Gan, 1995).
Davidson, 1992: H.A. Davidson, Alfarabi, Avicenna, and Averroes, on Intellect (New York-Oxford, 1992).
Evans, 1998: J. Evans, The History and Practice of Ancient Astronomy (New YorkOxford, 1998).
Fleischer, 1930/2: J.L. Fleischer, "R. Abraham Ibn Ezra in France" (Hebrew), Mizraḥ u-ma'arav 4 (5690 [1930]): 352-360; 5 (5692 [1932]): 38-46, 217224, 289-300; repr. in R. Abraham Ibn Ezra: A Collection of Articles on his Life and Works (Tel Aviv, 5730 [1970]), pp. 69-106.
Fleischer, 1931: J.L. Fleischer, "R. Abraham Ibn Ezra and his Literary Work in England" (Hebrew), Oṣar ha- hayyim 7 (5691 [1931]): 69-76, 107-111, 129133, 160-168, 189-203.
Fleischer, 1932/3: J.L. Fleischer, "R. Abraham Ibn Ezra and his Literary Work in Rome" (Hebrew) Oṣar ha- ḥayyim 8 (5692 [1932]): 97-100, 129-131, 148150, 169-171; 9 (5693 [1933]): 134-136, 152-155.
Fleischer, 1934: J.L. Fleischer, "R. Abraham Ibn Ezra and his Literary Work in Lucca, Italy" (Hebrew) Ha-soqer 2 (5694 [1934]): 77-85; 4 (5696/7 [1936/7]): 186-194; repr. in R. Abraham Ibn Ezra: A Collection of Articles on his Life and Works (Tel Aviv 5730 [1970]), pp. 107-124.
Friedlander, 1877: M. Friedlander, Essays on the Writings of Abraham Ibn Ezra (London, 1877).
Friedlander, 1894/5: M. Friedlander, "Ibn Ezra in England," in Transactions of the Jewish Historical Society of England $2(1894 / 5): 47-60$.
Golb, 1976: N. Golb, The History and Culture of the Jews of Rouen in the Middle Ages (Hebrew) (Tel Aviv, 5736 [1976]).
Goldstein, 1996: B.R. Goldstein, "Astronomy and Astrology in the Works of Abraham Ibn Ezra," Arabic Sciences and Philosoph, 6 (1996): 9-21.
Grant, 1996: E. Grant, Planets, Stars, and Orbs: The Medieval Cosmos 1200-1287 (Cambridge, 1996).
Greive, 1973: H. Greive, Studien zum jüdischen Neoplatonismus: Die Religionsphilosophie des Abraham Ibn Ezra (Berlin, 1973).
Kennedy, 1956: E.S. Kennedy, "A Survey of Islamic Astronomical Tables," Transactions of the American Philosophical Society 46.2 (Philadelphia, 1956): 123177.

Hughes, 2002: Aaron Hughes, "The Three worlds of Ibn Ezra’s Hay ben Meqitz," Journal of Jewish Thought and Philosophy 11 (2002): 1-24.
Hughes, 2004: Aaron Hughes, "A Case of Twelfth-Century Plagiarism? Abraham Ibn Ezra’s Hay ben Meqitz and Avicenna’s Hayy Ibn Yaqzân," Journal of Jewish Studies 55 (2004): 306-311.
Itzhaki, 2000: M. Itzhaki, "Nouvelles tendances dans la poésie profane d'Abraham Ibn Ezra," in Abraham Ibn Ezra, savant universel (Bruxelles, 2000), pp. 53-59.
Levey, 1971: M. Levey, "Abraham ibn Ezra," in Dictionary of Scientific Biography, vol. IV, (New York, 1971), pp. 502-503.
Levy, 1927: R. Levy, The Astrological Works of Abraham Ibn Ezra (Baltimore, 1927).

Levy, 2000: T. Lévy, "Abraham Ibn Ezra et les mathematiques; remarques bibliographiques et historiques," in Abraham ibn Ezra, savanat universel (Bruxelles, 2000), pp. 60-75.
Kennedy-Van der Waerden, 1963: Kennedy, E. and Van der Waerden, "The World-Year of the Persians," Journal of the American Oriental Society 83 (1963):315-327.

Klein, 1984: F. Klein-Franke, Iatromathematics in Islam (Hildesheim, 1984).
Langermann, 1993: Y.T. Langerman, "Some Astrological Themes in the Thought of Abraham Ibn Ezra," in I. Twersky and J.M. Harris (eds.), Rabbi Abraham Ibn Ezra: Studies in the Writings of a Twelfth-Century Jewish Polymath (Cambridge, Mass., 1993), pp. 28-85.
Levin, 1956: I. Levin, Abraham Ibn Ezra, Hayav we-Shirato (Hebrew) (Tel Aviv, 1956).

Liphchitz, 1982: A. Liphchitz, Studies in the Thought of Abraham Ibn Ezra (Hebrew) (Jerusalem, 1982).
Lloyd, 1973: G.E.R. Lloyd, Greek Science after Aristotle (New York-London, 1973).

Lloyd, 1987: G.E.R. LLoyd, The Revolutions of Wisdom (Berkeley, 1987).
Matthew, 1996: D. Matthew, Atlas of Medieval Europe (New York, 1996).
Pingree, 1970: D. Pingree, "Abū Ma'shar," Dictionary of Scientific Biography 1 (New York, 1970), pp. 32-39.
Pingree, 1990: D. Pingree, "Astrology," in: Religion, Learning and Science in the 'Abbasid Period (Cambridge, 1990), pp. 290-300.
Pingree, 1997: D. Pingree, From Astral Omens to Astrology from Babylon to Bīkāner (Roma 1997).
Plessner, 1954: M. Plessner, "Hermes Trismegistus and Arab Science," Studia Islamica, 2 (1954):45-59.
Plessner, 1971: M. Plessner, "Hirmis," Encyclopedia of Islam, new edition, 3 (Leiden 1971), pp. 463-465.
Rosin, 1898: D. Rosin, "Die Religionsphilosophie Abraham Ibn Esra's," Monatsschrift für Geschichte und Wissenschaft des Judentums 42 (1898): 17-33, 5873, 108-115, 154-161, 200-214, 241-252, 305-315, 345-362, 394-407, 444457, 481-505; 43 (1899): 22-31, 75-91, 125-133, 168-184, 231-240.
Sarna, 1993: N.M. Sarna, "Abraham Ibn Ezra as as Exegete", in I. Twersky and J.M. Harris (eds.), Rabbi Abraham Ibn Ezra: Studies in the Writings of a Twelfth-Century Jewish Polymath (Cambridge, Mass., 1993), pp. 1-27.
Schirmann, 1997: J. Schirmann, The History of Hebrew Poetry in Christian Spain and Southern France, Edited, supplemented and annotated by Ezra Fleischer (Hebrew) (Jerusalem, 1997).
Schwartz, 2005: D. Schwartz, Studies on Astral Magic in Medieval Jewish Thought (Leiden-Boston, 2005).
Sela, 1999: S. Sela, Astrology and Biblical Exegesis in Abraham Ibn Ezra's Thought (Hebrew) (Ramat Gan, 1999).
Sela, 2003: S. Sela, Abraham Ibn Ezra and the Rise of Medieval Hebrew Science (Leiden: Brill Academic Publishers, 2003).
Sela, 2004: S. Sela, "Abraham Ibn Ezra's Appropriation of Saturn," Kabbalah 10 (2004): 21-53.

Sela, 2006: S. Sela, "Abraham Bar Hiyya's Astrological Work and Thought," Jewish Studies Quarterly, 13 (2006): 128-158.
Sela, 2009, "Sefer ha-Tequfah: An Unknown Treatise on Anniversary Horoscopy by Abraham Ibn Ezra," Aleph 9.2 (2009): 241-254.
Sela, 2010: S. Sela, "A Fragment From an Unknown Redaction of Re'šit Hokmah by Abraham Ibn Ezra," Aleph 10.1 (2010): 43-66.
Sela and Freudenthal, 2006: S. Sela and G. Freudenthal, "Abraham Ibn Ezra’s Scholarly Writings: A Chronological Listing," Aleph 6 (2006): 13-55.
Sela and Smithuis, 2009: S. Sela and R. Smithuis, "Two Hebrew Fragments from Unknown Redactions of Abraham Ibn Ezra's Sefer ha- Mivharim and Sefer ha-Še'elot," Aleph 9.2 (2009): 225-240.
Sezgin, 1976: Geschichte des Arabischen Schrifttums, VII: Astrologie, Metereolologie und Versandtes (Leiden, 1979).
Simon, 1983: U. Simon, "Spanish Commentators," (Hebrew) in Jewish Biblical Exegesis, Jerusalem, 1983, pp. 47-60.
Smithuis, 2004: R. Smithuis, "Abraham ibn Ezra the Astrologer and the Transmission of Arabic Science to the Christian West," doctoral dissertation (University of Manchester, 2004).
Smithuis, 2006: R. Smithuis, "Abraham Ibn Ezra’s Astrological Works in Hebrew and Latin-New Discoveries and Exhaustive Listing," Aleph 6 (2006): 239338.

Steinschneider, 1870: M. Steinschneider, "Zur Geschichte der Uebersetzungen aus dem Indischen ins Arabische und ihres Einflusses auf die arabische Literatur," Zeitschrift der deutschen Morgenländischen Geselschaft 24 (1870).
Steinschneider, 1880: M. Steinschneider, "Abraham Ibn Esra (Abraham Judaeus, Avenare)," Supplement zur Zeitschrift für Mathematik und Physik, 25 (1880): 59-128 (= Gesammelte Schriften, [Berlin 1925], pp. 407-498).
Steinschneider, 1925: M. Steinschneider, "Abraham Judaeus-Savasorda und Ibn Esra" in Gesamelte Schriften (Berlin, 1925), pp. 327-387.
Sudhoff, 1901: Sudhoff, Karl. "Zur Geschichte der Lehre von den kritischen Tagen im Krankheitsverlaufe," Sudhoffs Archiv für Geschichte der Medizin 21.14 (1929):1-22, (originally published 1901).

Thorndike, 1956: L. Thorndike, "The Latin Translations of Astrological Works by Messahala," Osiris 12 (1956):49-72.
Toomer, 1985: G.I. Toomer, "Galen on the Astronomers and Astrologers," Archive for History of Exact Sciences 32.3-4 (1985): 193-206.
Vallicrosa, 1949: José M. Millás Vallicrosa, "La obra enciclopédica de R. Abraham bar Ḥiyya," in José M. Millás Vallicrosa, Estudios sobre historia de la ciencia española (Barcelona, 1949), pp. 219-262.
ENGLISH-HEBREW GLOSSARY OF TECHNICAL TERMS (3 VERSIONS OF SEFER HA-MIVḤARIM)

| No English | Hebrew Mivharim I | Mivharim II | Mivharim III |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| above the Earth | (\$1.3:3; \$ 1.5:3; \$4.5:1 | \$ 1.2:4; § 1.5:4; § 1.6:1,3 |  |
| 2 airy signs | \$ \$ 1.7:2; \$3.5:3; § 10.1:1 | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 9.1: 2 \\ & \$ 1.3: 1 \end{aligned}$ |  |
| 3 anomaly | \$ 10.4:3,4 |  |  |
| 4 apogee | \$ 1.4:1; \$ 2.5:5 |  |  |
| Aries |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { § 1.4:1; §7.2:3; § 10.2:1,2; } \\ & \text { § 12.1:4 } \end{aligned}$ | \$7.3:4 |
| 6 arithmetic | \$1.1:3 \$10.1:2,3 |  |  |
| 7 ascendant | צומח |  | §7.2:2,4; § 7.3:2; § 8.1:3 |
| 8 ascendant degree | $\begin{aligned} \hline \text { צומחה } & \$ 2: 2,3 ; \text { § } 3: 2 ; \text { § } 5: 2 ; \text { § } 2.1: 4 ; \\ & \$ 4.4: 2 ; \text { § } 10.2: 1 \end{aligned}$ <br> צומחת | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 6: 4,7 ; \text { § 1.2:4; § 2.1:2; §4.1:1,3;} \\ & \$ 4.2: 3 ; \S 5.1: 2 ; \S 5.2: 2 ; \S 6.1: 5 ; \\ & \$ 7.2: 7 ; \text { § 10.2:6; §10.4:2,3;} \\ & \text { § 11.1:1; § 12.1:2 } \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 7 \cdot 3: 2,3 ; \$ 7 \cdot 5: 2 \\ & \$ 7 \cdot 3: 4 \end{aligned}$ |


| No | English | Hebrew | Mivharim I | Mivharim II | Mivharim III |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 9 | ascendant sign | מזל צומח <br> בית צומח |  | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 2: 3 ; \$ 2.31 ; \S 4.2: 4,5 ; \S 4.3: 1 ; \\ & \$ 5.1: 1 ; \$ 5.2: 2 ; \$ 5.3: 1 ; \S 8.1: 1 ; \\ & \$ 9.1: 2 ; \text { § } 10.1: 3 ; \S 10.2: 2,6 ; \\ & \text { § } 10.4: 1 \end{aligned}$ | §7.2:2; §7.3:4 |
| 10 | aspect | מבט | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 2: 1 ; \S 6: 1,2,4 ; \S 8: 3 ; \text { § 1.1:2; } \\ & \$ 1.9: 2 ; \S 3.4: 2,4 ; \S 5.3: 2 ; \S 5 \cdot 4: 1 ; \\ & \$ 7.4: 1,4 ; \S 8.2: 2 ; \$ 9.3: 4,6 \end{aligned}$ |  | §7.4:2; § 8.1:2 |
| 11 | aspect of love | מבט אהבה | §7.4:5; § 7.6:5; § 10.3:1; § 11.1:3 |  |  |
| 12 | astrologers | חכמי המזלות <br> חכמי משפטי ד | §3.5:1; §7.2:1; § 10.1:5 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { § 3:3; § } 1.5: 1 ; \text { § } 5.1: 3 ; \text { § } 5.2: 8 ; \\ & \text { § } 10.2: 1 \end{aligned}$ | §7.2:4 |
| 13 | astronomical tables | לוחות | § 10.4:1 |  |  |
| 14 | Aquarius | דלי | $\begin{aligned} & \text { § 7:1,3; § 2.1:1; § 4.1:1; §6.4:2; } \\ & \text { §7.5:7; § 10.1:7 } \end{aligned}$ | §6:5; §4.2:2; § 6.1:3; § 7.2:7 |  |
| 15 | below the Earth | תחת הארץ | § 1.3:4; §4.5:1 |  |  |

Hebrew Mivharim I

| No | English | Hebrew | Mivharim I | Mivharim II | Mivharim III |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 16 | benefic planets | כוכבים טובים <br> טובים | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 6: 1 ; \S 6: 4 ; \S 8: 3 ; \S 1.9: 2 ; \S 2.5: 6 ; \\ & \$ 3.1: 6 ; \S 3.2: 6 ; \S 3.6: 1 ; \S 4.3: 4 ; \\ & \$ 5.2: 1 ; \S 7.4: 1,6 ; \S 7.5: 8 ; \S 7.7: 2 ; \\ & \$ 11.3: 1 ; \S 12.1: 2 \\ & \$ 3.4: 2 \end{aligned}$ | § 2:1; §3:3; §6:4; § 2.1:1,3; <br> § 2.3:2; §4.2:3; § 5.2:6; §7.2:1; <br> § 7.4:1; §8.1:3; §9.2:2; § 11.4:3 <br> §3.1:4 |  |
| 17 | be victorious (planet) | לנצח |  |  | \$7.1:2,4 |
| 18 | bicorporal signs | מזלות שהם בעלות שתי גופות מזלות שני גופים/גופות | § 1.2:3; § 10.3:3 | \$6:17 | §8.1:4 |
| 19 | black bile | מרה שחורה | \$1.7:2 | \$1.3:2 |  |
| 20 | bloodletter | מקיז | §1.7:1 |  |  |
| 21 | bloodletting (phlebotomy) | להקיז לחס תולדת הדם | $\$ 1.6: 1 ; \$ 1.8: 2$ | § 1.3:1 |  |
| 22 | burnt | נשרף |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { § 2.2:2; § 2.3:2; §4.2:4; §5.1:1; } \\ & \$ 6.1: 7 ; \text { § 7.1:3.4; § 7.2:1; § 7.4:4; } \\ & \text { § 9.3:1; § 10.1:1; §11.2:2,4; } \\ & \text { § 11.3:3 } \end{aligned}$ | § 7.3:1; § 7.3:5; § 7.5:4,7; § 8.1:2 |
| 23 | burnt by the Sun | נשרף מהשמש |  | § 3.9:3; § 7.2:7; § 8.1:1; § 10.2:3 |  |
| 24 | cadent place | בית נופל | § 2:2; § 6:2; § 7.4:1; §7.5:9 | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 2.3: 2 ; \text { § } 3.1: 3 ; \S 7 \cdot 2: 7 ; \S 7 \cdot 4: 4 ; \\ & \$ 10.1: 1 ; \$ 11 \cdot 3: 3 \\ & \$ 6: 5 \\ & \$ 7.2: 2 \end{aligned}$ | §7.1:2 |


| No | English | Hebrew | Mivharim I | Mivharim II | Mivharim III |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 25 | Cancer | סרטן | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 1.2: 3 ; \S 2.1: 1 ; \S 3.4: 4 ; \S 7.3: 3 ; \\ & \$ 7.5: 6,12,13 ; \S 10.1: 7 \end{aligned}$ | § 1.4:2; § 7.1:5; § 7.2:4 | §7.2:1; §7.5:2 |
| 26 | Capricorn | גדי | $\begin{aligned} & \text { § 5.5:3; § 6.1:1; §7.5:6,10,12; } \\ & \text { § 10.1:6 } \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 6: 18 ; \S 1.3: 1 ; \text { § 6.1:3; §7.2:4; } \\ & \$ 7.3: 2 ; \text { § 12.1:4 } \end{aligned}$ |  |
| 27 | cardines | יתדות | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 6: 2 ; \text { § 2.2:1; §4.2:2; §4.5:2,3; } \\ & \$ 6.2: 6 ; \$ 7.4: 6 ; \S 7.6: 2 ; \S 7.7: 1 ; \\ & \S 8.1: 4 ; \text { § 8.2:1; §9.1:2; §9.3:2; } \\ & \$ 11.1: 3 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 2.1: 2 ; \S 2.2: 1 ; \S 4.1: 4 ; \S 4.2: 3 ; \\ & \$ 5.1: 4 ; \S 5.2: 3,4,5 ; \S 7.1: 5 ; \\ & \$ 7.4: 2 ; \S 7.5: 1 ; \S 8.1: 1,2 ; \S 9.1: 3 ; \\ & \S 10.1: 2,4 ; \S 11.3: 2 ; \S 11.4: 1 \end{aligned}$ | §7.1:2; §8.1:1 |
| 28 | cardines of the ascendant | יתדות מזל הצומח | §4.2:2; § 5.3:1; §7.7:1 |  |  |
| 29 | cardines of the natal horoscope | יתדות מזלו |  | \$2:1 |  |
| 30 | cardinal points | פאות | \$3.2:6 |  |  |
| 31 | cardo of the lower midheaven | יתד תהום | \$2.1:5 |  |  |
| 32 | cause death | לכרות |  |  | \$7.3:3 |
| 33 | center | מוצק |  | §4.3:2; § 10.1:3 |  |
| 34 | circle | גלגל |  | §4.3:2; § 10.1:3 |  |
| 35 | circle of apogee | גלגל גבהות | \$ 1.4:1 |  |  |
| 36 | complexion | ממסך |  | § 6:3; § 1.2:1 |  |
| 37 | configuration | מערכת |  | § 1:2; §7.4:6 | \$7.2:1 |

SEFER HA-MIVHARIM
Hebrew Mivharim I
Mivharim III
Mivharim II

§ $5.2: 1,2 ;$ § $5.3: 2 ;$ § $5 \cdot 4: 1,2$
§7.4:1; §8.1:1; §9.3:4
5.4.4:1

| 38 | conjunction | מחברת | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 6: 1 ; \text { § } 8: 3 ; \text { § } 2.3: 1 ; \text { § } 3.4: 2 ; \\ & \$ 5.2: 1,2 ; \$ 5.3: 2 ; \$ 5.4: 1,2 ; \\ & \$ 7.4: 1 ; \S 8.1: 1 ; \S 9.3: 4 \end{aligned}$ | § 6:6,8,9,10; \$ 5.2:3; § 7.2:1 | \$7.4:3,5 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 39 | constipation | עצור | \$ 1.4:1 |  |  |
| 40 | crooked signs | מלזות מעוותים |  | \$11.4:4 |  |
| 41 | cusp of the place | תחילת הבית | \$3:1 |  |  |
| 42 | day | יום | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 1: 3 ; \text { § 6:2; §3.2:2; §3.6:4; } \\ & \$ 4.4: 3 ; \text { § 5.1:1,3; § 10.2:1; } \\ & \text { § } 11.4: 1,4 \end{aligned}$ | § 1:4,5; § 6:9; § 4.2:7; § 10.2:4 |  |
| 43 | deformed signs | מזלות המומים | \$3.1:4 |  |  |
| 44 | degree | מעלה | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 3: 1,2,3 ; \S 6: 1 ; \S 1.1: 1 ; \S 1.3: 2 ; \\ & \$ 5.5: 3 ; 4 ; \$ 7.5: 12 ; \$ 10.1: 5 ; \\ & \$ 10.4: 2 \end{aligned}$ | § 2:3,4; § 6:15,19; § 1.2:2 | \$9.1:2 |
| 45 | degree of dejection | מעלת הקלון |  | \$ 1.1:1 |  |
| 46 | degree of the aspect | מעלת המבט | \$ 1.2:2 |  |  |
| 47 | determine (position of a planet) | תקן | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 5: 1 ; \text { § 1.1:3; \$ 2.2:3; § 6.4:1; } \\ & \$ 9.2: 4,5,6,7,8 ; \$ 10.4: 1 ; \text { §11.1:2; } \\ & \$ 12.1: 3 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 5: 3 ; \$ 7.3: 3 ; \$ 7.4: 3 ; \\ & \$ 10.3: 1,2,3,4,5 ; \$ 11.4: 2 ; \\ & \$ 12.1: 3,5 \end{aligned}$ |  |
| 48 | direct in its motion | ישר בהליכתו <br> ישר | \$2.5:5 |  | \$7.1:3 |
|  | direction | ניהוג |  |  | \$7.3:3 |


| No | English | Hebrew | Mivharim I | Mivharim II | Mivḥarim III |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 50 | disagreement | מחלוקת | \$7.2:1 | §3:3; § 1.5:1 |  |
| 51 | distance | מרחק | §6:1; § 2.1:2; § 5.5:4 |  |  |
| 52 | division of the places | חלוק הבתים | §10.1:5 |  |  |
| 53 | division of the places according to the <latitude of the) country | >הבתים> כפי חלוק הארץ |  | §10.2:5 |  |
| 54 | domain of burning | גבול השרפה |  |  | \$7.3:4,5 |
| 55 | Earth |  | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 1.3: 3,4 ; \text { § } 1.5: 3 ; \$ 4.5: 1,2 ; \\ & \$ 7.5: 6 ; \$ 10.1: 5 \end{aligned}$ |  |  |
| 56 | earthy signs | מזלות העפר | §3.5:2; §6.2:5 | §1.3:1; §9.1:2 |  |
| 57 | eastern quadrant | רביעית מזרחית | \$3.2:6 |  |  |
| 58 | eccentric circle | גלגל המוצק |  | §4.3:2; § 10.1:3 |  |
| 59 | election | מבחר | $\begin{aligned} & \text { § 1:1,2,4; § } 2: 1 ; \text { § } 4: 1 ; \text { § } 7: 1 ; \\ & \text { § } 1.2: 1 ; \text { § 7.4:1; § 7.6:9 } \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 1: 5 ; \$ 1: 6 ; \S 2: 1 ; \S 2: 4 ; \S 3: 2 ; \\ & \$ 5: 1 ; \$ 6: 4 ; \S 6: 15 \end{aligned}$ | \$7.5:3,5 |
| 60 | epicycle | גלגל קטן |  | \$4.3:2 |  |
| 61 | equal degrees | מעלות ישרות | § 10.1:5 |  |  |
| 62 | equidistant degree | במעלה שוה עם מעלה שמרחקה שוה מעלה שוה ממרחק מעלה דבקה | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 6: 1 \\ & \$ 2.1: 2 \end{aligned}$ | \$6:15 |  |

Mivharim III

| 63 equator | קוהצדק | \$6:1; \$2.1:2 | \$6:15 |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 64 experience | ניסיון | \$1.5:2 |  |  |
| 65 extreme north | סוף צפון | §6:1; \$2.1:2 | \$6:15 |  |
| 66 extreme south | סוף דרום | §6:1; \$2.1:2 | \$6:15 |  |
| 67 even-numbered hours | שצות הזוגות | § 5.1:1; § 7.6:10 |  |  |
| 68 favorable configuration of the stars | מזל טוב |  | \$1:4,5 |  |
| 69 favorable day | יום טוב |  | \$1:4 |  |
| 70 favorable hours | שעות טובות |  | \$1:4 |  |
| 71 feminine planet | כוכב נקבה | \$5.1:4 | \$ 5.2:1,3 |  |
| 72 feminine quadrant | רביעית נקבה |  | \$5.2:1 |  |
| 73 feminine sign | מזל נקבה | \$6.3:3 | § 5.2:2; § 12.1:3 |  |
| 74 fiery signs | מזלות האש | § 1.7:2; § 3.5:1; § 3.6:1; § 10.1:1 | § 1.3:1; § 7.1:2; §9.1:2 |  |
| 75 first cardo | יתד ראשון |  | \$11.3:2; § 11.4:1 | \$7.1:2 |
| 76 fixed signs | מאמנים עומדים | § 1.2:3; § 2.4:1; § 10.2:1 | § 6:16; § 4.1:1; § 10.4:1 | \$8.1:4 |
| 77 fortunate | טוב | § 1.2:2,3; § 3.2:5; § 3.4:4 | § 1.5:2,3; § 10.2:2; § 11.4:3 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { \$7.3:2; §7.5:1,2,4,6; §8.1:3; } \\ & \text { §9.1:1 } \end{aligned}$ |
| 78 fortunate aspect | מבט טוב | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 1.1: 3 ; \text { § 4.2:1; §4.4:2; § 5.2:1; } \\ & \$ 5.3: 1 ; \text { § 7.5:2; §9.2:2; } \$ 9.3: 5 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 2.1: 1 ; \$ 3.3: 2 ; \$ 5.4: 2 ; \text { § } 6.1: 5 ; \\ & \$ 7.5: 1 ; \$ 9.3: 3 ; \text { § } 10.2: 6 ; \$ 10.3: 5 ; \\ & \$ 11.2: 3 ; \text { § } 11.4: 3 ; \$ 12.1: 1 \end{aligned}$ |  |


| No | English | Hebrew | Mivharim I | Mivharim II | Mivharim III |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 79 | fortunate position | מקום טוב |  | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 4: 1 ; \text { § } 2.2: 2,3 ; \text { § } 2.3: 2 ; \\ & \$ 4.1: 1,3,4 ; \S 4.2: 3 ; \S 5.1: 1 ; \\ & \$ 5 \cdot 3: 1 ; \S 7.1: 3,4 ; \S 7.2: 3 ; \S 7.4: 1 ; \\ & \$ 7.5: 1,2 ; \text { § } 9.3: 1 ; \S 10.2: 1,3 ; \\ & \text { § } 10.4: 1,3 ; \text { § } 11.4: 3 ; \text { § } 12.1: 3 \end{aligned}$ |  |
| 80 | fortunate sign | מזל טוב | § 7.5:3,6; § 7.6:7; \$7.7:2; § 10.1:6 |  |  |
| 81 | fortunate things | דברים טובים |  |  | §7.1:4 |
| 82 | fourth cardo | יתד רביעי |  | \$9.2:3 |  |
| 83 | Gemini | תאומים | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 3: 1,2 ; \S_{1} .6: 1 ; \S 4.1: 1 ; \S 6.3: 3 ; \\ & \$ 7.5: 5 ; \$ 10.1: 4 \end{aligned}$ | \$1.3:3 |  |
| 84 | geometry | חכמת המדות | \$1.1:3 |  |  |
| 85 | giving power | תת הכח | $\begin{aligned} & \text { § 1.3:3,4; § 1.5:1,3; §2.1:4,5; } \\ & \text { § 2.4:1; §3.6:1; §4.1:2; } 4.2: 3 ; \\ & \text { § 4.5:1; §7.4:2,4; §7.5:7; §7.6:4; } \\ & \text { §8.1:1,4,7; §8.2:1; §10.3:5 } \end{aligned}$ |  | § 7.3:1; § 7.4:4; § 7.5:2,3; §8.1:1 |
| 86 | good fortune | טוב/טובה | § 2.5:6; § 3.1:6; §7.6:6 | § 1:4 |  |
| 87 | grammar | דקדוק לשון | \$1.1:3 |  |  |
| 88 | great circle | הגלגל הגדול | § 2.1:4; § 2.5:4; \$4.1:2 |  |  |
| 89 | harm | נזק | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 1: 2 ; \text { § 2.1:3; §3.1:4; §6.2:6; } \\ & \$ 7.2: 4 ; \text { § } 11.3: 1 ; \text { § } 12.1: 2 \end{aligned}$ | $\$ 1: 5$ | §7.2:5 |
| 90 | head of the Dragon | ראש התלי |  | §6:14 |  |


| No English | Hebrew | Mivharim I | Mivharim II | Mivharim III |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 91 heat | חום |  | \$5.1:3 |  |
| 92 hour | שעה | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 1: 3 ; \text { § 3.2:1,2,8; § } 3.4: 5 ; \$ 4.3: 4 ; \\ & \$ 5.1: 1,4 ; \$ 7.6: 10 \end{aligned}$ |  | §7.5:1,7; § 8.1:1,2,3; §9.1:1,3,4 |
| 93 house (planetary) | בית | $\begin{aligned} & \text { \$ 7:2,3; § 1.1:1; } \mathbb{1 . 2 : 1 , 2 ; ~ \$ 5 . 2 : 4 ;} \\ & \$ 6.1: 1 ; \$ 7.1: 2,3,4 ; \$ 7.3: 3,4 ; \\ & \$ 7.6: 4,6,7 ; \$ 9.1: 3 ; \text { §9.2:4; } \\ & \$ 9.3: 1 ; \$ 10.3: 2,4 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { §3.1:1; § 4.3:3; § 1.1:1; } \$ 6.1: 1 ; \\ & \$ 10.1: 1,2 ; \text { § 10.2:1,2 } \end{aligned}$ | § 7.3:4; §7.5:6; §9.1:1 |
| 94 house of dejection | בית קלון |  | \$7.1:5 |  |
| 95 house of exaltation | בית כבוד | \$7.5:3,5 | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 5.3: 3 ; \S 7.2: 3 ; \S 7.3: 2 ; \text { § } 9.3: 3 ; \\ & \$ 10.2: 2,4 ; \S 11.4: 1 \end{aligned}$ | \$7.3:4 |
| 96 human supernal soul | נשמת האדם העליונה <br> נשמת האדם נבראה <br> במקום גבוה על כל <br> הכוכבים |  |  |  |
| 97 humors | אמהות | \$ 1.7:1 |  |  |
| 98 illustration | דמיון | \$ 1:2; § 3:1; \$ 1.7:2; § 1.8:2 |  |  |
| 99 increasing motion | מוסיף בהלוך | \$ 2.1:1 |  |  |
| 100 intermediate | אמצעי | \$11.1:2 | \$7.1:6 | \$7.1:3 |
| 101 interrogation | שאלה | \$1:3; \$ 3.2:5; \$4.3:2 |  |  |
| 102 judge (verb) | דן | \$7.2:2 |  | \$7.2:4; § 7.5:8 |
| 103 judgments | משפטים |  |  | \$7.2:4; § 7.4:5 |


| No English | Hebrew | Mivharim I | Mivharim II | Mivharim III |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 104 Jupiter | צדק |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { § 1.2:1; § 2.2:1; §3.1:1; § 5.1:4; } \\ & \$ 5.2: 4 ; \text { § 7.1:4,5; §7.2:4; § 7.4:4; } \\ & \text { § 7.5:1; § 10.1:2; §10.3:2; } \\ & \text { § 11.2:4; § 12.1:5 } \end{aligned}$ |  |
| 105 jurisprudence | דעת התורות והדינין | \$1.1:3 |  |  |
| 106 jurist | חכם בתורות | \$9.2:3 |  |  |
| 107 latitude (ecliptical) | מרחב |  | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 10.1: 3 \\ & \$ 6: 13 ; \$ 2.1: 1 \end{aligned}$ |  |
| 108 latitude (geographical) | מרחב רארץ | §7.4:6 |  |  |
| 109 latitude plate | לוח הארץ | § 10.1:5 |  |  |
| 110 Leo | אריה | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 7: 1,2 ; \text { § } 4.1: 1 ; \text { § } 5.2: 3 ; \text { § } 6.1: 1 ; \\ & \$ 6.3: 2 ; \text { § } 7.3: 2 ; \text { § } 7.5: 5 ; \S 10.1: 2,3 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 6: 5 ; \S 6.1: 2 ; \S 7.2: 7 ; \S 10.2: 1,2 \\ & \$ 7.3: 4 \end{aligned}$ |  |
| 111 Libra | מאזנים | § 6.3:3; §7.3:3; § 7.5:6,7,9 | \$7.2:7 |  |
| 112 light | אור |  | § 1.5:3; \$3.1:1; \$7.4:1 |  |
| 113 logic | חכמת ההגיון אל מנטק | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 1.1: 3 ; \$ 9.3: 6 \\ & \$ 1.1: 3 \end{aligned}$ |  |  |
| 114 long signs | מזלות ארוכים |  | \$7.1:6 |  |
| 115 lord | ממונה | § 10.1:5 |  |  |
| 116 lord of life | בעלת החיים |  |  | §7.3:3 |

No English Hebrew Mivharim I

| 120 lord of the degree (of the ascendant) | בעל המעלה | §10.2:6 |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 121 lord of the hour | ( § 3.1:7; § 4.3:3,4; §4.5:3; § 5.1:4 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { § 3.2:3; § 5.1:2; § 5.2:1; § 7.3:3; } \\ & \$ 9.1: 1 ; \text { § } 10.2: 4 \end{aligned}$ | §7.5:7; § 8.1:2,3; § 9.1:3 |
| 122 lord of the house | \$7.4:4 בעל הבית | §11.4:3 | §7.2:5; § 7.5:7 |
| 123 lord of the place | $\begin{aligned} \hline ת & \\ & \$ 2.2: 2 ; \$ 3.6: 1 ; \$ 4.4: 1 ; \$ 4.4: 1 ; \\ & \$ 5.1: 4 ; \$ 7.2: 1,4 ; \S 7.4: 3 ; \\ & \$ 7.5: 2 ; \$ 7.6: 4 ; \$ 8.1: 2,7 ; \$ 8.2: 2 ; \\ & \$ 9.1: 1,2 ; \$ 10.1: 4,5,6,7,9 ; \\ & \$ 10.2: 3 ; \$ 11.1: 3 ; \$ 12.1: 1 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { § 2.1:4; § 3.3:1; §4.1:3; § 5.1:1; } \\ & \$ 6.1: 5 ; \S 7.1: 3,4 ; \S 7.2: 5 ; \S 7.4: 4 ; \\ & \text { 8 8.1:1,2; §9.3:1; §11.1:1 } \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 7 \cdot 3: 1 ; \$ 7 \cdot 4: 1,2,4 ; \$ 7 \cdot 5: 7 ; \\ & \$ 8.1: 1,2,3 \end{aligned}$ |
| 124 lord of the rising sign | בעל הבית העולה | §7.1:5 |  |
| 125 lord of the sign | \$ \$ 3.6:1; \$7.6:5; \$7.7:2 | §4.2:5; § 9.1:4; \$9.3:3 |  |

Hebrew Mivharim I Mivharim II Mivharim III

| 126 lordship | ממשלה | § 63:3,4; §7.3:3 |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 127 lot of Fortune | הגורל הטוב המזל הטוב | $\begin{aligned} & \text { § 2.2:3; § 9.1:1; §11.2:4 } \\ & \text { §7.7:1 } \end{aligned}$ |  |  |
| 128 lot of the Moon | גורל הלבנה |  | \$ 2.2:3; § 7.5:2 |  |
| 129 lower planet | כפל שפב שפל | \$ 2.4:1; § 6.3:1; § 7.2:3; § 7.3:3 | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 7.1: 5 ; \$ 7.2: 6 \\ & \$ 7.1: 7 \end{aligned}$ | §7.1:2,3,4 |
| 130 lower world | עולם שפל |  | \$6:1 |  |
| 131 luminaries | מאורות | § 2:1; § 4.5:3; \$ 11.2:1,3 | \$ 4.2:5; § 7.1:6; §9.3:5 | \$7.3:1,2; \$7.4:5 |
| 132 malefic planets | כוכבים מזיקים כוכבים רעים מזיקים | $\begin{aligned} & \text { §7:1; §2.2:2; §3.1:3; §6.4:1,2; } \\ & \$ 11.3: 1 \\ & \$ 3.1: 1 ; \S 8.1: 1 \\ & \\ & \\ & \\ & \$ 2: 3 ; \S 6: 1,2 ; \$ 1.3: 3 ; \S 2.1: 2 ; \\ & \$ 3.2: 6 ; \$ 4.4: 3 ; \S 6.2: 6 ; \S 7.4: 6 ; \\ & \$ 9.1: 1 ; \$ 9.3: 2 \end{aligned}$ | § $2: 1,2,3 ;$ § $3: 2 ;$ § $6: 3,4,5,12,15$; § 1.2:2; § 1.6:2; § 2.2:2; § 2.3:2; § $3.1: 4 ;$ § $4.2: 4 ;$ § $4.3: 3 ;$ § 5.1:1; § 5.2:7; § 7.2:1; §7.3:1; §7.4:5; §8.1:3; §9.3:3; § 11.1:1; § 12.1:1,4 | §8.1:2 |


| No English | Hebrew | Mivharim I | Mivharim II | Mivḥarim III |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 133 Mars | מאדים | § 1.1:3; § 1.6:1,2; § 2.1:3; § 2.3:1; § 3.1:5; § 3.2:1,9; §3.3:1,2,3; <br> § 3.4:5; §4.2:2; §4.4:3; § 5.1:5; <br> § 5.2:2; § 5.3:1; §6.1:1; §7.1:3; <br> \$7.2:1,4; §7.5:6,8,9,11; <br> §7.6:2,6,9,10; §7.7:1; §8.2:2; <br> \$9.2:4; §9.3:2,4,5; § 10.3:1; <br> § 11.1:2,3; § 12.1:2 | § 6.3:9,10, 11; § 1.2:1; § 1.3:2; § 3.2:2; §4.1:4; §4.2:6; §4.2:7; §4.3:3; § $5.1: 5 ;$ § $5.4: 1,2 ;$ § 7.1:3; § 1.1:1; § 7.2:3,4; §7.3:2; \$7.5:1; §9.1:4; §9.2:3; §9.3:5; § 10.1:2; § 10.3:3; § 12.1:3 | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 7 \cdot 2: 4,5 ; \$ 7 \cdot 4: 5 ; \S 7 \cdot 5: 1,3,5 ; \\ & \$ 9.1: 3 \end{aligned}$ |
| 134 masculine quadrant | רביעית זכר <br> רביעית זכרות | §3.2:6; § 5.1:2,3,4 | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 5.1: 2 \\ & \$ 5.1: 4 \end{aligned}$ |  |
| 135 masculine signs | בית זכר זכרים | \$ 5.1:2,3,4,6; § 6.3:3 | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 5.1: 1,2,4 \\ & \$ 12.1: 3 \end{aligned}$ |  |
| 136 masculine planet | כוכב זכר | § 5.1:4 | \$5.1:2 |  |
| 137 mean motion | מהלך השווה | § 10.4:1,3,4 |  |  |
| 138 medicine | חכמת רפואות רפואות | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 9.3: 5 \\ & \$ 1.1: 3 \end{aligned}$ |  |  |
| 139 medicine (substance) | רפואה | \$1.3:1 | $\$_{3}: 1 ; \$_{1.1: 1}$ |  |
| 140 Mercury | כוכב חמה | $\begin{aligned} & \text { § 1.1:1,3; § 1.2:1; § 1.6:2; § 1.9:2; } \\ & \$ \text { 2.3:1; § 3.1:6; §3.6:3; §4.2:3; } \\ & \$ 6.2: 4 ; \text { § 7.4:7; §7.5:5; §7.6:3,8; } \\ & \text { § } 9.1: 3 ; \text { § } 9.2: 7 ; \text { § } 9.3: 1,4 ; \\ & \$ 10.1: 3 ; \S 10.2: 1 ; \S 10.4: 3 ; \\ & \$ 11.1: 2 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 6: 3 ; \text { § } 1.2: 1 ; \text { § } 2.3: 2 ; \text { § } 6.1: 1 ; \\ & \$ 7.1: 1,3,4 ; \text { § } 10.1: 2 ; \text { § } 10.3: 2,4 ; \\ & \text { § } 11.4: 2 ; \text { § } 12.1: 3 \end{aligned}$ | §7.5:4 |


| No English | Hebrew Mivharim I | Mivharim II | Mivharim III |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 141 method | $\begin{gathered} \text { דרך } \end{gathered}$ | § 1:6; § 2:1; § $5: 1 ; \$ 4.3: 1$ |  |
| 142 midheaven | \$10.1:8 \$ |  |  |
| 143 misfortune | $\begin{aligned} & \text { (\$6:2; } \$ 3.1: 3 ; \$ 7.6: 6 \\ & \text { רעה רע } \\ & \text { רע } \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 6: 5 \\ & \$ 1: 3,4 ; \S 6: 12 \\ & \$ 1: 4 \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ |  |
| 144 month | חדש | §6:8 |  |
| 145 Moon |  | § $5: 3 ;$ § $6: 1-19 ; \$ 1.1: 1,2 ;$ § 1.2:1,2,3,4; § 1.3:1,3; § 1.4:1,2; § 1.5:1,3,4; § 1.6:1; § 2.1:1,2; § 2.2:3; § 2.3:2; § 3.1:1,2; §4.1:1,2,3; §4.2:3; § 5.1:2,3; § 5.2:2,7; § 5.3:1; § 5.4:1; § 6.1:1,2; §7.2:1,2; §7.4:1,5; § 7.5:2; § 8.1:2,3; § 9.2:1,2; § 9.3:1,2; § 10.1:1,2; § 10.2:3,4; § 10.3:4; § 10.4:2; § 11.4:3; § 12.1:3 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { § 7.2:1; §7.3:2; §7.5:2,7; §8.1:1; } \\ & \text { §9.1:1 } \end{aligned}$ |
| 146 moving rapidly | \$ $2.1: 4 ; \$ 5.4: 1 ; \$ 10.3: 6 ;$ $\$ 10.4: 1,2,3$ | § 10.1:3,4 |  |
| 147 moving slowly | ```$2.4:1 $ ממתן בה", $ $10.4:1,3,4 ממתין בהליכה מתמהמה בהליכה``` | §6:13 |  |

Hebrew Mivharim I

| No English | Hebrew | Mivharim I | Mivharim II | Mivḥarim III |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 148 motion | מהלך | \$10.4:1,3 |  |  |
|  | הליכה | § 2.1:4; § 2.4:1; § 2.5:5; § 3.4:3; |  |  |
|  |  | § 5.4:1; § 10.3:6; § 10.4:1,3 |  |  |
| 149 music | חכמת הנגון | \$1.1:3 |  |  |
| 150 natal horoscope | מולד | § 1:2; § 3.2:4; § 5.5:4; § 10.3:4; | § 1:2; § $1: 5 ;$ § $3: 2 ;$ § 4:1; § 7.4:6; |  |
|  |  | §11.2:1,2,4; § 11.3:1 | \$9.3:4 |  |
|  | מזל |  | \$2:1 |  |
| 151 native | נולד |  | §3:1 |  |
| 152 nativity | מולד |  | \$4.2:1 | §7.3:3 |
| 153 nature | תולדת | §\$2.5:2 |  |  |
|  | טבע | \$4:2 |  |  |
| 154 nature of man | תולדת האדם | \$4:2; § 11.1:1 | \$4:2 |  |
| 155 nature of the ascendant | תולדת הצומח |  |  | §7.3:2 |
| 156 nature of the body | תולדת הגוף | \$5:1 |  |  |
| 157 nature of the humor | תולדת | §1.7:1 | \$1.3:1 |  |
| 158 nature of th planet | תולדת | \$5:1 | \$9.3:2 | 7.3:2 |
|  | תולדת המשרת |  | \$5:3 |  |
|  | תולדת כוכב |  | §11.4:2 |  |
| 159 night | לילה | §3.6:4; § 4.5:3; \$ 5.1:1,3 | §6:15; §4.2:7; § 10.2:3,4 | §7.3:3 |
| 160 noon | חצי היום | § 10.4:1 |  |  |


| No English | Hebrew | Mivharim I | Mivharim II | Mivḥarim III |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 161 number | מספר |  | § 2:4; § 1.2:2 |  |
| 162 number of the ray (of a planet) | מספר אורו |  | § 2:4; § 1.2:2 |  |
| 163 occidental of the Sun | מערבי מן השמ | § 5.1:6; § 10.4:2 |  |  |
| 164 opposition (aspect) | מבט נכח <br> נכח |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { § 6:6; § } 1.2: 2 ; \text { § 1.5:2; §7.1:7; } \\ & \$ 10.2: 3 \end{aligned}$ | §7.4:2 |

[^80]| No English | Hebrew | Mivharim I | Mivḥarim II | Mivharim III |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 170 place (horoscopic) | בית <br> מזל | § 2:1,2; § $3: 1 ; \S 8: 3,4 ; \$ 2.1: 4 ;$ \$ 2.2:2; \$ 3.1:1,2,5; \$3.2:7; § $3.3: 1,2,3,4 ;$ § $3.5: 2 ;$ § $3.6: 1$; §4.2:3; §4.4:1,2; §4.5:1; <br> § 5.1:4,5; §5.3:1; §7.1:1,3,4; §7.2:1; §7.3:1; §7.4:3,4; <br> §7.5:2,5,6,12; §7.6:3,4,9; <br> §7.8:2,4,5,7; §8.1:4; <br> § 8.2:1,2; §9.1:1,2; §9.3:2,3; <br> § 10.1:2,4,5,6,8,9; § 10.2:1,3; <br> \$11.1:3; \$12.1:1,2 <br> §7.6:5 | § $2: 3 ;$ § $3: 1,2,3 ; \$ 6: 8 ; \$ 1.1: 1$; § 1.6:4; \$ 2.1:1,2,4; \$ 2.2:1,3; $\$ 2.3: 1,2 ; \$ 3.1: 1,2 ; \$ 3.2: 1,3$; \$4.1:1,3; \$4.2:1,6,7; \$4.3:3; \$ 5.1:1; § 5.2:4,6; §5.3:1; \$6.1:1,6,7; § 7.1:1,3,4,5,6; § 7.2:3,5,6; §7.3:1,3; §7.4:4; §7.5:1; §8.1:1,2; §9.1:1,3; § 10.1:1; § 10.2:2,5; § 10.4:3; § 11.1:1; § 11.2:2,4; § 11.3:1,2,3; § 11.4:1,3; § 12.1:1,2 \$2:4 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { § 7.1:2; § 7.2:2; §7.3:1; § 7.4:1,2; } \\ & \text { §7.5:5,7,8; §8.1:1,3 } \end{aligned}$ |
| 171 place of burning | מקום השרפה | \$3.4:4 |  |  |
| 172 place of diseases | בית התחלואים | \$7:3 |  |  |
| 173 place of joy | בית שמחה | § 8:3; § 1.1:1,6; § 12.1:2 |  |  |
| 174 place of landed estates | בית הקרקצות |  | \$4.2:1 |  |
| 175 place of mourning | בית אבל | §8:3 |  |  |
| 176 place of worries | בית הדאגות | §7:3 |  |  |
| 177 places of life | מקומות החיים |  | §4:1 |  |
| 178 planet that receives power | כוכב המקבל הכח |  | \$ 2.1:4; § 3.1:4 |  |


| No English | Hebrew | Mivharim I | Mivharim II | Mivharim III |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 179 planet | מוכברת | $\$ 2: 1 ; \$ 2.5: 1$ <br> § $4: 2 ;$ § $5: 1 ;$ § $1.5: 2,3 ;$ § $2.1: 4,5 ;$ <br> $\$ 2.5: 2,3 ;$ § 3.6:2; § 4.1:2; §4.2:3; <br> § 7.3:4; § 7.4:2; §7.5:1; §8.1:4,7; <br> § 9.1:1; § 10.3:5; § 10.4:1,2; <br> § 12.1:3 |  | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 7.3: 4 \\ & \$ 7.5: 7,8 ; \$ 9.1: 1 \end{aligned}$ |
| 180 planets in charge of crafts | כוכבים והם בעלי אומנות | § 10.3:1 |  |  |
| 181 planets that are above the Earth | כוכבים שהם למעלה מן הארץ כוכב שהוא על הארץ | $\$ 1.3: 3 ; \$ 1.5: 3 ; \$ 4.5: 1$ | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 1.2: 4 ; \$ 1.5: 4 ; \S 1.6: 1,3 \\ & \$ 6: 7 \end{aligned}$ |  |
| 182 planets that are below the Earth | כוכבים שהם תחת הארץ | §1.3:4 |  |  |
| 183 Pisces | דגים | $\begin{aligned} & \text { § 3.4:1; § 5.5:2; § 6.2:1; § 6.4:2; } \\ & \text { §7.5:4,6; §7.6:7; §10.1:7 } \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { § 6:17; § 6.1:4; § 7.1:4; § 9.2:1; } \\ & \text { § 12.1:4 } \end{aligned}$ | §7.5:4 |
| 184 poetry | פיטנות | \$1.1:3 |  |  |
| 185 position (planet) | מקום | $\$ 2: 1,2,3 ; \$ 5: 1 ; \$ 6: 1 ;$ § 1.1:1; § 1.1:3; § 2.5:4; §3.3:1; §4.1:2; § 6.4:1; §7.4:1,2; §7.5:7,13; § 7.6:9; § 9.2:3-8; § 10.4:1; § 11.1:2; § 11.2:1,2,4; § 11.3:1; \$ 12.1:3 |  | § 7.3:3; § 7.4:5; §7.5:4,6 |
| 186 power (election) | כח | §1:2 | § 1:5 |  |

186 power (election)

| No English | Hebrew Mivharim I | Mivharim II | Mivharim III |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 187 power (planet) |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { § 6:4,7; § 1.1:2; § 1.2:3,4; § 1.5:4; } \\ & \text { \$ 1.6:1,2; § 2.1:3,4; §2.3:2; } \\ & \$ 3.1: 3 ; \S 7.1: 3 ; \S 7.2: 1,2,5 ; \\ & \text { § 7.4:2; §8.1:1,2; §9.1:4; } \\ & \text { § 10.1:1,4; §10.2:1; §10.2:6; } \\ & \text { §11.3:3; §11.2:2,3 } \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { § 7.1:1; § 7.2:3,5; § 7.3:1,4; } \\ & \$ 7.4: 2,4 ; \$ 7.5: 2,7 ; \$ 8.1: 1 \end{aligned}$ |
| 188 power (sign) | \$3.2:4 | \$1:5 |  |
| 189 power (soul) | \$1:1 |  |  |
| 190 purgative | \$1.5:1 <br> משקה לשלשול <br> \$ 1.3:2; § 1.4:1 לשלשל | § 1.2:1; § 1.5:4 |  |
| 191 put in the ascendant (of the electional horoscope) | להעלות | § 2:3; § 3:1; § 2.2:4; § 7.1:4 |  |
| 192 quartile | $\begin{aligned} & \\ & \$ 1.6: 4 ; \$ 5.1: 5 ; \$ 5.5: 4 ; \$ 7.4: 3 ; \\ & \$ 10.1: 8\end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \S 6: 6 ; \S 1.2: 2 ; \S 1.5: 2 ; \$ 7.1: 6 ; \\ & \$ 10.2: 3 \end{aligned}$ | §7.4:2 |
| 193 querent | §5:1 מבקש |  | §7.5:6 |
| 194 ray (planet) | אור | \$2:3 |  |
| 195 ray of the body (planet) | \$3:2 |  |  |
| 196 receive power | קבל כח | \$ 2.1:4 |  |


| No English | Hebrew | Mivharim I | Mivharim II | Mivḥarim III |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 197 received | מקובל |  | \$6:12 |  |
| 198 reduce (humor) | לחסר | §1.7:1-2 | \$1.3:1 |  |
| 199 reduce (harm) | לחסר | \$1:2; \$ 2.5:6 | § 1:3,4; §6:4 |  |
| 200 retrograde | שב אחורנית | § 8:4; § 1.1:1; § 1.3:4; § 1.5:3; <br> § 2.1:5; § 2.5:3; § 3.1:7; <br> §3.2:1; §3.4:5; § 3.6:1; §4.1:2; <br> \$4.2:3; \$4.4:1; \$5.4:1; §7.1:3; <br> §7.5:7,11,13; §8.1:1,4; §8.2:3; <br> \$9.1:2; §9.3:1 <br> § 7.3:1; § 7.4:2; §7.5:5; § 10.1:9; <br> § 10.3:5; § 10.4:3 | § 2.3:2; §4.2:4; §7.1:7; §8.1:1 $\begin{aligned} & \text { § 1.2:3; § 1.6:1; § 2.2:2; § 3.1:3; } \\ & \$ 4.3: 2 ; \S 5.1: 1 ; \S 6.1: 7 ; \S 7.1: 3,4 ; \\ & \$ 7.2: 1,7 ; \S 7.4: 4 ; \S 8.1: 2 ; \\ & \$ 10.1: 1 ; \S 11.2: 4 ; \S 11.3: 3 \end{aligned}$ | $\$ 9.1: 1$ $\$ 7.1: 3 ; \$ 7.3: 1,5 ; \$ 7.5: 7 ; \$ 8.1: 2$ |


| 201 revolution of the world-year | תקופת שנת העולם | \$7.4:5 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 202 rising sign | §7:3; §7.2:4; §7.5:10; § 10.1:8 <br> בית עולה | $\begin{aligned} & \text { § 1:4; § 6:5; §4.2:2,8; §7.1:2; } \\ & \$ 7.2: 3,4,7 ; \$ 7 \cdot 4: 3 ; \S 9.3: 2 ; \\ & \$ 11.3: 3 \\ & \$ 7.1: 5 \end{aligned}$ |
| 203 rising times | \$ 10.1:5 מצעדים |  |
| 204 ruler | \$4:1,2; §8:4 שליט ממונה | §4:1,2; § 7.1:5,6 |
| 205 ruler over the five places of life | ממונה על חמשה מקומות החיים | \$4:1 |

No English Hebrew Mivharim I

| 206 ruler over the nativity | ממונה על המולד |  | \$9.3:4 |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 207 sages of the Torah | חכמי התורה |  | § 1:1 |  |
| 208 Sagittarius | קשת | §7:1,3; §6.2:3; § 7.6:7 | § 6:5; § 6.1:3; § 11.1:1; § 12.1:4 |  |
| 209 sanguine humor | דם | §1.7:1 | \$1.3:2 |  |
| 210 Saturn | שבתי | § 3:1,2; § 1.1:3; § 1.2:1,2; <br> § 1.4:1; § 1.6:1,2; § 2.1:3; § 2.3:1; <br> $\$ 3.1: 4,5 ; \$ 3.2: 1,7,8,9 ; \$ 4.2: 1$; <br> § 4.2:4; §4.3:4; §4.4:2; §4.5:2; <br> § 5.1:5; § 5.2:2; § 5.5:4; §7.3:3; <br> \$7.5:6,7,8,9,11; §7.6:2,8,9; <br> §8.2:2; § 9.2:2,3; §9.3:2,4; <br> § 10.3:2,4; § 11.1:2; § 12.1:2 |  | §7.3:5; \$7.5:3,5; \$9.1:3 |

\footnotetext{
211 scholar in the $\$$ \$9.2:7
2 profane sciences

| 212 science | \$ 1.1:3; \$ 1.2:1 |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 213 secludes itself (Moon) | \% ${ }^{\text {S }}$ 1.3:1; § 1.5:2; § 7.4:3; §8.1:3 |  |  |
| 214 Scorpio | עקרב | $\begin{aligned} & \text { § 1.2:3; § } 1.3: 2 ; \text { § } 4 \cdot 3: 1,2 ; \S 5 \cdot 5: 3 ; \\ & \$ 7.2: 1,4 ; \S 7.5: 3 ; \S 10.1: 4,5 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { §6:16; §1.1:1; §7.1:3; §10.2:1,2; §7.5:1 } \\ & \$ 12.1: 4 \end{aligned}$ |
| 215 sextile | מבט ששית | \$1.6:2 | § 2:2; § 1.5:2; § 1.6:2; § 2.1:3 |
| 216 short signs | מזלות קצרים |  | \$7.1:6 |


| No | English | Hebrew | Mivharim I | Mivharim II | Mivharim III |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | sign (zodiacal) | מזל <br> בית |  | § 2:2,3; §4:1; §6:16,17; <br> § 1.1:1; § 1.4:1; § 1.6:1; § 2.2:3; <br> $\$ 4.2: 2,5,8 ; \$ 6.1: 1,3,4 ; \$ 7.4: 2$; <br> § 9.1:4; §9.2:1; § 10.2:1; § 12.1:4 <br> § 1.3:3; § 12.1:3 | §7.2:4; § 7.5:1,2,6; § 8.1:1 |
| 218 | sign of the city | מזל המדינה |  | \$4.2:8 |  |
| 219 | signs with a human shape | בתים שהם על צורת בן אדם | §3.1:4; §6.1:2 | §6.1:5; § 9.1:4 |  |
| 220 | smaller domain of the circle | החלק הקטן מן הגלגל | \$2.1:1 | \$2.1:1 |  |
| 221 | soul of man | נשמת האדם |  | \$1:3 |  |
| 222 | south | דרום |  | \$6:13 |  |
| 223 | southern part of the zodiac with respect to the ecliptic | פאת דרום |  | \$6:13 |  |
| 224 | stars | כוכבים | \$1:1 | \$1:3 |  |
| 225 | station | מעמד |  | \$7.4:4 |  |
| 226 | strong | תקזף | $\$ 7.2: 3 ; \$ 7.4: 1$ | \$7.2:6 | \$7.2:5 |


| No English | Hebrew Mivharim I | Mivharim II | Mivharim III |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 227 straight signs | מזלות ישרים | §11.4:4 |  |
| 228 succedent (places) | \$6.2:6 \$ | \$ 2.1:2; § 2.2:1; § 7.4:2; \$8.1:2 |  |
| 229 Sun | ש $\$ 2: 2 ; \$ 6: 1 ; \$ 8: 4 ;$ § 1.1:1,3; <br> \$ 2.1:5; § 3.6:4; §4.3:4; <br> § $4.5: 1,3 ;$ § 5.1:1,3; § 5.2:1,4; <br> § 5.5:4; §6.3:2; §7.3:2; <br> § 7.4:2; §7.5:6,7,9; §7.6:9,10; <br> § 8.1:1,3,6,7; § 9.2:5; § 9.3:1,3,6; <br> § 10.1:2,3,4,5,6,7,8; § 10.2:1,2; <br> § 10.4:2,3; § 11.1:2; § 11.2:1,2; <br> $\$ 12.1: 3$ | $\$ 2: 3 ; \$ 6: 7 ; \$ 1.5: 1,3,4 ;$ § $1.6: 3$; § 3.1:3; § 4.1:4; § 5.1:4; § 5.2:1; \$7.2:3,4,6,7; §7.3:3; §7.4:2,4; § 8.1:1; § 10.2:1,3,4,5; § 10.3:1; § 10.4:1,2; § 11.2:2; § 11.3:3; § 11.4:2,3; § 12.1:3 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { § 7.1:3; §7.2:1,5; §7.3:2; } \\ & \text { §7.5:2,7; §8.1:1 } \end{aligned}$ |

—30

| 230 take a medicine | לשתות רפואה לאכול רפואה | \$1.3:1 | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 3: 1 \\ & \$ 1.1: 1 \end{aligned}$ |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 231 tail of the Dragon | הזנב |  | \$6:14 |  |
| 232 Taurus |  | $\begin{aligned} & \S 5: 3 ; \S 8: 2 ; \S 3.4: 4 ; \S 4.1: 1 ; \\ & \$ 6.2: 2 ; \S 6.3: 3 ; \S 6.4: 2 ; \S 7.2: 1,4 ; \\ & \$ 7.4: 3 ; \S 7.5: 3,6 ; \S 10.3: 4 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 2: 4 ; \S 6: 16 ; \S 1.6: 1 ; \S 6.1: 1 ; \\ & \$ 12.1: 3 \end{aligned}$ | §7.2:4 |
| 233 tenth cardo | יתד עשירי |  |  | §7.1:2 |
| 234 term | גבול |  |  | §8.5:7 |
| 235 terminal sign | מזל הסוף |  |  | §7.4:5 |
| 236 test/verify (verb) | נסה | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 3.6: 2 ; \$ 5.4: 3 ; \S 5.5: 2 ; \S 7.2: 4 ; \\ & \$ 11.3: 1 \end{aligned}$ | § 5.2:8; § 7.4:6; \$ 9.2:2 | §7.2:5 |
| 237 testimony | עדות |  |  | §7.2:4 |


| No English | Hebrew | Mivharim I | Mivharim II | Mivḥarim III |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 238 theology | חכמת האלוהות | \$1.1:3 |  |  |
| 239 time of birth | מולד | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 1: 3 ; \$ 2: 1,3 ; \S 4: 1,2 ; \S 5: 2 ; \\ & \$ 3.2: 5 \end{aligned}$ | § 2:1; §4:2; § 5:2 |  |
| 240 trine | מבט שלישית | \$1.6:2 | §1.5:2; \$1.6:2; \$ 2.1:3 |  |
| 241 triplicity | שלישות | § 11.2:5 |  | \$7.4:5 |
| 242 tropical signs | מזלות מתהפכים | \$1.2:3; \$ 2.4:1 | §6:18; §4.1:2; §8.1:2 | \$8.1:4 |
| 243 treatment | רפואה |  | \$ 1.6:4 |  |
| 244 under the ray of the Sun | תחת אור השמש | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 8: 4 ; \text { § 1.1:1; § } 2.1: 5 ; \text { § } 4.5: 1 ; \\ & \$ 8.1: 1 ; \text { § 9.3:1; § } 10.1: 2 \end{aligned}$ | §6:7 |  |
| 245 unfortunate | רע | $\begin{aligned} & \text { §3:3; §6:11,14; § 1.3:2; § 2.5:2; } \\ & \$ 6.2: 1 ; \text { § } 7.1: 5,7 ; \S 7.3: 2 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 3 \cdot 1: 1 ; \S 3 \cdot 4: 5 ; \S 4 \cdot 5: 3 ; \S 5 \cdot 2: 2,4 ; \\ & \$ 7.6: 10 \end{aligned}$ |  |
| 246 unfortunate aspect | מבט רע | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 6: 1 ; \text { § 1.3:4; § 2.1:2; § 2.3:1; } \\ & \$ 3.2: 9 ; \$ 4.4: 3 ; \text { § 5.2:2; §7.5:8; } \\ & \$ 9.1: 1 ; \text { § } 10.3: 2 ; \text { § } 11.1: 3 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { § } 1.6: 1 ; \text { § } 3.2: 2 ; \text { § } 4.2: 4 ; \text { § } 5.1: 1 ; \\ & \text { § 5.2:7; §5.3:1; § 5.4:1; § 7.4:5; } \\ & \text { § 8.1:3; §11.1:1; §12.1:1 } \end{aligned}$ | §8.1:2 |
| 247 unfortunate hour | שעה רצה | §4.5:3 | \$9.3:5 |  |
| 248 unfortunate position | מקום רע | \$7:1 | \$7.1:4 |  |
| 249 unfortunate place | בית רע | §3.1:1; § 10.1:7 | § 2:3 |  |
| 250 unfortunate sign | מזל רע | \$ 1.2:3 |  |  |
| 251 upper planet | עליוכב עליון | §7.1:2; § 7.2:3; § 7.3:3 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { § 7.1:7; §7.2:3,6; §7.3:3 } \\ & \text { § } 7 \cdot 2: 6 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { §7.2:3 } \\ & \$ 7 \cdot 1: 2,3,4 ; \$ 7 \cdot 5: 6 \end{aligned}$ |
| 252 upper world | עולם עליון |  | §6:1 |  |


| No English | Hebrew | Mivharim I | Mivharim II | Mivharim III |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 253 Venus | נוגה |  | § 5:3; § 1.2:1; § 5.2:3; § 5.3:1; <br> §7.1:3,4; §7.4:2; § 10.3:4; <br> § 11.4:1; § 12.1:5 | §7.5:4 |
| 254 verified by experience | מנוסה | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 1.8: 3 ; \S 2.1: 2 ; \mathbb{\$} 3.2: 8 ; \$ 5.5: 3 ; \\ & \$ 11.3: 1 \end{aligned}$ | \$ 1.4:3; § 3.2:3; § $5.2: 8$ |  |
| 255 Virgo | בתולה | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 3: 1 ; \text { § } 4.1: 1 ; \$ 6.3: 3 ; \text { § 6.4:2; } \\ & \$ 7.6: 8 ; \S 10.1: 3,7 \end{aligned}$ | \$6:17 |  |
| 256 vomit | הקיא | \$1.3:3 | \$1.2:3 |  |
| $257 \begin{aligned} & \text { vomitive } \\ & \text { (administer) }\end{aligned}$ | להקיא | \$1.3:2 | \$ 1.6:1 |  |
| 258 vomitive | משקה להקיא | \$1.5:3 |  |  |
| 259 vomitus | קיא | \$1.3:4 |  |  |
| 260 watery signs | מזלות המים | \$ 1.3:2; \$ 1.9:1; \$ 3.5:2,3 | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 1.1: 1 ; \$ 1.3: 1 ; \$ 5 \cdot 4: 1 ; \text { § } 7 \cdot 4: 4 ; \\ & \$ 9.1: 2 \end{aligned}$ | \$7.5:1 |
| 261 winged (stars) | בעלי כנפיים | \$6.4:2 |  |  |
| 262 write a book | לכתוב ספר | \$1.1:3 |  |  |
| 263 year | שנה | \$1:2 |  | \$7.4:5 |
| 264 yellow bile | מרה אדומה | \$1.7:2 | \$1.3:2 |  |
| 265 zodiac | גלגל | \$ 2.1:1 | \$4.3:2; § 10.1:3 |  |

ENGLISH-HEBREW GLOSSARY OF TECHNICAL TERMS (3 VERSIONS OF SEFER HA-SHE'ELOT)

| No English | Hebrew | She'elot I | She'elot II | She'elot III |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| above the Earth | למעלה מן הארץ | \$ 1.3:2; \$ 1.4:4,5 | §1.2:5; \$1.3:3 |  |
| 2 airy signs | מזלות הרוח מזלות אוויר | §4.9:5 | § 12.7:2 |  |
| 3 anomaly | מנה |  | \$5:4 |  |
| 4 apogee | גבהות | \$4.8:3; \$7.3:10,11 |  |  |
| 5 Aries | טלה | §8:2; § 10.3:2,5 | §4:3; §6.1:10 |  |
| 6 arithmetic | חשבון | \$1.1:3 |  |  |
| 7 ascendant | צומח |  |  | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 5.1: 1,2,3 ; \S 5.2: 1 ; \S 6.1: 2,3,4,8 ; \\ & \$ 6.2: 1,2,5 \end{aligned}$ |
| 8 ascendant degree | מעלה צומחת <br> צומחת | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 4: 2 ; \S 5: 1 ; \S 7: 1 ; \S 9: 4 ; \$ 1.3: 2 ; \\ & \$ 1.4: 4 ; \text { § } 3.4: 1 ; \S 4.4: 4 ; \S 4.9: 1 ; \\ & \$ 5.1: 2 ; \$ 5.2: 6 ; \$ 5.3: 3 ; \S 7.6: 1,5 \end{aligned}$ |  | § 6.1:8,10, 11; § 6.2:2,4; § 7.1:1,3 |


| No | English | Hebrew | She'elot I | She'elot II | She'elot III |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 9 | ascendant sign | מזל צומח <br> בית צומח | § $5: 1 ;$ § $8: 1,2 ;$ § $1.1: 2,3,4,6,7 ;$ <br> § 1.3:1; § 1.4:2,3; <br> § 2.1:5,6,7,10, 11; § 2.2:1,4; <br> § 2.3:1; § 3.1:1,2,4,5; §3.2:1,3,4; <br> § $3.3: 1 ;$ § $3.4: 2,3 ;$ § $4.3: 2$; <br> §4.9:2,3,4; §4.10:1,2,3; <br> § 5.1:2,3; § 5.2:1,2,6; §6.1:1,2; <br> §6.2:1; §7.1:2,3,4; §7.2:3; <br> § 7.3:1,3,4,6; §7.4:2,3,4,5; <br> $\$ 7.5: 3,4,5,6 ; \$ 7.6: 1,3,6,7$; <br> §7.7:2,3,5,7; §7.8:1; §9.1:2; <br> § 9.3:1; § 10.1:6,8; § 10.3:1,2; <br> § 11.1:2; § 12.1:4,8; § 12.2:4 | § 10.1:1 |  |
| 10 | aspect | מבט | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 4: 2 ; \$ 10: 2 ; \text { § 4.1:3,5; §4.7:2; } \\ & \$ 5.2: 6 ; \$ 6.1: 3 ; \$ 7.2: 5 ; \S 7.4: 8 ; \\ & \$ 7.7: 11 ; \$ 7.8: 3 ; \$ 7.9: 2,3 ; \\ & \$ 10.3: 4,5 ; \S 11.1: 10 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { § } 3: 1 ; \text { § } 10: 1 ; \S 1.1: 2,4 ; \S 1.4: 6 ; \\ & \$ 6.1: 6,8 ; \$ 7.2: 4 ; \S 8.3: 2 ; \\ & \$ 9.3: 1,2 ; \S 10.1: 5 ; \S 11.1: 1 ; \\ & \$ 12.1: 13 ; \S 12.3: 5 ; \$ 12.6: 2 ; \\ & \$ 12.8: 4,5,10 \end{aligned}$ | §6.1:2,10,11; § 6.2:4,5; § 7.1:1 |
| 11 | aspect of love | מבט אהבה | §6.2:1 | §4.1:2 |  |
| 12 | astral judgments | דיני המזלות משפטי המזלות | § 1:2 | § 1:2 |  |
| 13 | astrologers | חכמי המזלות <br> חכמי המשפטים חכמים | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 1: 1 ; \S 2: 1 ; \S 3: 3 ; \S 4: 1 ; \S 4.4: 1 ; \\ & \$ 6.1: 7 ; \S 7.4: 1 ; \$ 9.1: 3 \\ & \\ & \$ 1.1: 1 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 1: 1 ; \S 12.8: 1 \\ & \$ 7.4: 1 \end{aligned}$ |  |


| No | English | Hebrew | She'elot I | She'elot II | She'elot III |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 14 | astronomical tables | לוחות |  | §12.3:5 |  |
| 15 | Aquarius | דלי |  | §4:3; \$1.5:2 |  |
| 16 | barren signs | מזלות עקרים | § 5.2:5 |  |  |
| 17 | below the Earth | תחת הארץ למטה מהארץ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { § 2.4:4,5; §4.4:2; §4.7:1 } \\ & \$ 1.4: 4 \end{aligned}$ | § 1.2:2,4; § 1.3:3; § 12.6:1 |  |
| 18 | benefic planets | טוכבים טובים | § 1.3:2; § 1.4:4,5; § 2.1:11; <br> § 2.2:4; §4.1:3; §4.4:6; §4.5:1; <br> § 4.7:2; § 6.2:2; §7.2:2,5; §7.5:6; <br> §7.6:4,5,8; §7.7:13; §9.3:1,4; <br> § 12.1:3; § 12.2:3 <br> § 6.1:3; § 7.6:2; §9.1:3; §9.2:2,4; <br> § 12.2:4 | § $5: 6 ;$ § 6:5; § 1.2:5; § 2.3:3,4; <br> § 4.1:2; § 6.1:2; §7.6:2,4; <br> §7.7:10; §8.1:2; §8.3:5; §9.2:5; <br> § 10.1:6,7; § 11.2:2; § 11.3:2; <br> § 12.2:1,2; § 12.5:2,3,4; § 12.6:1; <br> § 12.6:3 | §6.1:3,11; §6.2:3 |
| 19 | be victorious (planet) | לנצח | \$7.3:5,10,11,12,13 | §7.1:2; \$7.2:2,3 |  |
| 20 | bicorporal signs | מזל בעל שתי גופות <br> מזל שיש לו שני גופות מזל בעל הגוף מזל משני גופים מזלות שני גופים/גופות | $\begin{aligned} & \text { §7.9:5; §8.1:5; §9.1:2; § 12.1:4 } \\ & \$_{5.1: 3 ; ~ § 6.1: 5} \\ & \$_{5.1: 1} \\ & \$_{4.7: 1} \end{aligned}$ | ```§ 2:2; § 1.4:2; § 5.2:1; § 9.2:3,4; § 12.8:8 §6.1:5; § 12.8:2 §4.2:1; § 12.1:6; § 12.6:1``` | $\$ 6.2: 2$ <br> $\$ 5.1: 1$ |
| 21 | bodies of the lower world | תחתיים | \$1:3 |  |  |

No English

| 22 bodies of the upper world | \$1:3,4 |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 23 body |  |  |  |
| 24 burnt | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 2.1: 10,12 ; \S 4.1: 4,5 ; \S 4.4: 6 ; \\ & \$ 5.2: 1 ; \S 6.1: 1,2 ; \S 7.1: 2,4,6 ; \\ & \$ 7.5: 2 ; \S 7.6: 3,7 ; \S 7.7: 12 ; \\ & \$ 7.8: 6 ; \S 10.1: 6 ; \S 10.2: 2,4 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { § 1.2:2; §7.1:4; § 10.1:2; } \\ & \text { § 12.1:11 } \end{aligned}$ | §6.1:2 |
| 25 burnt by the Sun | \$10.1:6 | \$1.2:2 |  |
| 26 cadent place | ( \$ 5.1:3; § 9.1:1; § 10.2:5 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { § 12.8:7 } \\ & \text { \$5.2:2 } \\ & \text { \$9.2:9; § 12.3:5 } \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ | §5.1:2 |
| 27 cadent from the cardines | נופלים מן היתדות |  | §5.1:1 |
| 28 Cancer | \$ \$7.5:3; § 10.3:2,6,7 |  |  |
| 29 Capricorn | \$6.2:3 גדי \$3:6: | \$4:3 |  |
| 30 cardines |  |  | § 5.1:1,2; § 6.1:4 |


| No | English | Hebrew | She'elot I | She'elot II | She'elot III |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 31 | cardines of the ascendant | יתדות מזל הצומח | §12.1:8 |  |  |
| 32 | cardinal points | פרוחות | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 4 \cdot 5: 1 ; \text { §4.6:2,3 } \\ & \$ 4.6: 2 \end{aligned}$ |  |  |
| 33 | center | מוצק | \$7.3:10 | \$12.6:6 |  |
| 34 | circle | עגולה |  | \$12.6:3 |  |
| 35 | color | גוון מראה מראה דמות | \$4.10:5 | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 12.7: 3 \\ & \$ 12.7: 4 \end{aligned}$ |  |
| 36 | configuration | מערכת | \$1:3 |  |  |
| 37 | configuration of the stars | מערכת הכוכבים | \$3:4 |  |  |
| 38 | conjunction | מחברת | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 4: 2 ; \text { § 7:1; § } 10: 1 ; \text { § } 4.1: 3,5 ; \\ & \$ 5.2: 4 ; \text { § } 6.1: 3 ; \text { § 7.1:4; §7.2:5; } \\ & \$ 7.5: 1,2 ; \text { §7.7:11; §7.9:1; } \\ & \text { §8.1:3; §10.1:1; § } 10.3: 4 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { \$7:2; } \$ 10: 1 ; \text { § 1.1:2; } \mathbb{1} 1.4: 6 ; \\ & \$ 5.1: 1 ; \$ 6.1: 6,8 ; \$ 8.3: 2 ; \$ 9.3: 1 ; \\ & \$ 12.8: 3 \end{aligned}$ | §6.1:10; §7.1:1 |
| 39 | creatures | נבראים | \$1:4 |  |  |
| 40 | crooked signs | מלזות מעוותים | \$4.1:5 |  |  |
| 41 | cusp of the place | תחילת הבית | \$3.4:1; § 10.3:2 | \$ 3:5; § 7.6:6 |  |
| 42 | day | יום | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 7: 1 ; \$ 1.2: 3 ; \$ 5.3: 1 ; \$ 6.1: 7 ; \\ & \$ 7.2: 4 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { § 1.4:6; §5.3:3; §6.1:8; } \\ & \$ 12.8: 4,10 \end{aligned}$ | \$ 6.1:6; § 6.2:4 |
|  | day of crisis | גביול הגבול | \$6.1:7 |  | \$ 6.2:6 |


| No | English | Hebrew | She'elot I | She'elot II | She'elot III |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 44 | decan | פנים | §5:1 | §8:4 |  |
| 45 | degree | מעלה | § $9: 4 ;$ § 4.6:1,2,3; §7.4:8,9; \$7.5:4; §7.9:2,3,9; § 10.1:2,5; § 10.3:2,5 | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 3: 3,4,5,6 ; \$ 5: 4 ; \text { § 1.1:2,4; } \\ & \$ 1.4: 6 ; \$ 6.1: 8 ; \$ 8.3: 2 ; \$ 12.5: 4 ; \\ & \$ 12.8: 2,3,5 \end{aligned}$ | § 5.1:2; § 6.1:2; § 6.2:3 |
| 46 | determine (position of a planet) | תקן | \$4.4:4 | \$12.8:5 |  |
| 47 | dignity | מעלה |  |  | \$5.1:3 |
| 48 | direct (verb) | לנהג | § 1.2:3; § 7.4:7 |  | \$6.2:5 |
| 49 | direct in its motion | ישר בהליכתו | §3.4:3; § 4.1:4; § 7.9 : 6 | § 1.4:3; §4.1:3; § 8.1:2; § 12.8:9 |  |
| 50 | direction | ניהוג |  | \$ 1.2:3 |  |
| 51 | disagreement | מחלוקת | § 1:1 | \$7.3:1; § 8.1:5; §9.2:2; \$12.4:4 |  |
| 52 | distance | מרחק | \$7.2:4 |  |  |
| 53 | division of the places | חלוק הבתים | \$5:2 |  |  |
| 54 | diurnal planet | כוכב |  |  | §6.1:6 |
| 55 | Earth | ארץ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { §4:3; §1.3:2; § 1.4:4.5} \\ & \$ 4.4: 2 ; \text { §4.7:1; §4.9:2; } \$ 7.3: 10 ; \\ & \$ 10.3: 2 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { \$ 1.1:4; § } 1.2: 2,45 ; \text { § 1.3:3; } \\ & \$ 7.5: 2 ; \text { § 10.1:3; § 12.6:1,6; } \\ & \$ 12.8: 5 \end{aligned}$ |  |
| 56 | earthy signs | מזלות העפר | \$4.9:2 | \$12.7:2 |  |
| 57 | east | פאת מזרח |  | \$12.4:1 |  |


| No | English | Hebrew She'elot I | She'elot II | She'elot III |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 58 | eastern | מזרחי | §12.4:2 |  |
| 59 | eastern signs | מזלות מזרחיים | §12.4:4 |  |
| 60 | eccentric circle | \$7.3:10 גלגל גדול שמוצקו רחוק מגלגל הארץ גלגל מוצק | §12.6:6 |  |
| 61 | ecliptic | ```$ $4.4:4; $ 4.8:1; $ 7.3:12```  ```קו קוהולות קו עגולת המזלות``` | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 12.6: 3 \\ & \$ 12.6: 4 \end{aligned}$ |  |
| 62 | epicycle | \$7.3:11 גלגל קטן |  |  |
| 63 | equal degrees | \$7.9:2 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { § } 3: 3 ; \text { § } 1.1: 2,4 ; \text { § } 7.5: 3 ; \text { § 10.1:3; } \\ & \text { § } 12.8: 4 \end{aligned}$ |  |
| 64 | equidistant degree | מעלה מרחקה שווה |  | \$ 6.2:3 |
| 65 | equator | קו הצדק |  | \$6.2:3 |
| 66 | even-numbered hour | שעה שתצא זוג |  | \$5.2:3 |
| 67 | exaltation | כבוד | § 12.4:4 |  |
| 68 | experts in interrogations | \$ \$ 8.1:5; § 8.4:1 | §8.1:5; §8.4:1 |  |
| 69 | extreme north | \$ \$ $10.3: 1$ |  | \$6.2:3 |
| 70 | extreme south | \$10.3:1 ס סוף דרום |  |  |

[^81]| No English | Hebrew She'elot I | She'elot II | She'elot III |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 72 feminine sign | מזל נקבה |  | §5.2:2 |
| 73 fiery signs | \$ \$4.9:3,4; \$9.3:1 מזלות האש | \$12.7:2 |  |
| 74 first cardo | יתד ראשון | § 3:2,3; § 10:4; § 7.6:5; §7.7:4; § 9.2:10; § 12.8:6 |  |
| 75 five rulers | \$9:1 |  |  |
| 76 fixed signs | $\begin{gathered} \hline \$ 4.7: 1 ; \text { § 5.10:4; §6.1:5; §7.3:9; } \\ \text { \$ 7.9:5; §8.1:5; §9.1:2; §12.1:4 } \\ \text { מזלות נאמנים עומדים } \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { \$ 2:1; §4:1; §6.1:5; §9.2:2,4; } \\ & \text { § 12.1:6; § 12.6:1; § } 12.8: 2,8 \end{aligned}$ | § 6.2:2 |
| 77 fortunate aspect | $\begin{aligned} \text { טוב } & \$ 3.1: 5 ; ~ § 7.1: 4 ; ~ § 7.2: 3 ; ~ § 10.1: 1 ; \\ & \text { מ } 11.1: 5,6,7,10,11 ; \$ 12.1: 9 ; \\ & \$ 12.2: 5 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { § 3.1:2; § 7.2:1; § 7.8:1; § 10.1:7; } \\ & \text { § 12.5:2 } \end{aligned}$ |  |
| 78 fortunate indication | \$ 10.2:2 |  |  |
| 79 fortunate position | ( \$ 2.1:2,8; § 7.2:3; § 11.1:6,7,9 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { § 4.2:3; § 7.1:4; §8.2:2; §8.3:1; } \\ & \text { § 12.2:1 } \end{aligned}$ | §6.1:2 |
| 80 fortunate place | $\begin{aligned} & \\ & \$ 5.2: 2 ; \$ 6.1: 2 ; \$ 7.1: 1 ; \\ & \$ 10.1: 1,4 ; \$ 10.3: 7 ; \$ 11.1: 2,3,4\end{aligned}$ |  |  |
| 81 fortunate sign | \$ 7.5:3,6; § 7.6:7; § 7.7:2; § 10.1:6 |  |  |
| 82 fourth cardo | יתד רביעי | $\begin{aligned} & \text { § 3:2; § 1.2:2; § 12.1:1; § 12.4:1; } \\ & \text { § 12.8:6 } \end{aligned}$ |  |
| 83 Gemini | \$ \$9:4; § 7.9:3 |  |  |

No English

| No English | Hebrew | Shelot I | Shelot II | She |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 84 giving power | תת הכח | $\begin{aligned} & \text { §4:2; §1.4:4,5; § 2.1:3,5,6,7,8,11; } \\ & \$ 2.3: 1 ; \text { §3.1:5; §3.4:2; §4.7:2; } \\ & \text { §5.1:2; §5.2:2; §7.1:3; §7.4:6; } \\ & \text { \$7.7:2,5,7,8,9,10,11,12,13; } \\ & \text { §7.8:1,3,4,5,6,7,8; §9.2:2; } \\ & \text { § } 10.1: 7,9,10 ; \text { § } 10.2: 5,6 ; \text { § } 10.3: 7 ; \\ & \text { \$12.1:1,2,3,5,7,8; §12.2:7 } \end{aligned}$ | § 9:3; § 10:4; § 1.3:3; § 1.4:4; \$ 2.1:1; § 4.1:4; § 5.3:2; § 6.1:3; §7.1:1,2,3,4,5,6,7,9,11; §8.1:2,3; § 9.1:1,2; § 9.2:9; §9.3:2; § 10.1:4,7; § 11.1:3; § 12.1:3,7,9; \$ 12.3:1,2,3,4,5 | \$ 5.1:1,2,3; §7.1:1 |
| 85 good fortune | טוב/טובה | §4:5; § 6.2:2; § 7.2:5; § 12.2:3 | § 5:6; § 2.3:5 |  |
| 86 great scholar of interrogations | חכם גדול בשאלות |  | \$1:4 |  |
| 87 great years | שנים גדולות | § 1.2:2 |  |  |
| 88 house (planetary) | בית | § 2.1:8; § 4.1:3; § 7.5:3; \$7.8:2 | §4:3; §9:3; § 10:5; § 1.4:4; § 1.5:2; § 4.1:3,4; § 12.7:4 |  |
| 89 house of dejection | בית קלון |  | § 6:6; §7:2; § 12.7:2 |  |
| 90 house of lordship | בית שלטון | §7.3:3 |  |  |
| 91 house of the triplicity | בית השלישות | \$5:1 |  |  |
| 92 human supernal soul | נשמת האדם העליונה | \$1:5 |  |  |
| 93 illustration | דמיון | $\begin{aligned} & \text { § 8:2; § 9:4; § 7.5:4; §7.9:3; } \\ & \S 10.3: 2 \end{aligned}$ |  |  |
| $94 \begin{aligned} & \text { incompatible } \\ & \text { positions }\end{aligned}$ | מקומות משונים | \$2.1:11 |  |  |


| No English | Hebrew She'elot I | She'elot II | She'elot III |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 95 intermediate | אמצעי | § 7.1:2; § 12.1:6 |  |
| 96 interrogation | $\begin{array}{ll} \hline \text { שאלה } & \$ 1: 1,2,6 ; \S 2: 2,3 ; \S 3: 5 ; \$ 11: 2 ; \\ & \$ 1.1: 1 ; \S 1.2: 2,3 ; \S 4.4: 4 ; \$ 5.2: 4 ; \\ & \$ 5.3: 1 ; \S 6.1: 6 ; \S 7.4: 8 ; \$ 10.2: 5 ; \\ & \$ 11.1: 3,12 ; \S 12.2: 7 \end{array}$ | § 1:2,4,5; §2:2; §6:2,3,4,5,6; § 7:2; §8:5; § 9:2; § $10: 6$; § 1.2:1; § 1.4:1; § 1.5:1; § 2.3:1; \$4.2:1; \$7.6:3; §8.1:1,5; <br> § 8.4:1; § 10.1:2,4,6; § 12.3:4,7; § 12.8:1,5,7 | \$ 5.1:1; \$ 5.1:1 |
| 97 judge (verb) |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { §7:1; § 1.2:3; § 2.3:3; §4.2:4; } \\ & \text { § 5.1:5; §7.2:1; §7.6:4; } \\ & \text { §8.2:2; §8.3:5; §9.2:7; §9.3:2; } \\ & \text { § } 10.1: 5,7 ; \text { §12.1:4,13; § } 12.4: 2 \end{aligned}$ | § 5.1:3; § 5.2:4; § 6.1:9,10 |
| 98 judgments | משפטים <br> \$ \$1:2; § 2:2 | § 1:2; § 7.4:1 |  |
| 99 Jupiter | $\begin{aligned} \text { צד } & \$ 6: 2 ; \$ 10: 2 ; \$ 2.1: 5 ; \$ 4 \cdot 4: 6 ; \\ & \$ 4.7: 3 ; \$ 4.10: 4,5 ; \$ 5 \cdot 2: 2,5,6 ; \\ & \$ 5.3: 1 ; \$ 7.3: 8 ; \$ 7.5: 1,4 ; \S 7.9: 3 ; \\ & \$ 9.1: 4 ; \$ 10 \cdot 3: 4,5 ; \$ 11.1: 4 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 4: 4 ; \text { §6:3,5; § 10:5; § 2.2:1; } \\ & \$ 2.3: 2 ; \$ 5.1: 2 ; \S 7.2: 4 ; \S 9.2: 6 ; \\ & \$ 12.4: 3 ; \text { § 12.7:1,3 } \end{aligned}$ | §5.1:1 |
| 100 latitude (ecliptical) | $\begin{aligned} & \\ & \$ 4.4: 4 ; \$ 7 \cdot 3: 12,13 ; \$ 7 \cdot 9: 8 \\ & \$ 10.1: 6 \\ & \text { רחבב } \$ 4.8: 1 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 7: 2,3 ; \$_{1.2: 1 ; ~ § 12.6: 5} \\ & \$ 7: 2,4 ; \S 12.6: 5 \end{aligned}$ |  |
| 101 latitude (geographical) | $\begin{array}{r} \text { \$ 10.3:2 } \$ \text { מרחב הארץ } 10.3: 2 \\ \text { רחב } \end{array}$ | § 1.1:4; § 7.5:2; § 10.1:3; \$12.8:5 |  |
| 102 latitude plate | לוח הארץ | §3:3; §1.1:4 |  |
| 103 least years | \$1.2:2 |  |  |


| No | English | Hebrew | She'elot I | She'elot II | She'elot III |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 104 | Leo | אריה | §6.2:3 | \$1.5:2 |  |
| 105 | Libra | מאזנים | \$ 10.3:6 |  |  |
| 106 | light | אור | \$4:3 | §5:7; §12.6:2 |  |
| 107 | line of midheaven | קו חצי השמים | §5.3:3 |  |  |
| 108 | lord of one of the cardines | בעל אחת היתדות | §4.4:6; § 12.1:8 | \$2.3:5 |  |
| 109 | lord of the ascendant | בעל הצומח |  |  | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 5.1: 3 ; \S 5.2: 1 ; \S 6.1: 2,3,4,8 ; \\ & \$ 6.2: 1,3,5 \end{aligned}$ |
| 110 | lord of the ascendant degree | בעל הצומחת |  |  | § 6.1:9,11; § 6.2:2,4; § 7.1:1,3 |
| 111 | lord of the ascendant sign | בעל המזל הצומח | § 5:1; § 1.1:6; § 1.3:1; <br> $\$ 2.1: 6,7,10 ; \$ 3.1: 1,4,5 ;$ <br> $\$ 3.2: 1,3,4 ; \$ 3.3: 1$; <br> § 3.4:2,3; §4.3:2; §4.10:3; <br> § 5.1:2; § 5.2:2,6; §6.1:1,2; <br> § 6.2:1; § 7.1:3,4; §7.2:3; <br> §7.3:3,4,5,6,10,17; §7.5:3,4; <br> § 7.6:3,6,7; §7.7:2,3,5,7; <br> \$ 10.1:6,8; § 12.1:4 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { § } 1.2: 5 ; \text { § } 1.3: 1 ; \text { § 1.4:1; § 131:1,2; } \\ & \$ 5.3: 1,4 ; \text { § 6.1:1,6; §7.6:3,4;} \\ & \$ 8.1: 2,5 ; \S 8.2: 1 ; \S 8.3: 1 ; \$ 9.3: 1 ; \\ & \text { § } 10.1: 1 ; \text { § } 12.1: 9 ; \text { § } 12.1: 2 \end{aligned}$ |  |


| No English | Hebrew She'elot I | She'elot II | She'elot III |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 112 lord of the decan | \$5:1 | §8:4 |  |
| 113 lord of the descendant |  |  |  |
| 114 lord of the exaltation | \$ \$5:1; \$7.5:4 | \$8.2:3,5 |  |
| 115 lord of the hour | $\begin{aligned} \hline \text { בעל השעה } & \$ 11: 2 ; \$ 1.4: 2 ; \$ 3.2: 1 ; \S 3.3: 1 ; \\ & \$ 4.10: 5 ; \$ 5.1: 4 ; \S 5 \cdot 2: 3 ; \\ & \$ 5 \cdot 3: 1,4 ; \$ 7.1: 6 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \S 8: 5 ; \S 1.3: 2 ; \text { § 1.4:5; §5.1:3; } \\ & \text { § 5.2:2; §5.3:1; § 12.7:3 } \end{aligned}$ | § 5.1:1; § 5.2:2; § 6.1:9 |
| 116 lord of the house | \$7.5:3 | \$4.1:3 |  |
| 117 lord of the interrogation | ממונה על השאלה | §7:2 | \$7.2:5; §7.5:7 |
| 118 lord of the lot of Fortune | \$ \$11:1; § 1.2:8; § 7.2:6; § 11.1:9 |  |  |
| 119 lord of the lot of the estate | בעל גורל הקרקע | §4.2:4 |  |
| 120 lord of the lot of the Moon | \$2.4:1 בעל גורל הלבנה | § 2.2:1; §8.2:2 |  |
| 121 lord of the orb | פקיד על הגלגל | \$9:1 |  |


| No | English | Hebrew | She'elot I | She'elot II | She'elot III |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 122 | lord of the place | בעל הבית | § 8:3; § 1.1:5,6; § 1.3:2; <br> \$ 1.4:1,2; § 2.1:3,5,8,11; § 2.3:1; <br> $\$ 2.4: 1 ; \$ 3.1: 1,3,4,5 ; \$ 3.4: 2,3$; <br> §4.1:4,5; §4.3:1; § 5.1:2; <br> § $5.2: 1,5,6 ; \$ 5.3: 1,4 ;$ § 6.1:1,4; <br> § 6.2:1; § 7.1:4; §7.2:3,4; <br> $\$ 7.3: 3,4,5,6,10,17 ;$ § 7.6:4; <br> §7.7:1-13; §7.8:1,8; §8.1:4,6; <br> § 10.1:1,2,3,7,8,9,10; § 10.2:3,6; <br> § 10.3:4,5,7; § 11.1:3,5,11,12; <br> § 12.1:2,3,6,9; § 12.2:2,4 |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { § 5.1:3; § 5.2:2; §6.1:10,11; } \\ & \text { § 6.2:4,7; §7.1:1 } \end{aligned}$ |
| 123 | lord of the place of the rising sign | בעל בית המזל העולה |  | §7:2 |  |
| 124 | lord of the place signifying the object of the interrogation | בעל בית הדבר שישאל עליו |  | §7:2 |  |
| 125 | lord of the rising sign | בעל המזל העולה |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { § 5.1:1; § 7.4:1; § 7.5:2; § 7.7:1; } \\ & \text { §9.1:1 } \end{aligned}$ |  |
| 126 | lord of the sign | בעל המזל בעל הבית | $\begin{aligned} & \text { § 4.6:4; § 4.9:1,2; §4.10:1; } \\ & \text { § 7.1:2; §7.9:3,7 } \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 2.3: 1 ; \$ 8.3: 1,3 ; \$ 12.5: 5 \\ & \$ 4: 1 ; \$ 12.7: 4 \end{aligned}$ |  |
| 127 | lord of the sign of the city | בעל מזל המדינה | \$7.5:2 |  |  |
| 128 | lord of the term | בעל הגבול | § 5:1; \$7.5:4 | \$8.3:5 |  |

Hebrew She'elot I

| 129 | lord of the triplicity | בעל השלישות |  | §8.4:5 | \$6.1:8 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 130 | lordship | שלטון | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 8: 1 ; \$ 1 \cdot 4: 2 ; \S 4 \cdot 1: 4 ; \S 7 \cdot 3: 1,4 ; \\ & \$ 7.5: 3 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { § 10:4; § 1.3:2; §4.1:2,3; §11.1:2; } \\ & \$ 11.2: 2 ; \text { §12.3:5 } \end{aligned}$ |  |
| 131 | lordship | ממשלה |  | \$9:1; § 10:5; §7.8:1 |  |
| 132 | lot of the estate | גורל הקרקע |  | \$4.2:4 |  |
| 133 | lot of Fortune | הגורל הטוב | $\begin{aligned} & \text { §7:1; } \mathbb{\$ 1 1 : 1 ; ~ § ~ 2 . 1 : 8 ; ~} \$ 7.2: 4,6 ; \\ & \$ 11.1: 9 \end{aligned}$ | § 10:2; § 8.2:2 |  |
| 134 | lot of the Moon | גורל הלבנה |  | \$ 10:2; § 2.2:1; § 7.8:1; § 8.2:2 |  |
| 135 | lower midheaven | מזל תהום | \$5.3:3 |  |  |
| 136 | lower planet | שכוכב שפלים | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 5.3: 5 ; \S 7.3: 16 ; \$ 7.5: 4,5 \\ & \$ 7.3: 3 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 5: 1 \\ & \$ 7.1: 2,3,4 \end{aligned}$ |  |
| 137 | luminaries | מאורות | \$7:1 | \$12.5:2 | \$7.2:6 |
| 138 | malefic planets | כוכבים מזיקים | $\begin{aligned} & \text { § 2.2:4; § 4.1:5; § 4.4:6; §7.3:3; } \\ & \text { § 7.5:6; § 7.6:5; § 8.1:2; §9.2:2; } \\ & \text { §9.3:4; § 11.1:9; § 12.1:6; } \\ & \text { § 12.2:2 } \end{aligned}$ | \$7.6:2 | \$ 5.1:2 |
|  |  | כוכבים רעים |  | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 5: 6 ; \$ 2.3: 3,5 ; \$ 4.1: 2 ; \$ 6.1: 3,6 ; \\ & \$ 7.6: 3,4,5 ; \$ 7.7: 10 ; \$ 8.1: 2 ; \\ & \$ 8.3: 1,2,4 ; \$ 11.2: 2 ; \text { §11.3:1,2;} \\ & \$ 12.3: 5,6 ; \$ 12.8: 10 \end{aligned}$ | \$ 5.1:3; § 6.1:2,11 |
|  |  | מזיקים | $\begin{aligned} & \text { \$7.2:5; §7.5:2; §7.6:2,3,4,6,7,8;} \\ & \$ 7.7: 12 ; \$ 8.1: 3,4,6 ; \text { §9.1:3,4; } \\ & \text { \$9.2:4; §10.2:2,3; §11.1:4; } \\ & \text { §12.2:1 } \end{aligned}$ |  |  |



| No English | Hebrew | She'elot I | She'elot II | She'elot III |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 147 Moon | לבנה <br> ירח | §4:2,3,4; §6:2; §7:1; § 10:1; <br> § $11: 3 ;$ § $1.2: 3 ;$ § $1.4: 5 ;$ § $2.2: 2,3$; <br> \$ 2.4:1,2; §4.1:2,3,4,5; \$4.3:2; <br> §4.4:2; §4.7:2; §4.9:1,2; <br> §4.10:1,5; § 5.3:1,5; §6.1:7; <br> §7.2:4; §7.5:4; §7.6:6; <br> § 10.3:3,5,7; § 11.1:10; § 12.1:4 <br> \$4:5 | § 5:7; § 10:1,2,5; § 1.1:2; § 1.2:3,5; § 1.3:3; § 1.4:1,4; § 1.5:1,2; § 2.2:1,2; \$ 2.3:1; § 3.1:2; § 4.1:3,4,5; § 5.1:4; § 5.2:1; § 5.3:3; § 6.1:3,6,8; § 6.2:1; § 7.2:1; §7.6:3; § 7.7:6,9,10; § 7.8:1; §8.2:2; § 8.3:1,2; § 9.1:2; § 9.2:4,9,10; $\$ 9.3: 1,2 ;$ § $10.1: 4,7,8 ;$ § 11.1:3; \$ $12.1: 2,4,9,13 ;$ § $12.3: 1,5,7$; § 12.4:3; § 12.6:2; § 12.7:1,3,4; § 12.8:3,5 | \$5.2:2; §6.2:6 |
| 148 moving rapidly | מהיר בהליכה <br> רץ בהליכתו מהלך במרוצה | §7.9:6; § 12.1:2,3,7 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { § 6.1:6; § 12.8:8 } \\ & \text { § 12.1:2 } \end{aligned}$ | §6.2:2 |
| 149 moving slowly | ממתין בהליכה מתאחר בהליכתו | \$7.9:6 | § 6.1:6; §12.1:10 | §6.2:1 |
| 150 movement | תנועה | \$1:3 |  |  |
| 151 motion | הליכלך | § 4.1:4; § 7.9:6; § 12.1:2,3,7 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { § } 12.1: 2 \\ & \$ 5: 2 ; \$ 1.4: 3 ; \text { §4.1:3; §6.1:6,7; } \\ & \$ 8.1: 2 ; \text { § 12.1:10; § } 12.8: 8,9 \end{aligned}$ |  |
| 152 mundane affaires | דברי העולם | § 1:2 | § 1:2 |  |
| 153 natal horoscope | מולד | \$ 1.2:2 |  |  |
| 154 native | נולד | \$1:2; § 1.3:2; § 10.1:8 |  |  |

No English
Hebrew She'elot I
She'elot II

| 155 nativities $\$ 2: 2 ; \S 3: 5 ; \S 6: 1 ; \$ 1.2: 3$ | $\$ 1.2$ |
| :--- | :--- |


$\$ 12.4: 2$

| 161 nature of the signs | תולדת המזלות | § 6.3:1; § 12.7:4 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 162 nature of water | תולדת המים | \$4:2 |
| 163 night | ( \$7:1; § 1.2:3; § 5.3:1; \$7.2:4 | § 5.3:3 §6.1:6 |
| 164 ninth-part | \$9:3,4 תשיעית | \$10:3 |
| 165 nocturnal planet | כוכב לילה | \$ 6.1:6 |
| 166 north | \$7.3:12; §7.9:8 צפתון צפון | § 12.4:1,3 |
| 167 northern | \$7.3:13 \$9:3013 | § 12.4:2; § 12.5:3; § 12.6:3,4 |
| 168 number | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 9: 3 ; \$ 1.2: 1 ; \$ 5.3: 6 ; \\ & \$ 7.3: 10,11,15,18 ; \$ 7.4: 8 ; \\ & \$ 10.1: 2 ; \$ 10.3: 2,5 \end{aligned}$ | §3:3,4; § 5.3:2; § 12.8:11 \$ ${ }^{\text {d }}$.2:4; § 6.1:2 |



180 place of death מקום כרת
181 place of landed
estates
181 place of landed $\begin{aligned} & \text { \$ } 4.3: 1 \text { בית הקרקעות } \\ & \text { estates }\end{aligned}$
182 place of prison בית הסהר
183 place of rumors בית השמועות
184 place of the grave בית הקבר

| 180 place of death | \$1.2:3 |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 181 place of landed estates | \$4.3:1 בית הקרקצות |  |
| 182 place of prison | בית הסהר | \$6.2:7 |
| 183 place of rumors | בית השמועות | \$9.2:1 |
| 184 place of the grave | בית הקבר | \$6.1:4 |


| No English | Hebrew | She'elot I | She'elot II | She'elot III |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 185 place of women, wars, and partnership | בית הנשים והמלחמות והשותפות | § 6:1 |  |  |
| 186 places of life | מקומות החיים | \$ 2.1:1,2 | \$ 9:1; § 1.1:1 |  |
| 187 planet | מוכבת | § 4:2; § 4.10:2; § 5.1:2; § 12.2:6 § $3: 4 ; \$ 4: 2 ; \$ 6: 1 ; \S 8: 1 ; \S 10: 3$; § 2.1:11; § 2.4:2; §4.3:2; §4.4:4; $\$ 4.6: 1,2 ; \$ 4.7: 1 ; \$ 4.8: 1,3$; § 4.9:1; § 4.10:2,4; § 5.1:3; § 5.2:2; § 7.4:6,9; §7.5:5; §7.7:1,2,3,10,12,13,14,15; \$7.8:1,3,5,6,7,8; §7.9:6,8; § 9.2:1,2; § 10.1:5,6; § 10.2:5,6; \$ $10.3: 4,5,7,8,9 ; \$ 12.1: 2,5$ | § $3: 1,4 ;$ § $8: 2 ;$ § $12.8: 12$ <br> §6:1; §7:2;§8:3; §9:2,3; <br> § $10: 2,3$; § 1.2:4; § 1.3:3; <br> § 1.4:4,5; § 4.1:3,4; §4.2:4; <br> § 6.1:8,9,10; §7.1:3; §7.6:6; <br> §7.7:3,11; §8.1:2; \$9.2:9,10; <br> § 9.3:1,2; § 10.1:7,8; § 11.1:2,3; <br> § 12.1:3,7,8,9,11; § 12.3:2,5; <br> § 12.4:2; § 12.6:2,5; § 12.8:7,8 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { §6.1:6 } \\ & \text { § 5.1:1,2; §6.1:4,6; §6.2:2,5 } \end{aligned}$ |
| 188 Pisces | דגים | § 6.2:3; § 7.9:3; § 10.3:2,4,5 |  |  |
| 189 position (planet) | מקום | §4:2,4; §7:1; § 10:9; § 11:1; <br> § 11:4,7; § 2.1:2; § 2.4:1; § 4.1:4; <br> $\$ 4.4: 4 ;$ § $4.8: 3 ; \$ 4.9: 1 ;$ § $4.10: 1$; <br> § 5.3:1; § 6.1:7; § 7.3:10,14; <br> §7.4:9; §7.6:1; §7.7:7,13,14; <br> §7.9:6,8; § 9.2:2,3; § 10.1:2; <br> \$ 12.2:7 |  | § 5.1:1; § 5.2:2; § 6.2:4, 5 , 6 |
| 190 power (aspects) | כח המבטים |  | \$1.1:4 |  |
| 191 power (body) | כח הגוף |  |  |  |
| 192 power (cardp) | כח היתד |  | \$3:5 |  |



| No English | Hebrew | She'elot I | She'elot II | She'elot III |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 201 quadrant | רביעית הגלגל רביצית | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 3 \cdot 4: 1,3 ; \text { § } 5 \cdot 3: 3 ; \\ & \$ 4 \cdot 1: 1,2 ; \text { § } 5 \cdot 3: 2,5 ; \S 7 \cdot 7: 14 ; \\ & \$ 7.8: 7 \end{aligned}$ | §12.4:1 | §6.1:11 |
| 202 quartile | מבט רביעית מבט מרובע | $\begin{aligned} & \text { § 7.3:7; § 7.4:9; § 12.2:2 } \\ & \$ 5: 3 \end{aligned}$ | §7.5:2; §12.2:3 |  |
| 203 querent | שואל <br> בעל השאלה | § 3:3,4,6; §4:1; §5:2; §6:2; §8:2; § $10: 2 ;$ § $1.1: 2,3,4,6 ;$ § 1.2:1,2; § 1.3:1; § 3.1:1,4; § 4.9:1; § 5.1:1; § 5.2:1; § 6.1:1; § 6.2:1; §7.2:1; §7.3:1,3,4,19; §7.4:4,5,6; § 7.5:1,4; §7.6:1; §7.9:2; §8.1:1; \$9.1:1; §9.3:1; § 10.1:7,8; § 10.2:1; § 11.1:9; § 12.1:1 \$ 1.1:6 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { § } 1: 3 ; \text { § } 8: 1 ; \text { § } 9: 1 ; \text { § } 6.1: 1 ; \\ & \$ 7.3: 1,4 ; \text { § 7.4:2,3; §7.5:1,2; } \\ & \text { § } 10.1: 1,4 ; \text { § } 11.1: 1 ; \text { § } 12.1: 1 ; \\ & \text { § } 12.3: 6 ; \text { § } 12.7: 1 ; \text { § } 12.8: 6 \end{aligned}$ |  |
| 204 quick (lower) planet | כוכב קל |  | §12.8:8 |  |
| 205 rapid planet | כוכב מהיר |  | §5:8 |  |
| 206 ray (planet) | אור | §7.7:4 | § 6.1:8; §7.6:6; § 8.3:2; § 11.1:2 |  |
| 207 ray of the body (planet) | אור גוף | §7.4:9; § 7.6:5 |  |  |
| 208 rays of burning | אור השרפה |  | \$5:6 |  |
| 209 receive power | לקבל כח | §4:4; § 2.1:12; § 3.4:2,3 | \$9.3:10 |  |
| 210 received | מקובל | § 1.4:1; § 10.3:7 | § 1.3:1; § 10.1:2; § 12.1:1 | § 5.1:1 |


| No English | Hebrew | She'elot I | She'elot II | She'elot III |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 211 reduce (humor) | לחסר | §1.7:1-2 | \$1.3:1 |  |
| 212 reduce (harm) | לחסר | \$1:2; \$ 2.5:6 | § 1:3,4; §6:4 |  |
| 213 retrograde | שב אחורנית <br> חוזר אחורנית <br> שב לאחור <br> חוזר לאחור | $\begin{aligned} & \text { § 4.1:4,5; § 5.2:2; §7.3:3; §7.5:2; } \\ & \text { § 7.6:7; § 7.8:2; § 7.9:6; § 10.1:8; } \\ & \text { § 11.1:3 } \\ & \text { § 3.2:4; § 3.4:3; §6.1:2; } \\ & \text { § 7.1:2,4,6 } \\ & \\ & \text { § 2.1:10, 12; § } 3.1: 3 \end{aligned}$ | $\$ 5: 2$ $\begin{aligned} & \text { § 1.4:1,2; §6.1:1; §7.1:4; §8.1:2; } \\ & \text { § 10.1:4,6 } \\ & \text { § 7.6:6; §12.1:11; § 12.2:3; } \\ & \text { § } 12.3: 1 \end{aligned}$ | §6.2:1 |
| 214 revolution of the world-year | תקופת השנה שנת התקופה | $\$ 7.5: 2$ | \$7.6:2 |  |
| 215 rising sign | מזל עולה | \$4.9:3,4; \$10.3:6 |  | \$5.1:1 |
| 216 ruler | שליט <br> ממונה פקיד | $\begin{aligned} & \text { § 5:1,2; § 6:1,2; § 7:1; § 11:2; } \\ & \text { § 1.2:2; § 1.3:1; § 1.4:4; § 2.1:3; } \\ & \text { § 2.1:10; § 3.4:1; §7.9:6,7 } \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { §12.8:3 } \\ & \$ 8: 2,3 ; \$ 7.2: 2 ; \text { §9.1:4; § 12.1:12 } \\ & \$ 8.3: 1,2 ; \$ 9.1: 4 ; \text { § } 10.1: 4 \end{aligned}$ | § 5.2:1; § 6.2:1 |

No English Hebrew She'elot I
She'elot II

| 217 | ruler of the interrogation | ממונה על השאלה |  | \$7:2 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 218 | ruler of the place of life | שליט על מקום החיים | \$1.2:2 |  |
| 219 | ruler over the querent | ממונה שהוא כנגד השואל שליט על השואל | \$7.9:2 | §8:1 |
| 220 | Sagittarius | קשת | \$6.2:3 | \$1.5:2 |
| 221 | Saturn | שבתי |  |  |


| 22 | scholars in the knowledge of the orbs | $\begin{array}{r} \text { הגלגלים בדיעות } \\ \hline \text { הגים } \end{array}$ |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 22 | science | חכמה |  | \$10:5 |
| 22 | Scorpio | עקרב |  | §4:1; §7.4:1; \$9.2:2,7 |
| 22 | seventh cardo (seventh place) | יתד שביעי |  | § 3:2,4; §9.2:7; § 12.4:1; § 12.8:6 |
| 22 | sextile | מבט ששית | \$7.3:7 | § 2:2; § 1.5:2; § 1.6:2; § 2.1:3 |


| No English | Hebrew | She'elot I | She'elot II | She'elot III |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 227 sign (zodiacal) | מזל בית |  | § 8:2; § 1.5:2; § 2.3:1; §6.1:7,10; <br> §8.3:1,3; § 9.2:2,7; § 10.1:7; <br> § 12.4:2; § 12.5:4,5; § 12.7:4; <br> § 12.8:11 <br> § 4:1; §8:3; § $10: 3 ;$ § $1.5: 2$; <br> § 6.1:7,10; § 8.3:2; § 10.1:1; <br> § 12.7:4 | § 5.2:2; § 6.2:2,5; § 7.1:3 |
| 228 sign of the city | מזל המדינה | \$7.5:1,2 | \$7.6:1,3 |  |
| 229 sign of the descendant | מזל שוקע | §7.3:2; §7.6:1 |  |  |
| 230 significator | מורה |  |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { \$5.1:1,2,3; §6.1:7,8,9,11; } \\ & \$ 6.2: 1,5 \end{aligned}$ |
| 231 signs with a human shape | מזל על צורת אדם מזל על צורת בן אדם | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 9: 2 ; \$ 9.3: 2 \\ & \$ 6.2: 2 \end{aligned}$ |  |  |
| 232 smaller domain (of the Moon) | חלקה הקטן חלקה | $\$ 2.4: 2$ | § 2.2:2 |  |
| 233 soul | נשמה | § 2:3; §3:2 |  |  |


| No English | Hebrew | She'elot I | She'elot II | She'elot III |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 234 south | דרום | §7.9:8 | \$ 12.4:3 |  |
|  | פאת דרום |  | \$ 12.4:1 |  |
| 235 southern | דרומי | §4.8:2; §7.3:12,13 | § 12.4:2; § 12.5:3; § 12.6:3,4 |  |
| 236 southern <br> (ecliptical latitude) | דרומי |  | \$ 1.2:2 |  |
| 237 southern sign | מזל דרומי |  | § 12.4:2 |  |
| 238 stars | כוכבים | \$2:3 |  |  |
| 239 station | מעמד | \$5.3:2 | \$ 5:2,3,4; § 12.8:8 |  |
| 240 strong | תקז | §7.3:3,5; § 12.2:7 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { \$4:3; §4.2:5; §7.1:2; § 10.1:3,7; } \\ & \text { § 12.5:1 } \\ & \$ 3: 3 ; \$ 7.4: 3 \end{aligned}$ | §6.1:9 |
| 241 straight signs | מזלות | \$4.1:2 | \$4.1:1 |  |
| 242 succedent (places) | סמוכים | \$9.1:1 |  |  |
| 243 Sun | שמש | § $4: 2 ;$ § 6:2; §7:1; § 10:2; <br> § 1.1:7; § 1.3:2; § 2.4:2; \$ 4.1:4; <br> \$4.3:2; § 4.4:2; § 4.7:2,3; <br> $\$ 4.9: 3 ;$ § $4.10: 3,4,5 ; \$ 5.2: 4$; <br> \$ $5.3: 1,2 ;$ § $6.1: 1 ;$ § $7.2: 4 ;$ § 7.3:3; <br> \$7.7:3,4,7,14,16; § 10.1:4,5,6,7; <br> § 12.2:7 | § $5: 3,4,6 ;$ § $10: 5 ;$ § 1.2:2; § $\$ .2: 2 ;$ \$ $4.1: 3 ; \$ 5.3: 2,3 ;$ § $6.1: 1 ;$ § $7.1: 4 ;$ <br> § 7.2:1; § 7.5:2; § 7.7:2,3,6; <br> §8.1:4; §8.3:3; § 10.1:2,4,6,7; <br> § 12.1:11; § 12.3:1,7; § 12.4:3; <br> § 12.6:2; § 12.7:1,3,4 | § 5.2:1,2; §6.1:2 |
| 244 table of ecliptic latitude | לוחות המרחב |  | § 12.6:5 |  |
| 245 Taurus | שור | \$9:4 | §4:2; § 7.4:1; § $7.5: 1$ |  |
| 246 tenth cardo | יתד עשירי |  | § 3:2,3; § 1.4:5; § 7.7:11; \$ 12.8:6 |  |


| No English | Hebrew | She'elot I | She'elot II | She'elot III |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 247 term | גבול | § 5:1; § 7.3:3; \$7.5:4 | §8:3,5 |  |
| 248 test/verify (verb) | נסה | \$11:3; \$ 3.3:1 | § 1:3; § 8:5; §8.1:5; \$12.6:6 |  |
| 249 testimony | עדות | § $3.4: 1 ;$ § 4.10:2; § 5.1:4; § 12.2:4 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { § 7:2,3,4; § 1.1:3; § 5.2:1; §7.7:6; } \\ & \text { §9.2:4 } \end{aligned}$ |  |
| 250 thoughts/mind | מחשבות מחשבת הלב | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 2: 3 ; \S 3: 4 ; \S 12.1: 9 \\ & \$ 7.4: 9 \end{aligned}$ |  |  |
| 251 times | זמנים | \$ 2.1:4 |  |  |
| 252 trine | מבט שלישית | \$7.3:7 |  |  |
| 253 triplicity | שלישות |  | § 8:4,5; § 11.1:3 | §6.1:8 |
| 254 tropical signs | מזלות מתהפכים | $\begin{aligned} & \text { § 3.2:1; § 5.1:4; § 7.9:5; § 8.1:5; } \\ & \text { §9.1:2; § 12.1:4 } \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { § 1.4:2,5; §3.1:3; § 6.1:5; } \\ & \$ 9.2: 3,4,8 ; \text { § 12.1:6; § 12.6:1; } \\ & \text { § 12.8:2,8 } \end{aligned}$ | § 5.1:2; § 6.2:2 |
| 255 under the ray of the Sun | תחת אור השמש <br> עם אור השמש | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 1.3: 2 ; \$ 4.4: 2 ; \S 5 \cdot 3: 2 ; \S 7 \cdot 3: 3 ; \\ & \$ 7.7: 3 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { § 1.2:1; § 6.1:1; §7.7:2; §8.1:4; } \\ & \text { § 8.3:3; § 10.1:4,6 } \\ & \text { §5:6 } \end{aligned}$ | §6.1:2 |
| 256 unfortunate aspect | מבט רע | $\begin{aligned} & \text { \$4.3:2; § 5.2:4; § 6.1:3; §6.2:1; } \\ & \$ 7.2: 3 ; \text { § 7.6:3,6; § 8.1:3; } \\ & \text { § 9.2:4; § 10.1:4; § 10.3:4,5.7; } \\ & \text { § 11.1:2,5,10; § 12.1:6,9; §12.2:5 } \end{aligned}$ | § 4.2:1; § 7.2:4; \$7.5:2 |  |
| 257 unfortunate indication | סימן רע | § 10.2:2; § 12.1:5; § 12.2:4 | § 12.1:9 | §6.1:11 |
| 258 unfortunate position | מקום רע | §7.2:3 | § 1.1:2; §4.2:3 |  |

No English

| 259 unfortunate place | בית רע | $\begin{aligned} & \text { §4.1:5; §9.2:4; § 10.1:4,5; } \\ & \text { § 11.1:2 } \end{aligned}$ | §6.1:8 |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 260 unfortunate sign | מזל רע | \$1.2:3 |  |  |
| 261 upper planets | כוכבים עליונים <br> עליונים | \$ $5.3: 2 ;$ § 7.3:3,4,5,15; §7.5:4 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { § 4:4; § } 5: 1,3 ; \S 9: 3 ; \S 7.1: 2 ; \\ & \$ 7 \cdot 4: 2 \\ & \$ 7 \cdot 2: 6 \end{aligned}$ | §7.1:2,3,4; §7.5:6 |
| 262 Venus | נוגה | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 6: 2 ; \$ 10: 2 ; \text { \$4.4:6; } \$ 4.7: 3 ; \\ & \$ 4.10: 5 ; \$ 7.1: 2 ; \$ 7.3: 8 ; \$ 9.1: 4 ; \\ & \$ 10.3: 7 ; \$ 11.1: 7 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 5: 4 ; \text { §10:5; §2.3:2; §7.2:4; } \\ & \$ 7.4: 3 ; \$ 12.3: 4,5,7 ; \$ 12.4: 4 ; \\ & \$ 12.6: 2 ; \text { § 12.7:1,3 } \end{aligned}$ | § 5.1:1; § 7.1:3 |
| 263 verified by experience | מנוסה |  | §8:5 |  |
| 264 Virgo | בתולה | \$7.9:3 |  |  |
| 265 watery signs | מזלות | §4.9:4; § 9.3:4 | \$12.7:2 |  |
| 266 weak | חלש | §7.3:4,15; § 12.2:7 | \$5:5 |  |
| 267 weakness | חלישות | \$7.3:15 | \$7.1:4 |  |
| 268 west | פאת מערב |  | \$12.4:1,3 |  |
| 269 witness | צד | §4.1:2; §4.3:2 | §7:1; § 1.1:3; § 5.1:5 |  |
| 270 years | שנים | \$7.9:4,7 |  | \$7.4:5 |
| 271 zodiac | גלגל | § $3.4: 1 ;$ § 5.3:3; § 7.7:14 | § 6.1:10; § 8.3:1; \$9.1:4; § 12.1:5 |  |

ENGLISH-HEBREW GLOSSARY OF TECHNICAL TERMS IN SEFER HA-ME'OROT

No English

| 13 | benefic planets | כוכבים טובים | § 11:2; § 29:1,5; § 32:3 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 14 | be victorious (planet) | נצח | §30:1,2,4,5,6,7,8,10 |
| 15 | bicorporal signs | מזל שיש לו שני גופים | \$17:1 |
| 16 | birth | מולד | \$1:11 |
| 17 | cadent places | נופלים | \$12:1 |
| 18 | Cancer | סרטן | \$15:2 |
| 19 | Capricorn | גדי | \$ 15:2; § 26:2 |
| 20 | cardo | יתד | § 12:1; § 16:1; § 22:1,2 |
| 21 | center | מוצק | \$4:1; § 27:5; § 30:1,3,6 |
| 22 | circle | גלגל | \$4:1; §4:7; \$15:1; \$ $35: 1$ |
| 23 | cold (noun) | קור | § 2:1; § 6:5; \$24:6,7; § 26:4; § 28:3 |
| 24 | cold (adj.) | ק | \$7:1 |
| 25 | count | חשבון | \$4:5 |
| 26 | complexion | ממסך | §7:1,3; \$8:1; § 29:2,3,4,5; § 33:1 |
| 27 | conjunction | מחברת | $\begin{aligned} & \text { § 11:3; § 19:3; §20:1; § } 23: 1,2,5 ; \text { § } 24: 1,9,11 ; \text { § } 25: 4 ; \text { § } 26: 1 ; \text { § } 29: 2,4,5 ; \text { § } 30: 1 ; \text { § } 31: 1,4 ; \text { § } 32: 5 ; \$ 33: 1,6 ; \\ & \$ 34: 5 \end{aligned}$ |
| 28 | coughing | שעול | \$24:10 |
| 29 | crisis | גבול | \$ 3:3,5,6; \$ 4:7,9; \$ 5:1; § 6:1,3; § 9:1; \$ 11:3; \$ 16:1,2,3; \$ 34:3,4; \$ 35:1,4 |
| 30 | crisis day (critical day) | יום גבול | §3:7; §4:5; § 11:1,2,3; § 14:1; § 34:1,4 |

No English

| 31 | day | יום |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 32 | decan | פנים | §30:5 |
| 33 | deficit (of a humor) | חסרון | \$18:2 |
| 34 | degree | מעלה | §4:2; § 14:2,3,5,6,7,8;\$15:2,3;\$23:1,2,4;\$24:11;\$25:4;\$28:4;\$29:1;\$30:2,3;\$34:1;\$35:2,500 |
| 35 | degree that is the same distance | מעלה דומה | § 15:1,3; § 35:2 |
| 36 | demi-aspect | חצי המבט | §3:7 |
| 37 | diarrhea | שלשול | \$24:8 |
| 38 | direct in motion | הולך ישר דרך ישר | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 1: 5 \\ & \$ 31: 1 \end{aligned}$ |

[^82]Hebrew Me'orot

|  | eclipse (noun) | קדרות | § 1:8; § 13:1,2 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 48 | ecliptic | קו גלגל המזלות קו המזלות | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 30: 4 \\ & \$ 1: 5 ; \$ 30: 4 \end{aligned}$ |
| 49 | ecumene | ישוב | \$2:2 |
| 50 | eighth orb | הגלגל השמיני | \$33:3 |
| 51 | election | מבחר | \$9:6 |
| 52 | epicycle | גלגל קטן | § 4:1; § 26:5; § 27:4; \$30:1,6 |
| 53 | equal degrees | מעלות ישרות | \$34:1 |
| 54 | equidistant | רחוק מרחק שוח | \$35:2 |
| 55 | equator | קו השוה | \$23:3; \$35:2 |
| 56 | excess of a humor in the body | תוספת בגוף | §18:1 |
| 57 | experience | מנוסה, נסה | \$2:4,5; §3:2 |
| 58 | extreme north | סוף צפון | \$15:2; § 16:2 |
| 59 | extreme south | סוף דרום | \$15:2; § 16:2 |
| 60 | even-numbers | זוגות | \$3:5 |
| 61 | fixed sign | מול נאמן | \$17:1 |
| 62 | fortunate aspect | מבט טוב | \$15:3; \$29:3 |
| 63 | Gemini | תאומים | \$15:2 |
|  | general method | דרך כלל | \$9:3,4,9 |

No English

No English Hebrew Me'orot
81 knowledgeable $\$ 3: 2$
about the
judgments of
astrology

\$30:4,6; \$33.5
83 latitude $\$ 16: 4 ;$ § $\$ 23: 4$
(geographical)



\$9:3,5 בעל הבית

No English

| No English | Hebrew Me'orot |
| :---: | :---: |
| 96 Mercury | \$ \$8:1; § 9:3; § 14:6,8; § 29:1,2; § 32:3,4; § 33:2,3 |
| 97 method that applies to the individual | \$9:3,4,8 דרך פרט |
| 98 midheaven | \$25:4 חצי השמים |
| 99 misfortune | ר \$ $11: 1 ; \$ 12: 1 ; \$ 23: 2,3,4,5,6 ; \$ 24: 1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9,11,12 ;$ \$27:1,5,6; \$29:1; § 31:3; § $33: 1$ |
| 100 moist | \$6:3 |
| 101 moistness | \$27:6 לח |
| 102 moisture | \$3:1 לחה |
| 103 month | \$3:4 |
| 104 Moon | ```\ $ 1:3,7,8,9,11; §3:1,4,5,7; §4:1,2,5,6,7,8; §5:1; §6:1,5; §8:1,2,4,6; §9:7; § 10:1; §11:1,2; § 12:1; § 13:1; $ 14:1; § 15:1,3; § 16:1; § 17:1; § 18:1; § 19:1; § 20:1,3; $ 21:1,2; § 22:4; § 23:1,4,5; § 24:1,4,5,9,10,12; $ 25:4; § 26:1; $ 27:1,2,7; § 28:1; § 29:1; $ 30:1,8; $ 31:1,4; $ 32:1,3,4,6,8,10,11; § 33:1,4; § 34:1,2,4; $35:1,3 $ $1:1``` |
| 105 morning | \$4:4 |
| 106 moving rapidly |  |
| 107 moving slowly | $\begin{gathered} \hline \$ 4: 8 ; \$ 24: 4 \\ \$ \text { \$ } \$ 4: 5 \\ \hline \text { ממתחן בהליכיכה } 4: 5 \\ \hline \end{gathered}$ |

Hebrew Me'orot

| 108 motion | הנוליכה | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 4: 1 ; \$ 6: 1 \\ & \$ 1: 4,5 \\ & \$ 1: 7,9 ; \$ 4: 1 \end{aligned}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 109 natal horoscope | מולד | §8:1,3,4,6; §9:1,8 |
| 110 native | בעל המולד | \$8:3 |
| 111 nativity | מולד | \$8:4 |
| 112 nature (disease) | תולדת | \$5:1 |
| 113 nature (human) | תולדת | \$6:3; §7:1,2,3,4 |
| 114 nature (planet) | תולדת | §6:5; § 11:2; § 33:2; § 34:4 |
| 115 nature (sign) | תולדת | \$ 19:1; § 24:14 |
| 116 night | לילה | \$ 1:1,2; § 2:1,4; § 15:2; § 35:2 |
| 117 noon | חצי היום | \$ $2: 4$ |
| 118 north | צמפון | $\begin{aligned} & \$ 15: 2 ; \$ 16: 2 ; \text { § } 35: 2 \\ & \$ 1: 5 ; \$ 14: 7,8 ; \$ 30: 4 ; \$ 33: 4 \end{aligned}$ |
| 119 occidental (of the Sun) | מערבי | \$ 14:5,7,8; § 24:7; § 28:4 |
| 120 opposition (aspect) | נכח | § $3: 6 ;$ § 4:6; § 10:1, 2; § $13: 1 ;$ § 16:1,3; § 21:1; § 22:1; § 24:3; § 26:3,7; § 27:3; § 29:1; § 31:4; § $32: 3,4,6,8,10 ;$ § $34: 2 ;$ § $35: 2$ |
| 121 oriental (of the Sun) | מזרחי | § 14:2,3,4,6; § $24: 6$ |
| 122 patient | חולה |  |

Hebrew Me'orot

| 123 perigee | \$ $24: 8 ; \$ 27: 6$ $\$ 30: 1,2,3$ מקום השפמלות $\$ 30: 3$ |
| :---: | :---: |
| 124 physician | $\begin{gathered} \text { \$ } \$ \text { 9:9; \$15:3 רופואות } \$ 15: 3 \end{gathered}$ |
| 125 Pisces | \$15:2 |
| 126 place (horoscopic) | ( \$8:3; §9:3,5; \$ 22:3; § 26:1; § 29:4 |
| 127 planets |  |
| 128 Pisces | \$15:2 |
| 129 power (disease) | \$5:2 |
| 130 power (planet) | \$ \$8:4; § 23:6; § 26:6; § 30:6; § 31:2; § 33:4 |
| 131 power (triplicity, term, etc.) | \$ 24:13; §35:2 |
| 132 power (star) | \$1:3 |
| 133 power (testimony) | \$20:1 |
| 134 pulse | \$9:9 דפק |

135 quadrature $\$ 4: 2,5,6 ; \$ 10: 1 ; \$ 13: 1 ; \$ 13: 1 ; \$ 16: 1,4,5 ; \S 22: 1,3 ; \S 27: 7 ; \$ 34: 2 ; \$ 35: 2$
\$5:1
\$3:6; §25:2; § 29:1; §31:2; §32:3,4,6,8,10
No English

| 138 | ray (planet) |
| :--- | :---: |
| 139 receive power $\$ 14: 1 ; \$ 25: 4 ; \$ 29: 1$ |  |


| 139 | receive power |
| :--- | :--- |
| 140 | retrograde |



[^83]| English | Hebrew | Me orot |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 138 ray (planet) | אור | \$14:1; \$25:4; \$29:1 |
| 139 receive power | לקבל כח | §6:5 |
| 140 retrograde | שב אחורנית | \$ 1:5; \$24:3,9; § 26:3; § 28:4; § 31:1 |
| 141 revolution of the year | תקופת השנה | \$35:5 |
| 142 rising sign | מזל צולה | § 8:4; § 16:1; § 22:4; § 26:1; § $35: 5$ |
| 143 rising times | זמני שעה | \$35:2 |
| 144 ruler | ממונה | \$8:4 |
| 145 ruler | פקיד | \$8:4 |
| 146 rulership | פקידות | \$8:4; \$ 30:5,6 |
| 147 Sagittarius | קשת | §8:4; § 15:2 |
| 148 Saturn | שבתי | $\$ 8: 1,4,6 ;$ § $14: 2,4 ;$ § $24: 1,2,5,6,7,8,10,12,15 ;$ § $25: 1,4 ;$ § $26: 5 ;$ § $27: 7 ;$ § $29: 2 ;$ § $30: 1,8 ;$ § $31: 1 ;$ $\$ 32: 1,3,4,6,8,11$ |
| 149 second orb | הגלגל השני | \$1:3 |
| 150 Scorpio | עקרב | \$33:5 |
| 151 sextile | מבט שלית | §4:8; § 22:3; § 25:3; § 26:7; \$ 27:7; § 29:1; § 31:3; § 32:4,7,10 |
| 152 sick | חולה | \$2:2,4 |
| 153 shadow | צל | § 1:7; § 13:1 |
| 154 short signs | מזלות קצרים | § 16:4; § 23:3,4; \$25:1,2 |
| 155 side | פאה | \$20:2,3; \$ 21:1,2; § 24:8; § 27:3; \$ 29:4 |

No English
 164 tempered ממוסך $\$ 33: 2$


| 165 | term |
| :--- | :--- |
| 166 | tertian fever |
| 167 | testimony |
| 168 trine $\$ 23: 6 ; \$ 24: 12,13 ; \S 30: 5$ |  |
| 169 triplicity $\$ 12: 1 ; \$ 14: 2,3,4,5,6,7,8 ; \S 20: 1,2,3 ; \S 21: 1,2$ |  |
| 170 tropical signs $\$ 4: 8 ; \$ 22: 3 ; \$ 25: 1 ; \$ 26: 7 ; \$ 27: 7 ; \$ 29: 1 ; \S 31: 3 ; \$ 32: 4,7,10$ |  |

170 tropical signs $\$ 17$ מזלות מתהפכים \$17
Hebrew Mivharim I Mivharim II Mivharim III


## HEBREW-ENGLISH INDEX TO THE ENGLISH-HEBREW GLOSSARIES

M = English-Hebrew Glossary of Technical Terms (3 Versions of Sefer haMivharim)
S = English-Hebrew Glossary of Technical Terms (3 Versions of Sefer ha-She'elot)
L = English-Hebrew Glossary of Technical Terms in Sefer ha-Me'orot

| Hebrew | English | M | S | L |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| אור | light | 112 | 106 | 86 |
| אור | ray (planet) | 194 | 206 | 138 |
| אור גוף | ray of the body (planet) | 195 | 207 |  |
| אור השרפה | rays of burning |  | 208 |  |
| אל מנטק | logic | 113 |  |  |
| אמהות | humors | 97 |  |  |
| אמצעי | intermediate | 100 | 95 |  |
| אריה | Leo | 110 | 104 | 84 |
| ארך | longitude |  |  | 89 |
| ארץ | Earth | 55 | 55 | 44 |
| אשר ישאל בעבורו | object of the interrogation |  | 169 |  |
| בוחר | querent | 193 |  |  |
| בית | house (planetary) | 93 | 88 | 71 |
| בית | place (horoscopic) | 170 | 179 | 126 |
| בית | sign (zodiacal) | 217 | 227 | 156 |
| בית אבל | place of mourning | 175 |  |  |
| בית גבהות | house of exaltation |  |  | 73 |
| בית הדאגות | place of worries | 176 |  |  |
| בית הנשים והמלחמות | place of women, wars, and |  | 185 |  |
| והשותפות | partnership |  |  |  |
| בית הסהר | place of prison |  | 182 |  |
| בית הקבר | place of the grave |  | 184 |  |
| בית הקרקצות | place of landed estates | 174 | 181 |  |
| בית השלישות | house of the triplicity |  | 91 |  |
| בית השמועות | place of rumors |  | 183 |  |
| בית התחלואים | place of diseases | 172 |  |  |
| בית זכר | masculine signs | 135 |  |  |
| בית טוב | fortunate place |  | 80 |  |
| בית כבוד | house of exaltation | 95 |  | 73 |
| בית נופל | cadent place | 24 | 26 |  |


| Hebrew | English | M | S | L |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| בית עולה | rising sign | 202 |  |  |
| בית צומח | ascendant sign | 9 | 9 |  |
| בית קלון | house of dejection | 94 | 89 |  |
| בית רע | unfortunate place | 249 | 259 |  |
| בית שלטון | house of lordship |  | 90 |  |
| בית שלישות | house of triplicity |  |  | 74 |
| בית שמחה | place of joy | 173 |  |  |
| בית שפלות | house of dejection |  |  | 72 |
| במעלה שוה עם מעלה | equidistant degree | 62 |  |  |
| שמרחקה שוה |  |  |  |  |
| בעל | lord of the house | 122 |  |  |
| בעל אחתת היתדות | lord of one of the cardines |  | 108 |  |
| בעל בית הדבר | lord of the place signifying the |  | 124 |  |
| שישאל עליו | object of the interrogation |  |  |  |
| בעל בית המזל העולה | lord of the place of the rising sign |  | 123 |  |
| בעל גורל הלקרנה | lord of the lot of the Moon |  | 120 |  |
| בעל גורל הקרקע | lord of the lot of the estate |  | 119 |  |
| בעל הבית | lord of the house | 122 | 116 |  |
| בעל הבית | lord of the place | 123 | 122 | 90 |
| בעל הבית | lord of the sign |  | 126 |  |
| בעל הבית העולה | lord of the rising sign | 124 |  |  |
| בעל הגבול | lord of the term |  | 128 |  |
| בעל הכבוד | lord of the exaltation |  | 114 |  |
| בעל המולד | native |  |  | 110 |
| בעל המזל | lord of the sign | 125 | 126 |  |
| בעל המזל העולה | lord of the rising sign |  | 125 |  |
| בעל המזל הצומח | lord of the ascendant sign | 119 | 111 |  |
| בעל המעלה | lord of the degree (of the ascendant) | 120 |  |  |
| בעל המעל | lord of the ascendant degree | 118 |  |  |
| בעל הפנים | lord of the decan |  | 112 |  |
| בעל הצומח | lord of the ascendant | 117 | 109 |  |
| בעל הצומחת | lord of the ascendant degree | 117 | 110 |  |
| בעל השאלה | querent |  | 203 |  |
| בעל השוקע | lord of the descendant |  | 113 |  |
| בעל השל | lord of the triplicity |  | 129 |  |
| בעל השצה | lord of the hour | 121 | 115 |  |
| בעל מזל המדינה | lord of the sign of the city |  | 127 |  |
| בעלי המזלות | astrologers |  |  | 9 |
| בעלי כנפיים | winged (stars) | 261 |  |  |
| בעלת גורל הטוב | lord of the lot of Fortune |  | 118 |  |
| בעלת החיים | lord of life | 116 |  |  |
| בקר | morning |  |  | 105 |
| בתולה | Virgo | 255 | 264 | 180 |
| בתים רצים | unfortunate places |  |  | 174 |


| Hebrew | English | M | S | L |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| בתים שהם על צורת | signs with a human shape | 219 |  |  |
| בן אדם |  |  |  |  |
| גבהות | apogee | 4 | 4 | 1 |
| גבול | term | 234 | 247 | 165 |
| גבול | crisis |  | 43 | 29 |
| גבול השרפה | domain of burning | 54 |  | 41 |
| גדי | Capricorn | 26 | 29 | 19 |
| גוון מראה | color |  | 35 |  |
| גוף | body |  | 23 |  |
| גורל הלבנה | lot of the Moon | 128 | 134 |  |
| גורל הקרקע | lot of the estate |  | 132 |  |
| גלגל | circle | 34 |  | 22 |
| גלגל | zodiac | 265 | 271 |  |
| גלגל | orb |  | 173 |  |
| גלגל גבהות | circle of apogee | 35 |  |  |
| גלגל גדול שמול | eccentric circle |  | 60 |  |
| רחוק מגלגל הארץ |  |  |  |  |
| גלגל המוצק | eccentric circle | 58 | 60 | 45 |
| גלגל המזלולות | zodiac |  |  | 183 |
| גלגל על גליון | upper orb |  |  | 175 |
| גלגל קטן | epicycle | 60 | 62 | 52 |
| דבר | object of the interrogation |  | 169 |  |
| דברי העולם | mundane affaires |  | 152 |  |
| דברים טובים | fortunate things | 81 |  |  |
| דגים | Pisces | 183 | 188 | 125 |
| דיין | knowledgeable about the judgments of astrology |  |  | 81 |
| דיני המזלות | astral judgments |  | 12 |  |
| דינים |  |  |  |  |
| דלי | Aquarius | 14 | 15 | 11 |
| דם | sanguine humor | 209 |  |  |
| דמות | color |  | 35 |  |
| דמיון | illustration | 98 | 93 |  |
| דן | judge (verb) | 102 | 97 | 77 |
| דעת התורות והדינין | jurisprudence | 105 |  |  |
| דפק | pulse |  |  | 134 |
| דקדוק לשון | grammar | 87 |  |  |
| דרום | south | 222 | 234 | 157 |
| דרומי | southern |  | 235 |  |
| דרומי | southern (ecliptical latitude) |  | 236 |  |
| דרך | method | 141 | 143 |  |
| דרך כלר | general method |  |  | 64 |
| דרך פרט | method that applies to the individual |  |  | 97 |


| Hebrew | English | M | S | L |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| הבתים כפי חלוק | division of the places according to | 53 |  |  |
| הארץ | the $\langle$ latitude of the〉 country |  |  |  |
| הגורל הטוב | lot of Fortune | 127 | 133 |  |
| הגלגל הגדול | great circle | 88 |  |  |
| הגלגל השמיני | eighth orb |  |  | 50 |
| הגלגל השני | second orb |  |  | 149 |
| הדבר המבוקש | object of the interrogation |  | 169 |  |
| הדבר שיהיה | object of the interrogation |  | 169 |  |
| הדבר שישאל על | object of the interrogation |  | 169 |  |
| הולך דרך ישר | direct in motion |  |  | 38 |
| הולך ישר | direct in motion |  |  | 38 |
| הזנב | tail of the Dragon | 231 |  |  |
| החלק הקטן מן הגלגל | smaller domain of the circle | 220 |  |  |
| הליכה | motion | 148 | 151 | 151 |
| המזל הטוב | lot of Fortune | 127 |  |  |
| הנשאל | object of the interrogation |  | 169 |  |
| הקיא | vomit | 256 |  |  |
| השפלים | planets |  |  | 127 |
| זוגות | even-numbers |  |  | 60 |
| זמני שעה | rising times |  |  | 143 |
| זמנים | times |  | 251 |  |
| חדש | month | 144 | 146 | 103 |
| חוזר אחורנית | retrograde | 200 | 213 |  |
| חוזר לאחור | retrograde |  | 213 |  |
| חולה | patient |  |  | 122 |
| חולי | disease |  |  | 39 |
| חולי בעבור | venereal disease |  |  | 178 |
| חום | heat | 91 |  | 67 |
| חורף | winter |  |  | 182 |
| חזק | strong | 226 | 240 |  |
| חכם בחכמות חיצונות | scholar in the profane sciences | 211 |  |  |
| חכם בתורות | jurist | 106 |  |  |
| חכם גדול בשאלות | great scholar of interrogations |  | 86 |  |
| חכם רפואות | physician |  |  | 124 |
| חכמה | science | 212 | 223 |  |
| חכמי המזלות | astrologers | 12 | 13 | 9 |
| חכמי המשפטים | astrologers |  | 13 |  |
| חכמי השאל | experts in interrogations |  | 68 |  |
| חכמי התורה | sages of the Torah | 207 |  |  |
| חכמי משפטי המזלות | astrologers | 12 |  |  |
| חכמים | astrologers |  | 13 |  |
| חכמים בדיעות הגלגלים | scholars in the knowledge of the orbs |  | 222 |  |
| חכמת האלוהות | theology | 238 |  |  |



| Hebrew | English | M | S | L |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| יתדות מזלו | cardines of the natal horoscope | 29 |  |  |
| מאול הכוכבים בכל | pain of the planets in the signs |  | 175 |  |
| כבוד | exaltation |  | 67 |  |
| כבוד | magnitude (stars) |  |  | 93 |
| כוכב | planet | 179 | 187 |  |
| כוכב המקבל הכח | planet that receives power | 178 |  |  |
| כוכב | masculine planet | 136 |  |  |
| כוכב חמה | Mercury | 140 | 142 | 96 |
| כוכב | diurnal planet |  | 54 |  |
| כוכב לילה | nocturnal planet |  | 165 |  |
| כוכב מהיר | rapid planet |  | 205 |  |
| כוכב נגה | Venus |  |  | 179 |
| כוכב נקבה | feminine planet | 71 |  |  |
| כוכב עליון | upper planet | 251 |  |  |
| כוכב | Jupiter |  |  | 79 |
| כוכב קל | quick (lower) planet |  | 204 |  |
| כוכב שהוא על הארץ | planets that are above the Earth | 181 |  |  |
| כוכב שפל | lower planet | 129 | 136 |  |
| כוכבי אור | luminous stars |  |  | 92 |
| כוכבי הגלגל העליון | stars of the upper orb |  |  | 160 |
| כוכבים | stars | 224 | 238 | 158 |
| כוכבים | planets |  |  | 127 |
| כוכבים והם בעלי | planets in charge of crafts | 180 |  |  |
| כוכבים טובים | benefic planets | 16 | 18 | 13 |
| כוכבים מזיקים | malefic planets | 132 | 138 |  |
| כוכבים משרתים | planets |  |  | 127 |
| כוכבים עליונים | upper planets |  | 261 | 176 |
| כוכבים רעים | malefic planets | 132 | 138 |  |
| כוכבים שהם בגלגל השמיני | stars of the eighth orb |  |  | 159 |
| כוכבים שהם למעלה | planets that are above the Earth | 181 |  |  |
| מן הארץ |  |  |  |  |
| כוכבים שהם תחת | planets that are below the Earth | 182 |  |  |
| הארץ |  |  |  |  |
| כח | power (election) | 186 |  |  |
| כח | power (planet) | 187 | 198 | 130 |
| כח | power (sign) | 188 |  |  |
| כח | power (soul) | 189 |  |  |
| כח | power (disease) |  |  | 129 |
| כח | power (triplicity, term, etc.) |  |  | 131 |
| כח | power (star) |  |  | 132 |
| כח | power (testimony) |  |  | 133 |
| כח בנשמת האדם | power (human soul) |  | 200 |  |


| Hebrew | English | M | S | L |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| כח הגוף | power (body) |  | 191 |  |
| כח היתד | power (cardo) |  | 192 |  |
| כח המולדות | power (nativities) |  | 196 |  |
| כח המזלות | power (signs) |  | 199 |  |
| כח הנשמה | power (human soul) |  | 200 |  |
| כח השאלות | power (interrogation) |  | 194 |  |
| כח התשיעית | power (ninth-part) |  | 197 |  |
| כח זכר | power (masculine signs) |  | 195 |  |
| כח נקיבות | power (feminine signs) |  | 193 |  |
| כל המבטים | power (aspects) |  | 190 |  |
| לאכול רפואה | take a medicine | 230 |  |  |
| לבנה | Moon | 145 | 147 | 104 |
| להעלות | put in the ascendant (of the electional horoscope) | 191 |  |  |
| להקיא | administer vomitive | 257 |  |  |
| להקיז | bloodletting | 21 |  |  |
| לוח הארץ | latitude plate | 109 | 102 |  |
| לוחות | astronomical tables | 13 | 14 | 10 |
| לוחות המרחב | table of ecliptic latitude |  | 244 |  |
| לח | moist |  |  | 100 |
| לחה | phlegm | 169 |  |  |
| לחה | moisture |  |  | 102 |
| לחלוח | moistness |  |  | 101 |
| לחסר | reduce (humor) | 198 | 211 |  |
| לחסר | reduce (harm) | 199 | 212 |  |
| לחסר תולדת הדם | bloodletting | 21 |  |  |
| לילה | night | 159 | 163 | 116 |
| לכרות | cause death | 32 |  |  |
| לכתוב ספר | write a book | 262 |  |  |
| למטה מהארץ | below the Earth |  | 17 |  |
| למעלה מן הארץ | above the Earth | 1 | 1 |  |
| לנהג | direct (verb) |  | 48 |  |
| לנצח לק | be victorious (planet) | 17 | 19 | 14 |
| לקבל כח | receive power |  | 209 | 139 |
| לשל לרל | purgative | 190 |  |  |
| לשתות רפואה | take a medicine | 230 |  |  |
| מאדים | Mars | 133 | 139 | 94 |
| מאורות | luminaries | 131 | 137 | 91 |
| מאזנים | Libra | 111 | 105 | 85 |
| מבחר | election | 59 |  | 51 |
| מבט | aspect | 10 | 10 | 7 |
| מבט ארט | aspect of love | 11 | 11 |  |
| מבט טבט | fortunate aspect | 78 | 77 | 62 |
| מבט מרובע | quartile, quadrature |  | 202 | 135 |


| Hebrew | English | M | S | L |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| מבט נכח | opposition (aspect) | 164 | 172 |  |
| מבט רביעית | quartile | 192 | 202 | 137 |
| מבט רע | unfortunate aspect | 246 | 256 | 256 |
| מבט של רישת | trine | 240 | 252 | 168 |
| מבט ששית | sextile | 215 | 226 | 151 |
| מבקש | querent | 193 |  |  |
| מהיר | moving rapidly |  |  | 106 |
| מהיר בהלירה | moving rapidly | 146 | 148 | 106 |
| מהלך | motion | 148 | 151 | 108 |
| מהלך אמצעי | mean motion |  |  | 95 |
| מהלך במרוצה | moving rapidly |  | 148 |  |
| מהלך השווה | mean motion | 137 |  |  |
| מולד | natal horoscope | 150, | 153, | 109, |
|  |  | 152 | 155 | 111 |
| מולד | birth | 137 |  | 16 |
| מוסיף בהלוך | increasing motion | 99 |  |  |
| מוצק | center | 33 | 33 | 21 |
| מורה | significator |  | 230 |  |
| מזיקים | malefic planets | 132 | 138 |  |
| מזל | natal horoscope | 150 |  |  |
| מזל | place (horoscopic) | 170 |  |  |
| מזל | sign (zodiacal) | 217 | 227 | 156 |
| מזל | place (horoscopic) |  | 179 |  |
| מזל בעל הגוף | bicorporal signs |  | 20 |  |
| מזל בעל | bicorporal signs |  | 20 |  |
| מזל דרומי | southern sign |  | 237 |  |
| מזל המדינה | sign of the city | 218 | 228 |  |
| מזל הסוף | terminal sign | 235 |  |  |
| מזל טוב | favorable configuration of the stars | 68, 80 | 81 |  |
| מזל משני גופים | bicorporal signs |  | 20 |  |
| מזל נאמן | fixed sign | 76 | 76 | 61 |
| מזל נקבה | feminine sign | 73 | 72 |  |
| מזל עולה | rising sign | 202 | 215 | 142 |
| מזל צל צות צורת | signs with a human shape |  | 231 |  |
| מזל צומח | ascendant sign | 9 | 9 | 6 |
| מזל רע | unfortunate sign | 143, | 260 |  |
|  |  | 250 |  |  |
| מזל שוקע | sign of the descendant |  | 229 |  |
| מזל שיש לו | bicorporal signs |  | 20 | 15 |
| מזל תהום | lower midheaven |  | 135 |  |
| מזלות אוויר | airy signs | 2 | 2 |  |
| מזלות ארוכים | long signs | 114 |  | 88 |
| מזלות האש | fiery signs | 74 | 73 |  |
| מזלות המומים | deformed signs | 43 |  |  |


| Hebrew | English | M | S | L |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| מזלות המים | watery signs | 260 | 265 |  |
| מזלות הער | earthy signs | 56 | 56 |  |
| מזלות הרוח | airy signs | 2 | 2 |  |
| מזלות זכרים | masculine signs | 135 | 141 |  |
| מזלות ישרים | straight signs | 227 | 241 |  |
| מזלות מזרחים ית | eastern signs |  | 59 |  |
| מזלות מתהפכים | tropical signs | 242 | 254 | 170 |
| מזלות עומדים | fixed signs | 76 | 76 |  |
| מזלות עקרים | barren signs |  | 16 |  |
| מזלות קצרים | short signs | 216 |  | 154 |
| מזלות שהם בעל | bicorporal signs | 18 |  |  |
| שתי גופות |  |  |  |  |
| מזלות שני גופים/גופות | bicorporal signs | 18 | 20 |  |
| מזרחי | eastern |  | 58 |  |
| מזרחי מן השמש | oriental of the Sun | 165 | 174 | 121 |
| מחברת | conjunction | 38 | 38 | 27 |
| מחברת | intersection |  |  | 76 |
| מחלוקת | disagreement | 50 | 51 |  |
| מחשבות | thoughts/mind |  | 250 |  |
| מחשבת הלב | thoughts/mind |  | 250 |  |
| מים | urine |  |  | 177 |
| מלזות מעוותים | crooked signs | 40 | 40 |  |
| ממהר | moving rapidly |  |  | 106 |
| ממהר בהליכה | moving rapidly |  |  | 106 |
| ממונה | ruler/lord | 115, | 216 | 144 |
|  |  | 204 |  |  |
| ממונה על המולד | ruler over the nativity | 206 |  |  |
| ממונה על השאלה | lord/ruler of the interrogation |  | 117, |  |
|  |  |  | 217 |  |
| ממונה על חמשה מקומות החיים | ruler over the five places of life | 205 |  |  |
| השואל | ruler over the querent |  | 219 |  |
|  | השואל |  |  |  |
| ממוסך | tempered |  |  | 164 |
| ממסך | complexion | 36 |  | 26 |
| ממשלה | lordship | 126 | 130 |  |
| ממתין בהליכה | moving slowly | 147 | 149 | 107 |
| ממתן | moving slowly |  |  | 107 |
| מנה | anomaly | 3 | 3 |  |
| מנה מתוקנת | true anomaly |  |  | 171 |
| מנוסה | verified by experience | 254 | 263 |  |
| מנוסה, נסה, ניסיון | experience | 64 |  | 57 |
| מספר | number | 161 | 168 |  |
| מספר אורו | number of the ray (of a planet) | 162 |  |  |
| מעלה | degree | 44 | 45 | 34 |


| Hebrew | English | M | S | L |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| מעלה | dignity |  | 47 |  |
| מעלה דבקה | equidistant degree | 62 |  |  |
| מעלה דומה | degree that is the same distance |  |  | 35 |
| מעלה מרחקה שווה | equidistant degree |  | 64 |  |
| מעלה צומחת | ascendant degree | 8 | 8 | 4 |
| מעלה שוה מות | equidistant degree | 62 |  |  |
| מעלות ישרות | equal degrees | 61 | 63 | 53 |
| מעלת המבט | degree of the aspect | 46 |  |  |
| מעלת הקלון | degree of dejection | 45 |  |  |
| מעמד | station | 225 | 239 |  |
| מערבי מן | occidental of the Sun | 163 | 170 | 119 |
| מערכת | configuration | 37 | 36 |  |
| מערכת הכוכבים | configuration of the stars |  | 37 |  |
| מפתחות הלבנה | keys of the Moon |  |  | 80 |
| מצעדים | rising times | 203 |  |  |
| מקובל | received | 197 | 210 |  |
| מקום | position (planet) | 185 | 189 |  |
| מקום | location |  |  | 87 |
| מקום גבהות | apogee |  |  | 1 |
| מקום גבוה | apogee |  |  | 1 |
| מקום השפל | perigee |  |  | 123 |
| מקום השפלות | perigee |  |  | 123 |
| מקום השרפה | place of burning | 171 |  |  |
| מקום טוב | fortunate position | 79 | 79 |  |
| מקום כרת | place of death |  | 180 |  |
| מקום נופל | cadent place | 24 | 26 |  |
| מקום רע | unfortunate position | 248 | 258 |  |
| מקום שפלות | perigee | 168 |  |  |
| מקומות החיים | places of life | 177 | 186 |  |
| מקומות משונים | incompatible positions |  | 94 |  |
| מקיז | bloodletter | 20 |  |  |
| מראה | color |  | 35 |  |
| מרה אדומה | yellow bile | 264 |  |  |
| מרה שרורה | black bile | 19 |  |  |
| מרחב | latitude (ecliptical) | 107 | 100 | 82 |
| מרחב הארץ | latitude (geographical) | 108 | 101 |  |
| מרחק | distance | 51 | 52 | 40 |
| משפטי המזלות | astral judgments |  | 12 |  |
| משפטים | judgments | 103 | 98 | 78 |
| משקה להקיא | vomitive | 258 |  |  |
| משקה לשל | purgative | 190 |  |  |
| משרת | planet | 179 | 187 | 127 |
| מתאחר בהליכתו | moving slowly |  | 149 |  |
| מתבודדת | secludes itself (Moon) | 213 |  |  |
| מתמהמה בהליכה | moving slowly | 147 |  |  |


| Hebrew | English | M | S | L |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| מתפרד | part from (verb) | 166 | 176 |  |
| נבראים | creatures |  | 39 |  |
| נוגה | Venus | 253 | 262 | 179 |
| נולד | native | 151 | 154 |  |
| נופל | cadent place | 24 | 26 | 17 |
| נופלים מן היתדות | cadent from the cardines |  | 27 |  |
| נזק | harm | 89 |  | 66 |
| ניהוג | direction | 49 | 50 |  |
| נכח | opposition (aspect) | 164 |  | 120 |
| נסה | test/verify (verb) | 236 | 248 |  |
| נפרד | part from (verb) |  | 176 |  |
| נקדר | eclipse (verb) |  |  | 46 |
| נשאל | object of the interrogation |  | 169 |  |
| נשמה | soul |  | 233 |  |
| נשמת האדם | soul of man | 221 |  |  |
| נשמת האדם העליונה | human supernal soul | 96 | 92 |  |
| נשמת האדם נבראה | human supernal soul | 96 |  |  |
| במקום גבוה על כל |  |  |  |  |
| הכוכבים |  |  |  |  |
| נשרף | burnt | 22 | 24 |  |
| נשרף מהשמ | burnt by the Sun | 23 | 25 |  |
| סוף דרום | extreme south | 66 | 70 | 59 |
| סוף צפון | extreme north | 65 | 69 | 58 |
| סימן טוב | fortunate indication |  | 78 | 12 |
| סימן רע | unfortunate indication |  | 257 | 75 |
| סמוכים | succedent (places) | 228 | 242 | 161 |
| סרטן | Cancer | 25 | 28 | 18 |
| עגולה | circle |  | 34 |  |
| צד | witness |  | 269 |  |
| צדות | testimony | 237 | 249 | 167 |
| עולם עליון | upper world | 252 |  |  |
| עולם שפל | lower world | 130 |  |  |
| עליון | upper planet | 251 |  |  |
| עליונים | bodies of the upper world |  | 22 |  |
| עליונים | upper planets |  | 261 |  |
| עם אור השמש | under the ray of the Sun |  | 255 |  |
| עצור | constipation | 39 |  |  |
| עקרב | Scorpio | 214 | 224 | 150 |
| פאה | side |  |  | 155 |
| פאות | cardinal points | 30 | 32 |  |
| פאת דרום | southern part of the zodiac with respect to the ecliptic | 223 |  |  |
| פאת דרום | south |  | 234 |  |


| Hebrew | English | M | S | L |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| פאת מזרח | east |  | 57 |  |
| פאת מערב | west |  | 268 |  |
| פאת צפון | north |  | 166 |  |
| פיטנות | poetry | 184 |  |  |
| פנים | decan |  | 44 | 32 |
| פקיד | ruler |  | 216 | 145 |
| פקיד על הגלגל | lord of the orb |  | 121 |  |
| פקידות | rulership |  |  | 146 |
| צבא השמים | host of heaven |  |  | 68 |
| צדק | Jupiter | 104 | 99 | 79 |
| צומח | ascendant | 7 | 7 |  |
| צומחת | ascendant degree | 8 | 8 |  |
| צל | shadow |  |  | 153 |
| צפון | north |  | 166 | 118 |
| קבל כח | receive power | 196 |  |  |
| קדחת רביעיה | quartian fever |  |  | 136 |
| קדחת שלישיה | tertian fever |  |  | 166 |
| קדרות | eclipse (noun) |  |  | 47 |
| קו גלגל המזלות | ecliptic |  |  | 48 |
| קו המזלות | ecliptic |  | 61 | 48 |
| קו הצדק | equator | 63 | 65 |  |
| קו השוה | equator |  |  | 55 |
| קו חצי השמים | line of midheaven |  | 107 |  |
| קו עגולת המזלות | ecliptic |  | 61 |  |
| קור | cold (noun) |  |  | 23 |
| קיא | vomitus | 259 |  | 181 |
| קיץ | summer |  |  | 162 |
| קר | cold (adj.) |  |  | 24 |
| קשת | Sagittarius | 208 | 220 | 147 |
| קשת המראה | arc of vision |  |  | 3 |
| ראש התלי | head of the Dragon | 90 |  |  |
| רביעית | quadrant |  | 201 |  |
| רביצית הגלגל | quadrant |  | 201 |  |
| רביעית זכר | masculine quadrant | 134 | 140 |  |
| רביצית זכרות | masculine quadrant | 134 |  |  |
| רביעית מזרחית | eastern quadrant | 57 |  |  |
| רביצית נקבה | feminine quadrant | 72 | 71 |  |
| רוחות | cardinal points |  | 32 |  |
| רופא | physician |  |  | 124 |
| רחב | latitude (ecliptical) | 107 | 100 | 82 |
| רחב | latitude (geographical) |  | 101 | 83 |
| רחוק מרחק | equidistant |  |  | 54 |
| רע | misfortune | 143, | 145 | 99 |
|  |  | 245 |  |  |


| Hebrew | English | M | S | L |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| רצה | misfortune | 143 | 145 |  |
| רפואה | medicine (substance) | 138, |  |  |
|  |  | 139 |  |  |
| רפואה | treatment | 243 |  |  |
| רפואת של רול | purgative | 190 |  |  |
| רץ בהליכתו | moving rapidly |  | 148 |  |
| שאלה | interrogation | 101 | 96, |  |
|  |  |  | 196 |  |
| שב אחורנית | retrograde | 200 | 213 | 140 |
| שב לאחור | retrograde |  | 213 |  |
| שבתי | Saturn | 210 | 221 | 148 |
| שואל | querent |  | 203 |  |
| שור | Taurus | 232 | 245 |  |
| שותפות | partnership | 167 | 177 |  |
| שלטון | lordship |  | 130 |  |
| שליט | ruler | 204 | 216 |  |
| שליט על השואל | ruler over the querent |  | 219 |  |
| שליט על מקום החיים | ruler of the place of life |  | 218 |  |
| שלישות | triplicity | 241 | 253 | 169 |
| שלשול | diarrhea |  |  | 37 |
| שמאל | north |  |  | 118 |
| שמש | Sun | 229 | 243 | 163 |
| שנה | year | 263 | 270 |  |
| שנים גדולות | great years |  | 87 |  |
| שנים קטנות | least years |  | 103 |  |
| שנת התקופה | revolution of the world-year |  | 214 |  |
| שעה | hour | 92 |  | 70 |
| שצה אשר לא זוג | odd-numbered hour |  | 171 |  |
| שעה רצה | unfortunate hour | 247 |  |  |
| שצה שתצא זוג | even-numbered hour |  | 66 |  |
| שצול | coughing |  |  | 28 |
| שצות הזוגות | even-numbered hours | 67 |  |  |
| שצות טובות | favorable hours | 70 |  |  |
| שפל | lower planet | 129 |  |  |
| שפלות | perigee | 168 | 178 | 123 |
| שפלים | lower planet |  | 136 |  |
| תאומים | Gemini | 83 | 83 | 63 |
| תולדת | nature | 153 | 157 |  |
| תולדת | nature (humor) | 157 |  |  |
| תולדת | nature (planet) | 158 | 160 | 114 |
| תולדת | nature (disease) |  |  | 112 |
| תולדת | nature (human) |  |  | 113 |
| תולדת | nature (sign) |  |  | 115 |
| תולדת האדם | nature of man | 154 |  |  |


| Hebrew | English | M | S | L |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| תולדת הבית | nature of the (horoscopic) place |  | 159 |  |
| תולדת הגוף | nature of the body | 156 |  |  |
| תולדת המזלות | nature of the signs |  | 161 |  |
| תולדת המים | nature of water |  | 162 |  |
| תולדת המשרת | nature of the planet | 158 |  |  |
| תולדת הנבראים | nature of the creatures |  | 158 |  |
| תולדת הצומח | nature of the ascendant | 155 |  |  |
| תולדת כוכב | nature of the planet | 158 | 160 |  |
| תוספת בגוף | excess of a humor in the body |  |  | 56 |
| תחילת הבית | cusp of the place | 41 |  |  |
| תחילת הבית | cusp of the place |  | 41 |  |
| תחלואים | disease |  |  | 39 |
| תחת אור השמש | under the ray of the Sun | 244 | 255 | 172 |
| תחת הארץ | below the Earth | 15 | 17 |  |
| תחתיים | bodies of the lower world |  | 21 |  |
| תנועה | motion |  | 150 | 108 |
| תקופת השנה | revolution of the world-year |  | 214 |  |
| תקופת השנה | revolution of the year |  |  | 141 |
| תקופת שנת העולם | revolution of the world-year | 201 |  |  |
| תקיף | strong | 226 | 240 |  |
| תקן | determine (position of a planet) | 47 | 46 |  |
| תשיעית | ninth-part |  | 164 |  |
| תת הכחת | giving power | 85 | 84 |  |

INDEX OF TECHNICAL TERMS
AND BIOGRAPHICAL NOTES

| English | Hebrew | Reference |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Abū Ma'shar | אבו מעשר | She'elot I, §3:6, p. 305 |
| Abū 'Alī | אבו עלי | She'elot II, §1.5:2, pp. 415-416 |
| airy signs | מזלות הרוח | Mivharim II, §1.3:1, 198 |
|  |  | Mivharim $\mathrm{I}, \$_{11.2} \mathbf{5}$, p. 138 |
| Al-Andruzagar | אנדרוזגר | Mivharim I, §7:1, pp. 103-104 |
| Al-Kindī | אל כנד | She'elot I, §7:1, p. 309 |
| ascending semicircle | חצי הגלגל העולה | Me'orot \$2:4, p. 491 |
| aspects | מבטים | Mivharim I, §2:1, p. 96 Me'orot \$22:1-3, pp. 511-512 |
| benefic planets | כוכבים טובים | Mivharim II, §2:1, pp. 184-185 |
| bicorporal signs | מזור שיש לו שני | Mivharim I, \$1.2:3, p. 108 |
|  | גופות |  |
| burnt | נשרף | Me'orot \$14:1-8, pp. 504-505 |
|  |  | Me'orot \$23:4, p. 503 |
|  |  | She'elot II, §5:6, p. 407 |
| cadent places | בתים נופלים | Mivharim I, §2:1, pp. 96-97; She'elot II, $\$ 3: 2$, pp. 404-405 |
| cardines | יתדות | Mivharim I, §2:1, pp. 96-97; She'elot II, |
|  |  | \$3:2, pp. 404-405 |
| center | מוצק | Mivharim II, \$4.3:2, p. 203 |
| conditions of the | תקוני הלבנה | Mivḩarim II, §6:2-4, pp. 190-193 |
| Moon |  |  |
| conditions of the | דרכי הלבנה | Me'orot $\$_{23: 1-2,4, ~ p p . ~ 512-513 ~}^{\text {a }}$ |
| Moon with respect מהשמש to the Sun |  |  |
| conditions of | ענייני המשרתים | Me'orot \$14:1-8, pp. 504-505 |
| the planets with מפאת השמשrespect to the Sun |  |  |
| conjunction of | מחברת שבתי | She'elot I, §7.5:1, pp. 333-334 |
| Saturn and Jupiter | וצדק |  |
| crisis | גבול | Me'orot \$3:3, p. 493 |
| crooked signs | מזלות מעוותים | Mivharim II, §7.1:6, pp. 209-210 |


| English | Hebrew | Reference |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| day under the | ביומו | She'elot I, §12.1:3, p. 344; |
| charge of a planet |  | Mivharim I, §3.1:7, pp. 116-11 |
| decan | פנים | She'elot II, §8:4, p. 408 |
| deformed signs | מזלות המומים | Mivharim I, §3.1:4, p. 116 |
| dejection | קלון | She'elot II, §6:6, pp. 407-408; <br> Mivharim II, §7.1:5, p. 209 |
| dejection | שפלות | Me'orot \$10:2, p. 502 |
| descending semicircle | חצי הגלגל היורד | Me'orot \$2:4, p. 491 |
| determine position (planet) | תקון מקום הכוכב | Mivharim I, §5:1, p. 101 |
| detriment | רעה | She'elot II, §6:6, pp. 407-408 |
| dignities | ממשלת בגלגל | She'elot I, §5:1, pp. 307-308 |
|  |  | Me'orot \$30:5, pp. 517-518 |
| directions | ניהוגים | Mivharim III, §7.3:3, p. 230 |
|  |  | She'elot I, §1.2:3, pp. 315-316 |
|  |  | She'elot II, §1.1:1, pp. 412-413 |
| diurnal signs | מזלות היום | Mivharim II, §5.1:2, pp. 205-206 |
| division of the places | חלוק הבתים | Mivharim I, §10.1:5, pp. 132-133 |
| division of the signs | הבדל המזלות | She'elot I, §7.4:9, pp. 331-332 |
| dodecatemoria | חלק שנים עשר | Mivharim I, §11.2:5, pp. 137-138 |
| domain of burning | גבול השריפה | Me'orot \$14:1-8, pp. 504-505 |
| domain of burning | גבול השרפה | Me'orot \$23:4, p. 513 |
| domain of the | חלק הלבנה | Mivharim I, §2.1:1, pp. 112-113 |
| Moon (smaller) domain of the Sun (larger) | חלק השמש | Mivharim I, §2.1:1, pp. 112-113 |
| Dorotheus | דורוניוס | She'elot I, §2:1, p. 303 |
| earthy signs | מזלות העפר | Mivharim II, §1.3:1, 198 <br> Mivharim I, \$11.2:5, p. 138 |
| eccentric circle | גלגל מוצק | Mivḩarim II, §4.3:2, p. 203 |
| eccentric circle | גלגל גדול | She'elot I, §7.3:10, p. 330 |
| Enoch | חנוך | She'elot I, §1:1, p. 301 |
| epicycle | גלגל קטן | Mivharim II, §4.3:2, p. 203 |
| equidistant degrees | מעלות שוות | Mivharim I, §6:1, pp. 102-103; |
|  | ממרחק קן הצדק או סוף צפון | Me'orot $\$ 15: 1-2, \$_{36: 3}$, pp. 506, 523-524 |
|  | ודרום |  |
| exaltation | כבוד | She'elot I, §7.5:4, p. 335 |
| exaltation | גבהות | Me'orot \$2:2, p. 490 |
| feminine planet feminine sign | מוכב נקבה | Mivharim II, \$5.1:2, p. 205-206 Mivharim II, §5.1:1, pp. 205-206 |
|  | מזר נקבה | Mivharim II, \$5.1:1, pp. 205-206 |


| English | Hebrew | Reference |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| fiery signs | מזלות האש | Mivharim II, §1.3:1, 198 |
|  |  | Mivharim I, §11.2:5, p. 138 |
| finding the length of life | לדעת מדת החיים | She'elot I, \$1.2:2-3, pp. 313-315 |
| five rulers | חמשת השרים | She'elot II, §9:1, p. 409 |
| fixed sign | מזל עומד | Mivharim I, §1.2:3, p. 108 |
| fixed sign | מזל נאמן | Mivharim III, §8.1:4, p. 236 |
| fortunate place | ת טוב | Mivharim II, \$2:3, p. 185 |
| giving power great circle great years | חכ | She'elot I, §4:2, p. 306 |
|  | הגלגל הגדול | Mivharim I, §2.5:4, pp. 115-1 |
|  | שנים גדולות | She'elot I, §1.2:2, pp. 313-314 |
| hour under the charge of a planet house | בשעתו | She'elot I, \$12.1:3, p. 344; |
|  |  | Mivharim I, §3.1:7, pp. 116-11 |
|  | בית | She'elot I, §7.5:3, pp. 334-335 |
| intermediate place | בית אמצעי | Mivharim II, \$2:3, p. 185 |
| joy judgments | שמחה | Mivharim I, §8:3, pp. 105-106 |
|  | משפטים | Me'orot \$9:2, pp. 500-501 |
| least years | שנים קטנות | She'elot I, §1.2:2, pp. 313-314 |
| long signs | מזלות ארוכים | Mivharim II, §7.1:6, pp. 209-210 |
| lord of life | בעל החיים | Mivharim III, §7.3:3, pp. 230-232 |
| lord of the day | מושל היום | Mivharim I, §3.1:7, pp. 116-117 |
| lord of the hour | בעל השעה | Mivharim I, §3.1:7, pp. 116-117 |
| lord of the triplicity | בעל השלישות | She'elot III, §6.1:8, p. 448 |
| Lot of Fortune (lot of the Moon) | הגורל הטוב | She'elot I, §7:1, p. 309 |
|  |  | She'elot II, §10:2, pp. 410-411 |
| make an election | לעשות מבחר | Mivharim I, \$4:1, pp. 100-101 |
| malefic planets | כוכבים רעים | Mivharim II, §2:1, pp. 184-185 |
| masculine planet | כוכב זכר | Mivharim II, \$5.1:2, p. 205-206 |
| masculine sign | מזל זכר | Mivharim II, §5.1:1, pp. 205-206 |
| Māshā'allāh | מאשא | She'elot II, §1:4, pp. 403-404 |
| melothesia | מזל שיורה על | Mivharim I, §1.8:1, pp. 111-112 |
|  | האיברים |  |
| mourning | к | Mivharim I, §8:3, pp. 105-106 |
| natures of the planets | תולדת המשרתים | She'elot I, §6:1, p. 308; |
| ninth-parts | תשיעיות | She'elot I, §9:3-4, pp. 310-312 |
| nocturnal signs | מזלות הלילה | Mivharim II, \$5.1:2, pp. 205-206 |
| pains of the planets in the signs | בכל מזל הכוכבים | She'elot II, §6.1:10, pp. 420-422 |
| place | בית | Mivharim I, §2:1, pp. 96-97 |
| place of burning | מקום השרפה | Mivharim I, §3.4:4, p. 120 |


| English | Hebrew | Reference |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| places of life | מקומות החיים | Mivharim I, §4:1, pp. 99-100 |
|  |  | She'elot II, §1.1:1, pp. 412-413 |
| planets | משרתים | Mivharim II, \$5:2, p. 189 |
| Ptolemy | תלמי, בטלמיוס | Me'orot §16:4, pp. 507-508 |
| quadrants | רביעיות | She'elot I, §5.3:2-3, pp. 264-265 |
| ray of a planet's body | אור גוף | Mivharim I, §3:2, pp. 98-99 She'elot II, §5:6, p. 407 |
| Razek | רזק | She'elot $\mathrm{I}, \S_{11: 1, ~ p . ~}^{12}$ 12 |
| reception | קבול | Mivharim II, \$6:12, p. 194 |
| returning | השבה | Mivharim II, §6:4, pp. 192-193 |
| revolution of the | תקופת שנת | Mivharim III, §7.4:5, pp. 232-233 |
| world-year | העולם |  |
| rising times | מצעדים | Mivharim I, \$10.1:5, p. 132 |
| ruler of the nativity | שליט על הנולד | Mivḩarim I, §4.1, pp. 99-100 |
| Sahl Ibn Bishr al-Yahūdī | סהל | Mivharim II, §6:2, pp. 190-191 |
| secludes itself | מתבודדת | Mivharim I, \$1.3:2, p. 108 |
| short signs | מזלות קצרים | Mivharim II, §7.1:6, pp. 209-21 |
| signs of power | מזלות הכח | Mivharim I, §7:1, p. 104 |
| (Leo, Sagittarius, Aquarius) |  |  |
| sign of the city | מזל המדינה | She'elot I, §7.5:1, pp. 332-332 |
| signs with a human | מזלות מצורות בן | Mivharim I, §3.1:4, p. 116 |
| shape | אדם |  |
| station | מעמד | She'elot II, \$5:2, p. 406 |
| straight signs | מזלות ישרים | Mivharim II, §7.1:6, pp. 209-210 |
| succedent places | בתים סמוכים | Mivharim I, §2:1, pp. 96-97 |
| term | גבול | She'elot I, §7.5:4, p. 335 |
|  |  | Me'orot \$23:6, pp. 513-514 |
| terminal sign | מזל הסוף | Mivharim III, §7.4:5, pp. 233-234 |
| testimonies | צדיות | She'elot II, \$1.1:3, p. 413 |
| triplicity | שלישות | Mivharim I, \$11.2:5, p. 138 |
| tropical sign | מזל מתהפך | Mivharim I, \$1.2:3, p. 108 |
| True anomaly | מנה מתוקנת | Mivharim I, §10.4:3, p. 135 |
| under the ray of the Sun, | תחת אור השמש | Me'orot \$14:1-8, pp. 504-505 |
| unfortunate place | תית רע | Mivharim II, §2:3, p. 185 |
| victorious (planet) | למי הנצוח | Me'orot §30:1-7, pp. 518-519; <br> She'elot I, §7.3:10-14, pp. 330-331 |
| watery signs | מזלות המים | Mivharim II, $\$ 1.3: 1,198$; Mivharim I , §11.2:5, p. $138^{\text {1 }}$ |
| winged signs | בעלי כנפים | Mivḥarim I, \$6.4:2, p. 127 |

## INDEX

Abraham Bar Ḥiyya, 40, 115, 124,
189, 233, 490, 503, 559, 560, 561
Epistle to Judah b. Barzilai of Barcelona, 124, 559
Megillat ha-Megalleh, 122, 233, 490, 503, 560
Surat ha-'Areṣ, 115
Abraham Ibn Ezra,
Answer to Three Questions About the Calendar Posed by David b. Joseph of Narbonne, 488, 558
astrological encyclopedias, 3,32, 33, 34, 35, 36, 308, 408, 507
biography, 1,3
Ibn al-Muthannä’s Commentary, 101, 233, 433, 508, 577
Hay ben Meqis, 11, 557, 563
'Iggeret ha-Shabbat, 109, 502, 513, 557
Book of the Astrolabe (Latin), 104, 110, 133, 405, 522, 557
Book on the Use of the Tables, 33, 395, 435, 515, 547
Liber de nativitatibus, 104, 191, 558
Liber de nativitatum, 2, 104, 230, 558
Liber de rationibus tabularum, 109, 110, 113, 135, 137, 190, 210, 233, 234, 332, 234, 332, 433, 492, 496, 558
Sefer ha-'Ibbur, 229, 488, 502, 505, 508, 513, 557
Sefer ha-Mispar, 508, 557
Sefer ha-Moladot, 2, 12, 19, 21, 32, 33, 34, 36, 37, 38, 39, 40, 41, 99, 100, 103, 104, 105, 106, $107,116,118,125,127,134$, 185, 187, 188, 191, 229, 230, 231, 232, 233, 234, 301, 305,

307, 308, 309, 314, 320, 408, 412, 413, 416, 488, 492, 501, 502, 507, 509, 515, 518, 524, 535, 536
Sefer ha-Nehoshet I, 405, 508, 520, 522, 448
Sefer ha-Neḥoshet II, 131, 405, 409, 435, 508, 513, 515, 520, 522, 558
Sefer ha-Nehoshet III, 405, 430, 513, 515, 520, 522, 558
Sefer ha-'Olam I, ix, 2, 7, 20, 26, $32,34,35,36,37,38,39,40$, 41, 101, 103, 109, 116, 125 , 127, 133, 137, 214, 233, 234, 236, 301, 303, 305, 309, 320, 332, 333, 334, 342, 401, 408, 495, 498, 501, 505, 507, 511, 518, 535
Sefer ha-'Olam II, ix, 2, 7, 26, 33, 36, 37, 38, 39, 40, 116, 136, 137, 201, 232, 233, 234, 236, 303, 307, 332, 333, 334, 401, 405, 407, 423, 495, 504, 505, 508, 515, 518
Sefer ha-Shem, 487, 557
Sefer ha-Tequfah, 2, 34, 35, 36, 231, 236, 449, 508, 509, 524, 558, 564
Sefer Mishpeṭei ha-Mazzalot, 2, 24, 28, 37, 38, 39, 40, 97, 99, $101,104,109,111,113,116$, 120, 126, 132, 134, 135, 137, 138, 190, 201, 203, 209, 227, 230, 232, 306, 307, 311, 315 , 334, 335, 336, 406, 407, 408, 418, 421, 431, 432, 449, 488, 491, 492, 504, 505, 508, 515, 517, 518, 519

Abraham Ibn Ezra (cont.),
Sefer Reshit Hokhmah, ix, 2, 19, 21, 24, 26, 32, 33, 34, 35, 36, $37,96,97,101,103,104,106$, 108, 111, 115, 116, 120, 123, $127,128,137,138,182,192$, 194, 195, 196, 201, 203, 205, 206, 227, 228, 232, 234, 236, 305, 306, 308, 311, 313, 315, 319, 322, 325, 326, 335, 337, 338, 340, 343, 345, 403, 407, 408, 410, 418, 420, 422, 429, 430, 431, 433, 448, 449, 488, 491, 498, 501, 502, 505, 506, 507, 509, 513, 516, 518, 520, 558
Sefer Reshit Ḥokhmah I, 2, 32, 33, 35, 38, 39, 40, 41, 181, 232, 403, 425, 426, 430, 431, 491, 504, 507, 510, 511, 512, 517, 520, 521, 523, 524, 558
Sefer Reshit Hokhmah II, 2, 33, 35, 232, 425, 426, 430, 431, 558
Sefer TTe'amim I, ix, 2, 7, 24, 32, $36,37,38,39,40,41,93,96$, 97, 98, 103, 105, 107, 109, 111, 112, 113, 117, 120, 123, 126, $127,128,133,136,137,138$, 195, 200, 201, 204, 209, 232, 233, 236, 301, 303, 309, 311, 313, 314, 315, 317, 318, 330, 331, 332, 335, 341, 342, 344, 401, 403, 408, 414, 416, 420, 422, 430, 448, 449, 488, 489, 490, 492, 502, 504, 505, 506, 507, 509, 510, 512, 513, 514, 516, 519, 521, 522
Sefer Țe'amim II, ix, 2, 7, 33, 37, 38, 39, 40, 41, 93, 96, 97, 99, 104, 106, 111, 113, 120, 127, 131, 134, 136, 137, 138, 139, 184, 190, 195, 201, 204, 206, 209, 210, 213, 227, 231, 232, 234, 236, 301, 306, 309, 311, 314, 317, 331, 335, 406, 408, 409, 411, 413, 418, 421, 423, 432, 435, 447, 449, 487, 488,

489, 491, 498, 505, 508, 509, 514, 515, 519, 522, 524
Yesod Mora', 10, 94, 181, 513, 558
Abū 'Alī al-Khayyāṭ, 23, 260, 261, 272, 273, 324, 360, 361, 415, 416, 560
Abū Ma'shar, 20, 22, 53, 55, 67, 71, $75,89,103,107,112,122,125$, 129, 130, 134, 193, 207, 211, 230, 232, 243, 273, 283, 301, 305, 306,
314, 326, 340, 381, 423, 424, 427, 436, 508, 523, 543, 546, 547, 558, 560, 561, 563
Kitāb al-Madḥal, 96, 97, 101, 103, 106, 108, 111, 120, 137, 193, 195, 204, 210, 305, 311, 314, 326, 335, 408, 418, 493, 505, 508, 519, 523, 524, 560
The Abbreviation of the Introduction to Astrology, 96, 97, 101, 106, 111, 120, 137, 138, 193, 194, 195, 204, 210, 306, 335, 418, 498, 558
acute diseases, $4,17,25,31,328$, 494, 497, 499
Aḥmad Ibn Yūsuf, 21
Al-Battānī, 110
Al-Bīrūnī, 135, 210, 313, 412, 560 Kitāb al-Tafhīm, 96, 97, 106, 108, 111, 117, 120, 124, 127, 135, 137, 138, 204, 205, 210, 230, 307, 311, 313, 335, 344, 408, $411,412,418,493,514,518$, 519, 560
Al-Kindī, 21, 22, 25, 55, 77, 110, 111, 123, 131, 137, 151, 197, 198, 245, 261, 265, 304, 309, 322, 324, 331, 391, 409, 419, 432, 434, 494, 495, 499, 543, 546, 561, 562
On the Reasons of the Crises of Acute Diseases, 25, 494, 495, 499
Al-Marwādhī, 110
Al-Nayrizī, 110
Al-Qabīṣī, 96, 97, 101, 103, 106, 108, 111, 113, 120, 127, 137, 138, 195, 204, 205, 230, 234, 307, 311, 315,
$335,408,411,412,418,420,491$, 493, 510, 514, 518, 524, 559
'Alī ibn abī-l-Rijāl, 15, 23, 27, 28,
$107,111,112,118,126,127,186$,
190, 191, 192, 194, 195, 196, 197,
198, 199, 200, 201, 217, 302, 303,
306, 308, 309, 322, 324, 328, 338,
401, 402, 411, 433, 434, 559
De iudiciis astrorum, 28, 107, 111, $112,118,124,125,126,127$, 186, 190, 191, 192, 194, 195, 198, 199, 200, 201, 207, 412, 559
Iudizios de las estrellas, 16, 28, 302, 306, 308, 310, 322, 324, 328, 338, 402, 403, 411, 433, 434, 560
Kitāb al-bāri' fi akhām an-nujūm, $16,23,28,107,111,112,118$, 126, 127, 186, 190, 191, 192, 194, 195, 196, 197, 198, 199, 200, 201, 207, 302, 303, 306, 308, 322, 324, 328, 338, 401, 402, 411, 433, 434, 559
Ancients, 14, 20, 24, 67, 99, 109, 112, $117,139,149,151,157,161,171$, 182, 184, 199, 211, 213, 216, 221, 230, 231, 241, 332, 336, 351, 379, 401, 402, 410, 411, 421, 441, 469, 488, 517, 543, 546, 551
Andarzagar ibn Sādān Farruh (Al-
Andruzagar), 21, 51, 103, 104, 105, 171, 193, 543, 559
angels, 11, 487, 555
anniversary astrology, 2, 3, 12, 103, 118, 402
anomaly, $85,87,135,136,353,406$,
$477,517,566,591,630$
apogee,
of the eccentric circle, 159,271 , 230, 341, 473, 475, 518
of the epicycle, $135,271,517$, 518
of the great circle, 519
of the planets' circle, $31,53,59$, 135, 159, 228, 261, 471, 477, $566,569,591,619$

Arabic astrology, 1, 3, 4, 5, 8, 21, 22, $26,28,97,122,137,186,191,233$, $302,303,304,305,308,321,328$, 333, 401, 403, 412, 432, 433, 448, 493, 500
arithmetic, $53,96,107,566,591$
Arnoul de Quinquempoix, 9
astral determinism, 6, 10, 13, 16, 182, 183, 302, 498
astrolabe, $83,109,133,196,343$, 349, 357, 405, 409, 430, 507, 513, 520, see Abraham Ibn Ezra, Sefer ha-Nehoshet I, Sefer ha-Nehoshet II, Sefer ha-Nehoshet III and Book of the Astrolabe (Latin)
astrologers, $2,4,5,6,12,13,15,16$, $20,21,22,23,24,27,29,30,31$, $61,67,71,83,94,95,97,103,109$, $111,113,117,120,122,124,125$, $128,147,153,159,161,173,186$, 188, 191, 200, 206, 229, 233, 241, 243, 247, 259, 267, 273, 285, 301, 302, 303, 304, 305, 306, 309, 313, 316, 318, 320, 321, 324, 328, 329, $343,344,349,363,371,395,401$, 402, 403, 409, 412, 415, 424, 455, $469,487,500,503,506,507,511$, 514, 518, 543, 547, 548, 551, 567, 592, 619
astronomical tables, 33, 85, 109, 110, $133,209,393,395,435,473,515$, 547, 551, 567, 593, 616, 619
astronomy, 1, 7, 97, 106, 109, 229, 489, 492, 494, 567, 593, 619 Ancient, 301
Arabic, 101, 109, 110, 135, 233
Greek, 4, 203, 508
Hebrew, 40, 435, 490, 515, 520 Latin, 8
Avicenna, 11, 24, 488, 562, 563
Azarchiel the Spaniard, 110
Banū Sākir, 110
Baraita de-Shemu'el/Baraita deMazzalot, 490, 503, 559
Béziers, 32, 33, 34, 35, 36, 208, 342, 408, 507
biblical commentaries by Abraham
Ibn Ezra, 1, 3, 8, 10, 182, 183, 487, 498
Amos
5:8, 498, 505, 508
Daniel (long)
1:10, 17
7:14, 487
Deuteronomy
4:19, 487
Exodus (long)
3:15, 11, 17, 487, 489, 490, 553, 554, 555
6:3, 11, 17
$12: 2,513$
20:13, 109, 498
23:25, 10, 93, 94, 183, 189
33:21, 508
Ecclesiastes
Introduction, 498
1:13, 487
1:19, 487
3:14, 182
1:15, 182
11:4, 491
Genesis (long)
1:9, 109
1:14, 487
$1: 16,487,489$
2:1, 487
Genesis (short)
6:3, 314
1:16, 489
Hosea
2:1, 487
Introduction to the short
comm. on the Pentateuch, 496
Job
37:10, 203
38:16, 203
38:38, 203
Psalms
8:4, 487
19:2, 487
19:10, 501
41:1, 10, 183
$75: 7,10,183$
82:1, 487
89:8, 487
89:8, 487
103:21, 189, 487
136:4, 487
146:6, 487
148:2, 487
148:3, 487
bloodletting, 22, 29, 55, 111, 151, 159, 200, 538, 568
building, 29, 63, 122, 159, 204, 320, 538
buying, 28, 29, 55, 57, 59, 65, 69, 71,
89, 113, 114, 126, 145, 153, 157,
161, 177, 190, 208, 215, 216, 253,
267, 295, 361, 369, 385, 389, 538, 539
chronic diseases, 17, 25, 31, 328, 494, 495, 522
conjunction of Saturn and Jupiter, 19, 234, 235, 333, 334, 518
conspiracy, $83,85,173,214,259$, 320, 373
crafts, 29, 85, 134, 171, 261, 324, 541, 583
critical days, ix, $4,5,17,18,19,23$, $24,25,30,31,34,35,124,328$, 443, 449, 490, 493, 494, 495, 496, 497, 498, 499

David Yom Tov, 8, 650, see Kelal Qatan
death, 61, 95, 97, 104, 105, 120, 131, 204, 221, 230, 233, 249, 267, 315, 357, 359, 412, 413, 420, 441, 443, 477, 521, 569, 609
deciding the gender, $22,28,64$, 65, 76, 77, 131, 264, 265, 438, 439
determining a baby's sex, $65,67,77$, 123, 145, 204, 205, 207, 263, 265, 281, 326, 365, 367
directions, 105, 221, 230, 231, 233, 249, 314, 315, 316, 357, 405, 409, 412, 413, 415, 570, 596
diseases, $4,6,17,18,24,25,29,30$, 31, 51, 59, 104, 105, 124, 231, 317, 327, 328, 357, 441, 449, 453-483, 491, 493, 494, 495, 498, 499, 502, 503, 504, 505, 506, 509, 510, 511, $512,516,524,523,536,582,621$, 626, 627, 630
division of the places, $83,132,133$, 214, 289, 373, 405, 414, 507, 512, 571, 596
division of the zodiac into twelve signs, 273, 331-332
dodecatemoria, $87,137,138$
Dorotheus, 13, 14, 15, 16, 21, 24, 47, $53,67,71,85,89,94,95,100,102$, 109, 116, 118, 119, 123, 125, 126, $127,137,163,169,171,184,191$, 192, 194, 196, 197, 202, 208, 212, 241, 243, 247, 259, 263, 267, 273, $285,301,303,305,308,315,321$, $322,328,341,349,367,371,385$, 391, 401, 402, 403, 404, 411, 423, $427,432,441,492,514,544,548$, 559
Carmen Astrologicum, 15, 21, 24, 94, 95, 97, 109, 111, 112, 116, 123, 126, 127, 137, 138, 191, 192, 194, 195, 197, 208, 212, 230, 303, 308, 321, 328, 403, 404, 432, 559
Doronius, 21, 303
King Dorotheus, 14, 301, 348, 349, 401
Pentateuch, 15, 21, 24, 303, 432
eccentric circle, $17,114,115,116$, 121, 136, 159, 171, 203, 213, 271, 330, 341, 393, 473, 475, 477, 489, $496,497,516,518,554,571,597$, 621
elections, ix, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, 25, 26, $27,28,47,49,51,53,57,73,94$, 96, 99, 100, 101, 102, 103, 104, 106, 107, 108, 124, 133, 143, 145, $147,149,163,175,184,185,186$, 188, 191, 194, 196, 200, 201, 223,

230, 231, 302, 305, 309, 401, 402, 407, 412, 461, 498, 501, 502, 506
emanation, 11, 453, 488
enemies, 28, 51, 71, 73, 75, 79, 104, 105, 130, 159, 163, 165, 167, 211, 219, 221, 229, 232, 249, 271, 275, 197, 313, 329, 363, 373, 417
Enoch, 14, 20, 23, 24, 67, 112, 125, 138, 241, 267, 277, 301, 336, 351, 387, 401, 406, 514, 544, 548 Book of Secrets, 20, 67, 125, 544 triple Enoch, 20, 301
epicycle, 17, 114, 115, 121, 135, 159, 203, 271, 330, 343, 457, 473, 475, 477, 496, 497, 517, 518, 519, 554, 571, 597, 622
Epitome totius astrologiae, 25, 26, 27, 64, 96, 97, 98, 102, 103, 104, 109, $110,111,112,113,114,118,120$, $121,122,123,124,126,128,129$, 130, 131, 133, 137, 139, 185, 186, 187, 189, 190, 192, 193, 198, 199, 200, 202, 205, 206, 207, 208, 211, 212, 213, 214, 216, 227, 229, 230, 307, 308, 316, 318, 324, 325, 326, 327, 329, 331, 334, 336, 337, 338, 339, 340, 341, 343, 344, 345, 404, 409, 412, 417, 419, 420, 423, 424, $425,426,427,428,429,430,433$, 434, 435, 447, 448, 449, 509, 518, 519, 521, 560, 562
eunuchs, 81, 102
fear, 49, 61, 120, 147, 235, 249, 283, 357, 359, 377, 379, 477, 539
finding buried treasure, 22, 27, 259, $261,317,320,321,322,323,324$, $379,391,393,395,433,434,538$, 562
finding something hidden, 65, 261, 263, 321
fugitives, $69,77,79,161,163,165$, 267, 277, 279, 336, 337, 339, 377, 379, 539

Galen, 5, 18, 23, 34, 25, 93, 328, 493, 494, 495, 497, 499, 510, 522

Galen (cont.),
critical days, 24, 25, 328, 493, 494, 497
De diebus decretoriis, $8,24,25$, 493
Kitāb 'ayyām al-buḥrān, 24, 25, 493, 495, 522
nine complexions, 18, 459, 499
geometry, 51, 106, 107, 573
Gersonides
Wars of the Lord, 493, 561
government, 19, 28, 47, 49, 79, 81, $83,102,145,157,163,165,173$, 175, 204, 213, 214, 245, 247, 249, 259, 273, 287, 295, 310, 320, 333, 349, 357, 363, 371, 373, 375, 383, 539, 540
grammar, 1, 53, 106, 107, 573
Greek astrology, 3, 4, 20, 21, 233, 303, 305, 328, 502

Hagin le Juif, 8
Henry Bate, 8
Hermes Trismegistus, 20, 23, 125,
138, 301, 303, 521, 563
triple Hermes, 301, 561
Hermetic writings, 20, 23, 24
Hippocratic treatises, 14, 25, 494, 496, 510, 522
historical astrology, x, 4, 5, 14, 22, 137, 234, 301, 303, 305, 309, 333, 401, 518
horoscope, 4, 5, 21
anniversary horoscope, 2, 3, 12, 103, 402
electional horoscope, 6, 13, 26, 27, 47, 49, 51, 57, 95, 99, 100, 101, 108, 145, 185, 186, 194, 498
historical horoscope, 232, 233, 333
horoscope cast at the time of the onset of the disease, $6,29,30$, 503, 504, 506, 512
horoscopic places, 16, 28, 29, 51, 96, 97, 101, 105, 106, 109, 132, 145, 185, 200, 213, 243, 245,

247, 257, 261, 310, 311, 312, 319, 326, 342, 357, 404, 405, $411,418,419,448,500,506$
interrogational horoscope, 4, 16, 273, 283, 316
natal horoscope, $4,10,12,13,18$, $19,26,47,59,69,85,87,94$, 97, 98, 99, 101, 137, 143, 145, $147,167,183,185,186,188$, 241, 249, 301, 316, 461, 498, 501
hours,
even-numbered, 65, 77, 124, 439, 572, 597
odd-numbered, 439, 457
human soul, $10,11,12,15,19,47$, 93, 94, 105, 106, 143, 181, 182, 183, 204, 241, 302, 304, 338, 453, 491, 554, 555, 574, 584, 587, 599, 611, 615
humors, $22,30,55,151,467,510$, $568,574,580,585,590,613,521$, 622
black bile, 55, 151, 510, 568
blood, 55, 111, 151, 190, 510, 511, 586
phlegm, 55, 151, 510, 581
yellow bile, 55, 151, 510, 590
Ḥunayn Ibn Isḥaq al-'Ibādī, 24, 493
Ibn Aflaḥ of Sevilla, 489
Ibn Yūnus, 110
inheritance, 79, 104, 120, 131, 145, 539
interrogations, ix, 3, 4, 5, 6, 14, 15, 16, 20, 21, 22, 23, 26, 27, 28, 29, $47,59,63,94,95,104,122,137$, 191, 241, 243, 245, 247, 261, 251, 255, 239, 265, 267, 273, 281, 283, 289, 291, 293, 295, 301, 302, 303, 304, 305, 308, 309, 310, 311, 312, 313, 316, 321, 322, 323, 328, 342, 349, 351, 353, 355, 357, 359, 361, $365,373,377,379,389,391,395$, 397, 401, 402, 403, 404, 409, 411, 416, 433, 503, 506
Italian Geniza, 7, 37

John of Seville, 26, 191, 560
Joseph ben Eliezer Bonfils (Tov Elem), 8, 535, see Şafenat Pa'neah journeys, 13, 28, 47, 59, 61, 97, 81, $97,105,116,143,145,149,157$, 169, 171, 194, 202, 213, 221, 223, 235, 245, 257, 285, 287, 289, 319, 342, 349, 363, 379, 540, 541
jurisprudence, 51, 106, 107, 155, 201, 575

Kelal Qatan (David Yom Tov), 8, 493, 503, 504, 506, 510, 511, 514, 515, 516

Latin astrology, 25, 26, 27, 104, 137, 191, 412
Latin Europe and culture, 2, 8, 9, 327, 333
Latin translations, 2, 8, 9, 21, 23, 42, 122, 129, 210, 211, 227, 229, 230, 305, 321, 322, 324, 403, 404, 409, 415, 424, 433
Levi ben Abraham ben Heayyim, 7
Liber Quadripartitus, 26, see Epitome totius astrologiae
Liber Quartus de Electionibus, 26, 27, 96, see Epitome totius astrologiae
LiberTertius de Interrogationibus, 26, 27, see Epitome totius astrologiae
logic, 51, 81, 575
lots, 309, 410
lot of the Absent, 128
lot of Fortune, 57, 77, 79, 100, 114, 128, 131, 201, 245, 247, 251, 269, 309, 315, 329, 357,
377, 409, 410, 411, 412, 426, 577, 602, 604
lot of the Moon, 114, 155, 167, 201, 253, 309, 377, 410, $411,426,577,604$, see lot of Fortune
lot of the estate, 365,602
love, $28,31,69,77,87,136,137,175$, 215, 245, 249, 287, 291, 293, 310, 344, 353, 363, 389, 516, 540

Maimonides, 189, 488, 513, 560, 561
Guide of the Perplexed, 488, 489, 560
Sanctification of the New Moon, 132, 513, 561
marriage, $28,49,65,75,77,137,145$, $167,175,245,281,289,389,443$, 450, 539
Māshā'allāh, $16,21,22,59,61,63$,
$67,69,71,73,75,85,89,117,118$,
119, 122, 123, 125, 126, 128, 129,
139, 202, 208, 211, 212, 213, 215,
236, 247, 249, 255, 259, 267, 273,
277, 285, 303, 304, 305, 309, 312,
316, 317, 319, 321, 322, 323, 324,
325, 331, 355, 357, 359, 365, 379,
385, 391, 403, 404, 409, 410, 411,
$413,414,415,423,427,434,433$,
435, 441, 447, 536, 543, 544, 547,
548, 559, 560, 561
Book of Experience, 22, 71, 128, 543
Book of Interrogations, 22, 63, 122, 304, 305, 321, 322, 323, 404, 411, 543
mean motion, $85,101,457,578,624$
medicine (science), 12, 23, 51, 81, 107, 502, 578
medicine (substance), 29, 53, 109, $145,151,185,197,200,541,578$, 588
melothesia, 24, 54, 55, 110, 111, 112, $150,151,152,153,199,368,369$, 420
military astrology, see wars
money, 28, 29, 57, 79, 114, 145, 155, $163,167,185,201,243,245,247$, 251, 253, 289, 311, 312, 357, 361, 375, 389, 411, 540, 541
Moritz Steinschneider, 1, 9, 22, 122, 321, 404, 558, 564
music, $53,107,580$
Muslim Spain, 1, 488, 498
nativities, $x, 3,4,5,6,13,14,15,16$, 18, 19, 26, 95, 99, 100, 103, 105, $117,118,137,157,185,186,188$,
nativities (cont.), 191, 230, 231, 233, 234, 241, 243, 249, 301, 302, 303, $305,309,313,314,316,342,349$, $353,357,401,402,403,408,411$, 412, 413, 415, 501
orb, 11, 17, 94, 203, 206, 241, 305, $498,505,518,608$
eighth orb (of the fixed stars), 479, 487, 498, 505, 554, 622, 629
of Mercury, 126, 488
of Saturn, 126
of the Moon, 495, 496
of the planets, $136,189,307,406$, 487, 488
of the Sun, $117,344,453,488$
of Venus, $117,344,488$
ninth orb, 498, 505
second orb (of the Sun), 453, 488, 628
upper orb, 459, 498, 505, 554, 622, 629
pains of the planets in the signs, 24 , $368,369,420,421,422$
partnership, 28, 71, 77, 131, 167, 212, 243, 245, 269, 308, 344, 369, 375, 391, 426, 540, 581, 608, 610
perigee,
of the eccentric circle, 159, 271, 477
of the epicycle, 159,475
of the great circle, $57,63,519$
of the planets' circle, $31,203,261$, $471,477,517,581,609,627$
Peter d'Abano, 8
Plato, 20, 87, 93, 137, 544
pleasures, 105, 167, 247, 357
poetry, 1, 53, 106, 107, 583
preparing a feast, $29,67,161,207$, 540
prison, 29, $71,83,97,105,128,251$, 279, 283, 293, 295, 317, 344, 381, $383,387,389,429,443,449,542$, 609
prognosis, 17, 19, 29, 30, 31, 461, 497, 502, 503, 523
prorogation, see directions
Ptolemy, 13, 14, 15, 19, 20, 21, 23, $24,32,33,34,35,36,53,55,67$, $87,94,100,101,107,109,110$, $111,112,113,115,118,121,124$, $128,134,136,138,143,147,151$, $153,159,171,184,186,188,195$, 197, 199, 200, 202, 203, 204, 213, 233, 241, 245, 267, 281, 301, 302, 309, 315, 318, 327, 328, 332, 333, $335,339,341,349,351,379,391$, 401, 402, 405, 410, 411, 413, 416, $427,467,488,489,491,492,493$, 507, 508, 509, 520, 521, 543, 545, 548, 549, 551, 559, 561
Batalmiyūs, 20, 32, 33, 34, 35, 36
Centiloquium, 15, 20, 21, 94, 107, $109,111,113,124,138,184$, 186, 188, 197, 199, 200, 203, 204, 213, 302, 327, 401, 427, 559
King Ptolemy, 14, 111, 301, 348, 349, 401, 507, 508, 551
King Talmai, 20, 111, 309, 348, 349, 507, 508, 551
Sefer ha-Peri (Book of the Fruit), 20, 21, 24, 94, 107, 327, 328, 561
Talmai, 20, 33, 35, 36, 309, 508
Tetrabiblos, 14, 15, 19, 20, 96, 108, $113,134,138,184,185,188$, 203, 205, 213, 230, 233, 301, 302, 307, 315, 333, 401, 405, 411, 413, 427, 491, 492, 493, 509, 514, 518, 561
putting a new garment, 67, 124, 540
Pythagorean beliefs, 25, 494, 495
quarrels, $57,59,67,75,77,105,114$, $155,167,175,243,245,247,249$, 253, 269, 291, 313, 353, 357, 361, 381, 389, 443

Razeq (Abū Bakr Muhammad ibn
Zakariyā Rāzī), 23, 247, 253, 312, 317, 417, 548
release from the decrees of the stars, $\mathrm{x}, 6,11,12,13,15,47,93,94,143$, 302
religions, 14, 105, 353, 499, 501
Safenat Pa'neaḥ (Joseph ben Eliezer Bonfils), 8, 35, 535, 536
Sahl Ibn Bishr al-Yahūdī, 22, 23, 27, 28, 95, 97, 102, 114, 117, 118, 121, $125,126,128,133,186,190,191$, 192, 194, 195, 196, 197, 205, 208, $214,227,313,328,337,559,560$, 561
De electionibus, 28, 95, 97, 102, 114, 117, 121, 126, 128, 133, 186, 190, 192, 194, 196, 197, 205, 208, 214, 227, 559
On interrogations, 313, 337
Sa ${ }^{\text {cid }}$, 23, 113, 200, 253, 318, 361, 416, 548
Scientists of Egypt, 14, 20, 21, 24, 241, 335, 402, 421, 549
scientists of India, 14, 21, 49, 51, 53, 61, 101, 197, 119, 128, 188, 195, 212, 241, 303, 305, 314, 332, 391, 402, 403, 410, 433, 544, 548
scientists of Persia, 14, 21, 103, 231, 241, 305, 312, 332, 333, 402, 412, 549
Sefer ha-Kolel (The Comprehensive Book), 7
selling, 57, 113, 114, 115, 190, 267, 361, 385, 540
separate intelligences, 11,487
ships, 61, 63, 118, 119, 212
slaves, $28,69,79,102,104,126,127$, 147, 161, 163, 208, 249, 267, 279, 281, 339, 363, 369, 377, 379, 422, 539
studying a science, $47,51,53,81,98$, $106,145,155,157,171,173,183$, 541
taking a medicine, 29, 53, 109, 145, 151, 185, 197, 200, 541, 588
testimonies, 30, 219, 257, 259, 263, $295,353,355,357,367,375,381$, 408, 413, 419, 447, 463, 465, 467, $469,504,588,617,618,627,629$
Thābit b. Qurra, 110
theology, 1, 51, 589
Theophilus of Edessa, 23
trade, 47, 79, 134, 145, 175, 293, 385, 539, 540
tripartite cosmology, 11, 17, 553, 554
tripartite human soul, 10, 11, 93, 181, 302
triplicity, 87, 100, 104, 138, 194, 198, 221, 228, 234, 243, 306, 307, 308, 311, 333, 355, 385, 423, 441, 448, 471, 477, 510, 518, 589, 599, 604, 617, 623, 629
victorious (planet), 31, 33, 35, 219, 221, 228, 232, 271, 307, 330, 331, 369, 371, 422, 423, 475, 477, 518, $535,536,593,620$
wars, $27,28,63,71,73,75,81,95$, 102, 211, 128, 145, 147, 163, 165, $167,173,175,193,211,219,221$, 229, 231, 235, 236, 243, 271, 273, 275, 291, 306, 308, 334, 353, 357, $369,371,381,407,424,535,536$, 541, 610
weaning a child, $67,125,542$
whole sign-whole place system, 310, 336
women, 19, 28, 71, 102, 147, 167, 190, 243, 245, 289, 293, 342, 357, 369, 391, 393, 439, 443, 461, 493, 501
worries, 51, 104, 105, 115, 562
Yaḥyā b. Abī Manṣūr, 110
Ysagoge, 26, see Epitome totius astrologiae


[^0]:    ${ }^{1}$ For Abraham Ibn Ezra in Muslim Spain, see Schirmann, 1997, pp. 14-18.
    ${ }^{2}$ For his biography during his wanderings through Italy, France and England, see: Fleischer, 1930/2, pp. 69-106; Fleischer, 1931, pp. 69-76, 107-111, 129-133, 160-168, 189-203; Fleischer, 1932/3, pp. 97-100, 129-131, 148-150, 169-171 (1932), 134-136, 152-155 (1933); Fleischer, 1934, pp. 107-124; Friedlander, 1894/5, pp. 47-60; Golb, 1976, pp. 45-66.
    ${ }^{3}$ For a chronological list of Ibn Ezra's scholarly writings (biblical commentaries; books on the Hebrew language or theology; scientific treatises), see Sela and Freudenthal, 2006. On Ibn Ezra's exegetical work, see Simon, 1983, pp. 47-60; Sarna, 1993, pp. 127. For Ibn Ezra's religious poetry, see Shirey ha-Qodesh, 1980. For his secular poetry, see Diwan, 1886. For a general review of Ibn Ezra's poetry, see: Levin, 1956; Schirmann, 1997, pp. 13-92; Itzhaki, 2000, pp. 53-59. For an assessment of Ibn Ezra's philosophical, religious, and theological thought, see Friedlander, 1877; Rosin, 1898; Greive, 1973; Schwartz, 2005, pp. 9-26. For a discussion of Ibn Ezra's contribution to the development of Hebrew grammar, see Charlap, 1995. For a general evaluation of Ibn Ezra's scientific contribution, see Steinschneider, 1880, pp. 59-128; Steinschneider, 1925, pp. 327-387; Vallicrosa, 1949, pp. 289-347; Baron, 1958, VIII, pp. 138-220; Levey, 1971, IV, pp. 502503; Goldstein, 1996, pp. 9-21. Lévy, 2000, pp. 60-75; Sela, 2003, pp. 17-92.
    ${ }^{4}$ See: Langermann, 1993; Sela 1999; Sela 2004.

[^1]:    ${ }^{5}$ These two versions are henceforth designated as Reshit Hokhmah I and Reshit Hokhmah II, respectively. Only a fragment of the second version survives. See Sela, 2010, pp. 43-66. For my references to the Hebrew text of Reshit Hokhmah I, I have usually used the edition by Raphael Levy and Francisco Cantera, in the format: Reshit Hokhmah, 1939, X, lxxv: 15, 18 = Reshit Ḥokhmah, 1939, tenth chapter, page lxxv, line 18. However, since this edition is unsatisfactory in some places, I have also used MS Paris, Bibliothèque Nationale de France, MS héb. 1056, ff. 3a-33b.
    ${ }^{6}$ For a critical edition, accompanied by an English translation and commentary, see Te'amim, 2007. This edition is used for all quotations from or references to the Hebrew text of the first and second redactions of Sefer ha-Te'amim, in the format: (a) Țe'amim I, $\S_{3.2: 1, ~ p p . ~ 70-71 ~=~ f i r s t ~ v e r s i o n ~ o f ~ S e f e r ~ h a-T e ' a m i m, ~ e d . ~ S e l a, ~ c h a p t e r ~ 3, ~ s e c t i o n ~ 2, ~}^{\text {2 }}$, passage 1 on pp. 70-71; (b) Te'amim II, $\$_{3.2: 1, ~ p p . ~ 223-224 ~}^{\text {a }}$ second version of Sefer ha-Téamim, ed. Sela, chapter 3, section 2, passage 1, on pp. 223-224.
    ${ }^{7}$ The Hebrew text of the second version is now lost, but survives in a Latin translation entitled Liber Nativitatum. See Smithuis, 2006, pp. 262-266.
    ${ }^{8}$ For this recently discovered work, see Sela, 2009, pp. 241-254.
    ${ }^{9}$ For a critical edition, accompanied by an English translation and commentary, see 'Olam, 2010. This edition is used for all the quotations from or references to the Hebrew text of the first and the second redactions of Sefer ha-'Olam, in the format: (a) 'Olam I, $\$ 2: 1$, pp. $52-53$ = first version of Sefer ha-'Olam, ed. Sela, section 2, sentence 1 , on pp. 52-53; (b) (a) 'Olam II, $\$ 2: 1$, pp. 156-157 = second version of Sefer ha-'Olam, ed. Sela, section 2, sentence 1, on pp. pp. 156-157.
    ${ }^{10}$ For the recently discovered third versions of Sefer ha-Mivharim and Sefer haShe'elot, see Sela and Smithuis, 2009, pp. 225-240.
    ${ }^{11}$ For the second, unknown version of Sefer ha-Me'orot, see below, pp. 35-36.

[^2]:    ${ }^{12}$ See below, p. 32-36.
    ${ }^{13}$ References to the Hebrew text of any of the three versions of Sefer ha-Mivharim, below, are in the format: Mivharim I, §3.2:1 = first version of Sefer ha-Mivharim I, chapter 3, section 2, passage 1 . References to the Hebrew text of any of the three versions of Sefer ha-She'elot, below, are in the format: She'elot I, $\$ 3.2: 1=$ first version of Sefer haShe'elot I, chapter 3, section 2, passage 1. References to the Hebrew text of the extant version of Sefer ha-Me'orot are in the format: Me'orot $\S 1: 2=$ Sefer ha-Me'orot, section 2, passage 1.

[^3]:    ${ }^{14}$ See: Pingree, 1997, pp. 21, 35-36; Barton, 1994, pp. 23-29, 49, 57-60, 77; BouchéLeclercq, 1899, pp. 458-486.
    ${ }^{15}$ See Pingree, 1990, pp. 290-300.
    ${ }^{16}$ Sudhoff, 1901, pp. 2-5; Hippocratic Writings, 1978, "Introduction," p. 32.

[^4]:    ${ }^{17}$ See below, pp. 23-25.
    ${ }^{18}$ See Mivharim I, $\S_{1: 3}, \$ 3.2: 5$ and notes.
    ${ }^{19}$ See $M e$ 'orot $\$ 9: 6$ and note.
    ${ }^{20}$ See: She'elot I, §6.1:7; She'elot III, $\$ 6.2: 6$ and notes. In addition, the various versions of Sefer ha-Mivharim and Sefer ha-She'elot are concerned with topics related to medical astrology; for example, Mivḥarim I, §1.6:1-2; § 1.7:1-2; § 1.8:1-3; Mivharim II, § 1.4:1-3; She'elot I, §6.1:1-7; She'elot II, §6.1:1-10; She'elot III, $\S 6.1: 1-10, \$ 6.2: 1-7$ and notes.
    ${ }^{21}$ See below, note 151.
    ${ }^{22}$ See below, She'elot I, §1:2, §2:2, §3:5; She'elot II, §1:2-3; Mivharim I, §1:2-3, §2:13; Mivharim II, $\$ 1: 5, \$ 2: 1-3$; Me'orot $\$ 9: 1-9$ and notes.
    ${ }^{23}$ See 'Olam, 2010, pp. 105-106, s.v. "Revolution of the year."

[^5]:    ${ }^{24}$ See: Mivḥarim I, $\S 2: 1-3, \S 5: 1-2$ et passim; Mivḥarim II, $\S 2: 1-3, \S 3: 1-3, \S 5: 1-3$ et passim.
    ${ }^{25}$ See: She'elot I, $\$ 4: 1-5$ et passim; She'elot II, $\$ 1: 3$ et passim.
    ${ }^{26}$ Me'orot $\$ 11: 1-4$ et passim. See below, p. 30.
    ${ }^{27}$ See below: Mivharim I, $\S_{1: 1}$; Mivharim II, $\S 1: 3-4$.
    ${ }^{28}$ See below, She' elot I, §3:2.
    ${ }^{29}$ See below, Me'orot $\S 8: 1-6, \$ 9: 1-9$.
    ${ }^{30}$ See Appendix A.

[^6]:    ${ }^{31}$ See Sela and Smithuis, 2009, pp. 225-228. Thousands of parchment folios and bifolia from medieval Hebrew manuscripts ended up in various archives and libraries in Italy, where they were reused, especially during the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries, to bind books or cover archival volumes and registers. Extensive research and cataloguing work have been done on this scattered "Italian Geniza" over the last three decades.
    ${ }^{32}$ See Appendix A, Manuscripts of Mivḥarim I, nn. 23, 20, 32, 27, 9, 10, 33, 6; Manuscripts of Mivharim II, nn. 14, 13, 21, 16, 8, 10, 23, 5.
    ${ }^{33}$ See Appendix A, Manuscripts of She'elot I, nn. 10, 24; Manuscripts of She'elot II, nn. 3, 11.
    ${ }^{34}$ These three common passages are: (1) She'elot I, $\S 1.4: 1-2, \S 1.4: 5$ and She'elot II, § 1.3:1-3; (1) She'elot I, § 2.3:1 and She'elot II, $\$ 2.1: 1$; (1) She'elot I, $\$ 2.4: 1-2$ and She'elot II, $\$ 2.2: 1-2$.
    ${ }^{35}$ A similar phenomenon has been detected in the editions of the two versions of Sefer ha-Țe‘amim and of Sefer ha-‘Olam. See TTe'amim, 2007 ("Introduction"), pp. 18-19; 'Olam, 2010 ("Introduction"), p. 49.
    ${ }^{36}$ See Appendix A, Manuscripts of Mivharim II, n. 12; Manuscripts of She'elot I, n. 13.

[^7]:    ${ }^{37}$ For a description of this anthology, see Sela, 2010, pp. 46-47. See also Appendix A, Manuscripts of She'elot I, n. 6.
    ${ }^{38}$ See Appendix B, nn. 4, 5, 6.
    ${ }^{39}$ See Me'orot $\S 10: 1-2, \S 11: 2, \S 13: 1, \$ 16: 1, \$ 17: 1, \$ 18: 1-2, \S 19: 1-2, \$ 24: 1-3, \$ 24: 8$, §26:1 and notes. Cf. Kelal Qaṭan, 2005, 78-92, pp. 57-58.
    ${ }^{40}$ For what follows, see Smithuis, 2006, pp. 244-254; Smithuis, 2004, Chapter 6; Levy, 1927, pp. 19-57. For a list of manuscripts, see Thorndike, 1944, pp. 294-295.
    ${ }^{41}$ These Old French translations have survived in two manuscripts, which include Le Livre des Elections Abraham and Le Livre des Questions, which are the earliest translations of Mivharim II and She'elot II, respectively. Hagin le Juif may be assumed to have translated Sefer ha-Me'orot as well, but if so it has not been found.
    ${ }^{42}$ Hagin le Juif's translations were commissioned by Henry Bate of Malines (1246ca. 1310), a student in theology and the arts at the University of Paris, incumbent of several ecclesiastical offices, proficient in astronomy and astrology, and an author on these topics. He organized the translation of Ibn Ezra's astrological writings from Old French into Latin; in 1292 he produced De Luminaribus seu De Diebus Creticis, the first Latin translation of Sefer ha-Me'orot. This translation was later printed in a separate edition by Erhard Ratdolt (Venice, 1482) and again in abbreviated form in Venice in 1550.
    ${ }^{43}$ First, by Peter d'Abano (ca. 1250-ca. 1315), the Italian philosopher, astrologer, and professor of medicine in Padua, who produced De Interrogationibus, De Electionibus, and

[^8]:    the Liber Luminarum, which are Latin translations of She'elot II, Mivharim II, and Sefer ha-Me'orot, respectively. Later, Arnoul de Quinquempoix (d. 1321/6), a physician at the court of Philip the Fair, produced De Questionibus and De Electionibus, his own Latin translations of She'elot II and Mivharim II. In addition, MS Oxford, Bodleian Library, Digby 212, contains anonymous Latin translations of She'elot II and Mivharim II.
    ${ }^{44}$ Smithuis, 2006, pp. 252-272.
    ${ }^{45}$ These translations are preserved in Salamanca, Biblioteca Universitaria, MS 2138: f. 189 (Libro de las demandas), ff. $189^{\mathrm{v}}-201^{\mathrm{v}}$ (Libro de las luminarias), and ff. 202 ${ }^{\mathrm{v}}-203^{\mathrm{r}}$ (Libro de las elecciones). See Alba, Sainz, and Sela, 2010.
    ${ }^{46}$ In Steinschneider, 1880, p. 495, Steinschneider speaks of "eine Reihe astrologischer Schriften, grösstetheils in 2 Recensionen 1146 und 1148"; in Steinschneider, 1880, 1870, p. 343, he refers to מבחרים A, that is, Mivharim I.
    ${ }^{47}$ See: Me'orot, 1933; Mivharim I, 1969.
    ${ }^{48}$ See She'elot I, 1995.
    ${ }^{49}$ Sela and Smithuis, 2009.

[^9]:    ${ }^{50}$ See, for example, long comm. Ex. 23:25, comm. on Ps. 41:1 and 75:7; quoted in note on Mivharim II, §1.2.
    ${ }^{51}$ This is conveyed in Yesod mora' (The fundamentals of awe), Ibn Ezra's last and most brilliant monograph (quoted in note on Mivharim II, $\$ 1.1$ ). For the human rational soul as the highest component of the tripartite soul, see below, note 54.
    ${ }^{52}$ See Mivharim II, $\S$ 1:1 and notes.
    ${ }^{53}$ Ibid. $\$ 1: 2$ and notes.

[^10]:    ${ }^{54}$ See Mivharim I, §1:1 and note.
    ${ }^{55}$ This emerges from the fact that one of Ibn Ezra's earliest works is Hay ben Meqis (Living, Son of Awake), a treatise in rhymed prose that relates a journey through these three worlds and closely follows a work of the same name, Hayy ibn Yaqzān, written by Avicenna. For discussions of Ibn Ezra's Hay ben Meqiş, see Greive, 1973, pp. 104-122; Hay ben Meqitz, 1983 ("Introduction"), pp. 11-45; Hughes, 2002, pp. 1-24; Hughes, 2004, pp. 306-311.
    ${ }^{56}$ The separate intelligences are non-physical entities, emanating from the First Being, that consist of pure thought and correspond in number to orbs; each of these intelligences acts as the object of the mind of an orb and is the cause of its movement. The last intelligence in the sequence of emanations, an emanation of all intelligences, called the "active intellect," has the sublunar world in its care. See Davidson, 1992, pp. 91-94.
    ${ }^{57}$ See Mivharim II, §1.3 and note.
    ${ }^{58}$ See long comm. on Ex. 3:15, §3:1.
    ${ }^{59}$ See, particularly, long comm. Ex. 6:3: וידענו כי השם ברא השלשה עולמות שהזכרת והעולם השפל יקבל כח מהעולם התיכון - כל אחד מהפרטים כפי המערכת העליונה. ובעבור כי נשמת
     אמצעי, והניחה תאות העולם השפל, והתבודדה לדבקה בשם הנכבד - אם יש במערכת הכוכבים בעת "We know that God created the three worlds that I have mentioned [see long comm. on Ex. 3:15], and that the lower world receives power from the middle world [the superlunary domain of stars and orbs]-each part [of the lower world] according to the upper configuration <of the stars $\rangle$. But since the human soul is higher than the intermediary world, if the soul becomes wise and apprehends the deeds of God, which are [both] without intermediary and through an intermediary, and if it renounces the desires of the lower world and

[^11]:    secludes itself to cleave to the Glorious Name-then, if according the configuration of the stars at the moment of conception some misfortune was to occur to him at a certain time, God, to Whom he has cleaved, will effect causes to save him from his misfortune."
    ${ }^{60}$ See Mivharim II, $\$ 1.3$.
    ${ }^{61}$ See Mivḥarim I, $\S 1: 1$ and notes.
    ${ }^{62}$ For an analysis of the introduction to Sefer ha-Moladot, in general, and of this fragment, in particular, see 'Olam, 2010, pp. 34-40, 282-291.

    63 Introduction to Sefer ha-Moladot: "והדרך השמינית מפאת כח הנשמה, וכחה היא החכמה וער כי אם היה הנולד חכם בחכמת המזלות וראה בתקופת שנתו כי יקרנו חולי מחום בזמן ידוע בהככנס מאדים מוֹ אל מעלתו הצומחת. והנה אם ישמר הוא קודם בא החלי מכל מאכל חם וישתה משקיות לקרר גופו, הנה "The eighth way is concerned with the power of the soul, whose power resides in wisdom. Consider the case that the native is an astrologer who observes in his anniversary horoscope that he will come down with fever at a certain time when Mars enters the degree of the ascendant. If he takes precautions before the illness comes, abstaining from hot foods and drinking beverages in order to cool his body, then he will maintain a balance in his bodily temperament when Mars enters the degree of the ascendant" (quoted from 'Olam, 2010, pp. 288-291).
    ${ }^{64}$ Introduction to Sefer ha-Moladot: וככה, הבוטח בשם בכל לבו השם יסבב לו סבות ולו"

[^12]:    נתקנו עלילות להצילנו מכל נזק שיש במולד. על כן אין ספק כי הצדיק יותר שמור מהמשכיל בדיני המזלות, כי פעמים ישתבשו עליו הדינין, כדרך שאמר הכתוב וקוסמים יהולל, והנה אשרי מי שלבו תמים
    "Likewise, he who trusts in God with all his heart, God-'by Him actions are weighed' ( 1 Samuel 2:3)—will effect for him the causes to save him from any harm prognosticated in his natal chart. Therefore, there is no doubt that the righteous person is more protected than the scholar regarding astrological judgments, since sometimes the scholar's 〈astrological〉 judgments will be faulty, as Scripture says (Isaiah 44:25), 'and make fools of the augurs,' whereas he whose heart is wholly with his God is fortunate" (quoted from 'Olam, 2010, pp. 290-291).
    ${ }^{65}$ See Mivharim I, $\S_{1: 2-3}$, Mivharim II, $\S_{1: 4-5}$, and notes.
    ${ }^{66}$ See Mivharim I, §2:1-3, Mivḥarim II, §2:1. §3:1-3, and notes.

[^13]:    ${ }^{67}$ See Mivharim I, $\S 5: 1-2$, Mivharim II, $\S 5: 1-2$. For Ibn Ezra's sources on these two methods, see notes on Mivḥarim II, $\S 2: 1-3$ and $\$ 5: 1-3$.
    ${ }^{68}$ See Mivḥarim II, \$2:1.
    ${ }^{69}$ See She'elot II, $\S 1.1$ and notes.
    ${ }^{70}$ See She'elot I, §1.1-2, §2:1 and notes.
    ${ }^{71}$ See She'elot II, $\$ 1.2-3$ and notes.
    ${ }^{72}$ See She' elot I, §1.2-6, §2:1 and notes.
    ${ }^{73}$ Ibid., $\$ 1.2, \$ 2: 2$; She' elot II, $\$ 1.2$, and notes. Ptolemy devoted the bulk of the Tetrabiblos to these two doctrines. See book II, which deals with mundane astrology

[^14]:    (Tetrabiblos, 1980, II, pp. 117-219), and books III and IV, which are concerned with the doctrine of nativities (ibid., III, IV, pp. 221-459). Dorotheus, for his part, allocated three of the five parts of his Pentateuch to the doctrine of nativities. See Carmen astrologicum, 1976, books I, II, and III, pp. 161-245.
    ${ }^{74}$ See She' elot I, §3:4 and notes.
    ${ }^{75}$ Ibid., $\$ 2: 2-3$ and notes.
    ${ }^{76}$ Ibid., $\$ 1: 2-6$ and notes.
    ${ }^{77}$ Ibn Ezra believed this to be a genuine work by Ptolemy. See below, pp. 20-21. He used the Centiloquium at least once in his work, with reference to the doctrine of interrogations. See She'elot I, $\$ 6.1: 7$ and note.

[^15]:    ${ }^{78}$ See Iudizios de las estrellas, 1954, I: 5, p. 20, quoted in notes on She' elot II, §1:2, §1:3.
    ${ }^{79}$ See She'elot I, \$3:5.
    ${ }^{80}$ Ibid., $\$_{3: 1-4}$ and notes.
    ${ }^{81}$ In a nutshell, these techniques consist of casting a horoscope at the time of the interrogation, choosing a planet that plays the role of ruler of this celestial configuration (the Moon is a favorite choice), and then determining what the querent has in his mind according to the specific indications of the horoscopic place in which the ruler is and the nature of the ruler itself. See She'elot I, $\$ 4: 1-5, \$ 6: 1-3$ and notes.
    ${ }^{82}$ This concerns the following well-entrenched doctrines: (a) the tripartite division of the zodiac signs into fixed, tropical, and bicorporal signs (see She'elot II, §2:1-3; §4:1-4 and notes); (b) the effect of the planets when they are in the cardines (the first, fourth, seventh, and tenth horoscopic places) or close to them (see She' elot II, §3:1-6 and notes); (c) the effects of the planets when they are direct or retrograde, in the first or second station, oriental or occidental of the Sun, with the ray of the Sun's body or under the rays of burning (see She'elot II, $\S_{5: 1-7}$ and notes); (d) the effects of the planets' natures (see She' elot II, $\$ 6: 1-6$ ); (e) the procedure to be followed when there is more than one ruler (see She' elot II, §7:1-4; §8:5).
    ${ }^{83}$ See She'elot II, §9:1-3; §10:1-5.

[^16]:    ${ }^{84}$ See above, p. 11. This cosmological preface bears striking resemblance to the famous presentation of the "three worlds" in the theological-exegetical excursus in Ibn Ezra's long commentary on Exodus 3:15. For the Hebrew text and translation of the tripartite division of the universe in the long commentary on Ex. 3:15 (below, pp. 553-555). See also long comm. on Dan. 1:10 and long comm. on Ex. 6:3, 20:2. For the supernal domain, see Me'orot $\S 1: 1$ and notes, which corresponds to long comm. on Ex. 3:15, $\S_{3: 1}$ (below, p. 553-554); for the supralunar domain, see Me'orot $\$ 1: 4-8$ and notes, which corresponds closely to the long comm. on Ex. 3:15, $\$ 2: 1-4$ (below, p. 553-554). For the sublunar world, see Me'orot $\S 1: 9-10$ and notes, which corresponds to the long comm. Ex. 3:15, $\S 1: 2-7$ (below, p. 553-554).
    ${ }^{85}$ See Me'orot $\$ 4: 1-8$ and notes.

[^17]:    ${ }^{86}$ Ibid., §6:1-5.
    ${ }^{87}$ Ibid., $\S 7: 3$ and note.
    ${ }^{88}$ Ibid., $\$ 7: 1-4$.
    ${ }^{89}$ For example, he points out that if malefic planets such as Saturn or Mars are in an unfortunate configuration with the Moon in the patient's natal horoscope, his disease will be aggravated. See Me'orot $\S 8: 1$.
    ${ }^{90}$ Me'orot $\$ 9$ :1.
    ${ }^{91}$ The critic may also be asserting, by implication, that it is impossible to apply the astrological theory of critical days, because in most cases the precise time of birth (from which a natal horoscope may be cast) is unknown.

[^18]:    ${ }^{92}$ Me'orot \$9:2-3.
    ${ }^{93}$ This closely echoes the approach adopted by Ibn Ezra in the introduction to Sefer ha-Moladot (Book of Nativities), where, drawing on Ptolemy's Tetrabiblos (1980, II: 1, 117-119), he writes: "I state it as a general rule that judgments about collectives take precedence over those about individuals." Next, he demonstrates the correctness of the previous statement by presenting eight powerful principles that override the significations of the native's personal horoscope. These are: (1) national or religious affiliation; (2) the place of birth according to the seven climates; (3) the great conjunction of Saturn and Jupiter; (4) the "revolution of the world"; (5) the social rank of the family; (6) the authority of the king; (7) weather; (8) the power of the wise soul. For the complete Hebrew text of the introduction to Sefer ha-Moladot and its corresponding translation, see 'Olam, 2010, pp. 282-291. For an interpretation of this text, see 'Olam, 2010, pp. 3440.
    ${ }^{94}$ Me'orot $\$ 9: 3$. For Venus as signifying women, see Reshit Hokhmah, 1939, IV, xlviii: 11; for Mercury as signifying wisdom, see Reshit Hokhmah, 1939, IV, xlvix: 10.
    ${ }^{95}$ Thus Venus still signifies women, but only in the specific framework of the seventh place of the native's natal horoscope, which signifies the native's women. Mercury still signifies wisdom, but only as pertains specifically to the ninth place of the native's natal horoscope, which signifies the native's wisdom. See Me'orot \$9:3. For more on the seventh place as signifying the natives' women, see Reshit Hokhmah, 1939, III, xliii: 4; for more on the ninth place as signifying the native's wisdom, Reshit Hokhmah, 1939, III, xliii: 10.
    ${ }^{96}$ Me'orot $\$ 9: 8-9$. Note that in Me'orot $\$ 9: 6$, Ibn Ezra asserts that the same method applies to the doctrine of elections; in Mivharim II, $\$ 5: 2$ he emphasizes that a harmonious combination of the two methods results in more effective astrological predictions.

[^19]:    ${ }^{97}$ For an example, see Burnett, 1993, p. 84.
    ${ }^{98}$ See Appendices D and E, s.v. "Ancients," "scientists of Egypt," and corresponding loci and notes.
    ${ }^{99}$ See note on She' elot I, §1:1.
    ${ }^{100}$ See Appendices D and E, s.v. "Enoch," and corresponding loci and notes. For the critical remark, see Mivḥarim I, $\S 5 \cdot 5: 1-4$ and notes.
    ${ }^{101}$ See Mivharim I, §11.2:1 and note.
    ${ }^{102}$ See Appendices D and E, s.v. "Ptolemy," and corresponding loci and notes. See note on Me'orot $\$ 16: 4$, s.v. "King Ptolemy."

[^20]:    ${ }^{103}$ In the various versions of Sefer ha-Mivharim and Sefer ha-She'elot I have found references to aphorisms 6, 8, 19, 20, 22, and 47 of Sefer ha-Peri. For Ibn Ezra's explicit references to Sefer ha-Peri, see Moladot, BNF 1056, f. 48b; Reshit Hokhmah, 1939, X, lxxvi: 23-24.
    ${ }^{104}$ This work was called Kitāb al-Tamara in the Arabic world. In the tenth century, Aḥmad Ibn Yūsuf, a mathematician in Egypt, wrote a commentary on the Centiloquium; it has been plausibly argued that he was, in fact, also the author of the Centiloquium itself (Lemay, 1987, pp. 58-59, n. 1, pp. 71-70). At the beginning of the thirteenth century, Qalonymos ben Qalonymos translated both the original work, which he called Sefer haPeri, and Aḥmad Ibn Yūsuf's commentary into Hebrew. See Sefer ha-Peri, BNF 1055, ff. 52a-72a.
    ${ }^{105}$ See note on She' elot I, §2:1.
    ${ }^{106}$ See Appendices D and E, s.v. "Dorotheus," and corresponding loci and notes.
    107 See Appendices D and E and corresponding loci and notes.
    ${ }^{108}$ Ibid.
    ${ }^{109}$ See note on Mivharim I, $\S 7: 1$. See Appendices D and E, s.v. "Andarzagar," and corresponding loci notes.

    110 See She'elot II, §12.5:1 and note.

[^21]:    111 Ibid., $\S 1: 4$ and note.
    112 See Mivharim I, $\$ 4.3: 2$ and $\$ 7.2: 3$, and notes.
    ${ }^{113}$ See She'elot I, §3:1-3 and note. See also note on She'elot II, §1:4. Moritz Steinschneider, in a brief note, was the first to tentatively attribute to Ibn Ezra the Hebrew translations of Māshā'allāh's Book of Interrogations and Book on Eclipses, on the grounds that the translations can be found together with Ibn Ezra's other astrological works (Steinschneider, 1880, p. 497; Steinschneider, 1870, 602-603, $\$ 379$ ). I intend to produce soon a critical edition, accompanied by an English translation and a commentary, of the Hebrew translation of Māshā'allāh's Book of Interrogations.
    114 See Appendices D and E, s.v. "Al-Kindī", and corresponding loci and notes. See note on She'elot I, §7:1.
    115 See Mivharim I, §1.7:1; Mivḥarim II, $\$ 1.3: 1$ and notes.
    116 See Mivharim I, $\$ 7.6: 10$; She'elot I, $\$ 5.3: 1$ and notes.
    117 See She'elot I, §4.8:1-3 and note. On this topic, see Burnett et al., 1997.
    118 See Appendix C, s.v. "buried treasure."
    ${ }^{119}$ See Appendices D and E, s.v. "Abū Ma'shar," and corresponding loci and notes.
    120 See note on She' elot I, §3:6.

[^22]:    ${ }^{121}$ See note on Mivharim II, $\$ 6: 2$.
    122 See Mivharim II, $\S 2: 1-3, \$ 5: 1-2$ and notes.
    ${ }^{123}$ See note on She'elot II, $\$ 1.5: 2$, and Appendix E, s.v. "Abū 'Alī."
    ${ }^{124}$ See note on She' elot $\mathrm{I}, \$ 11: 1$, and Appendix E, s.v. "Razeq."
    125 See She' elot I, §2.4:2, She'elot II, $\$ 2.2: 2$ and notes.
    ${ }^{126}$ See Appendix F; cf. Appendices D and E.
    ${ }^{127}$ She'elot I, $\S 6.1: 7$. Immediately thereafter, She'elot I directs the reader to Sefer haMe' orot for more complete information about the critical days.
    ${ }^{128}$ That this corpus includes significant astrological material related to medicine is borne out by the fact that Theophilus of Edessa (695-785), who settled in the new Abbasid capital of Baghdad as al-Manșūr's court astrologer, refers to an iatromathematical treatise attributed to Hermes Trismegistus (see Klein, 1984, p. 44). Also in an astrological medical

[^23]:    context, here regarding the doctrine of melothesia, which assigns the parts of the body to the twelve zodiacal signs, and the doctrine of the location of pain as depending on the combination of planets and signs, Ibn Ezra mentions as his sources the "scientists of Egypt" or the "Ancients," who appear to be an alternative designation for the authors of the Hermetic writings. See Reshit Hokhmah, 1939, II, x: 14 et passim; Ṭe'amim I, $\mathbb{\$}_{2.3: 3}$, pp. 40-41; Mishpetei ha-Mazzalot, MS Schoenberg 57, f. 73.
    ${ }^{129}$ See note on She'elot I, § 6.1:7.
    ${ }^{130}$ See She'elot I, \$6.1:5 and note.
    ${ }^{131}$ Carmen astrologicum, 1976, V: 41, p. 317: "The Moon after seven days reaches its left quartile, and after nine days its left trine, and after fourteen days its opposition, and after eighteen days its right trine, and after twenty-one days its right quartile, and after twenty-eight days is when it attains its place in which it was. If the Moon reaches any of these places which I named on those days 〈that it reaches〉 them, then these are the days on which a judgment of the patient is best. Whenever the Moon on one of these days reaches one of those places and a malefic conjoins or aspects it, then the pain will be harsher in him and will be heavy. If the Moon on these days arrives in these places and the benefics aspect it or are with it, then it is lightened from the patient [and there is] much from which he is helped." Cf. Barton, 1994, pp. 186-187.
    ${ }^{132}$ Me'orot \$3:3-4.

[^24]:    ${ }^{133}$ Sudhoff, 1901, pp. 5-9.
    134 Toomer, 1985, pp. 193-206; Barton, 1994, p. 187.
    ${ }^{135}$ See note on Me'orot $\$ 3: 3-4$.
    ${ }^{136}$ See, for example, Epidemics, I: 3 (quoted in note on Me'orot $\$ 3: 5$ ).
    137 See, On Critical Days, 1999, $\$ 3.8 .8$, p. 223; $\$ 3.8 .9$, p. 224 (quoted in note on Me'orot $\$ 3: 5$ ).

    138 Al-Kindī, 1975, pp. 163-164, 182.

[^25]:    ${ }^{139}$ Epitome totius astrologiae, conscripta a Ioanne Hispalensi Hispano Astrologo celeberrimo, ante annos quadringentos, ac nunc primum in lucem edita. Cum praefatione Ioachimi Helleri Leucopetraei, contra Astrologiae adversarios, ed. Iohannes Montanus and Ulricus Neuber, Nuremberg, 1548.
    ${ }^{140}$ Charles Burnett first advanced this thesis in a still unpublished work, "John of Seville and the Authorship of the Epitome totius astrologiae (Ysagoge and Liber quadripartitus)." Later he displayed the close links between the Liber primus de gentibus, regibus, civitatibus, aeris mutatione, fame et mortalitate, the first component of the Liber quadripartitus, and the Tractatus pluviarum et aeris mutationis, which is largely a portion of Liber primus de gentibus. See Burnett, 2008. Recently Burnett has referred to the links between Epitome totius astrologiae and Reshit Hokhmah (Burnett, 2010).
    ${ }^{141}$ Smithuis, 2004, especially chapter 3.
    ${ }^{142}$ The first makes the electional horoscope dependent on the natal horoscope; the second, employed when the client's time of birth is not known, consists in choosing a certain planet and determining its location, so that this planet's significations match the client's request. See Mivharim I, $\S 1: 4, \$ 2: 1-3, \S 5: 1-2$; Mivharim II, $\S_{1}: 6, \$ 2: 1-3, \S 5: 1-3$ and notes.

[^26]:    ${ }^{143}$ See notes on Mivḥarim II, $\$ 2: 1-3$ and $\S 5: 1-3$.
    ${ }^{144}$ See Mivharim I, $\S 1: 4, \S 2: 1-3, \S 5: 1-2$; Mivḥarim II, $\S 1: 6, \$ 2: 1-3, \S 5: 1-3$ and notes.
    145 Epitome, 1548, Lib. IV, sig. R3 ${ }^{\mathrm{r}}$.
    146 Epitome, 1548, Lib. IV, sig. R3 ${ }^{\text {r }}$ : "Cum sciveris nativitatem ne eligas pro ascendente signum in quo tempore nativitatis fuit planeta infortuna. Quod si bonitas signi cogit ipsum eligere, quod eo melius non inveniatur, vel si sit ibi planeta infortuna, minus quindecim gradibus addas, gradus lucis ipsius planetae, et ubi domus sit exordium ipsos gradus lucis planetae infortunae fugias." Cf. Mivharim I, §3:1-3; Mivharim II, $\S_{2: 4}$ and notes.
    ${ }^{147}$ See She'elot I, $\$ \$ 4.7-\$ \$ 4.10$, She'elot II, $\$ \$ 12.7-\$ \$ 12.7$ and notes.
    148 See She'elot II, $\$ 7 \cdot 4: 1-3$ and notes, Mivḥarim III, $\$ 7 \cdot 2: 2-5$ and notes; cf. Epitome, 1548, Lib. III, cap. xii, sig. Q2 ${ }^{\mathrm{r}}$ : "Magistri Astrologiae dicunt cum est ascendens Taurus, \& est in ipsa Mars dominus septimae, eius significatio vincetur, sed secundum veritatem ambo patientur." See also Mivharim I, $\S 7.2: 1-4$, Mivharim II, $\S 7.3: 1-2$ and notes.

[^27]:    149 She'elot I, $\S 11: 4$. Similar statements are made in She'elot II, $\$ 10: 6$ and Mivharim I, $\S 8: 5$. Ibn Ezra defines the indications of the horoscopic places in his introductions to astrology, like in Mishpeței ha-Mazzalot, where we read that the seventh place is "the place of women and partners, the place of his [the native's] enemies who fight against him" (Mishpeței ha-Mazzalot, MS Schoenberg 57, f. 73). Accordingly, the seventh chapter of Mivḥarim I, which corresponds to the seventh horoscopic place, begins as follows: "The seventh place. This place signifies three things: wars, women, and partners."
    ${ }^{150}$ For Sahl Ibn Bishr al-Yahūdī's works on interrogations and elections, see De electionibus, 1509, On Elections, 2008, and On Questions, 2008. For 'Alī ibn abī-l-Rijāl's works on interrogations and elections, see Kitāb al-bāri' fi akhām an-nujūm (Books I, II, and III on interrogations; Book VII on elections) in De iudiciis astrorum, 1551; Iudizios de las estrellas, 1954 (Books I, II, and III on interrogations); Iudizios de las estrellas, 2005 (Book VII on elections).
    ${ }^{151}$ See Appendix C.

[^28]:    152 Ibid.
    ${ }^{153}$ In the subsequent "chapters" ( $\left.\$ 12: 1, \$ 16: 1-5, \$ 17: 1, \$ 19: 1-3\right)$, Sefer ha-Me'orot deals with the prognoses that may be made on the basis of this ad hoc horoscope cast at the time of the onset of the disease.

[^29]:    ${ }^{154}$ Thus, if the Moon is in the ascendant, a planet is in quadrature with the Moon when it is in the next cardo, and it is in opposition with the Moon when it is in the third cardo (\$22:1-3).
    155 This is made explicit only once: Me’orot $\S 33: 1$.

[^30]:    ${ }^{156}$ For example, regarding the Moon, whether its light is waxing or waning ( $\$ 24: 5$, \$27:1-2); regarding a Moon-Saturn conjunction, whether the planet is moving slowly or rapidly, direct or retrograde, oriental or occidental of the Sun, in apogee or perigee, etc. ( $\$ 24: 1-2$ ); and regarding a Moon-Sun conjunction, their relative distance in four wellknown astrological conditions that are usually presented in introductions to astrology (\$23:1-2).
    ${ }^{157}$ In this case "the rule of the crisis is valid," otherwise "something unforeseen will happen to the patient, for better or for worse" ( $\$ 34: 1-4$ ).

[^31]:    ${ }^{158}$ See She'elot I, $\$ 10.3: 2$ and note. 'Olam I, which was certainly composed in 1148 at Béziers, also uses latitude $42^{\circ} 30^{\prime}$ in an illustration. See 'Olam I, $\$ 15: 1$, pp. 60-61. According to Matthew, 1996, p. 232, the latitude of Béziers is $43^{\circ} 21^{\prime}$.
    159 See She'elot I, §4:2; §6:1; §9:3; §4.5:1; §4.10:2; §7.7:4,15; §7.9:7; §12.2:6 and notes.
    ${ }^{160}$ Ibid., $\S 7: 1 ; \$ 1.2: 3$ and notes.
    ${ }^{161}$ Ibid., $\S 6: 1 ; \$ 1.2: 3$ and notes.
    162 Ibid., $\S 6.1: 7$ and note.
    163 See below, Appendix B, example 1 (p. 535).
    164 See note on Me' orot $\$ 16: 4$, s.v. "King Ptolemy."
    165 As will be shown in due course, this work is not identical with the text of Sefer haMe'orot presented in this volume.

[^32]:    166 See She'elot II, §7.2:3 and note.
    167 Ibid., $\S 7: 1, \S 10: 5$ and $\$ 1.1: 1$, and notes.
    168 Ibid., $\$ 12.8: 5$ and note.
    169 Ibid., $\$ 7.6: 4 ;$ § 8.3:5; § $12.3: 6$ and notes.
    ${ }^{170}$ Ibid., $\$ 7.2: 2$ and note.
    ${ }^{171}$ Ibid., $\S$ 12.4:3. To flesh out this argument, see note on She'elot II, $\S$ 12.4:3.
    ${ }^{172}$ Ibid., $\S 1: 1,2 ; \$ 3: 5 ; \$ 9.1: 3 ; \$ 12.5: 1$.
    ${ }^{173}$ See note on $M e$ ' orot $\$ 16: 4$, s.v. "King Ptolemy."
    ${ }^{174}$ See She'elot II, $\S 6: 6$ and note.
    ${ }^{175}$ For the date and place of composition of Reshit Hokhmah II and Te'amim II, which comments on Reshit Hokhmah II, see: Te'amim, 2007 ("Introduction"), pp. 11-13; Sela, 2010. For the date and place of composition of 'Olam II, see 'Olam, 2010 ("Introduction"), pp. 41-43.

[^33]:    176 See She'elot III, §6.1:2 and note.
    177 Ibid., $\$ 6.2: 6$ and note.
    178 Ibid., $\$ 6.2: 2$ and note.
    179 See Me'orot $\$ 17: 1$ and note.
    ${ }^{180}$ Tequfah, JNUL $8^{\circ} 3916$, f. 59a.
    181 For the extant version of Sefer ha-Me'orot, see below, pp. 452-483; for Sefer haTequfah, see Sela, 2009, pp. 248-250.
    182 See Appendix B, example 3 (p. 536).
    183 See Appendix B, example 2 (p. 535).
    184 See Mivharim I, $\S 4: 1 ; \$ 8: 1$ and notes.
    185 Ibid., $\$ 2.5$ :1 and note.
    186 See Appendix D, s.v. "Ptolemy" (p. 545).
    187 See note on Me'orot $\S 16: 4$, s.v. "King Ptolemy."

[^34]:    188 Ibid.,
    ${ }^{189}$ See Mivharim III, $\$ 7.4: 3$ and note.
    ${ }^{190}$ Ibid., $\$ 7.4: 5$ and note.
    ${ }^{191}$ Ibid., $\S 8.1: 4$ and note.
    192 See She'elot I, $\$ 6.1: 7$ and note.
    193 See She'elot III, §6.2:6 and note.
    194 See Me'orot $\$ 35: 2$ and note.

[^35]:    195 See Appendix B, examples 1, 2, and 3, respectively (pp. 535-536).
    196 See note on Me' orot $\$ 16: 4$, s.v. "King Ptolemy."
    197 See Me'orot $\$ 17$ :1 and note.
    198 See 'Olam, 2010 ("Introduction"), p. 43.

[^36]:    ${ }^{199}$ I am grateful to Mauro Perani, the current director of the Italian Geniza project, for providing bibliographical information and pictures of the bifolium, which were crucial for the completion of the research.

[^37]:    ${ }^{200}$ See the following variae lectiones: $\$ 1.3: 2, \mathrm{n} .22 ; \S 3.2: 6, \mathrm{n} .1 ; \$ 3.6: 2, \mathrm{n} .5 ; \$ 5.1: 6, \mathrm{n} .24$; \$10.4:3, n. 29.
    ${ }^{201}$ See the following variae lectiones: $\$ 7: 1$, n. $3 ; \$ 1.3: 4, \mathrm{n} .24$.
    ${ }^{202}$ See the following variae lectiones: $\$ 1: 5$, n. $37 ; \$ 2: 4$, n. 23; $\$ 6: 5$, n. $39 ; \$ 6.1: 4$, n. 1 ; \$8.1:1-3, nn. 5, 7, 8, 13.

[^38]:    ${ }^{203}$ See, for example, $\$ 4.3: 3$, n. 27.
    ${ }^{204}$ See, for example, the following variae lectiones: $\S 2.1: 7, \mathrm{n} .35 ; \$ 2.2: 4, \mathrm{n} .27 ; \$ 3.1: 3$, n. 10; § 11.1:6, n. 2.
    ${ }^{205}$ See, for example, the following variae lectiones: $\S 1.4: 4$, n. $32 ; \$ 7.6: 2$, n. 27.
    206 See 'Olam, 2010 ("Introduction"), pp. 48-50.

[^39]:    1ה] עטלשד; ימ> כאלו. 2מבתולה] עימלטד; ש ממזל בתולה. ${ }^{2}$ [לשלטון] עיטלד; מש אל שלטון.
    
    
     עמטשד; ל ותכן; יותדין. [13י] צימלטד; שמתי. ${ }^{14}$ [הכוכב] עמש; יטלד כוכב. . ${ }^{14}$ [חפצי] צימטשד;
     בין. "22] צ; מדילטש ולא.
    
    

    עיל; מד הכוכבים; טש מהכוכבים. ${ }^{32}$ [ עימשד; ט חסר. 33ממשלה] צימש ; ד וממשלה; ט חסר.

[^40]:     שור או לכוכב שהוא] צש; ימטד שהוא; ל חסר. ${ }^{5}$ שלמעלה מן הארץ או לכוכב ] עמשד; יטל חסר. 6שהוא שב אחורנית] עימטשל; ד נזור. ${ }^{7}$ "במזל תאומים] עימטשל; ד בתאומים. ${ }^{7}$ ]מזל] עיטשל; מד
     עימטל; שד חסר. בשוליים: ר״ל הליחות הד׳. 14 14ידע הרופא מאיזו מן האמהות ירצה לחסר] צימטשל; ד ידע המקיז מאיזו מן האמהות ירצה להקיז.
     חסר. בטידמיון] ציטשל; מד > זה. מטדל בצואר והיא. 23יקיז*] ימטד; צשל יזיק. ${ }^{23}$ שוהוא דבר מנוסה והודו לו הבאים] צימטשד; ל כי יזיק והוא מנוסה. 25 25חריו] צימטשד; ל חסר. 26אחד מן הכוכבים] עימטשל; ד מהכוכבים. על*] מדילטש; צ צם.

[^41]:    1כוכב חמה] עימטשל; ד כותב. ${ }^{2}$ ולא שב אחורנית] עימטשל; ד או נזור. ³גלה] עימטשד; ל תגלהו.
     ל ואי. 8כי יתעכב הדבר ... השמש באחת היתדות*] מדילטש; צ חסר. צ'רצות] צימטשד; ל רצים.
     הוספתי עפ״י הקשר הדברים. עימטשלד חסר. ראו מבחרים ב׳ 5.1:4 \$; שאלות א׳ 5.2:2 \$; שאלות ב' 20.1:2 מדל חסר. עימטשד; ל חסר. ציאו] צימטשל; ד חסר. 19 19כולת] צימטשל; ד תוכל. להשמר. ${ }^{21}$ יהיה] עימשדל; ט תהיה. 22 או נכח] עיטל; שמד חסר. על נפל; טי שיורו על נפל; מד חסר. 24 או יביטו אליו ... נגה בבית החמישי] ציטשל; מד חסר.

[^42]:    1שהזכרתי] צימשדל; ט שזכרתי. ²נקבה] עימטשד; ל חסר. ${ }^{3}$ [הפך הענין] צימטשד; ל הפוך הדבר.
     במהרה יקרע המלבוש על ידי מריבה, ואם שבתי*] ימטשל; עד חסר. 8یטנף] צימטשל; ד ישרף. 'כי] צימטד; של חסר. 10שילבש] צימטדל; ש שלבש. [1] צליו אש] צימטשד; ל חסר.
    
     עימטשל; ד > רע.
     ד חסר. 25 החמישו*] מדילטש; צ השלישי. 26 בשב אחורנית] צימטשל; ד נזור. ש ודוריאנוס; ד ודוריינוס; ל חסר. 28ומאשא אללה] ע; ימט ומאשאללה; ד ומשאללה; ש ומשאלה; ל חסר. ${ }^{29}$ [ודורוניוס ומאשאללה ואבו מעשר] עימטשד; ל חסר. עימטשד; ל חסר. ידענו] צימטשד; ל לא ידעתי. ליצאמר] צימטדל; ש חסר. וכן יצא; ל חסר.

[^43]:    
    
     [10 ${ }^{10}$ יעשה] צימשדל; ט שיעשה. ויורה*] מד; עיטש טוב יורה; ליורה כי. 418יאהב] צימטשד; ליאהב.
     99יהיה] עיטשל; מד > כמו כן. 20אחד מהם הצומח] ציטל; מד שח. עימטשד; לחסר. ${ }^{23}$ באחד] צימט; שדל באחת. ל חסר. 26יבוא] עמטשדל; י יביא. 27 במאשא אללה] על; י מאשא אלה; מ מאשאללה; טד משאללה;
     העבד] עימטד; שזוה הדרך; ל המנהג. 32ומזל מאזנים ותאומים] צימטשל; ד ש. מט חסר. 3 לנקבות] צימטשד; ל חסר.

[^44]:    
    
    
     תהיה. ${ }^{14}$ בחלוק] עימטדל; שבחבן בחלק. 15ואם היתה הלבנה בסרטן או בשור או בטלה] עימטשד; ל חסר.
     בגדי. 18אחד] צימטשד; ל האחד. בים ביתתן] עיטשל; מד נותן.
    
     חסר.
     חסר. חסר. שטובים] עימטדל; ש הטובים. רצ בענין הזה הוא משבתי; יטש ויותר רע הוא בענין הזה משבתי; ל והוא רצ בענין הזה משבתי. אללה] ציל; מט ומאשללה; ד משאללה; ש משאלה.

[^45]:    1קטטה] עימדשל; ט > לפי מבטיו. ${ }^{2}$ טוכוכב חמה] צימטל; דשוכותב. ${ }^{3}$ בבית השביעי] צימדשל; ט חסר.
    
    
     כן; ש חסר.
    
     עשה ככה. חסר. ${ }^{26}$ השמיני] צימטשד; ל התשיעי. ${ }^{27}$ [ולא יהיה בעל המזל ... שהוא שב אחורנית] עיטשל; מד חסר. [28 28בית] עטדשל; ימ חסר. $\left.{ }^{29}{ }^{29}\right]$ ציטשל; מד חסר. 30גם הוא] צימטשד; לחסר.

[^46]:    
    
     > <הזה. ש במקום סחורה. ל > הבית השני בבית השמיני. בעל הבית השמיני] צימטשד; ל חסר. ${ }^{19}$ [אז יותר] צימטשד; ל חסר. 212ככב חמה] צימטל; דש כותב.

[^47]:     יותר; ימל גם הוא. "4אם יביט אל הלבנה מבש טוב גם הוא טוב] עמטדש; יל חסר. ${ }^{5}$ שבתורות] עימטדל;
     בריס; ל הריס. בּבוכמות חיצונות] על; ימטד בחכמות חיצוניות; ש בחכמה חיצונה. שגם. ${ }^{11}$ גקן מקום כוכב חמה. ואם שאר כל האדם] צימטשל; ד חסר. צילאחד] עימטשל; ד אחד. 13 13אלה] צימשל; טד חסר. $\left.{ }^{14}{ }^{14}\right]$ ציטשל; מד המזל. ${ }^{15}$ [כוכב חמה] עימטל; כוכב חסר; ש כותב. 16יהיה אחד המזיקים] צימטדל; שיהיו המזיקים. 19 19הפך זה] צימטדל; ש חסר. חוהפס זה הלבנה] צימטל; דש חסר. 22 ${ }^{22}$ בועיל בבית השלישי] עימטל; ד תועיל; ש חסר. ${ }^{23}$ ]תשיעי] צימטשל; ד בששי. בית; ט חסר. ש הרפואות. צימטשד; ל חסר. 31השמש] צימדשל; ט שבתי.

[^48]:    
     חסר. מד > הוא. עיטש; מד וככה; ל וכן. [18 מט בעל. [22 ${ }^{22}$ ] צימטדש; ל חסר. ${ }^{23}$ [הא בינונית] צימטדש; ל טוב. ${ }^{24}$ במזל*] ימטש; צדל המזל.
    
     ד נזור. לוהרוצה לבחור] צימטדש; ל חסר. 33שישב] עטדשל; ישישים; מ שים. > בעל; ל חסר. חסר. $\left.{ }^{37}{ }^{37}\right]$ צימטשל; ד חסר. 3 ללנכח בעל המזל] עימדשל; ט חסר. ${ }^{39}$ צהומח] עימדש; טל חסר. 00היתה] ציטדשל; מ היה.

[^49]:    
     צימטל; ד חסר; ש > מזלות. עשר. צישירצה] צימטשל; ד שהוא בא. ${ }^{9}$ שיכי] צימדל; טש חסר. 12 השמש] עימטשד; ל הח'.
     האחר. ${ }^{19}{ }^{19}$ מקום] צימטשד; ל ומקום.
     שני] צימדש; ט בשני.
    
     במקום ההוא. ל ביבמולדו] צימטדל; ש > היה. 33"ד] צימטשד; ל חסר. $\left.{ }^{34}{ }^{34}\right]$ עט; ימדשל חסר.

[^50]:    17 והמזל*] כח; פ ממזל; מז וממזל. 2אותו ברביצית נקבה מהשמש מהמעלה הצומחת גם הלבנה כן ובמזל נקבה ממזל הצומח מהנקבות ואם לא יכולת יהיה** פמכזח; קר חסר. ³הנקבות*" פמכרח; ק הטובים
    
     יהיה] קפמכרח; ז חסר. 10השמר שלא יהא מאדים*] פמזח; קכר ש. [1]באחת*] פמכז; קר באחד; ח בא׳.
    
     היה. רבים; ז חסר. 25 בעל הבית* פמכרח; ק בעל בית; ז חסר.
    
    
    
     בית ששי. כותב. ${ }^{41}{ }^{41}$ [מזל] קפמכרח; זחסר. עבד. קפמזרחכ; ח מוסיף בסוגריים: פי׳ לפי שבעליו שבתי. 88העבד] קכזרח; פמ יחשוד.

[^51]:    [אם היה] קרח; פמרז כי. 2השביעי] קמכזרח; פ השמיני. 3האויב] קפמזרחכ; ח מוסיף בסוגריים: פי׳
     6בגדי] קפמזרחכ; ח מוסיף בסוגריים: פי׳ לא יהיה כך. ${ }^{6}$ בעבור שהוא*] פמרזרח; ק כי הוא. ${ }^{8}$ הוא]
    
    
     כך אמרו.
    
    
     קרח; מזוהקדמתי פכ והקדמת. 32יתכנו] קפמכרח; ז> לו. השותפים*] פמרזכח; ק ובדבר השותפין. 38 38] קפרח; מז וגם; כ אם. 41 להפך] קרחכ; פמז בהפך. ומריבות*] פמכרח; ז ובגידות ומריבה; ק חסר. קאשיהיהיה] קפמז; כרח להיות. חסר. 474תכל*] פמכזרח; ק יביט. 88שבתאי] קז; פמכרח שבתי.

[^52]:     לפי שהבית הח’ יורה על האבדה. ${ }^{4}$ להיה שב לאחור*] פמכר; ז זנור; ק יהיה נזור; ח היה נזור.
    
     לאחור*] פמכרח; קז נזור.
     קפמכרח; זמים. ${ }^{18}$ בבית הצשירי] קפמכזח; ר חסר. 19 ${ }^{18}$ ] קמכרח; פז חסר. ${ }^{19}$ במקום אחר כמו*] פמכזח; ק חסר; ר או. 21 במזל] קפ; מכזרח מזל. האבן. [27 27ביעי*] פמכזרח; ק תשיצי. קפמזרח; כ קל. ביהיה] קח; פמכזר חסר. ${ }^{31}$ קאדם] קז; פמכרח האדם. 33,לחמו] קכזרח; פמ לחמו.
     שתחל הספינה] קפמכרח; ז חסר.
     וככה.

[^53]:    1והשמר שלא תתן הכח לשבתי או מאדים, ואף כי אם היה אחד מהם חזק, כי יזיק לבעל המבחר. מזל דגים טוב אם צדק או נגה במקום טוב, ואם כוכב חמה נשרף או חוזר אחורנית, אז המבחר טוב] חסר; Et cave ne det fortitudinem Saturno vel Marti et precipue si fuerit EV הוספתי ושחזרתי עפ״י aliquis eorum fortis, quia dampnum veniret domino eleccionis. Signum Piscuum bonum si Iupiter in loco bono vel Venus, et si fuerit Mercurius combustus vel retrogradus, tunc erit eleccio bona.

[^54]:    
    
     ל נקיבות. חסר. ${ }^{13}$ ברביציות שהם זכרים] סיבמ; א ברביציות שהם זכרים; ש > ברביעיות זכרים; ל חסר. ברביעיות שהם זכרים לא יתכן] סיבמא; שואם ברביעיות שהם זכרים לא יתכן הליכתו; ל חסר. ל יהיה] סיבשמא; ל חסר. 16ישר] סילבא; שמ חסר. 19יהיה] סלבשמא; י תהיה. 22 בביתה או] סילמבש; א חסר. היתדות] סילמבש; א חסר. 25 25 בכה] סיבשמא; ל וכך. ילבשא; מ> יורה על טוב.
    
     שבתי. יהיה.

[^55]:    1בבית החמישי ויביט צדק אליו או שיתן הכח בעל] סיבשא; למ חסר. 2הצומח] סיש; בא המזל הצומח;
    
     חסר. ${ }^{10}{ }^{10}$ הצים הער] סא; ילמבש השנים עשר. ${ }^{11}{ }^{11}$ סילבשא; מ חסר. ${ }^{12}$ במבט* ילמבשא; 0 מבט.
     לו בן] סילבמא; ש חסר. שישאל. הלבנה] ס; ילמבשא והלבנה. ליהזכרים] ס; ילמבשא זכרים. 25 בשיראו] ס; יבשמא כשיראה; ל כשראה. נקיבות. ${ }^{28}$ נהרביעית] סילבשא; מ הרביעיות. $_{\text {הישמים] סילמבש; א השמים. }}^{\text {א0וממזל] סילשמא; ב }}$ והמזל.
     חסר. 37כח יש להם] סילשמא; ב ש. . ${ }^{38}$ שמה] סילבמא; ש חסר.

[^56]:    1והפך זה הטובים ... היתדות תלכד המדינה] סילשמא; ב חסר. 2שנים העשר] סמ; ילבש י״ב; א חסר. 3 הצומחת] סיבשמ; ל הצומח; א חסר. ${ }^{4}$ [ואם היה כוכב מזיק ... תלכד המדינה במהרה] סילמבש; א חסר 5תנצל] סיבשמא; ל תינצל. ${ }^{6}$ אואם אחד המזיקים ביתדות] סילבמא; שואם היה אחד מן המזיקים
    
     סילמבש; א חסר. לוּ מן המזיקים] סלשא; יבמ מהמזיקים. 15 לצזר] סילבמ; א לעזור; ש לצזות. שאשה אלה. הנגנב. ${ }^{20}$ או הכוכב שהוא בבית השביצי] סילשמא; ב חסר. 21 21תן הכח לבעל ... בעל הבית השביעי]
    
     בש חכמה. 28השני] סלשמא; י הב'; ב חסר. פיוככה אם היה בעל ... בעל הבית השביעי] סילשמא; ב חסר. 30הצומח] סילשמא; ב חסר. [31 ביתדות] סילשמא; ב חסר.

[^57]:    13 המזל] סילשמא; ב חסר. ${ }^{2}$ בבית*] ימבשא; סל חסר. ${ }^{3}$ בצומח או בעל הבית הב׳בשמיני. וככה אם היה
    
     ובעל השוקע. ${ }^{10}$ וככה אם היה המורה עם אחד המזיקים] סילשמא; ב חסר. [1]ורה] סיבשמא; ל חסר. [הגנב] סיבשמא; ל הגניבה. ראשית. [15 אחורנית] סילבשא; מ חסר. ${ }^{18}$ סצעמו] סיבשמא; ל חסר. ${ }^{19}$ סשנים עשר] סמא; ילבש הי״ב. 20תפש] סלבשמא; יתפס.

[^58]:    
     סשמא; י הב'; ב השתים; ל בשתי. 8רביעיות] סיבש; למא הרביציות. ש כבר יצא; מ הלך. ${ }^{10}$ ממקום שתחשוב] ס; ילבמא מהמקום שתחשד; ש מהמקום שנחשד.
     ילב הי״ב; ש הבית שנים עשר.
     וביץ] סיבשמא; ל חסר. 22 הנשאל] סילמבש; א ששואל. ב חסר. 25 25שר] סלבשמא; י ביי. פ׳"ה. [בן] סישמא; לב חסר. הי. ${ }^{34}$ תהיה] סיבשמ; לא יהיה. ${ }^{34}$ [זה] סילבמ; שא חסר. 36ובעל*] א; סילמבש בעל. סלשמא ; יב ב' הגופות. 88בינוני] סילבמא; ש בינונית. ${ }^{39}$ סשתי] סלשמא; יבא ב'. חסר. ${ }^{41}$ הדבר] סמא; ש > שיהיה; ילב חסר.

[^59]:    1 ${ }^{1}$ באל] סילבמא; שישאל.
    
     סיבשמא; ל חסר.
    
     88והוא] סיבשמא; ל חסר. 22
    
     סילשמא; ב הנה. 35 אחד] סלשמא; יב א׳. ילבמא; ש שיערבבו.
    
     > מהמזלות. 48לסטים] סשמא; ילב הלסטים.

[^60]:     לא תהיה שלימה] סילבמא; ש שתי שלישיות חפצו מהגדולה רק לא תהיה לו שלימה. ${ }^{\text {T }}$ שאשר בקש]
    
    
    
     ס; ילמבשא יביט. 17שאל] סא; ילמבש ישאל. ה"18ם] סיבשמא; ל חסר. לי 19בט] סלבשמא; י במבט. 20 20 למ ישנאהו; ס ישנאו. לבמא א״צ׳״פ. עשר] סלמא; יבש י״א. . סילבמא; ש נזור. סישמא; ל חסר. 36 3וכומר] סיבשמא; ל או כומר. 37, 37קש] סיבשמא; ל מבקש.
     רצ*] ילמבשא; ס חסר.

[^61]:    ${ }^{[3]}$ 8: I have... seventh place. See above, $\S 7.3: 1-19, \$ 7 \cdot 4: 1-9, \S 7.5: 1-7$, §7.6:1-8.

[^62]:    
     כצפדנח; ר וכן. 11מורה] כח; צפנר תורה; ד חסר.
     באחד; ח בא׳. כובד. ${ }^{19}{ }^{19}$ ביתה] כצפנר; ד יהיה; ח תהיה. ר שקר; ח חסר.
    
     כן יורה; ד יורה.
     פרשתי בספר המולדות] כצפנר; דח חסר. ד ולכל מחברות; כ ולא כן המתחברות.
     מחוברים.
     47המחברת] כפנ; צדרח > תחשב.

[^63]:    
    
     הוא הנכון; חנכון הוא. 11יהיה] כ; צפדחנר היה. 44 והכדחיתן] כצפדג; ח ויתן הכח. 15יומלט] כדפחנר; צימלט.
     כצפדנר; ח באלו. דח חסר. ${ }^{24}$ היתדות] כצפנר; דח >מן. 25יבא] כצפנר; דחיביא.
     צפדחנר; כ חסר. 31 המעלה× צחה; פדכנר מעלה. ${ }^{31}$ צהתשיצי או השלישי וככה אם היה בעל הצומח
     כצדחר; פנ חסר. 35י אם בם כצפדחנ; ר ואם לא. 36 36יבא] כצדחר; פּ חסר. פדחנר מתהפך; צ המתהפך. ${ }^{38}{ }^{38}+{ }^{4}$ צפדחנר; $\boldsymbol{\text { מזל. }}$

[^64]:    1קוצר] כצפדנר; ח קצור. [2ובעלי שני הגופים] כ; פדנ ובעל הגופים; חרצ ובעלי הגופים. [3ורו] כ;
    
     חסר. 'ויכנס אל מזל אחר במהרה] כ; צפחנר ויכנס במהרה אל מזל אחר; ד ויתכנס מהרה אל מזל אחר. 10לבית] כפד; חנרצ אל בית. 13 ימיד יסור חליו] כדנרצ; פ מיד יסיר חליו; ח יסור החולי מיד. [15 הצומח] כצפחנר; ד > הבית. כפחנר; צ אז יחל; ד יחול. 121 21 מחולק] כצפחנר; ד נחלק. הבית] כצפחנר; ד הבית.
     כפדנחר; צחסר. ${ }^{30}$ שם שפל אם עליון*[ פנחרצ; ד אם השפל אם העליון; כ שפל עם עליון. כצפדנר; ח שיהיה. 32לו כח] כפדנ; חרצ כח לו. 3 כישיחלש] כפנחרצ; ד שיחלוש. ${ }^{34}$ מהעליונים*] נר; כפ מעליונים; דחצ טוב מהעליונים. 35חלישותו] כפנ; דח חולשתו; רצ חלושתו.

[^65]:     4 ${ }^{4}$
     כ הכוכב; צ חסר. 11ואם היה בעל הבית השני במזל הצולה] כצדחר; פנ חסר. 12ישוב] כחרצ; ד ישיב; פנ חסר. 13 ממונו לבעליו וככה אם] כצדחר; פנ חסר. כיוביט*] צדחר; כיבא; פנ חסר. ${ }^{14}$ בעל הבית השביעי ... אל בעל הצומח] כצדחר; פנ חסר. [16 יתן] כפנחרצ; ד תתן. > הבית. ${ }^{18}{ }^{18}$ בעל הבית] כדנחרצ; פ חסר. ${ }^{19}$ השביעי] כפנחרצ; ד השני. ${ }^{10}$ באחד היתדות] כפנחרצ; ד חסר. כה"הגב לא סר] כנחר; צ הגנב והגבנה לא סרו; פד חסר. 22 בע כי הגגב לא סר ... השני באחד
     יתן. ${ }^{26}$ א$^{26}$ פדנחרצ; כ חסר. ${ }^{27}$ בצומח] כפדנחצ; ר הצומח. בצומח או בעל הבית השי בבית השמיני] כפנחרצ; ד חסר. צ כח.
     הגניבה מהמדינה] כצדחר; פנ חסר. פדנחרצ; כ חסר. פ93ותן] כ; פדנחרצ נתן.
     ח הז׳.

[^66]:    
    
    
     הדבר] כצדחר; פנ והדבר. ${ }^{13}$ [המזל] כ; פדנחרצ חסר. 14 לאדון] כצפדנר; ח לאדוני. ${ }^{14}$ [אם] כפדנ;
     כחרצ; ד שראוי; פנ הראוי. 20שילקח] כצדחר; פנ שיקח. ${ }^{20}$ כהמזל* פדנחרצ; כ חסר. צ והמזל; פדנחר חסר. לו. 26והסתכל] כפנ; צדחר ויסתכל.
    
     פנחרצ; כ במחברת; ד חסר. 37 37היה ואם עבר הפקיד ... כדי אורו או] כפנחרצ; ד חסר. כחרצ; פדנ פחד. 39בנפש] כצדנר; פח חסר. ${ }^{30}$ שידבר] כפנחרצ; ד חסר.

[^67]:    
    
     "כן] כצפנר; דח הוא. ${ }^{10}$ בספריו] כרצ; פדנח בספרו. פנ יהיו. ח כח. 17 ${ }^{17}$ מתהפך ${ }^{*}$ פדנחרצ; כ מתהפך.
    
    
     828צומח] כפנחרצ; ד חסר. 29לאשר] כפדנחר; צ מאשר. [30] כפדנח; רצ האם.

[^68]:    
    
     פדנחצ; כ חסר.
     פדנחצ מהטובים. 19לא*] פדנחצ; כ חסר. 21 21יתכן] כדחצ; פנ שינתן. 22בסוף* פדנחצ; כ בזה.

[^69]:    1ישאל] כד; פנחצ שאל. 2סחחורה] כפנחצ; ד הסחורה. 3יוכל] כפדנחר; צ יכל. ${ }^{4}$ צלמכרה] כחצ; ד מכרה; פנ > או לקנותה. 5לאדם*] דצ; כ על אדם; פנח מאדם. ${ }^{6}$ צהצומח] כפנח; ד חסר; צ העולה
     אם יש מבט בין בעל הצומח לבעל הסחורה שהוא המוכר. צוהסתכל] כפנחצ; ד הסתכל. כיש] כפנחצ; ד חסר. [11 בטט] כפנחצ; ד המבט. ח חסר. פנ חסר. 17 17ידי] כד; פנחצ יד. כ; פנ חסר; דחצ שנבדלה.
     פדנחצ שאל. 25 למכרה ולא יזכור אדם ידוע שיהיה קונה*] צדח; נלמכרה ולא יהיה נזק בה ידוע שהיה קונה; פ למכרה ולא יהיה נזק בה ידוע שהוא קונה; כ למוכרה לאדם שיהיה הקונה. ד באחת. 27ימכור] כדחצ; פנ ימכר.
     לא תמכר הסחורה והפך* פדנחצ; כ חסר. ואמר.
     אללה; דנח משאללה; צ משאלה. 40 "רע] כדחצ; פנ חסר. . ${ }^{41}$ פמכר] כפנח; דצ תמכור.

[^70]:    
     טוב] כפדנ; צ > לו; ח ישוב לו. ${ }^{8}$ צלקנות הבהמה*] פדנחצ; כ לקנותה. "11 בבית השביעי יפול ממנה ואם היה כוכב טוב לא יזיקנו ואם רע יזיקנו הרבה וככה אם היה בית שנים
    
    
    
    
     השביעי] כפנחצ; ד הבית השמיני; כ״י צ מעל לשורה: השמיני. כדח; פנצ מדאי.
     "34 תצא] כצפנ; דח תבא. צ5ישלם] כדחצ; פנ תשלם. חסר. 38שינחם] כפנחצ; ד שניהם. 39ירצה] כפנחצ; ד ידע. ${ }^{30}$ בבית השני] כ; פדנחצ בשני.

[^71]:    1 שהם] כפדחצ; נ ששם. 2רביצית*] פדנחצ; כ רביע. ${ }^{2}$ הכוכב הטוב] כחצ; ד כוכב הטוב; פנ טוב.
    
     חסר. 'במזל שני] כ; פנ בשני; דחצ בשנים. ${ }^{10}$ בקיר*] פנחצ; כ על הקיר; ד בכותל. כ חסר. ${ }^{12}$ במזל מתהפך] כ; פנחצ במתהפך; ד במהפך. ${ }^{13}$ במקרה] כפנחצד; כ״יד דוסיף בשוליים:
     אור נר; פנ נר. 21 לפתח.
     כדחצ; פנ בספר. פנ מן הארץ.
    
    
     יקרה] כצפנר; דח חסר. 47יורה] כ; פדנחרצ חסר. כ; פדנחרצ חסר. ${ }^{50}$ בציורים] כדנחרצ; פ בציורין. > האמיתי. 33מאש] כרצ; פנ מן האש; דח מהאש.

[^72]:    
    
     כ; פּ נשלם ספר השאלות תהלה למאמץ ידים נחשלות; מ נשלם ספר השאלות לאבן עזרא; נ נמו תמו השאלות; קר נשלם ספר השאלות והודות למאמץ ידיים נחשלות; צ נשלם ספר השאלות והודאות למאמץ ידיים

    נחשלות.

[^73]:    1 ${ }^{1}$ ronכל ואמור שהוא] תיקנתי עפ״י respice et dic quod ita EV; גאם המורה יתן הסתכל ואמור שהוא. 2 בבית החמישי] חסר; הוספתי עפ״י vel in quinta EV.

[^74]:    
    
     מבט.
    
     עשרה] עמס; יתלא מי״’ב. א חסר. 24 ${ }^{24}$ במספרו] צילמס; את במספרו. מוסיף בשוליים: מהיום הבא יום אחד; י מהיום הבאים אחד; א מהיום הבאים אחר ז׳. ת מן. האח באר] עלימסא; ת חסר.
    
     ס מרובעתה; ע המרובע. ת הגבול. ת נכח. 42״״,ד] עיתלמא; ס ד. ד. ל חסר. "מ7עטים] צילמסא; ט מעטות.
     עיתלמא; ס הגבול.

[^75]:    
    
     ציתלמא; ס התשובה.
     עיתלסא; מאחד. 17ולחה] עמס; יתלאולבנה. 20 20ותר יזיק] ציתלסא; מ ם. צית אם; צ בשוליים: אז; א חסר. 23 23 חזק] ציתלמס; א יחזיק. ציתמא; לס תשיב.
     ס כלל.

[^76]:     ת > דע. 5המקומות] עמילטא; ס חסר; ע מוסיף בשוליים בכתב אחר: פי׳ במקומות שימצא הירח שהם בתחלת החולי שזכר שיקשה על החולה כן נאמר במבטים שאם בתחלת החולי יביט הירח אליהם יקשה על החולה ג״כ על הדרך שזכר. ${ }^{6}$ האחד*] יתלמסא; ע > במולדו. ${ }^{7}$ במולדו] ציתמסא; ל במולד. צאבתי] ציתלמא; ס שבתאי. צוהנה*[ יתלמסא; צ והוא.
     ציתלמא; ס איננו. 18ידעת המולד*] יתלמסא; צ תדע מהמולד. 19 בעשפטי] צילמא; ת משפט; 0 > הכוכבים. עיתלמא; סוחכמת.
    

[^77]:     על. ${ }^{5}$ "וככה דרך השמש אם יאריך החולי] ציתלמא; ס חסר. ${ }^{6}$ סהיו בבית שפלותם] ציתלמא; ס היתה
    
     עילמא; ת כמו. ${ }^{14}$ בתחלה] עילמאת; צ מוסף מעל לשורה: בתחלת החולי. 16שער. אם היתה הלבנה ... כפי המבט כאשר אפרשם] ציתלמא; ס חסר. מוסיף מעל לשורה: אפרש.
     עמסא; ל אם; ית חסר. 4 ששפר] ציתלמא; 0> שלישי. ס בהיות. "27אוא] ציתלמא; ס ההוא. 82וככה דרך השמש בקדרותה] ציתמסא; ל חסר.

[^78]:    
    
     10 10 החלי] עס; חלי יתלמא. שמיני. [3"היה] עמסא; יתל היתה. ${ }^{13}$ יויותר] עמאסא; ית דבר; מ חסר. [כתולדת] ציתלסא; מ > הליחה; ע מוסיף בשוליים: הליחה.
     לס מביטים. 22המחברת] ציתלמא; 0 > שצר צשירי. עילמסא; ת רחבה.

[^79]:     עמה או; ס חסר. ${ }^{4}$ צובמבט הנכח] עיתלמא; ס חסר. ${ }^{5}$ צבגלגל] עיתלמא; ס חסר.
     כאשר הוא מפורש. ${ }^{10}{ }^{10}$ הכל הגבולים] ציתלמא; ס והגבולים. עיתלמא; סל > כי. 13השנה] ציתמא; ל חסר; 0 > השנית. ${ }^{14}$ צל המעלה הצומחת] ציתלמא; ס חסר. 15 ${ }^{15}$ ושעונים מעלות גם חמישה עשר חלקים ראשונים] עמ; יתלא פ״״ו מעלות גם ט״ו חלקים ראשונים; ס פּ״ו ט״ו מעלות. הספר הנותן אמרי שפר] ע; מ נשלם ספר המאורות לאל תשבחות והודאות; ס נשלם הספר. שבח לאל

    הנותן אמרי שפר; יתלא חסר.

[^80]:    165 oriental of the Sun $\$$ מזרחי מן השמש $\$$ 5.1:2; $\$ 7.5: 6 ; \$ 10.4: 2 \quad$ \$4.1:4; §7.2:4
    166 part from (verb) \$7.4:1,2
    167 partnership $\$ 7.3: 4$
    168 perigee $\$ 2.5: 4 ;$ § 4.1:2
    169 phlegm $\$ 1.7: 2$

[^81]:    

[^82]:    39 disease
    \$ 2:3; §3:3
    

[^83]:    \$ 16:4; §23:3,4; \$25:1,2
    \$ 20:2,3; § 21:1,2; §24:8; \$27:3; \$29:4

